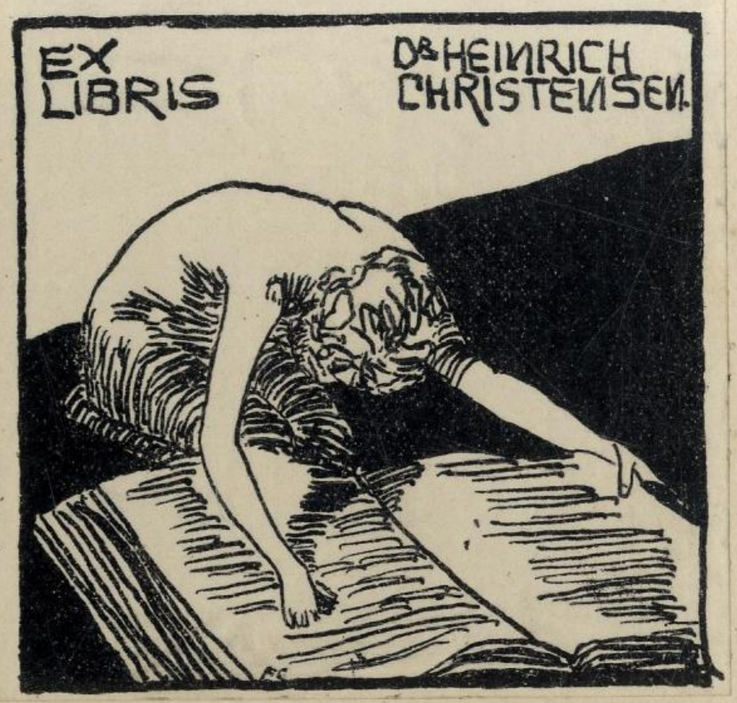

EX
LIBRIS
Dr HEINRICH
CHRISTENSEN.

With J. H. Hessels
Compliments

The Wars of Alexander.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XLVII.

1886.

П.Б.4/88

УНИВ. БИБЛИОТЕКА
И. Бр. 14636

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



The Wars of Alexander:

AN

ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE

TRANSLATED CHIEFLY FROM THE

HISTORIA ALEXANDRI MAGNI DE PRELIIS.

RE-EDITED FROM MS. ASHMOLE 44, IN THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD, AND MS. D. 4. 12, IN THE LIBRARY OF TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN:

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, LITT.D., LL.D.,
ELRINGTON AND BOSWORTH PROFESSOR OF ANGLO-SAXON,
AND FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.



LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXVI.

Extra Series,
XLVII.

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

CONTENTS.

PAGE

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. THE three fragments in alliterative verse of the Romance of Alexander. § 2. Fragments A and B belong to the same version: Fragment C is here printed. § 3. Stevenson's edition of MS. Ashmole 44. § 4. A gap in the story in that MS.; supplied from the Dublin MS. § 5. Plan of the present edition. § 6. Numbering of the lines. § 7. Description of MS. Ashmole 44; discussion of the dialect. § 8. Description of the Dublin MS. D. 4. 12; part 1: Piers the Plowman. § 9. Part 2: Alexander, and other contents. § 10. Dialect of the poem further discussed. § 11. Both MSS. printed in full; results of comparing them. § 12. Method adopted by the translater of the Latin text. § 13. Conjectures as to the date and dialect of the present version. The Glossarial Index ix

THE WARS OF ALEXANDER.

PASSUS I. Introduction. Anectanabus, king of Egypt, is master of astronomy and magic. Egypt is invaded by Artaxerxes. By making ships of wax, Anectanabus discovers that his fleet is being defeated. He disguises himself, and flees to Macedonia. The god Serapis prophesies the future defeat of the Persians. The Egyptians raise to Anectanabus an image of black stone ... 1

PASSUS II. During the absence of Philip, Anectanabus visits queen Olympias, and tells her that the god Ammon will appear to her in a dream. Anectanabus visits Olympias by night in the form of a dragon. He causes Philip to see in a dream his queen embraced by Ammon. A seer tells Philip that the queen's child will conquer the world. He returns to Macedon, where Anectanabus appears in a dragon's form at a feast. Omen of the bird who laid an egg in Philip's lap 7

PASSUS III. Prodigies at the birth of Alexander. His appearance described. His youth, how passed. Anectanabus predicts his own death at the hands of his own son. The prediction is accomplished when Alexander causes his death by drowning. Olympias mourns over the fate of Anectanabus 17

PASSUS IV. A wild carnivorous horse is brought to Philip. Alexander tames him, and sets out on his first expedition against Nicholas, king of Peloponnesus. Nicholas insults Alexander, who slays him, and returns home. Philip takes a second wife, named Cleopatra. Alexander interferes, and Philip is reconciled to Olympias 27

PASSUS V. Darius demands tribute from Philip, which Alexander refuses. Pausanias rebels against Philip, and wounds him mortally. Alexander appears, slays Pausanias, and buries Philip.

PAGE

Accession of Alexander, who addresses his army, and chooses old and experienced soldiers to accompany him. He conquers Chalcedon, Italy, and Africa. He shoots a huge hart, and offers sacrifice to Ammon. He sees Serapis in a dream, who prophesies that he will be invincible. He builds Alexandria 42

PASSUS VI. Alexander finds the black image of his father Anectanabus. He attacks Tyre, but meets with a stout resistance. The bishop of Jerusalem refuses him aid. The 'foray of Gaders.'[1] Deeds of Meleager and Sampson. Balaan of Tyre destroys Alexander's siege-works. Alexander renews them, assaults and takes Tyre, and kills Balaan 58

PASSUS VII. Alexander approaches Jerusalem. Jaudas the bishop, and the inhabitants, receive him with great honour. Alexander kneels to God, and visits Solomon's temple. The prophecy of Daniel. Alexander grants Jaudas a boon. Darius scornfully sends Alexander three playthings 78

PASSUS VIII. Darius sends Alexander an insulting letter. Alexander likens him to a yelping cur that cannot bite, and sends him a defiant letter in return. Darius says Alexander wants a whipping, and again reproves him. The token of the glove full of seeds. Olympias falls ill, and Alexander determines to return to her 96

PASSUS IX. Alexander sends Darius a purse full of pepper. He defeats Amonta in a three-days' battle, who flees to Darius. Alexander goes to Sicily and Phrygia, and praises Homer. Returning to Macedonia, he finds his mother healed. He sets out for Persia, takes Abandra, comes to the Water of Winter, and advances to Thebes, which is taken and burnt. The oracle as to its rebuilding. Clytomachus fulfils it, and rebuilds the city 114

PASSUS X. Alexander sends a summons to Athens. Æschylus counsels the Athenians to resist him, but Demosthenes persuades them to submit. Alexander forgives the Athenians. The Spartans resist him, but in vain. Darius is alarmed. Alexander's parable of the wolf and the sheep. He is healed of a fever by Philip the physician. He crosses the Euphrates, destroying the bridges behind him 132

PASSUS XI. Darius collects an army. Great battle. A Persian wounds Alexander, who pardons him. Darius flees. Alexander seizes Darius' treasure, wife, and children. Darius writes to Alexander, warning him against over-confidence. Alexander replies. Porus is unable to help Darius. Rodogars, mother of Darius, advises him to submit. Lament of Darius 152

PASSUS XII. Alexander goes to Susa, and bids his men cut branches and carry them. Ammon tells Alexander to visit the camp of Darius. He crosses the river Granton alone, visits the hostile camp, and abstracts three gold cups from the tables. Anepo recognises him, and gives the alarm. He seizes a torch, mounts his horse, and flees, crossing the Granton on the ice, and escaping safely 166

[1] '*Gadres*,' says M. Paul Meyer, 'is *Gaza*;' not Kedesh, as conjectured in the note to l. 1193.

PAGE

PASSUS XIII. Decisive battle of the Granton (Granicus). Defeat and flight of Darius. He writes to Alexander, who bids him submit. The Greeks find the tomb of Ninus, and free some Persian prisoners. Darius sends to Porus for help. Two knights lay a plot against Darius; they attack him, and he falls ... 178

PASSUS XIV. Alexander comes to Susa, and finds Darius wounded. He laments over him. Their last conversation. Death of Darius, and accession of Alexander to the throne of Persia. Description of the throne of Darius. Proclamation by Alexander. He beheads the murderers of Darius, and weds Roxana 190

PASSUS XV. Porus defies Alexander, who returns the defiance. Porus assembles a great army, with unicorns, elephants, and scythed chariots. Alexander frightens the elephants by a stratagem. Porus takes to flight 206

PASSUS XVI. Alexander discovers the great wealth of India. Letter to him from the queen of the Amazons, and his reply. He makes a treaty with them 212

PASSUS XVII. Porus raises another army. Want of water. A knight offers water to Alexander, which he pours on the ground. The army comes to a castle in a river. It is assailed by scorpions, snakes, dragons, lions, boars, savages, mice, bats, and red birds. They advance to Bactria, and the country of the Seres. Single combat between Alexander and the gigantic Porus, who is slain 216

PASSUS XVIII. Alexander comes to the isle of Gymnosophists, who ask him for immortality, which he cannot give them. He comes to a dark desert, a hot river, and a dried lake. A monster slain. Elephants, bearded women, amphibious people, and rhinoceroses. Great storm of four winds. A cold valley, with sparks of fire. They arrive at the Ganges. Letter of Alexander to Dindimus the Brahman, with the parable of the lighted torch. Reply of Dindimus 223

PASSUS XIX. Reply of Dindimus continued. Description of the life of the Brahmans. Their moderation, contentment, abstinence, truthfulness, love of peace, life in caves, and dislike of play 231

PASSUS XX. The same continued. Dindimus accuses the Greeks, and condemns the stories concerning the Grecian gods, and their vain worship. The Greeks have as many gods as they have limbs, and each god presides over a limb. Dindimus threatens the Greeks with future torment 235

PASSUS XXI. Alexander reproves Dindimus, and accuses the Brahmans, whom he condemns as miserable and foolish. Dindimus replies, declaring that the Brahmans wisely despise gold and riches. Alexander replies, and calls them wretched prisoners. He rears a pillar of marble, to mark the end of his march ... 241

PASSUS XXII. Alexander and his host leave the Ganges. They come to a wood full of giants, who are slain by them. An uncouth monster appears, and is caught and burnt. Alexander comes to the trees which wax and wane in a day. He and his host climb a huge mountain, and are attacked by dragons, dromedaries, and snakes. They are nine days in a dark valley. They encounter a basilisk, which Alexander destroys by a

УНИВЕРЗИТЕТОКА БИБЛИОТЕКА БЕОГРАД

PAGE

stratagem. Alexander ascends a cliff covered with diamonds, and arrives at the house of the Sun 245

PASSUS XXIII. Alexander finds in the temple a god reclining on a bed, who asks him if he wishes to learn his fate from the trees of the Sun and Moon. He replies in the affirmative, and, with two companions, is guided through a wood to a tree bare of leaves, on which sits a phœnix. The Sun-tree is like gold; the Moon-tree like silver. The Sun-tree prophesies that Alexander will not return home. The Moon-tree tells him he will die in twenty months. He bewails his fate, and returns to his host. He erects two pillars of marble 251

PASSUS XXIV. He comes to the Precious Land, wherein dwells queen Candace, who sends him presents. The wife of her son Candoil is stolen by the king of Bebrik. Candoil goes to Alexander for help, and is received by Ptolemy, who has been commanded to personate Alexander, who is himself disguised as Antiochus. The pretended 'Antiochus' rescues Candoil's wife, and goes with Candoil to visit Candace, who receives him with favour 257

PASSUS XXV. Candace calls Alexander by his true name, and tells him he is in the power of a woman. Rage of Alexander, who is pacified by Candace. Caratros, another son of Candace, says he must have Alexander's life. Candoil interferes, and the brothers quarrel. Alexander pacifies them, and all are reconciled. Candace dismisses Alexander. He consults an oracle, and asks Serapis to say by whose hand he will die. Serapis will not tell him. Alexander and his host come to the valley of crowned snakes, who kill some of his men. He mounts Bucephalus, and has a great fight with griffins. The host cross the river of reeds in barges. Account of a strange kind of sirens ... 264

PASSUS XXVI. Alexander encloses twenty-two kings, including Gog and Magog, within a mountain. He comes to the ocean at the end of the world, turns westward, and reaches the Red Sea. He ascends into the air in an iron car raised by four griffins. He descends into the sea in an air-tight glass vessel. The host encounter various strange beasts. Death of Bucephalus, who is buried in a costly tomb. Appearance of strange white birds. Alexander conquers Babylon. He writes home to his mother and Aristotle 270

PASSUS XXVII. Description of the great throne in Babylon, inscribed with the names of all the countries conquered by Alexander. [*End of the poem*] 275

THE STORY CONTINUED. Epitome of the remainder of the story, taken from the Historia de Preliis 276

THE STORY OF ALEXANDER: A prose fragment from MS. Dublin D. 4. 12 279

NOTES 285

Notes on the "Story of Alexander" 317

Glossarial Index, and Index of Names 319

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. OF the various Middle-English prose and verse translations of the Romance of Alexander the Great, only those which are in alliterative verse will be here discussed. As to these, I have already explained, in my Preface to "Alexander and Dindimus," that there are *three* such poems, all fragmentary, which I denote by the letters A, B, and C. These poems are as follows:

A. A fragment preserved in MS. Greaves 60, in the Bodleian Library, beginning—"Yee *þat* lengen in londe · Lordes and ooþer." This was edited by me for the E. E. T. S. in 1867, being printed in the same volume with William of Palerne, pp. 177—218. It has never been printed elsewhere.

B. A fragment preserved in MS. Bodley 264, beginning—"Whan þis weith at his wil · wed*ur*ing hadde." This was edited by Mr. Stevenson for the Roxburghe Club in 1849, and re-edited by me, with numerous corrections, &c., for the E. E. T. S. in 1878, with the title "Alexander and Dindimus."

C. A fragment preserved in MS. Ashmole 44, in the Bodleian Library, of which a portion is also found in MS. Dublin D. 4. 12. It begins—"When folk ere festid & fed · fayn̄ wald þai here," and was also printed in 1849 by Mr. Stevenson, and in the same volume as the last, but from the Ashmole MS. only, without any consultation of the Dublin MS. This fragment C is the one which is re-edited in the present volume, and to which, for the sake of distinction, I have given the title of "The Wars of Alexander," because it follows the Latin text entitled "Historia Alexandri Magni regis Macedonie *de preliis*" more closely than either A or B does.

§ 2. With respect to fragments A and B, I must refer the reader to the Preface to "Alexander and Dindimus" for further information. It is sufficient to say here that Dr. Trautmann has shewn, from

internal evidence, that these two fragments are by the same author, and belong to a poem which, when complete, must have been of very great length. Fragment C, here edited, is wholly independent of these, in the sense that it was written by a different translater. Whatever it has in common with them is due to their common source. Accordingly, the remarks below refer to fragment C exclusively.

§ 3. Of the two MSS. containing this fragment C, viz. MSS. Ashmole 44, and Dublin D. 4. 12—which will henceforth be called simply the Ashmole and Dublin MSS.—the former is the more important, partly because it contains a much larger portion of the story, and partly because it is more correctly written. It was printed by Mr. Stevenson in full, and has thus become known, being frequently cited by Dr. Morris and other writers, whilst it has also been made use of by Mätzner and Stratmann in their Middle-English Dictionaries. Mr. Stevenson's text (like that of his edition of fragment B) is by no means free from faults, and was doubtless printed from an imperfect transcript, without due collation of the proof-sheets with the MS. itself.[1] Thus in l. 15, he prints "forwart" for "forw*ith*," and "ettitlis" for "ettillis," though the latter word is rightly given in the Glossary. In l. 16, he has "oȝefullest" for "aȝefullest," and so on. In some cases the errors are still more serious; as in l. 70, where "it semyd" is turned into "or myd," and in l. 417, where "sweuy*n*" appears as "sodeyn." Nevertheless, the transcription was, in general, well made, and a little more caution would have given us a faithful text throughout, excepting in such minute particulars as the use of þ for *th*, & for *and*, and the mode of expressing contractions. The chief defects of the edition, after all, are due to the fact that the Dublin MS. was not consulted. Mr. Stevenson does, indeed, mention it, but says that he only knew of it through the kindness of Sir F. Madden, who had made a note that it commenced with l. 678 of the Ashmole text, and ended with l. 3426.[2]

[1] Such a collation would have detected the omission of two whole lines in the transcript, viz. 4002* and 4733.

[2] L. 3425 of the present edition. As it is always my endeavour to keep to old numberings of lines, for the sake of reference, I must explain how this

§ 4. It is surprising to find that Mr. Stevenson edited the Ashmole text without ever discovering that there is a great gap in the story. He prints l. 723, which is the first line on leaf 13 of the Ashmole MS. (as now numbered), as if it immediately followed l. 722, which is the last line on the back of fol. 12. Yet l. 722 forms a part of a speech of Anectanabus, and l. 723 a part of a speech of Alexander; and, according to the Ashmole MS., Anectanabus drops out of the romance in the middle of uttering a sentence, and is no more heard of, whilst a king of Peloponnesus, by name Sir Nicholas, jumps into the story without any introduction, and is at once found in the midst of an angry parley with Alexander. A moderate attention to the progress of the story shews us at once, that the Ashmole MS. must, at this point, have lost one or more leaves, and we now know that it has, in fact, lost just *two* leaves, or 122 lines. The discovery of the precise state of the case was made by Mr. Hessels in 1874, after a careful examination of the Dublin MS., and comparison of it with Stevenson's edition. He found that the very passage required to fill up the gap occurs in full in that MS., which, notwithstanding its incompleteness at the beginning and end, supplies this very material contribution to the continuity of the story. Even now, the conclusion of the Romance is wanting, since the Ashmole MS. has lost a few leaves at the end also. After making this discovery, Mr. Hessels made a transcript of the entire MS., and kindly consented to assist me in editing the Romance. Owing to pressure of other work, he resigned to me the preparation of the Notes and Glossary, and expressed the wish that my name alone should appear upon the title-page; but so much of the work was done by us jointly, that it is best to describe more fully the method of editing adopted by us.

§ 5. In the first place, a collation of Stevenson's edition with the Ashmole MS. was made by Mr. George Parker; and, as that edition was printed without any punctuation, the punctuation was

difference arose. It was because it escaped my notice that l. 3028 in Stevenson is immediately followed by l. 3030; so that, after following his numbering for more than 3000 lines, I was thus, to my regret, thrown out. There are other slight differences further on, as explained at p. xiii, but the difference in the numbering never amounts to more than *one* line.

added by myself. Meanwhile, the Dublin MS. was transcribed by Mr. Hessels, and both texts, thus prepared, were sent to press, and printed in full. In general, the Ashmole text occupies the left-hand page, and the Dublin text the right-hand page; but, throughout the first 21 pages and the last 71 pages, the Ashmole text occupies *both* pages, to save space. The word *Ashmole* or *Dublin* is printed at the top of every page, to prevent ambiguity. The gap in the Ashmole MS. is shewn by leaving a part of pp. 24 and 32 blank, as well as an entire blank on pp. 26, 28, and 30; and further on, a gap in the Dublin MS. is similarly shewn by leaving blank a part of pp. 197 and 201, and a blank on p. 199. Considering that the exact reproduction of the MSS. is, after all, the chief duty of editors, Mr. Hessels and myself have paid very close attention to this point. The proof-sheets were carefully compared with *both* MSS. by *both* of us separately, and we venture to think that the texts are faithfully reproduced in the minutest particular. Every tag and curl has been carefully watched, and notice is given in the foot-notes whenever a word is miswritten, or corrected, or supplied in the margin. The head-lines, side-notes, and Notes were prepared by me, and I accept the responsibility for them, but they have had the great advantage of revision by Mr. Hessels. As regards the Glossary, the shape in which it now appears is due to myself; but it was chiefly prepared by Miss Wilkinson, who has kindly assisted me on other occasions (particularly in the glossaries to my selections from Chaucer), and was much augmented by Mr. Hessels, who added to it numerous words and forms, chiefly from the Dublin MS., and also underwent the great labour of verifying all the references, which will, we believe, be found to be correct throughout. The preparation of this Glossarial Index has occupied a long time, and has delayed the appearance of the edition for some years; but, now that Dr. Murray's Dictionary is passing through the press, it seemed highly desirable to make the references as full as possible.[1] We also owe to Mr. Hessels the transcript of the very brief prose "Story of Alexander," which is

[1] Mr. Stevenson's Glossary, consisting of 12 pages, is rather a poor performance, and contains several false forms. Having, for example, printed "forwart" for "forw*ith*" in l. 15, his Glossary has "*Forwart*, to promise."

here printed for the first time, from the Dublin MS., at pp. 279—283.

§ 6. One great defect, in nearly all copies of poems in alliterative metre, is caused by the liability of the scribe to lose his place, and to miss one or more lines here and there. The Ashmole MS. is the more carefully written of the two, but (in addition to the gap contained in the lines numbered 733* to 844*), it misses ten other lines. In order to avoid much deviation from Stevenson's numbering of the lines, these extra lines are here denoted by asterisks, and are called respectively, lines 1633*, 1766*, 1767*, 2168*, 2538*, 2724*, 2842*, 2980*, 3167*, and 3267*. The Dublin MS. (in addition to the gap caused by the loss of leaf 40, ll. 3296—3356) has lost 30 lines, viz. 911, 1227, 1333, 1334, 1745, 1749, 1804, 1822, 1874—7, 2012, 2120—5, 2143, 2317, 2318, 2328, 2373, 2380, 2386, 2440, 2519, 2721, and 2808. Unfortunately, I did not discover, till too late, that Stevenson's printer missed counting a line after l. 3028, so that from that point to l. 4733, the number of each line in this edition is one less than in his. Here Stevenson misses a line which I have supplied,[1] thus bringing the numbering right. Unluckily, his printer again missed counting a line after l. 4933, so that from this point to the end the number of each line in this edition is again one less than in his. My last line (5677) is the one formerly called 5678.[2] This will not give much trouble to readers who refer to this volume for words mentioned by Mätzner and Stratmann, but it is best to explain how the difference arose. An old numbering, even if faulty, should be adhered to, where possible, for the sake of convenience of reference. I shall describe the MSS. more particularly.

§ 7. Respecting the Ashmole MS. 44, there is not much to be said. Nothing is known of its history previously to its acquisition by Ashmole. Mr. Stevenson dates it, no doubt correctly, at "the middle of the fifteenth century," and says that "it is on paper, written by a hand coarse, rough, and irregular, without any attempt at neatness, and without much regard to accuracy. The errors into which the scribe has fallen seem to indicate, in some instances, that

[1] Stevenson also misses a line after l. 4002, but I have called it l. 4002*.
[2] See also note 1 on p. 56, explaining why Stevenson's l. 1098 disappears.

he was unable to read correctly the copy which he had before him, while others would appear to shew that he wrote from dictation." I have not observed any passages of the latter kind; and I think that the above description, though fairly indicating the general condition of the MS., errs somewhat on the side of severity. I should say that the scribe aimed at being both neat and regular, though his success in attaining to these is not of the highest order. Still it is a tolerably good MS., and I have seen many that are worse. No doubt it abounds with singular errors, but the number of these has been needlessly augmented in the former edition, as if it were the editor who, in just a few instances, "was unable to read correctly the copy which he had before him;"[1] though the general carefulness and correctness of that edition may be admitted. The MS. contains at present 97 leaves, wholly occupied with the Romance, and is imperfect at the end. Each leaf contains about 60 lines, sometimes more, and sometimes less; and we thus see that two leaves are missing after leaf 12, since the missing portion amounts to 122 lines; but the following leaf is numbered 13, as the gap in the MS. seems never to have been noticed. The MS. gives us no further information of any kind, so that we are entirely thrown back upon internal evidence. We may perhaps date it about 1450, as already suggested, and I think we may also say that it was probably written in the north of England. With reference to this question of locality, Mr. Stevenson ventures to "hazard the conjecture that this romance was written in one of the north-eastern counties of the midland division of England, some district in which the Anglian dialect had originally prevailed, untinctured, however, by those peculiarities of vocabulary and construction which characterize the language of ancient Northumbria." I would venture to say, on the contrary, that the Northumbrian character of the dialect is very strongly marked. If we apply, for instance, such dialectal tests as are given in the Introduction to Morris and Skeat's Specimens of

[1] Examples: "forwart" for "forwit*h*," 15; "sodeyn" for "sweuy*n*," 417; "Anec" for "anes," 478; "Anec analey" (*sic*) for "Anecanab*us*," scribal error for "Anectanab*us*," 487; "sey hevyn" for "seuyn heuyns," 1528; "to wit*h*in" omitted, 1634; "odde" for "ald," 2176; "twine" for "turne," 2276; "chose" for "tholid," 2329; "herde" for "p*ar*de," 2707.

English, Part II., we easily find, in the Ashmole text, all the marks of the Northumbrian dialect. It may suffice to instance the use of the suffix *-is* in the first person singular of the indicative mood, as in *I ettillis* (15); the use of *-id* or *-yd* for all persons of the preterite indicative of weak verbs, as *I neuenyd* (76), *he hauntid* (16), *þai lerid* (36); the frequent[1] loss of *e* in the infinitive mood or the gerund, as in *rehers* (21), *to knaw* (54), *flay* (110); the use of *sall* for *shall* (21), and of *suld* for *sholde* (100); present participles in *-and*, as *feȝtand* (91), *comand*, *keruand* (63); the omission of *i-* or *y-* as a prefix to past participles, as in *fourmed* (3); the preservation of the final *-en* or *-yn* of past participles of strong verbs, as in *comyn* (85), *coruen* (129); the use of *þir* for *these* (262); the use of *scho* for *she* (267); the use of *thai*, *thair*, and *thaim* (very common); the use of *hethen* for *hence* (see Glossary); *fra* for *from* (139); *at* for *that* (161); &c. But it will be convenient to defer any further discussion of the dialect till after the Dublin MS. has been described.

§ 8. The Dublin MS. D. 4. 12 contains not only a portion of Alexander, but also part of a copy of the A-text of Piers the Plowman, and has already been partially described in a foot-note to my edition of Piers Plowman (E. E. T. S.), part ii. p. vi; and again, in my Notes to P. Plowman, p. 836. But I take the present opportunity of giving a more minute account of it. It is a paper MS., the size of each page being about $8\frac{3}{4}$ inches by $5\frac{3}{4}$, and each page containing about 30 lines or rather more. The first 26 leaves contain an imperfect copy of the A-text of Piers Plowman, the contents of which have been turned by the scribe into a Northumbrian dialect. This copy shews a close connection with the curious copy in the library of University College, Oxford, denoted in my collation of the A-text by the letter U, as the following selected readings from it will shew.

Prologue, l. 1. *whon—sonne*] as I south went. 2. *into*] in. *A—were*] as I a scheepe were. 4. *Wende—wydene*] I went wide. 9. *leonede*] lened me. 14. *imaket*] entyred (*sic*). 32. *hit—to*] it is sene in.

[1] The scribes often write an idle final *e* where it was not meant to be sounded; this is common, for example, in the MSS. of Barbour's Bruce.

After l. 54 of the Prologue it inserts 4 lines, though they do not occur in U. These are :—

> *Per*sons with þair p*ro*curases [1]*per*mutyn þair chirches,[1]
> With al þe besynes of þair body þe bett*er* to haue.
> Vicars on fele halue fandyn þam to done,
> Lede[r]es þai ben of lovedays & with þe lawe mellyth.

The two last lines occur also in MS. Rawlinson Poet. 137, which contains an A-text of P. Plowman of the same character.

After l. 83 of the Prologue there are two more extra lines, also not found in MS. U. These are :—

> Þan come *þer* a king knyght*is* hym led,
> Conciens & þe king into þe halle went.

The former of these agrees with B. prol. 112.

After l. 95 of the Prologue we find another insertion of 10 lines, also not in MS. U; they resemble B. prol. 92—99, C. i. 90—94, and are as follows :—

> Su*m* ser*u*is þe kyng & hys sylu*er* tellis
> Of ward*is* & of wardmut*is* of wayues & straves.
> Some sitt*is* as synescallis & seru*is* other lordez,
> And sytt*is* *þer* apon þair acounte þe pure to distroy,
> And hald*is* court*is* in Cuntree like me*n* of law,
> For to take vntrewly ayains conscience.
> Ye suffre your p*a*rochyng[s] spyl & paire for eu*ir*,
> Holy kyrke ye distroy & þ*a*t is gret rewth.
> ȝe s*er*ue god vn-dwelly (*sic*) it is dred at þe last
> Þ*a*t crist in hys consistory of ȝow wol c*ur*se mony.

Line 100 of the Prologue runs thus :—

> Talyours & tynkelers & tollers both.

In Passus I, the following remarkable readings are worthy of notice.

Instead of ll. 39 and 40, we find—

> To shend þi sory saule be war wit*h* þair wyles.
> For l. 93—And ryde rapely to rensake þe realmes abowte.
> For l. 137—And in plente of pes p*re*che þou it ofte.

The difficult word *a-liri* (A. vii. 115) appears as *of-lery*, shewing the nature of the compound. On fol. 6 of the MS. we find that Pass. i. 184 is immediately followed by Pass. vii. 71, thus shewing

[1—1] Not 'p*ro*uianses' and 'cherches,' as printed in Pref. to Text B, p. vi, note.

a transposition of the subject-matter closely resembling that in MS. U (see Pref. to text A. p. xx). On the back of fol. 8 is another transposition, where A. vii. 216 is immediately followed by A. i. 182 (over again), whence the text is continuous down to A. vii. 45. Thus A. i. 182-4 occurs twice over, and the order of the subject-matter is: A. prol. 1—i. 184; vii. 71—216; i. 182—vii. 45. On fol. 13 occurs the passage printed in the Notes to P. Plowman, p. 836. The text ceases at A. vii. 45, at the bottom of the back of leaf 26, the rest of the poem having been lost before it was bound up with the Alexander Romance, which has lost (probably) eleven leaves[1] at the beginning.

§ 9. With the Alexander Romance, the numbering of the folios recommences. Fol. 1 begins with l. 678 of the poem (see p. 23); and, most fortunately, just 45 lines *before* the gap of two leaves occurs in the other MS. It thus supplies the missing passage in lines 723*—844* (see pp. 25, 27, 29, 31, 33), and goes on without a break to the end of leaf 39 (l. 3295, p. 197). Here leaf 40 is lost, as shown by the blanks on pp. 197, 199, and 201 (lines 3296—3356). Leaf 41 is the last of the poem; at the end of which the poem comes to a sudden stop (l. 3425, p. 205), the rest having been torn away before the MS. was last bound up. It may here be remarked that the scribe is even more careless than the scribe of the Ashmole MS., and repeatedly misses lines, viz. 911, 1227, 1333, 1334, 1745, 1749, 1804, 1822, 1874-7, 2012, 2120-5, 2143, 2317-8, 2328, 2373, 2380, 2386, 2440, 2519, 2721, and 2808. Leaf 42 is bound in upside down, and has some names and numbers written upon it, evidently part of some accounts. Among the names mentioned are :—T. Hagirston, Ric. Hagirston, M*agister* Holborn, Ric. Barow, Joh. Watson de goswyk, Will*elmus* sand*er*son de bukton, Joh. haH de bolsden, . . de ancroft, . . de morpet. These obviously allude to a cluster of places lying in that northern extremity of the county of Northumberland, which is so oddly considered as forming a part of the county of Durham. In Pigot's County Atlas (1831) I here find *Haggerston*, *Goswick*, *Buckton*, and *Ancroft*, and (within Northum-

[1] The first 11 extant leaves contain 680 lines. The number of lines lost at the beginning is about 677.

berland proper) *Bosedon*, now Bowsden, *Howburn*, and much further south the well-known town of Morpeth. We are thus enabled to connect the MS., beyond any doubt, with the county of Northumberland.

On leaf 43 are various scribblings, amongst which occurs "Deleatur de libro viuentium," which is quoted from P. Plowman, A. vii. 68, but does not occur in the body of the MS.; also—"Omnibus omnia non mea sompnia dicere possum"—"Explicit liber Amen quod Cuthbertus Emeryson (?)"—and other trivial remarks. On the back of leaf 43 is a tale in Latin, beginning—"[Nar]racio. Legitur in vita beati remegii quod quidem miles anglicus valde probus & in actibus nimis [MS. nimus] strenu[u]s ad diversa regna vadens propter acta militaria exercenda & in omnibus locis sive ubique locorum se viriliter gerens & victoriam optinens & triumphans demum Tediit laboris & reuersus est vt repatriaret ad propria propter (?) probitatem suam in sua patria enotescendam." And then the story goes on to tell how this invincible English soldier, riding through a forest, lost his way, wandered about for two days, being half famished, and finally met a dwarf a cubit high, who demanded who he was. On describing himself as an invincible but starving English soldier, the dwarf took him to a hall and his horse to a stable, and provided for the wants of both. Before parting, the dwarf addressed him, saying, "As you claim to be invincible, you must now fight me or one still smaller than me;" whereupon the soldier consented to wrestle, and was thrown prostrate on the earth. And so the story ends, being nearly illegible near its conclusion.

Leaf 44 merely contains four words[1] scribbled to try the pen, but in the same hand as that which wrote out the Romance. The back of the leaf is blank.

Leaf 45 is blank on the front, but on the back begins the short prose story printed at pp. 279—283. This occupies the rest of leaf 45, the whole of leaf 46, and the front of leaf 47. On the back of leaf 47 are three lines of music and some scribbling; and here the MS. ends.

[1] They begin with ornamental initials, and are merely long words in alphabetical order, viz. Annunciauerunt. Beneuolencia. Circumdederunt; and an illegible word beginning with D.

On a fly-leaf at the beginning are some accounts scribbled in Latin, which commence thus:—"Ludus specialis tentus aput Petyngton vndesimo die mensis septembris per (?) Magistrum Toma[m] castell priorem, R. Heryngton existente seneschallo anno domini Milesimo quingentesimo tercio," &c. This is interesting as containing an allusion to a play held at "Petyngton," which may be the modern Pittington, at no great distance from Durham, where there is now a railway station; and as giving us the date 1503. This again associates the MS. with the North of England, and leads us to suppose that the main part of the MS. was written, as would also otherwise appear, towards the close of the fifteenth century.

§ 10. The Dublin MS., like the other, shews decided marks of a Northumbrian dialect, as seen in the use of *sall* (688), of the pres. part. in *-and*, as *syl-and* (698), of *-es* in the pres. pl. indic., as *draw-es* (706), of *-yn* in the pp. of strong verbs, as *knaw-yn* (719); &c. But the remarks prefixed to Dr. Morris's second edition (1869) of the Early English Alliterative Poems warn us how extremely difficult it is to separate the pure Northumbrian dialect from the Midland dialect, where it borders upon the Northumbrian; for the latter is often marked by the use of Northumbrian forms. We have, first of all, to consider which of the MSS. probably gives the dialect more correctly; and here I have very little hesitation in at once preferring the Ashmole MS., which ought certainly to be most considered as being at once the older, more correct, and more consistent MS. of the two. If we compare, e. g., lines 678—722 (pp. 22—25), we find that the Ashmole MS. steadily keeps to the Northumbrian forms where the Dublin MS. varies from them. Examples are:[1] A. *wald*, D. *wold* (690); A. *fra*, D. *from* (694); A. *waytis*, D. *watyn* (700); A. *mon*, D. *must* (707); A. *slike*, D. *suche* (711). And a further collation of parallel passages will amply confirm these results. We even find, though rarely, in MS. A. such a clear mark of the Northumbrian dialect as the use of *at* for *to* to denote the gerund; as in *at grete*, i. e. to weep (872), *at drede*, to dread (4294). It would take a prolonged examination to enable me to speak decisively on

[1] I here (and below) denote the Ashmole MS. by "A.," and the Dublin MS. by "D."

this point; but I am inclined to think that the translation of the Alexander Romance here printed was originally made in a pure Northumbrian dialect, in some county lying between the Humber and the Tweed; and I think it will be found to exhibit this dialect in a purer form than any other unrimed alliterative poem now extant,[1] with the obvious exception of such as are in Lowland Scotch, viz. Dunbar's poem of the Twa Maryit Women and the Wedo, and the Prophecies in MS. Kk. 1. 5 in the University Library, printed in Bernardus de Cura rei familiaris, ed. Lumby, 1870 (E. E. T. S.).

§ 11. The method here adopted, of printing the two MSS. side by side, as far as they go, not only gives fuller information than could be shewn by a mere collation, but dispenses with a great deal of explanation and emendation. It will be found, repeatedly, that one MS. corrects the other; and the reader should compare them for himself. It is sufficient to point out a few obvious instances; there are other instances which require more thought, and some where the right reading is doubtful.

In D. 681, the alliteration fails; the line is corrupt, but is given correctly in A. The contrary takes place in l. 684. In l. 687, A. misses the necessary word *is*, which we have supplied. In A. 689, the spelling *werid* is due to the trilling of the *r*; the word meant is *werd*, i. e. weird, fate. In 692, D. misses *me*, supplied from A.; on the other hand, the reading *gane* in A. is false, as shown by the failure of alliteration; we must read *done*. In D. 710, read *byhynde* for *bylyue*. In 711, the reading *hym* (D.) is better than *he* (A.). The latter half of 714 is right in D., but wrong in A. In A. 717, we may read either *angirly* or *augirly;* but the latter is intended, as shewn by the spelling *awgardly* in D., and by comparing all the other passages; see *Augard*, *Augird*, and *Augirly* in the Glossary. We find, however, *angirly* elsewhere; see *Angrile* in the same. It is needless to multiply instances, as the comparison can so easily be made. It is also worth while to add here, that further help is sometimes to be obtained by consulting the *other* alliterative translations

[1] The Troy-book, as we have it, is West-Midland (pref. p. lv); so are the Alliterative Poems edited by Morris. The Morte Arthure abounds with Midland forms.

of the Romance, viz. fragment A (printed with William of Palerne) and fragment C (printed as Alexander and Dindimus). Of these, the former illustrates ll. 23—803*, and the latter ll. 4019—4714; as noted at p. 285. For further examples of this, see the Notes.

§ 12. We come now to consider how the translater has performed his task. He has given us but little of his own, the chief original passage being the first 22 lines, which are introductory. He has also divided his work into Passus, by way of affording intervals of rest, and sometimes adds a few lines of his own at the beginnings and ends of these, such as ll. 212, 213, 214, 523, 524, &c. At such points, we may particularly observe that he uses such expressions as *þe text me recordis* (214); *as says me the text* (741*, p. 27); *as þe buke sais* (881); *For all þe first* [part] *is in fittis* (3473). The most explicit passage is the following (ll. 3472-3):—

> "þe lattir ende of his lyfe · me list ȝow to telle.
> For alle þe first is in fittis · & folowand the lettir."

Here he expressly tells us that he has already arranged the preceding part of the work in Passus, and that it was "following the letter," i. e. a more or less literal translation from the "text" which was before him. It does not appear that he has adopted any single text exclusively, but the main part of the narrative follows, with tolerable fidelity, the Latin text known as the "Historia de Preliis." Of this work, I fortunately possess an excellent black-letter copy, printed at Strassburg in 1489,[1] which has been of great help and service in making out the true sense of several passages. In order to shew how the translater has treated his original, I have quoted the whole of the first Chapter of this work in the note to l. 13, on p. 285. It answers precisely to the translater's Primus Passus, ll. 23—211; lines 1—22 and 212, 213 being obviously additions to it. I have also, in the note to l. 722, quoted the whole of the Latin text answering to the two missing leaves in the Ashmole MS. But, in general, each Passus of the English version contains several chapters of the Latin text; thus Passus Secundus is equivalent to the second,

[1] In my Notes to Alexander, fragment A (printed with William of Palerne) and fragment B (Alexander and Dindimus), I have quoted a copy in the University Library, printed in 1490.

third, fourth, and fifth chapters of the Latin, and ends at the same point as the fifth chapter, lines 521-4 being additional; see note to l. 214, p. 289. All the more important elucidations of the English version, as obtained by help of the Latin text, are pointed out in the Notes. But it is necessary to add that the "Historia de Preliis" was not the sole text which our translater consulted, and it is tolerably clear that another source was the Latin version of the story of Alexander by Julius Valerius, as shewn in the Notes. Some expressions can be explained by help of the Latin text, called The Letter of Alexander to Aristotle (Epistola Alexandri ad Aristotelem). A copy of this is extant in MS. Cotton, Nero D. 8, fol. 169, and is printed in Narratiunculæ Anglice Conscriptæ, ed. Cockayne, 1861, pp. 51—62; see notes to lines 3782, 3926, 3932, 3944. For further information, I must refer the reader to my preface to William of Palerne, &c., pp. xxxiv and xxxvi, and the notes to the same, pp. 236—249; the preface to Alexander and Dindimus, and the notes to the same; and the notes to the present volume. The development of the Story of Alexander is a most difficult problem, and cannot be fully explained without long and patient research. An excellent book on the subject has just appeared, written by M. Paul Meyer, with the title "Alexandre le Grand dans la Littérature Française du Moyen Age," published at Paris in 1886. It is full of new information, drawn from manuscript sources, and is the more important because many of the MSS. are still inedited. I may here mention, for example, that M. Meyer tells us (p. 294) that the English rimed version of King Alysaunder, as printed in vol. i. of Weber's Metrical Romances, is chiefly taken from the inedited Roman de Toute Chevalerie, by Eustace of Kent.

It is proper to add that there are some words and phrases which point to the occasional use of sources which I have not found; cf. note to l. 5268. Both MSS. are often corrupt, and are merely poor copies of older MSS. The Dublin MS. is, usually, the more careless of the two, but occasionally corrects the other; and the fact that one of the MSS. is often correct where the other is obviously wrong, is not a little curious. As regards proper names, the misspellings are often of the most extraordinary character, and it is useless to guess

at them without at any rate consulting the chief Latin text; and even in that they frequently assume the most singular forms. In the English text, for example, the goddess Ceres becomes a god named *Serenon* (4510), Bacchus appears as *Bary* (4506), Hercules as *Arculious* (4068), and Cyrus as *Cusys* (3219).

§ 13. As to the date and dialect of the original composition, nothing is really known. We can only conjecture that the original was probably written in a pure Northumbrian dialect rather than in West-Midland (but even this may be wrong), and that the version belongs to the former half or to the middle of the fifteenth century. When the barrenness of this period is complained of, as is not unfrequently the case, we ought to remember that, in addition to the poems by known authors, it is probable that such anonymous poems as the Morte Arthure, the Troy-book, and the two versions[1] of Alexander belong to the same period, and compare favourably with the poems by Chaucer's successors. I suspect that the dates usually assigned to other alliterative poems are often too early; and that, for example, the date which I formerly suggested for the other fragments of the Alexander Romance, viz. 1340-50, should be placed later. At the same time, this is a point of extreme difficulty, as the MS. copies are all of later date than the period of the original compositions, and there is no available evidence by which we can correctly judge of the intervals to be assigned.

In the Glossarial Index, we have endeavoured to include every form that occurs in both the MSS., as well as to furnish a complete index of all the proper names. The poem seems to me to be of unusual difficulty. Many of the words could only be correctly explained by collating both MSS.; and others only by comparing the original Latin. Several forms are thus ascertained to be corrupt or inaccurate; and, in consequence, in some passages where there is but one MS. and no clearly corresponding passage in the original, it is very difficult to be quite certain that the correct sense has been given. We consequently offer the explanations for what they are worth; though they have cost a great expenditure of time and labour.

[1] The former is that epic of tremendous length, of which fragments A and B are short relics; and the latter is the version here printed.

ERRATA AND CORRIGENDA.

(The more important corrections are marked with an asterisk.)

P. 9, l. 281. The stop after 'thrid' should be raised, like the rest.
*P. 15, l. 477. *For the second* þe, *read* na. See note on p. 290.
P. 18. l. 554. *Insert a hyphen in* Thonere-thrastis.
,, l. 562. *The same in* bale-fyre.
*P. 19, l. 580. *For* schoutid *read* schontid. See note on p. 290.
P. 20, l. 606. *Read* The tane, to breue [i. e. describe], &c.
,, l. 627. *Insert a comma after* wele.
P. 29, l. 779*. Alter the slanting stroke to a raised full-stop, as in other lines.
P. 32, l. 740. *Insert a comma after* he ; *and transfer the marks of quotation so as to precede* hedirward *instead of* &.
P. 37, l. 798. *Read* þai [þar] wod. See note on p. 293.
*P. 48, l. 988. *Insert a hyphen in* at-flee. See *Atflee* in the Glossary, and in Murray's Dictionary.
P. 50, ll. 1009, 1110. *Insert hyphens in* topp-haris *and* here-wedis. See note on p. 294.
*P. 60, l. 1175. *For* wayne *read* wayue.
P. 72, l. 1370. *Insert a comma after* nere.
P. 91, l. 1650. *Insert a comma after* &, *and alter the stop after* wald *to a comma.* See note on p. 298.
P. 99, l. 1767. *Insert a hyphen in* ouer-sheet. See note, p. 298.
P. 101, footnotes 1 and 4. *The MS. has a stroke over the final* n *in* eughen, dyden.
P. 109, footnote 1. *The MS. has a tag to the final letter of* acoaunt.
P. 110, l. 1970. *For* wella[7] *read* wella[8].
P. 124, footnote 1. *The MS. has a stroke over the final* n *in* layn.
P. 132, fourth side-note. *For* Alexander *read* Strasagoras. See note to l. 2312, p. 302.
P. 147, l. 2519. There should be a line of dots here, to shew that a line is omitted.
*P. 164, l. 2811. *Insert* [of] *before* my warke.
*P. 176, l. 2995. *Insert* [in] *after* fettild, *and add a semi-colon at the end of the line.* See the reading of the Dublin MS.
P. 180, footnotes 4 and 8. *There is a stroke in the MS. over the* n *in the words* ont *and* spilken.
P. 185, l. 3104. The stop at the end of the line should perhaps be a comma.
*P. 204, l. 3426. *For* wayne *read* wayue.
*P. 234, l. 4337. *For* bewenes *read* beweues.
P. 236, l. 4417. *Insert a comma after* sottis. See note on p. 311.
*P. 241, l. 4590. *Delete the commas after* þe *and* lede.
*P. 242, l. 4606. Delete the comma at the end of the line.
,, l. 4620. Insert a comma at the end of the line.
P. 243, l. 4640. Delete the comma after *tecches.* (See note, p. 312.)
,, footnote 1. *The MS. has a stroke over the* n *in* On.
P. 244, l. 4658. *Insert* [in] *after* sett*is*.
,, l. 4665. Alter the stop at the end to a comma.
P. 247, fourth side-note. *Read*—Alexander comes to trees full of fruit. (The trees of the Sun and Moon appear at l. 5003.)
P. 268, fifth side-note. *For* The snakes *read* Some beasts. See note to l. 5433, p. 315.
,, l. 5428. *For* wond *read* woud. *See* Woud *in the* Glossary.
*P. 329. 'Baisting' means 'abasement,' not 'boasting.' It is put for 'baising' (abasing), by confusion with 'baist' (abased). Cf. l. 466.

N.B. A few other suggestions for amending the text will be found in the Notes and Glossarial Index.

[Romance of Alexander the Great.]

[*MS. Ashmole* 44 ; *fol.* 1.]

WHen folk ere festid & fed · fayn̄ wald þai here — After meals, men like to hear a story.
Sum farand þing efter fode · to fayn̄ þare her[t],
Or þai ware fourmed on̄ fold · or þaire fadirs oþer.
Sum is leue to lythe · þe lesing of Sayntis, — Some like to hear legends of saints,
þat lete þer lifis be lorne · for oure lordis[1] sake ; — others lays of love,
And sum has langing of lufe · lays to herken,
How ledis for þaire lemmans · has langor endured.
Sum couettis & has comforth · to carpe & to lestyn̄
Of curtaissy of knyȝthode · of craftis of armys,
Of kyngis at has conquirid · & ouer-comyn̄ landis. — others stories of kings and conquerors.
Sum of wirschip I-wis · slike as þam̄ wyse lattis,
And sum of wantoñ werkis · þa þat ere wild-hedid ;
Bot if þai wald on̄ many wyse · a wondire ware it els ;
For as þaire wittis ere with-in · so þer wiH folowis.
And I forwith ȝow aH · ettillis to schewe — I will try and tell you about the most renowned emperor Alexander.
Of ane Emperoure þe aȝefullest · þat euer armys hauntid,
þat was þe athill Alexsandire · as þe buke tellis,
þat aȝte euyn as his awyn̄ · aH the werd ouire.
For he recouerd quills he regnyd · þe regions aH clene,
And all rialme & þe riches · in-to þe rede est.
I saH rehers, & ȝe wiH, renkis · rekyn ȝour tongis,
A remnant of his rialte · & rist quen vs likis.

¶ Oute in þe erth of Egipt · enhabet vmquile — In the land of Egypt lived the wisest men.
þe wysest wees of the werd · as I in writt fynd.
For þai þe mesure & þe mett · of aH þe mulde couthe,
þe sise of aH þe grete see · & of þe grym̄ wawys ;

[1] MS. lord = lord*is perhaps.*

Of þe ordere of þat odde home · þat ouer þe aire hingis
They knew the courses of the stars, Knew þe kynd, & þe curses · of þe clere sternys, 28
Of Articus the aghiH · tre[1] airis & oþire
Of þe foldᵈ & of þe firmament · wele þe fete cuthe;
[Fol. 1 b.] And Antarticus also · þat all[2] apoñ turnys,
and the signs. Þe pasage of þe planettis · þe poyntis & þe sygnes. 32
Þai ware þe kiddest of þat craft · knawyn iñ þaire tyme,
And þe sotellest vndere son · segis iñ þaire lyfe.
Þus ware þai breued for þe best · as þe buke tellis;
All þai lerid of þat[3] lare · þat it lere waldᵈ. 36
All men heard of their lore. As wide as þe werd was · went worde of þaire teching,
Of sorsery & slike werkis · sleȝtis enogh.
Their king was Anectanabus. And þe kyng of þat contre · was a clerke noble,
Þe athelest ane of þe werdᵈ · & Anec was hatten. 40
He was wyse enoȝe · wirdis to reken,
When he þe heuyn beheldᵈ · of lede[s] opoñ lyfe;
He knew all the japes of geometry. Þe iapis of aH gemetri · gentilli he couth,
And wele as Aristotill · þe artis aH seuyn. 44
Þer preued neuer nane his prik · for passing of witt,
Plato nor Piktagaras · ne Prektane him seluen.
As he sat one day on the daïs, news came that Artaxerxes, king of Persia, had invaded his land. Emang his duykis on a day · as he oñ dese syttis,
Þañ was him bodword vnblyth · broȝt to þe sale, 48
Þat Artaxenses was armed · with þe men of his rewme,
Þe proude king of Persy · to pase him agayñ.
Þoȝe he þa sawis herd say · ȝit samyd he na princis,
Ne ost ordand he nane · of na kyd knyȝtis, 52
Bot airis euen furth him ane · & entirs his chambre,
To knaw by his clergi · þe come of his faa.
He fills a brazen bowl with water, He takis a Boll of bras · burneschid fuH clene,
And fuH he fillis it of the flode · at feH fra þe heuen.
On hiȝt in his a hand[4] · haldis a wandᵈ, 57
and invokes the spirits. And kenely be coniurisons · callis to him spritis.
In-to þis water as he waitis · was he ware sone

[1] So in MS.; *read* athille · thre. [2] MS. *repeats* all.
[3] MS. 'þat o,' *but* o *is expuncted.*
[4] MS. hand hand, *the latter underlined.*

Of his enmys in þat Element · ane endles nombre; 60
He sees his enemies sailing [Fol. 2.] on the sea. He saȝe þaṁ in þe hiȝe see · sailand to-gedire,
Was neuer sene slike a some · vnder þe son bemys.
Carrygis comand he knew · keruand þe ithis,
Dromonds dryfes ouer þe depe · with dukis & Erles, 64
He beholds a great navy. Gales & grete schipis · fuH of grym wapens,
And fuH of breneid bernes · bargis a hundreth,
Of slik a naue is noy · to here or to teH.
For all þe largenes of lenth · at he luke myȝt, 68
The masts were as thick as trees in a wood. Slik was þe multitude of mast · so mekil & so thike,
Þat aH him þoȝt bot he treis · a hare wod it semyd.
At þe enteris of Egipt · as Anec had beden,
Ware peris of his prouynce · & princes of his cytes, 72
Was comandid of þaire kyng · to kepe þa landis,
Þat nane aproche it to paire · of Persy ne othire.
One of his princes sees the fleet come, Þan was a wardañ ware · oute in þe wale stremys
Of all þe naue & þe note · I neuenyd be-fore; 76
Laȝt liȝtly his ledis · & leuys his warde,
Comes to courte to þe kyng · & oñ kneys fallis,
and tells Anectanabus. Anec bi his awyn name · he onane gretis,
Sais, "ȝare þe now ȝapely · or ȝild vp þi rewme; 80
Artaxenses is at hand · & has ane ost reryd,
And resyn vp with aH his rewme · to ride vs agayñ;
"Artaxerxes comes with a great navy; For he him-self is oñ þe se · with siche a somme armedᵈ,
Þat any hathill vnder heueñ · ware hardy to rekyn. 84
For þer is comyñ with him knyȝt[es][1] · of landis dyuerse,
Segis of many syde · oute of sere remys,
Persians and Medes, Þe perseyns & a pupiH · þat parthy[2] is callidᵈ,
Men of Mesepotayme · & of Mede bathe, 88
Of Syre & of Sychim · a selle nounbre,
Cappadocians and Chaldeans, [Fol. 2 b.] Of Capidos & Caldec · kene meñ of armes,
FeH feȝtand folke · þat Faire we caH,
Þe Arrabiens & all þa · [of] þat origyne, 92
Bernys out of Batary · batails arayedᵈ,
and others of the east." And oþire out of þe orient · many od hundrethe."

[1] MS. knyȝt. [2] MS. panthy.

¶ þen Anec onane riȝt · efter þire wordis,
The king laughs. A lowde laȝter he loȝe · & to þe lede said,
"Haue þou na care," quod þe kyng · "bot kepe to þe marche,
As I have demyd þe to do · & dred þou na ferryre;
For soth it is vnsemely[1] · slike sawis of a prynce.
He reproves the prince, and accuses him of cowardice. I kan noȝt knaw at þou carpis · as a knyȝt suld,
Bot as a frek at ware ferid · & feynes riȝt nowe.
Ert þou noȝt hurtles & hale? · lat noȝt þi hert faile.
For vertu vailes noȝt aH · if þou avaied worthe,
Emang' þe multitude[2] of meñ · quare mane ere togeder,
Bot þer aboute as þai ere blend · with bignes of wiH.
If þai be folke bot a fa · oft tydis þam þe better.
Or elis wate þou noȝt wele · þe witles berne,
How it is comonly carped · in contries a-boute,
"Will not a lion put to flight many harts?" þat anelepy leoñ · þat ouer þe land rynnys,
WiH make to fange to þe fliȝt · & flay many hertis?"
With þat þe segge[3] all him selfe · silis to his chambre,
And in þe brasen boH · fuH [of] blak watere
He makes little ships of wax, He shapis him of shire wax · litiH schipis many,
And ȝapely ȝarkid in his hand · a ȝerd of a palme.
þen coñ he chater & enchant · with aH his chefe miȝtis,
A-vysid him in þe vesseH · & was avaied sone,
and sees how the Persians are defeating his own men. How þe powere out of Persy · pellid doune his knyȝtis,
[Fol. 3.] And how his land suld be lost · withouten lett mare.
When he was ware of þis wathe · how it worthe suld,
þan wendis he wiȝtly furth · & his wede changis,
Then he disguises himself as a clerk, Clede him aH as a clerke · & his croune shauys,
And with a bytand blade · he his bered voydis.
þen takis to him tresour · & trusses in baggis,
As many Besandis oñ his bake · as he bere miȝt,
and takes with him all things that he requires. And oþire necessari notis · as nedis to his craftis,
To sike salmary dangeH · as him self vyses.
He toke traimmes him with · to tute in þe sternes,

[1] MS. vmsemely. [2] MS. multitudo.
[3] MS. 'gegge,' but the line is marked for correction.

Astralabus[1] algate · as his arte wald,
Quadrentis[2] coruen aH of quyte · siluyre fuH quaynte,
Mustours & mekil quat · mare þen a littiH.
When he was graþed with his gere · a gladen he waytis,
He slips out at a postern gate. And passis furþe at a Posterne · preualy alane,
Furþe on his fete withouten fole · he passis his way,
Vn-wetandly to any wee · þat wont in his wanes.
and leaves Egypt. þus airis he out of Egipte · & his erde leuys,
Fled for ferd of his fais · fere fra his kythis,
It was na bote him to bide · ne batiH to ȝelde;
For all his kyngdome he knew · suld be kast vnder.
Fra þe partis of Persy · he past bot a littiH,
And euyn so þurȝe Ethyope · & þar him eft clethis,
He clothes himself as a prophet, aH his liche in lyn claþe · for ledis suld trowe
And all þe puple persayue · a prophete[3] he were.
and goes to Macedonia. þeñ metis he furthe to Messadoñ · fuH vñ-mete gatis,
And quen he come to þat kith · as þe chance tellis,
Oft with his instrumentis out · he openly deuynes,
And noþer hild he it ne hid · bot here qua sa likid.
Bot þan was methe[4] for to mele · þurȝe men of his burȝ,
[Fol. 3 b.] þat he by-hind him at hame · without hede leuyd.
His subjects miss him, and lament. Slik care kindils in his curte · quen þai þer kyng myssid,
þat it ware tere any tonge · of þar tene to reken;
Princes of his palas · preses in-to chambre,
To laite þar lord at was lost · with latis vn-blythe;
Knights and earls seek their king. Kairis in-to closettis · knyȝtis & Erlis,
Sekand þar souerayñ · with many salt terys;
Barons & bachelers · balefully gretis,
Swiers swemyle · swouned ladys,
And many was þe bald berne · at banned þar quile,
þat euer he dured þat day · vndede opon erthe.
Finding he is gone, Bot quen þai wist he was went · & wald noȝt be foun,
Couth þai na bote þam ebland · how best for to wirke,
they ask counsel Bot silis to ser Sirraphis · at sittis in his trone,

[1] MS. Astralalus. [2] MS. In adrentes.
[3] MS. proplete. [4] *or* meche.

of Serapis their god.

Þat was *þar* god alþire-*gray*thist · oñ þe ground samen.
Him þai supplyed & soȝt · & him ensence cast*is*,
Honou*r*d him *with* offyrings · & elkend him fayre,
Þat he suld say þam̃ þe sothe · & sorely þam teche
Queder þaire kyng was becomeñ · at *þar* care kyndils.

Serapis says, "Your king is gone.

Þan sayd Syraphis him selfe · he sayd þam *þir* wordis:
"Anec, ȝou*r* athill kyng · is out of his awyn land,
For Artaxenses aȝe · is aH him̃ ane foundid,
Þe proude kyng of Persee · *þat* passes vs a-gaynes.

He knew the Persians would conquer.

FuH wele he wist, or he went · q*uat* suld worþe efter,
And aH þe fourme of þe fare · þat faH ȝow be-houys.
For aH þe erth of Egipt · fra end vñ-to othire
Bees conquirid & ouercomyn · clene alto-gedre.

[Fol. 4.]

Þe puple out of Perse · is purvaid aH samen;

Artaxerxes will come and take the kingdom.

Þe kyng is comand fuH kene · *with* his kene ost*is*,
Þat saH oure renk*is* aH rayme · & oure rewme bathe,
And we be aH at þare wiH · þus is wirdis schapen.
Sen it is sett to be soo · & slipe it ne may,
Ne schewid to be na noþire schap̃ · ne we to schount nouthire,
Bot gefe þai*m* vp þe girdiH · vs gaynes noȝt ellis.

But cease from your sorrow.

Bot seses, seris, of ȝou*r* syte · & soruȝes na mare;
For certayñ," q*uod* Syraphis · "my-selfe I it knawe,
ȝou*r* king saH in a noþire kithe · kast out his elde,
And come a-gayñ eft ȝonge man · ȝit to his rewme.

Your king will yet avenge you,

Þañ sall þat victoure ȝow venge · oñ ȝou*r* vile fais,
And þe province of Persee · purely distruye,

and regain the kingdom."

And gett agayñ his avyñ gronde · at he forgais nowe,
And ane of þe oddist Emperours · of þe werde worthe."
¶ When he þis talis had tald · þen tuke þai be-lyfe,

They raise an image of black stone to Anectanabus.

And efter Anec on-ane · ane ymage gert make;
Þe buke sais, of blake stane · aH þe bode ouyre,
With corone & *with* conyschant*is* · as it a kynge were.
Quen it was perfite & piȝt · a place þai it wayted,
And stallid him in a stoute stede · & stiȝthed him faire.
Lordis lift him oñ loft · & lawe to him bowid,

In reuerence of þe riche kyng · at had *þer* rewme gydid.
Quen he was semely vp set · *with* septour in hand,

At the feet of the image is written the prophecy of Serapis.

Þen ledis at ware lettird · oñ lawe at his feet[1]
AH þe sawis of þaire Syre · as Siraphis tald,
Þare gañ þai graithly þam̃ graue · in golden lettirs,
AH þe wordis at he þaim werpid · of þaire ware kynge.
Þare þai wrate þam I-wis · as þe buke tellis,
Supposand þaim in sum tyme · for sothe to be knawen,
And men to make of þam̃ mynd · euer-mare efter.

The Persians attack them;

Be þat þaire enmes þar erde · was entird *with*-in,
Þe powere oute of Persee · *with* many proude ostes;
Bot of þar batails to brefe · it botis me na ferrire.

[Fol. 4 *b*.] and conquer.

For aH þai conquirid clene · þis cithe at þaire wiH,
And Anec[2] is aH his ane · ferre of his awyñ landis,
With-in þe merris of Messedoyñ · þar na mañ him knewe.

I will tell you more about Anectanabus.

Bot will ȝe herken hende · now saH ȝe here
How he kide him in þe courete · & quayntid him *with* ladis.

¶ Secundus passus Alexandri.

Syre, it be-tid oñ a tyme · þe text me recordis,
Þat þe mode kynge of Messedone · *with* mekiH nounbre,

King Philip leaves Macedon to fight his foes.

Þat was sire Philip̃ þe fers · farne out of toune,
For to feȝt *with* his fais · out of fere landis.
Quen he was boune oute of burȝe · & his bake turned,
As tite as Anec him amed · out of his awyn kythe,
He paste vp to þe Palais · & preualy entirs,
Þat he miȝt lend þare on loft · & luke on þe qwene.

Anectanabus arrives, and salutes queen Olympias.

Sone as him selfe was in þe sale · & saȝe hire *with* eȝe,
He beheld Olympadas · þat honourable lady;
Hire bewte bitis in his brest · & his bodi thrillis,
And drifes thurȝe his depe hert · as he ware dart-wondid.

[1] MS. fortes; *cf.* 'at his feete' *in* Alex. A. 570. [2] MS. Anes.

Þe lede lawid in hire lofe · as leme dose of gledis,
Put vp his hand to his hare · & heldid it bot littiH.
"Haile, modi qwene of Messidoyne" · he maister-like
saidꝺ ;
Þare deyned him na daynte · 'madame' hire to caH,
Be-cause he knew him a kyng · he carpid oñ Þis wyse.
For if he come as A clerke · *with* a croune schauyn,
And diȝt as a Doctour · in drabland wedis,
ȝit aH Þe erth of Egipt · had he bene aire ouire.
Þan answars hiñ Þe qwene · *with* fuH myld speche,
"Haile, maister," *quod* Þat myld · & made him to sytt
On a sege hire be-syde · of silkyn clathis,
And Þar hire spakid *with* his speche · & spird of hiñ
wordis.
Quen he was sete in his sete · Þat semely qwene
Ai of Egipt erd · enquirid if he were,
Þoȝt him like of Þat lede · be langage & othire ;
For-Þi scho wetis if he wald · wete hire to say.
"A ! athel qwene," *quod* Anec · "ai be Þou ioyed !
If Þou a wirschipfuH worde · has werpid & spoken,
A riaH roune Þou me redis[1] · a resoñ of blis,
Quen Þou mynnys of Þat marche · & *with* Þi mouth tellis.
For Þare enhabetis in Þat erd · Þat Þou are sayd.
Þe wisest wees iñ Þis werd · Þe welken vndire.
For Þai cañ swyth of a sweuyñ · all Þe swepe teH,
WheÞire it be sele or soroȝe · in a sete quile,
And Þai can certifi & se · by sygnes of Þe heuyñ,
Quat sall be-fall a-pon fold · *with*-inen a fewe ȝerys.
Sum vndirstandis in a stounde · Þe steuen of Þe briddis,
To say Þe by Þar sapience · quat Þar sange menys ;
Sum cañ Þi consaile declare · Þofe Þou it carpid neuire,
Þe poyntis of all Þi preuates · pertly cañ schewe.
Sum cañ Þe brefe be-life · Þe birth of Þine childire,
Be it hee, be [it] scho · haly Þare werdes.
And if I say it my-selfe · slik sotellte I haue,

"Hail, queen!" he said.

He did not call her madam.

The queen replies, "Hail, master!"

She asks if he is of Egypt.

[Fol. 5.]

"I am glad to hear you speak of Egypt.

There dwell the wisest men of the earth.

They can read the stars, and understand the song of birds.

I myself have some skill."

[1] MS. redis a redis ; *the two latter words underlined.*

Sa clere a witt & sa clene · my creatoure I lofe,
Þat all Þe notis at I neuyn · nobly I cañ,
As any prophet a-perte · to proue ȝow Þe sothe."
Quen he Þire sawis had sayd · he in his sege lened,
In stody stiH as a stane · & starid in hire face,
Beheld haterly Þat hend · Þat had his hert percid,
With depe desire of delite · ay on Þat dere waytis.
Sone as hire selfe it sawe · at he hire sa behaldis,
Þen scho talkis him to · & titely him fraynes :
"Quare-on muse ȝe sa mekiH, maister?" scho sayd ;
"ȝe behald me sa hogely · quare-oñ is ȝour mynd?"
"My frely fode," *quod* Þe freke · "noȝt bot Þe werdes
Of my gracious goddis · Þe grettest on erde.
Þai haue tald me be-for Þis tyme · Þat now I trew fynd,
How I suld[1] lenge in a land · & loke oñ a qwene."
Þan out of his bosoñ he brayd · a blesand table
Of Euour & of othire Þingis · odly fourmed,
Of bras & of brynt gold · & o[f] briȝt siluer,
Þat thre serclis sere · in it selfe had.
In Þe first compas I ken · as me Þe claus tellis,
Stude Þe xij vndirstandings · stoutly engrauen.
In Þis oÞir draȝt ware deuysid · a dusan of bestis,
And semely sett was in Þe thrid . Þe soñ & Þe mone.
Sethen he clekis out of a cas · vij clere sternes
To tell him takens of Þe tymes · & talis of our werdis ;
And vij stele-grauyn stanys · & stoute oÞire tway,
Þat wald for hurte or for harme · any hathill kepe.
Þus as he tuke furth his toylis · & his trammys[2] schewis,
"If I saH lefe on Þi lare" · *quod* Þe leue qwene,
"Say me Þe day & Þe same ȝere · & Þe selfe tyme
Of Þe birth of Þe bald kyng · Þat I best lufe."
Þan answars Anec onane · sayd, "is Þar oȝt ellis
At ȝe wald, hend, of me here · or at ȝoure hert willis?
For any cas Þat is to com[3] · to knaw if Þe likis,

He stares on the queen's face.

When she notices this, she asks him of what he is thinking.

"I am thinking of what my gods have foretold."

[Fol. 5 b.] He takes out a table,

marked with three circles. In the first stood the twelve 'understandings;' in the second, the twelve signs;

in the third, the sun and moon.

As he shews his implements, the queen asks him to tell her when Philip was born.

He says he can tell her anything.

[1] MS. I suld I suld ; *the two latter words underlined.*
[2] MS. tranmys. [3] MS. con.

I saH as namely 3ow neuyñ · as it ware nowe done."

"Then tell me what shall happen to me and Philip."

"Þan will I," *quod* Þe wale qwene · "3e wete me to say,
Quat me & Philip · sall faH vs be-twene.
For, bow he fra Þe bataiH · bernys me teH,
Þen wiH he wed anoÞire wife · & wayfe me for euer."

"He will not long have another queen, but will return to you."

"Nay, no3t for ay," *quod* Þe freke · "Þar haue Þai fals spoken;
Neuer Þe latter, or o3t lange · saH lymp̄ as Þou sayd.[1]
Bot 3it I fynd, for all his fare · fleme he saH Þe toÞire,
And wild 3our self to wiH · nyH he so wiH he."

[Fol. 6.]

Þan was a-wondird of his wordis · Þe worthe lady,
Be-so3t sekirly Þis sire · if he safe vouchid,
Þat scho my3t weterly wete · Þe wiH of all Þingis,

He continues,

Quatkyn poynt or plyte · predestend hire were.

"One of our greatest gods will descend to you."

"AthiH qwene," *quod* Anec · "as I am enfourmed,
Ane of Þe grettist of oure godis · of grace & of mi3t,
I fynd, or it be fere · to[2] fleschely Þe knaw,
And efter in all aduersites · is amed Þe to help."
Þan sayd Olympadas · "now, honourable maister,

"In what form will he come?"

I be-seke Þe, my sire · if Þou me say wald,
Quatkyn fygour on fold · or fourme at he beris,
Þat demyd is or destaned · Þis dede for to worche."
"Þat wiH I wele," *quod* Þe wee · "& no3t a word le3e.

"He is of middle age.

Þis my3ty god at I me[ne] · is of a mediH age,
No3t of 3outh nor of eld · nor 3erris to many,
Bot euyn so be-twene twa · & to [mekyll] of nouthire.

He has two horns on his head,

How he is merkid & made · is mervaile to neuyn,
With—tachid in his for-top̄— · twa tufe[3] hornes;
A berd as a beson̄ · with thyn bred haris,

and a mouth like a mastiff.

A mouthe as a mastif[4] hunde · vn-metely to shaw.
Bot, dame, if he be Þus di3t · drede Þe neuer Þe more,
Bot 3e be buxsom & bayne · & boune to his wiH.
Be ny3ter-tale he saH Þe ne3e · Þis note to begyñ,

[1] Line 300 precedes l. 299 in the MS., but they are marked for transposition.
[2] MS. to Þe; *with* Þe *underlined.*
[3] haris *inserted here, but struck out.* [4] MS. mastis.

And 3e be merryd neuer Þe mare · bot mete him in sweuyn."

"Be not afraid."

"Now certayñ, sire," sayd Þe qwene · "selly me thinke.
Bot may I se Þis be sothe · at 3e me say here,

"If this turn out true,

No3t as a prophet ne a prest · I prays saH Þi selfe,
Bot rehers Þe as hie3e gode · & hie Þe for euire."

I will honour thee as a god."

With Þat rysis vp Þe renke · & his rowme lefys,

Anectanabus takes his leave.

La3t leue at Þe qwene · for a litiH quile,
Gase him doune be Þe grecis · a-gayñ fra Þe sale,
Furthe to make his maistryse · & mose in his arte.

¶ Þus passis he fra Þe place · to proue his sle3tis,

[Fol. 6 *b.*]

Silis furth all him selfe · Þe cyte with-outen,

He goes into a desert, and picks herbs.

Drafe in-to a depe dissert · & drewe vp herbis,
Þe chosest for inchantement · at he chese couthe.
Quen he had gedird his grese · & grune Þaim esundire,
For Iapis of his gemetry · Þe ious out he wrengis,
Erne tiH exor3ise · & ethis euer elike,
Þat it suld worthe as he wald · & oñ na way faile.

He begins to conjure, that the queen may see Ammon in her sleep.

He clatird oñ coniurisons · & calid to him deuyls,
And aH Þe inchesoñ of his charme · with Þat Þe chefe qwene
Þe same ny3t in hire slep · suld se with hire e3en
Amoñ hire awyn god · in hire armes ligge,
And dreme at he didd hire swa · & quen he done hadd,
Þan suld he say to hire-selfe · sadly Þire wordis,

Next morning the queen tells her dream.

"Now has Þou, woman, I-wys · with-in Þi twa sydis
Consayued him at in aH Þi care · Þi cors saH defend."
Þis ilk euyn ouer-3ede · & arly oñ Þe morne,
As arly as Þe riche qwene · was resyn fra slep̄e,
Þan efter Anec[1] oñ-ane · scho al aboute sendis,
Takis him betwene Þam̄ twa · tald him hire sweuyn.

He asks to be allowed to have a room in the palace.

"3a," *quod* he, "comly qwene · I couthe, & Þou wald
Preualy in Þi palais · lat me a place haue,
Make Þe to se Þe same gode · & Þi-selfe wakand,
Face to face aH his fourme · & his effecte clene.

[1] MS. Anes.

Þis grete god fuH of *grace* · saH glide to Þi chambr*e*,
In a dredfuH deuys · a dragons fo*ur*me,
And Þan Þe figo*ur* of a freke · he saH take eftir*e*,
And p*r*eualy in Þat p*ar*t · a-pere ȝowe be-forne."

The queen grants it.

Þan answars him Þe swete quene · & sone him it gr*antis*,
"Sir*e*, chese Þe a chambr*e* · quar*e* Þe chefe Þink*is*,

[Fol. 7.]

NowÞir*e* myne awen ne na nothir*e* · god lat Þe noȝt spare,
Or any place at ȝow plece · my palas w*ith*-in.

"If it turn out true, I will cherish thee as if thou wert my child."

For may Þou hald me Þis hest · as Þou her*e* tellis,
And profe Þus in my p*r*esens · as a p*r*opir*e* sothe,
Þen saH I cherische Þe w*ith* cher*e* · as Þou my child were,
Loute Þe louely & loue · aH my lyfe days."
"Graunt m*er*cy," q*uod* Þe grete clerke · to Þe gude lady,

He chooses a place for himself.

Thankis[1] hir*e* fuH thraly · & Þen forth wendis
To loke & layte him a loge · q*ua*re he lenge myȝt*e*,[2]
And buske him a bedsted · q*ua*re him best likid.
Qwen it was metyn to Þe merke · Þat m*en* war*e* to ryst,
And folke was on Þair*e* firste slepe · & it was furth euy*n*s,
Þan Anec oñ ane · his artis he fandis,

Next night he enchants himself into the form of a dragon,

And changid by enchantment*is* · his cher*e* aH to-gedir*e*.
Þ*er* worthid he by his wiche-craft · in-to a wild dragoñ,
And to the ladi lere · he lendid in haste,

and flies to the queen.

Fliȝand in his fethir*e*-hames · & ferly fast slet*is*,
And in a braide, or he blan · he Þe bed entris.

He then becomes a man again.

Quen he was[3] laide be-lyfe · his liknes he chang*is*,
Worthis agayñ to a wee · fra a worme turnys.
Þen kisses he kenely Þe quene · & clappis in armes,
Langis sare to Þe layke · & on-loft worthis.
Quen he had wroȝt aH his wiH · hir*e* wame Þ*en* he touches,

He prophesies that her son will conquer all the world.

And w*ith* a renyst reryd · Þis reson he saiD,
"Þis concepcion w*ith* kyng*is* · sal be callid her*e*-eft*er*

[1] MS. Thangis, *altered to* Thankis.
[2] MS. myȝt*es*. [3] MS. he was he was, *but corrected*.

A verra victor a-vansiD · w*ith* aH Þe vayne werde."
Þus be-gylid he this gude wyfe · & mak*is* hir*e* to wene
It war*e* na gett of *n*a gome · bot of god ane.
Qwen Þe day-raw rase · he rysis be-lyfe,

At daybreak he leaves her.

Lendis a-lande fra Þe loft · & left hir*e* w*ith* childD.
Sone as hir*e* bele gun bolne · aH hir*e* blee changis,[1]
So was scho ferD & a-friȝt · a ferly war*e* ellis.

[Fol. 7 *b*.]

To be bonden w*ith* barne · mekill bale to hir*e* neȝehis,
For it & Philip hir*e* fere · o-ferrom was sybb.
Þan Anec hir*e* awyn clerke · scho on-ane callis,

The queen laments, and asks for advice.

"Lo, maist*er*, slike a myschefe!" · & mayñly hir*e* pleynes.
"I dred Þ*at* I ner*e* dee · bot ȝe me deme sone
Quat me is beste of Þis case · if eu*er* Þe kyng t*ur*ne."
"Be noȝt a-bayste," q*uod* Þe berne · "ne a-bleyd nothir*e*,

"No harm shall come to you;

Þar*e* saH na chanche Þe chefe · Þe charge of a pese.
For Amoñ our*e* athiH gode · saH aH-way Þe helpe,

Ammon will aid you."

And kepe Þe fuH careles · if any cas fallis."

¶ Quat dose now Þis diuino*ur* · bot to desert wendis,

The enchanter again goes to the desert, and picks herbs.

Airis on aH himm ane · out of Þe cite,
ȝede him furthe eftirsons · herbis to seche,
Reft Þam[2] vp be Þe rot*is* · & radly Þam̄ stampis.
Þe Iuse for his gemetry[3] · Þat Ioglour*e* takis,
A[nd] sythen[4] a brid of Þe see · him seluyn him fang*is*,

He anoints a sea-bird with their juice.

Clatirs to hyr*e* coynte Þingis · kenely enchant*is*,
And [with] Þe wose of Þe wede · hir*e* wengis anoynt*is*;
And all Þis demerlayke he diD · bot be Þe deuyll*is* craft*is*,
How he myȝt compas & kast · Þe kynge to begyle.

Hear how he beguiled Philip.

He wroȝt a wondirfuH wile · & wiH ȝe now here
How he be-glouirD Þis gome · & gilid him iñ sweuy*n*?
Þis ilk Philip̄ Þe fyrs · Þ*at* in Þe fiȝt lenges,

Philip dreams

Þe same nyȝt in his slepe · he saȝe, as him thoȝt,

that he sees the

[1] MS. g changis (*sic*). [2] MS. him, *copied from line above*.
[3] MS. gremetry. [4] MS. cythen.

queen in Ammon's arms;

Amon his awen god · in armes *with* his qwene,
And make *with* hire market · as [he] a man were.
And quen he wroȝt had his wiH · þen witrely him met*is*,
þ*at* he bowes to hire belechiste · & bigly it sewys,

and that Ammon seals her with a ring,

And sethen asselis it him selfe · semely & faire
W*ith* a rede golde rynge · on þis aray g*ra*yuyn ;
A lyons heuyd was on-loft · louely coruyñ ;

[Fol. 8.]

þe bounde of a briȝt son · & a brande kene.

telling her she has conceived her defender.

And þen he went furth his way · sayd, "woman, þ*ou* hauys
þi fuH defendour*e* oñ fold · now frely consa[u]yd."
Als radly as þe riche kyng · rase oñ þe morne,

Philip calls a seer,

Riȝt in þe dawyng of day · a diuino*ur* he callis,
And as him dremyd ilke a dele · þ*at* doctou*r* he tellis,
And fraynes him fast on þis fare · how it be-faH suld.

who tells him the queen is with child,

"Phylip," q*uod* þe phylysofyre · "þi fere is w*ith* childe,
And w*ith* no gett of na gome · bot of god selfe.
And, gudman, [on] þe gold rynge · þe thre g*ra*u*en* thyng*is*,[1]
þai ere þus mekiH to mene · as me my mynd tellis.

who will be like a lion,

To þe lyoñ hede," q*uod* þe lede · "þen licken I, oñ first,
þe birth þ*at* scho bere saH · als best it be-semys,
þ*at* chefe saH to a chiftañ · & slike a chefe maist*er*,
As to be halden heuydman[2] · of aH þe hale werde.
Now saH I clerily declare · þe course oñ þe son*ne* ;
þ*at* sygnyfys þe[3] same mañ · þ*at* sett is, be wird,

and will pass over all the world to the far east;

So many p*ro*uynce to pas · þuȝe p*ro*wis of armys,
þ*at* he saH hit w*ith* his hede · in-to þe heghe est.
Now[4] of þis bytand brand · berne, wiH ȝe here ;

with sword in hand he will conquer all.

And aH is bot þis hathiH mañ · as I are sayd,
þ*at* saH sa fele men afray · w*ith* fauchoñ in hande,
And out of nounbr*e* to neuyn · of nacions wynñ."
þan foundis Philip to þe fyȝt · & þe fild entres,

[1] MS. y thynge*s* (*sic*). [2] MS. heuysdman. [3] ma *inserted, but struck out.* [4] MS. W Now ; *with* W *expuncted.*

A dragon appears, and strikes down Philip's foes.

And sone in deling*is* of dynt*is* · a dragoñ aperis,
þ*at* streȝt be-for him in þe stoure · strik*is* doune his faas,
And aH his enmys in þ*at* erd · he endid in a stounde.

Philip returns to Macedon, and greets the queen.

When Phylyp w*ith* his faire folke · had þe fild woñ,
þañ metis he him to Messadone · þ*ar* metis him þe qwene,
Kyssis comly hire king · & of his come ioys,
And how he fore scho him fraynes · ferly ȝerne.

[Fol. 8 b.]

"Wele, g*ra*unt m*er*cy," q*uod* þe kyng · "my god, I him loue ;
Bot how þ*at* ȝe ga sa[1] grete · gud dame?" he sayd.

He enquires how she does,

þou has ragid," q*uod* þe renge · "w*ith* vnryd gestis ;
Now hafe I, lede, aH to lange · lengid fra hame."
þus to bre hire o bourde · he breuys þire wordis ;
"To q*ua*m has þou þe tane tiH · teH m[e] þe sothe?

and of her condition.

Outhire mete has mendid þe fuH mekiH · as may I noȝt trowe,
Or ane has stollen in my stede · sen I was stad þare."
þus bayst he þe briȝt qwene · þ*at* aH hire ble changid,

The queen is ashamed.

To skyre skarlet hewe · skyft*is* hire face,
Hire chere at was chalke-quyte · as any chaffe[2] worthis ;
So was scho schamed of þe schont · þ*at* hire þe schalk made.

Philip comforts her,

"Nay, q*uod* þe comly kyng · "cache vp þine hert,
þofe þou haue forfet, na force · so has fele othire.
þou has giltid, bot noȝt gretly · it greuys me þe les;
For god has geten þe þis gett · a-gaynes þi wiH ;

telling her he has seen all in a dream.

All þ*at* was done þe bedene · was me be dreme schewyd,
I saȝe it surely as my-selfe · slepe in my tent*is*,
And oure god aH-to-gedire · is ground of þe cause ;
Of me worthis þe þe[3] wite · ne of na wee ellis."

One day, at a feast,

¶ þen tyd it anes oñ a tym · a lytiH t*er*me eft*er*,
þis dere kyng oñ a day · oñ his dese sytt*is*,
Had p*ar*reld him a proude feste · of princes & dukis,

[1] MS. *repeats* ga sa. [2] *Or* chasse. [3] *Read* na.

With maisterlingis of Messadone · & many oþire noble[s].

he sits beside the queen. Þus as he sat in his sete · softly by his qwene,
In schene schemerand schroude · aH of schire stanes,
He kest vp his contenance · & knyȝtly he lokes,
And gladis gudly his gestis · as his degre waldʳ.

Anectanabus appears in a [Fol. 9.] dragon's form, Þañ Anec[t]anabus on-ane · in alþire-mast ioy
Did oñ him his dragoñ-hame · & drafe thurȝe þe sale,
With slike a rowste & rerid · þe romance it wittnes,
Þat nere had bernes for þat bere · bene broȝt out of witt.
He was sa hatter & sa hoge · quen he þe haH entirdʳ,
Lete sa lathely a late · & sa loude criedʳ,
Þat aH þe fest was a-ferdʳ · & oþire folke bathe.

goes to the queen, and salutes her. To þe chefe chaiare of þe qwene · he chese him be-lyue,
And laide as hendly as a hunde · his hede in hire arme,
Seþin kyssis he hire clene mouthe · enclynes hire lawe,
And braydis furth with a brymm̃ bere · out at þe brade ȝatis.

Philip recognises the dragon. Þen sayd Philipp̃ to his fere · & aH his fre gestis,
"Ȝone selfe dragoñ forsothe · I saȝe with myne eȝeñ;
Quen I was stad in þe stoure · he strenthid aH myne oste,
And þar þe floure in þe filde · I fangid þurȝe him selfe."

Soon after befell another prodigy. Anoþire ferly þar feH · within fewe days,
Þe king was sett in his sale · with septer in handʳ;

A bird comes, Þen come þar-in a litiH bridʳ · in-to his arme floȝe,
And þar hurkils & hydis · as scho were hand-tame;
Fast scho flekirs about his fete · & fleȝtirs aboute,
And þar it nestild in a noke · as it a nest were,

who lays an egg in Philip's lap. QwiH scho had layd in his lapp̃e · a litiH tyne egg,
And þan scho fangis hire fliȝt · & floȝe away swyth.

The egg falls, and breaks; a serpent comes out, and soon dies. Þis egg, or þe kyng wyst · to þe erth fallis,
Brak, & so it wele burde · & brast aH e-soundir;
Þan wendis þar-out a litiH worm · & wald it eft enter,
And or scho hit in hire hede · a hard deth suffirs.

Þañ was ser Philipp̃ of þat fare · ferly mekiH sturbidʳ,
Callis to him a kid clerke · declaris to him þis wonder,
Besoȝt him quat it sygnifiedʳ · to teH him þe treuthe. [Fol. 9 b.]

A seer says, "þat graunt I gudly," quod þe gome · & þus-gate he spekis:

"Your queen's son shall conquer all the earth, and then die before returning home." "Sire, þere saH borne be a barne · of þi blithe lady,
Þat driȝtyn efter þi day · has destaned to regne,
Þe quilke sall walke aH þe werdʳ · & wyn̄ it him selfe,
And hent saH a fuH hetire deth[1] · or he may hame couer."
Þus he vndid him ilka dele[2] · & him þe dome reched,
Said it was sett to be so · he saȝe by his artis.
And if ȝow likis of þis lare · to lesten any forthire,
Sone saH I teH ȝow a text · how it be-tidʳ efter.

¶ Tercius passus Alexandri.

The queen's time of travail draws nigh. Now it teȝt þe tyme · at traualdʳ þat qwene,
Quen scho suld bryng furth · hire birth to þe werd.
Scho bidis many hard brayde · baret enduris,
What of wandreth & wa · as wemen dose aH.

She suffers much, Thik schouris hire thrat · tholid mekiH soroȝe,
Many peralus pull · grete payne suffirs,
Sa sare werkis hire þe wame · & slik vn̄-wyn dreis,

and expects death Þat all scho dredis hire dede · & doute for þe werst.
Þan efter Anectanabus · scho on-ane clepis,
And he was boune at hire bode · & bowes to hire chambre,

Anectanabus comes and greets her. Gais him vp at þe grece · & gretis him̄ faire,
Fand hire sett in a sege · & soroȝe ay elike.

The queen laments. "A! Anec!" quod þe qwene · "me arȝes of my-selfe;
I am aH in aunter · sa akis me þe wame,
Of werke weH ne I wede · & slike wa tholis,
Þat me ware dere to be dede · &[3] dure þus on lyfe."

[Fol. 10.] "The moment is inauspicious," he says. "ȝa, wynnes ȝow vp," quod þe we · "& walkis a littiH,

[1] MS. derth; *see* l. 512. [2] MS. ilka adele; *wrongly*. [3] *Read* than.

For þe aire nowe & þe element*is* · ere evyn in þis tyme
So *tra*uailid out of temp*er*oure · & troubild of þ*at* sone,
þ*at* mak*is* þi grippis and þi gridis · a grete dele þe kenere."

She walks about. Þan faris scho vp & farkis furth · a fute or tway,
And sone sesis aH hire syte · in a sete quyle.

At last she rests, and Alexander is born. "Now bow þe doune," q*uod* þe berne · & scho his bone fillis,
And syttand so in[1] hire sege · was softly delyu*er*d.
Bot now is m*er*uaiH · to me[2] of þis wondire,
Que*n* þis man fra his modire wambe · on þe mold feH;

The earth quakes. For all þe erd euyn ou*er* · sa egirly schakis,
þ*at* teldis, templis, & touris · tomble on hepis.

There is lightning and thunder. þe liȝt lemand late · laschis fra þe heuyn,
Thone*r*e thrastis ware thra · thristid þe welkyn,
Cloudis clenely to-clefe · clatird vn-faire,
All blakenid a-boute · & boris þe soñ.

The wind arises. Wild wedirs vp werpe · & þe wynd ryse,
And aH[3] flames þe flode · as it fire were,
Nowe briȝt, nowe blaa · nowe oñ blase eft*er*,
And þan ou*er*-qwelmys in a qwirre · & qwat*is* eu*er* e-like.

There is great darkness. Þan slike a derknes[4] þ*ar* drafe · & demyd þe skewys,
As blesenand as bale fyre · & blake as þe heH,
þ*at* it was neu*er* bot as nyȝt · fra þe none tyme
Till it to mydday was meten · oñ þe morne eft*er*.

Gife þis ware mervale to myñ · ȝet emang' othire

Stones fall from the sky. þen rekils it vnruydly · & raynes doune stanys,
FeH fra þe fyrmament · as a hand lyftyng',

[Fol. 10 *b*.] And some as hoge as þi hede · fra þe heuyn fallis.
Sa ferd was Philip̄ of þ*at* fare · þ*at* his flesche trymblid,
For sere sygnes at he saȝe · as selly ware ellis.

All the world is warned. As wyde as aH þe werd was þurȝe · warnyng þai hadd,

[1] *Added in the margin.* [2] MS. to me to me ; *but corrected.* [3] a *in text ; but* alle *in margin.* [4] MS. dreknes.

þ*at*[1] houre þ*at* Olympadas · was of hire soñ liȝt*er*.
Than lendis him vp̄ þe leue kyng · his lady to vysite,

Philip comforts Olympias. Q*uod* þe man to his make · "I am in many thoȝtis,
þ*at* þis frute saH haue na fostring · ne be fed nouþ*ire* ;
I ges it be noȝt of my gett · bot of god fo*ur*med ;
Be many cause at I keñ · I kan noȝt supose
It be consayued of my kynde · ne come of my-selfe.
I saȝe so, in þe same tyme · he seuyrd fra þi wambe,
þe erd & aH þe element*is* · so egirly schoutid.[2]

Philip advises that her son should be nourished as his own. And queþ*er* ȝit, for any quat · a quyle latt him kepe,
And norisch̄ him as namely · as he myne awyn warre,
ȝit wiH þare make of him mynde · & myn it here-eftire
Hathils, swilke a haly soñ · I hade in my tyme.
Anoþ*er* barne," q*uod* þe berne · "I of my blode haue,
Ane of my sede, I supose · & sibbire of þe twa,
þ*at* I wan on myne oþire wyfe · þ*at* I wedd first.

"Let my first son be my heir, Lat him as ayre, quen I am erþed · enherit my landis,
And staH we him in stede of þis · to stiȝtiH my rewme,
For he is borne of my blode · & a-bore nerre,
And fede we þis othire, þ*at*[3] folke · quen we ere fay worthid,
May sitt & carpe, slike a knaue · þaire last kyng hade."

and let this other be well taken care of." þai did all as he demed · & his domes plesed,
Cherest þai þis ȝonge child · & chosely him kepid ;

The ladies cherish the infant. þai ware as besy him a-boute · birdis & ladis,
As he had bene þ*ar* hiȝe god · for sa þai hopid aH,
þis barne, quen he borne was · as me þe boke tellis,
Miȝt wele a-prefe[4] for his a-port · to any prince oute.
Bot of þe lyfe þ*at* he liȝt off · he like was to nane,
Nouþ*er* of fetou*r* ne of face · to fadire ne to modyre ; [Fol. 11.]

His hair was like lion's locks, þe fax on his faire hede · was ferly to schawe,
Large lyons lockis · þ*at* lange ere & scharpe ;
W*ith* grete glesenand eȝen · grymly he lok*is*,

his eyes were bright as stars. þ*at* ware as blyckenand briȝt · as blesand sternes,

[1] MS. þat o ; *but* o *is expuncted.*
[2] MS. schout*is ; altered to* schoutid. [3] *Added in the margin.*
[4] MS. a pere, *altered to* a prefe.

ȝit ware þai sett vn-samen · of serelypy hewys;
þe tane to brene at a blisch̄ · as blak as a cole,
As any ȝare ȝeten gold · ȝalow was þe tothire.
He was wall-eyed. And he wald-eȝed was · as þe writt schewys, 608
ȝit it tellis me þis tale · þe tethe in his hede
Was as bitand breme · as any bare tuskis.
His voice was as a lion. His steuyn stiffe was [&] steryn · þat stonayd many,
And as a lyon he lete · quen he loude romys. 612
His feH fygoure & his fourme · fully be-takend
þe prowis & þe grete pryse · þat he a-preuyd eftire,
His hardynes, his hyndelaike · & his hetter myȝtis,
þe wirschip̄ þat he wañ · quen he wex eldire. 616
þañ sembled his syb men̄ · be sent of þam̄ aH,
To consaile of þis kyng son̄ · how þai him caH suld,
He is called Alexander. And so him neuyned was þe name · of his next frendis
Alexsandire þe athiH · be allirs a-corde. 620
He goes to school. þan was he lede furthe be-lyfe · to lere at þe scole,
As sone as to þat sapient · him-self was of elde,
Aristotle is his master. On-ane vn-to ArystotiH · þat was his awen maister,
And one of þe coronest clerkis · þat euer knew letter.
þan was he broȝt to a benke · a boke in his hand, 625
And faste by his enfourme · was fettild his place;
For it come noȝt a kyng son̄ · ȝe knaw wele to sytt
Doune in margon̄ & molle · emange othire schrewis.
He is clever and wise. Sone wex he witter & wyse · & wonder wele leres, 629
Sped him in a schort space · to speH & to rede,
And seþen to gramere he gase · as þe gyse wald,
[Fol. 11 b.] And þat has he aH hale · in a hand-quyle. 632
He learns more in five years than others in seventy. In foure or in fyfe ȝere · he ferre was in lare
þan othire at had bene þare · seuynte wynter;
þat he suld passe him in þat plite · vnpussible semed,
Bot at god wiH at gaa furth · qua may agayn stande?
If Aristotle was away, In absens of ArystotiH · if any of his feris 637
Raged with him vnridly · or rofe him with harme,
he would knock his masters on the crown. Him wald he kenely on̄ þe croune · knok with his tablis,

þat al to-brest wald þe bordis · & þe blode folowe. 640
If any scolere in þe scole · his skorne at him makis,
He skapis him̄ fuH skathely · bot if he skyp̄ better.
He fights with his fellows. þus with his feris he faȝt · as I fynd wreten̄,
As wele in̄ letter & in lare · as any laike ellis. 644
þus skilfuH lange he scolaid · & þe scole vsed,
Tille he was euyn of eld · elleuyn wynter.
He has no peer. He had na pere in na place · þat proued so his tyme,
For þe principalte of all þe pake · he of a-prefe wynnys.
And qwen it teȝt to þe tyme · of ten ȝere of age, 649
þen was him kend of þe kynde · & craft of bataile,
He learns to wield a spear. Wele & wiȝtly in were · to welden a spere,
A[nd] preke on̄ a proude stede · proudly enarmed. 652
þat lare was him lefe to · & lerid in a qwile
Was þar na lede to him̄ like · with-in a fewe ȝeris.
He surpasses all in arms. So cheualus a chiftan̄ · he cheuys in a stonde,
þat in anters of armes · aH men he passes. 656
Quen Philip̄ see him sa fers · in his first elde,
Philip commends him. His hert & his hardynes · hiȝely he lofed,
Comendid mekiH his knyȝt-hede · & him callid on̄ a day
Be-twene þam selfe on̄ a tyme · & talkis þire wordis:
"Alexander," quod þe kyng · "I augirly prayse 661
þi wirschip, þi worthines · þi wit & þi strenth̄.
[Fol. 12.] Es nane so teche of þi tyme · to tryi now o lyfe.
How suld I, lede, for þi lofe · bot lufe þe in hert? 664
"I am sorry, my son, that you are so unlike me." Bot I am sary for sothe · my son̄, at þi fourme
Is lickenand on̄ na lym̄ · ne like to my selfe;
Oft storbis me þi statour · & stingis me ȝerne,
þat þi personale proporcion̄ · sa party is to myne." 668
The queen consults Anectanabus. þis herd hire þe hend quene · & heterly scho dredis,
Sent efter Anec · & askis him be-lyue,
Be-knew him clene aH þe case · how þe kyng sayd,
And frayns him fast quat þe freke · of hire fare thingis.
þen con he calke & a-conte · & kest on his fyngirs,
Lokis him vp to þe lifte · & þe lady swares: 674
He comforts her, "Be noȝt a-friȝt," quod þe freke · "ne a-frayd nouþir,

It saH þe noy no3t a neg[t] · nane of his tho3t*is*." 676
With þat he heuys vp [his] hede · & to þe heuyn lokis,
and observes the stars. Hedis het*er*ly on hi3e · behelde oñ a sterne,
Of þe quilke he hopid in his hert · su*mquat* to knawe,
Quat euir*e* he wald wete · of[1] his wiH aH-to-gedir*e*.
Alexander asks him what he sees in the stars. *Quod* Alex*ander* to þis athiH · as he his arte fandis,
"Quat is þe planet or þe poynt · 3e purpose to seme?
Quat st*er*ne is it at 3e stody oñ · q*ua*re stekis it in heuyn? 683
May 3e o3t me in any man*er* · to þ*at* st*er*ne schewe?"
Anectanabus says he will tell him at night. "þ*at* can I wele," q*uod* þe clerke[2] · "ellis couthe I littiH;
No3t bot sewe me, soñ · que*n* þe soñ is to reste,
Quen it [is] dreuyn to þe derke · & þe day fynyst,
And þ*ou* saH sothely se · þe same *with* þine e3en." 688
"Is o3t þi werid to þe wissid?" · q*uod* þe wee þan;
"For þ*at* I couet to ken · if þ*ou* me kythe wald."
"I shall be slain by my own son." "Sir*e*, sothely of myne aweñ soñ[2] · slayne moñ I worth,
So was me destaned to dye · gane many winter." 692
[Fol. 12 *b*.] As tyte as Anec[*tanabus*] · þis aunt*er* had tald,
þen [he] treyned doune fra þe toure · to tute in þe sternes.
Alexander follows his father þañ airis s*er* Alex*ander* · eftire his fadir*e*, 695
þ*at* eu*er* he kyndild of his kynde · kend he bot litiH.
þus led he furthe his leue child · late oñ ane eueñ,
Sylis softely him selfe · þe cite *with*-outeñ,
Bo3es him vp to a brenke · as þe buke tellis,
to the edge of a dyke: To þe hi3t of þe depe dike · & to þe heuyn way*tis*. 700
"Alex*ander*, athil soñ" · q*uod* Anec his syre,
"Loo! 3ond*er* behald ou*er* þi hede · & se my hatt*er* werdis;
Anectanabus says that his own doom approaches. þe euyH st*er*ne of Ercules · how egirly it soro3es, 703
And how þe mode Marcure · makis sa mekiH ioy;
Loo! 3ond*er* þe gentiH Iubit*er* · how Iolyle he schynes,
þe domes of my destany · drawis to me swythe.

[1] MS. of w his; *but* w *is expuncted.*
[2] *Added in the margin.*

Hedes het*er*ly on heght · beheld on a sterne, 678 [Fol. 1.]
Of þe whilke he hopyd in hys hert[t] · somqwatt to knaw,
What euer he wilnet for to wete · hys wille aH to-ged*er*.
þen sayd alex*ander* to þis atheH · as he by hym stonnd*es*,
"What[t] is þe planett or þe poynt[t] · yhe p*ur*posse[1] to se?
Or what sterne at ye stody oñ · where stekys it in heueñ?
May 3e oght in any man*er* me · to þ*at* m*er*ke shewe?" 684
"þ*at* can I wele," q*uo*d þis clerke · "ellys couth I bott lytyH;
Noght bott shew[2] me now, sone · qwen þe soñ is at rist[t],
Wheñ it is dryveñ to þe dirk · & þe day fynyshyt[t],
And þu saH sorely þe same · see w*ith* þi egheñ." 688
"Is oght þi werd to þe wist[t]?" · q*uo*d þe wy þañ;
"For þ*at* I Couett to keñ · if þu me kyth wold."
"Syr, sothly of myne aweñ son · slayn moñ I worth,
So was [me] destinate to dy · done mony wynt*er*." 692
Als tyte as anec*tanabus* · þees aunters had tald,
Than t*ur*ned he douñ from þe toure · to tote on þe sternes.
þan ayres s*ir* alex*ander* · aftir hys fader,
þ*at* eu*er* he come of hys kynde · knew [he] fuH litiH. 696
þus lede he forth is leue sonñ · late on añ eueñ,
Syland softly þaim selfe · þe cyte w*ith*-owte,
Bownes þaim vp to a brenke · as þe buke tellys,
To þe hight of þe hye dyke · & to þe heuen watyñ. 700
"Alex*ander*, atheH sonñ" · q*uo*d anec hys fader,
"Beyond be-hald ou*er* my hed · & see my hote werdez;

þe ilke sterne of ercules · howe eg*er*ly it sorowez,
And how þe mode of m*er*cury · makys so mekyH Ioy; 704
Lo! how gentyH Iubit*er* · how ioyfully he shynes,
þe Domes of my destany · drawes vnto [me] swyth.

[1] MS. p*ro*posse. [2] *sic; read* sew.

Þik & þrathly am I thret · & thole moñ I sone
Þe slaȝter of myne awen soñ · as me was sett euer." 708
Vnethis werped he þat worde · þe writt me recordis,
Alexander pushes him into the dyke, Þat ne Alexander as sone · was at him be-hind,
And oñ þe bake with slike a bire · he bare with his handis,
Þat doune he drafe to þe depest · of þe dike bothoñ, 712
saying, "thou art false in thy predictions." Sayd, "lo ! vnhappeiste vndire heuyn · þat þus oñ hand takis
As be þe welken to wete · quat suld come efter !
Þou has feyned þe for wyse · & fals aH-to-gedire,
Wele semys slike a saccheH · to syeȝe þus of lyfe !" 716
Anectanabus cries out, Þan Anec, as him aȝt · wele augirly granys,
Dryues vp a dede voyce · & dymly he spekis,
"I knew it would be so. "Wele was þis cas to me knawen · & kyd many wynter,
Þat I suld dee slike a dethe · be dome of my werdis. 720
Did I not say so ? Sayd I þe noȝt so · my selfe here be-fore,
I suld be slayñ of my son as now sothe worthis ?" 722

Thik & thraly am I thrett · & thole must I sone
Þe slauughter of my awne sonñ · als me was sett euer." 708
Vnneth warpyd he þis word · þe writt me recordez,
Þat alexander als belyfe · was at hym bylyue,[1]
And on þe bak with suche a bir · hym bare with hys handez,
Þat Douñ he drafe into þe dyppest[2] · of þe dyke bothum ; 712 [Fol. 1 b.]
Sayd : "lo ! vnhappyest vndir heuen · þat þus on hand takes
Als be welkyn to wete · what worth saH her-aftir !
Hase fenyd þe for wyse · & fals aH to-geder,
Wele semys suche a sacheH · to sepe þus of lyfe !" 716
Þan Anec, als hym awght · wele awgardly granes,
Dryvez vp̄ a dede voyce · & dymly he spekes :
"Wele was þis to me knawyn · & kyd mony wynter,
That I suld dey such a dede[2] · by[2] dome of my werdis. 720
Sayd I þe noght so · my self here beforne
I suld be slayn of my sonñ · als now is soth wortheñ ?" 722
"What, and am I," quod alexander · "ane of þi childer ?" 723* You are my son."
"Ȝha, soñ ! als glad I my god · I gat þe my selueñ." 724*
Fro he had hym þis worde sayd[3] · he wakens no more, Hic moritur anectanabus
Bot gaue a gremly grane · & þe gast ȝheldez.
That oþer wy for hys werkez · wepys euryllyke, Alexander laments,
So hard & so hertly · þat neȝ hys hert brestes. 728*
Þus plenys þis prouud knyght · þe pyte of hys fader,
Cares hym downe into þe cafe · þar as þe cors ligges, and carries home the body.
Belife lyftes he on-lofte · euen on hys shulders, 731*
And beres hym forth vppon hys bake · at þe brade ȝates.
Sone sayd þe whene, when sho hym see · with syland teres ;
"What haue ȝe done, my dere sonñ ?" · & drowpys douñ in swone.
"Dame, now is þar none other to do · bot deme it þi selueñ, Alexander reproves the queen.
For as þi foly was before · so foloweth aftir." 736*

[1] *read* byhynde. [2] *written above the line in* MS.
[3] *written above the line in* MS.

Than makes þis mañ & hys moder · menskfully & faire
Titely hys enterment · as þai þat tyme vsed.
Þus shamesly of hys awne childe · hym chevyd such end. So perished Anectanabus.
And her fynes a fytt · & fayr when vs likez. 740*

Quartus passus.

The same & þe selue tyme · as says me þe text,
Fro þe cuntre of capadose · come a kyd prince A prince brings to Philip a wild horse,
To kyng philipp̄ þe fers · & hym a fole bryngez ;
A grett horse & a hoge · a hegh & a wilde, 744*
A store & a styf stede · stalwortly bondyn̄ ;
His choH chaltird & chauelez · in chynez of yreñ ; [Fol. 2.]
In rapes fast · for ryfyng of bernes ;
For other mete þan manysflesche · mouthed he neuer. 748* who fed upon human flesh only.
Busifolen to þis blonk · was breued þe name.
He hed so ferdfuH a face · as ony fyre lokez ;
Bere als a boles[1] heued · a bryn on hys shulderr,
And toton owt of hys top̄ · als tyndis of hornes. 752*
The fayrnes of þis ilke fole · when philip̄ avysed, Philip puts him in a stable.
Þan says he to hys seruand · to see to þis capyH,
And stighillys hym in som̄ stede · a stable by hym one,
With lang lates of yreñ · þat he might lig in. 756*
And aH at wer dampned to þe deth · & demyd at þe lawe, He is fed upon criminals.
Þai saH be broȝt fra þe bare · þis blonk into stable,
To wery at hys awne wille · & weyle[2] of þe fattest. 759*
ȝit philip̄ of hys faire goddes · hym fanges such a sware, The gods say that whoever tames the horse will succeed Philip.
Yff ony berne wer so bald · baroñ or other,
Or wy þat myght þis wilde best · worth for to ryde,
Was dewly aftir hys day · destinate to regne.
When alexander was of elde · awght ȝeres & foure, 764*
Þan was he worthy & wight · & wisely hed leryd
At arestoteH aH ouer · þe artez aH seueñ,
And castor, ane oþer clerke þar · at wer hys kyd masteres. Alexander is now 12 years old.
So carez he in þe casteH-ȝarde & commes on a day 768*
By a wyndow als þis wild horse · [was] warloked in bandez ;

[1] *Altered to* boyles *in later hand.* [2] MS. wele, *corr. to* weyle.

Lokes in at a lat · sagh ly hym byforne
So mony menbres of men · wer *mer*vayle to teH.
þar liggez lymmes of ladd*es* · leggez & harmes,
Tharmes thrist owt of thees · banes & shuldres.
Som hanchyd of þe heued · som þe handez etyñ,
Soñ *þar* riggez owt rytte · & som *þar* ribbez rentt.
Of þis wond*er* he hed · & so he wele burd.
And hardly hys awne hand · in at a hole putt*es*,
He[1] layd owt a lang neke · & hys hand likkys;
Faire fald*es* hys fete / & fall*es*[2] hym[3] to þe erth,
Hendly hald*es* vp hys heued · byheld in hys face,
On Alex*ander* ay-whare · eu*er* elike wat*es*.
þen wist þe wy wele enogh · hys wyH aH-to-ged*er*;
Brad*es* vppe þe brade ȝate · & þe barre entres,
On þe rige *with* hys right hande · hym rodely strakez,
And he fuH frely & faire · hym faunys & loutez.
Was neu*er* barslett in band · more buxu*m* to hys lord.
þen was þis blonke to þis berñ · for aH his breme teches.
Þus lowt*es* þis lede on low · & lowsys hys chynez,
Blyssis blythly hym abouute · & a bridyH fyndez;
Grathez on þis gay gere · & þen a gilt sadyH;
Led*es* hym forth of *þat* loge · & þen of-lofte lepys.
Than strenys he hys streropes · & stre3t vp sitt*es*;
Lad hym by þe lorañ · & hym þe lede wissez.
And he als rekyndly ran · rolland hym vnder,
As he þe sadyH hed sewyd · seuenten wynter.
Sone as philiꝑ þe ferse · hym on þis fole met*es*,
"Soñ," he sayd, "now er þe sawes · into þi seluen fyneshit,
Right as my graceux gode · hase galet me before.
For þou must rewle aH my realm̄ · qwen I am raght hyne."
Quod alex*ander* als beliue · "my awne atheH fader,
I beseke þe my sou*er*en · *þat* þou my sete dresse
In a chosyn chariott · as a chefe maist*er*,
With folawand me a fair flete · of fele men of armes."

He sees the horse surrounded by men's legs and arms. 772*

The horse licks his hand. 776*

[Fol. 2 *b*.] 780*

He goes to the horse, and strokes him. 784*

He gets a bridle and saddle, and mounts him. 788*

Philip sees Alexander, and predicts that he will be king after himself. 792* 796* 800*

[1] MS. And, *corr. to* He. [2] MS. faldis, *corrected*.
[3] MS. hys fete, *repeated, but struck out*.

" þat graunt I gladly," quod þe gome · with a gode wille,
" Frist[1] of my faire foles · fang þe a hundreth; 805*
And syne sexty thowsand, my soñ · þou[1] þi seluen wale
Of shillynges & of shire gold · to shote in þi Cofyre;
Syne of my chefe chiftanes · chese þe þe[2] best[1],
þe most proved of my princez · in poyntez of were; 808*
Wyes ne no wale wede · want shaH þe noþer,
And held on with a hale here · þar hersound þou worth."[3]
Thys barne hym buskes as he bede · & bade he no langre,
Bot grathes hym to þe gate · with a gyñ noble. 812*
Forth with eufestyus he ferd · a freke þat he loued,
þat was a fyne Philo[so]f[e]r · a frend of hys awne.
Ȝitte takez he hym with-owte þe townñ · twelf tried childer,
þat he hed Cosyn hym for chefe · hys chevalry to lede;
And fair enformed þam of fight · & fetez of armez 817*
For ȝapest in hys awne yoke · ȝarly to drawe;
Fers felons with hym fangez · & florens enowe,
Full preciouse apparement[1] · hys person to cleth, 820*
Comand kenely hys knyghtez · to kepe to hys blonkez,
þat no[4] vnchaunce þaim achefe · þat in þe chare ȝodez.
He prekys forth on hys play · bot with a preuay menȝe,
Chaterand with hys chiftanes · in hys child gere. 824*
To poliponenses hase he passed · a prouince vnk[n]awyñ,
And so was strykyn or he styntyd · in-to þe strange realm̃.
The kyng of þatt cuntree · þat þe kyth weldyd,
Which was callyd nicholas · & hym naytly metes, 828*
Had rasyd vp a rode hoste · & heldyd hym ayaynez
With bald baratours on bent · hym bateH to ȝelde.
He flonge ow[t] on a fers fole · far from hys hoste,
Ayres to sir alexander · & angrely franes: 832*
" What is þi name, notesmañ · neuen me þe sothe;
And whyne ert þou & who · & what makys þou here?"
þe knyght, as he wele couth · hym curtasly answers:
" Sir, kyng philip̄ þe ferse · my fader was hateñ, 836*

Philip gives Alexander men and money.

Alexander takes with [Fol. 3.] him Eufestius and 12 others.

With a small force he invades the Peloponnesus.

The king's name was Nicholas.

Nicholas interrogates Alexander.

[1] MS. þat, *corr. to* þou. [2] MS. the, *corr. to* þe.
[3] MS. wroth. [4] *written above the line in* MS.

[Fol. 13.]

Many things that are aloft go to the bottom."

"Take care lest your predictions come true of yourself."

Sir Nicholas is as wrath as a wasp.

Þof I þis wirschiꝑ þe wayfe · as wald þine astate,
Lat þou þi hert neuer þe hiȝere · hale in-to pride.
For it was wont," quod þe wee · "as wyse men tellis,
Fu�then hiȝe þingis ouer-heldis · to held oþer-quile.
Slike as ere now broȝt a-bofe · nowe þe bothum askis,
And slike at left[1] ere on lawe · ere lift to þe sternes."
"Sa ma aydeus," quod þat oþire man · "þou tellis me treuthe,
Soñ þis ensample of þi-selfe · þou sais me, I trowe.
Vn-behalde þe wele oñ ilk halfe · & haue a gud eȝe,
Les on þine ane here-efterward · þine ossyngis liȝt."
Þan Alexander aꝟ in ire · angrile spekis:
"Hy þe hethen-ward, þou hathiꝟ · & houe þou na langire.
For na-þing as a-nente me · þou has noȝt to meꝟ,
Ne with þi domes me to dele · dole vndire sonne."
Now[2] is ser Nicollas anoyed · & nettild with ire,
As wrath as [a] waspe · & wode of his mynde,
Reviles he þis oþire renke · with vnrid speche:
"Behald," quod he hedirward · "& herken how I say;
Now be þe hert & þe hele · of my hathiꝟ fadire,
And be þe god," quod þe gome · "þat gafe me þe saule,
A[ls] sprent [of] my spittyng · a specke oñ þi chere,
Þou saꝟ be diȝt to þe deth · & drepid of my handis."

[1] *Indistinct; see* l. 814.
[2] MS. Nowith; *by confusion with line above.*

Alexander declares his name.

"Who am I?" asks Nicholas. "You are a king; yet take heed."

[Fol. 3 b.]

And aꝟ þe marche of massydoñ · he manours clene;
And I hys heyre alexander · als elders me calleñ."
Þat oþer renishit r[e]nke · hym rightes in þe sadyꝟ,
Stranes owt hys sterops · & sternly lokez;
With a sembland as a hye sir · settes owt þe brest,
Sayd: "who am I þat am here · as þou supposez?"
"Sir, þou art a kyng of þis kyth · I ken wele my-seluen,
Bott neuer þe latter in þis lede · if þou be lord here,
Þof[1] I[2] þis worship þe[3] wafe · as wald þine astate,
Lett þou þi hert neuer þe hyer · hale to þe pride.
For it is wont," quod þe wy · "as wise men tellys,
The hyest thyng raþest[4] · heldes oþer while.
Suche as now is broght a-bowue · now þe bothom askeñ,
And sich als laft[5] now on loft[6] · er lyft to þe sternes."
"So madeus,"[7] quod þis oþer mañ · "þou mellys me þe sothe,
For þis ensampyꝟ of þi-selfe · þou says me, I trowe.
Vmhede þe wele on ilke halfe · & haue a god Egeñ,
Lest on þi-seluen ane oþer tyme · þine asking liȝt."
Þan alexander aꝟ in ire · angirly spekes:
"Hy þe hyneward, þou atheꝟ · & hofe here no langer.

For noþ[i]ng als anense me · þou hase lityꝟ to melle,
Ne with me noght hase to do · ne dele vnder þe sonñ."
Now [is] sir Nicholas noyet · & netlett with ire,
Als wrath as a waspe · & wode owt of mynde,
Revylez he þis other renke · with vnrode speche:
"Byhald," he sayd, "hyderward · & here qwat I say;
Now by þe hert & þe heale · of my old fadir,
And be god," quod þe gome · "at gaue me þe saule,
Als sprent of þi[8] spyttyng · a speke of my[9] face,
Þou saꝟ be diȝt to the deth · and drepyd of my handes."

[1] MS. Of. [2] þe *follows after* I *in MS.*
[3] þe *written above the line in* MS. [4] MS. raþeest.
[5] *or* last. [6] *so in* MS.; *read* laft er on lawe.
[7] MS. madeus, *altered to* madyng, *in later ink.*
[8] *so in* MS.; *read* of my. [9] *read* on þi.

He spits in Alexander's face.

Que*n* he had spokin so, for spyte · he spitt*is* in his face,
Dispises him despetously · disper*s*ons him foule.
"Hent þe þare," q*uod* þe hatiH[1] · "as þe to haue[2] semes,
Cure, for þi kene carpe · chache nowe a schame!" 748

Alexander controls his anger.

Þan went hi*m* furthe Alex*ander* · & his ande takis,
Lete a-swage or he sware · þe swelme of his angirs,
Be-se3is hi*m* how he say wold · or he his sa3e 3eld, 751
And turnes hi*m* þen to þe tulke · & talk*is* þire wordis:
"For þou has no3tid me now · Nicollas," he sayd,

[Fol. 13 b.]

I swere þe, be my syre saule · & by his selfe pite,
And be þe worthe wombe · of my wale modre
Þat I was geten in of gode · & graithely consayued, 756
Þou seis me, lede, or o3t lange · in þi lande armed,
And o*þire* recouyre me þi rewme · or reche vp þe girdiH."

They appoint a day for fighting.

Þan set þai þam slike a day · to semble & to fi3t, 759
And þar-to tuke vp þaire trouthis · & twyned esondre.[3]
Þen 3ode hi*m* furthe þi[s] 3ong man · 3apeli & swythe
In-to þe marche of Messedone · & manly a-semblis
Of saudio*urs* & sekir men · a soume out of nounbre,
Þat was þe baldest & þe best · breueyd in armes. 764

Alexander gathers a host.

He p*arrails* him a proude ost · of princes & o*þire*,
Fark*is* to s*er* Ph*ilip* · & fangis his leue,
And þañ Bocifilas his blonke · he bremely ascendis,
And bounes oñ w*ith* his bataiH · out at þe brade 3at*is*.
Þe same day at was sett[4] · þe sembling of bathe, 769
Aithire w*ith* a firs flote · in þe fild metis.

Both armies are very numerous.

Þe nounbre of s*er* Nicollas · it noyes me to reken,
And Alex*ander* was ane oste · of augird many. 772
W*ith* þat þai tuke vp þaire trompes · a-poñ þe twa sidis,
Braidis banars a-brade · buskis to mete.

The clarions resound.

So kinlid þe clarons · þat aH þe cliffe rynges,

[1] *So in* MS.
[2] MS. hame, *with first stroke of* m *subpuncted*.
[3] MS. to semble & to fi3t, *struck through, with* & twyned esondre *above*.
[4] *Added in the margin.*

When he had spokyñ so, in spite · he spitt*es* at hys face,
Dispysys hym dyspytussly · revylez hym foule.
"Hent þe þ*ar*-to," q*uod* þe atheH · "þ*at* þe to haue semes,
Cure, for þi kene carpyng · cache now a shame!" 748
Þan ayres hym forth alex*ander* · & hys aynde takes,
To let swage or he sware · þe swelme of hys angre,
Wysez hym how he say wald · or he aunswer 3helde*s*,
And t*ur*nyd hym þen to þis tulke · & talkez þ*ir* wordez:
"For þou hase no3tyd me now · nicholas," he sayd, 753
"I swere by my syre saule · & by hys seluen pyte,
And be þ*at* worthi wombe · of my wale moder
Þ*at* I was gettyn in of god · & gr*a*thly consaued, 756
Thu sees me, lede, in þi land · or oght lang enarmed,
And o*þer* recou*er* me þi realm̃ · or reche me vppe [þe] girdyH."
Þan sett þai þaim on suche a day · to semble & to fight,
And þ*ar*-to takez vpp þ*ar* trewthez · & twynnoñ in-sonder.
Þan 3ode hym furth þis yong mañ · 3apely & swithe 761
Into þe marche of masydon · & manly assembles
Of sowio*urs* & of syker meñ · a some owt of nowmbre,
Þ*at* wer þe baldest & þe best · breuet in armez. 764
He Apperels hym a prouud oste · of princez & o*þer*, [Fol. 4.]
Ferkys to s*ire* philip̄ · & fonges hys leue,
And þañ bucifolon hys blonk · he bremely assende*s*,
And bownez on w*ith* hys bateH · in at þe brade 3atez. 768
Þe same day þ*at* was set · þe semblyng of bath,
Ather w*ith* a fers flete · in þe felde metyñ.
Þe nowmbre of s*ir* nicholas · it neyt[1] me to rekyñ,
And alex*ander* was ane ost · of awgerly mony. 772
With þ*at* þai tukkyñ vp̄ þair trompez · vpon þe two sydez,
Bradez baners on brade · buskes to mete.
So knellyd þe clarions · þ*at* aH þe clyff rongeñ,

[1] *So in* MS.

Þe holtis & þe haire heere[1] · & þe hillis scheuyn.
Ilk a hathiH to hors · hiȝis him be-lyue,
Stridis into stele-bowe · stertis apon loft,
Has a helme oñ his hede · & honge oñ his swyre
A schene schondirhand schild · & a schaft hentis.

Steeds stamp, and dust rises.

Quat of stamping of stedis · & stering of bernes,
AH dymed þe dale · & þe dust ryses.
With slik a bront & a brusche · þe bataiH a-sembild,

[Fol. 14.]

As þe erth & aH þe el[e]mentis · at anes had wrestild.
Now aithire stoure oñ þar stedis · strikis to-gedire,
Spurnes out spakly · with speris in hand,

Shields are broken.

Brekis in-to blasons · bordren[2] shildis,
Beris in-to briȝt stele · bitand lances,

Lances are splintered.

Sone in scheuerand schidis · schaftis ere brosten,
Al to-spryngis in sprotis[3] · speris of syris,
Dryfuys doune duchepers · & doykis of þar horses,
Fellis fay to þe fold · many fresch knyȝtis.

Nicholas attacks Alexander.

Quat dose now þis Nichollas · bot nymes him a spere,
Kest him on þis ȝong knyȝt · to couire him a name ;
And Alexander with anothire · airis him agayne,
Girdis grymly to-gedire · greuosly metis.
Sa sare was þe semble · þire seggis be-twene,
þat al to-wraiste þai þar wode · & werpis in-sondire,

Their spears break.

Al to-clatirs iñ-to cauels · clene to þaire handis,
þar left nouþire in þar hand · þe lengthe of an ellyñ.

They fight with swords.

þen littid þai na langer · bot laschid out swerdis,
Aithire a blesynand brand[4] · brait out of schethe,
Hewis oñ hattirly · had thurgh mailes,
Many starand stanes · strikis of þaire helmes.
þen Alexander in ane ire · his arme vp-liftis,
Swythe swyngis out his swerde · & his swayfe feches.

Alexander cleaves Nicholas' head.

þe noH of Nicollas þe kyng · he fra þe nebb partis,
þat doun he feH fra his fole · & fynyst for euir.
þus was him destand þat day · as driȝten had shapid,

[1] *read* haire wode. [2] *read* broden.
[3] MS. *repeats* in sprotis. [4] *Added in the margin.*

That þe holtez of þe heer wode · & þe hillez sheueñ.
Ilke atheH to hys hors · hyes hym belyue,
Striden to stele-bowe · startyn vpon lofte,
Had helmes vpon hedes ful hey · & hynget vmby þar shwyre
A shemerand sheld · & þair shaftez hynteñ.
What of stampyng of stedes · & strippyng[1] of baners,
AH demmyd þe dale · & þe duste risez.
With suche a bront & a broush · þe bateH assembled,
As þe erth & aH þe elementes · at anez had wrystyllyd.
Now ather stoure on þar stedes · striken to-gedir,
Sprenten owt spakly · with speres in hand,
Brochen both basynettes · & brouden sheldez,
Beres in-to bright stele · bitand lancez,
Sone in-to sheuerand shidez · shaftez to-bristeñ,
AH to-sprongen into sprotes · sperez of cipriss,
Dryvez downe docesperes · and dukez of blonkez,
Felles fey to þe fold · many fers knyghtes.
What doys me now þis nicholas · bott nymmez hym a sper,
Kest hym on þis yong knyght · to gett hym a name ;
And alexander with an oþer · ayers hym ayayns,
Ridyn grymly to-geder · & grysly metyñ.
So [sar] was þe semble · [þir] Seges by-twene,
þat aH to-wrasted þai wod · & warpyd in-sonder,
AH claters in clyftez · clene to þair fistez,
þai lefte noþer in þaire [hand] · þe lenth of[1] ane Elne. [Fol. 4 b.]
þan let þai no langer · bot laughtyn owt swerdes,
Aþir a brade blysnand brand · brade forth of shethez,
Hewen on heterly · hadoñ þorow malys,
Fele starand stanes · striken of þair helmes.
Than alexander in ire · hys arme vpp lyftes,
Swith swynnges vp hys swerd · & hys swaffe faches.
The nole of nicholas þe kyng · he fra [þe] nek partes,
That douñ he fel from hys fole · fynyshit for euer.
þus was hym destinate þat day · as driȝten hym shapyd,

[1] *written above the line in* MS.

To hent him þe hiȝere hande · of his athiH fais.
Þare slike wirschip he wañ · ware wonder to teH;
Had of þat hiȝe kyng[1] · þe hede fra þe shuldirs.
Þen was him geuyn vp þe ȝerde · & ȝolden þe rewme,
[Fol. 14 b.] And aH at left was[1] o lyfe · lordis & othire,
All submit to Alexander. Come to þat conqueror · & oñ knese[2] fallis,
And in his mercy & meth · mekely þaim put.
Þis renke & his rounsy · þai reche vp a croune,
As gome at has þe garland · & aH þe gre wonñ.
Þus with þe floure in þe fild · he fangid his enmy,
And haldis oñ with hale here · hame to his fadire.
Returning, he finds Philip has wedded another wife. Þañ fyndis he Philip oñ his flett · with a fest huge
Had wed him anoþer wyfe · & wayfid his quene;
Ane Cleopatras caled[3] · a grete kyngis doȝter,
And [laft] had Olympadas · & openly for-sakeñ.
"Fadire," quod þis feH knyȝt · quen he þis fest entirs,
"Þe palme here of my first price · I pray þe resayfe,
Forthe to þe weding or I winde · of my wale modire,
Alexander refuses to submit to Philip any longer. And kaire me to a-noþire kyng[1] · to couple hire to wyfe.
For þe to felsen ne to foloȝe · fallis me na mare,
Ne here to dueH with þi douce · deynes me na langer,
Now þou mas þe slike a mangery · & macchis changis,
And I to[4] consaile vn-callid · I cañ noȝt þar-on."
With þat þar carpis[5] to þe kyng · a knyȝt at þe table,
One Lesias, a knight, Ane lesias, a lede · & oñ loude speches:
"Cleopatras a knafe child · coñsayue saH & bere,
Þat demed is eftir þi deth · duly to regne."
threatens Alexander, Þañ Alexander at þis knyȝt · angirs vnfaire,
Wynnes hiñ vp a wardrere · he walt iñ his handis,
So hard him hittis oñ þe hede · his hernes out weltid,
but loses his life by And sa he lost has þe lyfe · for his leþer wordis.
Þan was þe wale kyng wrath · as wonder ware ellis,
Braydis him vp fra þe borde · & a brand clekis,

[1] MS. *repeats* was. [2] MS. ken knese, *with* ken *struck out.*
[3] MS. he caled; *but* he *is not wanted.*
[4] *Added in the margin.* [5] MS. crapis.

To hynt hym þe ouerhand · of hys athell foes.
Þär suche a worshiþ he wan · war wonder to telle;
Þan hed he of þe hye kyng · þe heued from þe shulders.
Than þai gave hym vp þe ȝerd · & yolden þe realme,
And aH þat left wer [o] liue · lordez & other,
Comes to þe[1] conqueror · & on knes fallen,
And on hys mercy & his might · mekely þaim puttes.
Þen þus reuerently · þai rechen hym a crowne,
Als gome þat hase þe garland · & aH þe gree wonne.
Þus with þe floure in þe feld · fongez he is enmy,
And heldes on with a hynde heyre · home to his fader.
Then fyndes he philiþ with his flete · at a feste hoge
Had weddit hym ane oþer wife · & waueschyd hys moder;
Ane cleopatras was callyd · a grett kyngez doghter,
And laft [had] olympades · & opynly forsaken.
"Fadre," quod þis fele child · when he þe fest entred,
"The palme here of my first pride · I pray þe resaue,
Forth to þe weddyng wiH I wende · of my wale modre,
And caire me to ane oþer kyng · to cowpyH hir to wyfe.
For þe to filson ne to folow · falles me no more,
Ne here to dwelle at þi devyse · deynes me no langer,
Thou makes suche a mangery · & þi mache changes,
And I to counseH vncallyd · I can noght heron."
With þat þar carpes to þe kyng · A knyght at þe table,
Ane lesyas, a lede · & on lowde spekes:
"Cleopatras a knaffe child · consaue sall & bere,
That destinate is aftir þi day · dewly to regne."
Þen Alexander at þis atheH · angers vnfaire,
Wynnes hym vp a wardrerd · he weld in hys hande, [Fol. 5.]
So hard hym hitte on þe hede · his hernes owte weltyñ,
And so he lost hase hys lyfe · for his lether wordes.
Than [was] þe wale kyng wrath · als wonder wer elles,
Brades vp fro þe burde · & a brande clekez,

Nota primam victoriam alexandri.

[1] *written above the line in MS.*

Philip attacks Alexander, [Fol. 15.]

Airid toward Alex*ander* · & ames hi*m* to strike.
Bot þan him failis þe feete[1] · or he first wenys,
but staggers and stumbles.
He stakirs, he stumbils · & stande he ne mi3t,
Bot ay fundirs & fallis · as he ferde ware.
Þe faster forward him[2] he faris · þe faster he snapirs;
Quat was þe cause of þe case · þat knawis oure lorde.
Alexander reproaches him.
"Quat now," q*uod* athiH Alex*ander* · "q*uat*[3] ailis þe to faH?
Has þou na force in þi fete · ne fele of þi-selfe?
For a freke to be ferd · or a-fraid outhire,
And þou þe gouernere of grece · þat ware grete wondire!"
He drags the bride out of the hall by her hair.
Þen tittis he doune in þat tene · þe tablis ilkane,
Out of þe haH be [þe] hare · halis he þe bride,
And so þe wee in his wreth · wrekis his modire,
And Philip falne [was] sare seke · & aH þe fest strubled.
As sone as Alex*ander* · of angire he slakis,[4]
He lendis o-loft to þe lede · a litiH days eftir,
Cairis vp with comfurth · þe kyng for to vysite,
He comes to þe curten · & carpis þis wordis:
Alexander offers Philip his friendship,
"Philip," q*uod* þis ilke freke · & forwith himm standis,
"Þof it vn-semely me sytt · þe so for to caH,
No3t as þi suget & þi soñ · my sawe I þe 3eld,
Bot as a felaw or a frynde · fallis to a-nothire.
and asks him to forego his anger.
Sire, latt þi wreth a-wai wende · & with þi wyfe sa3tiH,
And þe los of Lesias · litiH þou charge.
I did bot my deuire · to drepe him, me[2] thinke;
For it awe him no3t sa openly · slike ossing to make.
And ser, vnworthely þou wro3t · & þat þou wele knawis,
Quen þou was boune with a brand · my bodi to schende."
The king begins to weep.
Þen rewis þe riche kyng · of vnride werkis,
Blischis vp to þe berne · & braste out at grete.
Þen airis him oñ Alex*ander* · to his aweñ modire;

[1] MS. fete, *altered to* feete. [2] *Added in the margin.* [3] q*uod*. [4] *Read* aslakes.

Ayres toward alex*ander* · & aymes[1] hym to smyte.
Boť he fayled þe fote · or he first wenes,
He stakez, he stombles · þat stand he ne mighť,
Bott ay he fonders & falles · as he ferd wer.
The ferer forthward [he fares] · þe faster [he] snappers;
What was þe cause of þis case · þat knawys our Lord.
"What now," q*uod* alex*ander* · "qwatt ayles þe to fale?
Hase þou no forse ne no fete · ne fele to þi seluen?
For oñ freke to be so ferd · or afrayd oþer,
And þou þe gubernare of grece · þat is a grete wondre!"

Then titt*is* he douñ in þat tene · þe tables ilkoñ,
Owt of þe halle by þe hare · hales he þe birde,
And so þe wye in his wrath · wrekes hys modre,
And philipp̄ fallyñ was seke · & aH þe fest stroblet.
So als byliue als alex*ander* · on angre aslakes,
He lende*s* on-lofte to þe lord · a litiH dayes aftir,
Cares hym w*ith* comforth · þe kyng for to visitt,
Comes hym to þe cortyns · & carpez þees wordez:
"Philipp̄," q*uod* þis fele freke · & for-w*ith* hym standez,
"Þof[2] it vnsemely me sitt · þe so for to calle,
Noght als a sogett ne þi sonne · my saw I þe yeld,
Bot als a felow or a frend · falles to an-other.
Sir, lat þi wrethes aH wende · & w*ith* þi wyfe saghtyH,
And þe losse of sir lysyas · litiH þou charge.
I dyd bot my deu*er* · to drepe hym, me thynke,
For it awght hym no3t so opynly · sike ossynge*s* to make.
And vnworthly þou wroght · & þat þou wele knawys,
When þou was bowne w*ith* a brande · my body to shende."

Then rewys hym þe riche kyng · of hys vnrode werkez,
Blisshes vpp to þe berne · & brist*es* owt to wepe.
Than ayres hym on s*ir* alex*ander* · to hys awne modre;

[1] MS. aynes. [2] MS. Of.

"Bees not a-glopened, madame · ne greued at my fadire;
If aH ȝe synned him be-syde · as ȝour selfe knawis,
[Fol. 15 b.] þar-of na we may þe wite · it was godis wiH." 876
Philip and Olympias are reconciled. With þat he fanges hire furthe · to Philip hire ledis,
And he comly hire kist · & cordis with hire faire,
Anes with Olympadas · & þe tothire woydis,
And lofes hire lely · to his lyfes ende. 880

¶ Quintus passus Alexandri.

Sone eftir in a seson · as þe buke sais,
Heralds come from Darius to Philip. Come driuand fra Darius · þe deyne Empereure,
Heraudis on heȝe hors · hendly a-rayed,
To ser Philip þe fers · to feche þar trouage. 884
LitiH kyngis þar come · as þe clause tellis,
Liȝt doune at þe loge · & þar blonkis leues,
Caires in-to þe curte · to craue him þar dettis,
They demand tribute. Alexander refuses it, Touchis titly þar tale · & tribute him askis. 888
"ȝa, caires hame," quod Alexander · "a-gayn to ȝour kithes,
And sais ȝour maister, he make · na ma sandis;
For sen Philip had a fresche soñ · þat fast now encressis, 891
Þat bees noȝt suffird, I supose · nane slike him to ȝeld.
saying that the old hen is now barren. For sais ȝour lord, þe lefe heñ · þat laide hir first egg,[1]
Hire bodi nowe with barante · is barely consumed,
And is Darius so of his dett · duly depryued;
And be þis titill, him tellis · na tribute him fallis." 896
Þen merualid þam̄ þe messangirs · mekiH of his speche,
His witt & his wisdome · wonderly prayseḍ.
The messengers take their leave. Faire at ser Ph[ilip] þe fers · fang þai þar leue, 899
And syne clene of aH þe curte · & cairis to þar landis.
To þe palais of þe proude kyng · to persie þai went,
Dose þam in to Darius · þar he oñ dese sytt*is*,
[Fol. 16.] And telles him how his trouage · is tynt al-to-gedire,

[1] MS. 'eȝe', *corrected to* egg.

"Beys noght aglopned, gude Dame · ne greued to my fadre,
Ak if þou haue synned hym bysyde · als þou þi-seluen says, [Fol 5 b.]
þarfore no gome may þe gylt · for it is goddes wille." 876
With þat fongez hir þis freke · & to philip̄ ledes,
And he opynly hir kyssitt · & cordes with hir faire,
Þus [he anes] with olimphades · & þis other woydez,
And leues louely with hir · aH hys lyue days. 880

Quintus [Passus].

Sone aftir in a seson · als says me þe writtes,
Come dryvand from sir darius · þe digne Emperour,
Harraldes on hye horsez · hendly arayede,
To sir philopp þe fers · to fett þair truage. 884
Kengez þar come · als þe clause tellez,
Lightyd douñ at þe loge · laftyn þar blonkes,
Cairen fourth in-to þe courte · to crauen þair dett,
Tochett titely þare tale · & tribute hym asked. 888
"ȝa, ayres hame," quod alexander · "agayn to your kythez,
And says your master, to me · he make no moo sondez;
For seth philop had a fressh sonñ · þat fast now encresse[s],[1] 891
That beys not sufferd, I suppose · no suche to hym ȝeld.
And says your lord, þe leyue henne · þat lade hir frist Egge,
Hir body now with baraynte · is barely consumed,
And so is darius of hys dette · dewly depriued;
And be þis tale, hym telle · no tribute hym falles." 896
Than mervalett þes messyngers · mykyH of hys speche,
Hys witt & hys wisdom · þai wonderly praseñ.
Faire at philip þe fers · þair leue þai fangeñ,
And syne clene from þe courte · caires to þair landez. 900
To þe palass of þe prouude [king] · to perse þai wenden,
And dyd þaim to sir darius · þare he on dese syttes,
And tald hym howe is truage · is tyntt aH-togedre,

[1] The lines 890 and 891 are written after line 892 in MS.

As Alex*ander* awyñ mouth · had þam̃ aH enfo*ur*med. 904

Messengers come to tell Philip that the men of Armenia have revolted.

¶ Þen messangirs to Messedoyne · come in þe mene qwile
To Ph[*ilip*] þe feH kyng · & freschly him tald,
Þat aH þe erthe of Ermony · Erles & princes,
Þat suld be suget to him-selfe · wald seke him *with* armes. 908
And Alex*ander* belyfe · as athil mañ suld,
Vndirfangid to feȝt · for Ph[*ilip*] to wende,

Philip invades Armenia.

Gedirs him a grete ost · graithes him in plates,
And aires toward Ermony · þat erd to distroy. 912

A Macedonian, named Pausanias,

Þan was a man in Messadone · in þe marche duellid,
A p*rou*ed prince & a proude · Pausanna was hatteñ,
A big berne & a bald · in brenys to ryde,
Þe soñ of ane Cerastis · as þe buke witnes. 916

rebels against Philip.

Þis freke aH his franche · of Ph[*ilip*] he haldis,
And was a suget to him-selfe · & se*r*ues hi*m* aȝt;

He had long loved the queen.

Bot þañ he depely many day · disired to haue þe quene,
And lyes vmlapped w*ith* hire lufe · many lange wynte*r*.
And by[1] þat cause to þe kyng · he kest slik a hate, 921
Þat he desiris his deth · & diȝt*is* [him] þare-fore.
AH þe folke of his affinite · he freschly a-semblis, 923
And sekis furth w*ith* a hoge some · a-saile[2] hi*m* to ȝeld.

Philip goes out against him.

Queñ Ph[*ilip*] heris of þat fare · gret ferly hiñ thinke[s],
Ferkis furth w*ith* a fewe folk · hi*m* in þe fild met*is*,
Seis þe m*u*ltitude sa mekiH · of men at he bringes,

Philip flees.

Braidis oñ his blonke toward þe burȝe · & þai*m* þe bak shewis. 928
Þen schrikis schilli aH þe schalkis · & schout*is* hi*m* at anes,

Pausanias pursues.

And Pausanna þe prince · a-pon a proude stede
Sprengis out w*ith* a spere · & spedis hi*m* eft*ir*,
And þurgh þe bac in-to þe brest · hi*m* beris to þe erd; 932

[1] *Inserted in the margin.*
[2] h *inserted before* a-saile, *but subpuncted.*

Als alex[*ander*] awne mouth · þaim aH had enformed. 904
Þan messyngers to masydoñ · come in þe meyne qwyle,

To philopp þe feH kyng · & felly hym toldyñ,
Þat aH þe erth of ermony · Erelez[1] & princez,
At suld be sogett to hym-seluen · wald seke hym *with* armez. 908
And alex*ander* als beliue · als atheH man suld,
Vnd*er*fonged þ*ar* þe feght · for philiꝑ his fader,
. . . . . .
And ayers toward ermony · þat erth to distroy. 912

[Fol. 6.]

Then was a man in massidon · þat in þe marche dwellyd,
A proved prince & a proude · pausana he heght,
A Bigg berne & a bald · in brenes to ryde,
Þe sonne of one sorastes · als says me þe text. 916
This freke of all þe fraunches · of kyng philop halde*s*,
And was sogett to hym-seluen · & se*r*uage hym awght.
Bot ȝett depely mony day · desi*r*red he þe whene,
And leued vnlappyd w*ith* hir loue · mony lang wynte*r*. 920
And be þ*at* cause to þe kyng · he kest suche a hate,
Þat he desired hys deyde · & dight hym þ*ar*fore.
AH þe folke of hys affinite · he fresly assemblez, 923
And sekez owt w*ith* a hoge some · a-sawte hym to yelde.
When philip herd of þis fare · grett ferly he thynkez,
Ferkez forth w*ith* a few folke · & hym in feld mete*s*,
Seys þe multitude so much · of me*n* þat he bryng*es*, 927
Brades toward þe burgh on hys blonk · & hys bak shewys.
Þan scrikes shilly all þe shalkys[2] · & shote*s* at onys,

And pausana þe prince · vpoñ a prouude stede
Sprynge*s* forth w*ith* a spere · & sped*es* hym after,
And þorow þe bake in-to þe brest · hym berez to þe erth. 932

[1] *The MS. has* & baron *after* Erelez, *but crossed through and erpuncted.*
[2] all þe *is repeated here, but expuncted in MS.*

. . . . . .

[Fol. 16 b.]

AH ware he wondirly wondid · he wendis noȝt be-lyfe.
His men & aH þe Messadones · fuH mavnly ware stourbed,
Quat of doloure & dyn · quen þai him dede hopid.

Pausanias is puffed up with his success.

Pausanna þan for þe prowis · slike a pride hentis, 936
Vnethes wist he for welth · wirke quat he miȝt.
He prekis in-to þe palais · to puH out þe quene,
Wenys to wild hire at wiH · & away lede. 939

Alexander returns with an army.

þan comes Alexander in þat cas · þe cronaclis tellis,
With a riall ost · of many able princes,
Airand out[1] of Ermony · & had aH þe erth woñ;
Sees slike a rottillyng in þe rewme · & ridis al þe faster.

The queen sees Alexander coming.

þañ past vp þe proud quene · in-to preue chambre, 944
Wayues out at wyndou · & waytis a-boute,
Saȝe be þe sygnes & be sike · as with hire soñ comys,
And be þe alyens armes · at he was aH maister.
With þat scho haldis out hire hede · & heȝe to him callis, 948

She implores his help.

"Quare is þi werdes, my wale soñ · þou wañ of þi godis,
þou suld be victour & venge · & vencust[2] neuire?
If þou haue[3] any hert here · help now þi modire."

Pausanias goes out against Alexander,

Sone as pausanna þe prince · with-in þe palais heris 952
þe comyng of þe kene knyȝt · he caires him agaynes,
Presis out of þe palais · with a[4] pake armed,
And metes him in þe myd-fild · with a mekill nounbre.

who kills him.

And Alexander be-lyue · quen he oñ him waites, 956
He swyngis out with a swerd · & swappis him to dethe;
And þe renkis, aH the route · reches vp þaire wapen
Vn-to þis kid conquirour · & cried eftir socure.

Alexander is told that his father is mortally wounded.

þañ was þar ane in þe ost · oñ Alexander callis, 960
Sayd, "Ph[*ilip*] þi fadire · is in þe fild drepid."
And he halis furth on hede · & halfe-dede him fyndis,
Brusches doune by þe berne · & bitterly wepis.

[1] *Inserted in the margin.* [2] MS. vencustis.
[3] MS. haue hafe, *altered to* haue. [4] *Above the line.*

He heldes douñ in þe hey way · & halfe deyde liggez, 933*
And was so wonderly woundit · he wenyd noght to leve. 933
Hys men & aH þe masidons · fuH fowly wer stourblett,

What for doloure & dyne · when þai hym dede hopeñ.
Pausana for þees prowes · slike a pride hentes, 936
That vneth he[1] wist for welth · what he wirke might.
He prekes into þe palace · to puH owt þe whene,
Wenes to wilde hir at wiH · & away lede.
þan comes eueñ onon · þe cronacles telles, 940
Alexander with ane oste · of mony able princez,
Ayrand owt of Ermony · hed aH þe erth wonne; 2ª victoria alexandri
Herd suche a rastelyng in þe realm · & rydez þe faster.
Than passyd forth þe prouude whene · into a prevay chamer,
Wayfez vp a wyndow · & waytes þar-owt, 945
Sees wele by signes · at hir sonne come,
And by þe alyens armes · þat he was aH mayster.
With þat she haldez forth hir heued · & hegh to hym calles: 948 [Fol. 6 b.]

"Whare er þi werdes, my wale sonñ · þou wan of þi goddez,
Thu suld be victour to venge · & venkest neuer?
Yf þou haue ony hert her · help now þi moder."
Sone as pausana in þe place · þis tale herys, 952
And þe commyng of þis kene knyght · he carys hym ayayns,
Preses owt of þe palasse · with a pake enarmed,
And metes hym in þe myd-feld · with a much nowmbre.
Bot alexander als belyfe · as he on hym wates, 956
He swyngez owt a sharpe swerde · & hym to deth swappys;
And þen hys renkez aH in rowte · rechen vp þar waypynnez
Vnto þis kyd conquerour · & cryeñ aftir socour. 959
þen sayd þar an with-in þe ost · & oñ alexander calles,
Sayd: "philip þi fader · is in þe feld drepyd."
And he hyes þen fast forth · & halfe-deyde hym fyndez,
Brushys doun by þe berne · & bitterly wepys.

[1] MS. hy, *corrected to* he.

[Fol. 17.]

"A! Alex*ander*!" q*uod* þe kyng · "now am I at[1] ane ende;"
A litiH liftis vp his liddis · & lokis in his face;
Philip is glad to know of Alexander's success; "Bot ȝit it gladis me," q*uod* þe gome · "to ga þus to deth,
To se my slaare in my siȝt · be sa sone ȝolden,
A! wele be þe, my wale soñ" · & waged w*ith* his hede;
"þou has baldly oñ my bane · & bremely me vengid."
W*ith* þat he bloþirs in þe brest · & þe breth stoppis,
and dies. And in a spedfuH space · so þe sprete ȝeldis.
And Alex*ander* ay oñ-ane · augirly he wepis,
And gret*is* for hi*m* as greuously · as he hi*m* geten hade.
W*ith* barons & bachelers · him broȝt to þe cite,
Alexander buries him. And erdis hi*m* in his awen erd · as Emp*er*oure fallis.
The day efte*r* his deth · drerely him wendis
He assumes the crown, Alex*ander* his aire · & sytt*is* in his trone,
A clene croune oñ his hede · clustird w*ith* gemmes,
To se how him seme wald · þe sete of his fadire.
He seis doune in þe sete · w*ith* sept*er* in hande,
and summons all his knights. Mak*is* a crie þat aH þe curte · kniȝt*is* & erles
Suld put þai*m* in-to p*re*sens · his precep to here.
And aH comyñ at a kaH · & oñ kneis heldis;
He addresses them. þan blisches he to his baronage · & breues þ*ir* wordis:
"Lo! maistirs of Messedone · sa miȝty meñ & noble,
ȝe Traces & of Tessaloyne · & ȝe þe trewe Grekis,
How likis ȝow nowe ȝo*ur* lege lord? · lokis oñ my fo*ur*me,
" Dismiss all fear. And letis aH ferdschip at flee · & fange vp ȝo*ur* hert*is*,
And aires for nane alyens · quils Alex*ander* last*is*.
For w*ith* þe graunt of my god · I gesse, or I dye,
þat aH the Barbare blode · saH bowe to my-selfe.
Every nation shall serve me þare is na regioñ ne rewme · ne renke vnd*er* heuen,
Ne nouthire-quare na nacioñ · bot it saH my name loute.

[Fol. 17 *b*.]

For we of grece saH haue þe gree · w*ith* grace ay to wild,
And anely be oue*r* þe werd · honourd & prayssed.

[1] *Inserted at the end of the line.*

"Aa! alex*ander*, sonñ!" q*uod* þis atheH · "[now] am I att on ende."
A litiH lyft*es* hys lend*es* · & luk*es* in hys face;
"Bot ȝett me gladd*es*," q*uod* þis gome · "to byde þus on lyve,
To see my slaer in my sight · be so sone ȝholden.
A! wele be þou, wale son" · & wagged w*ith* hys heued;
"For þou hase baldly on my bane · & bremely me venged."
W*ith* þat he blothers in þe brest · & hys breth stoppys,
And in a spedfuH space · þe spirit he ȝeldez.
Bott alex*ander* euerelike · awgerdly pleynez,
And grett*es* for hym als grefully · as he hym gettyn hed. Nota mortem philippi, &c.
W*ith* barons & w*ith* bachelers · he bare hym to þe cyte,
And erdes hym in hys awne erth · as emp*erour* falles.
The day afte*r* hys deth · þen durely he[1] wendes
Alex*ander* hys ayre · vppe in hys awne trone,
A clere croune on hys heued · clustird w*ith* gemmys,
To se how he[1] seme wald · þe sete of hys fader.
He sitt*es* doun in þ*at* sete · w*ith* septo*ur* in hand,
Makes a cry þ*at* aH þe courte · knyghtez & Erelez
Suld come & be p*re*sent · hys p*re*cept to here.
And aH þai come at hys calle · & on kneys held*it*,
þan blyssez he vnto hys bernes · & breues þes wordez:
"Lo! maist*er*lynges of massydoñ · so myghty & so noble, [Fol. 7.]
Ye tracez of thessaloñ · & ye trew grekez,
How likez now you yo*ur* leege lord? · loke on my forme,

And lett*es* aH ferdshipys[2] flee · & fongez vpp yo*ur* hert*es*,
And arghes for no aliens · whilse alex*ander* lefys.
For w*ith* þe graunt of my god · I gesse, or I dye,
þ*at* aH þe barberon blode · saH bow to my seluen.
Thare is no region ne realm · so riche vnder heuen,
Ne noþ*er*-whare no nacion · bot saH my name lowte.
For we of grece sal haue þe gre · w*ith* grace ay to weld,
And only oue*r* aH þe werld · be honourd & prassed.

[1] *read* him. [2] MS. frendshipys.

Whoever wants arms, let him take them."

And quilk of aH myne athiH meñ · þat any armes wantis, 996

Lat pas in-to my palais · & plates him delyuire,
And he[1] at of his aweñ has · harnas him swythe,
And make him boune ilka berne · to bataiH to ride."

All the old knights reply, saying,

Þañ answard him with [a] voice · aH his proud princes,
And Erles in his Empire · þat ware in eld strikeñ, 1001
Hathils of hiȝe age · Auncient kniȝtis,
Barons & bachelers · & bryssid ware in Armes:
" Sire, we hafe farne to þe fiȝt · & bene in fild preued
With ser Ph[ilip] ȝour fadire · mony fele wynter, 1005

" Our strength fails us.

And now vs failis aH oure force · & oure flesch waykis;
For be þe floure neuer sa fresche · it fadis at þe last.
Sire, aH þe ȝeris of oure ȝouthe · es ȝare syne passid,

Our heads cannot bear the helmet.

And we for-trauailid & terid · þat now oure topp haris,
Al to heuy to be hildid · in any here wedis, 1010
Or any angwische of armes · any mare suffire.

We beseech you to let us go.

For-þi, lord, with ȝoure leue · we lawe ȝow be-sechis
We may noȝt stand now in stede · oure strenth is [to] febiH.

Choose younger men."

Wale ȝow oþer werriouris · þat wiȝt ere & ȝonger,
Slike as ere stife in a stoure · strakis to thole."

" Nay," says the king, " I want old men,

" Nay, be my croune," quod þe king · " my couatyng is elder 1016
Þe sadnes of slike meñ · þan swyftnes of childir;
For barnes in þar bignes · it baldis þaṁ mekiH,
Oft with vnprouednes in presse · to pas out of lyfe;
For-thi ouer-siȝt of alde men · I anely me chese; 1020

who are wary."

Be connynge & be consaile · þai kyth ai þar werkis."

All praise his choice.

Þe sleȝt of hys[2] sapience · þai selcuthely prayse,
And clene a-cordis to his carpe · kniȝtis & othire.
¶ Þen dose him furthe þis dere kyng · a litiH dais eftir,

[Fol. 18.]

Alexander with ane ost · of many athiH dukis, 1025

[1] *Inserted at the end of the line.*
[2] *þar, altered to* hys.

And whilk of aH my atheH men · any armour wantes, 996

Bot passe into my palasse · & plates hym delyver,
And he þat of hys awne hase · harnes hym swith,
And make hym bowne euerylke berne · to bateH to wend."
Þen answerd hym with a voyce · aH hys prouude princez
And Ereles of hys Empire · þat wer in elde stryken, 1001
Hatels[1] of hegh age · & auancet knyghtez,
Barons & bachelers · þat bresyd wer in armys:
" Sir, we haue faren in-to feld[2] · & ben in feld[2] preuett
With sir philip your fader · many fele wyntre, 1005
And now vs falez aH our force · & owr fleche wakens;
For be þe floure neuer so freshe · it fades at þe last.
Sir, aH þe ȝeres of owr youth · bene ȝare syne passyd, 1008
And we for-traveld & for-tyred · þat now owr topp̄ horez,
AH to hevy to be hold · with ony here wedes,
Or ony awnterez of armes · to any more suffre.
For-þi, lorde, with your leve · we loughly besekes, 1012
We may noght stande you in stede · our strenthez er to feble.
Lat wale you other weriowrs · þat wight er & yonge,
Sike as styffe er in stowre · strakez to dele."
" Nay, by my Corone," quod þe kyng · " my covetyng is helder 1016
The sadnesse of suche men · þen swyftnes of childer;
For barnez in þair bignes · þat beldez þaim to mekyH,
Oft with vnpro[ued]nes[3] in prese[4] · passen owt of liue;
For-þi ouersight of ald meñ[5] · I anely me chese; 1020
By Connyng[1] & conseH · þai kythen ay þar Werkez." [Fol. 7 b.]
So þe sleght of hys sapience · þai selcouthly praseñ,
And clene acordes to hys carpyng[1] · knyghtez & othre.[6]
Than dose hym furth þe derfe kyng[1] · a lityH days aftir,
Alexander with ane ost · of mony atheH dukez, 1025

[1] *So in* MS. [2] MS. *repeats* feld. [3] MS. vnprones.
[4] MS. prorese, *corrected to* prese. [5] MS. almeñ.
[6] MS. othree.

He goes towards Italy.

Samed a vnsene somme · to saile he begynnes
Ouer in-to ytaile · þa yles to distruye.

He assaults Chalcedon.

In-to þe coste of Calodone · he comes him ouer first,
And þar a cite he asailes · &[1] in sege lengis.
Bot wees wiȝtly with-in · þe wallis ascendid,
Freschly fendid of · & fersly with-stude.

He calls on its warriors to fight to the death,

"Ȝe Calodoyns," quod þe kyng · he callis fra with-oute,
"Outhire macches ȝow mayñly þerto · or namely dies,
And fiȝtis fast with ȝour fais · to ȝe fey worthe,

or to yield at once.

Or ȝefes ȝarely vp þe ȝerde · & ȝeld me þe cite."
So chaunses it þis chiftan · or he a-cheued þine,
Þat fele he brenes of þa bernes · & þe burȝe wynnes,
And caires so out of Calodone · quen he it couerid had,

He enters Italy.

Ouer þe ythes in-to Italee · & þat Ile entirs.
Þeñ ware þai[2] [redles of] rede · aH redd of his come,

The Romans give him 60,000 besants.

Prays him aH of þe pees · & presandis him faire,
Sexti thousand þai him send · of sekire besandis,
Of clere gold of þaire kist · & coruns a hundrethe.
Þare tuke he tribute þat tyme · þe titiH recordis,
Out euyn in-to þe occident · of aH at þare duellid,

He lays Europe under tribute, and goes to Africa.

Of qwilke þe erde & þe erthe · Europe was callid,
And ames þañ to Affrike · & aH at esse leues.
Þan raȝt he fra þa regions · & remowed his ost,
Cachis in-to anoþire kythe · & crossis ouer þe stremes,
Aires in-to Affrike · with many athiH prince[s],

He wins Africa.

Anoþer wing of þe werd · & wynnes it be-lyfe,
Þat syde sodanly & sone · þat ser he a-cheues.
For þar he fande bot fewe · þat felly withstude,
Na ridars in þa[3] regions · ne rebeH bot littiH;
He laches it þe liȝtlyere · as was þe les wonder.

[Fol. 18 b.]

Þan kaires he fra þo contres · & kerue[s] ouer þe stremes,
Furthe to Frantites he ferd · slike a ferre Ile,

[1] *Above the line.* [2] MS. þe.
[3] MS. na, *corrected to* þa.

Sampnez ane vnsene some · to sayle he begynnez
Oure in-to Itale · þe ylez to distroy.
In-to þe cost of calydoñ · he commez on first,
And þar a cyte assalez · and in a sege lenges.
Bot wies wightly with-in · þe wallez ascendyñ,
Freshly defendyng of · & fersly with-stondyñ.
"Yhe calodons," quod þe kyng · and [calles] from with-owte,
"Owther mache yow manly[1] þarto · or maynly dyez,
And feght fast with ȝouer faes · to yhe faye worthen,
Or yevez ȝarely vp þe ȝerd · and gefes me vp þe cite."
So chauncez it þat cheftan · or he achevet þine,
That fele he britens of þa bernez · & þe burgh wynnez.
Þen carez owt of calidoñ · when he it coueryd hadde,
Owre þe ylez of ytale · & þa ylez entrees.
And þai wer redles of-ragthe[2] · of þis kengez commyng,
Prayed hym all for þe pease · & present hym faire,
Sexty thousand hym sendes · of sekyr besandez,
Of clere gold of þair kystez · and corownez a hundreth.
Thare tuke he tribute þat tyme · as þe text recordez,
Owt onon into þe occident · of aH þat þar dwellyd,
Of þe whilke þe erth · of Ermony is callyd,
And amez hym toward aufrike · & aH at ease leues.
Than raught he from þe regions · & rowmyd hys oste,
Cachez into an-other kyth · & crosez ouer þe stremez,
Ayrez hym into aufrik · with mony athell princez,
An-other wynge of þe werld · wynnes it belyue,
Þat syde sodanly & sone · þat sire hym achevys.
For þar he fand bott few · to fersly hym withstonde,
Ne ryders in þat regions · ne rebellez bot lityH;
And he þaim laught all þe lighter · as was les wondre.
Þen cairez he fro þoes cuntrees · & kerues ouer þe stremes,
Forth to francides he fared · suche a ferme yle,

[Fol. 8.]

[1] MS. maly, *corrected by later hand to* manly.
[2] *So in* MS.; *both* MSS. *corrupt.*

Seches þar to a synagoge · him-selfe & his princes,
He goes to the temple of Ammon. Amon þar awen god · at þai honoure myȝt. 1059
And so to þe temple as he tiȝt · with his[1] tid Erles,
On the way he sees a huge hart. Þañ metis him myddis þe way · was meruale to sene,
A hert with a huge hede · þe hareest oñ erthe,
Was to be-hald as a harow · for-helid ouer þe tyndis;
And þañ comande him þe kyng · kenely to schote, 1064
Bot þar was na mañ so nemyH · þat him hit couthe.
He draws a bow, and shoots it; "A! hilla, haile," quod Alexander · & him a narawe hent,
Droȝe, & at þe first draȝte · him dreped for euire.
Fra þethen to þis ilk day · þan is þat ilke place, 1068
Þe stede þar þis stith mañ · strikis þis hert,
the place is still called Sagittarius. Sagittarius forsoth · meñ gafe it to name,
And wiH do for þat ilke werk · ay qwen þe werd turnes.
Alexander offers to Ammon. Þen aires him oñ ser Alexander · tiH Amoñ temple,
Offirs to his awen gode · & honours him faire, 1073
Geuys him garsons of gold · & of gud stanes,
And hald hestes him to hete · him hettirly besekis.
He comes to a place with 15 towns, Þan passes he þethen with his princes · to sicñ a place wendis, 1076
Capho Resey we rede · þe romaunce it callis;
And þar-in fyndis him þe freke · fyftene Burghes,
and 12 rivers. And glidand to þe grete see · xij grym̄ waters.
Of ilka bild, sais þe buke · barred was þe ȝatis, 1080
Stoken stifly with-out · with staplis & cheynes.
He halts there. Þare lengis him lefe þe[1] kynge · & logis aH a neuen,
And sacrifyce þar efsones[2] · to many sere godis.
He sees Serapis in a dream, [Fol. 19.] Þe same niȝt in his slepe · Seraphis aperis, 1084
Anothire of his grete godis · in a grym fourme,
Cled in a comly clathe · of castans hewes,
And silis euyñ to him-selfe · & said him þir wordis:
"Alexander, athiH kyng[1]" · & asperly spekis, 1088
who asks if he can move a mountain. Toward a miȝti montayne · him myntis with his fynger,

[1] *At the end of the line.* [2] *Read* eftsones.

Sekes þar to a synagoge · hym-selfe & hys princez,
Amone þar awne god · þat þai adour mighten,
And so to hys tempyH to-teght · aH with hys tried Ereles.
Than met þaim in myd way · was mervale to see, 1061
Ane hert with a hoge heued · þe aughfulest on erth,
Was to behald as a harrow · foreheld ouer with tyndez;
And þan Comandez þaim þe kyng · kenely to shote, 1064
Bot þar was no man so nemyH · þat hym hit couth.
"A! eueH hale!" quod alexander · & an arow hyntes,

Drogh, and at þe frist draught · hym drepyd for euer.
Fro þine þan vnto þis day · þan is þat ilke place, 1068
The stede þar þis styffe man · strikez þis hert,
Sagittarius for soth · men seggeñ it to name,
And wiH do for þat ilke deyd · ay to þe werld lastes.
Than ayrez hym on sir alexander · to þe amonez temple,
Offers to hys awne god · & honours hym faire, 1073
Gyffez hym garsons[1] of gold · and other gude stanez,
And held hestez hym to hete · heterly besekez.
Than passid he þine with hys princez · to siche a place wendes, 1076
Chaipho rosey we rede · þe romanys it telles;
And þarin fyndez þe freke · fyftene burges,
And glydand to þe grett see · twelfe gret waters.
Off ilke belde, says þe buke · barred was þe ȝates, 1080
Stoken styfly withowte · with barrez of yren.
Thare lengez þe leue kynge · & loges aH an eueñ,
And sacrified þar eft-sones · to mony sere goddez.
The same nyght in hys slepe · serapys appered, 1084
An-other of hys grett goddez · & in a grymme forme,
Clede in a clath · of castanez colour,
And syles euen to hym-selfe · & sayd hym þees wordez:
"A! alexander, ateH[2] kynge" · and asperly spekys,
And toward a myghty mountane · hym myntyd with hys fynger, 1089

[1] MS. garfons. [2] *So in* MS.

"May þou o3t, lede, þe 3onder lawe · lyft oñ þi schulder,
And stire it oute of þe stede · & stable in a-nothire?"
He answers, "Nay." "Nay, qua mi3t þat," *quod* þe mañ · "for mede vndire
heuen?" 1092
Serapis prophesies that Alexander's name shall endure as long as the mountain. "Sire, as 3one 3ondire hi3e hiH · saH ay hald his place,
So sall þi name fra now furth · be my*n*ned in mynde,
And ay to þe day of dome · þi dedis be remenbriḋ."
Alexander asks when his death will come. Þan Alex*ander* belyue · hi*m* askis a demaunde, 1096
"I be-seche þe now, Syraphas · if þou me say wald[1]
Þe pr*o*phecy, or þou pas · of aH my playñ werdis, 1099
How me is destayned to dye · & que*n* my day fallis?"
Serapis says it is better for him not to know; "Sire, c*er*tayne," q*uod* Seraphis · "as to my-selfe
think*is*, 1101
For any hathiH vnd*er* heue*n* · I hald for þe bett*er*,
W*ith*outen wa[2] no3t at wete · þe wathe of his ende
Þeñ know[3] þe cas or it come · & ay in care lenge. 1104
but he will be poisoned while still young. Bot neu*er*-þe-les I saH þe neueñ · señ þou me now pr*a*ys,
Þou sall[4] be drechid of a drinke · a dra3te of vnsele,
And aH þi 3eris ere 3eten 3are · & þi 3outhe fenyst, 1107
Lange or þou haue meteñ þe merke · of þi mydill age.
Bot que*n* ne in qu*a*t time · sal qwaite þe þis aunt*er*,
Enquire me no3t þ*a*t questioñ · for I queth þe it neu*er*.
Another oracle will tell him more. For outhire out of þe orient · saH openly here-eft*er*
Vndo þe dre3t of þi days · & þi ded teH." 1112
Þañ waynest him þis vayne god · & voidis fr*a* þe
chambre.
Þe modi kyng on þe morne · aH monand he ryses;
[Fol. 19 *b*.] Þe mast p*ar*ti of his princes · & of his proud ost
Hastis þaṁ in-to Ascoiloym · & þ*ar* þai hi*m* bydis. 1116
He calls his carpenters, Þan callis he to hiṁ carpentaris · & comand*is* þai*m*
swyþe

[1] After l. 1097 the MS. has a half-line, viz. 'For any hathiH vndire heuen.' This is really the former half of l. 1102 below, and is marked for omission in the MS. This accounts for the omission of l. 1098 in the numbering, which is made to agree with Stevenson's edition.

[2] MS. to no3t at wete; *but either* to, *or* at, *must be omitted.*

[3] *The* w *above the line.* [4] MS. sall sal.

"May þou ogh*t*, lede, yond[e]r low · lift on þi shulder,
And stere it owt of one stede · & stablet in ane other?"
"Nay, wha my3t þ*a*t," q*uo*d þe mañ, · "for mede vnd*er*
heueñ?" 1092
"Sir, as yonder hye hille · saH hald ay hys place,
So saH þi name owt of nowmbre · be nomyn in-to mynde, [Fol. 8 *b*.]
And vnto þe day of dome · þi ded*es* be remenbryd."
Than alex*ander* als belyue · hym askys a demande, 1096
"I beseke þe, s*ir* serapys · yf þou me say wald[1]
Þe pr*o*phecy or þou passe · of aH my playne werd*es*, 1099
How me is destanet to dye · & when my day fallez?"
"Sir, c*er*tanly," q*uo*d seraphys · "als to my-seluen
thynkez, 1101
To ony atheH vnder heuen · I hald it for þe bett*er*,
With-owtyn wa no3t to witte · þe wothe of hys ende
Ne knaw þe cause or it come · & ay in care lenge. 1104
Bot neu*er*-þe-lesse I saH þe neveñ · sen þou me pr*a*yes,
Thu saH be drenchett w*ith* a drinke · a draught of vnclene,
And aH þe yherez þar · in þi youth fynyshytt,
Lange or þou metyn haue þe merke · of þi medyH age.
Bott when ne in what age or tyme · saH falle þis awent*ur*,
Inquire me noght þis question · I queth it þe neu*er*. 1110
For other owt of þe orient · saH openly hereaft*er*
Vnto[2] þe dro3t of þi days · & þi deth to[3] telle." 1112
Þan vanyshit þis wayn god · & woydez from þe
chawmbre.
The mody kyng on þe morne · aH m*ur*nand he risez,
Þe moste p*ar*ty of hys princez · & of hys proude ostez
Bound to ascolon · and þ*ar* hym abydez. 1116
Than callyd he to hys carpenters · comand þaim
swythe

[1] Line 1098 is omitted in the numbering; see note on p. 56.

[2] *So;* for Vndo. [3] *Better omitted.*

In mynde & in memory of him · to make a cite,
and builds Alexandria. And neuens it his aweñ name · þat neuer syne changid,
Bot Alexsander ay furth · efter him-selueñ.[1] 1120

¶ Sextus passus Alexandri.

He goes to Egypt. Now airis he furthe with his ost · to Egist he thinkes;
And clene aH þe contre · quen þai his come herd,
As he had bene a hiȝe gode · þai ȝode him a-gayñ,
Resaued him with reuerence · & to þar rewme lede. 1124
There he finds a black image. Þere entirs him þat Emperoure · & in þat erd findis
Of Anec his awen sire · ane ymage of sable,
A berne was of blake stane · aH þe body heweñ
With conyschance of a kynge · with[2] coroñ & septere.
He inquires who it is. Þan askis of þaim Alexander · as he þar-oñ lokis, 1129
Quat maner of mañ apoñ mold · it was made efter?
He is told it is Anectanabus. "Sire, Anectabus" · quod aH with a steueñ,
"Þat aH þe erth of Egipte · enerid vmquile." 1132
With þat þe flammand flode · feH in his eȝeñ,
He weeps, saying, "It is my own father." "Þat Anec," quod þis athil kyng · "was myne aweñ fadire."
Þañ fallis he flat oñ þe fold · & þe fete kyssis;
Oñ þe stane quare it stode · stilly he mournes. 1136
He goes to Syria. Syne in-to Sirie with his seggis · he soȝt at þe gaynest,
And þai[2] as baratours bald · him bigly with-standis,
Set oñ him sadly · & sloȝe of his kniȝtis;
Bot ȝet ȝarely are he ȝode · þai ȝald him þe regne. 1140
Then to Damascus. [Fol. 20.] Þan drafe he sa to Damac · with dukis & princes,
And sone he sesyd aH þat syde · & Sydoyne he takis,
He besieges Tyre. And þen trussis him to Tyre · & þare his tentis settis
Be-syde þe cite with a soñe · & in a sege lengys. 1144
Þare he lies with his ledis · lang or he foundes,
Before þe burȝe with his bernes · & mekiH bale suffirs.

[1] callid *added in a later hand, at the end of the line.*
[2] *Inserted at the end of the line.*

In mynde & memory of hym · to make þar a cite,
And after his[1] awne name · þat neuer syne chaungett,[2]
Alexander ay forth · after hym-selueñ. 1120

Sextus Passus.

Now ayers he forth with hys Ereles, · to egipñ he wendes;
And clene aH þe cuntree · when þai hys comyng harde,
Als he hed ben a hegh god · þai halden hym agayns,
Resaved hym with reuerence · & to þair realm̃ ledyñ.
Thare entrez hym þe Emperour · and in þat erth fyndez
Of anec hys awne syre · ane ymage of sabyH,
A berne was of blak stane · aH þe body eueñ 1127
With conyshaunce of kyngez · coroñ and septur in hand.
Than askys he þaim alexander · als he þar-on wates,
What maner of man vpon mold · þat was merkyd after?
"Sir, anec," quod aH men · with a sterne steveñ,
"That þe erth of egipt · enhered some tyme." 1132
With þat þe femand flode · flasshed in hys eghen, [Fol. 9.]
"That anec," quod þis atheH kyng · "my awne fadre was."
Þan fallez he flatt on þe fold · & þe fote kyssez
Of þat stane þat stode · & stylly murnez. 1136
Syne into surry with hys seggez · he soght þe ganest,
And þai as baratours bald · hym bigly withstandyn,
Set vppon hym sadly · & slew of hys knyghtez;
Bot ȝarle or he ȝode · þai ȝolde hym vp þe realm̃. 1140
Than draue he so to Damask · with dokez & princez,
And sone he sesys aH þat syde · and sy[do]ne he takez,
And þen he trussys hym to tyre · & þar hys tentes settes
Besyde þe site with a somme · & in a sege lengez. 1144
Þair he lay with hys ledes · lange or he fondytt,
Before þe burgh with hys bernes · & muche bale suffred.

[1] MS. myne; *wrongly.* [2] MS. chaaungett.

His men grow weary, and complain.

Quat of ane, quat of[1] oþire · oft his oste pleynes,
For wele wist þai þam̄ nane · to wyn̄ to þe cite,
It was sa stiffe & sa strangt · & stalworthly wallid,
And[2] so hedously hiȝe · it was a huge wondire,
Tildid fuH of turestis · & toures of defence,
The strong forts of Tyre. Batailid & bretagid · a-boute as a casteH.
Þe wawis of þe wild see · apon̄ þe wallis betis,
Þe pure populande hurle[3] · passis it vmby,
It was enforced with sa fele · fludis & othire,
It semed neuer sege vnder son̄ · be saute it to wyn̄.
Þan etils him sir Alexander · & belyue makis
Be-side þe cite in þe See · to sett vp a loge,
He builds a vast tower. A hiȝe tilde as a toure · teldid on̄ schippis,
Þat miȝt na Naue for þat note · neȝe to þe cite.
Quen he þis baisteH had bild · vp̄ to þe burȝe wallis,
And tiȝt him as tyme was · þe toune to assaiH,
His men are famished, Slik mischife in þe mene quile · emangt his men fallis,
For megire & for meteles · ware mervaile to here.
Þar was Princes in poynt · to perischn̄ for euire,
Alle in doute to be dede · dukis & erlis,
and nearly die of hunger. In fere to be famyschist · many fers kniȝtis,
For þar is na wa in þe werd · to þe wode hunger.
Þan pleynis him þe proudt kyng · þe pete of his men̄,
He sends to Jerusalem. And sendis out his sandis-men̄ · with selidt lettirs,
To ierusalem to Iaudis · at þe iewes teches,
[Fol. 20 b.] Þat was þe bischop̄ in þat burȝe · breuyd in þa dais;
He demands help and more men. Him moneste as a maister · him[1] mayn̄ly to sendt
Fresch̄ folke for þe fiȝt · & fode for his oste,
And aH þe trouage þare to him · tittly to wayne,
Þat he to Darius of dewe · was dangirdt to paye.
And ȝit comandt he þis clerke · þe kyngt in his writtes,
For any richas him redis · rathere to thole
He tells them it is better to serve Greeks þe mayntenance of þe Messedoyns · & of þe meri Grekis,

[1] *Inserted at the end of the line.*
[2] MS. And þai; *but* þai *is better omitted.* [3] *read* perle.

What of o þing, whatt of oþir · ofte hys oste plenys,
For wele trowde þai þan · none to wynne to þe cite,
It was so stiffe & so strangt · & so stalworthly wroght,
And so hydusly hye · þat was A grett wondre,
Tyldet fuH of torrettes · & towrez of defencez,
Bateld & britagett · abowt as a casteH.
The wawes of þe wilde see · vpon þe walle betyn̄,
The pure populand perle · passyd it vmbe,
It was enforsed so wele · with flodez & other,
Þar semed neuer sege vnder þe son̄ · by sawte it to wynne.
Than etellez hym sir alexander · & als belyue makes
Besyde þe cite in þe see · to sett vp a loge,
A hye tylde as a towre · tyldet of shippes,
Þat might no navy for þat note · negh to þe haven.
When he þis basteH had byggyd · nere þe burgh walles,
And tight hym as tyme was · þe burgh to assaylle,
Such mischefe in þe meynne tyme · vppon þe men fallez,
For meger & for metelesse · wer mervell to telle.
Thare wer princez in plite · to perische for euer,
AH in dowte to [be] dede · dukez & Ereles,
In fere to be famyshyd · mony ferce knyghtez,
For þar is [na] wa in werld · to þe wod hunger.
Than rewys hym þe prouude kyng · þe pyte of hys men̄,
And sendys forth sendesmen · with selett lettres, [Fol. 9 b.]
To Ierusalem to Iawdez · þat þe Iewes teches, Epistola.
Þat of þat burgh was byshop̄ · brevyd in þo dayes;
He monyshytt hym as a minister · hym manly to sende
Fresh folk for þe fight · & fode for þe folke,
And aH þair truage · tyte to hym wayfe,
That he to Darius of dew · was dangert to pay.
And ȝit command he þis clerke · þe kyng in hys writtez,
For any richez he redes · rather to chese
The mayntenaunce of massidons · & of þe mony grekez,

than Persians.

Þañ þaim[1] of Persy to pay · or to plese authere. 1180
Þañ takis þe bischop þe breue · & buȝes to a chambre,
Resayued it with reuerence · & redis it[2] ouire,
Gase him doun be degrece · a-gayne to þe sale,
Swiftly to þe swiars · & þañ his sware ȝeldis : 1184

The bishop of Jerusalem says he will never go against Darius.

"Sirs, airis a-gayñ to Alexander · & aH þus[3] him tellis,
Þat me was done many day · depely to swere,
Neuer Persy to paire · to pas with myne armes
In damaging of Darius · durand his lyfe." 1188

Alexander is wrath, and vows to teach them better.

Sone as þe wale kyng wist · he writhis him vnfaire,
"Now be þat god," quod þe gome · "þat gatt me on erthe,
I saH anes on þe iewis · enioyne or I die, 1191
SaH keñ þañ quas comandment · to kepe at þam faH."

He sends men out on the 'foray of Gadirs.'

Ȝit for na torfar him tid · Tyre wald he noȝt leue,
Bot chese him out a chiftane · & charge[s] him belyue,
A mody man, ser Meliager · a maister of his[4] oste,
To fande him furth with a flote · of fyue hundreth kniȝtis; 1196
A[nd] Ioynes him to Iosaphat · his iournay to[5] take,
And aH þe pastours & þe playnes · prestly to driue,
And bring in aH þe bestaiH · barayñ & othire,
Þat he miȝt se oñ any syde · þe cite of Gadirs. 1200

Meleager and Sampson enter [Fol. 21.] the valley,

Þañ mouys he on, ser Meliager · þis miȝtifuH prince
With a soume of sekir men · & Sampson þañ ledis,
A renke at in þa regions · had redyñ oft sythis,
And knew þe costis & þe kitthis · clene aH-to-gedire.
Þus ȝede þai furthe egirly · & entirs þe vaile, 1205

and take a great number of cattle.

And slike a prai þañ apreued · as pyne were to rekeñ,
Bryngis furthe, sayd þe boke · bestis out of nounbre,[6]
And trottes oñ toward Tyre · with taite at þaire hertis.
Bot or þai meteñ ware a myle · þe meris with-outen,

[1] MS. þaiem. [2] *Inserted at the end of the line.* [3] MS. þ^us^.
[4] MS. hio. [5] MS. to to ; *with former* to *struck out.*
[6] MS. mounbre.

Þen þaim of perse to pay · or to please owder. 1180
Than takez þe Bishop þe breue · & to chawmbre bownes,
Ressaves it with reuerence · & redes it ouer,
Gase hym downe be degrece · ayayn to þe sale,
Swythly to þe swyers · & þaim þe sware ȝeldez : 1184

Epistola.

"Sirres, ayres agayn to alexander · & all þus hym tellys,
That me was done mony day · deply to swere,
Neuer perse to pare · ne passe with none armez
In damagyng of darius · endurand hys lyue." 1188
When þe wale kyng wist · he wex wode wroth,
"Now by god," quod þe grome · "þat gatt me on erth,
I saH seche Iewres on þe Iewes · enys[1] or I dye,
SaH kenne whoys commaundement · þat þaim to kepe fallez. 1192
Ȝit for no torfer þat he tyde · tyre wald he noght leue,
Bot chesez hym owt a chiftane · & chargez hym belyue,
A mody man, sir meliager, · a maister of hys oste,
To founde forth with a flete · of fyfe hundreth knyghtez ;

And iniones hym to Iosaphatt · hys Iornay to make, 1197
And aH þe pastours & þe playnes · prestly to [2] dryve,
Bot bring in all þes bestes · bareñ & other,
Þat he might see in ony syde · þe cite of Gaders. 1200
Than mefes on sire Meliager · þis mightfuH prince
Wyth a soume of syker meñ : & sampson þaim ledes,
A renke þat in þa regions · had rydyn oft sythez,
And knew þe costez & þe kythez · clene aH-to-geder. 1204
Þus hyed þai forth egerly · & entird þe wale,
And suche a pray þaim preved · als pyne wer to rekeñ,
Bringez forth, als says þe buk · bestes owt of nowmbre, [Fol. 10.]
And trottes on toward tyre · with ioy at þair hertes. 1208
Bot or þai metyn hed a myle · þe mers with-out',[3]

[1] *read* enioine. [2] MS. de.
[3] MS. were out.

Þar met*is* þaim̄ *with* a mekill flote · þe maist*er* of þe playnes,
He þ*at* was duke of þe[1] droues · & of þe derfe hillis,
One Theosellus withstands Alexander's men. Ane Theosellus, a tulke · þ*at* tened þam̄ vnfair*e*. 1212
He girdis in *with*[1] a ging · armed in plates,
Alto-brun*t*es oure bernes · & brathly woundid,
Fellis fele at a frusch̄ · fey to þe gronde,
And many renke at he roue · rase neu*er* eft*er*. 1216
Sir Meleager fights manfully. Þan was s*er* Meliag*er* moued · & mayn̄ly debat*is*,
Fling*is* out oñ a fole · *with* a feH spere,
Gers many grete syr*e* grane · & girdis þur3e maillis,
And many bernes at a braide · in his brath endis. 1220
So do Sampson And Sampson oñ anothir*e* side · set*is* out belyue,
Bruschis furth oñ a blonk · brymly he smyt*is*,
Bet*is* oñ *with* a brande · broken was his lance,
Hewis dou*n* of þa hirdis · hurt*is* þam̄ vn-fair*e*. 1224
and Aristes. Arystes, ane athill man · ai elike fi3t*is*,
Spirris out *with* a spere · & spedis his mi3t*is*,
And noyed of þar*e* note-men · at þe nete kepid,
And many bald, or he blañ · bro3t out o-lyue. 1228
Caulus also distinguishes himself. Caulus, anothir*e* kni3t · oñ a kene stede,
Oñ Theosellus in twa · his tymbr*e* he brekis;
And þan he dryfes to þe duke · as demys þe text*is*,
And *with* a swyng of a swerd · swappis of hes hede. 1232
[Fol. 21 *b*.] When he was drepid & dede · at þe droues 3emyd,
Þe p*re*kars of þe pastors · & of þe proude landis,
AH þe folke of his affinite · at fresch̄ war*e* vñ-wondid,
Þ*at* outhir*e* fote had or fole · to þe fli3t foundid. 1236
Meleager retreats in triumph, with all the cattle. Þus Meliag*er* *with* his meñ · þe menske has a-chevyd,
For þe fairer*e* of *þar* faes · & þe fild wonñ;
Raschis *with* rethere · & rydis bot a quyle,
But his troubles are not over. Þ*at* ne ne3is þam̄ a-nothir*e* note · as new as þe first. 1240
Þar*e* was a maist*er* of þe marches · mi3t*ist* of othir*e*
Beritinus attacks him. Ane Beritin*us*, a berne · as þe buke tell*is*,
Come girdand out of Gadirs · out of þe grete cite,

[1] *Inserted at the end of the line.*

Þar met*es* þaime a miche folke · þe maist*er* of þe playnes,
The duke of þe drafes · & of þe derfe fellys,
One teosellus a tulke · þ*at* tenyd þaim vnfair*e*. 1212
He girdes in *with* a gyñ · grathed in playthes,
AH to-brountes þes bernes · & wykydly þaim woundes,
Felles mony fey at a frush · fast to þe grunde,
And mony renke þ*at* he ou*er*-rade · rase neu*er* aftir. 1216
Than was s*ir* meliag*er* amoved · & manly debat*es*,
Flyngez forth on a fole · *with* a fele spere,
And beres mony grett syre · þorow thike males, 1219
AH feH bernes at [a] brayde · whilse his breth lastez.
And sampson on ane other syde · settez on belyue,
Brushes forth on a blonke · brathly he smytez,
Betes on *with* a brande · for brokyn was hys launce,
Hewes douñ on þe herdez · & hurtez þaim vnfair*e*. 1224
Then arestes, an atheH man · &[1] ay elike feghtez,
Sparres forth *with* a spere · & sped*es* hys mightez,
. . . . . .
Mony bald or he blan · broght owt of lyfe. 1228
Than Caulus, an other knyght · oñ a ked stede,
On thoosellus in twa · hys tembre he brekys;
And þen he dryffes to þe duke · als tellys me þe texte,
Bot *with* a swyng of a swerde · swappez of hys heued.
When he was drepyd þus & dede · & þe drawes 3emyd,
þe prekers of þe pasturs · & of þe prouud Landez,
AH þe folk of hys affinite · þ*at* frehsse[2] wer vnwoundet,
þ*at* other fote hed or fole · to þe fly3t foundez. 1236
Thus meliager *with* hys meñ · þe menske *þar* acheuett,
Fellyd þe feirare[3] of *þar* foes · and þe feld wonnez[4];
And rachen *with* þair route · & ryden bott a while,
Bot *þar* neghyd þaim ane o*þer* note · als new as before;
Þar was a maist*er* of þe marche · þe myghtiest of other.
One beritin*us*, a berne · als þe buke telles, 1242
Come girdand furth of gaders · owt of þe grete cyte,

[1] *Better omitted.* [2] *Sic.* [3] MS. feirhare. [4] *Read* wonn.

With þe selcuthest soume · þat semblid was euire. 1244
Slik a mynd vñ-to[1] me · ware meruaiłł to rekeñ,
30,000 foes attack the Greeks. Thretti thousand in thede · of thra men of armes,
Slike as was buskest on blonkes · in brenys & platis,
And othire folawand oñ fote · fele with-outen nounbre.
Þe multitude was sa mekiłł · as mynes vs þe writtis,
Of wees & of wild horsis · & wapened prenys,
Sa stithe a steuyn in þe stoure · of stedis & ellis,
As it was semand to siȝt · as ałł þe soyle trymblid. 1252
The Macedonians are dismayed. Þan ware þe Messedones amayd · quen þa see[2] sa many;
Sire Meliager [was] in gret mynd · a man out to sende
To ser Alexander belyue · þaire allire maister, 1255
To come & help with his here · or þai to hande ȝode.
None like to go on a message to Alexander. Þare was nane þat was glad · þat message to gange,
Bot ilka lathire & othire · to leue þaire frynde,
Fest þar forward in-fere · þat fewe at þai ware,
To do as driȝten wald deme · & dyi ałł to-gedire; 1260
[Fol. 22.] To telle þaire torfere entyre · it taryed me swythe.
Sir Meleager kills Beritinus, Bot so þe mode Meliager · & his men feȝtis,
Þat ser Beritinus þe bald · þai bretned to dethe,
And Sampsoñ oñ þis side · was slay þar-agaynys. 1264
but Sampson is slain. Þeñ mournes ałł þe Messedones · & mayntеñ him ȝerne,
Makis þar mane for þat man · & many othire noble,
Many Greeks are killed. For maistris & mynistris · menere & grettir, 1267
Þat was in morsels magged · & martrid a hundreth.
And þat left ware oñ lyfe · bot a litiłł meȝne,
Ware als malstrid[3] & mased · & matid of þaire strenthes,
Sa waike & so wyndles · & wery for-foȝteñ, 1271
Þat þai were wiłł in þis werd · qwat þai worthe suld.
Sir Meleager is sore wounded. Sire Meliager & othire maa · mayned were sare,
Ałł be-bled & to-brissid · þat neȝe þar breth failes,
Þai were sa feble & sa faynt · & fułł of þaim-selfe,
Þat all in fere was in fourme · þe fild for to ȝeld. 1276
Arestes goes to tell Alexander. Þañ aires him forth Arestes · was augrily wondid,
To Alexander onone · þas auntirs hiṁ tellis,

[1] to *added in margin.* [2] see *added in margin.* [3] *Sic.*

With þe selcouutest soume · þat semblyd was euer, 1244
With a mynd to me · wer mervełł to rekyñ, [Fol. 10 b.]
A threti thouusand in thede · of thro men of armes,
Suche as wer on blonnkes · in brenys & platez,
And other folowand on fote · fele owt of nowmbre. 1248
The multitude was so much · as menys vs þe writtez,
Of wyes & of wild horse · & of wapenned bernes,
So styf a steuen in þe stoure · of stedes & enmys,
As it was semand [to siȝt] · as þe soñ tremblyd. 1252
Þen wer þe masydons ameved · when þai so mony seeñ;
Sir meliager was in grete mynd · a mañ owt to send
To alexander als belyue · þaire aller maister, 1255
To Come to help with hys heir · or þai to hand rydyñ.
Bot þar was nane þat was made · þe message to fannge,
Bot ilke lede elike loth · to leven þair frendes,
And festned þair forwardez in-fere · þe few þat þar wer,
To do as drighten wald deme · & dye ałł to-geder; 1260
To teł þair torfer in tere · it wald tary me to langt.
Bot so þe mody meliager · & hys men foghteñ,
Þat Sir bertinus þe bald · þai brityned to dede,
And sampson was of hys syde · slayn þar-agayns. 1264
Þen murned ałł þe masydons · & meynyd hym swyth,
Made grett mone for þis mañ · & mony oþer noble,
For maisters & ministers · meyner & gretter, 1267
Þat wer in morsellys made · & martyred by hundrethis.
And þat left wer on-lyue · bot a lyteł meynhe,
Wer also maistrett & masyd · & mated of þair strennthes,
So wake & so wyndles · & wery for-fouughteñ,
Þat þai wer wille in þe werld · qwat þai worth suld. 1272
Sir meliager & oþer mo · mayned wer sare,
Ałł to-bled & to-brysed · þat nere þair breth fayled,
Thai wer so feble and so faynte · and fuł of þaim-seluеñ,
Þat ałł in fere & in forme · þe feld for to ȝeld. 1276
Than ayres hym forth aristes · was angerdly woundett,
To alexander anone · þees aunters hym telles,

Þe morth of aH þe Messedone[s] · & of þe many grekis,
Rekens hi*m* þ*ar* resons · þ*at* reuthe was to here. 1280

Alexander rallies some men round him, and leaves Tyre.

With þ*at* þe semely kyng · chacches his bernes,
Semblis him a huge soume · & fra þe sege wendis,
Þe toure of Tire & þe toune · titly he leues,
And Ioynes hi*m* to Iosaphat · fuH ioyles he rydes. 1284
Ay he gret*is* as he gase · for grefe of his kny3t*is*,
Ay he pleynys as he passes · þe pite of his erlis,

He laments the loss of Sampson.

Ay he wepis as he wendis · for his wale princes,
And sou*er*aynly for Sampsoñ · he sorowis ay elike. 1288
When he was tane f*ra*ward[1] Tyre · toward þe vaile,

[Fol. 22 *b*.]

Þe werke at he wro3t had · þ*at* wat*er* whyt-in,
Þ*at* he had sett in þe see · þe cite w*ith*-out,
Þ*ar*-in he lefte had a lede · þe loge for to kepe. 1292

Sir Balaan of Tyre assails Alexander's siege-works,

Bot þan s*ir* Balaan, a berne · at in þe bur3e lengis,
Ane of þe terands of Tyre · atyres him[2] belyue,
Buskes him in breneis · w*ith* big meñ of armes, 1295
W*ith* t*ra*umes & w*ith* tribochet*is* · þe tild to asaile.
He bekirs out at þe bild · w*ith*in þe bur3e-wallis,
And þai w*ith*out in þe werke · wi3tly defendis,
Schot scharply betwene · schomes[3] of dartis;
Weris wondirly wele[4] · werpis out stanes. 1300

and breaks them down.

Bot Balaa[n] in þe barmekeñ · sa bitt*er*ly fi3tis,
AH to-combirs þam̃ clene · w*ith* cast of engynes.
Sone þe top of þe toure · he tilt*is* in-to þe wat*ir*,
And aH þe tulkis in þe tild · he t*er*mens o lyue; 1304
And þan in bat*is* & in bargis · he bownes hi*m* swyth,

He destroys Alexander's towers, and throws them into the sea.

To þe bothu*m* of þe baisteH · he buskis hi*m* w*ith*-out,
Bretens dou*n* aH þe bild · & þe bernys quellis, 1307
Drenches hir*e* in þe hi3e see · & drawis hir*e* oñ hepis.
Quen it was smeten in smaH · w*ith* þe smert wa3es,
Ilka gobet his gate · glidis fra othir*e*.
Þus[5] þe strenth ilk stike[6] · was *in* a stounde wasted,

[1] MS. toward *altered to* f*ra*ward.
[2] MS. *here inserts* h, *but it is struck out*. [3] *Read* schoures.
[4] *Added in the margin*. [5] MS. þus was.
[6] MS. stilk stike; *but* stilk *is struck out*.

The morte of aH þe masydons · & of þe mony grekez,
Rekens hym þe resons · þ*at* reuth was to here. 1280
W*ith* þ*at* þe comle kynge · chakez hys bernes,
Semblett Hym A Hoge soume · & fro þe seige wendys, [Fol. 11.]
The toure of tyre & þe towne · titely he levys,
And ioynes hym to Iosaphatt · full ioyles to ryde. 1284
Ay he gret*es* as he goys · þe grefe of hys knyghtez,
Ay he plenys as he passez · þe pite of hys Ereles,
Ay he wepys as he wend*es* · for hys wale princes,
And sou*er*andly for sampsoñ · he sorows eu*er*ilyke. 1288
When he was t*ur*nyd froward tyre · toward þe wale,
The werk at he wroght had · þe wat*er* withiñ,
Þ*at* he hed sett in þe see · þe cite w*ith*owte,
Thare-in he left hed a litiH[1] · [þe] loge for to kepe. 1292
Bott þen s*ir* balaañ, a berne · þ*at* in þe burgh lenged,
One of þe tiraundez of tire · atired hym belyue,
Buskes hym in brenes · w*ith* big meñ of armes,
With t*ra*wynns & trebget*es*[2] · þe towre to assaylle. 1296
He bekers owt at þe beld · ou*er* þe brade walle,
And þai w*ith*in[3] þe werk · wightly defendeñ,
Shotoñ sharply bytwene · swappyn owt dartez;
Weres wondrely wele · warpyn owt stanes. 1300
Bot balaan in þe britage · so bitterly feghtez,
All to-combers þaim clene · w*ith* cast of engynes.
Sone þe toppe of þe toure · he typys in þe wat*er*,
And aH þe tulkez in þe teld · he termys þe lyve; 1304
Than in bargez & in botez · he bownes hym swyth,
To þe bothom of þe basteH · he buskez hym w*ith*owte,
Bretens downe aH þe belde · & þe bernes whelles,
Drenches hir in þe depe · & drawes hir on hepys. 1308
When it was smytyn so in smaH · w*ith*in þe smert wawes,
Ilke gobett fro o*þer* · glyd*es*[4] fast þair way.
Thus þis strenth ilke steke · in a stound wastyd,

[1] *Read* lede. [2] MS. trelget*es*. [3] MS. w*ith*owt w*ith*in.
[4] MS. gyd*es*, *corr. to* glyd*es*.

And Balaa[n] bowis in-to þe burȝe · & barris to þe ȝat*is*.
Be þis oure kyng *with* his kniȝt[*is*] · is comen in-to þe vaile, 1313

Alexander arrives at the valley,

Alex*ander* *with* ane ost · his kniȝt*is* to help̄,
Fyndis a fewe of his folke · feȝtand ȝerne,
And ay a segge be him-selfe · sett aH a hundreth. 1316

spurs Bucefalus,

With þat Bucifalon his blonke · he brased[1] in þe side,
Springis out *with* a spere · spillis at þe gaynest,
Ridis euen þurȝe þe route · þ*ar* rankest þai were,

[Fol. 23.]

Be rawe of þ*ar* rabet*is* · he ruschid to þe erthe, 1320

and overthrows all before him.

He strikis aH fra þ*ar* stedis · streȝt him be-forne.
Was nane sa stiffe in þat stoure · miȝt stand him agayn̄ ;
Quare althire-thickest was þe thrange · þurȝe þaim he rynnes,
And makis a wai wyde enoȝe · waynes to mete. 1324

He draws his sword, and leaves no foe unslain except the captives.

He laschis out a lange swerde · quen his launce failes,
Threschis doun in a[2] thrawe · many threuyn dukis,
Stirs him sa in a stonde · & his stithe erlis
þat þ*ar* was [na] berne on bent · bott bretened or ȝolden. 1328

He buries his own dead.

þe seggis on̄ his awen side · þat he slayn̄ fyndis,
He mas to g*ra*ue su*m* in grete · & su*m* in gray marble.
And þa þ*at* laft ware o-lyue · he lokis þ*ar* woundis,
And faire fangis his folke · & fra þe fild wendis. 1332

He leaves Gadirs,

þan bowes he to þe baistaH · & brymly it semblis,
Gedirs of ilk glode · grett*ir* & smallire,
And p*re*kis furth̄ *with* his p*ra*y · & passes fr*a*ward Gadirs,

and returns to Tyre.

And tiȝt agayne toward Tyre · to t*er*men his sege. 1336
Que*n* he was dreuyn ou*er* þe dales · & drewe to þe cite,

He sees his siege-works destroyed.

With þat he blisches to þe burȝe · & sees his bild voidid,
Als bare as a bast · his baisteH a-way,
But outhire burde or bate · bot þe brade watt*ir*, 1340

[1] *The* a *is ill-formed.* [2] *Added in the margin.*

And balaan bownes to þe burgh · & barres þe ȝatez. 1312
Be þat owr kyng *with* hys knyghtez · was comen to þe wale,
Alex[*ander*] *with* an hoste · hys atheH to help̄,
Fynd*es* a few of hys folke · feghtyng fuH ȝarne,
And a sege by hym-self · sett to a hundreth. 1316
With þat bucifelon̄ hys blonke · he brochys in þe sydez,
Spryngez forth *with* a spere · spyllez at þe ganest,
Rides euen þorow þe route · þ*ar*e rankest þai were, [Fol. 11 b.]
The rawes of þair arayes · he rushes to þe erth, 1320
He strikez aH þair sted*es* · streght downe hym before,
Was none so styffe in þe stoure · to stand hym ayayns ;

þar aH þe thikest wer of thrange · thrugh þaim he rynnes,
And makez a way wyde enogh · waynez for to mete. 1324
He lashes owt a lang swerde · when hys launce want*es*,
Thristez downe in a thraw · mony thryme dokes,
Stirrez hym so in a stound · he and hys styff ereles,
þat þ*ar* ne was bern̄ on þe bent · bot bryttynett or ȝolden̄. 1328
The segges of hys awne syde · aH at he slayn fyndez,
He makes to grave, some in grete · some in gray m*ar*byH.
And þo þ*at* left wer on lyue · he leches þair woundez,
And fair fangez he hys folke · & fro þe feld t*ur*nes. 1332

3a victoria alex*andri*.

. . . . . .
. . . . . .
Then p*re*kes forth *with* hys pray · þus before gaders,

And t*ur*nes agayn toward tyre · to terme hys seige. 1336
When he was dreven ou*er* þe dales · & drew to þe cite,
With þat he blyshys to þe burgh · & seys hys beylde woydett,
Also bare as ony baste · hys basteH away,
Bout ony buske or borde · bot þe brode wat*er*. 1340

Þan mo*ur*nes aH Þe Messadones · & maynly was sturb[i]d.[1]
And Alex*ander* also · was augrely greuyd,
Alexander despairs of taking Tyre, So ware Þai troubild out of tone · quen Þai Þaire tild miste,
Þat of Þe taking of Tire · trest Þai na langire. 1344
And so him-selfe in his slepe · Þe same niȝt eft*ir*,
but dreams that he has a ripe grape in his hand, Him thoȝt he had in his hand · & held of a vyne
A growen grape of a grype · a grete & a rype, 1347
Þe quilke he flange[2] oñ Þe flore · & *with* his fete tredis.
And quen he broken had Þe bery · als Þe berne semes,
[Fol. 23 *b*.] which yields much wine. Þar folowis out of fresche wyne · feetles to mete;
So largely & so delauyly · of licoure, him thinkis,
Of ane rasyn to ryñ · it was a ryfe wondire. 1352
A clerk tells him that this predicts his victory over Tyre. Þe kyng callis him a clerke · kenely oñ Þe[3] morne,
Als radly as he rase · to reche him his sweuyñ.
"Sire, bees a-dred neu*ir* a dele" · Þe diuino*ur* said,
"I vndire-take on my trouthe · Tire is Þine aweñ; 1356
For Þe bery at ȝe brake sa · is Þe burȝe eue*n*.
Þai saH be sesid Þe fuH sone · & to Þi-selfe ȝoldeñ,
For Þou saH eft aH oñ ernest · entire oñ Þe wallis,
And foulire[4] vnd*ir* Þi feete · w*ith*-in a fewe days. 1360
Now compas kenely Þis kyng · & cast*is* in his mynd
How he miȝt cou*ir* in any cas · to come to Þe cite,
Deuynes depely on dais · dropis many wiles,
Alexander builds up a larger tower than before, If he cuthe seke any sleȝt · Þat hi*m* ser*u*e wald; 1364
And mak*is* to sett in Þe see[2] · riȝt in Þe same place,
Þar as Þe bild at he bi[l]did · biggid wasse first,
To stable vp a grete strenthe · aH on store schipis,
Hug*ir* be Þe halfe dele · & hiȝere Þañ Þe toÞire; 1368
And Þat he fiches & firmes · sa fast to Þe waH,
So nere vnethes at ane eld · miȝt narowly betwene,
higher than the walls of the town, And band hire, as Þe buke sais · bigly to-gedire, 1371

[1] *The* i *is illegible.* [2] MS. *inserts* of, *but it is struck out.*
[3] *Added in the margin.* [4] *Read* foule hire.

Than m*ur*nes aH Þe masidons · & felly wer trublett,

And alex*ander* was also · awgerdly grevyde,
So wer Þai t*ur*blett of Þe towne · qwen Þai Þ*ar* tild myssyd,
That of Þe takyng of tire · tristed Þai no leng*er*. 1344
And so hym-selfe in hys slepe · Þe same nyght after,
Hym toght[1] he had in hys hand · a held of a wyne,
A growen grope of a gripe · a grett & a rype, 1347
Þe whilke he flonge of Þe floure · & *with* hys fete tred*es*;
And when he brokyn hed Þe bery · als Þe bern semys,
Þ*ar* flowe owt of fresh wynne · flodez enowe;
So largly & so delavy · of liquor hym thynkez,
Of ane raysyn to ryn · Þ*at* was a gret wondre. 1352
Þe kynge callez a clerke · kenely on Þe morne,
Als radly as eu*er* he rose · to rachen hym hys swevyñ.
"Sir, beys dred neu*er* a dele" · Þe devino*ur* hym sayde,
"I vnd*er*take it on my trewth · tyre is Þi nawne; 1356
For Þe bery Þ*at* Þ*ou* brake · Þ*at* is Þe burgh eueñ,
That shal be sesyd Þe ful sone · & to Þi-seluen ȝoldeñ, [Fol. 12.]
For Þ*ou* saH eft in ernest · enter Þe walle*s*,
And feH hir vnder fote · w*ith*in a few days." 1360
Now Compas kenely Þe kyng · & caste*s* in hys mynd
How he couth in ony case · come to Þe cyte,
Devynez deply on days · dropes mony willes,
If he couht seke ony sleght · Þ*at* hym ser*u*e wald; 1364
And makes to sett in Þe see · right in Þe same place,
Þair as Þe tild Þ*at* he bild · bigget was frist,
To stabill vp a strenth · aH of store schippe*s*,
Hoger by Þe halfe dele · & hyer Þen Þ*at* o Þ*er*; 1368
And Þ*at* he feghys & fermes · so fast to Þe waH,
So negh Þ*at* vnneth a nedyH · myght narowly bytwene,
And band hir, as Þe boke says · bigly to-ged*er*,

[1] *Sic in* MS.

With þat scho flisch noþer fayle[1] · fyue score aunkirs.
Quen he had tiȝt vp þis tram · & þis tild rerid,
Hit had of bradnes abofe · to breue out of mesure;
and close against them. And to hede be a huge thing · hiȝere it semed
þan was þe wallis, sais þe writt · of þe wale touris. 1376
He ascends the tower, þan Alex*ander* aH his ane · an-ane he ascendis,
Closid aH in clere stele · & in clene plates,
[Fol. 24.] And monestis ilk modire soñ · maynly & swyth̄,
þat all be bowne at a brayd · þe burȝe to assaile. 1380
and bids his men be ready. And aH þe ost euyñ ou*ir* · he openly comandis
To be[2] radly aH arayd · & redy to fiȝt;
He assaults Tyre; And quen þai saȝe þat him-selfe[3] · þe cite was entrid,
Wan vp wiȝtly on þe waHis · ilk wee him eft*ir*. 1384
Now tenelis vp taburs · and aH þe toūn rengis,
drums and trumpets sound. Steryñ steuyn vp̄ strake · strakid þ*ar* trumpis,
Blewe bemys of bras · bernes assemblis,
Seȝes to oñ ilk syde · & a saute ȝeldis. 1388
þar*e* presis to w*ith* paues · peple w*ith*outeñ;
Archers approach the walls. Archars w*ith* arows · of att*er* envemonde[4]
Schot*is* vp scharply · at shalk*is* oñ þe waHis,
Lasch̄ at þam̄ of loft · many lede floȝen, 1392
The besieged defend themselves. And þai ȝapely a-ȝayne · & ȝildis þam swythe,
Bekir*e* out of þe burȝe · bald men many,
Kenely þai kast of · w*ith* kast*is* of stanys,
Driues dart*is* at our*e* dukis · dedly þam woundid. 1396
The Greeks ascend the tower. þan passe vp our*e* princes · prestly[5] enarmed,
In-to þe baisteH a-bofe · bremely ascendid,
Sum w*ith* lances oñ-loft · & w*ith* lange swerdis,
With ax & w*ith* alblast*er* · & alkens wapeñ. 1400
Alexander performs wonders. Alex*ander* ai elike · augrily feȝt*is*,
Now a schaft, now a schild · nowe a scheue hent*is*,
Now a sparth, now a spere · & sped so his miȝt*is*,
þat it war*e* tere any tonge · to of his turnes rekyñ. 1404

[1] MS. flay fayle; *but* flay *is struck out.*
[2] *Added in the margin.* [3] selfe *added in the margin.*
[4] *Sic.* [5] MS. *inserts* er, *but it is struck out.*

Lest sho flechett or faylett · w*ith* fyfe score ankers. 1372
When he hed tight vp þis trame · & þis teld reryd,
It hed of bradnes aboue · to breue owt of meso*ur*;
And to hede by hoge þing · hegher it semyd
Than was [þe walles], as þe writte says · of þe wale tourez.
þan alex*ander* aH [his ane] · a-none he ascendez, 1377
Closed aH in clere stele · & in clene platez,
And monyshit iche modersoñ · manly & swythe,
þat aH be bowne at a brade · þe burght to asayle. 1380
AH þe hoste[1] euen ou*er* · opynly he comandes
ȝarly aH to be arraed · and redy to fight;
And when þat þai see þ*at* hym-selfe · þe cite was entird,
Wynnen vpp vppo[2] þe walle · ilke wy hym after. 1384
Now tynkyH vp taburnes · þ*at* aH þe towne ri*n*ges,
Sterne stevyn vpon stroke · straked trompett*es*,
Blew bemes of brace · bernes assembled,
Sought to on ilk syde · & a saute ȝeldyñ, 1388
To pr*ese* to w*ith* paves · a peple w*ith*owte;
Archers w*ith* arowes · of att*er* enuenmonyd[3]
Shoton vp sharply · at salkez on þe wallez,
Lashe at þaim on-lofte · in mony lowd showte, 1392
And þai ȝopely ayayn · ȝeldyn þaim swythe,
Bekeryng forth of þe burgh · bald men many, [Fol. 12 b.]
Kenely þai kepe · w*ith* castyng of stanes,
Dryves dartez at owr dukez · deply þaim woundeñ. 1396
Than passyd vp of princez · pristly enarmed,
Into þe basteH abowne · bremely ascendeñ,
Some w*ith* launcez on-lofte · & some w*ith* long swerdez,
With ax & w*ith* awblest*er* · & alken wapens. 1400
And alex*ander* ay elik · awgerdly feghtez,
Now a shafte, now a shelde, · now a swerde hentez,
Now a sparth, now a spere · & sped so hys mightez,
þ*at* it wald tere ony tong · hys tournays to rekeñ. 1404

[1] *Better* oste. [2] *Sic.* [3] *Read* enuenomyd.

And þai *with*-in on þe waH · worthili *with*-stude,
Fersly defendᵈ of · & fellid of his kny3t*is*,
Thristis ou*ir* thikefald · many threuyn berne[s], 1407
[Fol. 24 b.] And dou*n* bakwardᵈ þam̄ bare · in-to þe bradᵉ watt*ir*.
The Greeks are hard pressed. *With* þ*at* our*e* wees *with*out · writhis þam vnfare,
Went wode of þair*e* witt · & wrek*is* þam̄ swyth̄;
For na wounde ne na wathe · wand þai na lang*ir*,
Bot aH wirk*is* him þe wa · & wrake at he cuthe. 1412
The Greeks fight very fiercely, Su*m* braidis to þ*ar* bowis · bremely þai schut,
Quethirs out quarels · quikly be-twene;
Strykis vp of þe stour*e* · stanes of engynes,
þ*at* þe bretage a-boue · brast aH in soundir*e*, 1416
Girdis ou*ir* garett*is* · *with* gomes to þe erthe,
and destroy the battlements of Tyre. Tilt toritt*is* dou*n* · toures oñ hepis,
Spedely *with* sprygaldis · spilt þair*e* braynes,
Many mi3tfuH man · marris oñ þe wallis. 1420
And be þe kirnells war*e* kast · & kutt dou*n* before,
Be þ*at* þe baisteH & þe bur3e · war*e* bathe elike hi3e,
And all our*e* werke *with*out þe wallis · weter*l*y semedᵈ,
þe sidis of þe cite · to se to o fernes, 1424
Then Alexander enters the breach, þañ Alex*ander* belyf[1] · oñ þam̄ aH entris,
Bruschis in *with* a brand · on bernes a hundreth,
Thrangᵗ thur3e a thousand · þar*e* thikest þai were,
Wynnes worthly ou*er* þe wallis · *with*-in to þe cite. 1428
þe first modir*e* soñ he mett · oþir*e* mañ outhir*e*,
slays Balaan, Was Balaan þe bald berne · as þe boke tellis,
And hi*m* he sett*is* oñ a saute · & slo3e hi*m* belyue, 1431
and throws him over the wall. And werpid hi*m* out ou*ir* þe waH · in-to þe wild str*e*me.
Sone as our*e* athils be-hind · sa3e þ*ar* he entred,
His men & aH þe Messedones · maynly ascendis,
And þai of Grece gredely · girdis vp eftir*e*,
Thring*is* vp oñ a thraw · thousand*is* many. 1436
[Fol. 25.] Su*m* stepis vp on sties · to þe stane wallis,
The Greeks climb up, On ilka staffe of a staire[2] · stike wald a clust*er*;

[1] MS. bely, *altered to* belyf *in later hand.*
[2] MS. *repeats* staire.

And þai w*ith*in on þe waH · wightly withstondyñ,
Derfley defenden of · & fellez of hys bernes,
Thraste ou*er* thikefald · mony thrifen knyghtez,
And douñ bakeward þai bare · into þe brade wat*er*. 1408
With þ*at* oure wyes w*ith*owte · wrathen þaim vnfaire,
Went ne wode owt of þ*ar* witte · & wrekes þaim swyth;
For no wa ne no wound · waned þai no langer,
Bot aH wirkyd þaim wa · & wrake at þai couth. 1412
Som braden to þair bowes · & bremely shotyñ,
Whirres owt quarels · whikly betwene;
Strike vp of þe stoure · stanes & [1] engynes,
þ*at* þe britage abofe · brast aH in sonder, 1416
Girdes ou*er* garrates · w*ith* gomes[2] to þe erth,
Typed torrett*es* doune · towres on hep*es*,
Spedely w*ith* springaltez · spilten þair bernes,
Many mightyfuH man · merred on þe walles. 1420
And be þe kernels wer kestᵗ · & cut[3] doun before,
Be þ*at* þe basteH & þe burgh · was bath elike hye,
And aH owre þe werke w*ith*owt · witter*l*y semyd,
The sydes of þe cite · to se to on fernesse, 1424
Than alex*ander* als belyue · on þaim aH entres,
Brushes in *with* a brannde · on bernes an hundreth,
Thrang þorow a thousand · þ*ar* as þai thikest wer,
Wynnes wightly ou*er* þe waH · w*ith*in to þe cite. 1428
The frist moderson þ*at* he mett · or other man other, [Fol. 13.]
Was balaan þe bald berne · as þe buke tellez,
And hym he sett*es* on a sawte · & slogh hym belyfe,
And wappyd[4] hym ou*er* þe walles · in-to þe wild stremes.
When þair hatels byhynde · saw þ*ar* heued entr*e*, 1433
Hys men & aH þe masydons · manly ascendeñ,
And þai of grece gredely · girdes vp after,
Thronge vp on a thraw · thousandez mony. 1436
Some spettyn[5] vp on styes · to þe stane walles,
On ilke staffe on a stare · steke wald a clostre;

[1] & *written above the line; read* of. [2] MS. cunes; *wrongly.*
[3] MS. owt. [4] *Read* warpyd. [5] *Read* steppyn.

some with ladders, and some without.

And qua sa leddirs had nane · as þe lyne tellis,
Wald gett þam̄ hald *with* þ*ar* hend · & oñ-loft clyme.
Sa frez̄t ware þ*ar* othire · þ*at* fez̄t*is* *with*iñ,
For Balaan þ*ar* bald duke · þ*at* broz̄t was[1] of lyue,
þ*at* aH failis þam̄ þe force · & so ferd worthe,
þ*at* nothire *with* stafe ne *with* stane · *with*stand þai na langir. 1444
Sire Alex*ander* *with* his athils · & his aweñ sleȝt*is*

Thus was Tyre taken.

þe toune of Tire þus he tuke · & othire twa burȝes,
In þe quilke þe siriens of þis sire · so many soroȝes had,
As wald bot tary aH our*e* tale · þaire tou*r*ment to reken.
Sone as þis cite was sesid · & slayne vp & ȝolden,

Alexander takes Gaza,

þen ridis furth þe riche kyng[1] · & removed his ost,
Gais him furth to Gasa · a-nothire grete cite,
And þ*at* he sett*is* on a saute · & sesis it be-lyue;
And quen þis Gasa was geten · he gr*ay*this him swyth̄,

and approaches Jerusalem.

And Ioynes him toward Ier*usal*em · þe iewis to distroy;
And ȝe þ*at*[2] kepis of þis carp̄e · to knaw any ferre,
Sone saH I neuen ȝow þe note · þ*at* is next eft*ir*.

Septimus passus Alexandri.

When the bishop hears of his approach,

Als hastily as þai herd of · in þe haly cite,
And bodword to þe bischop · broȝt of his come,
For Alex*ander* aȝe · almast he euen deis,

he is much troubled.

For he had nite him a nerand · noȝt bot o new time.
And now him þinke in his þoȝt · him thurt noȝt haue carid
In all his mast myst*ir* · nad he þ*at* man faylid,

[Fol. 25, *b*]

When he for socure to þe cite · sent him his lett*ir*;
And he soyned him be his sorement · þ*at* sare him forthink*is*.

[1] *Added in the margin.*
[2] MS. *inserts* kis; *but it is struck out.*

And who so ledd*er*ys couth lache · as þe line wittnes,
Wald gett þair hald *with* þair hand · & on-lofte wynne.
So friȝt wer þase other folke · þ*at* foghteñ *with*in,
Fro[1] balaan þair bald duke · þ*at* broght was of liue,
þ*at* aH failez þaim þe force · & so ferd worthen,
þ*at* nowder *with* staffe ne *with* stane · *with*stode þai no langer. 1444
Sir alex*ander* *with* þoes athellys · & *with* hys awne sleghtez
The toure of tire þus he tuke · and other ij burghez,
In þe whilke þe sariens of þis syre · so many sorowys haddyñ;
AH wald bot tary owr tale · þaire t*ur*ment to rekeñ.

Obsid[et] le tyre.

Sone als þis cite was sesyd · slayne vp & ȝoldeñ,
þan rides forth þe riche kyng · & removes þe hoste,
Gase forth to gaza · ane othre grete cite,
And he sett*es* on a sawte · and seses it beliue;
And when þis gaza was gettyn · he grathes hym swyth,
And ioynes hym toward Ier*usal*em · þe Iewez to distroy;
And ȝe þ*at* kepys of þis carpyng · to here any ferrer,
Sone saH I neuen þ*ou* þe note · þ*at* now is next after.

Septimus passus.

Als hastely as þai herd of · in haly cite,
And Bodword to þe bischop̄ · was broght of hys come,
For alex*ander* aw · almost he dyes,
And for he hed nekyd hym *with* nay · in a new tyme.
And now he þenkez in his thought · he turht[2] noght haue cared
In aH hys maste mister · made he hym faylez,[3]
When he for socour to þe cite · send hym hys l*ett*re;
And he soned hym by þis case · þ*at* nowe hym forthynkez.

[1] *Read* For. [2] *Read* thurt. [3] *Read* nad he þe man fayled.

He had rather have been forsworn than have denied Alexander anything.

"For me had' leuer," quod þe lede · "be lethirely forsworn
Oñ as many halidoms · as opens[1] & speris,
Þañ anys haue greuyd þat gome · or warned him his erand'! 1467
Þat euer I warned him his wiH · wa is me þat stonde!"
Þus was Iaudes of ioy · & iolite depryued';
And all þe iewis of ierusalem · he Ioyntly a-sembles.
He said, "Alexander is at hand · & wiH vs aH cumbre,
And we ere dredles vndone · bot driȝten vs heƚp." 1472
Þan bedis þe bischoþ̄ aH þe burȝe · barnes & othire,
Athils of aH age · eldire & ȝongire,
Comandis to ilka creatour · to crie þurȝe þe stretis,
To thre dais oñ a thrawe · be threpild to-gedire, 1476
Ilk a frek & ilka fante · to fast & to pray,
To ocupy þar oures & orisons · & offire iñ þar temple,
And caH vp with a clene voice · to þe kyng' of heuyñ,
To kepe þam, at þis conquiroure · encumbrid þaim neuir. 1480
Now seȝen þai to þar Sinagogis · aH þe cite ouire,
Ilka bodi þar bedis · þat in þe burȝe lengis,
Putt þam to prayris · & penaunce enduris,
Þe vengance of þis victoure · to voide if þai miȝt. 1484
Þe niȝt eftir þe note · as[2] tellis me þe writtis,
Quen aH þe cite was on-slepe · & sacrifis endid',
In ane abite of þe aire · ane Aungell aperis
To Iaudas of ierusalem · & him with ioy gretis: 1488
"I bringe þe bodword' of blis · ser bischoþ̄," he said',
"With salutis of solas · I am sent fra þe trone,
Fra þe maister of mañ · þe miȝtfuH fadere,
Þat bedis þe noȝt be[3] a-baist · he has þi bone herd; 1492
And I amonest þe to-morne · as I am enIoyned',
Þat þou as radly as þou rise · aray aH þe cite,
Þe stretis & in aH stedis · stoutly & faire,

He addresses the Jews,

and proclaims a 3 days' fast.

All pray for help,

to be delivered from Alexander's vengeance.

An angel appears to the bishop, and comforts him.

[Fol. 26.] "Array the city as if to receive a victor,

[1] MS. open; *altered to* opens *in later hand.*
[2] MS. &. [3] *Added in the margin.*

"For me hed leuer," quod þe lede · "bene letherly forsworne [Fol. 13 b.]
On aH þe halydoms · as opyn are to nevyñ,
Than onys haue greved þis gome · or groched with hys erand! 1467
Þat euer I warned hym hys wille · wa is me bestound!"
Thus was Iaudes of ioy · & iolyte depreuett';
And aH þe Iewes of Ierusalem · he iontly assemblez.
And[1], "alexander is at hand · & wille vs aH combred,[2]
And we er vtterly vndone · bot dryghten vs shelde." 1472
Than biddez þe bischoþ̄ aH þe burgh · bernes & oþer,
AtheHes of aH age · bath elder & yonger,
Comand iche creature · & cryed þorow þe stretes,
TiH thre days on a thraw · wer threpelytt to-geder, 1476
And ilke freke & euery faunt' · to fast & to pray,
To occupy in þair orisons · & offers[3] in þe temple,
And calle vp with kene cry · vnto þe kyng' of heuen,
And kepe þaim with þis conqueror · he comber þaim neuer. 1480
Thai soght to þair sinagoge · aH þe cite ouer;
Iche body to þair bedes · at in þe burgh lendes
Putten þaim to prayers · & pennance indurett,
þe vengance of þis victor · to voyde if þai mighT. 1484
The thred nyght after þis note · as neuen me þe text',
When aH þe cite was slepe · & sacrifese endytt,
In ane habett of þe ayre · an angeH apperes
To Iaudes of Ierusalem · and hym with ioy gretes: 1488
"I brynge þe bodworde of [blis] · sir bischop," he sayd,
"With salutez of solace · am send fro þe trone,
Fro þe hye maister of mageste · & þat mightfull fadre,
A byddes þe noghT be abaysed · he hase þi bone herd;
And I amonesh þe to-morne · als me was amoved, 1493
þat þou als radly as þou ryses · aray all þi cite,
The stretes & aH stedes · stoutly & faire,

apparicio angeli episcopo Ieromosolitano.

[1] *Read* Said. [2] *Read* combre. [3] *Read* offer.

Þat it be onest aH ouire · & opeñ vp þe ȝatis. 1496
Lett þañ þe pupiH ilka poll · apareld be clene,
And al manere of men · in mylk-quyte clathis.
And pas, þou & þi prelatis · & prestis of þe temple,
Raueste aH oñ a raw · as ȝoure rewiH askis. 1500

and go to meet Alexander, the great conqueror of the world."

And quen þis conquirour comes · caire him agaynes;
For he moñ ride þus & regne · ouire aH þe ronde werde
Be lordschip in ilka lede · in-to his laste days,
And þen be[1] diȝt to þe deth · of driȝtins ire." 1504
¶ Sone þe derke ouire-drafe · & þe day springis,
Oure bischop bounes him of bed · & buskis on his wedis,

All the Jews agree to receive Alexander with honour.

And þen iogis aH þe iewis · & generaH callis,
A-vaies þaim his visioñ · how þe voice bedis; 1508
Þan consals him þe clergy · clene aH-to-gedire,
And all þe cite asentis · sarazens & oþir,
To buwne furth with aH þe burȝe · & buske þañ belyue,
As him was said in his slepe · þis souerayñ to mete. 1512

Then he arrays the city to receive Alexander.

Þan rynnes he furth in a rase · & arais aH þe cite,
Braidis ouire with bawdkyns · aH þe brade stretis,
With tars & with tafeta · þar he trede sulde, 1515
For þe erth to slike ane Emperoure · ware ouire feble.
He plyes ouire þe pauement · with[2] pallen webis,

He puts up awnings to keep off the sun's heat.

Mas on hiȝt ouire his hede · for hete of þe soñe,
Sylours of sendale · to sele ouire þe gatis, 1519
And sammes þaim oñ aithire side · with silken rapis,
And þen he caggis vp on cordis · as curteyns it were,
Euen as þe esyngis ȝede · ouire be þe costes,
All þe wawis with-oute · in webis of ynde,
[Fol. 26 *b*.] Of briȝt blasand blewe · browdeñ with sternes. 1524
Þus atired he þe toune · & titely þar-eftir

He opens the gates.

On ilka way wid open · werped he þe ȝatis;
And qua so lukis fra with-out · & with-in haldis,
It semyd as þe cite to se · ane of þe seuyñ[3] heuyns. 1528

[1] MS. he. [2] *Added above the line.*
[3] MS. seuyñs; *with final* s *expuncted.*

Þat it be honest aH ouer · & opyn vp þe ȝates. 1496
Lett þen þi peple euerilke polle · aparaeld[1] be clene,
And aH maner of men · in milke-whitte clathez.
Bott passe, þou & þi pristez · & prelatez of þe temple,
Reuest aH on rawe · as your rewle askez. 1500
And when þis conquerour comez · carez hym agayns; [Fol. 14.]
For he must ryde & reyne · ouer aH þe brede of þe werlde,
And be Lord of ilke lede · vnto hys last dayes,
And þen be dight vnto þe deth · of drightenez ayre." 1504
Sone þe dyrke ouer-drafe · & þe day springez,
Oure Bishop bownes hym of bede · & buskes hys wedes,
And þen þat Iew of all Iewes · in generaH he clepys,
Says þaim hys visioñ · & as þe voyce biddes; 1508
Than councellys hym þe Clerge · clene aH-to-geder,
And all þe cety be assent · sariauntez & other,
To bowne hym forth with aH þe burgh · & buske hym beliue,
As hym was sayd in hys slepe · þis souerand to mete.
Than rynnes forth in a rese · arayes aH þe cyte, 1513
Spredes ouer with bawdkens · aH þe brode stretes,
With riche clothez of taffata · qwer he trede suld,
For þe erth to siche ane emperour · wer aH to feble. 1516
He plyes ouer þe payment · palleñ webbes,
Makez on hight ouer þe heued · for het[2] of þe soñ,
Silours of sendale · to syle ouer þe gatez, 1519
And sampnez þaime on aþer [side] · with sylkyn rapez,
And þan he cachez vp on cordez · als curtaynez it were.
Euen als þe esynges ȝode · ouer be þe costez,
AH þe wallez withowte · in webbez of Inde,
Of bright blysnand blew · browden with sternes. 1524
Thus attyred he þis toune · & titely þar-after
Of ilke way wide hopyn · warpyd he þe ȝatez;
Att who so wates fro withowte · & within hedes,
It semyd as to se to · on of þe seuen heuens. 1528

[1] MS. aparaerld; *see l.* 1552.
[2] *The* t *is written above the line.*

The bishop and priests are richly arrayed.

Now passis furth þis prelate · with prestis of þe temple,
Reueschid him rially · & þat in riche wedis,
With erst &[1] abite vndire aH · as I am in-fourmede,
Fulle of bridis & of bestis · of bise & of purpre; 1532
And þat was garnestꝰ full gay · with golden skirtis,
Store starand stanes · strekilland all ouire,

Their garments are covered with gems.

Saudidꝰ fuH of safirs · & oþire sere gemmes,
And poudird with perry · was perrour & othire. 1536
And sithen he castis oñ a Cape · of kastand hewes,
With riche rabies of goldꝰ · railed bi þe[2] hemmes,
A vestoure to vise oñ · of violet floures,
Wroȝt fuH of wodwose · & oþer wild bestis; 1540

The bishop wears a golden mitre.

And þan him hiȝtildꝰ his hede · & hadꝰ on a Mitre,
Was forgid aH of fyne goldꝰ · & fret fuH of perrils,
Stiȝt staffuH of stanes · þat straȝt out bemes,
As it ware shemerand shaftis · of þe shire soñ. 1544

The rest are dressed in rich tunics.

Doctours & diuinours · & othire dere maistris,
Iustis of iewry · & iogis of þe lawe,
Ware tired aH in tonacles · of tarrayñ webbis;
Þai were bret-full of bees · aH þe body ouire, 1548
And oþer clientis & clerkis · as to þe kirke fallis,
Ware all samen of a soyte · in surples of raynes,

So rich a sight was never seen.

Þat slike a siȝt, I supose · was neuer sene eftire,
So parailed a processioñ · a person a-gaynes. 1552
Now bowis furth þe bischop · at þe burȝe ȝatis,

[Fol. 27.]

With prestis & with prelatis · a pake out of nombre;

The citizens follow in the bishop's train,

And aH þe cite in sorte · felowis him eftir,
Quirris furth all in quite · of qualite as aungels; 1556
Maistirs, marchands, & Maire · mynistris & othire,
Worthi wedous & wenchis · & wyues of þe cite;
Be ilka barne in þe burgh̄ · as blaȝt ere þaire wedis

all in robes white as snow.

As any snyppandꝰ snawe · þat in þe snape liȝtis. 1560
Þar passis þe processioñ · a piple be-forne,
Of childire aH in chalk[3] quyte · chosen out a hundreth,
With bellis & with baners · & blasand torchis,

[1] *Read* an. [2] *Added in the margin.* [3] MS. shalk.

Now passes þis prelate · with prestez of þe temple,
Reuest fully rially · & with ryche wedes,
First ane habettꝰ vnder aH · as I am enformed.
FuH of birdes & of bestes · of byse & of purpurre; 1532
And þat was garneshed full gay · with gold skirtez,
Store starand stanes · strenklett aH ouer,
Sawdett with saphirez · and oþer sere gemmys,
And pouuderet vith perre · was purer þar[1] oþer. 1536
Bot syne he kest on a Cape · of castans hewe,
With riche rybans of gold · raythely þe hem̄,
A vesture of vyce · of vyolet flourez, [Fol. 14 b.]
Wroght fuH [of] wodwose · & oþer wylde bestes; 1540
And þen he heghtlet on hys heued · a hoge fair myter,
Was forgett aH [of] fyne gold · & frett fuH of perlez,
Stight staffuH of stanes · þat straughten owt bemes,
Als it wer shemerand shaftez · shott fro þe soñ. 1544
Doctours & deuynours · & oþer dere maistres,
Iustes of Iewry · & Iewes of þe lawe,
Wer tyrettꝰ aH in tonacles · of tartareñ webbys;
And þai wer brightfuH of bleez · aH þe body ouer, 1548
And oþer clerkez & colettes · at to þe kirke longeñ,
Wer aH sampnen in a sott · with surples of reynes,
That suche a sight, I suppose · was neuer sene aftir,
So paraeld a processioñ · ane personañ agayns. 1552
Now bownes furth þe bischop · at þe brode ȝates,
With pristes & with prelatez · a pake owt of nowmbre;
And aH þe cite of sorte · sylez hym after,
Whirrez forth aH in white · of qualite of angels; 1556
Marchaundez, maister mair · mynister and oþer,
Worthy wedous and wifes · & whenches of þe cite;
Be ilke a barne in þe burgh · aH blaught is hys wedes
Als any snappand snaw · þat in þe snape lightes. 1560
Than passys þe procession · a peple beforne,
Of childer aH in chalke white · chosyn a hundreth,
With bellys & with banners[2] · & blesand torchez,

[1] *Read* þan. [2] MS. barners.

Instrumentis & ymagis · with-in of þe Mynstire; 1564
Children bear censers. Sum with sensours & so[m] · with siluer*yn* cheynes,
Quare-of þe reke aromatike · rase to þe welken;
Sum with of þe saynt-ware · many sere thingis,
With tablis & topoures · & tretice of þe lawe; 1568
Sum bolstirs of burnet · en-brouden with periH,
Bare before þe bischop · his buke on to lig;
Others bear candle-sticks and relics. Sum candilstickis of clere goldꝫ · & of clene siluer,
With releckis fuH rially · þe richest on þe auutere. 1572
Þus seyis all þe semle · þe cite with-oute,
Vn-to a stonen stede · strez̄t on þe temple,
Scopulus, by sum skiH · þe scripture it callis,
They await Alexander. And þare þe come of þe kynge · þis couent abidis. 1576
Sone Alexander with ane ost · of[1] many athille dukis,
Alexander arrives, and finds all waiting to receive him. Come prekandꝫ toward þe place · with princes & erlis,
Sees slike a multitude of men · in milke-quite clathis,
And ilk seg in a soyte · at selly him thinkis. 1580
Þan fyndis he in þis oþire flote · fanons and stolis,
Practisirs & prematis · & prestis of þe lawe,
Of dialiticus & decre · doctours of aythir, 1583
Bathe chambirlayn & chaplayne · in chalk-quite wedis.
[Fol. 27 *b*.] And as he waytis in a wra · þan was he ware sone
Of þe master of þat meneyhe · in-myddis þe puple,
Þat was þe bald bischop · a-bofe alle þ[e][2] iewis,
Was grapid in a garment · of gold & of pu[r]pree. 1588
He sees the bishop in his mitre, And þan he heues vp his eze · be-haldis on his myter,
Be-fore he saze of[3] fyne gold · forgid a plate,
Þar-in grauen þe grettest · of aH gods names,
with the title Tetragrammaton. Þis title, Tetragramaton · for so þe text tellis. 1592
With þat comandis þe kyng · his knyztis ouire[4] ilkane,
Bathe beroñ & bachelere · & bald men of armes,
Na nere þat place to aproche · a payñ of þar lyuys,
Bot aH to hald þam̄ be-hynd · heraud & othire. 1596
The king advances alone, Þan airis he furth aH him ane · to þis athiH menezе,

[1] *Added in the margin.* [2] MS. þ.
[3] *Here* forgid *is inserted, but is underlined.* [4] *Read* euire.

Instrumentes & ymagez · within of þe temple; 1564
Som with censours & som[1] · with syluer chynes,
Whar-of þe reke of aromatyke · rase to þe welkeñ;
And of þe sanctuary · mony sere þingez,
With tabels & tapers · & tretes of þe law; 1568
Som bolsters of burnett · enbrowden with perle,
Borne byfore þe bishop̄ · hys boke on to lig;
Som candelstyke of clene gold · & of good syluer,
With relikkez fully rially · þe richest of þe werld. 1572
Thus seȝes aH þis semble · þe cite withowte,
Vnto a stonon stede · strez̄t on þe temple,
Scopulus, be some skely · þe scriptur it calles,
And þar þe come of þe kyng · þis Couent abydez. 1576
Sone[2] Alexander with an hoste · of many atheH dukez, [Fol. 15.]
Come prekand to þe palace · with princez & Erelez,
Saugh suche a multitude of men · [in] mylke-white wedes,
And ilke a sege in a sote · þat selly hym thynkez. 1580
Than fyndez he in a nother flete · of fanons & stoles,
Practyf men in prevatez · & prestez of þe lawe,
Of Dialeticus and decre · doctours of ather,
Bath chamerlayn[3] & chapelayñ · in chalke-white wedes.
And als he wates in a wray · þen was he war sone 1585
Off þe master of þat meynze · in-myddez of þe peple,
That was þe bald bischop · abowne aH þe Iewes,
Was grathed in a garment · of gold & of siluer. 1588
Than he heldes vp on hegh · beheld on hys myter,
Before he se of fyne gold · forgett a playte,
An þar-on grauen on þe grethestꝫ · of aH godez namez,
This title, tetragramatoñ · for so þe text wittnesse. 1592
With þat Comand þe kynge · hys knyghtez all,
Bath barouns & bachelers · bald men of armez,
No nere þe place [to aproche] · vpon payn of þair lyfez,
Bot aH to hald þaim byhynde · þe lesse & þe more. 1596
Than ayres he forth aH hym one · to þis atheH meynze,

[1] MS. so, *alt. to* set; *but read* sō = som.
[2] MS. Some. [3] MS. chamernlayn.

and kneels to the bishop.

Bowis him doun of his blonke · þe bischop be-forne,
And knelandꝫ oñ þe caldꝫ erth · he knockis oñ his brest,
And reuerencez þis haly name · at he seis wreteñ.
þan þe iewis of ierusalem · Iustis & othire,
Lordis & ladis · & be þe litiH childere,

The lords kneel to the king.

Enclynes þam to þe conquirour · & him oñ[1] kneis gretis,
Kest vp a kene crie · & carpis þir wordis.
"Ay moȝt he lefe, ay moȝt he lefe" · quod ilka man twyse,

They cry, "Long live Alexander!"

"Alexander, þe athill aire · vndire þe heuyñ,
Ay moȝt he lefe, ay moȝt he lefe[2] · þe lege Emperoure,
þe wildire of aH þe werde · & worthist oñ erthe,
Ay moȝt he lef, ay moȝt he[1] leue[1]" · quod loude aH at anys,

Conqueror of all the earth!"

"Ouircomere clene of ilka coste · & ouircomyn neuir,
þe gretest & þe gloriosest · þat euir god formed,
Erle or Emperoure · & any erdly prince."
þare was comen with him kyngis · as þe clause tellis,

All wonder at this greeting.

Seneiours out of Sireland[3] · was to him-selfe ȝoldeñ,
And þai meruailed þam mekiH · as þe buke tellis,
[Fol. 28.] When þai it herd so be-herydꝫ · & held it in wondire.

Then Permeon asks him why he knelt to the bishop.

þan Permeoñ, a proude kniȝt · a prince of his oste,
Aires to sir Alexander · & askis at him swythe,
Syn him adoured aH men · eldire & ȝongir,
Qui he obeschidꝫ so lawe & bende · þe bischoꝑ of iewis?
"Nay," quod þe comly kynge · & þe knyȝt swaris,
"Nouthire haylsid I him · ne hildidꝫ him nouthire,

He replies that he knelt to the great God,

Bot it was gode at I grete · þe gouernoure of aH,
Of quam in þe abite & þe armes · he was aH clethidꝫ.
For in þe marche of Messedone · me mynes on a tyme,
þat slike a segg in my slepe · me sodanly aperidꝫ,
Euyn in slike a similitude · & þis same wedis,
For aH þe werd as þis wee · wendis now atiredꝫ.

[1] *Inserted in the margin.*
[2] *Here the* MS. *wrongly inserts* quod.
[3] land *is above the line in* MS.

Bowes hym downe of hys blonke · þe bischopꝑ before,
Kneland on[1] þe cald erth · & knokez on hys briste,
And hersouns þat haly name · þat he byheld writteñ.
þan aH þe Iewes of Ierusalem · Iustice & oþer,
Lordez & ladꝭ · be þe litiH sottez,

Processio versus alexandrum apud Ierusalem.

Inclines þaim to þis conquerour · & hym on knees gretes,
Kest vp a kene crye · & carpyd þees wordes:
"Ay mott he leue, ay mot he leue" · quod ilke a lede twyse,
"Alexander, þe athelfullestꝫ · hayr vnder heveñ,
Ay mot he leue, ay mott he leue · þis lege Emperour,
The welder of aH þe werld · & worthiest vnder wylde,
Ay mott he leue," quod þe Land · [loude all] at anes,

"Ouercommer clene of ilke coste · & ouercommyn neuer,
The grettestꝫ & þe gloriestꝫ · þat euer god formedꝫ,
EreH or ony Emperour · or erthlich prince!"
þan Wer þair commoñ whit hym kyngez · als þe clause telles,

[Fol. 15 b.]

Senyours owt of Surry · wer to hym-selue ȝoldeñ,
And þai amervale þaime mekyH · as menys me þe writtes,
When þai saw hym so heretꝫ · & heldyn it a wondre.
Than Permeoñ, a proude knyȝtꝫ · a prince of hys hoste,
Ayres to sir alexander · and askys hym swith,
Sen hym adouret aH meñ · alder & yonger,
Why he obeyd & bowed so · to þe bischop of Iewes?
"Nay," quod þe comly kyngꝫ[2] · & þe knyȝt swerez,
"Noþer haylsed I hym · ne heldit hym noþer,
Bod it was god at I gret · þe gouernour of aH,
Of whome in þe habettꝫ & þe armez · he was aH clethyd.
For in þe marche of masydoñ · me menys on a tyme,
Suche a segh in my slepe · me sodenly apperedꝫ,
Euen in suche a sembland · & in þe same wedes,
For aH þis werld as þis wy · wendes now attyred.

[1] MS. of. [2] MS. knyge.

And þen I mused[1] in my mynde · how at I myȝt wyn̄
Anothire aneH of þe erth[2] · þat Aysy we caH it,
And me thret to be thra[3] · & for na þing turne,
Bot tire me titely þarto · & tristly to wende. 1632
And syne saȝe I na segg[1] · þat sa was arayd[1];
. . . . . .

And sekirly yone semys · þe same to se[4] to within̄,
"of whom I once dreamt." þe same gode at I in my slepe · saȝe in my days; 1635
And now I hope me, þurȝe þe helpe[5] · of þe haly fadire,
Of quam þe hered haly name · is ȝondire on̄ hiȝe wreten,
Now I hope to destroy all the Persians." To do with Darius or I dyi · how so me dere thinke,
And þe pride of aH þe Persens · purely distroy.
And ȝit I sothely supose · quat so my sale hopis, 1640
þat saH faH apon fold · slik fyaunce I haue
In þe grace of grete god · at gyes aH þe sternes,
þat it saH be in my wiH · & on̄ na way faile." 1643
[Fol. 28 b.] Now tas þe bischop̄ þe berne · & to þe burȝe wendis,
With sange & solempnite · him to þe cite ledis,
Alexander is royally received, He was resayued, as I rede · with reuerence & Ioye,
As he ware duke of ilk douth · & dreuyn doun fra heuen. 1647
and goes to Solomon's temple. þan gas he furth with his gingis · to godis awen temple,
þat of sir Salamon þe sage · sett was & foundid,
And þare he lythis of þare lare · as þe law wald[1];
He offird in þat oratori · & honourd oure lorde.
Jaudas brings out a book of Daniel's prophecy, And Iaudas of ierusalem · & aH þe iewis eftir 1652
Bringis out a brade buke · & to þe berne reches,
Was plant fuH of prophasys · playnely aH ouire,
Of þe doctrine of DanieH · & of his dere sawis.
þe lord[5] lokis on þe lyne · & on̄ a lefe fyndis 1656
how the Greeks How þe gomes out of grece · suld with þaire grete miȝtis

[1] *The* d *is above the line in* MS.
[2] MS. werd erth ; *but* werd *is struck out.*
[3] MS. *repeats* to be thra ; *partly underlined.*
[4] MS. þe in same to to w ; *altered to* þe same to se.
[5] *Inserted in the margin.*

And þan I musyd in my mynde · how þat I might wynne,
Ane oþer angle of þe erth · þat asy we calle,
And he me thrett to be tra[1] · & for no thyng turne,
Bot tyre me titely þarto · & tristly to wend. 1632
And syne saw I no segh · þat so was atired; 1633
And he[2] hoppyd þe helder þat þis was he · at he[2] saw þeñ, 1633*
For sekerly he semys so · to se withowte, 1634
The[3] same god þat in my slepe · I sawe in þo days;
And now I hope, þorow help · of þe hye fadre, 1636
On whom þe holy name is ȝond · on hye writteñ,
To do with Darius, or I dye · how I some dere thynke,
And þe pride of aH þe persens · purely distroy.
Bot ȝitte I sothly suppose · qwat so my saule þinkez, 1640
That sall be-falle vppon falde · slyke fiance I haue
In þe grace of þe grett god · þat gydez aH sternes,
That it saH in my will be · & in no ways faille."
Now takys þis Bishop þe berne · & to burgh ledes, 1644
With sange & solempnite · with hym to cite wendes,
He was resaued, as I rede · with reuerence & Ioy,
As he wer duke of iche dochre · & drevyn owt of heueñ.
þan gays he forth with hys gyng · to goddes awne temple, [Fol. 16.]
That of sir salamon̄ þe sage · sett was & fondyn̄, 1649
And þar he lightez of þar lare · & als þe lawe wald;
He offers in þat oratory · & honours owr Lorde.
And Iaudes of Ierusalem · þe Iewes fadir, 1652
Bringes forth a brade buke · & to þe berne reches,
Was plantyd full of prophecyes · playnly aH ouer,
Of þe doctryne of danieH · & of hys dere sawes.
The lede lokys on a lefe · & in a lyne fyndes 1656 prophecia
How þat þe gomez owt of grece · suld with þair grett mightez

[1] *Read* thra. [2] *Read* I; *twice.*
[3] MS. Thame.

should destroy Persia.

Þe pupiH out of Persye · purely distroy ;
And þat he hopis sall be he · & hertly he ioyes.
Þan partis he to þa prelatis · many proude giftis, 1660
Was nane sa pore in þat place · bot he his purse fillis,

Alexander richly rewards all,

Geues þaim̄ garsons of gold · & of gud stanes,
Rife riches enoȝe · robies & perles,
Besands to þe bischop̄ · he bed out of nounbre, 1664
Reches him of rede gold · ransons many,
Tas him to his tresory · talent him to shewe,
Bad him wale quat he wald · & wild him þe toþir.

and tells the bishop to take all he wants,

ȝit bedis he him, þe bald kyng · as þe buke tellis : 1668
"Sire, quat þou wiH in þis werd · to wild & to haue,
Noȝt bot aske it at[1] Alexander · quat þou wiH apon resoñ,
And I sall grant, or I ga · with a gud wiH."

and to ask a boon.

Þan bowis doun þe bischop · & him a bone askis, 1672

[Fol. 29.]

"Sire, þis I depely disire · durst I it neuyñ,

The bishop asks for leave to abide in his own religion,

Þat it be leuefuH vs oure lare · & oure law vse,
As oure fadirs has folowid · forwith þis tyme ;
As of ȝoure grete gudnes · at ȝe grant wald 1676
To lat vs sitt be safe · bot for þis seuyn wyntir,
But tribute or trouag · quils þe terme lastis,
Þan were we halden all þe hepe · to hiȝe þe for euir.
And ȝit I wiH, be ȝoure leue · a worde & na mare, 1680

and that the men of Media and Babylon should become Jews.

Þat þe men of Medi · man, be ȝoure leue,
Lang aH in oure lawe · lely to-gedire,
And þai of Babiloñ bathe · & bede I na nothire."

Alexander grants this,

Quod Alexander belyue · "all þis I graunt, 1684
And els any othire thing[1] · aske & be serued."

and offers more.

"Nay, now na mare," quod þe man · & mekly him thankid,
"Bot ay þi lordschip̄ & þi loue · quils my lyfe dures."
Now kastis þis conquirour · to caire fra þe cite, 1688

Alexander leaves a viceroy behind him.

And mas to bide in þe burȝe · a berne of his awyn,
A messagere to myn · on quat meñ of him said,

[1] MS. at it.

The peple owt of perse · purely distroy ;
And [þat] he hopys suld be he · & heterly he ioyes.
Than he partes to þe prelates · mony prouude gyftes, 1660
Was non so pure in þe place · bot he hys purse fillez,
Gyfez þaim garisons of gold · & of god stanez,
Riche giftez enogh · bath rubies & perelez,
Besaundez to þe bischopp · he badde owt of nowmbre,
Rechez hym of rede gold · raunsons mony, 1665
Takez hym to hys tresory · talentes hym shewys,
Bade hym wale qwat he walde · & wyld hym þaes oþer.
ȝit biddez hym þe bald kyng · als þe boke tellez : 1668
"Sir, qwat þou wiH in þis werld · to weld or to haue,
Noȝt bot aske at alexander · any thyng of resoñ,

And I saH graunte, or I gay · with a goode wille."
Than bowes downe our bischop̄ · & hym a bone askez,
"Sir, þis I depely desirre · durst I it neueñ. 1673
Þat ȝe wald latte vs oure lare · & owre lawez vse,
Als owr faders hase foloued · forewith þis tyme ;
And of your grett goodnesse · if ȝe þis graunte wald 1676
To latt vs sitte & be safe · bot for þis seuen wynter,
Withowte tribute or truage · whils þe terme lastes,
Þen wer we halden aH þe hepe · to pray for you for euer.
And ȝitt I wille, be your leue · a worde & no more, 1680
Þat þe men of mede · may, be your leue,
Lenge aH in your[1] lawe · lely to-geder,
And þai of babiloñ bath · þan bid I none othre."
Quod alexander als belyue · "aH þis I graunt, 1684
And ellys ony oþer thyng · aske & be serued." [Fol. 16 b.]
"Nay, nowe no more," quod þis mañ · & mekely hym thankez,
"Bot your lordship and youre loue · whille my lyve lastes."
Now kyst hym þis conqueror · to care fro þe cite, 1688
And made to byde in þe burgh · a berne of hir awne,
A messynger to meyn on · qwat men of hym sayd,

[1] *Read* our.

Ane Ardromaci*us*, a gome · as[1] þe buke tellis.
þan bowis to þe bischop̄ · his benyson to fang[t], 1692
Tak*is* lufly his leue · & lendis on̄ forthere.
To Sere cites þ*ar* be-syde · he so3t w*ith* his hostis,
And þai frendly & faire · frely resayued him.
Some of the Syrians complain of Alexander to Darius.
þan of þe Siriens su*m*me · in þe same tyme 1696
Folow fra þe fell kyng[t] · as fals men suld,
Did þam to s*ir* Dari*us* · & depely þam playnt,
Quat erroure of þis Emp*er*oure · & euiH þai suffird. 1699
And he[1] þam faire vndir-fong[t] · & fraynes þam 3erne,
[Fol. 29 *b*.] Darius enquires about Alexander,
Askis þam̄ of s*ir* Alex*ander* · aH at he cuthe,
Bathe of his statoure & his strenth · if he[2] ware store ben,
His qualite, his quantite · he quirys aH-to-gedire;
and is shewn a caricature of him.
And þai in p*ar*chement hi*m* payntid · his p*er*son hi*m* shewid, 1704
Ane amla3e, ane asaleny · ane ape of aH othire,
A wirling, a wayryngle · a wawil-e3id shrewe,
þe cait[if]este creato*ur* · þ*at* cried was euire.
And þan, as he lenes · & lokis on his fo*ur*me, 1708
Darius despises Alexander,
His litillaike & his licknes · he laythly dispiced,
And thre thing*is* of his thede · he þo3t hi*m* sa feble,
and in disdain sends him a ball to play with,
He dressis to hi*m* in dedeyne · & in dispite sendis:
First a baH, says þe buke · þe barne w*ith* to play, 1712
a golden head-piece,
A herne-pañ es of a berne · of brend gold yeue*n*,
and a hat made of twigs.
For hottre & for hething[t] · a Hatt made of twygg*is*;
Sayd þ*at* was benere hi*m* to bere · þan a bri3t helme.
Slike p*re*sandis out of P*er*sy · he to þe prince sendis, 1716
His brefe w*ith* a brade sele · & biddis hu*m*[3] ga swythe.
And qua sa wiH has to wete · howe it worthis eft*ir*,
Now sall I neuen vs here next · þe note of his lett*ir*.

[1] *Inserted in the margin.* [2] MS. *repeats* if he. [3] *Read* him.

And[1] andromaci*us*, a mañ · as I am enformed.
þan bowys he to þe Bishop̄ · hys benyson to fange, 1692
Keches lufly hys leue · & lendez on ferther.
To setez þ*ar* bysyde · he soght w*ith* hys hostez,
And þai frendly & faire · & frely resaued hym.
Bot þen of surriens a soume · in þe same tyme 1696
Flowen from þis feH kyng · as fals men suldyn̄,
Did þaim to s*ir* Darius · & depely þaim plenyd,
What erro*ur* of þis emp*er*our · & ille þ*at* þai suffred.
And he þaim faire vnderfangez · & franez þaim 3arne,
Askez þaim of s*ir* alex*ander* · aH þ*at* he couth, 1701
Bath of hys stature & hys strenth · if he wer sture-baned,
Hys qualite, hys quantite · enquirez aH-to-gedyr;
And þai in p*er*chemyn̄ depayntyd · hys p*er*son hym sweyd,
Ane amlaugh, ane aslyn · ane ape of aH other, 1705
A wirlyng, a warlow · a waugle-e3hed shrewe,
The catyfest cr*eatur* · þ*at* credylytt was eu*er*.
And þen þe Lord, as he lenytt · & lokett on hys forn̄e,
Hys litilayke & hys liknes · he loudly dispysez, 1709
And thro[2] thyngez of hys thede · hym thoght so feble,
He dressyd to hym in dysdene · & dispite send*es*:
Frist to[3] þe barne, says þe buke · a balle w*ith* to play,
A brayn-pañ of a berne · of brent gold þen̄, 1713
For hocou*r* & for hethyng · a hat made of wiggez[4];
Sayd, þ*at* was bener hym to bring · þen a bright helme.
Suche p*re*sandez owt of p*er*se · he to þe prince wayfez,
Hys brefe w*ith* a brade seale · & bydd*es* þaim go swithe. 1717
And who sa wete wald · how it worthed aftir,
Now saH I neuen vs on next · þe note of hys l*ettre*.

[1] *Read* Ane. [2] *Read* thre. [3] to *above the line in* MS. [4] *Read* twiggez.

Octauus passus Alexandri.

A letter: "Darius to Alexander.

"Sire dere Darius on dese · þe digne Emperoure,
þe kyng[1] without comparrison · of kyngis aH othire,
Of aH lordis þe lord · þat leues in erthe,
Predicessour of princes · & peree[1] to þe sonn̄, 1723
þe souerayne sire of my soyle · þat sittis in my trone,
In fang with my faire godis · þat I affie maste,
To Alexander, þat of aH · so augrily him letes,
[Fol. 30.] Oure subiet & oure seruand · þus we oure-selfe write.
Thou art too proud and vain. For it is wayued vs to wete · þat wickidly þou haues,
þurȝe enmyte & enuy · elacion of pride, 1729
Be vanyte & vayne glori · þat in þi wayns kindlis,
Puruayd þe pletours · oure partis to ride.
For þou has samed, as men he[2] sais · a selly nounbre
Thy men are lads and thieves. Of wrichis & wirlingis · out of þe west endis, 1733
Of laddis & of losengers · & of litiH theuys,
Slike sary soroȝis as þi-selfe · to seke vs agaynes,
And wenes to wild aH þi wiH · & þat worthis ful late,
þe prouynce & principalte · of Persye la graunt. 1737
Thou art too weak to harm us. For þou ert fere al to faynt · oure force to ministere;
þof þou had gedird all þe gomes · þat euire god fourmed,
So, man, riued is oure rewme · þat þou may reȝt lycken
þe store strenthe of oure stoure · to sternes of þe heuen.
And slike a nekard as þi-selfe · a noȝt of aH othire,
Is bot a madding to meH · with mare þan him-seluen.
Thou hadst better submit to me at once. Forthi is bettir vnbynd · & of þe brathe leue, 1744
And feyne aH with fairnes · & fayne at þou may.
For mare menseke[3] is a man · to meke him be tyme,
þan eftir made to be meke · malegreue his chekis.
For aH þe gracious godis · & gudnes oñ erthe, 1748
þat sanys sete & soile · & sustaynes þe erth,
The Persians are a mighty race. Prayses ay þe Persyns · passing aH othire,

[1] *Read* pere. [2] *Inserted in the margin; better omitted.* [3] *So; for* menske.

Octavus passus.

Syr Dere Darius on dese · þe digne Emperour, 1720 Epistola darij.
The kyng withowt comparisoñ · of kyngez all oþer,
Of aH lordes þe Lord · þat leues in erthe, [Fol. 17.]
Predecessour of princez · & peir to þe Soñ,
The souerane syre of my sole · þat sittis in myne trone,
In fange with my faire god · þat I affye maste, 1725
To Alexander, þat of aH · so augerdly hym letes,
Oure seget & our siruant[1] · þus our-selfe writtez.
For it is wayfed vs to wete · þou haues wikedly, 1728
Thrugh enmyte & enuye · Elacion of pride,
Be vanyte & vaynglory · þat in þi vaynes kyndeles,
Purvayd þe pletours · oure partez to ryde.
For þou hase sampned, als men sayn · a sellich nowmbre
Off wrechez & of wyrlyngez · out of þe west ende, 1733
Off laddez & of losyngers · & of lityH thefez,
Siche sary sorowez as þi-self · to seke vs agayns,
And wenys to weld at þi wille · þat worthez fuH late,
The prouince & þe principalite · of perse le graunt. 1737
Bot þou ert fere aH to faynte · oure force to withstonde;
þof[2] þou hade gederit[3] aH þe gomez · þat euer god formede,
So, man, ryfe is owr reme · þat þou may wele lekyn̄
þe sture strenth of owr stoure · to þe sternez of heuen̄;
And sike a neker als þi selfe · ane noght of aH oþer,
Is bot[4] a maddyng to meH · with mare þen þi-selue.
For-þi is better vnbende · & of þi brathe leue, 1744
. . . . . .
For mare menske is a man · to meke hym be tyme,
Than after made to be meke · mawgre hys chekys.
For aH þe graciouse goddes · & goddesse on erth, 1748
. . . . . .
Praysez ay þe persens · passyng aH oþer, 1750

[1] MS. souerent siruant; *the former word expuncted.*
[2] MS. Of. [3] it *written above the line.* [4] MS. bod.

And for þe oddiste of ilka ost · honoures oure name. 1751
Thou art a dwarf and a grub. And slike a dwinyng,[1] a dwaȝe · & a dwerȝe as þi-selfe,
A grub, a grege out of *grace* · ane erd-growyñ sorowe,
Wiȸ couet ȝit as a king · *with* caytefes to lyte,
To cou*ir* at combrid aȸ þe kyng*is* · vndire þe cape of heuen !
Riȝt as a flaw of feȸ snawe · ware fallyñ of a ryft, 1756
[Fo. 30 *b*.] Of a wysti wonñ wagȟe · *with* þe wynd blawen,
So *with* a flote of Fresons · folowand þi helis,
Þou sekis fraward Sichim · þi-selfe wrothir-haile,
Thou thinkest to do as thee list, And leuys as a loreȸ · þus oure lande to entire, 1760
And maa þi lepis & þi laik*is* · & quat þe liste ellis,
like rats or mice in a room. As ratons or ruȝe myse · in a rowme chambre,
Aboute in beddis or in bernys · þare baddis ere nane.
Bot I haue wilily waited · þi wiles & þi castis, 1764
And quen þou hopis aȸ-þ*ir* hiest · to haue aȸ þ*ar* wiȸ,
But I shall slay thee. I sall þe sett oñ a saute · & sla þe [with] my handis.
. . . . . .
For-þi for pompe or for pride · þi purpose a-vise, 1767
. . . . . .
Turne þe, trechoure, be-time · þ*at* þou na treson haue,
Return to thy den. And drawe a-gayñ to þi deñ · vndire þi dam wyng*is*.
Se quat I send to þe,[2] soñ · þi-selfe w*ith* to laike,
A hatt & a hand-baȸ · & a herne-panne ; 1771
I send thee some playthings. Slike p*re*sandis to play w*ith* · as p*er*tines to babbis.
For ai a child mot hi*m* chese · to childire geris ;
For mestire & miserie · vnneth may þou forthe
Þine awen caitefe cors · to clethe & to fede,
And supposis as a sott · to sese oure land*is*, 1776
And outhire dari*us* to drepe · or dryfe fra his kythis !
Bot by þe g*race* & þe gude · þ*at* god gaue my fadire,
Our land is so rich in gold that it outshines the sun. So riued is þe rede gold · oure regions w*ith*-in,
Þ*at* qua sa had it on a hepe · haly to-gedire, 1780

[1] MS. dwinnyg. [2] MS. þi, *altered to* þe.

And for þe oddest of ilke one oste · honour̃s owr name.
And slyke a dwynyng · a drawgh of þi-seluen̄, 1752
A grob, a grig out of grece · ane erth-groweñ sorow,
Wyȸ couett ȝitte as a kyng · *with* catyffez liteȸ,
To cou*er* & to combre aȸ þe kyngez · vnd*er* þe Cape of heuen̄ !
Right as a flaw of fell snaw · fallen wer fro þe drifte, 1756
Of a wist*us* wondyn wagh · *with* þe wynd blayñ,
So *with* a flote of fresons · folowand thi heles,
Thu sekys fraward sychim · þi-selue *with* eueȸ haille,
And Leues as a loseȸ · owr land for to entre, 1760 [Fol. 17 *b*.]
And make þi lepys & þi lakez · & qwat þou list ellys,
As ratons or ronke myce · in a rowme chaumbre,
About on bedd*es* or in bernez · þ*ar* baddez er nane.
Bott I haue willyly wayted · þi wilez & þi castez, 1764
And when þou hopys aȸ-þir eldest · to haue at þou likez,
I saȸ þe sett on a sawte · & slaye þe *with* my handez, 1766
And so saȸ, fole, for þi folez · be fenyshit on dawes. 1766*
For þi pompe & þi pride · þi p*ur*passe avyse,[1] 1767
For yf þou shote ou*er* sheet · þou shend*es* þi flayne. 1767*
Turne[2] þe, trecho*ur*, be tyme · þ*at* þou no treson hable, 1768
And [drawe] agayn to þi den · vnder þi dame wengez.
Se qwat I sende þe, soñ · þi-selfe *with* to layke,
A hatt here & a hand-balle · & a herne-panne ;[3]
Slike p*re*santes[4] to play *with* · as p*er*tenys þe to haue. 1772
For ay a childe most hym chose · vnto child*er* gammez ;
For mist*er* & for michefe · vneth may þou forth
Þine awne catef cors · to cloth & to fede,
And ȝit supposes as A sott · to sesyn owr Landez, 1776
And Darius to drepe · & dryve owt of hys[5] kythes !
Bot be þe grace & þe goode · þ*at* god gafe my fader,
So ryfe is þe rede gold · oure regions w*ith*in,
At who so had it on a hepe · holy to-gedre,[6] 1780

[1] MS. to avyse ; *but* to *is better omitted.* [2] MS. To me *wrongly.*
[3] MS. payne, *corrected to* panne. [4] MS. p*re*sandez p*re*santes.
[5] lys, *corrected to* hys. [6] MS. to gredre.

It wald vs let, as I leue · þe liȝt of þe soñ !
For-þi bid I þe badrich̄ · on bathe twa þine eȝen,
And oñ þe plegg & þe payñ · & perilh as folowis,
Alh þi vanyte to voide · & þi vayne pride, 1784
Return to Macedon, And mew agayñ to Messedone · or any mare falh.
For be þe saule of my sire · bot if þou sone turne,
We sall þe send sike a soume · of segis en-armed,
[Fol. 31.] Noȝt as Philips fant · salle fare with þi-selfe, 1788
or thou shalt be hung like a thief." Bot as a prince of proued theues · pyne þe to dede."
Als sone as his sandismen · to þis sire come,
Þai present him þe playntis · þe pistill him rechis,
Alexander reads the letter aloud, And Alexander belyue · be-fore alh his princes, 1792
To alh his ost euyñ oñ · he openly declaris.
And quen his kniȝtis of þis clause · þe carpe vndirstode,
and his men are afraid. Þen ware þai frekly a-frayd · of þe feh saȝes ;
And as sone[1] as him-selfe saȝe · his seggis amoued, 1796
In bilding of his bachelers · he breuys þire wordis :
He says, "Quat now ? my worthi werriouris · sa wiȝt & sa noble,
Mi bernes & my baratours · þe best vndire heuen ;
Letis neuire it broȝt be oñ brade · for vpbraide of schame, 1800
"Be not afraid of Darius. Ȝe doute for þe indityngs · of Darius pistils.
I sett ȝowe ane ensample · ȝe se it alh daye,
In thorps & in many thede · þar ȝe þurȝe ride,
He is like a yelping cur, that cannot bite. At ilka cote a kene curre · as he þe chache wald ; 1804
Bot as bremely as he baies[2] · he bitis neuir þe fastir.
Bot in sum̄, I suppose wele · þat sothe is þe lettir,
Þare as he tellis quyche a tumne · of tresoure he hauys.
For-þi vs buse to be bigg · & bataill him ȝeld, 1808
We must get his gold." Þe grete garisons of gold · sah gedire vp oure hertis."
With þat comands þe kyng · his knyȝtis be-lyue,
Þe donesmen þat fra Darius come · with þe derfe lettir,
Þat þai suld titly þam take · & by þe toȝe throtis, 1812
He gives orders And for þaire souerayne sake · þam send to þe galawis.

[1] MS. *inserts* him s ; *but it is struck out.*
[2] *The* e *is above the line.*

It wald hym lett, as I leue · þe light of þe Soñ !
For-þi bid I þe badly · vppon payn of þi eghen̄,[1]
And on þe plight & payn · & perle þat folows,
Alh þi vanyte to voyde · & þi vayn pryde, 1784
And mefe ayayn to masydon · or ony mare falle.
For, be þe sawle of my sire · bot yf þou sone turne,
I salh send þe suche a sume · of segges enarmed, 1787
Þat noght as philip̄ faunt · þou salh fare with þi-selueñ,
Bot as a prince reproued · sall be pynyd to dede."
Als sone as euer hys sondesmeñ · to þis syre commyñ,
Thai present hym playnly · & þat pistih hym rechys,
And alexander als byliue · before hys atehh[2] princez, 1792
And to þe host euen ouer · it opynly declares. [Fol. 18.]
And when þe knyghtez · of þis clause vnderstonde,
Than wer þai felly[3] affrayed · of hys feh sawes ;
And als sone as hym-selfe se · hys seges ameyved, 1796
In beldyng of hys bachelers · he breues þees wordes :
"What now ? my worthy werycurs · so wight & so noble,
My bernes & my barotours · þe best vnder heuen̄ ;
Lett neuer it be broght on brade · for vmbrayd of shame, 1800
Yhe dout for þe dityng · of darius pisteh.
I sett you an ensaumple · ye se it euerilke day,
In thorpus & in mony thede · þare ye þorow ryden̄,[4]
. 1804
For yf he bremely bays · he bitez neuer helder.
Bot in some way, I suppose wele · þat soght is hys lettre,
þair as he tellez which tunne[5] · of tresour he hase.
For-þi vs [bus] to be big · & batele hym ȝelde, 1808
þe grete garison of gold · saH geder vp owr hertes."
With þat commandez þe kyng · hys knyghtez belyfe,
þare Domesmen þat from darius come · with þe derfe lettrez,
þat þai suld titely þaim take · & be toȝe nekez, 1812
For þair souerend sake · þaim send to þe galouse.

[1] MS. eughen̄. [2] *So in* MS. [3] MS. fellyd.
[4] MS. dyden̄. [5] MS. tyme.

УНИВЕРСИТЕТСКА БИБЛИОТЕКА

to hang the messengers.

Þan was þa messangers a-maied · as mervale ware ellis,
With kene carefuH crie · þis conquiro*ur* þai saidꝰ: 1815

They beseech him to be merciful.

"Allas! quat lake lyse in vs lordꝰ · if it be 3oure wiH,
Þus causeles for oure kynge · encumbird to worthe?"
"The sa3es of 3o*ur* souerayñ" · said þe kynge þeñ,

[Fol. 31 *b*.]

"Nedis me to slike not*is* · as I hadꝰ neu*er* etlidꝰ,

He says it is because Darius calls him a thief.

Þat has 3ow sent to my-selfe · no3t sa as him a3e; 1820
Loo 'litiH thefe' in ilka lyne · his lett*ir* me callis."
"3a," q*uod* þai, "comly kyng" · & oñ knes[1] fallis,
"Þase ditis endited to 3owe · sir Darius him-seluyñ,

They remind him that it is Darius who wrote the letter.

For he knew no3t of 3o*ur* kni3thede · ne of 3o*ur* kid strenthñ; 1824
Ne wist no3t of 3o*ur* worthenes · & wrate all þe baldire.
Bot wald 3e grant vs to gaa · & gefe vs 3o*ur* lefe,
Þen suld we bremely 3o*ur* bill · to þe berne shewe."
Þen lete þe lord þam allane · & went till his fest, 1828

He pardons them, and entertains them.

Takis þam *with* him to his tent · & þam at ese makis.
Sone as þai in his sale · were sett at þe table,
"Sire Alex*ander*, athiH kyngꝰ" · q*uod* aH *with* a steuyñ,
"Comands *with* vs to caire · kni3t*is* a thousandꝰ, 1832
And we sall surely oure sire · þe send in þaire handis."
"3a, make we blis," q*uod* þe kyng · "blithe mote 3e worthe,
For as for takynge of 3o*ur* lord · saH na lede wynde."

He writes to Darius.

To Darius anoþ*ir* day · endit*is* he a pistiH, 1836
A crest clenly inclosidꝰ · þat consayued þis wordis.
Alex*ander*, þe aire · & eldest childe bathe
Of kyng Ph*ilip* þe fers · þe fendere of grece,
And als of Olimpades · þat hon*ur*able lady, 1840

"Alexander to Darius, who calls himself a conqueror.

To þe, Darius, oñ dese · þus dite I my lett*ir*.
Þou prince of aH þe Persyns · þat peres to þe sonne,
Þe conquiro*ur* of ilka cost · callid of þi-selfe,
With all þi gracious godis · graithid iñ þi trone, 1844
All þus I send to 3owe I my[2] sawe · vnd*ir* my sele wreteñ.
Sire, if we se *with* a suth · surely me thinke,

[1] MS. keies, *altered to* knes. [2] *written above the line in* MS.

Þen wer þees messyngers amaced · as merveH wer ellez,
With carfuH chere · to þe conquero*ur* þai saydyñ:
"Alas! what lake lyes in vs · lord, be yo*ur* lefe, 1816
Thus causles for owr kyng · encombred to worthe?"
"The sawez of your sou*er*en" · sayd þe kyng þeñ,
"Ned*es* me now to seche not*es* · as I neu*er* attelytt,
That he hase sent to my-seluen · noght as he awghtꝰ; 1820
Lo! 'lityH thefe' in iche line · hys l*ettr*e me calles."
. . . . . .
"Þis doyngez s*ir* darius · indited you hym-seluen,
For he knew noght yo*ur* knyghthode · ne yo*ur* kyd strenthez; 1824
Ne wist noght ofꝰ yowr worthiness · & wrote aH þe balder.
Bot 3e wald gr*a*unt vs to go · & gyfe vs owr lyfez,
Than suld we bremely your blysse · vnto þe berne shewe."
Þan lete þe Lord þaim aloñ · & lathys þaim to hys feste,
Takes þaim w*ith* hym to hys tent · & makez þaim at ease.
Sone as þees sandesmeñ in sale · wer sett at þe table, [Fol. 18 *b*.]
"Sir alex*ander*, ateH kyng" · q*uo*d aH w*ith* a stevyñ,
"Comand *with* vs to care · knyghtez a thowsand, 1832
And we saH surely owr syre · you send in þair handez."
"3a, make 3e blysse," q*uo*d þe kynge · "blyth mote 3e worthe,
For þe lachynge of yo*ur* Lorde · saH noghtꝰ a lede weynde."
Bot to Darius on þ*at* o þ*er* day · indited he a pisteH, 1836
A l*ettr*e clenly enclosytꝰ · þ*at* consaued þees wordes.

"I, alex*ander*, ayr · & eldeste childe bothe Epi*stola*.

Of kyng philiꝑ þe ferse · þe fender of grece,
And als of olimphades · þ*at* honorable ladye, 1840
To þe, s*ir* Darius, on dese · þ*us* dite I my l*ettr*e.
Þou prince of aH p*er*sens · þ*at* apperys to þe soñ,
The conquero*ur* of ilke coste · callyd of þi-seluen,
With aH þi graciouse godd*es* · gr*a*thed in þi trone, 1844
AH þus I send þow to say · vnder my sealle wryttеñ.
Sir, yf we se þe sothe · surely me thynke,

All men's lands are but their own for a day.

Oure facultes, oure faire fees · oure fermes & *our* landis,
We may noȝt chalangᵗ þaim ne clayme · ne caH þaim
oure awen,
Bot all I deme it as det · & to a day borowid.
[Fol. 32.]
For sen we riden on þe rime · & oñ þe ringe seteñ
Of þe qwele of Fortoun, þe quene · þat swiftly changis,
Fortune's wheel turns swiftly.
Ofte pas we in pouert · fra plente of gudis,
Fra mirthe in-to mournyngᵗ · fra mournyng in-to Ioye.
For now vs wantis in a qwirre · as þe quele turnes;
When we think to be highest, Fortune drowns us.
Queñ we suppose in oure sele · to sit alþir heist,
Þañ fondis furth dame Fortoun · to þe flode-ȝatis,
Draȝes vp þe damme-borde · & drenchis vs euire.
For-þi a we þat has wit · þofe he wele suffir,
So sadly in soueraynete · he set neuire his hope
For pride of na pro[s]perite · ne prise at himñ folewis,
To olle ay oñ his vndireling · for ouer-laike a quyle.
Let no man despise his smaller neighbour.
For any sele vndire son · a sott I him haldᵈ,
þat ay has deyne & dispite · at dedis of litiH,
Sen oft þe hauenlest here · is houen to þe sternes,
And he þat graithist is of gudis · gird aH to poudire.
Ye dishonour your name in reviling me.
For-þi a depe dishonoure · ȝe do to ȝoure name,
Ane emperoure þat oñ erth · is euyñ to ȝoure-selfe,
To me sa litiH & sa lawe · slike lettirs to sende,
And presand out of Persy · bot for a pure hethyngᵗ.
For þou enherestis aH þis erth · & euens to þe soñ,
You call yourself king of all men, as if you were immortal.
And callis þe kyng of ilka kithe · vndir þe cape of heuen,
And þarto sittis, as þou sais · in sege as ane AungeH,
To-gedire with þi greteᵗ gods · and oñ a gilt trone.
Bot syn gostid godesses & gods · ere graythid neuir to dye,
Bot ai sall last furth elike · oñ-lyue ouireᵗ mare,
þai naue no wiH to my notis · ne wilnyngᵗ to haue,
No dole ne no daliance · of dedely bernes.
I know myself to be mortal, and attack you.
Bot I knaw I am coruptible · & caire ȝow agaynes,
Als with a dedly duke · to do my bataiH;

[1] MS. *repeats* with grete. [2] *Read* euire.

Our facultez or faire feys · owr fermez & owre goldes,
We may noght chalynge þaim ne clame · ne calle þaim our
awne,
Bot aH I deme as dett · vnto a day borowed.
For yff we ryde on þi reme · & on þi renke settyñ
Off þe whele of forton & þe whene · þat whistely chaungez,
Of[t] passe we in-to pouerte · fro plente of godez,
Fro mirthe into murnyng · fro murnyng into Ioy.
For now vs vantes in a whirre · as þe whele chaungez;
When we supposye in howre-selfe · to sitte aH-þar heldestᵗ,
þen fonndez douñ dame fortoñ · to þe flode-ȝates,
Drawez vp þe dame-borde · & drenchez vs for euer.
For-þi a wye þat hase witte · of þe whele sofre,
So[1] sodandly in hys souerente · to sett neron[2] hys hope
For pride of no prosperite · ne prise at hym folowez,
To olle ay on hys vnderlinges · for ouerlayke a while.
For ony ceyle vnder heven · a sot I hym halde,
þat ay hase dene & dispyte · of dedes of lityH,
Syon oft þe haslokst her · is heuen to þe sternes,
And he þat[3] grethest was of goddez · gird aH to-geder.
For-þi a depe disHonor · yhe do to your Name,
[Fol. 19.]
Ane Emperour þat on þis erth · is euen to your-seluen,
To me so lityH & so lawe · such lettres to wayfe,
And presentes owt of perse · bot for a pure hethinge.
For þou inheretes aH þis werld · & euens vnto þe sun,
And calles þe kyng of ilke kyth · vnder þe cape of heueñ,
And þarto sittes as þou says · in sege as an angeH,
To-gedre with þi grett goddez · on a gilt trone.
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
I knaw I am corruptible · & caire þow agayns,
Als a dedlich duk · to do my bateH;

[1] MS. So doys he so sodandly; *of which* doys he *is subpuncted.*
[2] *So in* MS.; *for* neuer on. [3] MS. þ, *with* ht *above the line.*

Bot þof[1] þou þe victor a-vaile · na vaunte saH arise,
Ne lose, bot as a litill thefe · 3ow limpid to encumbre.
[Fol. 32 b.] Bot chance it me, þat am a childe · þe cheuer to worthe,
If I win, great will be my honour. So þat be geuyn me þe gree · grete glorie is myn aweñ.
For þan sall spring vp þe speche · & sprede out[2] of mynd, 1884
How I haue conquired a kyng · þe kidest of þe werd.
Bot a tale 3e me tald · I trow be na faile,
You speak of the plenty of your gold. Of þe ryfenes of þe rede gold · 3our regioñ with-iñ,
Quilke plente is in Persy · of pereH & of ellis, 1888
Þe somme of siluer & of siche · & of sere stanes,
Þare-with oure wittes has þou wele · & oure wiH sharpid,
This makes us bold to hope to win it. And blid with þi besands · þe bataiH to 3eld, 1891
Made vs corageous & kene · 3oure clere gold to wyñ,
And put a-way oure pouert · 3e plede vs to hald.
Bot as touchand þe trufils · þat 3e to me sent, 1894
I will explain what the play-things mean. Þe herne-pan, þe hand-baH · þe hatt made of twiggis,
Þare has þou prophesid apert · & playnely vs schewid,
And faire affirmed vs before · þat saH fall eftir. 1897
The ball is the world, which shall be mine. For by þe baH, sir, I breue · aH þe brode werd,
Þe erthe at to myne enpire · enterely bees 3olden.
The hollow hat shews that all shall give way to me. And be þe hat, þat is holewe · be-for þe heued bowed,
I constru þat ilka kyng · saH clyne to my-selfe. 1901
The headpiece shews I shall be head." Þan hope I by þe hernepañ · þat þe hede couirs,
Ouir-comers[3] to be callid · & ouire-comen neuire.
Now þou, þe grettest vndir god · graithis me trouage,
With aH þis dignites be-dene · þat I diuined haue."
Þis brefe bedis þaim him bere · & besands þam rechis;
And eftir armes aH his ost · & airis oñ eftir forthire.
Sire Darius for þe ditis · nere died he for angire, 1908
A letter. To twa of þe derrest of his dukis · ditis he þis pistill:
" Darius to Sir Priamus. [Fol. 33.] "I, þe corounnest kyng · of kyngis aH othire,
To þe, sir primus, a prince · of Persye þe grettest, 1911
And als to ser Antagoyne · myñ aweñ athiH dukis,

[1] MS. Bot þou þof; *but* þou *is underlined.*
[2] *Inserted in the margin.* [3] *Read* Ouir-comer.

Bot if þou þe victour availe · no vaunt saH þar rise, 1880
No lose, bot of a lityH thef · enlympyd you to combre.
Bot chaunce it me, þat I am childe · þe cheuer to worth,
So þat if be[1] gefyn me þe gre · grete glory is my awne.
For þan saH springe vp þe speche · & sprede owt of mynde, 1884
How at I haue Conquired a king · þe kyddest of þe werld.
Bot one tale 3e me tald · I trowe be no fable,
Of þe refuse of rede gold · your regions within,
Which plente is in perse · of perle & of ellys, 1888
Þe some of siluer & of siche · & of sere stones,
Þar-with owr willes er replete · & our wittes sharped,
And baldit vs with þi besaundez · þe bateH to byd,
Made vs coragiouse & kene · þi clere gold to wynne, 1892
And put away our pouerte · yhe pledyn vs to hald.
Bot as tochand þe trufels · þat 3e to me send,
Þe herne-payn, þe hand-balle · þe hat made of twygges,
Þair hase þou prophecied apert · & playnly vs schewed,
And fair enformed vs before · þat falle saH after. 1897
For be þe bale, sir, I breue · aH þe brode werld,
The erth þat to myne empire · entirely is 3holdeñ. 1899
And be þe hatte, þat is holys[2] · & before þe heued[3] boget,
I Constrew þat iche kyng · saH incline to my-seluen.
Þan hope I, be þe harnepanne · þat þe heued Couers,
Ouercommer to be callyd · & ouercomyñ neuer.
Now þe gretest vnder god · gyfes me truage, 1904
With aH þar dignitez be-dene · þat deuised I Haue."
[Fol. 19 b.] THys brefe he biddez þaim Bere · & besaundes þaim reches;
And aftyr armes hys oste · & ayres on forther.
Sir darius for þis detes · nere dyes for sorow, 1908
And to two þe derrest of hys dukes · ditez he þis pisteH:
Epistola. "I, Coroundest kyng · of kyngez aH oþer,
To þe, sir Priamus, a prince · of þe gretest perse,
And also to þe, sir antigoñ · myne awne atheH dukes, 1912

[1] be, *written above the line.* [2] *Read* holow.
[3] MS. heuend; *but see l.* 1902.

þe soueraynest of my *seniour*ie · my saroparis[1] hatten,
Se here I send 3ow my seele · *with* salut*is* of ioye.
Since Alexander invades my lands, Fra Alex*ander* þe kyng · as I am in-fo*ur*med,
Is entrid *with* oure enmys · añ endles nounbre,
þe Anglies of Asie · & has þam̄ aH stroyed,
I charge you to attack him. For-þi of life & o lym · my lege men I charge
To prestli 3ow apparaiH · & pas þam agaynes,
With all þe hathils & þe heris · & þe hi3e maistris
þat 3e may semble in þe sidis · saudio*ur*s & othire.
Take this boaster, þen chese 3ow furth my chiftanes · & me þe child take,
Laches me þis losengere · & ledis me him hedire,
that I may scourge him and send him to his mother. þat I may him skelp *with* a skorge · & þen[2] of[3] skire
po*r*pure
A side slauyn him̄ sewe · & send him to his modire;
For now he p*r*oches for pride · & p*r*opurly he wedis,
For-þi him bose to be bett · as a barne fallis.
For it[4] a3e no3t slik ane Asald · nane ablet*us* to off
werres,
He is only fit to play at bowls." Bot at þe bowlis as a brode · or *with* a baH playe."
þire princes, sone as þe pistill · was put þam̄ in hand,
þan p*ar*t þai þe proud sele · þe printe þai adhoured,
Vn-lappis li3tly þe lefe · & þe line redes,
A letter. And þus-gate agynward · þai graithid him anothire.
"Sir Priamus to Darius. "To þe kiddest kyng to a-count · of kyng*is* aH othire,
Sire Dari, *with* þi dere godis · drised oñ þi trone,
Gouernoure of ilk a gome · & god all þi-selfe,
þi satrapairs, þi senio*ur*s · *with* se*r*uage obescheñ:
Sire, wetis it wele, 3oure worthines · & wenys it na
langire,
This child, as you call him, has wasted our lands. þat þis child, *with* his chiftans · þat 3e charge vs to take,
Has reden aH oure regions · & raymed oure landis,
[Fol. 33 *b*.] Dep*ar*tid aH oure p*r*ouynce · & purely it wastid.
And we þan lift vp a lite · & lent him a-gayne,
Ferd furth̄ *with* a flote · & him in þe fyld metis;

[1] *Read* satroparis; *see* l. 1937.
[2] MS. þen þe; *but* þe *is struck out.*
[3] *Inserted in the margin.* [4] *Written above the line in* MS.

The sou*er*anest of my senory · my sat*r*apers halden̄,
Se here I send þou my sealle · *with* salut*es* of Ioy.
For alex*ander* the kynge · as I am informed,
Is entred *with* owr enmys · ane endles nowmbre,
In þe anglez of asy · & hase þaim aH stroyde,
For-þi on life & on lymez · my legemen I charge
To pristly þou apper*a*le · & passe hym agayns,
With aH þe hatellys & þe herez · & þe hye maisters
þat 3e may assemble on þai sydez · saugeours & o*per*.
Chesse þou forth chiftanez · & me þis childe takes,
Laches me þis losynger · & led*es* me hym hed*er*,
And [I] saH hym skelp̄ *with* a sco*ur*ge · & þen in skyre
pu*r*pure
A syde slauyn hym insew · & send hym hys modre;
For now he p*r*okes for pride · & p[ro]prely wodez,
For-þi he must be bett · as a barne falles.
Bot it aught noght suche brolle · in none armez of
werez,
Bot at þe bulez as a brode · or *with* a bale to play."
þ*ir*e princez, when þis pisteH · was putt þaim in hand,
þai dep*ar*tyd þe prowde sealle · þe printe þai hono*ur*,
And vnlappyd lightly þe leffe · & þe lines redyn̄,
And þus agaynward · þ[a]i grathed hym one o*per*.
Epistola. "To þe kyng to acount[1] · of aH kyngez on erth,
S*ir* Dary *with* þi dere goddez · dressyd in trone,
Gou*er*no*ur*[2] of ilke grome · & god aH þi-seluen̄,
þi sat*r*apers, þi senyowrs · *with* se*r*uyce obidi*en*s:
S*ir*, wetes it your worthynes · & wenys no langer,

þat þis childe *with* hys chiftanys · 3e charge vs to take,
He hase riden̄ aH yo*ur* regions · & raymet owr landez,
Desp*er*set aH *our* pr*o*uince · & purely distroyde.
And we þen liften vp a lite · & rydyn hym ayayns,
Ferd forth *with* a folke · & hym in þe feld metyn̄; [Fol. 20.]

[1] MS. aco*a*unt. [2] MS. Geu*er*no*ur*.

We fled before him.
Bot sone we bed him þe bake · & besely[1] we shapid
Out of þe handis vn-hewyñ · of oure hatill[2] fais.
We beseech your help."
And now haly aH þe hepe · at 3e[3] 3oure help callis,
Vn-to 3oure mekiH maieste · we mekely beseke,
þat vs 3our lege & 3oure lele meñ · it likid 3ow to forthire,
Or þañ oure wirschiþ at-wynde · & wastid be þe regme."
As radly as þe riche kyng · had red ouir þis pistiH,
Darius hears that Alexander approaches.
Be þat mevis in A[3] Messangere · & maynly him tellis,
þat Alexander was at hand · & had his ost loygid
A-poñ þe streme of Struma[4] · þat strekis þurȝe his landis.
He is grieved.
Sire Darius for þa ditis · was depely a-greuyd,
Callis him his consail · a clause he him enditis,
Mas a brefe at a braide · & it in brathe sendis,
A letter.
To Alexander as be-lyue · & aH þus him gretes.
" Darius to his servant Alexander."
¶ "I, sir Dari, þe deyne · & derfe Emperoure,
þe kyng of kyngis I am callid · & conquirour bathe,
Of all lordis þe lord · a-lose[5] þurȝe þe werd,
And ane of þe souerayne sires · vndir þe vij sternes,
To þe, my seruand, I send · & suthely þou knawes,
And wete þou wele þurȝe aH þe werde · is wirschip oure name.[6]
For aH þe gracious gods · at þe ground visitis,
AH ere done me to doute · ducsses[7] & othire.
How couldst thou be so bold?
How burde þe þan be sa bald · for blod in þi heued,
To moue þus ouir þe mountey[n]s · & ouir þe many watirs
With slike a soumme ouir þe see · a saute vs to 3eld,
Or any maistrie to make · my maieste a-gayne?
[Fol. 34.]
For wella[7] wide ware þe wele · wete þou na nothire,
Thou hadst enough to do to keep Macedonia.
Bathe þi glorie & þi grace · þi gladnes in erthe,
Miȝt þou þe marches of Messedoyne · mayntene þi-selfe,
And gouerne bot þine aweñ gronde · agaynes oure[8] wiH.

[1] MS. & hi besely.
[2] *Read* hathill.
[3] *Inserted in the margin.*
[4] *The* u *is above the line.*
[5] *Read* alosed.
[6] MS. namo.
[7] *So* (*or* ducsscs) *in* MS.
[8] *Inserted in the margin.*

Bot sone wer biddeñ þaim þe bake · & besely echapyñ
Owt of handez to þe swerde · mony of owr athelles.
And we now haly aH þe hepe · þat 3e your helpe callyñ,
Vnto your mykle mageste · we mekely besekyñ,
þat vs your lege & your lele meñ · it liked 3ou to forther,
For owr worship is weynd · & wasted is owr remes."
And als radely as þe ryche kyng · had red ouer þe pisteH,
Be þat mefys in a messynger · & manyly hym tellys,
þat alexander was at hand · & hed an hoste loget
Vppon þe streme of streuma · þat straughit þorow þe land.
þen sir dary for þoe dedes · was deply agrevyd,
Callys hys counseH · a clause he inditez,
Makez a breue in a brayde · & in a breth sendes,
To alexander als belyue · & aH þus hym gretes.
"I, Sir Dary þe digne · & derfe Emperour, Epistola darij.
The king of kyngez am called · & conquerour bath,
Of aH Lordes Lord · lowsed þorow þe werld,
And one of þe souerenest syres · vndir þe seuen sternes,
To þe, my siruand, I send · & sothly I knaw,
And wete þou wele aH þe werld · worshippys my name.

For aH þe gracieux goddez · þat þe ground viseteñ,
AH er vndir my obedience · dredles I telle.
How durst þou be so bald · for blode in þi heued,
To mefe þus ouer þees montannez · & þes mony waters

With syke a soume for to seke · a sawt vs to 3elde,
Or ony maistre to make · my mageste ayayns?
For wele wyde wer þi wele · wete þou none other,
Both þi glory & grace · þi gladnesse in erth,
Might þou þe marche of masidoñ · mayntene þi-selueñ,
And gouerñ þine aweñ grund · agayns owr wyH.

For-þi ware bettir vnbynde · or þou bale suffire,
Return home, Remowe agayne to þi rewme · & rew of þi werkis.
For certayne, nyf my seniourie · ne I my-selfe nouthire,
AH þe werd myȝt a wedowe · wele þañ be callid.
before my hate kindles upon thy head. For-þi turne þe be-time · or any tene worthe,
Or at þe hate of my hert · a-poñ þi hede kindiH.
Lend agayñ to þi lande · nowe quen þou leue hauys,
þat I mete þe in my malicoly · my meth be to littiH.
For-þi to keñ þe to knaw · my kyndnes here-eftir,
As a token, I send thee my glove, full of seeds. Bath my grace & my glori · & my grete strenthe,
Loo here a gloue fuH of graynes · I graythe þe to take,
Of þe chesses of a chesboH · chosen for þe nanys.
If thou canst count them, then count my men. For may þou sowme me þire sedis · surely þou trowe,
þou miȝt a-count aH oure kniȝtis · & oure kyd ostis;
And þou truches þaim to teH · þen tidis þe na noþir,
Bot move a-gayñ to Messedone · & meve[1] þe na forthire.
Fyne, fole, of þi fare · & fange to þi kythis;
For þis sede I þe send · vnsowmyd bees neuire.
They are numberless." So ere we of all folke · folke to be nombrid,
Or any wee to a-counte · vndire þe clere sternys."
Now aires furth his athiH meñ · to Alexander wendis,
The messengers bring the letter and the seeds. Vn-to þe streme of struma · streȝt with þa lettirs,
And he þañ redis in a rese · & reches to[2] þe sedis,
[Fol. 34 b.] Tastis þañ vndire his tuthe · & talkis þir wordis:
Alexander bites the seeds, and says, "They may be many, but they are soft." "Here I se," quod þis sire · "be þire ilke cornes,
þat þe pupiH out of Persy · ere passandly many,[3]
Bot þañ semes to be softe · as þir sedis prouys;
For-þi how fele be aH þe flote · it forces bot littiH."
Be þis was meñ of Messedone · fra his modire comen,
And said þat semely was seke · & semed to die;
And he þe waest of þe werd · wald worth hire to visite,
Bot ȝit to Dary, or he went · he[4] diȝt þus a lettir.

[1] MS. me, *altered to* meve. [2] *Added in margin.*
[3] MS. meke many; *but* meke *is struck out.*
[4] MS. his, *altered to* he.

For-þi it wer better vnbenden · or þou bale suffre,
Remefe agayn to þi realm̃ · or þou sall it rewe.
For certan, yf my senory · & my-selue ne wer,
AH þe werld might albido[1] · wele þen be called.
For-þi turne þe be-tyme · or ony tene worth,
Or þe hate of my hert · on þi heued kyndle.
Lend Agayñ to þi Land · WiH I Leue gefe þe, [Fol. 20 b.]
Lest þou mete with my malicoly · þi might be to lityH.
For-þi to ken þe to knawe · my kyngdome her-after,
Both my glory & my grace · & my grete strenth,
Lo, her a glofe fuH of granes · I grath þe to rekyñ,
Off þe chefest of[2] chessebollez · chosyn for þe nonest.
For and þou may soume þees sedes · seurly þou leue,
Thu may acount[3] aH owr knyghtez · & owr kyd ostez;
And yf þou thynkes þaim to tell · þen tydez þe none oþer,
To mefe agayn to masidoñ · & meH þe no forther.
Fyne, fole, of þi fare · and fange to þi kythes;
For as þis sede þat I send · vnsoumed is euer,
So ben we of aH[4] frekes · & folkez vnnowmyrd,
Or ony weght to acount · vnder þe clere welkyñ."
Now ayres forth þees messyngers · & to alexander wendyñ,
Vnto þe streme of struma · streght with þis lettres,
And þaim redes on a rase he · & rechez to þe sedes,
Castes þaim vnder his tothe · & talkys þees wordes:
"Here I see," quod þis sire · "be þir selue cornes,
þat þe peple out of perse · er passandly mony,
Bot þaim semys to be softe · as þees sedis preuez;
And þen how fele be aH þe flote · it forcez bot lityH."
Be þat was men of masidon · fro hys moder commyñ,
And þat semely was seke · & semyd to die;
And he þe woest of þe werld · wald for hir to visytt,
Bot ȝit to Darius or he diȝt · he ditez suche a pistyH.

[1] *Read* a wido. [2] MS. oft. [3] MS. acoaunt; *see l.* 1993.
[4] *Here follows* ben we of all fo, *crossed through.*

Nonus passus Alexandri.

A letter. "Alexander to Darius.

"Alexsaundere þe athiH · aire oute [of] grece,
þe soñ of Ph[*ilip*] þe fers · & of his faire lady,
Honoured Olimpadas · þe oddest vndire heuyn, 2008
To þe, *ser* Dari, oñ þi dese · þis dities I write.
I find I must go home for the present. For I am sent, be þe sure · many sere letters,
And namly now on newe time · fra myne aweñ kitH,
Out of þe marche of Messadone · þat mekill me greues,
AH oþer wais to wirke · & my wiH likis. 2013
Bot I warne þe, or I wynd · & wiH at þou knaw,
It is not for thy boasts, but my mother is ill. þat for na drede I with-draw · ne doute of þi pride,
For baisting of þi bobance · ne of þi breme wordis, 2016
Bot for to se þat is seke · my semely modire.
Bot wete þou wele þis, I-wis · with-in a wale time,
Fra þat I fraist haue þat faire · of my fayre lady,
I shall soon return, with fresh men. I saH þe seke with a sowme · of seggis enarmed, 2020
Ane ost to noy þus to neuyñ · aH of new knyȝtis.
And for þe sake of þi sede · þou sent with þi lettre,
[Fol. 35.] I send you a purse, full of sharp pepper." Loo, here a purse fuH of pepire · my powere to keñ,
To se þi-selfe a similitude · how all þi soft grayns 2024
Sall vndire-put be aH þe pake · vn-to þir peper-cornes."
þis pistill to Persyns · he with his pepir takis,
Partis prestly þam to · many proude giftis, 2027
And þai haue laȝt þam þar leue · & þe lettir fangis,
And passis oñ to Persy · þe princes to schewe.
Alexander returns home. þan Alexander belyue · with his athiH dukis,
Rais him radly to ride · & remowis his ost; 2031
Fra þe streme of struma he streȝtis · & stiH mournes,
And mevis him toward Messedone · his modir to visit.
In Arabia he is attacked by Duke Amonta. He aires þurȝe Arabie · & armed þar he findis
A duke of Darys þe kyng · þat drafe him agayne,
A pere out of Persy · & prince of his ost, 2036
A maister man in þa marches · Amont was hatten.
He girdis him with a ging · þe grekis he asailes,

Nonus Passus.

"I, alexander, eldest · ayr out of grece, *Epistola.*
þe son of Philip þe fers · & of hys faire lady,
Honored olimphades · þe oddest vnder heueñ, 2008
To þe, *sir* darius, on þi dese · þis ditez I write.
For I am send, be þe sure · mony sere lettres,
And nomely now on new tyme · fro my awne kithes.
. . . . . .
AH oþer-wyse to wirke · þen my wille liked. 2013
Bot þis I werne, or I wende · & will at þou knaw,
þat for no drede I withdraw · þe dow of þi pryde,[1]
For basyng ne for bobas · ne for breme wordes, 2016
Bot for to Se þat is Seke · my awne Semelych Modre. [Fol. 21.]
Bot wete þou wele þis, I-wisse · in a wale tyme,
Fra þat I fraysted haue þe fare · of my faire lady,
I saH þe seche with a soume · of seggez enarmed, 2020
One oste to ney vs to newyn · & all of new knyghtez.
And for þe sake of þi sede · þou send with þi writte,
Lo, here a purse full of piper · my power to ken,
To se þi-selfe a similitude · how aH þees softe granes 2024
So vnder-put [be] aH þe pake · of þis pete cornez."
Thys pistyH to þe persens · he with þis peper takys,
Partes pristly to þaim · mony proude gyftez,
And þai haue laughteñ þair leue · & þe lettrez fangett, 2028
And passyd vnto perse · þe prince it to shewe.
Then alexander · with hys ateH Dukez,
Rachez hym radly to ride · & remevez hys ostez,
Fro þe streme of struma · he moved & stilly murnez, 2032
And mefez on toward masydoñ · hys moder to viset.
He ayers toward araby · & armyd þar he fyndez
A duke of Darius þe kyng · þat drafe hym agayns,
A Pere owt of perse · & prince of hys hoste, 2036
A maister man of þe marche · amonta was callyd.
He girdez in with a gyn · þe grekes assaylez,

[1] MS. proyde, or peryde (like per in piper, l. 2023); *read* pryde.

They fight all day.

With Alex*ander* all day · asp*er*ly fe3tis,
Marres of þe Messedons · mi3tfuH kni3t*is*,
Ding*is* dou*n* of þe duk*is* · deris þam vn-faire,
Fra morne to þe mirke ni3t · maynly þa cockeñ,
Se3es dou*n* oñ aythire side · segis out of nounbre.
Begynnys sone in þe gray day · as any gleme spring*is*,
And so to sett of þe soñ · sesid þai neuire.

The battle lasts for three days.

Þus thre dais out a thraw · þai threþ ay elike;
So lange, sais me þe lyne · lastid þe bataiH,

Horses wade in blood up to the fetlocks.

Sike scoures were of blude · of schondirhed bernes,
Þat foles ferd in þe flosches · to þe fetelakis;
Sa store & stithe was þe stoure · þe story me tellis,

[Fol. 35 b.]

Þat for soro3e of þe si3t · þe[1] soñ[2] oñ þe heuen
Kest away his clerete · & his clippis suffirs,

The sun is eclipsed. At last the Greeks prevail,

For bale to blische oñ þe blode · at on þe bent flo3es.
With þat oure gomes out of grece · gedirs vp þar hert*is*,
Fey fallis in þe filde · fele of þire othire,

and the Persians give way.

Þe pouwere of Persy · iñ partis many
Se3es sidlings dou*n* · slayñ of þaire blonk*is*.
And quen þe duke of ser Darys · þa dedis be-hald*is*,
Amonta þe mi3tfuH · his men þañ he fang*is*,
And vneth limpid him þe lee · þe lyne me record*is*,
Fra his faes w*ith* a fewe · þe filde to de-voide.

Amonta flees to Darius,

And slike a pas, sais þe p*ro*se · to Persy he ridis,
Þat 3it þe[2] selfe sandismen · he in þe sale fyndis,
Þat fra þe streme of str*u*ma · were apon stedis wysid

and finds him perusing Alexander's last letter.

Fra Alex*ander* & his ost · w*ith* his athiH pistiH.
And 3it ser dary oñ his dese · þa dities a-visis,
Held þe lett*ir* in his loue · & at þe ledis fraynes,
Quat he said of þe sedis · þat he[2] him-selfe sent.
And þai swiftly him sward · & swyth þus him tellis:

The messengers repeat the story of the seeds.

"Þe kyng him ka3t," q*uod* þe kni3t*is* "& on þe cornes bit*is*,
And wele he geses be þe gr*a*ynes · 3oure gomes ere fele,

[1] MS. of the; of *being added in the margin, but smeared out.*
[2] *Added in the margin.*

And w*ith* alex*ander* aH þe day · asp*er*ly feghtez,
Marres of þe masidons · mightfuH knyghtez,
Dynge*s* downe of þe dukez · deres þaim vnfaire,
Fro morne vnto mirke nyght · manly þai feghtyñ,
Slew downe on ather syde · seges owt of nowmbre.
Began in þe gray day · when þe gleme spronge,
And so to þe sett of þe soñ · sessyd þai neu*er*.
Þ*us* iij dayes in a thraw · þai threpyd eu*er*elike;
So lang, says þe line · lastyd þe bateH,
Slyke showrez of shire blode · of shend*er*et bernes,
Þat folez faired in flosshez · to þe fete-lakez;
So sture & styff was þe stoure · þe story me telles,
Þat for sorow of þat fight · þe soñ of heueñ
Lost hase is clarite · & hys clepys sufers,

For bale to Blissh on blod · þat on þe bent flowes. [Fol. 21 b.]

With þat owr gomes owt of grece · gerdyn vp þair hert*es*,
And fellyd fele in þe feld · feyle of þis o*þer*,
þe power owt of p*er*se · in p*ar*teez mony
Sweyd sleghtly downe · slayn of þair blonkes.
And when s*ir* Darius duke[1] · þis ded*es* bihaldyñ,
Amonta þe mightfuH · hys men þen he fannges,
And vneth limpyd hym þe lyfe · þe line me recordes,
And fro hys faes w*ith* A few folke · þe feld he deuodes.
And suche a passe, þen says þe p*ro*se · to p*er*se he rydez,
Þat 3it þe some sendesman · he in þe sale fyndez,
At fro þe streme of strema · was on sted*es* wysett
Fro alex*ander* & hys hoste · w*ith* hys atheH pistyH.
And 3itt s*ir* darius on þe dese · on þis dyt*es* awysez,
Held þis l*ett*re in hys loue · & at þe led*es* franes,
What he sayd of þaes sed*es* · þat he þaim send hed.
And þai[2] swyftly hym sware · & sothly hym tald:
"The kyng þaim kacht,"[3] q*uod* þe knyght*es* · "& on þe kirnels bote,
And wele he gessed be þe gr*a*nes · yo*ur* gomes er softe,

[1] MS. ye duke; *but* ye *is subpuncted.*
[2] MS. þai hym, *but* hym *is subpuncted.* [3] MS. katht.

Bot a thing, he said, he saȝe · þat solast him maste,

þai ware bot soft, he suposed · for so þe sede proued."
Darius tastes the pepper, and finds it sharp.
þan pullis him vp þe proude kyng · & oñ þe pepire tastis,
Said, as it tuke him by þe tonge · "his tulkis ere fewe,
Bot, be his kniȝtis as kene · as me þis cornes shewis,
AH þe werd war to waike · his wrothe[1] to with-stand."[2]
þe mody mañ Amonta · þan melis þir wordis,
[Fol. 36.] "ȝis, he ledis bot a lite · lord, with ȝoure lefe;
þare is[3] bot fewe at him foloȝes · bot feȝtand bernes,
Bot mare fersere in feld · feH neuire of modire.
Amonta says, "I attacked the Greeks with a larger army.
For I my-selfe with a sowme · set þaim agayns,
With of þe Persyns proude · a pake out of nounbre,
Felire þañ his folke · be fuH fyue thousand,
And ȝit vs feH all to ferre · þe fayntir to worthe;
For þai haue hedid of oure hathils · & a hepe woundid,
Fey falne to þe fold · many fers erlis,
They beat us.
Bet doun oure bachelers · my banir to-rased,
And a selly somme · slayne of my kniȝtis.
For three days we fought them,
Quethire days[3] thre þurȝe-out · thraly we foȝteñ,
Derfe dintis & dreȝe · delt & takeñ,
and at last we gave way.
And ȝit þe lawest at þe last · vs limpid to bee,
And vnethis sauyd I my-selfe · vn-slayñ of þar handis.
Bot treuly, ser," quod þe duke · "gret tresore me thinke
As for Alexander, he was none the prouder."
At Alexander þe athiH · for of[4] aH ware he maister,
A-vanced with þe victore · & vengid oñ his faes,
Was neuire þe heȝare of a hawe · his hert fuH of pride.
For mekely ilka modire soñ · his awen meñ & othire,
Als wele þe pure Persens · as þe grete grekis,
AH þe douth at was dede · be-dene he comands
To gedire þañ vp ilka gome · & þam in grauys ligg."
Alexander goes to Sicily.
Now Alexander & his ost · armed oñ ridis,
And sone Cecile he · with his seggis entrid,

[1] MS. to wrohe, *altered to* wrothe to *in the margin.*
[2] MS. hbith stand. [3] *Added in the margin.*
[4] Of *added above the line, indistinctly written; it is hardly wanted.*

Bot on[1] thynge, he sayd,[2] he sawgh · þat solast hym mekyH,
Thai wer bot softe, he supposyd · for so þe sede preved."
þen pullys hym vp þe prouude gome[3] · & on þe peper tastez,
Sayd, als it toke hym be þe tong · "hys tulkes wer feH,
For, be hys knyghtez als kene · as me þe corne shewys,
AH þe werld is to wake · hys wrothe to wit-stande."
The worthy mañ amonta · þan mellys þir wordes,
Sayd, "he ledes bot a lityH · lord, be your lefe;
Thai er bot few at hym folows · of feghtand bernes,
Bot more forcer on a feld · felle neuer of moder.
For I my-selfe with a soume · set hym agayns,
With þe persens prouude · a pake out of nowmbre,
Mo þen hys awne meynȝe · be fuH fyue thousand,
Victoria contra amontam ducem darij.
And ȝit vs fell aH be fere · þe faynter to worth;
For þai he[4] hedit of owr athellys · & a [hepe] woundett,
And fey fallyn in þe feld · mony ferce Erelez,
Betyn Done owr Bachelers · my Barons aH distroyd, [Fol. 22.]
And a selly soume of my knyghte[s] · in þe feld slayne.
Whether thre[5] days out-þorow · thraly we feyten,
Drafe dyntes derfe · deltyn & token,
And ȝit þe lawest at þe last · vs limpyd to be,
Bot vnneth saued I my-selue · vnslayne of þair handes.
Bot trewly, sir," quod þe duke · "grete tresour me thynke
At alexander þe atheH · for aH was he maister,
Auancyd with wictory · & vengyd on hys enmys,
Was neuer þe helder of a haw · [his] hert full of pride.
For mekely ilke modersoñ · hys awne men & othre,
Als wele þe pure persens · as þe prouude grekez,
AH þe doghty be-dene · þat was dede he Commandez
To geder þaim vp ilke grome · & þaim in graue bring."
Now alexander & hys oste · armyd on he rydez,
And sone into cesyH · he with hys segez enters,

[1] MS. ony, *corrected to* on.
[2] he sayd *repeated; but once expuncted.*
[3] *Above the line in* MS. [4] *Read* haue.
[5] *The* r *is above the line in* MS.

Þar sere citis of þa sidis · to him-selfe sweren,
And saudiours him to sewe · seuyntene thousand.
[Fol. 36 b.] Þan 3ede he ouire in-to ane Ile · Yssanna was hatteñ,
And þat was 3apely him 3euyn · & 3olden be-lyue.
On the top of a cliff he finds Persepolis. Þan vp he clame to a cliffe · þat to þe cloudis semed,
Þe Tor[1] of Tare to taken · þe tretis it callis,
Þare fand he tildid oñ þe top · & tild[2] vp a cite,
Þe proud[3] touñ of Persopole · & to þe place he ne3es.
Þare sa3e he selcuthis sere · as þe buke sais,
Þe muses of musike & þe merke · how it was made first.
Þan aires he in-to Asie · & ai as he fonndis,
AH þe citis of þa sidis · he sesis þam clene,
He goes to Phrygia, So fares he furth[4] to Frigie · a-noþire faire Ile,
And ane þar of his ald gods · he honourd in a temple.
and sees Scamander. Þan ferd he furth to a Flum · was fyue cubetis brad,
Scamandra þe slire[5] flode · þe scriptour it callis.
"Happy are all," "Now happy be 3ee," quod þe hathiH · "aH in hert beris
he says, "who are honoured by that odd clerk, Homer." Þe honouris of þat odd clerke · Homore þe grete."
"MekiH dere," quod ane Doctoneus · "of 3ow I deme saH,
And he of þe takyng of Troi · tald aH his lyue."
"Nay, I wald more worth," quod þe [wee] · "a wyse man disc[i]ple,
Þañ þe honour þat Acheles · a3t aH his time."
In Macedonia, he finds his mother healed. Þañ moves he him to Messedone · with his mony princes,
Amendid of hire malidy · his modire he fyndis,
A litiH dais with hire lengis · & of hire lyfe ioyes,
And graythes him þan with his gere · & a-gayn fondis.
He returns towards Persia. He passes oñ to-ward Persy · & pi3t doun his tentis
Besyd a bur3e at þe buke · Abandra meñ[6] callis.
Þai faH on freschly · þe folke of þe cite,
And barris bremely at a bur3e · þe foure brad 3atis.
[Fol. 37.] Þan takis þe kyng his kni3tis · vmlapis þe wallis,

[1] MS. Top, *altered to* Tor.
[2] MS. do tild; *with* do *underlined*. [3] MS. perroude.
[4] MS. he furth he; *with second* he *struck out*.
[5] *Read* skire. [6] *Added in the margin*.

Thare sere citez of þai sydez · to hym-selfe was 3oldyñ,
And saugeours hym to sewe · seuentene thousand.
Þan 3ode he ouer into an Ile · Yssanna was hateñ,
And þat was 3apely hym 3efeñ · & yoldeñ belyfe.
Than vp he clam to a clyffe · þat to þe clowdez semyd,
Þe towre of taure to token · þe tretes it calles;
Þar fand he tembret on þe toþ · & tyldit vp a cyte,
The proud towne of persipoH · & to þe place goys.
Þar saw he selcouthez sere · as sayn me þe writtes,
The musys of musik & þar merke · how it was made frist.
Þan ayrez he into asy · & ay as he fonndez,
AH þe citez of þo sydez · he sesez þam ilkoñ,
So fares he forth to frige · an-other fair yle,
And one of hys olde goddes · honours in a temple.
Þen faryd he forth to a flume · fyue cubettes of brede,
Scamandra þe skyr flode · þe scripture it neues.

. . . . . .

. . . . . .

. . . . . .

. . . . . .

. . . . . .

Then mefes home to masidon · with hys mony princez,
And mendyd of hir maledy · [his] moder he fyndez,
A lite dayes with hir he lenges · & of hir lyve ioys,
And grathes hym þan with hys gynge · & agayn fonndez. [Fol. 22 b.]
He passed on toward perse · & pyth douñ hys tentes
Besyde a burgh þat þe buke · bandara calles.
Þen fell to þaim freshly · þe folke of þe cite,
And barred bremely at a brush · þe foure brod 3ates.
Then caches þe kyng hys knyghtez · vmbelappes þe wallez,

Settis vp-on a saute · oñ sidis enoȝe;
Bot, for þe cite was vnsure · þe seggis within
Miȝt noȝt þe braidis a-bide · of bernes enarmed.
Þan cries aH to þe kyng · "ser conquirour," þai said:
"Ne steke we noȝt oure stiff ȝatis · ȝour strenthe to defend,
Bot for dred of ser Dary · þe derfe Emperoure,
Lest, had we haldit to ȝour heste · he had vs eft wastid."
"Ȝa, werpis þam vp," quod þe wee · "& wyde open settis,
If at ȝe shap ȝow to shount · vnschent of oure handis.
For quen I done haue with Dary · & my dede fenyschid,
Þan saH I tell ȝow my tale · how it sall tide eftir."
So baiste þam þe bald kyng · with his breme wordis,
Þat þai vnȝarked him þe ȝatis · & ȝald hiṁ þe keys.
Þe burȝe þus of[1] abrandra · he with his men takis,
To take & leue quat him list · & lendis oñ forthire.
Þen wyndis he to A wath touñ · was Wyothy hatteñ,
And come so to Caldipol · anoþer kid cite,
So to the watir of wintir · as it þe writte callis.
Þare nere was fey for defaute · enfamyschist his ost,
Kniȝtis kest vp a crie · & kenely þaṁ menes:
"Loo, oure foles ere in fere · fodeles to dye;"
Þai pleyne more þe pouirte · & þe pite of þar horsis
Þañ þe soroȝe of þaṁ-selfe · by þe seuynt parte.
"Quat ailes ȝow?" quod Alexander · to his athiH dukis,
"Mi barons & my baratorus · þe biggest in erth,
Þat has þe angwisch of armes · ay to now suffird;
Quethire euire ȝoure hertis, I hope · for horsys abatis?
May vs noȝt limp, if any life · lenge iñ oure[2] brestis,
To couer be cas at a cleke · courseris a thousand?
And vs demed be þe dome · to die of þe werd,
Þan standis in stede noȝt of a stra · all þe store stedis.
For-þi I rede," quod þe renke[3] · "we ride oñ forthire,

He attacks Abandra.
The men of it say they only shut their gates for fear of Darius.
He frightens them, and they give up the keys.
He comes to the Water of Winter.
His men say, "our horses are dying."
He reproves them, saying they can get new horses;
[Fol. 37 b.]
and bids them advance.

[1] *Added in the margin.* [2] *Miswritten* oire *in* MS. [3] MS. kenke.

And settes vp a sawte · to þe towne sydes;
But for þe cite was vnsure · þe segez within
Might noght þe barettes abyde · of seggez enarmed.
Þen callyd þai to þe kyng · "sir Conqueror," & sayd:
"We steke noght our ȝates · your strenth to defende,

Bot for þe drede of sir dary · þe derfe Emperour,
Lest, hed we heldit to your hest · he hed vs eft wastyd."
"Ȝa, warpez þaim vp," quod þe wye[1] · "& wyde opyn settes,
. . . . . .
For when I done haue with Darius · & my dede fenyshyd,
Than saH I teH you my tale · how it saH tyde after."
So babyst þaim þe bald kyng · with hys breme wordez,
That þai vnȝarked hym þe yatez · & yeld hym þe kees.
Thus þe burght of bandra · he with hys bernes takes,
To lache & lefe qwat hym lyst · & lendez on forþer.
Þan wendes he to a wale towne · was worthyly haldyñ,
And Come so to cadypolez · ane oþer kyd cite,
So to þe water of wynter · als it þe writte calles.
Thare negh was fey for defaute · enfamyshyd hys oste,
Knyghtez kest vp a cry · & kenely þaim meane;
Sayd: "lo, oure folez bene in fere · for fodeles to dye;"
Plenys more þe perty · & pety of þair blonkez
Þan of þe sorow of þaim selfe · be þe seuent dele.
"What aylez you nowe?" quod alexander · to hys atheH Dukez,
"My barons & my baratours · biggest on erth,
That hase þe angers of armes · ay to now sofferd;
Whether euer your hertes · for horse-fleshez abaytez?
May we noght lympe, if ony lyfe · leng in our brestes,
To couer be case at a cleke · coursours a thouusand?
And yf vs demyd be þe dome · to dye aH at ones,
Þan standes in stede noght of A stra · aH our styffe stedes.
For-þi[2] I rede," quod þe renke · "We rydyn on Forþer,

He comes to the Water of Winter.
His men lament the loss of their horses.
He reproves them, saying they can get new horses;
[Fol. 23.]
and bids them advance.

[1] MS. wyez. [2] *The* i *above the line in* MS.

And pas to sum othire place · þare plente is in,
þat we may fange at þe fuH · þe fude at vs wantis." 2168
. . . . . .
þañ prekis he furth with his princes · to slike a playñ[1] wendis,
They soon find plenty of forage. Luctus it hiȝt, þe letterure · & þe line þus it callis;
þare his forrayouris fand · þe fulth of vitaiH,
Bathe to[2] berne & to blonk · bide queñ him likid. 2172
When he was fuH þare & fedd · he flittis with his ost,
At Tergarontes, he goes to Apollo's temple. To Tergarontes he teȝe · þare tiȝt was a mynstre;
He piȝt doun his pauilioñ · & passis to þe temple,
Sire Appoline to adoure · & othire ald goddis, 2176
To offire iñ þat oritorie · with honour he wyndis,
And sum of þañ[2] at[3] spire · how he spede suld.
Zacora tells him to come again another day. Bot sone ane ȝacora him said · a semely summe,
þan was nañ honour of answaringis · bot on a-nopere bide. 2180
þan dose him furth þe dere king · &, oñ þe day eftire,
He seȝis to þe Synagog · & sacrif[is]e makis,
And Appoline als beliue · him aykewordly swaris, 2183
The oracle calls him "Hercules." Alexander says the oracle is false. 'Sire Ercules þe Emperoure' · he euire in ane callis.
þañ Alexander aH in ire · angrily spekis:
"Now fynd I wele," quod þe freke · "þat fals ere þi wordis,
Now þou neuyns me a new name · at I neuire hiȝt;
And þou a god," quod þe gome · "þat is grete ioye!"
þañ sekis he furth with a somme · & to A cite wyndis,
He next comes to Thebes. þe toun Thebea · þe tretis it callis,
And þare he biddis aH þe burȝe · þat foure bald kniȝtis
Suld be lett with him lend · & lenge in his weris. 2192
þen tened þe Thebees folke · & tynd to þe ȝatis,
[Fol. 38.] And to with-stand his strenthe · steȝid to þe wallis,
The Thebans oppose him. Bad him bow oñ be-lyue · & bide þare na laingire; 2195
For if he did, withouteñ dome · þe deth þai him hiȝt.
þan fangis him vp þe fell kyng · a fuyH feyned laȝtir,

[1] MS. ap layñ. [2] *Added in the margin.*
[3] *After* at, to *is wrongly added above the line.*

And passe we to som oþer place · where plente is in,
Thare we may fang at þe fuH · þe fode at vs wantes, 2168
And bath our folk & owr folez · fyH þaire wambes." 2168*
Then prekys he forth with hys princez · to suche a place wendes,
Luctus it þe lettre · & þe line calles;
Thare as hys saugeours hase fondyñ · þe fulth of þe vitale,
Bath to berñ & to blonke · byde whils he liked. 2172
When he was fulle þar & fed · he flittes hys ostez,
To tergarontes he tiȝt · þar telde was a mynster;
Pyȝt douñ hys pauvilons · & passyd to þe temple,
Sir appolyn to adoure · & oþer alde goddez, 2176
To offre in þat oratory · with honour in he wendes,
And of som sperete to spire · how he spede suld.
Bott on ȝacora hym sayd · a semlych Nonñ,[1] 2179
þar was none oþer answer · bot ane oþer day to abyde.

þan drafe hym for[th] þe dere kyng · &, on þe day after,
He soght into þe sinagoge · & sacrifice makez,
And appolyne als belyue · hym aukwardly answers,
'Sir ercules þis emperour' · hym euer onoñ clepys. 2184
Than alexander aH in ire · angerly spekys:
"Now fynde I wele," quod þe freke · "þat false er þi wordes,
For þou nevens a new name · þat I neuer higHt;
And þou a god," quod þe gome · "þat is grete Ioy!" 2188
Then sekys he forth with a soume · & to a cyte wendes,
þat Ilke towne hight tebea · þe tretez so it calles,
And þar he biddez aH þe burgh · þat foure bald knyghtez
Suld be lett with hym wende · & in hys werys lenge. 2192
þen tenyd þe tebe folke · & tit to þe ȝatez,
And withstode his strenth · & strode to þe walles,
Bad hym buske on belyue · & abyde þar no langer; 2195
For if he dyd, withowtyn dowte · þe dede þai higHt hym.
þan fangez vp þe fele kyng · a ful fenyd laughter,

[1] *So in* MS.

Alexander says, "Ye Thebans boast to be brave,

Said, "ȝe of Tebet ere tried · þe tethiest oñ erth,
Of aH þe seggis vnder soñ · þat citiȝens hatt;
Mast hiȝe ȝe ere hersid · & herid of ȝoure strenthe.
And nowe sa ȝape meñ as ȝe · þe ȝatis hase stoken,
And me & þe pruddest of my princes · proferne vs werre;
And at ȝe so wiH, I-wis · wondire me thinke,
For þus wald neuer at ȝe wroȝt · þe wirscip̄ of armes.
It contraries kniȝthede · ȝe knaw wele ȝour-selfe,

yet ye shut yourselves up behind walls."

To any wiȝt werriours · in wallis þam to close.
For he þat kid is & kene · & couettis a name,
WiH feȝt fersely in fild · his famen agayns."
Þan Alexander be-liue · aH a-boute þe cite,
Makis foure thousand · with flanes & bowis,

He orders a grand assault,

Biddis þam to bend vp · brathly with arowis
To wonde þe wees with-in · þat on þe wallis houys.
And twa thousand be tale · he titely comaundis,
Of wele buskid bernns · in brenys & platis,
AH þe sidis of þe cite · þat sechus had biggid,
And Amphion, añ athiH kempe · onane to distruy.

and bids his men fire the city.

A full thousand he fangid · to fire þe foure ȝatis,
And thre thousand of thra meñ · to thraw with engynes.
Him-selfe of slingis & slike · a-semblis a me[n]ȝe,
To heede & help of his hyne · if any harme lympid.
Now ere his seggis aH sett · & þe saute neȝis,
Were wakens be-twene · werbild in trompis;

The attack begins.

Oure pepiH with payñs · pressis to without,
Halis vp hemp̄ cordis · hurled out arowis;

[Fol. 38 b.]

Othire athils of armes · Albastis bendis,
Quirys out quarrels · quappid thurȝe mayles.

The Greeks throw stones out of guns.

Sum with gunnes of þe grekis · girdis vp̄ stanes,
To tene þe Tebis folke · þat oñ þe touris feȝtis;
Sum braide ouir þe barrers · in blasand wede,

The city is fired.

And faire fest on a fire · all þe foure ȝatis;

Sayd, "ȝe of tebe er triest · & thethiest on erth,
Off aH þe seges vnder suñ · þat citesyns er called;
Most heyly ye be auancett · & hight in hert.[1]
And now so ȝope meñ as ȝe · ȝates **Hase** stoken, [Fol. 28 b.]
Me & my proudest of my princez · ȝe do profre were;
And þat ȝe so wiH, I-wys · wondre me thynke,
For þus wald neuer þat ȝe wroght · worschip of armes.
It contrarys knyghthod · ye knawe wele your-seluen̄,
To any wight wereour · in walles hym to close.
For he þat kyd is & kene · & couates hym a name,
WiH fersly feght in þe feld · hys faymen ayayns."
And alexander als belyfe · aH vmbe þe cyte,
Mase iiij Mille[2] to fonde · with flanes & bowes,
Byddes þame to bend vp · & brathly with arowez
To wound þe wyes within · þat on þe wallez hoved.
And two thouusand be tale · he tytely Commandez,
Of wele busked bernes · in brenes & in platez,
AH þe sydes of þe cite · þat sichus had bigged,
And amphion, þe atheH kemp̄ · anone to distroye.
And iiij Mille[2] he fonge · to fyre þe iiij ȝates,
Bot thre Mille[2] of thra men · to thraw with engynez.
Hym-self with slengers & slyke · he somned[3] a menȝe,
To heyd & to help hys hynes · if any harme limpyd.
Now er is seges aH sett · & þe saute neghed,
Were wakned be-twene · werblet trompez;
Our peple with pavyce · presen to withowt,
Halez vp hemp cordez · hurlett owt arows;
Oþer athells of armes · alblastrez bendeñ,
Whirres owt qwarels · wappyd thrugh males.
Som with gunnez of þe grekys · gyrdyn vp stones,
To tene þe tebet folke · þat on þe toure fighteñ;
Som bradyn oure þe barres · in blysnand wedes,
And faire fest on a fyre · aH þe foure ȝates;

[1] *Catchword*—in hert; *wrongly.*
[2] *Read* thousand, *which is intended by this contraction for* Lat. *mille.*
[3] *Or* soumed.

AH þe burȝe at a braide · was on a bale kyndild, 2231
They yield. And þa[1] þat sounde ware vnslayñ · als sottes þam̃ ȝeldis.
þan with-out in oure ost · as þe buke tellis,
One Sicistrus is glad to see Thebes on fire. A Sire, at Sicistrus · was callid be name,
A meri man, a Messangere · þat maynly was ioyd
To se þe cite be sa sone · sindid to brandis. 2236
One Hismon is sorry to see it, Anothre hathiH vndire hand · þat Hismon was[2] callid,
Ane a maistre of musike · [3]a man of þe cite,[3]
Aires to ser Alexander · & in his hert wepis, 2239
As qua sai, "prince, of oure place · sum pete þou haue."
þan lokis þe lord to þe lede · said, "lettrid berne,
Quare-to feynys þou þis fare · for-with myne eȝen?"
and begs Alexander to shew mercy. "Sire conquirour," quod þe clerke · "ȝoure corage to bend,
And in ridding of oure riche toun · ȝour reuth for to caH." 2244
þan was þe wale kyng wrath · & wiȝtly comaundis
The king is wrath, and destroys the city. To bete in-to þe bare erth · aH þe burȝe-walles;
And quen all kynd was oñ colis · & kast apon hepis,
þan airis he on with his ost · mare honour to wynñ.
A Ientill mañ full ioyles · iournais him eftir, 2249
Foloȝes þare fare · ai oñ fote as þai ride,
A sege at of þe same toun · sire was & maistre,
Ane callid was Cletomacus · to crie eftir socure, 2252
One Clytomachus, a Theban, follows his host. His ledis at left ware o-lyue · a lite of þe cite.
þan askid at sire Appoline · al[4] with a steuen,
"If euire it worthe saH to wee · quen þe werd stand,
Oure bu[r]ȝe agayñ for to bigg · þat bretted is to noȝt?"
[Fol. 39.] þan gales þaire god · a-gayñ & þus spekis: 2257
An oracle says, "þe tulke þat tilld ȝour toun · saH tield vp & rere,
the man who is to rebuild Thebes will thrice conquer in wrestling. SaH thre times haue þe thra · of sum threuyñ gome
Of were ore of wristilling · for þus has wirid shapeñ.
And quen þat wirschip is woñ · within a wale time,
þan sall he sett vp him-selfe · þe cite as be-forne."

[1] MS. aþa, *with first* a *underlined.*
[2] MS. was was; *the second* was *underlined.*
[3–3] *Substituted in* MS. *for* "& in his art wepis;" *see next line.*
[4] *Written above the line.*

þat aH þe burgh at a brayde · was on a blasse kyndlett,
And þo þat sunde wer vnslayne · as seges þaim ȝoldeñ.
Than was withowt in þe ost · als þe buke tellys, 2233
A syre, þat sicistreus[1] · was seget to name,
A mery man, a messyngere · þat manly **was** Ioynet[2] [Fol. 24.]
To see þe cite be so sone · shendit to brandes. 2236
Ane-oþer atheH vnder hand · þat Hisman was callyd,
One maister of musike · a man of þe cite,
Ayrez hym to Alexander · & in hys hert wepys, 2239
Als wha sa, "Prince, of your place · som pite ȝe haue."
Then lokys þe lord to þe led · sayd, "lettred berne,
Whare to fenys þou þis fare · for-with my eghen̄ I see?"
"Sir Conquerour," quod þis clerk · "your[3] corage to bynde,
And in riddyng of our riche towne · your reuth for to calle." 2244
Than was þe wale kyng wroght · & wittily Commandes
To bete into þe bare erth · aH þe burgh walles;
And when aH kyndlett was on colez · & castyn vppoñ hepys,
Than ayrez he on with hys ost · more worship to wyñ. 2248
A gentilman fuH ioyles · þen iornays hym after,
Folows þe folke ay on fote · as þe faire rydeñ,
A sege of þe same cite · þat syre was & maister,
That callyd was clytomacus · to cry after socour, 2252
Hys ledes þat left wer on-lyue · a lyte of þe cite.
Then askyd þai at sir Apolyñ · aH with a stevyñ,
"Yf it worth saH to wy · whil þe world standes, 2255
Oure burgh ayayn to be beld · þat brytynd is to nogHt?"
Than galez þar god þaim ayayñ · & þus-gates he spekes:
"The tulke þat teld moñ your towñ · saH teld vp & rerre,
SaH thre tymez haue þe tro · of some kynne gamez
Off were or of wristylyng · for so hase werdez shapyñ. 2260
And when þat worship is woñ · within a wale tyme,
Than saH he sett vp [him] selfe · þe cite als beforne."

[1] *Or* sicisterus. [2] *Read* Ioyed.
[3] MS. pore.

Þus answars Þaim Þaire ald gode · & osses oñ Þis wyse,
And Þai als fayne, aH Þe flote · as foweH of Þe day.
Alexander goes to Corinth, Þan aires on *ser* Alex*ander* · *with* his athiH princes,
To Þe casteH of Corynthi · he comes *with* his ost,
With Þe Pers of Þa *par*tese · to play on Þe toures,
As aH Þe sires of Þa sidis · him-selfe had[1] required.
Þe multitude ware sa miche · of men for to rekeñ,
and holds some games. Þat Þare was sembild[1] & sett · Þat siȝt to be-hald.
Quod Alex*ander* bilyue · to aH at[1] Þare stode,
"Quat gome saH Þis gammeñ · begin apon first?"
Clytomachus asks to be allowed to wrestle; Þan comes forth Cletomacus · & to Þe kyng swaris,
Þe tulke out of Thebie · I tald ȝow be-forne,
"If it ȝoure mekiH maieste · miȝt any thinge plese,
I wald to wacken ȝoure welth[2] · now wirstiH a turne."
Þan mas Þe prince him a place · & prestly him matches,[3]
And he him girdes to Þe grounde · & Þe gree wynnes.
and throws his man thrice. "Now faithly," q*uod* Þe feH kyng · "faH Þe so thrise,
Þou sall be crouned, or I caire · for kiddest of Þe gameñ."
Þan ȝede he[4] eftsones to · & his eue*n* kastis,
Thring*is* to Þe thrid time · & Þe thra wynnys.
And Þan comandis him Þe kyng · a coroune oñ hede,
He is crowned, and they ask his name. As for Þe prise of Þe play · putfuH of stanes;
Þan bad him beddels belyue: · 'breue vs Þi name.'[5]
"Sirres, by my sothe," q*uod* Þe segge · "Sitiles I hiȝt."
[Fol. 39 *b*.] "Qwi so, my worthe werstillare?" · Þe wale kyng saidꝫ,
He says it is City-less. "How tidis it Þe & tou[n]les · Þi[6] toname is callid?"
"Mi louely lorde," q*uod* Þe lede · & law him declines,
"Be-for ȝe come slike a kyng · & Þe croune werridꝫ,
"Once I had a city, but now have none." I had a cite[7] my-selfe · & segg*es* I-nowe;
And sethen ȝe aȝt Þis enpire · I am it aH priuedꝫ."
Þan trowid trewly Þe kyng · Þat Theby he menydꝫ,
And beddels & bailyfs · he bad on brad crie,

[1] *Added in the margin.* [2] MS. welah, *altered to* welth.
[3] MS. maches, *altered to* matches.
[4] MS. he to; *with* to *struck out.*
[5] MS. name name; *the first struck out.*
[6] MS. Þi ton; ton *struck out.*
[7] MS. a h a cite; *with* a h *struck out.*

Thus answers Þaim Þis old god · & ossus on Þis wyse,
And Þai als fayne, aH Þe flote · als foule is on morne.
Than Ayrez hym on *sir* Alex*ander* · with hys atheH Princez,
To Þe casteH of corinthy · he com*m*ys *with* hys ostez,
With Þe peres of Þai *par*tez · to play on Þe towrez,
Als aH Þe syres of Þ*at* sydez · hem-selfe hed required.
The multitude Wher to muche · **oF** me*n* for to rekeñ, [Fol. 24 *b*.]
That wer Þ*ar* semblyd & set · Þ*at* feght to be-hold.
*Quo*d alex*ander* als belyue · to aH Þ*at* Þ*ar* stodyñ:
"What[1] gome saH Þis gameñ · begyñ vpoñ first[1]?"
Then com*m*es furth Clytomac*us* · & to Þe kyng sweres,
The tulke owt of tebe · I tald you beforne;
"If it yo*ur* mekyH mageste · might[1] any thyng please,
I wald to wakyñ oure welth · now wrastyH a turne."
Þen makes Þe prince hym a place · & p*re*stly hym maches,
And he hym grydes to Þe grund · & Þe gre wynnez.
"Now fathfully, q*uo*d Þe feyle kyng[1] · "Þus faH Þ*o*u thrisse,
Thu saH be crownyd, or I go · for kyddest of ga*m*me."
Þen ȝode he eftsons to · & hys eueñ caste*s*,
Thrynge*s* to Þe thryd tyme · & Þe thro wynnes.
And Þen Co*m*mande*s* Þe kyng[1] · a croune on heued,
Als for Þe fee of Þe play · piȝt-fuH of stanes;
Then byde hym bedels belyfe: · 'breue vs Þi name.'
"Sirs, be my soght," q*uo*d Þe seghe · "siteles[1] I hyght[1]."
"Whi so, my worthy wristiller?" · Þe wale kyng sayd,
"How tyde*s* it Þe at tounles · Þ*i* to-name is called?"
"My louely Lord," q*uo*d Þe lede · & law he declynes,
"Before ȝe Come suche · & Þe crowne wered,
I hed a cyte my-self · & seges enowe;
And syne ȝe aught Þis empyre · & I am dep*ri*ued."
Then trowyd trewly Þe kyng · at tebet he neuynd,
And Bedels & bailȝais · he bad a-none crye,

[1] I. e. city-less; *so also* town-less *in line* 2288.

Alexander grants him to rebuild Thebes. He goes to Platæa.

Be-fore his pupiH apert · þe powere him grauntis
To sett his cite vp agayñ · & of him-selfe haldeñ. 2296
Þañ passis he to a proude touñ · Platea was hatteñ,
Þare was stiȝtild[1] ane Strasageras · þat was a[1] stiffe prince,

Diana's prophetess welcomes Alexander,

Duse him in with his dukis · to Dyanaas temple,
And fand a pure prophetas · aparaild iñ vailes. 2300
And scho, as sone as scho him saȝe · said him þir wordis:
"Welcoñ we, at aH þe werd · saH wyñ with þi handis."
Þe secund[1] day before þe soñ · he at þe cite wildid,
In-to þe temple he turned · tythandis to herkeñ; 2304

and tells Strasagoras he will lose his lands.

"Quat ware þi wiH, ser, to wete?" · þe womañ frayned;

"Þou lesis aH þi lordschipñ · within a lite dais."
"Quat, & has þou ossed to Alexander · þis ayndain wirdes,
And me þus iH? vn-ably · þine abet þou weris." 2308
"Nay, tene ȝow noȝt, for treuly · þus tide bose it nede."

And so it happened. Alexander comes to Athens.

And so it worthid, for in a wrath · þe wale kyng swyth
Him of his principalete priued · & þañ þe prince fondis
Onane to Athenas · & oñ þe athiH playntes; 2312
And þai said, soure suld him sowe · bot he þe cite ȝeld[1].
And Alexander with his ostes · aires on forthire,
Ateynes him to-ward þe termes · & of þar tene heres,
And slike a word he þaim wayues · be writ fra him-self.

[Fol. 40.]

And qua so wiH has to wete · how it worthid eftir,
Here saH I teH þañ at loues · to here forthire. 2318

Decimus passus Alexandri.

A letter. "Alexander to the men of Athens.

"I Alexander, þe aire · & eldest childe hatteñ
Of kyng Philip þe fers · þat fest añ iñ grece,
And of þe quene Olimpades · þe oddest vnder heuen,
To aH ȝow of Athenes · þus etiH I my saȝes. 2322
Fra þat my fadere was fey · & farne out o lyue,
And I was sett in his sege · with septour to regne,
Sethen went I with my werriours · in-to þe west endes,

[1] *Added in the margin.*

Before hys peple so pert[1] · & hym þe power grauntez
To set hys cite vp agayñ · & of hym-self hald. 2296
Þan passys he to a prouud touñ · platea was hateñ,
Þar was stiȝlet[1] one strasagera · þat was a styffe Prince,
Dose hym in with hys Dukes · to Dicnas[1] temple,
And fand a pure prophett · apparelt in wales. 2300
And als sone as sho hym see · sho sayd þees wordes:
"Welcoñ, wye, þat þe werld · saH wynne with þi handes."
Þe secund day **be**fore þe suñ · he þat cite weLdit[1], [Fol. 25.]
To þe temple he tight · tithanndez to herkeñ. 2304
"What is[2] þi wiH," quod [the] woman, "sir, to witt · & how þou me franes;
For þou lossez aH þi Lordschips · within a lityH dayes."
"What & hase þu ossed to alexander · þus aydoñ wordes,
And me þus? vnably · þinē habet þou werys." 2308
"Nay, tene þe noght, for trewly · þus tyde bus it nedes."
And so it worthed, for in a wrath · þe wale kyng swyth
Hym of hys principalite depriues · & þen þe Prince fondes
Anone vnto athens & on · of þe atheH Planettes;[3] 2312
And þai sayd, saire suld he sike · bot he þe cite ȝelde.
And alexander with hys ost · þen ayres on ferþer,
Attellys hym toward þe terme · & of þe tene heres, 2315
And such a word he þaim wayffez · be writte fro hym-selueñ.

. . . . . .
. . . . . .

Decimus Passus.

Epistola.

I alexander, ayre · & heldest child both
Off kyng philip þe fers · þat fessit am in grece, 2320
And of þe whene olimphades · þe oddest vnder hevyñ,
To all you of atthenys · þus atthiH I my sawes.
Fro þat my fader was fey · & fallyn out of lyve,
And I was sett in hys sege · with septour in hand, 2324
Syne went I with my weryours · in-to þe west ende,

[1] *Read* Dianas. [2] *Written above the line in* MS.
[3] *So in* MS.; *but corruptly.*

I have conquered all Europe.

And ay *with*-out any armes · þai*m* aH at anys 3olden,
AH Europe to myñ enpire · enterely þai*m* geuyñ,
Euyn to þe Occiane · out of ald Rome.
Qua þ*at* vs rekinly resayues · na riddo*ur* þai tholid,

All who resist we destroy.

And all at othire wais wro3t · we wast þañ for euire.
And now f*ra* þe marche of Messedone · I meued opon late
Þur3e þe anglis here of Afle · *with* myne athiH dukis,

The Thebans resisted in vain.

And so þe Thebies þam ti3t · þe tou*n* to defende,
And I *þar* pompe[1] & þaire pride · to poudire declined.
To 3ow now write I oñ þis wise · þ*at*, wald 3e[2] me send

Send me ten philosophers; I ask no more, except that ye do homage."

Ten fyne Philisofo*urs*[3] · to fand *with* my wittes,
3oure bur3es ne 3o*ur* bri3t bees · bidd I þañ nothire,
Bot at 3e knaw me for kyng · & caH me 3o*ur* lord.
For & 3e nyk now to myñ empire · 3o*ur* nek*is* for[2] to bowe,
Þan bos 3ow bigg*er*[4] to be · þen aH my bald princes,
Or laite anothire ladis-mañ · a-losed mare of ſtrenthñ
Þan I my-selfe or my segg*is* · be þe seuent dele."

[Fol. 40 *b*.]

Þire athils of Atenes · þ*ir* augard clerkis
Þan reue*r*enst þai þe riche seele · & red ou*er* þe pistiH,
Syne kest vp a crie · *with* a kene voice at anys,
Suñ in comending of his carpe · & oñ clene it spitid.
A Filisphire þan oñ first · before þe folke risis,

One Æschylus recommends them not to listen to him.

Ane Eschilus in erde · & ernstly he spekis,
Þe douth & aH diuino*urs* · be-dene he comaundis,
Þ*at* þai suld corde be na cas · vn-to þe king*is* hest*is*.
W*ith* þ*at* aH samen on a sopp̄ · semblis þe pupiH,

One Demosthenes is next consulted.

A doct*our*, ane Domystyne · þai derely beseke
To consaile þai*m* als iñ þe cause · & ken þam þe best.
And he rekinly rase · & rekyns þire wordis:
"I be-seke 3ow now, my citi3ens . if þ*at* 3e safe vouche,
Bot sobirly a sete quile · my sa3es for to here.
Sirs, if 3e fele 3ow so fers · his force to *with*-stand,
Aires agaynes hi*m* *with* armes · admitts no3t his sa3es.

He recommends them to submit,

And if[5] 3e fynde 3e be to faynt · fulfillis his wiH,

[1] MS. ponpe. [2] *Added in the margin.*
[3] so *is written above the line.* [4] MS. bigg*is*.
[5] MS. *inserts* fy, *struck out.*

And þai w*ith*owtyn armys · þaim aH at onys 3eldyñ,
AH europe to my empyre · ente*r*ly þai geveñ.
. . . . . .
Who þ*at* rekenly vs resaued · no raddo*ur* tholett,
And aH þ*at* other-wyse wroght · we wastyd for eu*er*.
And now fro þe marche of massydoñ · I mefed on late
Torow þe anglez of asy · with myne atheH Dukez,
And so þe tebes þaim ty3t · þe touñ to defende,
That I þair pompe & þair pride · to powder haue declined.
And now writte I on þis wise · þ*at*, wold 3e me send
Ten[1] fyne philosophirs · to fond w*ith* my wittez,
Your burghes ne yo*ur* bryght bees · bidde I none o*þer*,
Bot þ*at* 3e knaw me for your kyng · & calle me yo*ur* Lord. [Fol. 25 *b*.]
For nyk yhe to myne empyre · yo*ur* nekkys for to bowe,
Þan bus you bigger to be · þan aH my bald Princes,
O*þer* lates ane o*þer* lodesmañ · alosed more of strenth
Then I my-self & my seges · be þe seuynt dele."
Þoes athels of athens · þes awgerd Clerkez
Þen reue*r*enst þai þe riche seale · & red ou*er* þe pisteH,
Syne kestyn vp a clene voyce · & cried aH at onys,
Some in Co*m*mendyng of hys carpyng · & soñ in dyspysyng.
Than A philisofre[2] on þe frist · before þ*at* folke ryses,
Ane Esculus in þ*at* erde · & egirly spekes,
Þe[3] Doughty & aH Dyuyno*urs* · be-dene he Co*m*mandez,
Þ*at* þai suld acord be no case · to þe kyngez heste.
With þ*at* al sampnes in a sopp · assempbles þe peple,
A Doct*our*, ane Domestyñ · þai derly besekyñ
To CounseH þaim in þ*at* cause · & ken þaim þe best.
And he þan rakenly rose · & rekens þees wordes:
"I Beseke you now, my citesyns · if þat 3e saue woche,
Bot soberly a sete qwyle · my sawys for to herkyñ." 2356
And sayd, "if 3e feyle you so ferce · hys force to *with*stond,
Ayres ayayns hym *with* armes · admitt*es* nogHt hys sawes.
And if yhe fynd 3e faynt · fulfyH þan hys wylle,

[1] MS. Then. [2] MS. philipofre. [3] MS. 3e.

Vn-to his mekiH maieste · mekely 3ow bowe.
For Sexes in sum time · surmountid all kyngis,
3it li3t he law at þe last · for all his lethire prid.
because Alexander always wins. Bot Alexander with his armee · in alkin rewmys
Has happend 3it ai hedire-to · þe herre of his faes;
Vnnombirable ere þe notis · to neuen of his weres,
And 3it betid neuir þe time · þat euire tuke he schame.
"Did he not conquer Tyre? Ware no3t þe tulkis out of Tire · þe tidiest oñ erth,
þe kiddest kni3tis to a-count · vnder þe cape of heuen,
Quat bathe for corage & kene · & connyng in armes?
Loke quare it profet þam̃ a peese · aH þaire proud strenth.
[Fol. 41.] and Thebes? Was no3t þe Thebes þar-to · þe threyest[1] of othire,
þe worthiest wees of þe werd · & of witt clerest,
Fra þat þaire cites ware sett · þe sotelest of weres?
Quat seruyd aH þai sapient · or sle3t[2] of bataH?
and the people of Peloponesus? Of Poliponenses þe pupiH · with þis prince fo3teñ,
And þat þam̃ lethirly con like · by þe lattir ende,
For þar þe kyng of þaire kythe · was killid doun & heded,
His renkis raymed aH þe route · & all þe rewme 3olden.
Wate 3e no3t wele þur3e aH þe werd · how wirdis with him cheues?
Hase he no3t cites butt saute · sesyd out of nounbre?
Ye are angry because of Strasagoras' fate. And for Strasagirs þe strang · he of his strenth priued,
3e meue al þus malicoly · his maieste a-gayne.
þare do 3e no3t 3our deuire · þat dare I wele proue,
It was þe gilt aH of þe gome · & no3t of þe gud lord.
Ne had he trispast him to · I take it oñ my trouthe,
But he deserved it. Had neuire his cite ne his soile · be sesid fra him nouthire.
Alexander is known to be courteous." For þe auaunt ser Alexander · is aH þe werd famyd
For ane of þe curtast kyng · þat euir croune werid,
And wete 3e wele at slik a we · at is[3] wyse haldeñ,
He wald neuire suprise · no sege vndir heueñ."
The Athenians With þat aH of Atenenys · þis aunceant maistir,

[1] MS. theyest; *with a third* e *above* y.
[2] MS. sele3t; *altered to* sle3t. [3] *Added in the margin.*

Vnto his mekyH mageste · mekely you bowes.
For sexes in som tyme · sirmountyd aH kyngez,
3it li3t he lawe at þe last · for aH hys lethir pride.
Bot alexander with hys armes · in alkyn realmes
Hase happynd ay 3it hyder · to þe hyer of hys foes;
Vnnowmerable er þe notez · to nevyñ of þe weres,
And 3itt betyd neuer þe tyme · þat euer toke he shame.
Wer noght þe tulkez of tire · þe triest of þe werld,
þe kyddest knyghtez to acount · vnder þe cope of heuen,
What bath[1] of corage & kene · & connyng of armez?
Loke quar it profett þam a pese · all þair proude strenth.
Wer noght þe tebettes þarto · þe tithiest of oþer,
The worthiest wyes of þe werld · & of witte clerest, [Fol. 26.]
. . . . . .
What seruyd 3itte aH þar sapience · & sleghtes of were?
Of poliponenses þe peple · with þis prince feghteñ,
And þat þaim lederly con like · 3it at þe latter ende,
For þar þe kyng of þe kyth · was kyllyd downe & heued,
Hys renkes raymet aH þe route · & hys realme 3oldeñ.
Wayte 3e noght wele þorow aH þe werld · how aH thyng with hym goys?
. . . . . .
And for strasagera þe strang · he of hys strenth priues,
3it 3e make you malicoly · hys mageste ayayns.
þarto yhe do not your Diuour[2] · I dar it wele prefe,
It was þe gilt of gome · not of þe gode Lord.
For had he noght trasped hym vnto · I take on my saule,
. . . . . .
And for þe graunt of þe sir alexander · is aH þe werld famed
For one of þe curtasest kyng · þat euer crowne weryd,
And wete 3e wele þat suche a wye · þat is so wyse haldyñ,
He wald neuer sussprise · no sege vnder heveñ."
With þat aH þise athenez · & þa auancet maisters,

[1] *MS. has* þe *after* bath, *but it is struck out.*
[2] MS. Dinuour.

commend Demosthenes,

And clene aH þe clergy · comensure & othire,
þis diuinour Domestyne · bedene þai comendid,
A-cordis þaim to his consaile · & kendly it prased.

and send a crown to Alexander.

þan amed þai to ser Alexander · onane for to send
A croune aH of clere gold · clustrid with gemmes,
Of fyfty ponde with þe payse · as þe prose[1] tellis,
þis tresoure tire þai him to · & tribute him hetes.

[Fol. 41 b.]

Now ere þe sandismen[2] · sett oñ þaire horsis,
A IentiH man þat IoweH · enioyned was to kepe,
þat was full sekirly & soft · aH in silke faldeñ;
Bot clerkis to þe conquirour · caired with þaim many.

The Athenian messengers arrive.

þan movis furth þe messagere · of mylis[3] bot fewe,
þat þai nere liȝt as belyue[4] · at þe kyngis tentis,
Knelid doun befor þe kyng · & him þe croune rechid,
And ȝerely tribute him to geue · ȝapely him hetis.

Alexander thanks them.

þan takis þe gudman þe gifte · & gretly þaṁ þankis,
And vndirstandis in a stound · how it stude clene,

He learns about Æschylus and Demosthenes.

Of þe eging[1] of Eschilus · þat ertid his feris,
þat þai with-sitt suld his saȝes · & serue noȝt his pistiH.
þe dities of Domestiane · so did he bathe,
þat comaundid & his[5] comandmentis · to kepe in aH wyse,
ȝit neuire-þe-lattir to þa ledis · a lettir he fourmed,
In presidine with his awen[6] prince · reportand þa wordis:

A letter. "Alexander to the men of Athens.

¶ "I, kyng Philip soñ þe fers · & his faire ladis,
Honoured Olimpades · þat I obesche maste,
I kepe neuire king to be callid · ne cache me þat name,
TiH aH þe barbarine blude · a-bowe to þe grekis.

I do not attempt to enter Athens forcibly.

I etiH neuir Athenes · with armes for to entre,
Bot ȝow to questioñ enquere · & qwete with my wittis.[7]
I purpose ay out of repreue · ȝoure persons to leue,
And ȝe þe contrari clene · ȝoure concience it opence.

[1] MS. prorose. [2] MS. sandisment.
[3] MS. mylid, *altered to* mylis. [4] MS. bely, *altered to* belyue.
[5] *Added in the margin.* [6] MS. awent, *altered to* awen.
[7] MS. handis, *altered to* wittis.

And Clene aH þe clerge · commensour & oþer,
Thys Diuinour domestyñ · by-dene þai commendyñ,
Acorde þaim to hys counseH · & kenly it praseñ.
Then ameyd þaim to sir alexander · anone for to send
A Crowne aH of clene gold · clustred with gemmys,
Of fifty pound was þe passe · as þe prose tellys,
Thys tresour tire þai hym to · & tribute hym highteñ.
Now er þe sandesmen in sute · sett on þar blonkez,
A gentilman þat IoweH · inioneyd was to kepe,
þat was fuH sarkenly & full soft · aH in sylke faldeñ;
Bot clerkes to þe conquerour · cayred with þaim none.
Then meffyd forth þe messyngers · myles bot a few,
And liȝt aH belyue · at þe lordes tentes,
Knele downe before þe kyng[1] · & hym þe crowne raughteñ,
And ȝerly tribute hym to gyf[1] · ȝapely hym highteñ.
Than tase þe godmañ þair giftez · & gretly þaim thankes,
And vnderstondes in a stound · how it stode clene,
And of þe eggyng of EscuLus · þat ertyd hys foes, [Fol. 26 b.]
To withsitte hys sawe · & serue noght hys pistyH.
The dytes of domestyñ · & so dyd of both,
þat Counsellyd hys Commaundment[1] · to kepe on aH wyse.
Yit neuer-þe-leter to þo ledes · a letter he enformed,
In presydence hys Awne prince · reportand þes wordes:

"I, kyng Philipp soñ þe ferce · & hys fayre ladys,
Honourd olymphades · þat I obey most[1],
I kepe neuer kyng to be called · ne cache me þat name,
To [1] aH þe barberoñ blude · bowe to þe grekys,
I attellyd neuer athens · with armes to entre,
Bot you questions to enquire · to wete with my writtes.
And purposed ay out[1] of reproue · your persens to leue,
Bot ȝe þe contrary clene · in your conscience doys shew.

[1] *Better* Til.

Whoever opposes me will suffer.

Bot quilk as first of ȝow found*is* · a fote vs agayne,
Sa�India neu*ir* deuoide my dedeyne · ne my derfe ire.
And ȝe at wickid ere *with*iñ · ay wickidly ȝe thinke ;
For as þe g*ra*yne is in þe g*ra*pe · growis þe frut*is*.

[Fol. 42.]

þe Tebies tulkid[1] vs w*ith* tene · a-tired þaim̃ in armes,
ȝit rad for all þaire rebelte · resayued þai þaire medis.

Ye reprove me because of Strasagoras.

And for Strasage*r*a þe stoute · ȝe stithli me blamed,
þare as he gilt me agayns · & I him g*ra*did haue,
I wrate to ȝow at me to wayue · be teñ wyse clerk*is* ;
ȝe kest out comau*n*dment*is* · ȝe knew noȝt my strenth.
I miȝt a-coupe of þ*a*t cause · if I it kythe wald[1] ;

I forgive you."

Bot I for-geue ȝow a�India þe gilt · & greues me na mare.
For-þi bees glad now, a�India þe ging*is* · ȝe sa�India na gref haue,
þe diuino*ur*[2] domestyne · for ȝe his domes held."

The Athenians rejoice.

Fra þai consayued had þe clause · & const*ru*ed þe lett*ir*,
þai ware þe meriest modirsons · on morne miȝt[3] ryse.
¶ Now fonndis furth þe fe�India kyng · & flitt*is* w*ith* his ostes,

Alexander goes to Lacedæmon.

Lendis hi*m* to Lacedoyne · a liti�India fra þe cite,
W*ith*-out þe burȝe oñ a banke · he bild*is* his tent*is*,
And þare him-selfe w*ith* a so*m*me · in a sege le[n]gis.
þe ledis out of Lacedone · belyue þam asemble,

They agree to resist him.

Said, " bow we neu*ir* to his bode · for bale apon erth,
Ne lat vs neu*ir* be sa lethire · at we like worthe
To þam of Ateynes · it is oure opyn schame ;
For þai ware baist of his bost · bredid for noȝt ;
Bot be we kniȝtly & kene · oure corage to schew."

They defend the walls.

W*ith* þ*a*t þai ȝarkid to þe ȝat*is* · & ȝode to þe wallis,
Su*m* in Iopons, su*m* in Iesserant*is* · su*m* Ioyned a�India in plat*is*.
A g*ra*yne of þe grete see · þai*m* aboute glidis ;
For-þi buskis þam̃ þe burgh̃ · a batai�India w*ith*-outt',

They prepare their navy.

Preses furth at poste*r*nes · in-to þe porte wyndis,
Schalkis scott in-to shipis · a�India in shire mailes ;
Archars w*ith* arows · w*ith* attrid barbis,

[1] *Sic ; perhaps for* tukkid. [2] MS. duino*ur*.
[3] *Added in the margin.*

Bot whilke of yow as found*es* frist' · on fote vs agayns,
Saꝥ neu*er* voyde my dysdane · ne my derfe Ire.
And ȝe at thynkys wykkydly · & wyrkys agayns ;
For as þe grane is of þe grase · & þ*ar* growez þe frute.
The tebett*es* tulkyd[1] vs w*ith* tene · atyred þaim in armys,
ȝitt for aꝥ þair riallte · resaued þai þair mede.
And for strasage*r*a þe stoutt' · ȝe styfly me blame,
Thar as he giltyd me ayayns · I hym grad*it* haue,
I wrate to you me to wafe · teñ wise clerkez ;
Yhe kest out Co*m*mandmente*s* · & knew noght my strenth.
I might' a-coup̄ you of þ*at* cause · & I it kyth wald ;
Bot I forgyfe you aꝥ þe giltt' · & grefez me no more.
For-þi beys glade now, aꝥ þe pake · ȝe saꝥ no grefe sofre,
The Diuyno*ur* Domestyñ · for ȝe hys domes haldeñ."
And fro þai consaued hed þe clause · & construed þe pistyꝥ,
Thai wer þe meriest mode*r*sons · þ*at* might on morne rise.
Now fonnd*es* he furth þe fele kyng · & flitt*es* hys ostez,
. . . . . .
W*ith*out þe burgh on a bank · beldit he hys tentez,
And þ*ar* hym-self w*ith* a soume · in a sege lenge*s*.
þe[2] lede*s* out of lacydoñ · belyfe þaim assembled,
Sayd : " bow we neue*r* to hys body · for bale vppoñ erthe,[3]

Ne lett' vs neue*r* be so lethir · þ*at* we leke worthen̄ [Fol. 27.]
To þise out [of] athens · for it wer opyn[4] shame ;
For þai wer basytt' for hys beste · & ferd for noghtt' ;
Bot be we knyghtly & kene · oure corage to shew."
With þ*at* þai ȝarkeñ to ȝates · & ȝodeñ to þe walles,
Some in Iompons & in Iesserauntez · som Ioned in platez.
A grayne of þe grete see · glad þaim all vmbe ;
For-þi buskys þaime þe burgesse · a batale w*ith*owtt',
Pressen forth at posternes · vnto a place wenden,
Shalkez shotten into shippez · aꝥ in shire malys,
Arches w*ith* arows · w*ith* atterd barbes,

[1] *Perhaps for* tukkyd. [2] MS. To þe.
[3] MS. erthd. [4] MS. orpyn.

[Fol. 42 b.]

Gais þam in-to galays · & grathis þam be-forne. 2456
Bowes bernes in-to bargis · *with* basinett*is* oñ heued,
Sparrethis spetous to spend[1] · & speris in hand*is*,
þai crosse ou*ir* toward þe kyng[1] · as kyndmen suld,
With as feyle oñ þe flode[1] · as fo3ten *with*-in. 2460
þe lord him lokis oñ þe ledis · & a litiH smyles,
And sent twa vnd*ir* his seele · þ*ir* sa3es in a pistiH.

A letter.

¶ "I, Ph*ilip* soñ þe fell kyng · as I first sayd,

"Alexander to the men of Lacedæmon.

And als of Olimpades · I anely 3ow rede, 2464
þ*at* þe end of 3oure eldirs · enterely 3e be-hald,[2]
And roomes no3t at[3] þe ray[n]bowe · þ*at* reche 3e ne may,
And þe powere of þe P*er*sens · so truly 3e traist[1]. 2467

Resist me, and get you a name."

Lat se now, get*is* 3ow a name · & nayt*is* 3*our* stre[n]the;
Bot bowis first fra 3*our* bargis · & blythly þai*m* wayfe,
For, fest I aH on a fire · þe foly is 3oure aweñ."
Ledis out of Lacedone · que*n* þai þe lett*ir* redd, 2471
Were drery, bot for aH þe dole · þa di3t þai*m* to fi3t.

The assault begins.

With þ*at* þe kyng & his kni3t*is* · vm-clappis þe cite,
Sett*is* aH þe gailis on gledis · & girdis dou*n* þe wallis;
þe citi3ens & seriant*is* · at vne-slayne ware
They yield. Bowis þam to þis barato*ur* · bodis & lyuys. 2476

"Now you have lost your ships and your walls are broken."

"3e knaw wele," q*uod* þe conquiro*ur* · "my comyng was esye;
Bot for 3e fangid me no3t faire · fired is 3*our* schippis,
3*our* bur3e is bretind & 3*our* bernes · I bed 3ow my-selfe, 2479

Never handle the stars."

3e suld no3t stody ne stem̃ · þe sternes for to handiH.
For he þ*at* steppis on a stee · queñ þe staues failis,
þan faut*is* him festing[1] to his fete · & faH him be-houes;
So, ri3t as Sexis was slayñ · su*m* time *with* 3*our* eldirs,

[Fol. 43.]

So ettild 3e se*r* Alex*ander* · bot þare 3oure ame failes."
Quen he þis sa3e had þam said · þe cite he þam grauntid,
Fondis furth *with* his folke · þ*ar* fraunches þam̃ leues.

[1] *Added in the margin.* [2] be *added in margin.* [3] *Above the line.*

Gone þaim into galays · & grathen þaim þ*ar*forne. 2456
Bowyn bernes into bargez · w*ith* Basynette*s* on heued,[1]
Sparthys spitous to spend · & speres in hand*es*,
þai crossyn ou*er* toward þe kyng[1] · als kene men shuldeñ,
With als fele on þe flode · as foughten w*ith*in. 2460
þe lord hym lokez on þe led*es* · & a lityll Smylez,
And Send þaim vnder hys sealle · þis saughez in a pistyH.

epistola.

"Myself, philipp̄ þe feH kyngez [son] · as I first sayd,
& als of olimphades · I only you rede, 2464
þat þe ende of your elders · enterly 3e holden,
And rooues[2] noght at þe rayne-bowe · þ*at* reche 3e ne may,
And þe power of p*er*syens · so purely 3e trasten.
Lett*es* se, ne*m*mys yow a name · & nayt*es* yo*ur* strenthe;
Bot bowes first fra yo*ur* bargez · & blythly þam woydez,
For fest I al in a fyre · þe foly is your awne."
The led*es* owt of lacidon · when þai þe l*ett*res herd, 2471
War drery, bot [for] aH þe dole · þai dight þaim to fight.
With þ*at* þe kyng & hys knyght*es* · vmbelapp*es* þe cite,
Sett all þe Galays on gled*es* · brynt dou*n* þe wallez;
The cetyners & þe s*er*geant*es* · aH þ*at* vnslayne weryñ
Bowes þan to þe barato*ur* · both bod*es* & lyfez. 2476

[Fol. 27 b.]

"3e knowe wele," q*uod* þe conquero*ur* · "my Co*m*myng was full easy;
Bot for[3] 3e fonge me not fair · nowe fyryd er yo*ur* shippez,
Your borgh̄ es bryttynyd & yo*ur* berne[s] · I byd you my-seluen̄,
3e suld nott study ne stem · þe sternes to byholde. 2480
For he þ*at* steppys on a stegh · when þe stoure faylez,
þen fallys hym þe festyng[1] of hys fete · & falle hym byhofys;
So ryght as sixes was slayne · some tyme w*ith* yo*ur* aldo*ur*s,
Als ettled 3e Sir A[lexander]. · bot þ*ar* yo*ur* kast faylyd."
When he þis sagh hed þaim sayd · þe Cyte he þa*m* grauntyd,
Fond*es* forth w*ith* hys folke · þair franchez þaim lefys.

[1] MS. heuend. [2] *Or* roones. [3] *Above the line in* MS.

He goes to Sicily. Þis souerayñ *with* his seggis · Þurȝe Sycile[1] he wyndis,

Þoȝt to ride & to rayme · Þe regions of barbres. 2488
Darius is frightened. Þan was *ser* Dari*us* dred · & sembled derf ost*is*,
His kniȝt*is*, his consaiH · & carpis Þire wordis,
Said: "lo! my *ser*is, now may se · ȝo*ur*-selfe *with* ȝo*ur* eȝeñ,
How Alex*ander* in his armes · aH-way encreses, 2492
In valo*ur* & in victori · & vertues so noble;
"I threatened him as a thief; he fights like a warrior. Þare as I thret hi*m* as a thefe · thedis to dispoyle,
Now werrays he fuH worthily · as wiȝt man suld, 2495
Constreynes *with* his contenance · kniȝt*is* to hi*m* bow.
Þe mare I spek him dispite · & in my speche hindire,
Þe hiȝere I here hi*m* enhansed · & hersude his name.
I sent him playthings. A baH & a herñepañ · I to Þe barne sent,
For burde & for bobance · Þe bab *with* to play. 2500
Hi*m* Þat I countid bot a knaue · may now be cald maist*ir*;
For quare he fondis on fold · dame fortune hi*m* foloȝe[s].
For-Þi[2] vs haue bos in hert · Þe hele of oure pupiH,
We must no longer despise him. And for na pompe ne na pride · his *per*son dispice, 2504
For his lose, for aH his litillaike · is loued Þurȝe Þe werd.
And Þe mare I myn oure maieste · Þe mare it abat*is*,
God helps him." Þe g*race* of Þe grete god[3] · I ges, wiH hi*m* help,
Of prise Þe hiȝe prouynce · vn-to Þis prince leues. 2508
Quen we hope althire-hiȝest · to hery hi*m* *with*[3] armes,
Þan am I redd aH oure rewme · be reft vs for euire."
[Fol. 43 *b*.] Sone as *ser* Dary till his dukis · deuysid had Þ*ir* wordis,
Oriathar, Darius' brother, says: Þan answars him ane Oriathire · ane of his awen brethire, 2512
"Þou has Þis gome out of grece · so gretly e[n]hansid,
Þat we Elanda suld leue · & he Þis land*is* entre.
"Your majesty should do as he does. Bot wald ȝo*ur* maieste Þe maners · of Þis man sewe,
Ȝe miȝt ȝoure rewme haue iñ ryst · & othire rewmes wyñ.

[1] MS. Sytile. [2] Þi *added in the margin.*
[3] *Added in the margin.*

Thys sou*er*ayne *with* hys seneo*ur*s · throghe secyH he wend*es*,
thoght to ryde & to rame · Þe regions of Barbers. 2488
Þen was *sir* darius a-drede · & derfly Þan sembles
Hys knyghte*s* & hys CounseH · & carped Þes wordes,
Sayd: "*sir*ys, nowe may ȝe se · yo*ur*-self *with* your eey,
How A[lexander] in hys armys · alway encreses, 2492
In valo*ur* & victory · & ve*r*tus so noble;
Þ*ar* as I thratt [him] as a thefe · thedes to dispoyle,
Nowe warreys he fuH worthily[1] · als wiȝt[2] man suld,
Constr*a*ynes *with* hys contenance · knyghte*s* to bowe.
Þe more I speke hym dispite · & in my speche ende*r*ed,
The heyar I here hym enhaunsyd · & hersud hys name.
A baH & a brayne-pañ · I to Þe berne send,
For burde & for bobance · Þe bab *with* to play. 2500
Hym Þat I Counte bot a knaffe · may now be callyd [maister];
For whar he ffoundez apon fold · dame fortoune hym sewes,
For-thi vs hafe buse in hert · Þe heyle of o*ur* peple, 2503
And for no pompe ne no pryde · hys p*er*son to dispyse,
For hys loyse, ffor all hys hattellayke · is losyt Þorow Þe werld.
And Þe more I meng o*ur* maieste · Þe more it debate*s*,[3]
The grace of Þe grete god · I gesse, wele hym helpe*s*, [Fol. 28.]
Of p*ris* Þe hegh p*ro*vynce · vnto Þis prince lefys. 2508
When we hope aH Þe heldest · to herye hym w*ith* armes,
Þen am I raddest aH o*ur* realme · be raymed from vs first."
Sone as *sir* Dary to hys dukez · devysed hase Þees wordez,
Þen answers hym oryather · on of hys awne brether, 2512

"Now hase Þis gome oute of grece · so gretly enhaunsed,
And we Þe lande shuld leve · & he Þe land*es* entre.
Bot wald ȝo*ur* maieste Þe mane*r*s · of Þis man sewe, 2515
Ȝe myght yo*ur* realme haue in rist · & other landes wynne.

[1] MS. worthtly. [2] MS. wi*th*.
[3] *Catchword*—Þe grace.

For Alex*ander* aH-ways · or any of his erles,
Nayt*is* him-selfe in ilke nede · & so his name rysis."

He helps himself."

"Quat sall I take of him̄ my temes · tittir*e* þan he myne?"
"Sir*e*, on my per*e*H," q*uod* a prince · "he passes all othir*e*;
Another says,
þe wee wirkis aH be witt · he worthis þe bett*ir*;
For-þi of þe lion̄, as I leue · laȝt is his birthe."

"he is of a lion's kin." "How so?" says Darius.

"Quat knawis þ*ou* þ*at*?" q*uod* þe kyng · & þen þe kniȝt swaris:

"Sir*e*, I was sent on a sand · my-seH oñ a time,
To Philip his fader*e* · to feche our*e* tr*o*uage;
þare had I siȝt of þe segg · his sapient I herde.
For-þi plese it to ȝ*our* per*s*on · ȝour*e* princes a-sembles,
Of Mede of Mesopotan*e* · þe men of Itaile,
þe pupiH of Appolomados · þe panthis folke,
And ma þ*at* houes to ȝ*our* hest · a hundreth & fifti.

"Sir, I once went to Philip's court.

He heard that many would come to attack the Greeks, and remarked that one wolf can worry many sheep."

Lat vs gedir*e* þ*us* oure gomes · our*e* gods wiH vs helȝp;
And quen he sesse vs sike a sowme · sar*e* will he drede.
ȝa, bot a wolfe, q*uod* a wee · wiH were many flokkis,[1]
And so þe grace of þe grekis · ouir*e*-gos þe barbers."
Be þis s*er* Ph[*ilip*] soñ þe fers · of feȝtand folk
Had semblid ane vñsene sowme · as þe buke sais,

Alexander has 200,000 men.

Twa C. M*ille* in thede · aH[2] of threu*en* kniȝt*is*.
Ridis furth iñ aray · removis his tent*is*;
. . . . . 2538*

Vn-to a watere he wendis · as þe buke tellis,
þ*at* w*ith* þa marchesmen · Mociañ was hatteñ;
It was clerir*e* þan cristaH · & cole as a chiH;

[Fol. 44.]

He bathes in a cold river.

þare-in couet oure kyng · his cors for to bathe.
W*ith* þ*at* þan wan of his wede · & weschid him aH ouir*e*,
Quare-þurȝe he hent slike a harme · at hat*ir*ly him greued.

He is chilled,

þis chele eft*ir* chaufing · enchafis so his hernes,

and has a fever.

þ*at* he was fallen in a feuir*e* · or he first wend.

[1] MS. flolkis, i. e. flokkis. [2] *Added in the margin.*

For A[lexander] always · or ony of hys bernes,
Nat*es* hym-self in ony nede · & so hys name rysys."

"Sir, on my per*e*H," q*uod* a prince · "he passes aH o*þer*;
þe wee wyrches aH w*ith* witte · & worthes ay þe bett*er*;
For-þi of þe lyon, as I lefe · laght he hys byrth."
"What knawez þ*ou* þ*at*?" q*uod* þe kyng · & þen þe knyght answers:

"Sir, I was send on a sond · my-self on a tyme,
To philip hys fader · to feche hys trowage;
þ*ar* hed I syght of þe segge · hys sapiens I herd.
For-þi ples it yow*ur* per*s*on · ȝ*our* princes assembles,
Off medy & of mesopothany · þe men of ytalle,
The peple of appolomados · þe per*a*nthez folkez,
And mo þen hewen[1] to y*our* heystez · a hundreth & fyfty.
Let vs gedir to vs *our* gomez · our godd*es* wyll vs help̄;
And when he seys vs suche a sowme · sore wyH he drede.
ȝa, bot þen a wolfe, q*uod* þe we · wyll wery mony flokkez,
And so þe grace of þe grekez · ou*er*gose þe barbres."
By þis s*ir* philip son þe fers · of fightand bernes
Had semblyd hym a sowme vnsene · & þus says þe text,
Two hundreth thousand in thede · aH of thro knyghtez.
Rydez furth in aray · remewys hys tent*es*, [Fol. 28 *b*.]
And thoght to loge þ*ar* & rest · & ease hym þ*at* nyght.
VntiH a wat*er* he wend*es* · as þe writt shewys,
þ*at* w*ith* þe marche-meñ · of Mociañ es haldyñ;
Clerar þen cr*i*stall · & cold as a chyH;
And þ*ar*in couett þe kyng · hys Cors to be bathyd.
W*ith* þ*at* þai wan of hys wedez · & wessh hym all ou*er*,
Whar-þorow he hynt suche a harme · þ*at* hett*er*ly hym grefyd.
The chele after chawfyng · enchafys so hys harmes,
þ*at* he was fallen in a feu*er* · or he lest wende.

[1] *Sic; read* houen.

Þan mo*ur*ned all þe Messedons · as meruaiH ware ellis.
Þai sa3e hi*m* so to be seke · said ilkane to othire :
" Be þis disese to s*er* Darie · & his dukis knawen,
He saH vs sett on a-saute · & surely en[c]ounbre."
His men are sorry. If þai were sary & so · na selly me thingke,
For ay þe hele of þe hede · helpis all þe menbris.
Alexander sends for a physician named Philip, Þan callis to him þe conquiro*ur* · a clerke of his awen,
Ane Philip, his fesisiane · his fare to behald ;
Of al manere of medcyne · man þ*at* maste couthe,
A 3onge berdles barne · as þe buke tellis,
who says he will soon heal him. Said : " lat li3tly my lord · for in a litiH stonde
My-self w*ith* a serop̄ · saH saue 3ow be-lyue."
Þan p*er*meon̄ þe proude · a prince of his ost,
Parmeon hates Philip, þ*at* held þe erth of Ermonye · & enmyte hadd
Vn-to þis clerke of þe kyng*is* · & be no cause els
Bot for þe lede was loued · & w*ith* þe lord chereschest ;
Þan ames he to s*er* Alex*ander* · on ane slike a pistiH :
and tells Alexander not to trust him. " Kepis 3ow," q*uod* he, " conquiro*ur* · & caches no3t his drenke ;
For Dari*us* eft*ir* his deth · his do3te*r* has hi*m* hi3t,
And 3ow to sla be som̄ sle3t · to sese hi*m* his landis."
But Alexander drinks. 3it was þe berne no3t a bene · baist of his word*is*,
He asurid him so sadly · þe serep he takis,
þe licor in his awen looue · þe lett*ir* in þe tothire,
[Fol. 44 *b*.] And in-to Phili[pi]s face · fast [1] he behald*is*.
Philip says he is guiltless. He bad him dred neuire a dele · & it drink swyth̄,
And þan þe pistill of þe prince · he put hi*m* in hand.
þe leche lokid ouire þe lynes · " my lording," he said,
" I am no3t gilty of þis gile · be aH þe grete gods ! "
Alexander is fish-whole. As fast was he fysche-hale · & Philip̄ he callis,
Alexander thanks Philip, Halsis him fuH hertly · & of his hele thankis,
Said, " wele knew þou my kynd · lufe þi concience,
First suposid I of þi serop · syne sesid þe þe lett*ir*.
" Mi louely lord, be 3o*ur* leue · lattes hi*m* a-pere,
þe tulk at sike a trayne · has touchid to my-selfe."

[1] MS. face face fast.

þen m*ur*nyd all þe massydons · as m*ur*vell wer ellez.
When þai hym sawe so be seke · sayd ichone to o*þer* :
" Be þis disease to s*ir* Dary · & to hys dukez knawyn̄,
He sall vs sett on a-saute · & surely vs Combre."
Yff þai wer sory & so · no selly me thynke,
For ay þe heylh of þe hede · helpis aH þe membrys.
þen callys to hym þe Conquero*ur* · a clerke of hys Awne,
On philipp, hys fysycyan̄ · hys fare to byholde ;
Off all man*er* of medycine · man̄ þat most kowth,
A 3ong berdles [1] bern̄ · as þe buke tellys,
Sayd : " lete*s* lyghtly my lord · for in a lytyH stounde
My-self w*ith* a Syrope · shall safe you bylyfe."
þen was þ*ar* p*er*meon̄ þe prouud · a prince of his hoste,
þ*at* held þe erth of Ermony · & enmyte hed
Vnto þis Clerke of þe kengez · & be no cause ellez
Bot for þe lede was lofed · & w*ith* þe lord cheryst ;
þen says he to s*ir* A[lexander] · anone suche a pystyll :
" Kepys you," q*uod* he, " Conquero*ur* · & kachez nott hys drynkez ;
For Darius aft*er* hys deth · hys doght*er* hase hym hyght,
And you to sla by som slyght · to seyse hym hys landez."
Yitt was þe bern̄ not a beyne · bassyd of hys wordez,
He assuryd hym so sadly · þe syroppe he fangez,
þe lico*ur* in hys Awne lofe · þe lett*er* in þe to*þer*,
And into philipp face · fast he byholde*s*. [Fol. 29.]
He bad hym drede neue*r* a dele · bot drynke it Swyth,
And þen þe pistyH of þe prince · he put hym in hand.
The leche lukyd oue*r* þe lynes · " my lordyng," he sayd,
" I ne am noght gylty of þis · by all þe god*es* owte ! "
Als fast was he fyssh-hole · & philip he clepys,
Halsys hym fuH hertly · & of hys heylle thankez,
Sayd, " wele knew þou my kynde · þi conscience I lofe,
First suppyd of þi syroppe · syne sesyd þe my lett*er*.
" My lofely Lord, be 3o*ur* leffe · lette*s* hym apere,
The tulke þ*at* suche a trayne · has attachyd to my-seluen̄."

[1] *The* d *is above the line.*

who suggests that Permeon should be sent for and beheaded.

Þan eftir ser Permes his prince · pres'ly he sendis,
And Þare Þe trechoure was taue · & for his trayne hedid.

Alexander wins Media and Armenia,

Þañ mouys he furth with his meñ · & Medy he wynnys
Enterly to his empire · & Ermonye Þe mare. 2584
Till a dissert Þan he drafe · was dry & na watere,
Þurȝe Adriac till Eufraten · & ames Þare his tentis,

and makes a bridge over the Euphrates.

And mas a brig[1] ouire Þe bourne · of Barges[1] with cheynes;
Comandis his kniȝtis ouire to caire · & Þar Þai vncachid[2] hertis. 2588

His men fear to cross.

Þai saȝe Þe streme so stife · it stonaid Þam aH,
For ferd Þe festing[1] suld faile · & Þai in Þe flode droune.

He sends over lads and grooms,

Þan mas he laddis ouire to lend · & lokars of bestis, 2591
And monestis Þam ilk modire-soñ · him maynly to teH.
ȝit was his baratours a-baist · & Þen Þe berne writhis,

and then crosses himself.

Fandis him first on be-fore · & all foloȝes eftir.
Þan passid Þare out of Paradese · twa proude Flummes,
Þurȝe Medy & Messopotane · Þai move, as I fynd, 2596

The rivers Tigris and Euphrates.

And so to[3] Babiloñ Þai bowe · ane is Þe bourne of Tygre,
Þe tothire is Eufrates full euen · & rynnes so to Sylus.

[Fol. 45.] He cuts the cables in two.

Þan cutis[4] Þe kyng in to Þe cablis · & to his kniȝtis sais:
"Lo! Þof vs faH now to flee · we may na ferryre wend;
2600

He says, "We cannot now flee.

Þare I rede," quod Þe kyng · "oure bakis neuir to turne,
And if we did, with-outen dome · to die aH at anes;
For he Þat folowid has ai Þe floure · & he at fled neuire.
Bees liȝt & laches ȝow a lose · it is a lord gamen. 2604

We will never return till we conquer."

For I make a-vow at Messedone · we saH na mare see,
TiH aH Þe barbres vs bow · Þañ may we blith turne."

[1] MS. Bargos. [2] MS. cachid, *with* vn *above*.
[3] *In the margin*. [4] MS. tutis.

Þen after for permeoñ hys prince · prestely he sendes,
And Þar Þe trechour was tane · & for hys trayne hated.

Þen mevys he forth with hys men · & medy he wynnez
Enterly to hys empyre · & Ermonye Þe more. 2584
To a deserte Þen he drof · was dry & no waterez,
Throgh andriake to eufrateñ · & settes Þar hys tentes,[1]
And askez a brigg ouer Þe burne · of bargez with chynez;
Commandes hys knyghtez ouer to carye · Þai hed kokell hertes, 2588
Seghen Þe streme be so styff · Þai stoned Þe helder,
For lest Þe festynyng[1] had faylyd · & Þaim Þe flude drenchyd.
Þen makys laddes ouer to lend · & lokers of bestes, 2591
And monyshyd Þen iche moderson · Þaim manly to sewe.
ȝitt wer hys baratours abaist · & Þen Þe berñ wrothed,
Foundez first on before · & all folows after.
Þar passys owt of paradyse · twa brade flomes,
Throgh medy & mesopothany · Þai mouen, as I fynd, 2596
And so to babyloyne Þai bowe · Þat is Þe burne of tigre,
Þat oper is eufrates fuH euen · rynnez so to Nilus. [says:
Þen Cuttes Þe kyng in two hys cablys · & to hys knyghtes
"Lo! Þof vs fallys nowe to flee · we may no ferre wend;

Þarfore I breke," quod Þe berne · "our bakkez neuer to torne, 2601
And if we did, withowtyn dome · to dye all at ones;
For he Þat folows hase Þe floure · & he flees neuer. [Fol. 29 b.]

Be light & lachys Þou lose · it is a lordez gamme. 2604
For I make a-wowe Þat massydoyn · shall see vs no more,
Tyll all Þe barbrens vs bowe · Þen[2] may we blyth bee."

[1] *Here follows*—And Þe knyghtez of Þe coste as Þai Þe case seghen; *but this is l.* 2641, *out of place*.
[2] *Above the line in* MS.

Vndecimus passus Alexandri.

Darius collects an army.

Now has *ser* Darie þe derfe · of dukis & princes
Heued vp a hoge ost · & fyue hundreth kniȝt*is*
Ere chosen to chiftans · & chargid þai*m* to lede;
Trott*is* him oñ to Tigre[1] · & þare his tent*is* sett*is*;
þañ mett þai on þe oþire morne · w*ith* a mekiH nombre,
Alexander meets him. Sire Alex*ander* þe hathiH · armed oñ blonkis.
þe m*u*ltitude ware to me · meruaile to rekeñ,
þ*at* sa*m*med was oñ aiþ*ir* side · many sadd thousand.
Now ere þe baners out-bred · & þe bate neȝis,
Trumpets are blown. Blew bemys of bras · buskis to-gedire,
þe crie of þe clarions · þe cloudis it p*er*syd;
For þe dewt[2] of þe dyn · daunced stedis.
Bathe þe twa batails · bremely assemblis,
And aithire segg w*ith* his sowme · soȝt vn-to[3] othire.
Knights charge. Kniȝt*is* oñ curso*ur*s · kest þan in fewtire,
Taches in-to target*is* · tamed þaire brenys.
There is hard fighting. þare was stomling of stedis · sticking[1] of erles,
Sharpe schudering of schote · schering of mailes,
[Fol. 45 *b*.] So stalworthly w*ith*in a stond · sterid þai*m* þe grekis,
þ*at* of þe barb[r]yne blod · aH þe fild flowis.
Darius is grieved to see his men beaten. Sone as *ser* Darie þe deth · of his douth sees,
þe pite of þe P*er*sens · him prickis in his saule,
Sees his meneȝe so mynesch · & his men fangid,
A few þ*at* fresch̄ ware vndefoulid · & to þe fliȝt to*ur*nes.
One Persian warrior is told he may marry Darius' daughter if he slays Alexander. ȝit was ane of his ost · ane odd mañ of strenth̄,
A burly berne & a bald · as þe buke tellis,
A segg at he ensurid had · to sese him his doȝt*ir*,
If he miȝt sla w*ith* any sleȝt · þe sen*iour* of grece.
He cled him aH in clene stele · a conyschaunce ouire,
þ*at* made was & merkid · oñ þe messedone armes,
Aires him to *ser* Alex*ander* · in aH-þ*ir*-mast puple,

[1] MS. Tirgre, *corrected to* Tigre. [2] *Read* dowt.
[3] vn *in the margin.*

[Vndecimus Passus.]

Nowe hafys *sir* Dary þe derf · of dukez & p*r*incez
Hefyd vp a hoge hoste · of fyfe C knyghtez
Er chosyn for chyftanes · & chargett þaim to lede;
Trott*es* on to tygre · & þ*ar* hys tent*es* sett*es*;
þen mette þai on þe toþ*er* morne · w*ith* a muche nombre,
Sir *Alexander* & hys atheH men · armed on þ*ar* blonkez.
The multitude to me · wer merveH to Rekeñ,
þe[r] sammed was on þ*at* oþ*er* syde · mony sad hundreth.
Nowe er þes bane*r*s oute brade · & þe bates neghez,
Blew bemes of brase · & buskyn to-gedre,
þe cry of þe Clarions · the clodez it p*er*syd;
And for doute of þe dynne · dauncen sted*es*.
Both þe two batels · bremly assemble,
And seggez w*ith* hys soumez · soght vnto oþ*er*.
Knyt*es* on þair coursours · kestyn in fewtre,
Tachyng into targett*es* · tamyd þair brynnes.
þ*ar* was stomblyng of sted*es* · stykkyng of Erles,
Sharpe shod*er*yng of shote · sheryng of malys,
So stalwartly in a stounde · steryñ þaim þe grekez,
þ*at* of þe Barbren blode · all þe bent flowez.
Sone as *sir* Dary þe deth · of hys doghty hedys,
The pite of þe p*er*syens · hym p*r*ikkez in hys sawle,
Seys hys meynȝe so amenyst · & hys men fonged,
A ffew þ*at* fresh wer vndefowled · to þe flyght t*ur*nes.

ȝyt was on w*er* of hys oste · an odde man of Strenth,
A borely berne & a bald · als þe buke tellys,
A segge þ*at* he sured hed · to seyse hym hys doght*er*,
Yf he myght slae w*ith* ony sleght · þe seneour of grece.
He clad hym all in clene stele · a Conysc*a*unce ou*er*,
þ*at* mad was & markyd · on massidons armes,
Kayres hym to *sir* A[lexander] · in all þe most prese,[1]

[1] *Catchword*—as he.

He comes behind the king,

As he a hathiH ware of his · behind him he stelis,
A briȝt brynnand brand · he braidis out of shethe,

and wounds him in the head.

And þurȝe-out þe helme in-to þe hede · he hurt him a littiH.

And þe kniȝtis of oure cost · as þai þe cas saȝe,
Þan fange þai þis ilk freke · & be-fore þe kyng bryngis.

Alexander asks why he hit him;

"Quat now? my worthi werreours?" · þe wale kyng said,
He wend wele at he ware · a wee of his aweñ,

the Persian being dressed as a Macedonian.

"Qui has þou brest so my brayñ · & with a brand wondid
Ȝour sekire seruant in same · aH were I sire callid,
AH ware I halden as for hede · ȝour helpere at nede?"
"Nay, hope ȝe neuire," quod þe hathit · "ser hiȝe emperoure,

"I am no Macedonian.

Me any Messedone to be · þou ames of þine aweñ,
Bot of cruell kind · comen of barbres.

I did this to gain Darius' daughter."

And þis I did for ser Darius · his doȝtir me hiȝt,
And cordid oñ þis condicion · to couple hire to wyfe,
And he went out of þe werd · to wild all his regne,

[Fol. 46.]

To hew þi hede fra þi hals · & anys it him shewe."
Þañ callis oure kyng him his kniȝtis[1] · þaire consaile to frayñ,

"What shall be done to him?" says the king.

"Quat saH be done him for þis dede?" · & þai bedene sware,

"Let him be hung or burnt," answer his counsellors.

Sum, at he hangid suld be hiȝe · sum þe hede priued,
Sum bedis in a bale-fire · brin him to poudire.
"Quat has he fauted?" quod þe frek · "þof he him forced haue

"Nay, he only did as he was told to do," replies the king.

þe charges[2] of his chiftan · chefely to fiH?
He þat him demes to þe dede · he dampnes him-selfe,
And diȝtis him his awen dome · & þat dare I proue.
For demed I any of my douth · ser darye to spiH,
As ȝe þis gentiH man enioyne · suld him be iugd þeñ."

[1] *The first* i *above the line.*
[2] MS. changs, *with stroke above* gs.

As he an atheH war of hys · b[e]hynd hym he stelez, [Fol. 30.]
A bryght brynnand brand · he brade owt of sheth,
And þorow þe helme into þe heued · he hurt hym a lytyH.
And þe knyghtes of þe coste · as þai þe case sawgh,
Þen fange þai þis ilke freke · & byfore þe kyng brynggez.
"What nowe? my worthi werayour" · þe wale kyng sayd,
He wend þat witterly it were · a wee of hys awne,
"Why hase þou bryssyd so my brane · & with a swerd woundet
Your sekir seruand in same · aH wer I sir clepyd,
AH wer I haldyn for hede · ȝour helpar at nede?"
"Nay, hope neuer[1]," quod þe atheH · "sir hegh Emperoure,

Me ony massydoñ to be · þou myssys of þi Awne,
Bot of þe crueH kynde · Comen of þe barbrys.
And þus I dyd, for sir Darius · hys doghter hyght me,
And cordytt vnder þis condicion · to coupill hir to wyfe,
And qwen he went of þis warld · to weld all hys realme,
To hewe þi hede from þi halse · & onys it hym shewe."
Now kyng *Alexander* callys þen hys knyghtes · þair counsell to frayne,

"What suld be done hym for þis dede" · & þai bydome[2] sone,

Some, þat he hanged suld be · & some þe hede pershed,[3]
Some bydes in a bale-fyre · hym bryn aH to poudre.
"What hase he fautyd?" quod þe freke · "þof he hym forsyd hafe
The charge of hys chiftane · chefely to fylle?
He þat hym demys to be dede · he dampnes hym-seluen,
And dytes hys awne dome · & þat dar I prefe.
For demyd I ony of my doghty · sir dary to spyH,
As he is[4] genteH-man enjoyne · suld hym-self be iugged þeñ."

[1] MS. nereuer. [2] *Read* beden. [3] MS. prishyd.
[4] *Read* ȝe this.

He dismisses the Persian in peace.

He lat*is* þe P*er*syn in pesse · pas w*ith* his hele,
Mekiƚ for his mayñ strenth · & for his mi3t p*ra*ysed.

Darius assembles his men,

As sone as Darye þe derfe · of þis dede heris,
þ*a*t he was[1] sauyd vnslayne · he semblis his kny3t*is*,
Vp to a mi3ti montayne · his men þair*e* he schewis,
And gessis hi*m* wele þare to deg*ra*yd · þe grekis maist*ir*.

but takes to flight.

þañ fandis he furth in-to þe fild · & fled als beliue,
And Alex*ander* w*ith* his ost · him asp*er*ly folowed
Ri3t to þe bu[r]3e of Batran · & bildid þar*e* his tent*is*,
Mas hi*m* glad[2] w*ith* his ginge · & to his godis offirs.
þe cite þan he assailid · & sesid oñ þe morne,

Alexander takes Batran, and finds Darius' treasure, and his wife and children.

W*ith* all þe bur3es þ*ar*e a-boute · & busked þar*e* his sete.
þare fand he treso*ur* vntald · & als þe trew spouse
Of s*er* Dary, bath his dame · & aƚ his dere childir*e*.
Now dose hi*m* fra Darius · a dereworth prince,
Aires to s*er* Alex*ander* · adoures him lawe,

A Persian prince says he has served Darius for naught, [Fol. 46 *b*.]

"I haue erdid w*ith* 3oure enmy · s*er* emp*er*oure," he said,
"As soiet s*er*ued haue I þ*a*t sire · many sere wynt*ir*;
And all my trauaill I tint · for tuke I no gudes.
Bot wald it now 3o*ur* worthines · to wend w*ith* my-selfe,

and offers to deliver up Darius.

A ten M*ille* vs take · of tulkis enarmed,
I sall 3ow hete in 3oure hand · to haue at 3oure wiƚ
Sire Dary, w*ith* þe mast dole · of his derfe erles."

Alexander refuses.

"Nay, leue, lat ane," q*uod* þe lord · "þen leue I[3] no straungers,
þ*a*t þ*ou* be willi in þi witt · to werray þine awen̄,
Ne tell þ*ou* me no3t þ*a*t tale · I trow no3t þi wordis."
Be þis s*er* Dary fro his duk*is* · deuysid his pistiƚ:
þe kyng of kyngs was callid · & clere god bathe,

A letter. "Darius' satraps to their lord

þus, vndirstand I, was þe stile · & sti3t in þare-eft*ir*:[4]
"3o*ur* satr*a*paires, 3o*ur* s*er*uant · w*ith* s*er*uand obeschen;

[1] *In the margin.*
[2] MS. ginge glad, *with* ginge *struck through.*
[3] MS. leuē þ^{e}; *with* þ^{e} *altered to* I. [4] *or* est*ir*.

He lat*tes* þe p*er*señ in pes · pas w*ith* hys heyle,
Mekyll for hys mayne[1] strenth · & for hys myght doys p*ra*yss.
Als sone as s*ir* Dary þe derfe · of þis dede herys,
þ*a*t he was saffed so vnslayne · he sembles hys kneghtez,
Vp tyll a maghty[2] mountane · hys men þ*ar* he schewez,
And gessys hym 3itt degrad · þe grekyn maist*er*.
þen foundez he forth in-to þe feld · & fled als belyfe,
And A[lexander] w*ith* hys hoste · hym asp*er*ly folows
Right to þe burgh of batran · & byggyd þ*ar* hys tent*es*, [Fol. 30 *b*.]
And makez hym glad w*ith* hys geng · & to hys goddez offers.
þe Cyte þan he assaylyd · & sesyd it vppon þe morne,
W*ith* all þe burghes þ*ar* aboute · & buskett þ*ar* hys sete.[3]
þ*ar* fand treso*ur*[4] vntalde · & þe trew spouse
O[f] s*ir* Dary, both hys dame · & hys dere chelder.
Now doys hym on from Darius · a darworth prince,
Kayres hym to alex*ander* · & adours hym lowe,
"I haue erdyd w*ith* yo*ur* enmite · s*ir* emp*er*our," he sayd,
"As sugett s*er*uyd þ*a*t syre · mony sere wynt*er*;
And all my travell I tynt · for tuke I no gudez.
Bot wald now yo*ur* worthynes · to wende w*ith* my-selueñ,
And teñ thouusand vs take · of tulkez ennarmed,
I shall yo*u* hete hym in yo*ur* hand · to haue at yo*ur* wille
Sir Dary, witt þe most dele · of hys derfe Erles."
"Na, leyfe, lett be," q*uo*d þe lord · "þ*ar* leuyn þe no lede,

þ*a*t þ*ou* be willy in þi witte · to werre þine awne,
Na tell þ*ou* me not þ*a*t tale · I trowe noght þi wordez."
By þis s*ir* Dary fro hys dukez · devyse[d] hath a pistyƚ:
The kyng of kyngez he hym cald · & clere god both,
þus, vnd*er*standyng I, was þe style · & styght in þ*ar*-after:
"3o*ur* satr*a*pers, yo*ur* sou*er*aynte · w*ith* s*er*uise obeysshyng;

[1] MS. maynte. [2] *So in* MS. [3] MS. fete.
[4] MS. t*ur*esou*r*.

Sire, we haue wayued to 3ow writtis · 3it write we þe same,

Alexander has defeated us. How þis maistir of Messedone · has on oure marchis entrid, 2696

Brynd vp oure biggingis · bretted oure kni3tis,

And we ouire-sett be to sare · to suffire any langire.

Help us." For-þi 3our dignite bydene · we drerily be-seke,

A-gayns þe force of oure faa · vs forthire a quile." 2700

Queñ he had red aH þe rawis · for rancour he swellis,

A letter. " Darius to Alexander. And out oñ-ane to Alexander · aH þus he writis.

"I, Dary, with þe dignite · þe diademe of Persee,

Of aH þe kyngis þe kyng · þat corouned was euire, 2704

To þe, my seruand, I say · as me was sent late,

Thou likenest thy lowness to my height. How þi lawnes & þi litillaike · þou lickyns to my hi3t.

Bot parde, þi prouidence · inpossible it semes,

A heuy As to be houyn · vp to þe sternes, 2708

Thou lackest wings. A thing threuyñ is & thike · & þarnes þe wyngis,

And fautis þe fethirhames · & þe fli3t-loomes.

For-þi þi mynd neuir þe mare · lat mounte in-to pride

Boast not. For chance of na cheualry · þat þou a-cheued hase. 2712

[Fol. 47.] For vertu ne no victori · ne vant noght þi-selfe ;

He þat enhansis[1] him to he3e · þe heldire he declynes.

I have heard of thy kindness to my kin. I haue herd of þi hendlaike · of heraudis & of othire,

Of þi noblay now o newe time · a-nentes my modire.

Bathe to my wyfe & to my barnes · quat bounte þou shewis, 2717

Quat curtassy & kyndlaike · I ken alto-gedire.

This will not make me thy friend. Bot surely aH þe sesoñ · þat þou þaṁ so pleses,

þou fangis me neuire to þi frynd · fyne quen þe likis.

And if þou wirke þaim all þe wa · & wrak at þou may,

þe mare vnfryndschip þarfore · fall sall þe neuire ;

Work them harm, if thou wilt." For-þi to put þam to pyne · I pray þe no3t wande, 2723

For myñ angire on þine arrogance · saH at þe last kindiH."

. . . . . .

[1] MS. ens enhansis ; *with* ens *expuncted.*

Sir, we haue send to you writtes · 3itt writte we þe same,

How þis maister oute of massidoyne · our marches hath enteryd, 2696

Brynt vp our biggenges · bryttynd our kneghtez,

And we ouersett be so sore · to suffre ony lenger.

For whi your dignite bedene · we derely besekyn,

Ayayne þe force of our foes · vs furthers a while." 2700

When he had rekkend all þe rawes · for rankour he swellez,

And oute anone to A[lexander] · aH þus he writtez : *Epistola.*

"I, Dary, with þe dignite · þe dyademe of pers,

Of aH kyngez kyng · þat Crouned was euer, 2704

To þe, my seruand, I say · als me was sent late,

How þou[1] lownys in þi lityllake · þou likens to my hert.

Bot parde, þi prouydens[2] · inpossible it semys,

A hevy asse to heff · on hye to þe sternes, 2708 [Fol. 31.]

A thyng þat thryffyn is and thyke · & þarnes[3] wengez,

And fawtes bath þe fethirhames · & þe flyght-lomes.

For-þi mynd neuer þe more · to mounte þe to pryde

For chaunce of no chevallry · þat þou chefyd hase. 2712

For vertew ne victory · avaunte noght þi-selfe ;

He þat enhaunses hym to hygh · þe lawer he declines.

I haue herd 3it of þi hynlake · at harhaldes & at oþer,

O[f] þi noblay nowe anew · anence my awyn modre. 2716

Both to my bird & my barnes · qwat bounte þou schewys,

What curtasy & hyndlake · I ken aH-to-geder.

Bot surly all þe seson · þou þaim so ples,

þou fonnges me neuer to þi frend · fyne if þou likez. 2720

. . . . . .

þe more frendshiþ þarfore · fall shall þe neuer ;

For-þi put þaim to pyne · I pray þe nogh[t] wonnd, 2723

For my angre on þi arrogaunce · sall at þe last kyndyH ;

þarfor do þou þi best · god forbyd þou[4] spare." 2724*

[1] *Read* þi. [2] MS. peruydens. [3] MS. 3arnes.
[4] MS. þan, *altered to* þou.

Quen he[1] had lokid ouir þe lines · he laȝes at his wordis,
And ditis agayn to *ser* Dary · þis dete þat foloȝes:
A letter. " Alexander to Darius. ¶ "I, Alex*ander*, þe eldest · & all myne ane
Of kyng Ph[ilip] & his fere · þat frely lady, 2728
Honourd Olimpades · þat anely me fosterd,
To þe kyng of P*er*sy · þis p*ro*louge I write:
The gods hate vanity. Sir*e*, vanite & vayne-glori · & vices of pride
Þa ere þe gaudis, as I gesse · þat all gods hatis, 2732
And ilka dedly douth · þai driffe þam̄ to punesch̄,
Þat has driȝten of vndedlynes · draȝen þai*m* to name.
I apply this to thee, Þis si*mi*litude to þi-selfe · I say all-to-gedir*e*,
Þat a-suris so in þi surquitry · & sesis neuir*e*-mare 2736
who so boastest. To bost ne to blasfeme · blyn will þou nouthir*e*.
Bot for þi gold & þi gudis · a god þou þe makis,
Thou upbraidest me for shewing kindness. Þou vp-braydis me for þe beute · þat I þi blod schewid,
As to þi modir*e* I mene · & to þi mery childir, 2740
Þar*e* mas þou þe to malicole · & meenes for litiH.
[Fol. 47 *b*.] I did it not to please thee, but of my own bounty. I wroȝt it noþir*e* for þi will · ne for þi[1] wale threte.
If I kid þam̄ curtassy · it come fra my-selfe,
Haly of our*e* awen̄ hert · & of oure hynd thewis; 2744
Ne we prid vs for na prouwis · p*re*destayned we er*e*,
Our*e* gods gayn̄ vs þar*e*-to · þat gretly þou spises.
Let this letter be the last." Latt now þis l*ett*re be þe last · & loke to þi-selfe, 2747
For sekir*e* & oñ my surement · I seke[2] ȝow agayn̄s."
Þis brefe he bedis þam to bere · þat broȝt him þe toþir*e*,
And tak*is* þam̄ of his tresour*e* · & twynnes w*ith* þai*m*
faire. 2750
Quen þai to P*er*sy war*e* past · a pistill he enfo*ur*mes,
Alexander writes to his princes. Wrate a writt of his wiH · so sendis to his princes,
His s*er*uand*is* & his seneschalls · out of sere rewmes,
And þus comandis he þam clene · þe kyng his stile.
The letter. ¶ "I, Alex*ander*, þat as aire · avaunced is in grece,
"Alexander þe son̄ of Ph[ilip] þe fers · as I first tald, 2756
And als of Olimpades · myne hon*ur*able modir*e*,

[1] *Above the line.*
[2] MS. se slk, *blotted, and altered to* seke *in the margin.*

When he lukyd ou*er* þe lynes · he smyllys at hys wordes,
And dyt*es* ayayn to s*ir* Dary · þe deteys þ*at* folows:
Epistola. "I, A[lexander], þe eldest · & aH my one
Of kyng philip̄ & hys fere · þ*at* frelich lady, 2728
Honord Olymphades · þ*at* only me fosterd,
To þe kyng owte of p*er*sye · þis p*ro*loug I writte:
Sir, vanyte & vaneglory · & vicys of pride
Þes er þe gawdes, I ges · þat þees godd*es* hatez, 2732
And iche dedly do · þai dreffe þai*m* to ponysh,
Þ*at* hase dryghten of vndedlynes · drawyn þaim onone.
Þis si*mi*litude of þi-self · I say aH-to-ged*er*,
Þ*at* assurys so þi surquidry · & seses neu*er* more 2736
To bost & to blasfleme[1] · blyn wyll þou nowþ*er*.
Bot for þi gold & þi gudez · a god þou þe makys,
Þou vpbardez[2] me for þe bewte · þ*at* I þi blude schewyd,
As to þi moder I mene · & to þi mery childer, 2740
Þou makys þe to malycole · & menys þe for litytH. [Fol. 31 *b*.]
I wroght it nowder for þi wille · ne for þi wale thoght.
Yff I kyd þaim ony c*ur*tasy · it Come of my-seluen̄,
Holy of owr awne hert · & of our hend thewys; 2744
Na we p*ri*de vs for no prowez · p*re*destinate vs here,
O*ur* godd*es* gyffyn vs þ*ar*-to · þ*at* grettly þ*ou* dispysys.
Latt nowe þis lett*er* be last · & luke to þi-seluen̄,
For sekerly w*ith*oute surement · I seche þe agayns." 2748
Þis brefe he bidd*es* þaim bere · þ*at* broght hym þe toþ*er*,
Takys þam of hys tresour · & twynnys w*ith* þaim faire.

When þai to p*er*sye was past · a pistyll he enformes,
Wrote a writte of hys wille · & wafed to hys Princez,
Hys s*er*uand*es* & hys senescals · oute of sere land*es*, 2753
And þus Comand*es* he þaim clene · þe kyng in hys style.
"I, A[lexander], þ*at* as heyr · av*a*unsyd am in grece,
þe son of philipp þe fers · as I first told, 2756
And also of Olympades · my honorable lady,

[1] *Read* blasfeme. [2] *Read* vpbradez.

to his princes, Þus send I to my satraparis · my princes & my dukes,
peers, My pers out of[1] siphagoyne · salutis & grace,
earls, Of þe sele of Surry · my seggis & myñ erles, 2760
knights, and lords. My kniȝtis out of Capados · & all my kid lordis,
Þe ledis out of Landace · & all þe landis out-by.
I comandꝺ ȝow oñ þe clere faithe · þat ȝe my croune aȝe,
Þat belyue to Alysaundire · þat is myñ awen cite, 2764
Send skins of beasts to Alexandria, Þat ilkane of ȝow send be your-selfe · of sere slayñ bestis,
Of freschꝺ & of fyne wroȝt · fellis a thousand,
Sum grayne to be neþire gloues · graythid to my kniȝtis,
and send the furs on to the Euphrates on camels." Sum pureꝺ pelloure depurid · to put in oure wedis, 2768
Lat kest þaꝫ apoñ camels · þat in þat kith lengis,
And aires with þaim to Eufraten · þis erand haues in myndꝺ."
[Fol. 48.] Þan was a mañ, as me mynes · in þe morne-qwile,
Was of ser Daris a duke · þe derfe Emperoure, 2772
Nostanda, a duke of Darius, writes. Ane þat Nostanda was nameꝺ · & a noble prince,
Þat certified his souerane · þir saȝes in a pistiłł:
¶ "Sire Dari, duke of ilk a douth · & driȝten þi-selfe,
Þe grete glorius god · graythid in þi[2] trone, 2776
"Nostanda to his lord. Nostanday, to ȝour nobilnes · þat ay my nek bowis,
With seruage to ȝour senurie · my-selfe I comandꝺ.
It semed noȝt ȝoure seruand · sire, vndistreyned
Vn-to ȝour mekill maieste · þis mater to write, 2780
It grieves me to write. Bot I am depely distressid · þis dede for to wirke,
And made þis myscheffe to myñ · malegrefe my chekis.
For wete it wele ȝour worthines · þat of our wale[3] princes
Two of our chief princes have perished in battle. Twa of þe tethiest ere tint · & termyndꝺ of lyue, 2784
Þat lost was now þe last day · a litiłł fra Tygre,
In batail apoñ bent fildꝺ · in-bland with þe grekis.
Þare was I gird to þe grondꝺ · & greuously woundidꝺ,
I scarce escaped. Vnnethe it cheuyd me þat chance[4] · to chape to þe fliȝt[5];
And oþire many of oure meñ · miȝtfułł kniȝtis, 2789

[1] MS. oft.
[2] 'þi' *blotted in* MS.
[3] faes *crossed through*.
[4] MS. can chance; can *struck out*.
[5] MS. filȝt.

Þus send I to my satrapars · salutez of grace,
My peres oute of prynphagoyne · my princez & my dukez,
Of þe seneour of surry · my seggez & my erlez, 2760
My knytes oute of Capadoce · & all my kyd Lordez,
The ledes oute of Landace · & all þe Landes vmbe.
I command you on þe Clere fayth · þat ȝe my crowne awe,
Þat als belyfe to alexaunder · vnto my awne Cyte, 2764
Ilk one send be þaim-self · of sere slayn bestes,
Off fresh & of fyne slayn · fellys a thouusand,
Some grayne to be grathyd · to my bernez byhofe,
Some puryd pelour & depuryd · to put in our wedes, 2768
And cast þaim vppon camels · þat in þat kyth lenges,
And karys with þaim to eufraten · þis erand haue in mynd."
Þe[n] was a man, as me of menys · in þe morne-while,
Was of sir Daryus a duke · þe derf emperoure, 2772
One þat Nostandy was namyd · a noble Prince, [Fol. 32.]
Þat certyfyed hys souerente · þees sawez in a pistill:
"Syre[1] Dary, duke of iche douth[2] · drightyn þi-seluen, Epistola.
The grete glorius god · grathyd in þi trone, 2776
Nostandy, to your nobelnes · & ay my neke bowe,
With seruage to your senyoury · my-seluen I Comaund.
It semyd not your seruand · [syre], vndistreynyd
Vnto your mekyll mageste · þees materys to writte, 2780
Bot I am depely distryssyd · þis dede for to wirke,
And made þis mischeff to mene · mawgre[3] my chekez.
For wete it wele ȝour worthynes · þat of our wale princez
Two of þe tithiest er tynt · & termyd of lyfe, 2784
Þat lost wer nowe þe last day · a lityll fro tygre,
In batell on bent feld · in-bland with þe grekez.
Þar was I girde to þe ground · & greuously woundit,
Vnneth me chefyd in þat chaunce · to chape to þe flyght;
And oþer mony of owr men · mightfuł knyghtes, 2789

[1] *The* e *is above the line in* MS.
[2] MS. Syre duke of a Dary iche douth; *with* a *above the line*.
[3] MS. mawgra.

And erlis of all ȝour empire[1] · enterely deuydid,
ȝoure lore & ȝour legaunce · lethirly forsaken,[2]
Aires þaim to ser Alexander · & on-ane ȝeldis.
And he þaim faire vndirfange · enfeffid þaim belyue,
In palais, in prouince · in principall regnes."
Þen to Nostanda oñ next · þus notis he a lettir,
Þat he suld semple him a sowme · & set þaim agaynes.
Anothire pistill lete he pas · to Porrus of ynde,
To come & helpe with his here · & he[3] him þus swaris:
¶ "I, Porrus, þat possessid am · þe partyse of yynde,
And am þe coroñ be kynd · of clene aH þat Iles,
Sire Dary, with þi dyademe · drest oñ þi trone,
To þe[3] þat salutis I send · þe sele of myñ armes.
Þou prayes vn-to my personñ · my powere to sempble,
And ȝow enforce with my folke · ȝour faes to withstand;
And I am bouñ at ȝour bode · & buxsoñ was euire,
To heȝe & to help̄ ȝour hest · quen I my hele lastis.
Bot now a langour me lettis · þat I laȝt haue,
Slike a seknes for-sothe · is oñ my-selfe haldeñ,
Þat I ne may streyne me ne stere · for stondis so hard,
Bot lyse in langwysches & lokis · queñ my lyfe[4] endis.
And as warysche I my warke · þat I am in wondeñ,
As me is wa for þi woȝe · & þi wrange bathe,
I may noȝt ryde ȝow to reschow · my reuthe is þe mare.
Bot I sall leue & be lechid · for-þi be liȝt-hertid;
And I be couird of my coth · care for na grekis,
Amay þe for na Messedoynes · ne meñ vndire heuen;
For I sall hele aH in hast · & hale to ȝoure kythis
With ten legions at þe last · & aH of lele knyȝtis."
Be þis Rodogars þe riche · þat renewid lady,
Þe dere dame of Dari · of þis dede heris,
Þat hire awen child with Alexander · amed eft to feȝt,
And sorowis selcuthly sare · & sendis him a pistill;

Alexander receives the men who forsake you."
A letter.
"Porus, king of India, to Darius. [Fol. 48 b.]
I am ready to serve you.
But I am now sick.
I am sorry for you.
I shall soon recover,
and will then help you."
Rodogars, mother of Darius, writes.

[1] MS. emperire.
[2] MS. saken forsaken; *with* saken *struck out.*
[3] *In the margin.* [4] MS. lefe, *corrected to* lyfe.

And erls of our empire · enterely distroed,
þat oþer your legeance · lethirly forsakyn,
Karyn þaim to sir A[lexander] · & onone ȝeldeñ.
And he þaim fair vnderfongez · & feffys þaim in Landes,
In palacys, in prouynce · & principall regnes."
Then to Nostady on next · notez he a letter, *Epistola.*
þat he suld semble hym a sowme · & sett þam agayns.
A-noþer pistell lete he passe · to porrus of Inde,
To Come & help with hys heer · & he hym þus aunswers:
"**I, Porrus,** þat possessyd am · þe partyes of Inde,
And am þe crowne by kend · clene of all þe yles,
Sir Dary, with þi diademe · dressyd in þi trone,
To þe with salutes I send · þe sealle of my Armez.
You pray vnto my person · my power to assemble,
And you enforce with my folke · ȝour foes to withstond;
I am bowne at þi bode · & buxme was euer,
To hye & to helpe at ȝour hest · whils my hele Lastes. [Fol. 32 b.]
Bott nowe a langor me lettes · þat I laght haue,
. . . . . .
þat I may strene me ne stirre · for stoundes þat I haue,
Bott lyse & lukes lang · when my lyfe endes.
And as euer I warysh of werk · þat I am woundit in,
As me es wo for þi wogh · & þi wrange both,
I may not ryde you to rescew · þe reuth is þe more.
Bott I shall lefe & be lightyd · þarfore be ȝe light;
And be I couered of my cothe · kare for no grekys,
Remefe you for no massydons · ne man vppon erth;
For I sall hele all in hast · & hye to your kythez
With teñ legions at þe lest · & all of lele knyghtes."
Be þat Rodogors þe ryche · þe reuerent Lady,
The dere dame of Dary · of þis dede herys,
þat hir Awne Childe with A[lexander] · etlyd ȝitte to fight,
And sorows selkouthly sore · & sendes hym a pistyH;

"To king Darius, my son, greeting.

¶ "To kyng[1] dary[2] þe derfe · þe derrest of my childire,
Rodogoras þe riche quene" · þis rauth scho him writis:
"Bald baratour on bent · borne of my bosom̄,
Here send I þe, my swete · salutis & ioy.
Þou has heuyd vp þi huge ost · as I haue herd teH,
Samed all þi saudiours · & semblid þi pupiH,
And etils to ser Alexander · eft to assaiH.

[Fol. 49.]

Though thou shouldst gather all men against Alexander, it were in vain.

Wete þou wele it is noȝt worthe · ware þe be tyme;
For had þou gedird all þe gomes · I gesse, of þe werd,
ȝit to with-stand him a stonde · þi strenthe ware to littiH.
For godis prouidence apert · ay prestly him helpis,
Sauys & sustenes him-selfe · & socurs him euire.
For-þi hoo with þi hautes · & þine vnhemed wittis,
A-vaile of þi vanite · & of þi vayne pride,
Obey þe to þe baratour · þe best I coñ rede;

Submit to him.

Magnifie him with þi mouthe · & meke þi hert,
For any hathill vndire heueñ · þat at he ne hade may,

It will be better to do so."

Mare sekire it ware him to forsake · þen sewe any forthire; . . . . . .
In pese & in pacience · possede at he miȝt,
[Þan] Be excludit out of his erd · & euire-mare dueH."
. . . . . .

Darius weeps.

Quen he þis rawis had rede · he rewfully wepid,
His eldirs & his ancestris · als he remembris;
Þoȝt how pride þaim depriued: · & here a passe ende.

Duodecimus passus Alexandri.

Alexander goes to Susa.

Þen aires him on ser Alexander · furth with his princes,
To þe cite-ward of Susys · him-selfe he aproches.
Þare-in ser Darius duellid · with his derfe ostis,
So neȝe he come to þa cliffis · he kend ouire þe cite.

He bids his men cut branches

With þat comaunds he he[s] kniȝtis · to cutt doune belyue

[1] MS. kynd, *corrected to* kyng. [2] MS. l dary.

"To kyng Dary þe derf · þe derrest of hir childer,
Rodogors þe riche whene" · þus rathe scho hym writtes:
"Bald baratour on bent · berne of my-seluen̄,
Here send I þe, my swete · salutes of Ioy.
Þou hase hefyd vpp þi hoge hoste · as I haue late herd,
Sammyd all þi sougeours · & semblyd þi peple,
And ettlys þe sir Alexander · efte to assayle.
Bott wete þou wele it is not worth · & were ye be tyme;
For hed þou geddеryd all þe gomez · I gesse, in þe werld,
To withstond hym a stoure · þi strenth wer to lityH.
For goddes prouydence a-pert · ay prestly hym helpys,
Saffys & socours hym-self · & sustayns hym euer.
For-þi hoo with þi hatness · & þi vn-hemmyd wittes,
Avale of þi vanyte · & of þi vayn pride,
Obey ye to þis baratour · þe best I can rede;
Magnyfye hym with þi mouth · & mekyn þi hert,

[Fol. 33.]

For ony hatell vnder heuen · for power þai haue may,
More sekir þai wer to forsake · & sewe ony forþer;

In pease & in pacience · possede þat he myght,
Þen be exclud oute of hys erth · & neuer in ease dweH."
Sir Dary for þoo dytez · was deply diseassyd;
When he þoo rawez had redde · rewfully he wepys,
Hys alders & hys auncesters · als he remenbrys;
Thoght how pride þaim depriffyd · & here a passe endes.

Duodecimus[1] Passus A[lexandri.]

Fast kayrez hym on sir A[lexander] · with hys athell princez,
To þe cyte-ward of susys · hym-self he aproched.
Þar as sir Dary in dwellyd · with hys derfe hostes,
So negh he Come þe clyffe · he kend ouer þe cyte.
With þat he Commandes hys knytes · to cutte downe be-lyffe

[1] MS. Vndecimus.

of trees, and fasten them to their horses.

Bowis of buskis & of braunches · of bolis & of lindes,
And bynde to þaire hors feete · of bobis of herbis,
Bath to Meeris & to mulis · & all maner of bestis.
þe popiłł out of Persy · þat slike a pake sazе,
Beheld oñ he to þe hillis · & heterly was stroub[l]idꝺ;

The Persians are astonished.

þai ware so woundird of þat werke · & wetirly it semeꝺ
As all þe grondꝺ & þe greues · hadꝺ glidꝺ þaim agayns.

[Fol. 49 b.]

So nezе þe cite he sozt · & sett vp his tentis,
þat thre days to þat thede · hiṁ tharne & na mare.

He challenges Darius.

Said: "let ane dryue to[1] Dary · & bede him dryffe sone,
Or put him to my powere · & plede we na langire."

That night he sees his god Ammon in a dream, who says,

þe same niżt in his slepe · him soda[n]ly a-peridꝺ
Amoñ, his aweñ god · in aung[e]ls wyse,
In a mery mantiłł · of mervailous hewis,
Meuand as a Messedone[2] · in Marcure fourme;

"Send no messenger, but go thyself."

Said: "vn-to Susys my soñ · na sandisman þou send,
Bot fange my fygour to þe fast · & fand furth þi-selfe,
Clethe þe with my conyschaunce · & for na care drede,
I hete þe haly my help · na harme sałł þou suffire."

Alexander rises,

þan slade he sliżly a-way · & he fra slepe ryse,
A breme blasand blis · in his brist rysys.
He knew his kniżtis þat cas · & þai him clene reddꝺ,

and determines to go.

þat he[3] suld graythe him to ga[3] · as him his god chargis.
þan callis to him þis conquirour · ane of his kid prince[s],

He makes one of his princes go with him.

Emynelaus, þat his erlis · & his ost[3] ledes,
Hend & hardy of his hand · a huge man of strenthe,
And þare-to lede lelist to his lord · leuand of lyue.
He bad him bouñ him belyue · & oñ a blonk worth,
Anoþire foole with him fange · & founde with himselfe.
Strad vp him-selfe on a stede · in starand wedis,

The pair ride to the flood of Granton,

And on a cursoure þe kniżt · with[4] a collt folożes.
To þe grete flode of Grantoñ · to-gedire þai ride,

which is frozen.

þai fand it forsen þaim be-fore · a fote-thike yse.

[1] MS. & to; *with* & *subpuncted*. [2] MS. Messedono.
[3] *In the margin*. [4] MS. on with; on *being struck through*.

þe bowes & þe bobbez & braunches · of bulesse & of lyndez,
And bynd vnto þair blonnkez fete · of buskez & erbes,
Both to merys & to mulez · & all maner of bestes.
The peple oute of persye · þat suche a pake soghen,
Byheld on high to þe hyllez · & hetterly wer stourbed;
þai wer son wonderytt of þat werke · þat witterly þam semyd
As ałł þe ground & þe gravez · had gane þaim ayayns.
So negh þe Cyte he þame soghtꝺ · & sett vp hys tentes,
þat thre days to þat thede · he tharnyd & no more.
Sayd: "latt on dryfe to sir Dary · latt drysse hym to feghtꝺ,
Or put hym to my power · & plete we no lenger."
þe same nyght in hys slepe · to hym sodanly aperyd

☞ Nota sompnium Alexandri.

Amoyn, hys awne god · in angels wyse,
In A mery mantyll · of mervalous hewys,
Meuand as a massydoñ · in mercurius forme;
And sayd: "vnto Susys · no Sondesman þou wafe,
Bott fonge þi figour to þe fast · & fonde furth þi-seluen,
Cleth þe with my Conysaunce · & for no care dredꝺ,
I hete þe holy my help · no harme sall þou hynte."

[Fol. 33 b.]

þe[n] slode he slyghtly away · when he fra slepe rysys,
A breme blasand blysse · in hys hert kyndels.
Be-knewe hys knyghtes of hys case · & þai hym clene redyn,
þat he shuld grath hym to go · as hys god chargyd.
þen callys to hym þe conquerour · one of hys kyd princez,
Emenylaus, þat hys Erlez · & hys hoste ledes,
Hende & hardy of hys hand · & hoge man of strenth,
And þarto lelyst to hys lord · of ałł ledes oute.
He bad hym bowne hym belyfe · & on a blonke worth,
Anoþer fole with hym fange · & found with hym-selfe.
Strode hym-self vp on a stede · in a starand wede,
And on a cou[r]sour þe knyght · with a colt folowd.
To þe grete flode of gratun · to-geder þai ryddyn,
And fyndyn it frosyn þaim byfore · a fute-thyke ysyd.

Þat is þe streme of Strama · with many steds clepid,
And ȝit þe pure propure name · in percynne tonge.
Alexander crosses it alone. Þañ Alexander belyue · his wedes he changis, 2886
Þis renke with his Ronsees · he ridis ouire & leuys.
"A! lat me lend with ȝow, lord" · þe lede[1] him besekis,
[Fol. 50.] "For drede þat angire or a-ventour · or any slike faH."
He bids his friend wait for him. "Nay, houe þou here," quod þe kyng · "vn-to my hame-come. 2890
He þat I saw in my slepe · saH be my sekire helpe."
With þat he braides oñ þe blonke · & broches him iñ þe syd,
Bowis him to-ward þe burȝe · as briȝt as ane aungeH.
This river always froze at night, even in summer, ¶ Þis reuere at I first rede · be rewle of his kynde,
As wele in sesoñ of Somere · as in þe sad wintre, 2895
And þat is neuer bot oñ niȝtis · so naytely it fresys,
TiH any powere to pas · or preke oñ with stedis.
and melted at morn, and then could not be crossed. ȝit has þe flouñ, as I fynd · a forelange obrede, 2898
And euire-ilke mornyng[1] it meltis · for miȝt of þe soñ;
With slike a reryd þan it rynnes[2] · þe romance it witnes,
þat qua so tuke it in þat tyme · tint ware for euire.
Be þis enproched him oure prince · vn-to þe proude cite,
Band his blonke at a barrere · with-out þe burȝe ȝatis.
The Persians wonder. Þe Persyns of his passag · was passyngly wondird, 2904
And gesses him to be gode · for glori of his wedis.
Darius asks who he is, "Quat dones man ert þou?" quod Dary · & drafe him agayne.
"Sire Alexander," quod þis athiH · "has all þus me sent,
Bedis buske þe to bateH · quat bade makis þou here?
Outhire ȝare þe ȝapely þar-to · or tiH his ȝokke bowe."
and thinks it must be Alexander himself, "Qweþire þu be he?" quod þe hathiH · "so hately þou spekis, 2910
Þou melis noȝt as a minister · a messangere bowis;
Þou carpis euyn as a[3] kyng[1] · þat closid ware in pride.
Bot I am dred neuire a dele · of all þi bald saȝes. 2913

[1] MS. bede. [2] MS. remes, *corrected to* rynnes. [3] *In the margin.*

Thys is þe streme of Struma · with mony stedes clepyd,
And ȝit pure propre name · in persyens tounge.
Then A[lexander] als belyfe · hys abytt chaungez, 2886
Thys renke with hys rounsey · he rydes ouer & lefys.
"Na! latt me lend with þe, lord" · þe lede hym bysekys,
"Lest anger or aventur · or ony suche falle."
"Nay hofe þou here," quod þe athyll · "vnto my agayn-Come; 2890
He þat I seght in my slepe · shall me sekir helpe."
With þat he brades on hys blonnke · & brochez hym in þe sydes,
Bowys hym on toward þe burgh · als bright as an angeH.
Thys reuer þat I first rede of · be rewle of hys kynde,
Als wele in seasun of somer · as in þe sad wynter, 2895
And þat is neuer bott of nyghtys · so nataly it fresys,
To ony power on to passe · or preke with a stede.
ȝit hase þe flode, as I fynd · a furelenth of brede, 2898 ☞ Nota naturam aque de struma.
And euerilke mornyng it meltes · for myght of þe soñ;
With suche a rerde þen it rynnys · þe Romayns it wittnes,
þat who tuke it in þat tyme · war termyd for euer. 2901
[Fol. 34.] **Be** þis aprochyd hym þe Prince · vnto þe prouude Cite,
band hys blonnke at a barre · withoute þe brode ȝatez.
The persyens of hys passage · wer passandly wounderyd,
And gessyn hym all to be god · for glory of hys gere.
"What domesman art þou?" quod Dary · & drofe hym ayayns. 2906
"Sir A[lexander]," quod þis athell · "hase all þus me send,
Byddes þe to batell buske · what bode mase þou here?
Ouder ȝare þe ȝapely þarto · or to his ȝokke bowe."
"Wheder þou be he?" þe hathell sayd, · "so hetterly þou spekez, 2910
þou melles noght as a messenger · a mynyster bowez;
Þou Carpys likar to A kyng · þat Closyd wer in pride.
Bot I am dred neuer a dele · of all þi derfe sawez, 2913

Bot for þi souerayne sake · þat sent þe þus hedire,
and asks him to supper. Ȝit sall þou sit with my-selfe · & soupe or þou wynde."
He raȝt him þan be þe arme · & reuerence[1] him makis,
And to his palais a-pert · with princes him̄ ledis,
Þare aires him in ser Alexander · & aH þus he thinkis,
"Þis ilke bar-bryn berne · grete beute me schewys, 2919
[Fol. 50 b.] Þat here þus hyndly be þe hand · ledis to his Innes;
Þis hame with help of my god · I haue saH he[r]-eftir."
Alexander goes to sup with Darius. So silis he furth with þe sire · in-to a somere-haH, 2922
Þare sesonde was a soper · þe sotelest vndire heuen.
Sire Darius drawis to þe dese · & oþir dere princes,
Settis þis sire with him-selfe · lete serue þaim to-gedire.
The hall was all made of gold. Þat bild was aH of brynt gold · as þe buke tellis, 2926
With þe bath, þe bordis & þe benkes · beteñ of þat ilke.
Þe wesseH to vyse oñ · was verraly þe same,
And aH þe sale of a[2] sute · set fuH of stanes.
The Persians think Alexander a mean-looking man. Þe popiH of Persy · opon þis prince waitis, 2930
Þe litillaike of his like · lathely þat þai spyse;
Bot þe wisedome & þe worthenes · & of þe wale thewis
Þat in þat cors was enclosed · kend þai fuH litiH.
Butlers fuH besyly · broȝt vp þe wyne,
In grete goblets of gold · graythid fuH of ȝymmes;
When Alexander drinks, he secretes the gold cup; And Alexander belyue · as he[3] had ay dronkeñ, 2936
With þat he clekis vp þe coupe · & putis in his bosom̄.
Anoþire boH was him broȝt · & bathe he deuoydid,
this he does thrice. And ȝit he threw to þe thrid · & thrast iñ þare-eftir.
Sone as þe[4] clientis þat knew · at of þe coupe seruedꝺ,
Þai knele doun before þe kyngꝺ · & him þe cas taldꝺ.
Þan has ser Dary dedeyne · & derfely he lokes, 2942
Rysys him vp renyscH · & reȝt iñ his sete,
Darius reproves him. "Quat faris þou with," quod he, "frynde? · a foñ þe besemes;
Quy voydis þou my vesseH? · it is a vile schame."

[1] MS. reuercence. [2] MS. same a; *with* same *struck through.*
[3] *In the margin.* [4] MS. as a þe.

Ȝitt for þi souerand sake · þat send þe þus hyder, 2914
Þou shall sitt with my-self · & soupe or þou wende."
He raght hym by þe right harme · & reuerens hym makys,
And to hys palays full pert · with princez hym ledes,
Þar kayres hym on Sir A[lexander] · & all þus he thynkez,
"Þus ilke barberen berne · grete bewte me schewez, 2919
Þat here þus hyndly be hand · hase lede me to Innes;
Thys home[1] with helpe of my goddez · I hafe sall her-after."
So sylez forth with þis Sire · into a somer-halle, 2922
Thar sesund was a soper · þe sotellest vnder heueñ.
Sir Darius drawys to þe deyse · & oþer dere princez,
Settes þis sire with hym-selfe · lete serue þaim to-geder.
Þat belde was all of brynt gold · as þe buke tellys, 2926
With both þe burdez & þe benche · betyn of þe same.
The vessell to vyse on · veraly of þe same,
And all þe sale of a sute · sett full of Stanes.
The peple oute of persey · apon þe prince waytyñ, 2930
Þe lityllayke of hys lyth · lothly þai spysyñ;
Bot þe wysdome & þe worthines · of hys wale thewez
Þat in þat cors was closyd · knew þai full lytyH.
Botlers full besely · broght vp þe wynez, 2934
In grete goblettes of gold · grathyd fulle of gemmys; [Fol. 34 b.]
And A[lexander] als belyfe · as he hed onys drunkyñ,
With þat he clyght vp a cupe · & cromys in hys bosom̄.
Anoþer boll was hym broght · & both he devoydedꝺ,[2] 2938
And ȝitt he threwe[3] to þe thryde · & thristyn þar-after.
Sone as þe clyentez it knew · þat of þe cope seruedꝺ,
Þai knele downe bifore þe kyng · & hym þe case taldyñ.
Þen hase sir Dary disdayne · & darfly he lukes, 2942
Rerys hym vpp & remevys · in hys sete riche,
"What farys with," quod he, "frende? · a fonne þou be-semys;
Whi woydes þou my veseall? · it is a vyle schame."

[1] MS. holme; *but marked for correction.*
[2] MS. dovoydede. [3] *The* h *is above the line in* MS

Alexander says it is the custom of Macedonia to do so.

"Sire, it is þe custum," quod þe kniȝt · "in oure kyngis fest,
þat, be it ane, be it oþire · þat þai of drinke,
þe gestis sall haue þe gobletis · & þaim gud þinke,
To wild & wende with a-way · & wirke quat þaim likes;
[Fol. 51.] Bot sen þis vse is here vn-honourable · here I þam leue;"
Braidis þaim furth withouten bade · þe butlers þaim yeldis.

Some of them praise Alexander.

"Now sothely," quod þan ilk a segge · softly to-gedire,
"þis maner at he melis of · is menskefuH & noble."

One Anepo takes note of him,

þan was þare ane proude pere · a prince at þe table,
Anepo, þat on Alexander · aH-way be-haldis,
þan mynes him anes in Messedone · he had þe man sene,
Quen he was sent to his syre · to feche þaire trouage.

and remembers that he has seen him before.

His vertuse & his vysage · his voise he remenbris,
His fourme & his fetoure[1] · his figoure a-vysis,
He studis & he stuynes · he stemes with-in,
"Is þis noȝt Philip soñ þe firs · þe fedare of grece?"

He leaves his seat, and tells Darius.

With þat he sleȝly vp soȝt · & his sete leuys,
Droȝe hiñ euyñ to ser Dary · þare he oñ dese bydis,
Said, "surely, ser, þis sandisman · þat sittis ȝow be-forne
Is Alexander him awen self · or aH myñ ame faillis."
Sone þis gouernour of grece · is of þis gaude ware,
He torkans with & vndire-tuke · he touched of him-selfe,

Alexander perceives his danger,

Herd a nyngkiling of his name · & nayt*is* him to ryse,
Buskis him vp at a braide · & fra þe burde rysys.

seizes a torch,

He tas a torche fra a tulke · þat by þe table standis,
Felly fangis it in[2] his fist · & to his fole wyndis,
Fyndis him faire him before · þare he him feste hade,

mounts his horse,

Rayt him radly þe reyne · & oñ his rige worthis.
With þat he brochis his blonke · þat þe blode fames,
Sparis out spacly · as sparke out of gledes.

[1] MS. fetuore.
[2] MS. l in; *the* l *being an imperfect* h, *due to* his *following.*

"Sir, it is our costome," quod þe knyt · "in our kyngez fest',
þat, be it one, be it oþer · þat þai of drynkyn,
The gestes sall haue þe goblettez · & þai gude thynke,
To wyld & wynd away · & werke what þaim likez;
Bot sen þe vse is here vn-honorable · here I þam lefe;"

Brades þam forth with-owtyn bode · þe butler þaim ȝeldes.

"Nowe, sir," quod euerilke segge · softly to oþer,
"þis maner þat he mellys of · is menskefull & noble."

Then was þar one, a prouude · prince at þe tabyll,
Anepo, þat on Alexander · alway byholdes,
þen menys onys in massydoñ · he had þe man knawyñ,

When he was sent be hys sire · to sese þair truage.
Hys vertuez & hys visage · hys voyce he remenbris,
Hys forme & hys facioñ · hys fygure he visys,
He stodes & he staddes with · & stempmys hym within,
"Es noght þis philyp son þe fers · fennder[1] of grece?"
With þat he shyllghly vp slayde · & hys sete left',
Droght hym euen to sir Dary · þar he on deyse bydes,
"þat surely sir, þis sondesmañ · þat sittes yow aforne
Is A[lexander] hym-self · or all my ame falys."
Sone as þis gouernour of grece · apon þis gaud[2] wates,
He torkys with & vndertuke · it tochyd of hym-self',
Harde a nyckyng' of hys name · & natys hym to ryse, [Fol. 35.]
Buskys hym vp at brade · & fro þe borde voydes.

He takys a torche fro a tulke · þat be þe burde standes,
Felly fange it in hys fyst' · & to hys fole wendes,
Fyndes hym faire hym bifore · þar as he hym fest' had,
Raght hym radly þe reyne · & on hys rigge ascendes.
With þat he brochez hys blonnke · þat þe blode folows,
Sparrys oute sarply[3] · as[4] sparke doys on gledes.

[1] MS. founder, *altered to* fennder. [2] MS. gauyd.
[3] *Sic; for* spacly. [4] MS. &.

and rides away. Be þe liȝt at he led · laches he þe way,
And fandis fast to þe fliȝt · with a fers wiH.
þe pepiH of þe palais · quen þai his passe saȝe,
All rush after him. Rusches vp in a res · rynnes in-to chambres,
[Fol. 51 b.] Sum araies þaim iñ ringis · & sum iñ row brenys,
. . . . . 2980*
With hard hattis on þaire hedis · hied to þaire horsis,
Prekis eftir þe prince · prestly enarmed.[1]
Night comes. Bot now was niȝt oñ þam̃ neȝed · þat noyd þaim sare.
Many lose their way. Sone ware þai willid fra þe way · þe wod was so thike,
Sum oñ buȝes & oñ brerys · blemysched þe face,
Sum ware dreuyñ doun in dikis · sum in depe myrys;
Alexander escapes. Bot Alexander at myñ ame · þaire aȝe is a-schapid,
Ay trottis him to þe trod-gate · as him þe torche wyssis.
Darius mourns at home. Sire Dary as a drery mañ · duellis[2] at hame,
With princes iñ his palais · aH pense he sittis,
þe baldnes of þis baratour · he besyly remembris,
þat skapid so sone skatheles · fra all his schathill dukis.
There was an image of Xerxes, þañ was añ ymage within · as I am enfourmede,
Of Sexeres þat sum-quyle · þat cite had to welde,[3]
Forgid aH of fyne gold · & fettild his seete
Vndire þe souerayne sege · þare sett ere þe lawis.
And sodanly þat semylacre · as tellis þe textis,
which suddenly fell to pieces. It all to-paschis in-to peces · & to poudire dryuys.
þan was þe wale kyng waa · & wepand he said:
This is a bad omen. "þis be-takens trombling of my tild · & tene of[4] my regne."
Alexander rides to the river, and crosses the ice. And Alexander all þat quile · asperly rydis
To þe grete flode of Grantoñ · & it oñ a glace fyndis.
Or he was soȝt to þe side · ȝit sondird þe qweryns,
His hors it hunyschist for euire · & he with hard schapid.
He returns safely. þañ aires he with Emynelows · euen to his princes,
And derfly oñ þe toþir day · a douth he assembles,

[1] MS. enr enarmed; *with* enr *struck through*.
[2] *The* e *above the line*. [3] MS. ȝ welde. [4] *In the margin*.

By þe light þat he hed · lacchys on hys way,
And fonndez fast to flyght · with a fers wille.
The peple of þe palays · when þai hym passe sigh,
þai russhyn vp in a reys · rynnyn into chaumbres,
Some arays þaim in rynggez · some in rawe brenys,
Some in stalwart stuffe · & some in stele plates
With hard hattes on þair heddez · hyen to þair blonnkez,
Prikkyn after þe prince · prestly ennarmed.
Bot þen was nyght on þaim negh · þat noyed þaim sore.
Sone wer þai welt fro þaire way · þe wod was so thykke,
Some of bowez & of breres · blemyst þe face,
Some wer drefyn into dykez · some depe mires;
Bot A[lexander] at my ayme · þar augerly eschapys,
And ay trotes on þe troyde-gate · als hym þe torche vysys.
Sir Dary as a drery man · dwelland in hys trone,
With princez in hys palays · aH pensey he sittes,
The baldnes of þis baratour · he belyfe remenbris,
þat scapett so sone schatheles · fro all hys schateH dukez.
þen was ane ymage within · as I am enformed,
Off serexies þat some-while · þe Cyte hed to weld,
Forgyd all of fyne gold · & feteld in hys sete,[1]
And vnder þat souerent segge · y-sett war þair lawez.
And sodanly þat symylacre · as says me þe textH,
AH to-paschys into peces · & into powder dryfez.
þen was þe wale kyng woo · & wepand he sayd:
"þis betokyns trublyngH of my teld · & tene to my realme." [Fol. 35 b.]
And A[lexander] þe while · asperly rydes
To þe grete flude of grantum · & it as glas fyndes.
And be he soght to þe syde · ȝitt sounderd þe qwernes,
Hys hors it honyshyd for euer · & he with hard schapyd.
þen kayres he with Emenylaus · euen to hys princez,
And derfly of þat oþer day · of doghty he assemblez,

[1] MS. fete.

He assembles 200,000 men,

Twa hundreth thousand oñ a throm̃ · aH of threuen kniȝtis, 3007
Cairis him vp to a cliffe · & comfurthis his hostis;

and encourages them.

" Sall neuir þe Persyns pake · be pere to þe grekis,
And if þai ma ware be many · mayes noȝt ȝour hertis;
[Fol. 52.] FuH many flees may feH · bot a fewe waspis."
And aH þe company clene · comendid his wittis. 3012

Terciusdecimus passus Alexandri.

Darius and his men come to the river.

Be þis ser Dary was diȝt · whit his dere erles,
Heuyd vp a huge ost · & hast him to ryde,
His ginge & aH his garysons · in glyssynand wedis, 3015
Gaes him oñ to grantoñ · & graithes þare his tentis.
His stoure was so stalworthe & store · & strange to a-byde,
He hadꝫ of meñ out of mynde · many mayñ hundreth,

His host is innumerable.

þat sike a siȝt & a sowme[1] · of seggis enarmed
Was neuer sene, I suppose · señ þe sege of troy. 3020
þe chiftayne had chariotis · chosen for þe nanes,

He has 10,000 chariots, armed with scythe-blades.

Ten thousand be tale · tried for þe were.
And þai ware sett aþire side · fuH of sythe-bladis,
Kene keruand as knyfes · & cursers þam drowe. 3024
þe next day be þe none · new note ryses,
Aithire freke with his folke · in þe fild metis,
And bald bernes oñ bent · banars vnfaldis,
Put pennons oñ pollis · payntid of siluir. 3028

Alexander mounts Bucephalus.

Alexander as belyue · is armed vp clene,
Bounes him to his blonke · þe best vndire heuen,
þat was þe blonk Bucifaꝫ · as þe buke tellis,
A foole worth[2] fyfty of þe firste · þat in þe flode drouned. 3032
He spynnes him out a grete space · fra he[s] peris aH,
Couers him fuH clenly · & closed iñ his gere.

[1] *The* me *above the line.*
[2] MS. with, *altered to* worth *in the margin.*

Twa C M in a thrume · all of trefe knytes, 3007

Cayrez hym vp to a Clyff · & comforthez hys hostez;
" Sall neuer þe persiens pakke · be pere to þe grekez,
And þof þai war mo be mony · mayse nottꝫ in hertes; 3010
Full fele fleys may nott felle · bott a few wasspez."
And all þe Company clene · Comendyd þan hys wittes.

[Tertiusdecimus passus.]

By þis sir Dary was dightꝫ · with hys derfe Erlez,
Hefyd vp a hoge hoste · & hastyd hym to ryde, 3014
Hys genge & hys garysoñ · in glasynand wedes,
Gose hym to grantum · & grathez vp hys tentes.
Hys stoure was stalwort & sture · & strangꝫ to abyde,

He hed of men for to mynd · mony mayne hundreth,
þat suche a sight & a some · of seggez enarmed
Was neuer [sene], I suppoyse · sen þe seyge of troye. 3020
The Chyftanys hed chariottes · chosyn for þe nonestꝫ,
A Ten thouusand be tale · tried for þe were.
And þoo wer sett on ather syde · full of sythe-blades,
Kene keruand as knyffes · & coursours þaim drawys. 3024
The next day be þe none · new note rysys,
Ather freke with hys folke · in þe feld metyñ,
And bald bernez on bent · banerys vnfaldyñ,
Puttyn penons on pollez · payntyd with syluer. 3028
A[lexander] als belyfe · es armyd vp Clene,
Bownez hym on hys blonnke · þe best vnder heueñ,
þat was þe bald bucyfaH · as þe buke tellez,
A fole worth fyfty of þat · at in þe flude drownyd. 3032

He spedes hym on a grete space · fro hys pers aH,
Couerys hym full clenly · & closys hym in hys gere. [Fol. 36.]

The Persians are frightened.
Þe powere out of Persy · queñ þay þe prince saȝe,
Frayed was of his fourme · so ferdfuH him semed.

The battle begins.
¶ Now ere þe batails boune · with braggins in trumpis,
Þe breme bemen blaste · beres to þe welkeñ.
Alexander aHþire first · oñ þaim all[1] he settis,
[Fol. 52 b.] And aithire ward[1] at a waþp · wiȝtly inIoynes.
Archars & aH meñ · asperly fiȝtis,
There is hard fighting. Þare was Iusting o Ioy · Iopons a-tamed;
Siles doun oñ aithire side · selcuth kniȝtis,
Sum darid, sum dede · sum depe wondid.

A great flight of arrows. So feH[2] fliȝt was of flanys · as I fynd wreteñ,
Of arrows & of all quat · þat aH þe aire blindid;
Hogere oñ to be-hald · þañ of[3] haile-stanes,
The armies cover five miles of ground. And aH þe fild fuH of folke · fyue mile large.
Als sone as þe soñ vp soȝt · þe slaȝtere begynnes,
And so to þe soñ-sett · slakid þai neuire.
Be þat þe barbryne blode · be-gañ to discende,
The Persians give way. Þe proudest of þe Persyns · past out[4] of lyue.
Sone as ser Dary it deuysid · & seȝis his foke faile,
Darius flees. With þat he bedis þam[5] þe bake · & bidis na langir;
Þen queñ þai[6] fange to ȝe fliȝt · was furth in with euyn,
Darkness comes. And mirke out[4] of mesure · na man þaim a-pered.
For-þi þe chariotis in þe chace · choppid þaim to deth,
The scythe-chariots destroy the flying host. Þe cartis þat I carpid of · with þe kene sythis,
Þare feH as fele þam̄ before · of fotemeñ & othire,
As risonis[7] in a ranke fild · quen riders it spilleñ.[8]
Darius goes to Sire Dary dryue in þe derke · & his douth folows,
Gaes him on to grantun · vn-to þe grete burne,
the frozen river, and crosses it. Fand it frosen him before · as feH for þe time,
Past him oñ with his pers · a pake out of nombre.
His folke fellis aH þe flode · a forelange o brede,
Þe streme fra þe a strande · streȝt to þat othire.
The ice gives way, Sone fra him-self was at þe side · it sonders behind,

[1] *In the margin.* [2] MS. felle felle. [3] MS. oerf. [4] MS. oñt. [5] MS. þam þaim. [6] MS. þaim. [7] *Or* risoms, *or* risoins. [8] MS. spilkeñ.

The power of persee · when þai þe prince see,
Was ferly frayd of hys forme · so ferdfull he semyd.
Nowe er þe batels bowne · with braggyng of trompettes,
The breme beeme blast · beryd to þe welkyn.
A[lexander] all-þar first · on þaim all settes,
And ayther ward at a wappe · wigh[t]ly enioynez.
Archers & all men · asperly shotyn,
Nota bellum inter Darium & Alexandrum. þar was Iustyng of Ioy · Iopons attamyd;
Seghen downe on ather syde · semelych knytes,
Some dasyd, some dede · some depe woundytt.
So feH flyght was of flonys · as I fynd writtyn,
Of arows & of alblastres · þat all þe Ayre blyndyd;
Huger to byhalde · þen þe hayle-stormes,
And all þe feld full of folke · fyfe myle large.
Als sone as þe soñ hup soght · þe slaghter begynnys,
And to sett was þe same · sesytt þai neuer.
Be þat þe barbaryn blode · began to desend,[1]
The proudest of þe persyens · passyd owte of lyfe.
Sone as sir Dary devysyd · & sawe hys doghty falle,
With þat he biddes þam þe bake · & bydes no langer;
Þen qwen þai fange to þe flyght · was nerehand eueñ,
And merke withowte mesur · na man myght þam folow.
For-þi þe chariottes in þe chase · chopyd þaim to deth,
The cartes þat I Carpyd of · with þe kene sythez,
Þai feH all fey þaim byfore · with fotemeñ & oþer,
As ressynnys in a ranke feld · when men ouer rydes.
Sir Dary dryfys in þe dirke · & hys doghty folows,
Goys hym on to grantum · vnto þe grete burne,
Fañde it frosyn hym byfore · as fell for þe tyme,
Passys ouer with hys perys · a pak oute of nowmbre.
Hys floke fyllys at[2] þe flud · a furelonge of brede,
The streme fra þat one strande · streght vnto þat oþer.
Sone fra hym-self was at þe syde · it sounderytt byhynd.

[1] MS. defend. [2] *Read* al.

and many Persians are lost,

And aH at lent ware on-loft · loste þar þe swete. 3068
Þus many deed þat day · as þe buke tellis,

[Fol. 53.]

Of pollis out of Persye · withouten þe grekis,

to the number of 300,000.

Thre hundreth Mille thra meñ · þat tharned[1] þaire lyues,
With þe fooles & þe folke · þat þe flode drouned. 3072

Darius goes to Susa, and laments.

Þis seniour out of Susys · to his cite wendis,
Fallis doun oñ his face · flat iñ þe sale,
"Wa is me!" quod he, "wriche · wa is me vnhappy!"
Siȝis selcuthely sare · & sadly he wepys, 3076
"I þat was straȝt to þe sternes[2] · am streken now to grond,

"Now am I cast down!"

Now cratoñ, now caitefe · now am I kast vndire,
Þat had of the Orient all ouire · homage vnqwile.
Wist any we quat him suld worth · þis werd wald he leue, 3080
FuH sympiH in a seteqwile · seke to þe cloudes,
And þai at mast ere of miȝt · smyten aH to poudire."

He writes a letter to Alexander.

With[3] þat reufully he rase · & renkis out he sendis,
To Alexander belyue · & all slike a pistiH. 3084

"I, Darius, salute Alexander.

¶ "I, drery kynge oñ my dese · Darius of Persy,
To Alexander þat Aire · þat all has to wild,
þe lege lord of my lyfe · to lose or to saue,
Þus send I to my souerayne · salutis & ioy. 3088

Ye are wise.

So wyde is þe wisdoñ · þat wonne[s] in ȝour saule,
Þat wele ȝe wate, of aH men · at I worthid here before,
Of aH þe notis þat ere now · & quat oñ next sewes.
For-þi ȝour werke ay be witt · ȝe wirke vñreproued.

Be not too proud.

Sire, I knawlage me a creatour · & come of a woman,
Heues noȝt ȝour hert vp to hiȝe · take hede to ȝour end;
It limps noȝt aH-way þe last · to lickeñ with þe first,
Quat suld a kniȝt mare to kepe · bot conquire his enmy? 3096

Xerxes was proud, and failed.

Was noȝt Sexes him-selfe · þe souereynest in erth,
And cheued him of cheualry · chekis out of nombre?
ȝit for his wiH out of worde · was woñ in-to pride,

[1] MS. thrarned. [2] MS. stremes. [3] MS. þat with; þat *struck out.*

And all þat lent wer on-lofte · lost haue þe swete. 3068 [Fol. 36 b.]
Þus mony deyd þis day · as demys me writtes,
Off polles oute of persye · withoute þe prouude grekys,
Thre C Mille[1] of throo · þat tharnyd þair lyfez,
With þe folez & þe folke · þat þe flude drynched. 3072
Þis seneour vnto susys · hys awne cyte wendes,
Fallys downe on hys face · flatt in þe sale,
"Wo is me!" quod þe wreche · "wo is me vnhappyñ!"
Sighez selkouthly sore · & sadly he wepys, 3076
"I þat was straught to þe sternes · am strykyn nowe to ground,
Nowe a crathan & a knaffe · nowe am I kest vnder,
Þat had of the Orient all ouer · homage vmwhile.
Wist ony wee qwat hym suld worth · þis werld wald he lefe, 3080
Full symple in a sete-while · sekyn to þe clodes,
And þai þat most er of myght · meltyn all to powder."
With þat he rewfully rose · & renkes oute he sendes,
To A[lexander] als bylyfe · & all suche a PistyH. 3084

Epistola.

"I, drery Kyng on my dese · Darius of Perys,
To A[lexander] þe heyr · þat all hase to weld,
þe leyge lord of my lyfe · to lese or to safe,
Þus send I to my soueren · salutes of Ioy. 3088
So wyde is þe wisdome · þat wonnys in your saule,
Þat wele ȝe wate of all þat was · & worth here byfore,
Off all þe notes þat er nowe · & what on next sewys.
For-þi ȝe wirke euer by witte · ye werke vnreprefytt. 3092
Sir, I knalegh me a creatur · & Comyn of A womañ,
Hefys nott your hert to hye · bott hedes to your ende;
It lympys nott allway þe last · be lykkynd to þe first,
Quatt suld a knyght more Couett · þen conquer hys foes?

Was not Seryxes hym-self · þe soueranest on ground, 3097
And chefyd hym nott of cheualry · chekez oute of nombre?
ȝitt for hys wiH oute of warde · was wonne into pride,

[1] I. e. Three hundred thousand.

[Fol. 53 b.]

In þe lede here of Elanda · lithirly he feyned.
þinke þat allanely of god · þis ouirlaike þou haues,
Remember that victory is from God. For-þi haue mercy oñ þi meñ · þi meche we[1] beseke,
Als of 3oure grete gudnes · to grant vs oure modire,
Restore my relatives, and take my wealth." Oure bride, oure barnes out of bande · for besandis eno3e,
For all þe feete[2] at oure fadirs · in þe fold[3] hade,
In Battri & in þis bild · þe bur3e of Elanda,
þe maistri & þe maieste · of Mede & of Persy,
With all þe Iolyte &[4] Ioy · þat Iubiter vs lenes."
The letter is taken to Alexander, þe seggis at fra Susses · was sent with þe pistiH
Aires to ser Alexander · onone hit[5] him reches;
And he dos oñ before his ost · openly to rede,
whose men rejoice. And all his kni3tis for þe carpe · ware kenely reioysed.
þeñ was ane Permeoñ, a pere · a prince of his oste,
Permeon advises him to accept Darius' offer. Enclynes him doun to þe kyng · said: "kid emperoure,
Resayue þis risches, I rede · þat 3ow þis renke bedis,
And lyuers him his ladis · & aH his lele childire."
þañ Alexander belyue · þa hathels he callis,
Alexander says, þe berne at bro3t[6] him þe brefe · said: "bowis to 3our lord,
"How can Darius expect anything of me? And say,[7] me wondirs, I-wisse · if he it wete wald,
For any mede a-poñ mold · his meneyhe to lyuire?
If he be falleñ vndire fote · & his folke streyned,
And vencust of oure violence · quat vailis him his hestis?
His person & his prouynce · he put it in my wiH,
And 3eld him vndire my 3oke · þañ 3erne I na mare.
Let him own himself beaten." And if [he] grant him no3t de-grayd · bot for þe gre threpis,
Bid buske him eft to þe bent · vs bataill to 3eld."
þus monest he þe messangers · þaire maistir to say,
Geuys þam giftis fuH gude · & lete þam ga swyth.
He bids the corpses to be buried. And þan comands he his kni3tis · þe corses vp to gedire,

[1] MS. de. [2] MS. fadirs feete; *with* fadirs *struck out.*
[3] MS. fuld, *corrected to* fold. [4] MS. & oi; oi *struck out.*
[5] MS. it hit. [6] MS. bor3t. [7] *In the margin.*

In þe lede of Elanda · lythirly he fynyd.
Thynke howe only of god · þis ouerlake þou fonges, [Fol. 37.]
For-þi haue mercy of þi man · þi myght we besekyñ,
All of þi grete gudenesse · to graunt vs our moder,
Our birde, our barnez oute of bandes · for besaundes enoghe.
For all þe feetez þat our fadir · in þe molde[1] hyddyñ,
In battrye & in þis beld · þe burgh of elanda,
The maistre & þe maieste · of medy & of perse,
With all þe Iolyte & Ioy · þat Iubiter vs lennys."
þe segges þat fra susys · was sent with þis pistiH
Caryn þaim to A[lexander] · onone & it hym raghteñ;
And he doys one before hys hostez · it opynly to rede,
And all þe knyghtes for þe carpe · wer clenly reioysyd.
þen was one permeon, a pere · A prince of hys hoste,
Enclynes downe byfore þe kyng · sayd: "kyd Emperour,
Resaue, I rede, þis rechez · þis renkez þat þou byddes,
And leuerys hym hys lades · & aH hys leue childer."
þen A[lexander] als belyfe · þis atheH he clepys,
þe bernes þat broght hym þe breve · sayd: "bowys to your Lord;
And says, me wonderys, I-wysse · yf he it wene suld,
For ony mede vppon molde · hys meyn3ey to delyver?
Yff he be fallyn vnder fote · & hys folke strenyd,
And vencust of our vyolence · what valys hym hys heestes?
Hys person & hys prouynce · let put in my wyH,
And 3iff hym vndir in 3oke · I 3arne hym no mare.
And yff he graunt hym nott degradyd · bott for þe gree threpys,
Byd hym buske hym eft to þe bent & bateH vs 3eld."
þus monyshest he þis messyngers · þair maister at say,
Gyffys þaim gyftes full gude · & byddes þaim go swyth.
And þen commaundez he hys knyghtes · þe corsez vp to gedder,

[1] *Read* folde.

Of all þe douth at was dede · & diȝt þam in graues.
And at wondid was, I-wis · as þe writt tellis, 3131
To serche þaire saluys & *þar* saris · w*ith* surgens noble.
[Fol. 54.] At þe grete flode of Grantoñ · now g*ray*this he his tent*is*,
He offers to the gods. Honoured þare his ald[1] gods · & offirs þam̃ nouches;
þare fand he palais vp piȝt · & many proud hames,
Sum-quile of Sexes ware sett · þe sire of þo landis. 3136
He bids his men not to burn any building. þa bildis he bedis þam̃ to brin · sone of his bone rewis,
And bad na bereñ be sa bald · a brand for to kyndiH.
þare was a brade bent fild · was beried fuH of kniȝt*is*,
Of ald peres out of P*er*sy · prince & dukes. 3140
þe Messedones in þe mold · mynes to þe g*ra*ues,
The Greeks find an old sepulchre, Fand coupis all of clene gold · & costious stanes,
þe sepultur*e* of a sire · þ*at* of Surr*e* was kyng.
that of Ninus, made of amethyst. Him was þe name Nin*us* · was in a noke fondeñ, 3144
Was of ane athiH amatist · & aH w*ith*in[2] g*ra*ueñ,
Plantid fuH of palmetr*es* · & many proud fowles,
And slike a clerete it kest · þu[r]ȝe kynd of it-selfe,
þai[3] miȝt haue kend · w*ith*out þe kist · þe corps aH-to-gedir*e*. 3148
They next find a prison, with maimed men in it, who are set free. þare was a tenefuH toure · & tulkis in-closid;
Sum ware þe handis of heweñ · & sum wondid hoȝes,
Sum þe eȝen, sum þe eres · & egirly cries
On Alex*ander* eft*ir* help̄ · & he þam all liuers. 3152
He wepis oñ þam̃ for wa · said, "wa is me, my childire!"
And ilkane of his talent*is* · he tak*is* ten thousand.
They were maimed by Darius. þus ware þai diȝt of s*er* Dary · for he dedeyne hade,
þ*at* þai[4] ware comen doun of kyng*is* · & be no cause ellis. 3156
Be now þe douth of s*er* Daris · þe derfe messangere
Darius writes to king Porus of India. Fra Alex*ander* agayñ · his answare him broȝt;
And he þan girdis out to grete · eft graythis him to fyȝt,

[1] MS. h ald. [2] w*ith* *is in the margin.* [3] MS. þ^{t}. [4] MS. þ*at*, *corrected to* þai.

Of aH þe doghty þ*at* was dede · & dight þaim in grafys.
And aH þ*at* woundytt was, I-wysse · as þe writte tellys,
He gart seke þair sarys, & þaim salue · with su*ur*gers[1] noble.
At þe flude of g*ra*ntum · nowe grathez he hys tent*es*, 3133

Hono*ur*s hys olde godd*es* · & offers þaim ouchez;
þair fande he palays vp pight · & mony prouude homez, [Fol. 37 b.]
Some-while of Serxes was set · þe syre of þair landez.
þose beld*es* he bydd*es* þaim bryn · & syne of hys bode rewys,
And bad no berne be so bald · a brand for to kyndyH.
þar was a brode bent feld · was fuH of beryd kyngez,
Off olde perys oute of pers · of Princez & Dukez. 3140
The massydoyns in þe mold · mynyñ into þe grafez,
Founde coupes aH of clene gold · & costyous stonez,
þe sepult*ur*re of a syre · of Surry was crownyd.
Hym was þe name Ninus · was in a noke foundeñ, 3144
Was of ane athyH amatyst · & aH w*ith*in grafen,
Plantyd all w*ith* palmetres · & mony prouude fowlez,
And suche a clarett[2] it kest · þorow kynde of hym-seluen,
Men myght haue kend w*ith*oute kyst · þe cors all-to-ged*er*. 3148
þar was a tenefull toure · & tulkez inclosyd;
Some was þe harmes of heveñ · & some þe lygez wantyd,
Some þe hoghez, some þe eres · & eg*er*ly crydeñ
On A[lexander] after help · & he þaim aH delyu*er*ys.
He wepys on þaim for woo · sayd: "woo is me, my childer!" 3153
And ichone of hys talent*es* · he takys ten thouusand.
þus war þai dyght of Sir Dary · for he disdayne hed,
þat þai war comyn of kyngez · & be no cause ellez. 3156

Be þen þe Doghty of s*ir* Darius · our derf messengers
Fro A[lexander] ayayn · hys Answer hase broghtyñ;
And he þen gyrd*es* oute to grete · & grathez hym to fyght,

[1] *Read* surgens. [2] *Read* clartee.

To þe honoryd here out of ynde · þus ordans a pistiH.
"Darius to Porus." "þat þe sceptoure & þe soile · sesid am of Persy,
To Porrus vndire my present · plesance & ioy.
First wrate I to 3our worthines · 3it write I þe same,
Come and help me. To help vs at þire hathiH meñ · þat haue[1] wald my regne, 3164
[Fol. 54 b.] And, be 3e sure, þe same way · is to 3our-self ettild.
For he þat werrais vs with · þe wildare of grece,
For Alexander is wroth as a lion. Is wrawid & wrathfuH of wiH · & wode as a lyoñ, 3167
. . . . . .

And if I sande meñ & sammen · seggis out of nombre,
And cokke with þe conquirour · tiH I be cald drepid,
It is better for me to die than to live in sorrow. 3it me is better oñ þe bent · in bataile be slayne,
þan se þe lose of my ledis · & ay leue iñ sorowe.
For-þi 3oure lordschip as legeman · I lawly be-seke,
As I þat am in angwischh · myne askyng to fiH; 3173
I promise ten shillings to a well-armed soldier, five to a foot-soldier. Ten schilling of my trew gold · a mañ þat is armed,
And fyue to a fote-man · faithely I hete.
3it sall I ordane to 3our ane · quare-euire oure ost liggis,
A ix score of new geere · of nurtrid maydens. 3177
You shall have the spoil." Bucifalon þe bald stede · saH bathe be oure aweñ,
And þe armes of Alexander · & aH þe pilage."
¶ Now flees þar fra þe feH kynge · a fone of his kniȝtes,
Alexander is informed of this, To Alexander beliue · & aH þus him tald, 3181
How þat ser Dary with his dukis · eft drissis him to fiȝt,
Had prayd eftir powere · to Porrus of ynde.
and prepares to attack Darius again. þan ordans him þis honorable · with his ost flitis, 3184
Agayñ þe Persyns king · him ordans to ride,
For þe name of añ Emperoure · ne wald he neuire fange,
Or þen þat souerayne ware slayne · or 3ild him his regne.[2]
Darius is frightened. Sone as þe kyng of þat kith · of his come herys, 3188
þañ was he ferly a-friȝt · & his folke bathe.
Two of his own knights lay a plot to kill him. Than kest þam twa of his kniȝtis · him causeles to spiH,

[1] þat haue *in the margin.* [2] MS. rege, *altered to* regne.

To þe honourd heere oute of Inde · þus Ordayns he a pistyH.
"That þe septour & þe soyle · sesyd am of pers, 3161
To porrus vnder my prynt · plesaunce & Ioy.
First wrote I to your worthynes · 3itt write I þe same,
To help vs Anest þees athell men · þat hery wald oure realme, 3164
And, be 3e sure, þe same way · is to your-selfe etteld.
And he þat werrys vs · is þe weldar of grece,
Es wrawyd & wrathfull of wiH · & wode as a lyoñ, 3167
As wawes of þe wild see · whеñ wynd þaim distrobles; 3167* [Fol. 38.]
And þof I somme & samme · seggez oute of nombre, 3168
And cok with þis conquerour · tyll I be cold drepyd,
3itt is me better on þe bent · in bateH to fayle,
þen see þe losse of my ledes · & ay lefe in sorow.
For-þi your lordshiþ as lege mañ · I lofely beseche, 3172
As I þat am in angres · my askyns fullfyH;
Ten schelyng of my trew gold · a tulke þat is armyd,
And fyfe to A fotemañ · faythfully I hete. 3175
3itt shall I ordayne to your one · whar-euer our hoste liggez,
Nyne score of new gere · of norturryd maydens.
Bucyfall þe bald stede · sall als be your awne, 3178
With þe armez of Sir A[lexander] · & all þe oþer pelage."
Nowe fleen þai fro þis feH kyng · a some of hys knyghtes,
To A[lexander] als belyfe · als þus hym told,
How þat Sir Dary[1] with hys dukez · dressyd þaim to fyghtt, 3182
Had send after power · to porrus of Inde.
þen ordayns hym þis honorable · & with hys hoste flyttes,
Ayayns þe persyen Prince · he purpose to ryde,
For þe name of emperour · wald he neuer fonnge, 3186
Or þat soueren wer slayn · & seysyd to hym þe realme.
Sone as þe kyng of þat kyth · of hys Come herys,
þen was he ferly affrayd · & hys folke both. 3189
And þen kest two of hys knyghtes · to causles hym spyH,

[1] he *added here, but struck out.*

Þai trowid þan of Alex*ander* · to adiH þai*m* a mede;
Þir*e* traitours oñ þis trechoure · trowthis has strakid,
Lendis þai*m* on-loft to þe lorde · laȝt out swerdis. 3193

Darius asks why they attack him,

"Quat sall I dreȝe," q*uod* s*er* Dary · "my dere-worth childir*e*?
First cald I ȝow my clyent*is* · þ*at* now I caH lordis,
Semes ȝow noȝt it suffice · my sorowe w*ith*-out, 3196

and says that Alexander will avenge him.

þ*at* as a bitand brand · me brettens w*ith*-in,
And slaa ȝe me þus sudanly? · þe se[n]io*ur*e of grece,
He[1] wiH me wreke on ȝour*e* werke · wers þan of thefes!"

[Fol. 55.]

They wound him, and he falls.

Þar[2] meuyd þaim[3] na m*er*cy · bot maynly him woundid,
Þ*at* dou*n* he hildis aH to-hewyn · þair*e* handis be-twene.
Þan dryfes furthe þa dones men · & halfe dede him leuys,
Famand[4] out of fresch̄ blod · & here a fitt end. 3203

Quartusdecimus passus Alex*andri*.

When Alexander hears that Darius is wounded,

Quen Alex*ander* of þis athiH · þis aunt*ir* hadd herd,
How he was diȝt of his douth · & to þe dede woundid,
He streȝt him to st*ru*ma · & ouir*e* þe streme ridis,

he goes to Susa.

Soȝt him in Sussys · him-selfe w*ith* his ost.
Þe pepill out of P*er*sy · quen þai our*e* prince see, 3208
Þan ȝode þai furthe & vn-ȝarkid · þe ȝat*is* of þe cite,
Resayues him fuH rially · w*ith* reu*er*ence & ioy,

The Persians welcome him; but some hide themselves.

Said: "welcu*m* be þou, werraio*ur* · þ*at* aH þe erd lout*is*!"
Sone as þ*ir* weried wiȝt*is* · was war*e* of hes come, 3212
Þ*at* sloȝe so þair*e* sou*er*ayne · þ*at* neuir*e* sake hadd,
Þai heȝe þaim to holes & hyrnes · & hydis þai*m* belyue,
Þoȝt, or þai wist of his wiH · þai wald noȝt apere.
Þan gase he vp be degrece · the grecen maist*ir*, 3216

He goes to the palace.

Passis in-to þe palais · a p*ar*adyce semed,
Was oñ þe make of þ*at* mote · noȝt[5] mervalled a litiH,

[1] MS. ȝe. [2] MS. þai. [3] MS. þai him.
[4] Famend, *altered to* Famand.
[5] *Here follows* we, *struck through*.

Þam afterward of A[lexander] · attelland a mede;
Þees *tra*tours on þ*at* trichory · trouthez hañ stroken,
Lenden þaim on-loft to þe lord · laghtyn oute swerd*es*. 3193

Darius asks why they attack him,

"What sall I dre," q*uo*d s*ir* Dary · "my dere worthy childer?
First cald I yow my clyent*es* · þat now I calle Lord*es*,
Semys you nott it shuld suffyce · my sorow now w*ith*oute,
Þ*at* as a bytand brand · me byt*es* w*ith*in, 3197
And sla ȝe me þus sodonly? · þe senyour of grece,
He will me wreke on your werke · wers þen of theff*es*!"

and says that Alexander will avenge him.

Þ*ar* mevyd þaim no m*er*cy · bott manly hym wound*it*, 3200 [Fol. 38 b.]

They wound him, and he falls.

Þ*at* downe he held*es* aH to-hewyn · þair hand*es* bytwene.
Þen dryfen forth þoo Domesmeñ · & halfdede hym lef*es*,
Fomand oute of freche blode · & here a fytt end*es*. 3203

Quartusdecimus[1] Passus A[lexandri].

When Alexander hears that Darius is wounded,

Q[u]hen A[lexander] of þis atheH · þis aunt*ur*s had herd,
How he was dy*gh*t of hys doughty · & to þe deth wound*it*,
He straght hym on to struma · ou*er* þe streme ry*des*,

he goes to Susa.

Soght on to susys · hym-self w*ith* hys hostez.
Þe peple oute of p*er*sye · when þai þis Prince see, 3208
Þen ȝode þai furth & vnȝarkyd · þe ȝat*es* of þe Cyte,

The Persians welcome him; but some hide themselves.

Resaved hym full ryally · w*ith* reu*er*ence enogh,
Sayd: "welcom be þou, weryour · þ*at* aH þe werld lout*es*!"
Sone as þees warryd wightez · was war of hys come, 3212
Þ*at* Sloghen so þair sou*er*ent · þ*at* neu*er* þaim gilt made,
Þai hyen þaim to holez · & hyden þaim belyfe,
Þoght, or þai wist of hys wyH · þai wald not apere.
Þen goyse he vp be degrees · þe greken maist*er*, 3216

He goes to the palace.

Passyd vnto þe palacys · þ*at* p*ar*adyse semyd,
Was in makke of þ*at* mote · no*gh*t mervaylled a lytyH,

[1] MS. Duodecimus.

Þat compast was of Cusys · þat kynge was of Persy.
The floor is finely paved. Þe flore vndire þe fote · fynely was paued, 3220
Couerd aH of cristaH · & oþire clere stanes.
The walls are of pure gold. 3it ware þe wawes of þe wanes · wro3t, as I rede,
Polischid aH of pure gold[1] · & of plate werkis.
And þat was streken fuH of sternys · & of sere gemmys, 3224
With bri3t blasynand bees · as bemes of þe soñ.
[Fol. 55 b.] Þe hathiH hedis vp-oñ he3e · & hogely he wondirs,
Þat euire suld emperoure in erth · slike ane herde wild.
Alexander wonders. Quen he had ferlyd his fiH · apoñ þat faire hame, 3228
Þur3e-out þe sale þan he so3t · in-to þe selfe chambre,
He finds Darius sore wounded. Þare quare þe lord in lay · with laythely woundis,
Girdid out as gutars · in grete giH-stremes,
3it was þare lyfe in his like · litiH if it semed, 3232
At ilk blast of his breth · þe blode fra him glidis,
Sire Alexander him avysis · & authly him thinke;
He pities him. Þe pure pete of his payñ · persid his hert.
Þan nymes he fra his awyn neke · añ emperoures mantiH, 3236
He embraces him, And þat he[2] couirs ouire þe kyng · & clappis him in armes,
and weeps over him. With grym̃ gretyng & gro · & grysely terys;
"Be comforted; be king of Persia once more." Bad: "comfurth þe, ser conquirour · & of þi care ryse,
Don a3ayne þe dignite · þe diademe of Pers, 3240
And aH þe ri3tis of þi rewme · resayue as before.
My pure powarfuH gods · I prestly pauoure,
Þine empire & þine erytage · enterely þe to 3eld; 3243
Let no man vaunt of his success. Suld neuir na gome be to glade · þofe he grete ware,
Of his ne3bour noy · enentis him-selfe,
Quen fortune foundis him fra · & him þe fete schewis,
And aH þe welth him at-wendis · & þe werd changis.
Let me avenge thy murder." Brynge furth þi banes, & with my brand · I saH þi dede venge." 3248
Þis sa3e sobband he said · & þe segge wakyns,

[1] MS. gold gold, *but corrected.* [2] *In the margin.*

Þat Compast was of Susys · þat kyng was of pers.
Þe flore vnder fute · fynely was pafvyd, 3220
Couered aH of cristaH · & oþer clere stonez.
3itt wer þe wallez of þe wane · wroght, as I rede,
Polyshyd all of pure gold · & of plate werkes.
And þat was strengkyllyd full of sternez · & strykyñ with gemmys, 3224
With bright blasenand beys · as bemys of þe sonne.
Þe hatheH hedes vp on hight · & hugely he wounderez,
Þat euer suld Emperour in erth · suche a place welde.
Qwen he had farlyd hys fyll · on þees fair homez, 3228
T[h]rogh-oute þe sale þan he soght · vnto þe self chaumbre, [Fol. 59.]
Þar as þe lord in lay · with lothlyche woundes,
Gyrrdand oute as gutters · in grete gylle-stormez,
3itt was þar lyfe in hys lyre · lytyll yf it semyd, 3232
Att Iche blast of hys breth · þe blode fro hym 3ettes,
Sir A[lexander] on hym avysys · & trewly hym thynkez;
Þe pure pite of hys payn · persyd hys hert.
Þen nymmez he fro hys awne neke · ane emperours manteH, 3236
And þat he Couerys ouer þe kyng · & clepys hym in harmez,
With greme gretyng & grone · & gryslyche terys;
Bad: "comforth þe, sir conquerour · & of þi care ryse,
Þu dose ayayn þi dignite · þe dyademe of pers, 3240
And þe rightez of my realme · resayve als before.
My pure powerfull godde s · prestly adoure,
Þine empyre & þi herytage · þe purely to 3eld;
Suld neuer no gome be glad · þof he grett wer, 3244
Off hys neghburs noye · anentes hym-selueñ.
When fortune fundes hym fro · & hym þe fete schewys,
And all þe welthe[1] þat he weldes · & þe werld chaungez,
Bryng fforth þi banes, & with a brand · þi bale shall I venge." 3248
Þis sagh sobband he sayd · & so þe segge wakyns,

[1] MS. wethche.

Darius kisses Alexander's hand.

Hyndely hildis him vp · & his hand kyssis,
þe brest & þe bare necke · & breues þire wordis:

"Ah! Alexander!

¶ "A! Alexander, athiH soñ" · & augrily granys,
"þe depe distruccion of ȝour dome · has many day bene[1] knawyñ,

All turns at last to corruption.

þat aH þe welth of þe werld · worthis at þe last
To cayrayne & corupcion · clene aH-to-gedire.
þe warnes of þi wale gode · þat wist aH before,
And fully feld aH þe fare · þat faH suld on erthe;

[Fol. 56.]

God made man unstable,

Oñ þis maner made he man · þurȝe his miȝt first,
Suld noȝt be foun in him fast · ne ferme ne stable,
Bot houande here a hand-qwile · & hingand in payse,

now up, now down.

Now in leueH, now on-loft · now oñ lawe vndire.
AH werdly þing, I-wis · þurȝe þe wiH of oure lord,
In-to þe contrare clene · is at a clamp turned.

Had He given men prosperity only,

For had he worȝt[2] ay to wees · welth & na nothire,
So grete had bene vayñ glorie · glotony & pride,

none would acknowledge His power.

Suld nane haue gessid þat grace · come of god, bot of þaim-selfe;
So fra þe makare o mold · suld many mañ haue erryd.

. . . . . .

So feyle had bene þe frelettis · foloȝand oure kynd,

We should all have despaired.

We had bene drawen aH bedene · in-to disspaire clene,
And of þe godness of god · noȝt a grew[3] traisted.
For-þi he wald of his wiH · his werkis to be changand,
þat, quen a hathiH ware ouire hiȝe · in happ & in welthe,

God's will is that pride should have a fall.

þat he knew noȝt his creatour · bi-cause of his pride,
In-to þe dike of debonerte · droune bud him nede.
þis was his wiH at it worthid · wene þou na nothire,
þe gome his god at for-gatt · for any grace here,
His welth to wite all a-way · & wickidnes apere,
To ken þe caytefe to knaw · qua caused him oñ first.

This has now happened to myself.

þe same ensampiH of my-selfe · now is betid, þou sees;

[1] *In the margin.* [2] *For* wroȝt.
[3] *Here follows* st, *standing alone.*

Hendly halsys hym vmbe · & hys hande kyssys,
þe brest & on þe bare neke · & brevys þees wordez:
"A! *Alexander*, athyll soñ" · and augerdly gronys,
"þe depe distruccion of þi dome · hase mony day beñ knaweñ,
All þe welth of þis werld · waystes be þe last
To caryon & corrupcioñ · clene all-to-geder.
The wyssyng of þe wale god · þat wist aH before,
And fully fele aH þe fare · þat falle shuld on erth;
On þis maner made he mañ · þorow hys myght first,
Suld not be funde in hym fastnes · ne ferme be ne stabyH,
Bot hofand here an hand-while · & hyngand on payse,
Now in leueH, nowe on-loft · nowe in law vnder.
AH wordly þ[i]ng, I-wys · þorow wyH of þat Lord, [Fol. 39 b.]
Into þe con'ray clene · is at a clampe turnyd.
For hed he wroght ay to wees · welth & none oþer,
So grete had beñ vaneglory · glotony & Pride,
Suld nane haue gessyd þaim grace · of god, bott of þaim-seluen;
So from þe maker of man · myght mony haue erryd.
And had he shapyn Ay to shalkez · shendshiꝑ & illys,
So fele had ben þe frekes · folowand our kynd,
We had beñ drawyn all bedene · into dispare clene,
And on þe gudnes of god · noght a dele traistytt.
For-þi he wald of hys will · aH warkys to be chaunged,
þat, when on athyH was so wele · in happe & in heyle,

þat he knew not hys creatour · be-cause of hys pryde,
Into þe Dyche of debonerte · drench must hym nede.
þis was hys wille þat it shuld þus worth · wete þou no noþer,
The gome þat hys god forgatt · for ony grace here,
Hys welth to wyte away · & wrychednes to apere,
To ken þe catyff to knaw · who causyd hym on first.
þe sampyH of my Awne self · þou seys nowe betyd;

So grete I grew of my gods · & gold in my cofirs,
þat kindly gods creatoure · I kend noȝt my-selfe,
Bot for his feloȝe & his fere · faithly me leued,
Pride blinded me. þus prosperite & pride · so purely me blyndid,
I couthe noȝt se fra my sege · to þe soile vndire,
þat at me failed þan to fynd · fast at myñ eȝen.
[Fol. 56 b.] Be þe myrrour now of meknes · I may a myle knawe,
If a man be cast down, If any hathill be so hard · with vnhappȳ woundid,
So at he hopis him no helpe · of þe heȝe fadire,
he shall be exalted. þan liftis oure lord him oñ-loft · his langour he breggis,
In-hanses him in hand-quile · & heues him to welthis
So heȝe, þat he for vn-hele · seȝes noȝt his driȝteñ.
Let man acknowledge his creator. Lat þan him knaw his creatour · in kindling of ioy,
þat he þat lawene has a lede · may lyft, if him thinke,
And he þat bringis him on-loft · breten all to poudire.
Let not pride puff thee up. þi saule, soñ, in-to surquitery · lat seke neuire þe hiȝhare,
For gre þe graunt ere[1] of god · & noȝt[2] of þi grete strenthis.
Look to thine end. If all þe limp as þe list · loke to þine ende,
For die þe bose, queñ all is done · & ay þi day scortis.
My life is like a cob-web, soon blown away. ¶ Me þink[3] my lyfe as to þe lenȝth · is like to þis werke,
þat þis coppis opon kell-wyse · knytt in þe woȝes,
With þe lest winde of þe werd · þat þe werd touches,
þe note anentis ilk ane · & all to noȝt worthis.
Lo! so þe quele of qwistsumnes · my qualite has changid!
I, who yesterday ruled all the world, am now driven down to dust. I, þat was ȝustirday so ȝape · & ȝemed all þe werld,
To day am dreuyñ all to dust · to dolour & paynes,
Has noȝt o maistri so meche · as miȝt of my-selfe.
My dere soñ," quod Daryus · "it drawes nere þe tyme;
Bury me with the princes of Persia. My banes, on my benysoñ · bery with þi hand,
With þe proued princes out of Pers[4] · & with þe proude grekis,
And þe maistirlings of Messedoyne · ȝe me to mold bring.

[1] *Read* is. [2] *Added in the margin.* [3] MS. Me þink me. [4] MS. Perers.

So grete I grew of my gudez · & gold in my coffers,
þat kendly goddes creature · I knew nott my-seluen̄,
Bott for hys felow & hys fere · faythfully me made,
þus prosperite & pride[1] · propyrly me blyndyd,
I kouth noght see fro my seyge · to þe sette vnder,
þat at me faylyd to fynd · fast at my eeyn̄.
Be þe myrrow[r] of mekenes · I may a myle knaw,
Yff ony hatheH be so hard · with vnhappe woundit,
So þat he hopys hym no help · of þe hye fader,
þen lyftes þe kyng hym on-loft · hys langor abreggez,
Enhaunses hym in hand-while · & hefys hym on-loft
So he, þat ere[2] for vnsele · segh nott hys Dryghtyn̄.
Lete þen hym know hys creature · in kyndyllyng of Ioy,
þat he laghtnes may lede · & lyft when hym thynkez,
And þat brynges hym abowe · bryttynd all to powder.
þi sawle, sir, into Surquydry · latt sech neuer þe heyere,

[*Leaf* 40 *is lost.*]

[1] MS. proride. [2] *For* ere, *read* he.

Let us fight no longer.

Lat þan oure kyng-domes a-corde · & cock we na langir,
Bot ay perpetuall pes · oure partys betwene.

I commend to you my mother and daughter.

Vn-to 3oure mekiH maieste · my modire I comande,
Rodogarus þe riaH · & rewis on my bride;
My do3tir Rosan þe riche · resayues to 3our spouse,

[Fol. 57.]

It comys wele of hi3e kyn̄ · kyngis to descend.

Be kind to my men."

Tak tent to þat at I teH · be tendire of my kni3tis."
And with þis speke at he spake · þe sprete he 3eldis.

Darius dies and is buried.

Þan was his body enbawmed · &, as he bede, graueñ.
Þis bald baratoure him bare · & as a barne gretis,
So did þe pepiH out of Persy · bot for his pite mare
Þan for þe dethe of Dary · be dowble of þe twa.

Alexander mounts the throne.

And Alexander belyue · as he was enterid,
He meues agayn̄ to þe mote · & oñ þe morne eftir,
Vp to þe souerayne sege · with Septour he wyndis,
Þat Cusus þe conquirour · of clere gold maked.
Þe mody men of Messedone · þe maistirs of Persy
Þan put þam̄ in-to presens · as þe prose tellis;

Darius' crown is put on his head.

Sire Darius aweñ dyademe · þai did oñ his hede,
A coroñ, ane þe costious · þat euire kyng weryd,
On þe propurest of proiecte · þat euire prince bere.
Þe massy werke was þe menest · made of þe noble,
Þe pride þar-of for to proue · it pyned any cristeñ;

The crown shines gloriously.

It gaue so glorius a gleme · of gold & of stanes,
Þat as þe loge for þe li3t · lemed as of heuen.

The throne is of gold.

Þe sete þare him-selfe satte · in soyte with þe croune,
Þat was lift a-poñ loft · oñ oþire litiH segis,
Seuyn cubet of clere gold · was countid þe hi3t.

It has seven steps;

And vij degrece was þar grayd · for gate vp of kingis,
And þai ware Ientilly Ioyned · in a Ioyly wyse.

1. of amethyst.

Þe first añ athil Amatast · as I am̄ infourmed,

2. of smaragdus.

And of a Smeth [s]maragadane · Smyten was þe toþir;

3. of topaz.

Þe thrid of a Topas a-tyred · & trelest & grauen;

4. of garnet.

Þe ferd degre a Granate · a gracious gemme;

[Fol. 57 *b.*]

5. of adamant.

Þe fyfte was of ane Adomant · aH-to-gedire makid;

6. of gold.

Þe sext of gletirand gold · gayle was forgid;

7. of earth.

Þe ouirmast, aH of Þe erth · w*ith*-out oÞir*e* werk*is*,
Apoñ Þis wyse war*e* Þai grayd · & for grete cause. 3348

1. The amethyst guards men against drunkenness.

Þe first was of añ Amatist · Þ*at* aH chaye demes
Riche, said Þe romance · & ronkenes of wynes,
Latt*is* na dronkynnes[1] Þam̃ dere · Þ*at* douth at it beris.
Þe same wyse moñ a wee · waite to him-selfe, 3352

A king must be of sober mind.

A kniȝt at couett*is* to clym̃ · to kyngs astate,
Him bus haue warnes hi*m* w*ith* · of wit & of mynde,
Þ*at* he wirke noȝt oñ Þe wethir*e* halfe · for wathe apoñ erth. 3355

2. The smaragdus protects the sight; a king must see clearly.

Þe s[e]cunde was of Smaragdone · Þ*at* ay Þe siȝt kepis;
Quat berne as beris it him oñ · it briȝtens his eȝeñ.
So bus a kyng to consaile · haue a[2] clere hert,
To se at sytt*is* him to se · & sagely to wirke. 3359

3. The topaz reflects an inverted image.

Þe thrid was a Topas, I trow · at to Þe trone lengis;
Þ*at* is so clere of his kind · Þe clause me recordis,
Þ*at* qua-su*m*-euir*e* in Þ*at* ilk · his ymage behald*is*,
Þe face is to Þe fold-ward · Þe fete to Þe firment.

A king must remember how all things are subverted.

So comes it wele for a kyng · to knaw tiH his end, 3364
How ay Þe top to Þe taa · is turned at Þe last.
Queñ fortune festis hi*m* · he fendis beliue,

And aH his dignite bedene · driues in-to poudir*e*. 3367

4. The garnet is the brightest of gems;

Þe ferd[e] was a granate, I gesse · goules althir*e* fynest;
Is nane so redy, as I rede · of aH Þe riche stanes;

a king must be of pure fame.

Slike color aȝe a kyng wele · in conyschance to bere,
Þ*at* he schape to na schauadry · Þ*at* schend suld his fame.

5. The adamant is very hard. [Fol. 58.]

Þe fift was all of adoma*n*t · as Þe buke tellis; 3372
Þ*at* is he Þ*at* is so hard · Þ*at* hurt may nane tole;[3]
Is nothir*e* stele ne na stane · so stife it may p*er*ce,
And growis out of Þe grete see · in gr*a*ynes & in cragis.
If any Naue[4] to it neȝe · Þ*at* naylid is w*ith* iryñ, 3376

It attracts ships.

Þeñ cleuys it ay to Þe clife · carryg & othyre;

[1] MS. droncynnes, *altered to* dronkynnes. [2] MS. ai.
[3] MS. thole tole; *with* thole *struck out.*
[4] MS. aue, *altered to* Naue *in the margin.*

What berne Þ*at* berys it hym on · it brightyns hys sygh[t]. [Fol. 41; *leaf 40 being lost.*]
So buse a kyng to consayve · hafe a clere hert[e],
To se Þ*at* sitt*es* hym to see · & sagely to wirche. 3359
The thryd was a topas, I trowe · Þ*at* to Þe trone longyd;
Þ*at* is So clere of hys kynde · Þe clause it record*es*,
Þ*at* who-someu*er* in Þ*at* ilke · hys vysage behald*es*,
Þe face is to Þe foldward · Þe fete into Þe welkyñ.
So comys it wele to a kyng · to knaw to hys ende, 3364
Howe ay Þe topp̄ to Þe toes · is t*ur*nyd at Þe last[e],
When fortoune frayst*es* frely hym in-fere · he fynd*es* hym belyfe,
And all hys dignite bedene · dryfys into Powder. 3367
The fourte was a granate · Þ*at* glowys all Þ*ar* fynest[e];
Is none so rede, as I rede · of all Þe ryche stones;
Suche colour aght[e] a kyng wele · in countena*u*nce to bere,
Þ*at* he shope to no cheualdre · Þ*at* shend shuld hys name.
The fyft was all of Adamant[e] · as Þe buke tellys; 3372
Þ*at* is he Þ*at* is so hard · Þ*at* hurt may no tule;
Is noÞ*er* stele nor no stone · so styff may it perce,
And growys out of[e] Þe grete see · in granes & in Craggez.
Yff ony navy to it negh · Þ*at* nalyd is w*ith* Irne, 3376
Þen clefys it ay to Þe clyff · carrak & oÞ*er*;



Bot blode of body, sais þe buke · bees it neuire
percid,[1]
Or þe natour of anothire thing · þat nedis noȝt to rekeñ.
A king should be steadfast. þat same kynd suld a kyng · of his craft vse, 3380
So stable & so stedfast · to stand in his werkes,
þat for na prayere ne pres · ne plesaunce oñ erthe,
Out of þe rake of riȝtwysnes · reñ suld he neuire.
6. The gold is the chief of metals; þe Sext was of gold · graciously heweñ, 3384
Of aH metals o mold · þe maistir & þe syre;
a king should be chief. þe same cure is a kyng · be kind of his leggis,
To gy & gouerne[2] his gomes · þe grettest he is makid.
7. The earth reminds a king that he is of earth. þe seuynt vp to þe sege · was of þe selfe erth, 3388
þat is na mare for to mene · as me my mynd tellis,
Bot ilka kyng suld him knaw · cried of þe soile,
And to þe same sustenance · sodanly to worthe. 3391
þus sett oure syre in his sete · with septoure in hand,
In pelour & in paH · & proud meñ him by.
Alexander sends out a letter. þañ lete he lettres belyue · with ledis out to send,
þurȝe aH þe prouynce of pers[3] · promicid þis werkis.
" þe kyng with-outeñ compere · of kyngis aH othire,
Of all þe lordis now þe lord · þat lefis apoñ erth, 3397
" Alexander to the chiefs and princes of Persia sends greeting. Sire Alexander, athiH soñ · of Amoñ his driȝteñ,
And als of Olimpades · anyly consayued,
To þe souerayns & þe Senescalls · þe sires & þe maistris,
[Fol. 58 b.] And all þe pers out of persy · princes & dukis, 3401
þe Iustis & þe gentils · & Iugemeñ of lawe,
Bathe citiȝens & seriant · salutis of grace.
Syn it lokid has þe largenes · of þe lord of heuen, 3404
Since the diadem of Darius is granted me, þat me þis diademe of Dary · demed is & graunted,
And to be[4] here þus enhansid · in his hiȝe trone,
ȝe sall be glad of my degre · & gretly reioyd,
And ordans aiquare ouire aH · honourable princes, 3408
let all be administered as before. Gouernours & gardens · of all þe grete burȝes,
As was in Darius days · to deme men þe riȝt,

[1] MS. lansed, *altered to* percid. [2] MS. gounere.
[3] MS. perers. [4] *In the margin.*

Withowte blode of body, says þe buke · beys it neuer
persyd,
Or þe nature of a-noþer thyng · þat nedes noght to rekyn.
The same kynd shuld a kyng · of hys craft vse, 3380
So stabyll & so stedfast · to stond in hys werkez,
þat for no prayer ne preese · ne plesaunce[1] on erth,
Oute of þe rakke of rightwyssnes · rynne shuld he neuer.
The sext degree was of gold · graciously hewyñ, 3384
Off all þe metallys of mold · þe maister & þe syre;
The same cure is a kyng · be kend of hys leigez,
To gye & gouеryne hys gomes · þe grettest is he grathyd.
The Seuente vp to þe sege · was of þe self erth, 3388
þat is no more for to mene · as me þe writte tellys,
Bot euerilke kyng shuld hym knawe · create of þe soyle,
And to þe same substance · sodanly to worth. 3391
þus sett our Syre in hys sete · with septour in hand, [Fol. 41 b.]
In pelour & in palle · & prouude men hym vmbe.
þen lete he letterys belyfe · with ledes oute to send,
þorow all þe prouynce of pers · pronounsand þees wordez:
" The kyng withowtyn compere · of kyngez aH oþer,
Of all lordes nowe lord · þat lefyn vppoñ erth, 3397
Sir A[lexander], athyll soñ · of amoñ hys drightyñ,
And also of Olympades · only consaved,
To þe souerayns & senescallez, · þe syrez & þe maisterys,
And aH þe peres oute of pers · princez & dukez, 3401
þe iustice & þe gentyles · þe iuggez of þe lawe,
Both cyteȝeyns & sergeantez · salutes of grace.
Seth lukkyd hath þe largenes · of þe lord of heueñ, 3404
þat me þis Diademe of Dary · demyd is & grauntyd,
And to be here þus inhaunsyd · in hys hye trone,
ȝe shall be glad of my degree · & gretly reiossed,
And ordayns ouer all & ay · honorable princez, 3408
Gouernours & gardens · of all my grete burghez,
As was in Darius days · to deme men þe right,

[1] MS. plesaaunce.

And clene all þe clientis · to kepe þaire demayndes.
Ilk a pepill his possessiõ[1] · in pes moȝt he broweke,
Let all armour be put away. Armoure & actons · y latt all þat be kepid,[2] 3413
Caires þãm to castells · & in kinge houses,
And none so bald, ere I bide · to bere þãm na mare.
Let the highroad be free." And fra þis marche to Messedone · quils I am maistir here, 3416
þe passage in aithire part · sall playñ be & opeñ,
þe comers out of aithire coste · to caire vndistrobbed,
With message & Marchandise · & al manire of nedis."
¶ Now is his pistils aH past · & pese he comandis ; 3420
He next bids the slayers of Darius to come to him, " Quilke of my fryndis ere þe folke · þat my faa sloȝe,
þat was þe drepars of Dary · now doo þam a-pere,
þat þai may weld for þis werke · wirschip to mede.
My mekill miȝtfuH gods · I mayñly ȝow swere, 3424
And oñ þe lay at I leue · & be my lufed modire,[3]
promising them their reward. þe worthe wage þaim wayne · þat þai haue wele serued."
þañ all þe pepiH out of Persy · pouret out to wepe ;
Besan and Anabras present themselves. Bathe Besañ & Anabras · as þe buke tellis, 3428
þat ware þe banes of his body · baldly þãm shawis ;
Said : "we to-hewid him [with] oure handis · hiȝe emperoure."
þai wend wele þaim to wyñ · a warysoñ for euire. 3431
[Fol. 59.] He commands them to be beheaded, þañ bad he bernes þaim to bynd · & bringe þaim be-lyue
Vn-to þe gudmans graue · & hewe of þaire hedis.
" Allas, my lord," quod þa ledis · " & ȝe so late swore,
To ȝour worthi gods, ȝour wale dame · we suld no waa suffire !" 3435
as that is the right reward of traitors. " Siris, as ȝe worthi ware, I-wisse · I wate wele I hiȝt,
And bot ȝour harmes were vnhid · I held noȝt myne athis.
For sen I wañ in-to þe werld · my witt has bene aye,
Quen treid was a trechory · þe tulkis to be hedid."
þañ he did þaim to deth · as driȝten him praysed, 3440

[1] MS. posseciioñ, *altered to* possessioñ. [2] MS. kepis.
[3] *Here the* Dublin MS. *ends.*

And clene all our clientes · to kepe þair demaundes,
Iche peple þair possessiõ · in pease myght þai broke,
Armors & actons · lat aH þat be kepyd, 3413
Cayrez þaim to castellys · & to kyngez housez,
And none so bold, or I byd · to bere þaim no more.
And fro þis marche to massydoyne · whil I am maister here, 3416
The passage shall in ather parte · plane be & opyñ,
þe Comers oute of athir coste · to cayre vndistourblett,
With message & with merchaundyse · & all maner of nedes."
Nowe er hys pistellys forth past · & pease he Commandez ;
"Which of my frendes er þe folke · þat my foe slogh,
þat wer þe drepers of sir Dary · nowe doys þaim apere,
þat þai may weld for þair werk · worship & mede.
My mekyll myghtfull goddes · I maynly you swere, 3424
And on þe lay þat I lefe · & be my lofyd moder,

[*Here ends the fragment in the* Dublin MS.]

The land is at peace.

Þe prouynce piȝt is in pes · & princes ere maked,
An[1] ald derling[2] of Darius · was duke made of pers,
Request of þe rials · ane of his riche vncles.
Oure emperoure, quen þis was endid · erly oñ þe morne,

Alexander again mounts the gilt throne,

With all þa alyens him by · & ancient lordis,
He gase a-gayne to de-grece · vp to þe gilt trone,
Dobbed in his diademe · & diȝt as be-fore;
As Dary demed, or he deid · his doȝtir he comandes,

and bids Roxana come to him,

Mad Rosañ þe riche · radly to apere,
Hire hede vn-helid was oñ hiȝe · & hild aH in trissis,
Vm̃-by-clappid with a coronacle · of costious stanes;

whom he weds, and makes empress.

As þe manere of þat marche was · he wedd hire to wyfe,
And in þe sege with him-selfe · to sitt he hir makis,
Comands hire as a conquyres · of knyȝtis to be louted,
And all þe pepill out of Persy · was passandly ioyed.
Þai gone agraytheñ vp þaire gods · on gilten segis,

The Persians call him a god; at which he is alarmed.

Sayed: "Þou ert duke of ilk dome · & driȝtin þi-selfe!"
Þan was he fraid in his flesche · bad, "feyne of ȝour wordis!
I am a coruptible kyng · & of clay fourmed!"

[Fol. 59 b.]

Þañ out onone to Aristotil · & to his awen modire
Of all his weris & his welth · he wrate alto-gedire;

He keeps an eight-days' feast in honour of Roxana.

And aȝt daies aH bedene · he dites in his pistiH,
For reuerence of Rosan · to reveH & halowe.
Al be þe metire bot mene · þus mekiH haue I ioyned;
Forthi, lordis, be ȝour leue · list ȝow to suffire.
Now will I tary for a time · & tempire my wittis;
And he þat stiȝe to þe sternes · stiȝtiH vs iñ heuen!

Quintusdecimus passus Alexandri.

I will now tell you more about Alexander.

Lordis, wiH ȝe me lithe · & lestin a stonde,
Now sall I kithe vs a carpe · of a kyng riche,
Of þe auntours of ser Alexander · þat aire was of grece,
How all þe werd at his will · he wañ or he deid.

[1] MS. And. [2] MS. derlingis.

Þe lattir ende of his lyfe · me list ȝow to teH.
For aH þe first is in fittis · & folowand þe lettir,

The first part closely follows the original.

And he þat made ȝow þis mirth · oft mynes his saule,
Þat driȝtiñ deyne him to dele · a dele of his blis.
Sone as ser Dary was deid · & done out of lyue,

When he had married Roxana,

And Alexander as[1] aire · had aH for to wild,
Resayued to his riche quene · Rosan his doȝtir,
And was þe croune be-kend · of clene all þus ends,
He gedird him a grete ost · & graythid him to ride,
A powere of þe Persens · & of þe prowde grekis,

he proceeds to attack Porus,

Þe Messedones & all men · he [maynly] comandis
On kyng Porrus to preke · & prese him with armes.
Now gase he furthe with his ging · þe gaynest in-to ynde.

and advances to India.

Þare many daies be dissert · he dryfes with his ost,

He comes to a desert.

Be hiȝe hillis & howis · & be holuȝe doũnes,
Be wast & be wildirnes · & be watirles bournes.

[Fol. 60.]

Sone was he wery of þe way · so was his wale kniȝtis;

The Greeks mourn,

Menyd þaim þe Messedones · emang þaim-selfe,
Þai said, it miȝt be sufficient · þe sesyng of Persy,
And him þat[2] trouage oñ tyme · has tane of oure eldirs.

and ask why they are to go further.

"Quat suld we fonde any ferre · now faylis oure strent[h]is;
Þis erd of ynde is ilk dele · enhabet with bestis,
And he bet willis all þe werd · be weris him to loute,
His flesche is fostard & fedd · be fiȝt & by sternes.

"Alexander lives upon fighting,

And were his personñ in pes · bot for a pure tyme,
Þan suld he faile as a freke · at þe fode wantis.

but let us go home in peace."

Bot lat vs leue him at longe · & lende to oure hames,
And pas quedire as him plese · with þe proud barbres."
Sone as oure kyng of his kniȝtis · þis carpe vndire-stondis,
He mas to stand all þe stoure · & standis vp in þe myddis,

Alexander harangues them. "Hear me!

"Bald baratours on bent · blythly me heris,

[1] MS. as ar; *with* ar *struck out.*
[2] MS. þat se; *with* se *struck out.*

All þe pepill out of Persy · ere put in my wiH;
All ware rebeH in arest · now is þe rewme[1] 3old,
I am your king. And I your kyng as 3e knaw · with croune & with septour.
Ye lightly leave me. And now 3e leue me þus li3tly · bot for a litiH pyne,
To caire a-gayne to 3our kithid[2] · I cañ no3t þare-oñ.
Did not I comfort you when Darius threatened? Knaw 3e no3t how in 3our care · I cu[m]furth 3ow anys,
Quene 3e dout so þe dites · of Darus in his pistiH?
Eft quen we ferd in-to fild · & with oure faes mett,
I was þe first 3ow before · þat þe fild entrid,
So3t in-to Sussys · my-selfe for[3] 3oure hele,
In þe habet of Amon · oure[4] allirs dri3ten,
I have been in a hundred perils. Put my personñ in plegg · & perils a hundreth,
And in-to tourment oñ-tald · me tuke for 3our sake.
[Fol. 60 b.] Bot wetis it wele with-out wene · I wene in my saule,
As I 3it haue hedire toward · heried all my faes,
So sall I gete hus ay þe gree · with my gud helpe,
I will never turn my back, And for na tene at may betide · turne sall I neuire,
If 3e will lend in-to 3our landis · loke at 3our hertis!
though ye may do so." Bot me to do slike a dede · dri3tin it schilde!
I sall neuire graithe me to grece · gase quen 3ow likis,
Or mare wirschip I haue woñ · for wathe vndire heuen."
His princes and knights beg his forgiveness, Quen he þis resoñ had redd · þañ rewid his princes,
And of forge[f]nes of þaire gilt · his grace þai be-seke.
Kni3tis callis[5] him oñ kneys · said: "kid emperoure,
All oure life & oure lose · is lent in 3our handis,
Oure-selfe & oure seruage · is surely 3oure awen,
and promise in future to follow him even to death. Ai at 3oure beding to be · oure bodi & oure gudis,
Quare-euer 3e wend in aH þe werd · in watir or in erthe,
Ay mekely at 3our mandment · 3our maieste to folowe.
If we suld die aH-bedene · at añ day tyme,
We sall neuer spise 3ow ne sporne · in speche ne in dede,
Ne neuire 3our rialte renay · bot rede to sewe,

[1] MS. rewe, *altered to* rewme. [2] *Or* kichid.
[3] MS. oo, *corrected to* for. [4] MS. a oure; *with* a *expuncted*.
[5] *Read* fallis.

Quils any blast of oure breth · iñ oure brest lengis."
þan 3ede he furthñ in-to ynde · & in þase Iles weres;
Queñ all þe iolite of giugne · & Iulus was endid,
June and July being ended, And messangers a-poñ þe marche · him metis belyue,
Fra kyng Porrus þe proude · þis pistill him bro3t.
a letter comes from Porus. ¶ "I, Porrus, þat as principaH. possessid añ iñ ynde,
To þis michare out of Messedone · þis mandment I write.
þou, Alexander, þou Ape · þou Amla3e out of grece,
þou litiH thefe, þou losangere · þou lurkare in cites,
Sen þou ert destayned to die · & dedely þi-selfe,
þat[1] agayñ dri3tin of vnde[d]lynes · quat may þi dede vaile?
[Fol. 61.] Madding marrid has þi mode · & þi mynd changid.
"Madness has possessed thee. Sen god has sent þe with to see · & 3it þi witt failes,
I hope þou wenes at we be like · to þire lethire Persyñs,
Thou thinkest we are like the Persians. þat þou þi lordschiþ to loute · has now oñ late strayned.
And for þou fellid has in fi3t · a fi3t at was sympuH,[2]
Now muses þou to þi miserie · my maieste to bowe.
If gomes be gouerners of gods · þan mai þi gesse worth;
And if þe land here on lawe · be lickned to þe heuen,
þe ministracion of meñ · to me were to febiH.
All dri3tens & dewessis · ere dute of my name;
All lords are afraid of me. Ane ser Denys, a duke · gane many wintire,
I conquered Sir Denys. He bed vs bataill oñ bent · & þe back turned.
And or þat Sexes him-selfe · sesid was in Persy,
At þe marche of Messedone · made vs trouage.
Bot for þe[3] partise ere vn-prophetable · vs plese þaim na langir,
Ai wald þe wise haue wale soile · mare þañ a wast lee.
Return to thy country." Caire agayñ to þi kith · caiteffe, I bidd,
Here na lordschiþ þe limpis · quat list þe disyre."
¶ Sone as þis clause to oure kyng · [was] comyn & deliuere,[4]
Be-fore his bachelers oñ brade · he bedis it to rede.

[1] *Read* As; *the usual idiom*. [2] MS. symplille.
[3] *In the margin*. [4] *Read* deliuered.

Alexander's men are afraid.

His tulkis of þis titiH · quen þai þe tenour herd,
þan ware þai sory of þa sawes · & selly frayed.
"Quat now, my worthe werrayouris?" · þe wale kyng sayd, 3568

Alexander comforts them.

"For Porrus pistill, I pray · ne for his proud wordis,
No for na manas he mas · mayes noȝt ȝoure hertis.
Did noȝt ser Dary to vs write · his pistill with pride,
And all þe berbrens bernes · in bestis þam affyed,
As lebards, lesards, & lenxis · lions & tigris?" 3573

He writes to Porus. [Fol. 61 b.]

With comfurth of his contenance · his knyȝtis he gladis,
And þañ to Porrus apart · þis pistill he writis.
¶ "I, þat[1] þe kyng am of kyng[s] · & crouned of lordis,
þe eldist child of Amoñ · þat all has to wild,* 3577
And honourd Olimpades · with him ane geteñ,
To þe oddest aire out of ynde · þis answare I make.

"Thou hast made us bolder to fight."

I-wis, oure wittis with þi wordis · þou has wele scharpid,
And made vs bald with þi bost · þe bataill to ȝeld*. 3581
Oure boundis ere barrayne & bare · & þine fuH of welth;
þe kenir is oure corage · ȝoure kyng-dome to wyñ,
To put away oure pouerte · & pas to ȝoure hiȝtes.
And ga noȝt, as ȝe gude ware · agayñ ȝow to fiȝt, 3585
Bot a berne fuH of bost · a barbrene prince,
Wenand me & all þe werd · to waike to ȝow-selfe."

Porus is wrath,

Queñ Porrus with his preue men · þis pistill had redd,

and assembles his men;

þan was he wondirly wrathe · & wiȝtly asembles 3589
þe kniȝtis & þe captayns · of all þe coste by,
His champions, his chiftans · his cheualry to-gedire.
He feris him a faire flote · was fed* for þe nanes,

also his unicorns and elephants,

Of vnicornes, of olyfauntis · & wondirfulle bestis, 3593
As ilkane vsyd with in ynde · vmquile with to fiȝte,
And aires agayne Alexander · with armes hiñ to mete.
þe powere of sir Porrus · was passandly many;

and his scythed chariots.

A stour stiffe vndire stele · þe strangest of þe werde
Of sithid chariotis him sued · a selcuth noñbre, 3598
At þe fewist, as I find · a fouretene thousand;

[1] MS. þat at.

With-outen bachelers oñ blonkis · & bowmen oñ fote,
Foure hundreth Olyfants in-fere · folowid him enarmi[d],

He had 400 elephants, each bearing a castle.

With ilkane bunden on his bake · a bordeñ casteH,
And thretty tulkis in ilk toure · tired iñ platis. 3603
Oure mey-he[1] out of Messedone · quen þai so many saȝe, [Fol. 62.]
þan ware þai storbet of þat stoure · so was þe stythe Persyns.

The Greeks are dismayed.

AH þe athils of sir Alexander · was arȝed in þaire hertis
To mache with sike a multitude · of men & of bestis.
þan was þir chiftans chosen · cheualous kniȝtis 3608
þat buskid ware on bathe halfe · þe bataiH to rewle.
With þat þai tuke vp þe trumpis · be thretty at anes,
A-grydis grymly to-gedir · þe grekes & barbres.

Alexander mounts Bucephalus.

Sire Alexander was armed · & askis his stede 3612
þat was þe bald bocifaloñ · & oñ his bake worthes;
Mare þan a stanecast at a count · be-fore[1] his kniȝtis aH
He standis vp in his stereps · in starand maylis.
þe men out of Medy · he mas, & of Pers, 3616
To enveroñ alle þe vaward · of aH þe vile yndes,
And he was graythid [with] a ging[1] · of grekis kniȝtis
And maistres out [of] Messedone · þis meyhe[2] to helpe.

The Persians are wounded by the elephants.

þe pepiH out of Persye · ware petusly woundid 3620
Of Olifauntis ouir aH · with horrible hurtis;
All at vnweried* a-way · wynnes in þe stoundis
Durst neuir his face to his faes · eft oñ fold bide.
Sire Alexander him a-visis · & ames in his wittis 3624
How he miȝt bring it a-boute · þire bestis to devoide;

Alexander makes brazen men, filled with fire-brands.

And mas to beete aH of bras · as bernes it ware,
And full of glorand* gledis · þaim to þe gorge fillis;
Ane instrument aH of ireñ · þare ymage to bere, 3628
Was compast oñ carte-wise · & cursoures þaim dreȝe.

The elephants attack these,

þire Olifantis of ynde · quen þai þare-on waite,
þai wend þai ware wees · & wyndis þaim agayñ
To drepe þaim as þaire first did · disclosid þai þe chaviles, 3632

[1] MS. be before. [2] *Read* meynhe.

[Fol. 62 b.] And sone was snaypid on þe snowte · *with* þe snart het*is*.
and take to flight. *With* þ*at* þai fonge to þe fliȝt · be fifty at anes,
Of ilkañ athill ware þai aȝed · þ*at* any armes werid.
Sone as *ser* Porr*us* of þe poynte · & o þe plite wayt*is*,
Þan was he tangid *with* tene · & turbled vnfaire. 3637
The Persians and Medes attack the Indians. Þan p*re*ses in þe P*er*syns · & of þe proud Medis
With arowis & *with* othire armes · agayñ all þe yndis,
Tolls of þe tirant*is* · & termynd o lyue, 3640
Seȝes dou*n* on aithire side · a sowme out of nounbr*e*,
Thretti dais oñ a throm̃ · þai threpid euir*e* elike,
So lange at þe lest way · as lastid þe bataiH.
Þar*e* was þe Medis martird · & many of P*er*ses 3644
Gorred & gais[1] þurȝe · & grysely woundid.
Alexander comes to the rescue Our*e* mody kyng of Messedone · þe myschefe be-hald*is*,
Seis þaim faile so ethfully · & felly was greued.
Apoñ þe bald bucifeloñ · brant vp he sitt*is*, 3648
Spring*is* out a spere · sperid aH þe plat*is*.
Þe brest of þe bataiH · he baldly a-prochid,
Girdis dou*n* of þe gratt*is* · & þe gree wynnys.
with his Greeks. His awen men of Messedone · maynly þai feȝt, 3652
So did his gomes out [of] grece · & gate a grete name.
Sone discendid þar*e* dou*n* · þe duȝtiest of ynde,
Porus takes to flight. And Porr*us* p*re*kis fra þe place · & þe playñ voidis,
His ledis at left war*e* o lyue · lendis him eftir*e*. 3656
And Alex*ander* in þ*at* angle · aH þe niȝt logis,
Offirs all his old gods · his hono*ur* þaṁ thank*is*,
As wele þe ynde as his[2] awen̄ · he graue þai*m* aH.

Sextus Decimus [passus] Alex*andri*.

[Fol. 63.] Alexander takes the chief city of India. Þe secu*n*d[3] day *with* a saute · a cite he takis, 3660
þe proddest ane at Porr*us* · possesso*ur* was[4] euir*e*.
He past in-to his palais · & in þe place findis
þ*at* semed no synfull saule · þe selcuthe to trowe.

[1] *Read* girt (struck)? cf. l. 3651. [2] MS. he.
[3] MS. scdū. [4] *In the margin.*

First fand he þare of fyne gold · a foure hundreth postis, He finds 400 pillars of gold,
With crafti coronals & clene · coru*en* of þe same. 3665
Be-twene þe pelers was piȝt · *with* precious leuys,
Gilden wynes *with* grapis · of gracious stanes. and golden vines, with grapes of
Sum were of cristaH clere · clustrid to-gedire; 3668 pearls
Sum made ware[1] of Margarits · þe mast of þe werd;
Sum was smeth smaragdyns · & oþire smaH gemmes, and other gems.
And new nychomet*is* · nemellus endentid,
þ*at* ware as semely · queñ þai ware samen, 3672
And all p*ar*gest*is* of plate · as pure as þe noble.
Þe Messedons in þaṁ merkid · *with* þaire mekill brandis,
And þe thinnest was a nynche thicke · quen þai ware The thinnest plate of gold on the walls was an inch thick.
þurȝe p*er*sed; 3675
And þo ware strenkild *with* stanes · as sterne o þe heuyñ,
With charbokl[e]s oñ þe champ · & *with* chefe p*er*les.
Smeteñ was smaragdans · in-to þe smeth werkis,
And athill amytists als · in aungels licknes; There were amethysts, gates of ivory,
Of Euor & of Olifants · was ordand þe ȝat*is*, 3680
With barrers of ane Ebyñ-tree · bonden *with* cheynes. and bars of ebony.
Þe Ebyñ, as þe buke sais · brin will neu*ir*,
And growis in þe Iles of ynde · as Isodry tellis.
Þe solers was of Sypirs · all of a soyte makid; 3684 The chambers were of cypress.
And Symolacres in þe sale · was sett vp-oñ trones
AH of glitt*ir*and gold · as gomes it were, There were images on thrones of gold.
Dischеualer *with* chaplets · of changand hewes;
And ilka tulke a tabernacle · tildid was ouir*e*, 3688
And þ*at* was gr*a*u*en* aH grayd · of gilden platis,
Flamband all in filo*ur* · & fewlis en-blanchid, Also birds, marvellously [Fol. 63 b.] painted,
Mekely merkid & made · of aH manere of kyndis;
And þa ware proudly depaynt · þe pennes & þe wingis,
Of all colo*ur*s to a-counte · as þai ere cled here; 3693 with bills of gold,
Of fethirhame & aH fare · as feetely enjoyned,
As þai ware shapen o þe scheH · to schew to our*e* eȝeñ.
Bet was all of brent gold · þe billis & þe chauyls, 3696
And, queñ as Porr*us* coñ plese · in p*re*sens of lordis,

[1] MS. wade w; *but corrected.*

which sang by magic art.

Þai made as mery melody · & musik þai sanng[1]
As in þe moneths of Mai · or mydsomere euyñ !
Þare fand he vessale of value · to vyse out of nombre,
Also cups of gold, Gurds & Goblets · of gold althire-finest, 3701
Coupis all of cristaH · & oþire clere gemmes ;
with but few of silver. Þai fande bot a fewe dele · forged of siluir.
Þan rade he fra þa regions · & remewid his hostis ;
Alexander comes to the Caspian gates, To þe 3atis of Caspy he come · & sett doun his tentis,
A lande, as þe buke tellis · a large & a noble, 3706
All sauand bot serpentis · & oþire sere bestis.
and writes to the queen of the Amazons. To þe mode qwene of Amazoyne · þan makis him þis pistiH.
"I, þat þe kyng am of kyngs · & kiddist of lordis,
Alexander, athil child · of Amon oure dri3tin, 3710
To Calistride þe conquirese · comfurth & ioye !
Oure weris & oure wirschips · & of oure wale notis,
"I suppose you know we have conquered Darius. How we[1] haue done ser Dary · & drepid his kni3tis,
Couerd all his kyngdoms · & conquirid his landis,
I leue it to 3our ladyschip · þis lange no3t vnknaweñ.
With Porrus in þe playñ fild · proued haue my strenthis, 3716
And oþire fele, þat ware to faynt · oure force to withstand.
Therefore pay me tribute." For-þi 3our landis, if 3ow list · to leuire fra oure handis,
Tas tite vn-to 3our tresory · & trebute vs pays." 3719
Þañ writis agayne þe wale quene · & oñ þis wyse spekis :
The queen replies: "I, Calistride, þe conquirese · þat kepis all þis endis,
With þe mery mai[d]ons[2] of Amazoyne · þe mi3tist in erthe, 3722
[Fol. 64.] And othire birdis eblandi · þe biggist in erthe,
To þe modi kyng of Messedone · message of blisse.
3oure saule sa full of sapient · sedis & floures,
"Thou knowest the future. Þat all þe present is apert · puttis þou in mynde, 3726
And has of cases þat ere to come · a knawlage in dole.
For-þi oure soile or þou seke · vmse þe be tyme,

[1] MS. h we. [2] MS. maīos.

Quat tene & torfare may tide · & tent to þine ende.
All that war with us are disgraced. Þare werraid neuir with vs na wee · þat wirschiþ achewid, 3730
Þat he ne was heried in hast · or had a he3e schame.
For ilka lered man of lyue · him so lethir haldis,
If he þat for distruccion doun · in-to þe depe fallis.
Bot oure werkis & of oure wonynge-stede · if 3e wald knawe, 3734
I sal declare 3ow þe cas · clene by þire writtis.
We live in an island, Oure inhabetting, ser, is in añ Ilee · & amed as a sercle,
With rynand all aboute oure erdi · añ endles wattre.
24,000 of us at least. And we ere of females at þe fewis · foure & xx Mille,[1] ti
And twa hundreth þar-to · & all of tried ladis. 3739
There is a secret bridge. A preue planke is at a place · to pas & to entre,
Oure bernes bildis no3t vs by · bot ouir þe bourne wyndis.
Bot 3et be-3onde ilka 3ere · make we vs festis, 3742
And thretti dais all be-dene · oure delitis hauntis.
If any of us have a son, he is sent to his father when 7 years old; but we keep the girls. If any consaue þar a knaf · þan kepis him his modire
Vij 3ere with-in oure-selfe · & sendis him his fadir.
And be scho lyuir of a lasse · scho lengis in oure bur3e,
And is oure thewis of oure thede · thryfandly enfourmed. 3747
Quen we to fe3t with oure faes · fares out of wanes,
We can raise an army of 100,000. A hundreth thousand I hope we be · oñ horses enarmed,
þa leues in oure lede · oure lithis to defend. 3750
Quen we repaire with þe palme · þan prayses vs oure feris.
And, buske 3e to oure bondsward · vs bataiH to 3eld,
[Fol. 64 b.] 3et sall we maynly oñ þe marche · mete 3ow in[2] armes.
To lithe vs aH if þou limpes · na louyng þou gettis,
If you beat us, For þou wynnes no3t bot wemen · þare-of na worde rysis.
you will win no glory; and otherwise, you are disgraced." Bot & godi graunt vs þe gree · grete glorie haue we þañ,
For þe athelist emperoure we wañ · euen at oure wiH.
Be no3t to sturten with þi sturte · to stryue vs a-gayñ,
For many leres may þe limpe · slik as þou no3t wenes !"

[1] I. e. thousand. [2] *In the margin.*

Alexander laughs, and writes back.

Quen he had lokid ou*ir* þe lyne · he laȝes at hir*e* wordis,
And to þ*at* lady belyme[1] · þis l*ett*re he writ*is*. 3761
¶ "I, Alex*ander*, þ*at* am aire · of Amoñ him-selfe,
To þe maistres out of Amazoyne · many-fald ioyes!
Thre p*ar*tys of þe proud werde · I playnly haue woñ,
Affrike & Asye · and Euroṕ þ*at* othir*e*. 3765

"No man can withstand us.

ȝit was neuir*e* man a-poñ mold · our*e* miȝt*is* to w*ith*-stand,
And feȝt w*ith* vs in[2] þe filde; · ȝow fallis þe same.
Bot be-cause we lufe ȝ*our* comyng · we consall ȝow blyth̄
To pas out w*ith* ȝ*our* p*ar*amours · & pere vs be-forne.

But if you will come to me, I grant a safe conduct."

On Amoñ our*e* athill sire · an athe I ȝow make, 3770
Of vs to suffir*e* na sare · to sauely to wende,
Bathe our*e* gold ȝow to gefe · & of our*e* gud kniȝt*is*,
To mary to ȝour*e* maidens · & make þam a-vaunced."
Sone as þai wist of his wiH · þai wiȝtly him sente 3774
Ten vncorsayd colt*is* · þe clennest of þe werd,
And as mony to amend · of milk-quyte stedis,

They send him presents.

Of mony & of mekill quat · mayñ giftis. 3777
Dame Calistride þe conquiris · comes w*ith* hir*e* ladis,
Mas hir*e* pes w*ith* our*e* prince · & pas to hir*e* land*is*.

¶ Decimus septimus passus Alex*andri*.

[Fol. 65.] News comes that Porus has raised another army.

Þen come a sande to þis sir*e* · in þe same tyme,
þ*at* kyng porr*us* þe proud · w*ith* pers out of ynde
Was in þe bonds of Bat*ri*ane · & eft[3] had assemblid
Anoþir*e* ost of odmen · him eft oñ to ride. 3783
As hastely as he it herd · his ost*is* he flitt*is*,
And athils harnest oñ hors · a hundreth & fyfti
Was chosene[4] to chiftans · & all of chefe[5] dukes,
Ordand of our*e* emp*er*oure · his ostis to lede. 3787

Alexander goes to meet him.

þus pas he furthe w*ith* his princes · s*er* Porr*us* to mete,
In August eft*ir* Iul*i* · as þe boke tellis.

[1] *Read* belyue. [2] *In the margin.* [3] MS. oft *or* ost. [4] MS. chosens. [5] MS. chede, *altered to* chefe.

Some of his men die of heat.

AH ware þai swollen of þe swete · & sweltid oñ þe soñ;
Sum in þaire harnais for hete · was honest for euire.
þai went be waldis & be wast*is* · þ*ar* wat*ir*s ware nane,

They meet with snakes.

And armed bud þam̄ aH bee · for angwischis o bestis,
As colwers & for coltris · & crabbid snakis, 3794
And oþire warlaȝes wild · þ*at* in þe wod duelled.
As ai stremand sternes · stared all þaire wedis,
Of gai glit*ir*and gold · glesenyd þaire schildis.

They have no water.

þai droȝe furth be dissert · & drinkles þai spiH, 3798
Was nouthire wald*is* in þ*ar* walke · ne wat*ir* to fynde.

A knight brings water to Alexander.

A kniȝt þ*at* zephall was callid · fand in a cole schade
A litiH drysnyng[1] of dewe · was droppid fra þe heu*en*,
þ*at* it was in a holoȝe stane · & in his helme fillis,
And bring*is* it to our*e* bald kyng · to brigge w*ith* his het*is*.
þan Alex*ander* to þis athill · all þus he spekis, 3804

Alexander refuses to drink,

"þis solayne sope if I supṕ · quethir*e* sustene it may
þe menbris of þe Messedones · & of þe many P*er*sens,
Or I my-selfe sall be s*er*ued · & þai sitt w*ith* nyfils?"
"Sir*e*, ȝe sall first be refreschid" · faythly he sayd.
"Quat? & ȝe p*er*isch̄?" q*uod* þe prince · "& pas out o lyue? 3809

[Fol. 65 *b*.]

Queþ*ir* euir me list þan to lefe · w*ith* langȝ*our* & sorowe?"

and pours it out on the ground.

And hilds it doun out of þe helme · befor his athils aH.
þañ slike a comfurth þam enclosed · for his kynd word*is*,
As aH þe wat*ir* of þe werd · ware in þaire wambs hellid.

They come to streams full of reeds.

þan ferd þai furth tiH a fflode · & findis aH þe strand*is*
FuH of Redis, as I rede · rugh̄ere þan thornes. 3815
His folke feH to it fast · & freschely þai drynke,
Bot was na[1] renke at to it rañ · at euire rase eftire.
It was so keruand & kene! · þan was his kniȝt*is* stroubid
Mare for þe bale of þaire best*is* · &[2] brist of þaim-selfe.

The elephants and camels lack water.

For w*ith* his florant*is* olifants · him folowed a thousand,
Of sithid chariot*is* & soo · & sextene hundreth, 3821
W*ith* coȝrres[3] & w*ith* clene floure · camels and mules,
And out of nounbre of nowte · at nedid to his ost*is*,

[1] MS. r na. [2] *Put for* than. [3] *Sic.*

Thre C *Mille*[1] in thede · of thra meñ of armes.
All are in great distress. Be now þai ware so neȝe tane · þat þai for nede supposid,
Sum of his aweñ vryñ · & sum oñ Ireñ lickid,
þat it was sorowe any segge · þe siȝt to be-hald!
þan aires him on ser Alexander · with angwischis & payne,
Ay foloȝe furth by þe flumme · at I first tald,
And at þe aȝtand houre · I ame, of þe day,
They come to a castle in a river. þan comes þaim to a castell · was closid in þe borne.
It was a mervalous mote · made aH of redis,
And foure forlange, I finde · þe flode was o brede.
A fewe within þe forslet · of folke þare a-perid,
Waiteand out at wyndows · to wondire on his ostis.
The men in it will not speak. Sire Alexander bad his men · aske þaim of ynde,
And frayne quare þai find miȝt · any freschꝫ watir;
[Fol. 66.] And þai þañ hent in þaire hedis · & hidd þam belyue.
And he felly with flane · flingis at þe wallis,
ȝit for na speH at he spirid · spek wald þai neuire.
And þan comandis he his kniȝt[is] · kenely to swymme,
Thirty-seven knights begin to swim, And þai aH bare, saue þe breke · with brandis iñ hand,
þan thringis in on a throw · thretty & seuyn.
Als fast as þai þe forthing-dole · had of þe flode past,
þan girds þare vp fra þe ground · & grymly þaim woundis
but are drowned by seals. Of Seeles & of see-Bules · a swyth grete nounbre,
Droȝe þaṁ doun in-to þe depe · & drouned þaṁ for euire.
þañ ȝede he þine with his erles[2] · & egirly him thristis;
Lebards lendis þaim agaynes · leons & beres;
The army is attacked by dragons and tigers. Dragons & dromondaris · & of þir derfe Tigirs
Fra morne to þe mirke niȝt · þaim maynly assailed.
þus raȝt he fra þis reuir · be many ruȝe waies
To it was meten to þe mere · to myd-ouir-vndorne.
þan come he streke oñ a staunke · þe store me tellis,
They find a pool of sweet water. Was neuir na hony in na hyue · vndire heuen swettir.
A foure furelange or fyue · it was of fuH brede,
Umby-thorned[3] with a thike wod · thre mile a-boute,

[1] I.e. Three hundred thousand.
[2] MS. el erles, *but corrected.* [3] MS. Umby-thonred.

Was aH of þe Rede ryse · as I redd first;
And þat he cuttis doun clene · & kindils in fyris.
They pitch their tents. He gert tild vp his tentis · be þat terne syde,
þoȝt þare a longe quile to lie · & lachen his esee.
þe mone ouir þe montayns · meryly it schynes
Or he miȝt drinke any drope · & þen his dole neȝes.
þan comes þare-out creuesses · of manykins hewis,
Scorpions and snakes appear, Scorpions þaim to scere · & scalid neddirs,
And þai so large & so laith · & so lowd schrikis,
[Fol. 66 *b*.] þat all þe soile of þa sidis · of þe sound ryngis.
and crested dragons Dragons dryfes doun o driȝt · fra þe derfe hillis,
With kene carefuH crie · and crestis on þaire hedis,
Grisely gapand & griṁ · with gilden brestis,
with flaming eyes. And flawmes feruent as fyre · floȝe fra þaire eȝen;
þai drewe toward oure douth · with dedly blastis.
Alexander comforts his men. Sir Alexander & his ost · was arȝed vnfaire,
Was þare na freke in þe fild · þat faithly he leued
To be deuowrid & devoidid · & vencuste for euire.
þe kyng þan comfurthid his kniȝtis · all if he care þoled:
"Mi bald baratours," he badꝫ · "a-baste noȝt ȝoure hertis;
Seis ensampill at my-selfe · & seke ȝe na ferre,[1]
Bot hedis haly to my hand · & harmes þar-eftire."
He seizes a sword and shield, A brand & a briȝt schild · bremely he hentis,
Feȝtis freschely & fast · with þa feH bestis,
Dasches dragons doun · geuys þaim depe woundis,
and slays hundreds of serpents. Slaes of þa serpentis · many sadd hundretꝫ.
þan bildid of his bachelers · & braidis to þaire wapeñ;
If þai ware mased & amayd · maynely þaim feȝt.
Twenty of his best knights perish. ȝit was þar twenti þat time · tangid to dede,
And þat þe comliest kniȝtis · at þe kyng ledis;
Of athiH archars als · as þe buke tellis,
A-boute a thretty in þat thede · tharned þaire lyfes.
þus many deid of his douth · as þe boke[2] tellis,
And him limpis all þe loose · be þe lattire end.
Great crabs appear. Now comes a company of Crabbe-fische · as calues gret,

[1] MS. ferrre. [2] MS. beke.

Meuand of þis marras · oure men to assaiH,
With backis, as þe buke sais · biggir & hardere
[Fol. 67.] þan ony comon cogiH-stane · or cocatryse scales.
No lances could pierce them. Queñ kniȝtis of oure conquirours · kest at þam lances,
Was nane so wele-stelid poynt · at þañ perse miȝte.
Bot gomes with þaire greues in twa · in þe gledis spurned,
And aH at left ware o lyue · in-to þe[1] loȝe entirs.
Be þai had fyneschid þis fiȝt · was ferre in with euyñ,
Foure houres full farne · & þe fifte[2] neghes.
Lions next appear; And leons quyte as lylly · lent þañ agayñ,
Of bodis biggire þan bules · berand vnfaire.
Oure kniȝtis at þe first come[3] · clenly þaim sloȝe,
Alto-bretind þaim oñ bent · & broȝt þaim oñ fliȝt.
and then wild boars, Wild berys in[4] þe wast · fra þe wodd comes,
With ilka tenefull tothe · as tyndis of[5] harowis,
A cubete lenth, sais þe clause · cald was þe lest.
Þai seke out be sundres · sexti to-gedire,
together with savages having six hands each. With wild meñ of þe wast · & women e-bland,
With sex handis, & soo · sett out of kynd.
Þai held in hettirly · & hurtis of his kniȝtis;
And þai with brandis & bowis · bremely þaim woundis,
Sloȝe of þa sauagyus · a sowme out of nombre,
And many scopid into þe scoghe · without scath mare.
Sire Alexander & his ost · angwisch enduris,
Was waik, as na wondre was · & wery for-foȝteñ.
Alexander lights fires all round the pool. And þam he bedis at a braide · to beet vp þe stank,
With-out his ost ouir all · horrible fires.
A black-headed beast appears, Þan come a beste of a busche · with a blak heued,
Mad & merkid as a Meere · þe mast of þe werd,
Fere fersere þan an olifant · as we find writteñ,
[Fol. 67 b.] Stayrand on to þe staunke[6] · þe stour to asaiH.
Þis breme best bare · as[7] þe buke tellis,
Before forne in þe fronte · thre fell tyndis,

[1] MS. to, *with* in *and* þe *in the margin.*
[2] MS. fiȝte, *altered to* fifte. [3] Ms. cl come.
[4] *In the margin.* [5] MS. l of.
[6] *Here follows* to þe stank, *struck out.* [7] MS. as as.

Hedous horns & hoge · & hiȝt in þaire tonge
having three horns. Adanttrocay with aH meñ · as I am enfourmed.[1]
Before scho drank of þis dam · his douth sho assaild,
And oure kyng with his carpe · his kniȝtis he gladis.
The beast slays 28 men. Aȝt & tuenti meñ of armes · onone scho delyuird,
Bernes was diȝt þe deth · with dintis enoghe.
Then appear mice as large as foxes; Þan mys out of þis marras · as any mayñ foxes[2]
Come furth, & fedd þaim in-fere · of þe ded corses.
AH at was bitten of þa best · was at a brunt dede,
Bot ȝit þai noyed bot a nykid · to nane þat was ermed.
also bats as large as doves, Þan floȝe þar by þe firmament · of þa foule Backes,
Als store & as stalword · as þire sediH dowis
With mekiH maȝten teeth · as it of meñ ware;
And at vn-armed[3] was · þai asperly wondid,
Of sum þai nyppid fra þe nebb · þe nose be þe eȝen,
who bit the soldiers. Of sum þai ete of þaire eris · euen by þe rotis,
Sum þai luggid of þe lippis · þe lire fra þe chekis,
Bot þar bitis, as þe buke sais · blemest na kniȝtis.
Next come birds of a red colour, Þan come a fliȝtir in of fowls · as fast as it dawid,
To vise on as vowtres · as vermeoñ hewid,
Þaire boukis & þar bathire fete · was of blak sable,
but they only devour fishes. And did bot plaid by þe pepiH · & fed þaim on fyschis.
Queñ he had voidid þis vermyñ · & vencust þat of ynde,
Alexander comes to Bactria. Out of þis peralous[4] place · he past with his ost
[Fol. 68.] In-to the boundis of Bactry · þar bildid he his tentis.
Þare reches was of redde gold · & many riche gemes;
And clene all þat contre · qwen þai his come wist,
Þai mett him full manerly · & mekely resayued
With presentes of pirre · & many proude giftes,
And thretti dayis in þat thede · he tholes & abidis.
They meet with the Seres, whose trees have leaves bearing wool (silk). A sertane folke was in þat soile · þat Serres ere callid,
And all þe lyndis in þat land · with leves[5] as wolle.
And so þire Serres, at I said · þaim in þe Somere gedirs,
And makis þaim wedis þar-of · to were for wintris blastis.

[1] MS. in enfourmed. [2] MS. faxes. [3] vn *in the margin.*
[4] *Sic; read* peralous. [5] MS. levys, *altered to* leves.

Þire baratours bawers · ere bremly reioyed
Of þe conquest of þire cocatrices · & of þa kene bestis;
And now he caire[s] fra þat kithe · & comes in a stounde
They find Porus. Quare Porrus with his powere · oñ a playñ lengis.
Sire Alexander & his ost · caires[1] þaim a-gayne[2]
With brade[3] baners & briȝt · & bragging of troumpis.
Apon þe bald bocifaloñ · before his meñ aH
He flingis out a forelange · his feris to assaile.
They attack his Indians. Þe Persens putt þaim in pres · & þe proude grekis;
Þe Medis & þe Messedons · maynely þai feȝt,
Þai swey doun as swiftly · þa swart men of ynde,
As euire did corne in a croft · be-fore a kene sithe.
Sir Porus challenges Alexander to single combat. Quen sir Porrus saȝe his princes · in þe prese faile,
Þan aires he out be-for his ost · oñ Alexander callis:
"It comes," he said, "to na kyngⁱ · ne kidd emperoure
To latt his pepill þus pas · & perischñ in ydiH;
It fallis mare faire him þe fiȝt · to fynischñ him-selfe.
Forþi lat stediH aH oure stoure · & stedd þaṁ esoundire,
Þi semble o þe taa syde · & myne oñ þe tothire;
[Fol. 68 b.] Lat vs twa termyn þe taite · be-twene vs alane.
If I be vencust in þe vaile · & voidid of my lyfe,
Lat aH my seggis & soile · be to þi-selfe ȝoldeñ;
And if þou failis in þe fild · & I þe floure wynñ,
Latt þañ þine erlis & þine erd · myne empire obeyi."
Alexander was but a small man, Thus porrus in his hiȝe pride · to oure kyngⁱ spekis,
For he was litiH & laghe · him laythly dispices.
For queñ he wañ to wax · þe writt me recordis,
only three cubits high. Porus was at least six cubits in height. Thre cubettis fra þe croune doun · his cors had a lenghte.
Þe personñ of ser Porrus · past him þat hiȝt twyse,
He feetis him forth in his force · & in his faire hiȝte.
Bot þe prowis & þe prouidens · & of þe pure thewis
Þat lurkis with-in þis lede · full litiH he kennes.
Now is þe partise in pes · & þai þe place dele;
Aithire kyngⁱ with his cause · encontres oñ othire.

[1] MS. a cayres. [2] MS. a gyñ gayne; *corrected.*
[3] MS. brade brade; *corrected.*

Porus strikes Alexander's helmet severely. Sire Porrus with a proude swerd · him oñ þe pañ strikis
So snelle at he snatirs with · nere snaypid him for euire.
Þan kastis vp a kene crie · þe kniȝtis out of ynde,
For he was dased of þe dint · & half dede him semyd.
Porrus, as a prince suld · persayued þar latis,
Turnes him toward his tulkis · & titely rehetis.
Alexander slays Porus. Sire Alexander him avises · & his aande takis,
As bald barratour & breme · his brand vp he liftis,
With bathe his handis in-to þe brayne · his basenet he cleuys,
And he fallis doun fey · & fynes in þat stound.
The Indians continue to fight. Þe pepill of ser Porrus · quen þai [him] pas saȝe,
With aH manere of men · maynly þai fiȝt.
"A! wriches!" quod þe wale kyng · & wisely he spekis,
Alexander reproves them; "Eftir þe deth of ȝour duke · quat deynes ȝowe to stryue?
Wete ȝe wele," quod þe wee · "be werrayours laȝes,
[Fol. 69.] Þat queñ þe gouernoure is gane · þañ is þe gomes wastid."
"Sire, it is better for to bate · & oñ þe bent faile,
Þan se þis rewthe oñ ȝour[1] renkis · & reft be ȝour[1] gudis."
but grants them their liberty for their bravery. "Sirs, blynes of ȝour bataile · & bowes to ȝoure landis;
ȝoure fermes & ȝoure fraunches · I frely ȝow grant;
For ȝe haue cockid for ȝour kyng · ȝe sall no care suffire!"
And þan callid him oñ knese · & kest doun þaire armes.
Þai come to þis conquirour · comendⁱ him as driȝtin,
Þan sett he sales vp of[2] silke · & sacrifece makis.
Porus is buried. Sire Porrus, as him wele feH · he proudely enteris,
And aH þe fey iñ þe fildⁱ · & here a fitt ende.

Decimus octauus passus Alexandri.

Alexander comes to the isle of Gymnosophists. Þan aires he furthñ with his erlis · & entris añ Ile,
Quare þir Exidraces as Ermets · inhabet in caues,
A progenie of pore meñ · þat neuir pride hauntis,
And ȝit þe gentill genosophis · þaṁ in þe gest callis.
Is þare na bost þaim ebland · ne batailles vsyd,

[1] *Read* our. [2] *In the margin.*

Nouthire cites in to sytt · cellis, nor na tounes,
They live in caves, and go naked.
Bot crepis in-to creuesse · & craggis oñ hillis,
And ay is naked [as] a nediH · as nato*ur* þam̃ schapis.
Þe kyng of þ*at* contre · quen he þe come heres
Of þis prince & his parray · þis pistiH he him sendis.
They write to Alexander.
" We, corruptible creatours · & cald as be-fore,
To þe mode mañ of Messedone · aH þus-gate I write.
Sire, it is sayd to oure-selfe · w*ith* sere mens tongis,
How þou comes in-to oure kith-ward · to cu*m*bre vs w*ith* care,
[Fol. 69 *b*.]
And þ*at* Vs wondres, I-wis · for wyñ may ȝe nouthire[1]
Nouthire gold ne na gude · at eu*er* gode fo*ur*med.[2]
"We have no gems or jewels.
Sen at we Ioy nouthire ge*m*mes · ne Iuwels in cofirs,
Pelo*ur*, pirre, ne p*er*le · ne na proude wedis,
Ne sauand bot to sustene w*ith* · oure aweñ sary craftis,
What can ye win from us?"
Quat in þis time may ȝe take · if ȝe oure t*er*mes entre?
If ȝe wiH seke in-to oure soile · & sett vs agayne,
Oure simpilnes & oure sobirte · forsake saH we neuire."
Quen he had lokid ouire þe lefe · a l*ett*re he in-dities,
Alexander finds them living miserably in caves,
þ*at* he ap*r*oched aH w*ith* pes · & in na plite ellis.
Quen he was entrid þ*ar* erde · & sees þai*m* all nakid,
And woñ as it ware wildirnes · in wast*is* & greues,
Darke in dennes vndire dounes · & in derne holis,
And bath þ*ar* brid*is* & þ*ar* barnes · w*ith* bestes oñ þe fellis,[3]
and asks if they have no houses.
þan Alex*ander* at þam̃ askis · & all him a-wondres :
" Haue ȝe na houses ne na hames · ne holis in to bery?"
And þ*ar* þai schewid him in schurrys · to schellis & to caues,
Said, " here we ilka day dueH · deuyse how ȝow lik*is*."
He is sorry for their poverty,
Quen he þaire simpilnes sees · he soroȝes in his hert,
Pleynes of þaire pou*er*te · & p*r*ofurs þai*m* fuH faire,
and offers them whatever they like to ask.
" Quat euire ȝe wiH in all þe werd · or I wend, askis,
And I sall gladly ȝow geue · w*ith* a gud wiH."

[1] *Read* neuir? [2] MS. fo*ur*mned.
[3] MS. fild fellis; *corrected*.

" Sire, neuire to dee," q*uod* þai þañ · " bot euire dure o lyue,
They ask for immortality,
þ*at* we desire ȝow bedene · & þan do vs na mare."
" Be driȝtin, sirs, I am a duke · dedelike my-selfe,
which he cannot give.
Forþi vnde[d]lynes to dele · I dowe be na ways."
" Now señ it worthis," q*uod* þa wees · " wriche, for to die,
Quarto hiȝis þou fra half to halfe · & all þis harme wirk*is*?"
" Sire, be my croune," q*uod* þe kyng · " þe cause at I haue
[Fol. 70.]
Is purly gods p*r*ouidens · predestayned it is before.
Alexander says, "The sea is raised by winds;
ȝe se, wele seldom̃ is þe see · w*ith* him-selfe turbild
Bot w*ith* þ*ir* walowand windis; · my wiH ware to rifte,
so is my spirit stirred by a higher spirit."
Bot a-noþ*ir* gast, & noȝt my gast · þ*ar*-of my gast lett*is*;"
And wendis a-way w*ith* þ*at* word · & wemles þai*m* leuys.
He finds statues set up by Hercules.
þe secund day w*ith* vp soñ · he w*ith* his sowme neȝes,
Quare þire Imagis ere þ*at* Arculious · had i*n* añ Ile rerid.
þe tane was aH athiH gold · of silu*ir* þe tothire,
Twelfe cubett*is* fra þe topp̄ dou*n* · & twa was þe brede.
He made his pepiH þai*m* to p*er*se · to proue þam̃ w*ith*-in,
Quethire þai ware hologhe or hale · & hale he þam̃ fyndis,
Saȝe þai*m* thike þurȝe-out · & aithire thriH stoppis,
And fillis þam̃ florent*is* · a fyftene hundreth̄.
He comes to a dark desert.
þañ drafe he þine w*ith* his dukis · in a deyne entris,
A wilsom̃ wast & wild · & wondirly colde,
As mirke as any mydniȝt · queñ þe mone failes,
þ*at* vnnethes ken may a kniȝt · to se to his fere.
Fifty days be desert · he foundis w*ith* his folke,
He next finds a hot river,
TiH he come blesenand oñ a brym · was welland hate,
And oñ þe ferre halfe of þe bo*ur*ne · was wemen oñ hors,
and finds there armed women.
þ*at* frely faire ware of face · bot foule ware clethid.
Sum beris all of brent gold · brandis in þaire handis,
Sum bataiH-axes & w*ith* bowes · aH of briȝt silu*ir*,
For brase is nane w*ith* þa bonds · ne no bige Ireñ;
Ne neuire na berne þam̃ ebland · as þe buke tellis.

He cannot cross the river for the dragons.

Þañ wald his[1] pepiH & his princes · haue past ouir Þe bourne,
And miȝt noȝt for Þe morsure · & maynyng of bestis,
[Fol. 70 b.] It was so borely & brade · & bred full of ydres,
Of dragons & of othire deuyls · & doukand neddirs.
Þan caires furth oure conquirour · with his kid ostis,
Lede Þam be Þe left side · of Þe lande of ynde,
He comes to a dried lake. Sone was he dreuyn with his dukis · in-to a dryi meere,
Was full of gladen & of gale · & of grete redis.
Þan snyȝes Þar, out of[2] Þat snyth hiH · as with a snayles pas,
He finds a monstrous animal, A burly best with a bake · as bedeH as a saȝe,
Kene tethe as a knyfe · a cowdrife breste,
Of sembalaunce as a see-bule · & sloȝe him twa kniȝtis.
Wald Þar na brande in him bite · ne no bigge launce,
which his knights kill. Bot alto-maukid hire with maces · & mellis of Ireñ.
A twenti dais ouire ten · with torfare Þai ride ;
To Þe formast forest of ynde · oure folke[3] all aprochid.
Euyñ at Þe flode of Eumare · oure emperoure logis,
And at Þe xj houre · I ame, as it ware,
A great number of elephants attack them. Of Olifants out of Þe ways · añ endles nounbre
Come with a carefuH crie · oure kniȝtis to assaiH.
A-poñ Þe bald Bucifaloñ · he bremely ascendis,
Bedis of his swiers ga swyth · & swyne with Þaim take.
Þai ware a-baiste all belyue · as Þe buke tellis,
Þat durst na berne oñ Þe bent · a-bide bot him-selfe.
Alexander comforts his men. "Be noȝt a-baist, my bachelars" · Þe bald kyng sayd,
"For with Þe sweling of Þe swyne · we saH Þaim aH voide."
And so Þai did al bedene · & sum oure douth sloȝe,
Tuke out Þe tuskis & Þe tethe · & ternen of Þe skinnes.
Þat oÞer dai be desert · Þam destaned to ride,
Be Þe wild ynde woddis · & wemeñ Þai faund
[Fol. 71.] With bare hedes as a barne · & berdis to Þe pappis,

[1] MS. *repeats* his. [2] MS. if, *altered to* of.
[3] *In the margin.*

And had na hattir Þam to hele · bot hidis of bestis. They next find bearded women,
His seggis sesid of Þam sum · & to him-selfe broȝt,
And he Þañ askid Þam of ynde · & at Þam enquires,
Quat was Þaire viaunce in Þa vales · "ser, venysoñ," Þai said, who live by hunting.
"Slike as we haunt in Þar holis · with hunting in tymes."
Þen ferd Þai furth all in fere · & to fild comys,
Euyñ to Þe heued of Eumaure · as I first rekend.
They find naked people, Þare fand Þai bernys & bridis · & aH bale-nakid,
At was resild as a reschi · & roghe as a[1] bere.
ȝit was Þe custom of Þar kinde · as Þe clause tellis,
who are amphibious. Als wele to bide in Þe bourne · as oñ Þe brade lande.
Onone as Þai oñ Alexander · & oñ his ost waites,
Þai flee as fast in-to flode · & to Þe founce plangid.
Þan ferd Þai furthe be Þe frithis · fiftene dais.
They come to a wood of rhinoceroses. And sa Þai willid in-to a wod · was fuH [of] wild bestis,
Rynoceros, as I rede · Þe romance Þam callis ;
And Þai assembild oñ oure seggis · bot Þai ware sone drepid.
Þañ sexti days with his seggis · he soȝt be disert,
Next, to a vast plain. Till he was woñ in-to a werd · aH of wast fildis,
Quare nouthire holtis was ne hilles · ne no hiȝe [h]eggis,
Bot aH as planir & as playñ · as a playñ table.
Eueñ at Þe elleuynt houre · or euynsange tyme,
A great storm arises. Quen he had tild vp his tentis · turbils Þe welkeñ ;
Þe semblant sorowis of Þe soile · & Þe soñ wadis,
Þe werd wannes at a waþ · & Þe wedire gloumes.
Four winds blow at once, Þan feH a fliȝt & a fire · betwene Þe foure wyndis,
Aquiloun & Affrike · & ewrus Þe thrid,
[Fol. 71 b.] Vulturnus Þe violent · Þat voidis doun Þe leuys,
Þe south & of aH sydis · sadly Þai mete,
A breme blast[2] oñ Þe bent · as Þe buke tellis,
which destroy their tents. Þat aH Þaire tents it to-terid · & turned doun Þe hallis ;
Þar pauylyoñs of pirre · Þaire payntid clathis

[1] MS. *inserts* abr, *struck through*. [2] MS. A breme a blast.

It alto-schatird, & to-scailed · þaṁ in sondire.
The army is disheartened. — Þaṁ was kniȝtis of þe case · kenely affraid,
And ilka segge be him-selfe · said[1] vn-to othire, 4152
" Þe writhe of þe wale god · I wate, oñ vs liȝtis,
For oure founding ouire his forbod · so ferre to þe est."
Þan comforthis þaim þe conquirour · & carpis oñ þis wyse,
Bad, " baise ȝow noȝt, my baratours · ne batis noȝt ȝour hertis, 4156
Alexander tells them it is only the equinoctial gale. — It is na greme of oure gode · ne grefe at vs fallis,
Bot þe entring of þe equinox · it euire elike-dele kyndils."
Sone as þe wedire wex wele · & þe wynde pesid,
As, be þe bale neuir so breme · it blynnes at þe last,
Þan ferd þai forth fra fild to fild · & freschly assemblis
All at was sperpolid on þe spene · & spilt with þe blastis.
¶ Þan fandis he furth, as I fynd · fyue & twenti days,
They next come to a cold valley, where snow falls. — Come to a velans vale · þare was a vile cheele, 4164
Quare flaggis of þe feH snawe · feH fra þe heuen,
Þat was a-brade, sais þe buke · as battis ere of woH.
Þan bett he many briȝt fire · & lest it blin nold,
And made his folk with þaire feete · as flores it to trede;
They light large fires. — Þe hete was þaṁ a hoge helpe · & hettirly it voidis,
And ȝit was perischist, or he past · a part of his kniȝtis.
[Fol. 72.]
A thick cloud surrounds them. — Þaṁ vmby-clappis þaim a cloude · & couirs aH ouire,
As any pynaund pik · þe planetis it hidis, 4172
And þat so thestir & so thik · a thre dais eftir,
Þai saȝe na leme of þe lyft · ne liȝt of þe soñ.
Sparks of fire fall like rain, — Þan feH þar fra þe firmament · as it ware feH sparkis,
Ropand doun o rede fire · þaṁ any rayñ thikire; 4176
Þaire cabons & þar couertours · it kindils oñ a lowe,
And aH þar pauillions of pall · it to poudire wastis.
which burn up trappings and banners. — It tinds on tend lowe · trappour of stede,
And many costious costis · consumes in-to askis, 4180
Bages & baners · it blemyschid & swellis,
And quare it neȝes oñ þe nakid · it noyis for euire.

[1] *In the margin.*

Alexander prays, — Þan knelis doun oure conquirour · & callis oñ his driȝtins,
Giffe þaṁ siluir & so · & [1]sens at þaim castis. 4184
Vnneth his [2] prayer was past · quen purid aH þe cloudis,
and the storm ceases. — And stint was all þe stikiH stormes · in a stand-quile.
Þen rade he in aray · remowis his ostis,
Alex. and Dind., p. 6. — To þe grete flode of Gangem · & graythid þar his tents.
They come to the Ganges. — His bernes blischis ouir þe bourne · & oñ þe banke saȝe
Alex. and Dind., p. 7. — Quare thre wees in a wraa · welk þaim allane. 4190
Three men appear, — Sire Alexander bad añ athil · aske þeṁ of ynde,
Quase þai ware, quethin þai were · & of quat kind.
And þai him swiftly swarid · with a swete steuyñ,
who say they are Brahmans. — "We ere bald Bragmenys · þat neuir bale thoȝt."
Þan list þe lord oñ his lyfe · haue with þat ledis spoken,
Miȝt he haue woñ ouir þe watir · for wounding of bestis,
As see-bule & serpentis · & soukand locerhes, 4197 [Fol. 72 b.]
Bathe eddirs & ascres · & atterand wormes.
The river is full of crocodiles, scorpions, and snakes, except in — Þire Cocatricesse in creuessis · þar kindiles þai brede,
Scorpions many[3] score · scautand neddirs; 4200
July and August. — And all-way bot in angwischñ[4] · as þe buk sais,
And saue þe Iolite of Iuly · þai Iowke in þa strandis.
Alexander has a boat made, and — Queñ he[3] persayued be na poynt · at he pas miȝt,
Þan was he sary in þat sithe · & sadly he pleyned,
Callid to his carpentars · & of his kid wriȝtis, 4205
Bad make him boun at a braide · a barge aH of redis.
Quen it was done at his diuyse · & draȝen ouer with hidis,
Alex. and Dind., p. 8. — Pared & parreld at his pay · pickid & taloghid, 4208
sends a letter across. — Þañ bowes þarin a bachelere · to bragmeyn he wendis,
To þe souereayñ sire of þe soile · & sesid him þis pistiH.
"Alexander, son of Ammon, greets king Dindimus. — ¶ "I, þat kyng am of kyngis · & crouned of lordis,
Alexander þe aire · of Amone oure driȝtin, 4212
And of þe quene Olimpades · þat I am of sprongeñ,
To þe, ser Dindyñ, oñ þi dese · dities of Ioye.
Sen we chapid out of childhede · & cheued to eldire,

[1] *Above the line.*
[2] MS. Vnneth is his; *with* is *underlined, and* his *above the line.*
[3] *In the margin.*
[4] *Read* august.

Alex. and Dind., p. 9.

Þat we cuthe any-gates gesse · betwyx gud & iH,
Syne was oure wiH ay *with* witt · to warisch oure saule,
And kest out all vnclennes · & clene it deuoidid ;
For þe philisophour in his fourme · vs feetly declares,
Þat saȝe *with*-outen sapience · it seldoum aproues.
And it is wayued vs to wete · & warned now late,
Þat aH oure leuyng & oure laȝes · ȝe wetirly dispice,

[Fol. 73.] You differ from us greatly.

And ȝour manars fra all othire mens · so mekiH ere deffirrid,
Þat nouthire in see ne in soile · seke ȝe na helpe.

It cannot harm you to impart knowledge about yourselves.

Bott deyned it ȝour doctryne · bedene vs to write,
ȝoure customes & ȝoure conscience · & of ȝour clene thewis,
We miȝt sum connynge per cas · chach of ȝoure words,

Alex. and Dind., p. 10.

And ȝour lare of a leke · suld neuire þe les worth.
Slike similitude of science · is sett, as of kynde,

Take the case of a bright candle; its light is not lessened, though it lights others."

As of a blesand brand · or of a briȝt candiH.
For many liȝtis of a liȝt · is liȝtid othire-quile,
And ȝit þe liȝt at þam liȝtis · is liȝtid as before."
Quen he had waytid ouer þis writtis · his mynd he remembris,

Dindimus sends an answer. "Dindimus to Alexander."

And be þe same sandisman · him send sike anothire.
¶ "I, ser Dindimus, a duke · þat neuire deere wroȝt,

Alex. and Dind., p. 11.

Blith berne on my benke · þe Bragmeyns maistir,
To þe modi kynge of Messedone · þis maundment I write.

We have discerned your desire.

Sire Alexander, þe athiH · at aH þe werd loutis,
Sire, þe tenour of þi titiH · I trow, be na mare,
Bot anly wisdom & witt · þou willis in þi saule.
And bettir it is to þine a-bofe · þan buschels of siluir,
And mare passand of prisse · þan all þi proude rewmes.
Sen ȝe discrecion disire · we depely ȝow pray ;

No king can dispense with wisdom.

For a kyng *with*-outen cunnyng[1] · he can noȝt distreyne
His subiectis, & to be[2] subi[e]ctis · as subiectis aȝe,
Bot subiectis tiH his subiectis · his subiectis him makis.

[1] MS. cunmynge. [2] *In the margin.*

Þou prayes vs to þi[1] person · a pistiH to[2] write
Of all oure lefyng & oure laȝes · & oure land techis ;
Quare-of þe proces to preue · vnpossible it were,

[Fol. 73 *b*.]

And if we did it to dome · it dose ȝow na gude.
For þi tent is aH on terrandry[3] · & tourment of armes,
In bost & in bobans · in batails & stryuys,

Your customs agree not with ours.

A craft till oure condicions · at a-cordis bot litiH ;
For simpilnes & surquitry · a-sewis noȝt to-gedire.

Alex. and Dind., p. 12. Yet think not I grudge telling you.

Bot leue ȝe noȝt we be to heȝe · ne hauten of wiH
To steryn or to sturtyn · or sterid to enuy ;
A partie of oure propertes · & of oure pure thewis
ȝit sall I send ȝow to say · sen ȝe me soȝt haue.

¶ Decimus Nonus passus Alexandri.

We are lowly Brahmans.

Sire, we þe Bragmeyns blode · birdis & othire,
A lowly lyfe in oure land · we lede, and a clene.
All ydolatris in oure Ile · ere vttirly devoidid,
& to na syn vndire son · a-sent we vs neuire.

We live a simple life.

AH þat ouire mesure is to mekill · emell we declyne,
And nouthire couet we na corne · bot þat vs kind leues,
þat is þe filling[4] of fode · þat ilk flesch askis,
And þar-to suffirand oure-selfe · & sobire as a mayden.
Hald we no hors for na harow · ne na horned stottis,

We plough not. We sow not.

Ne nauthire sondire we þe soile · ne na sede sawis,
Seke we neuire no sustinance · to saue *with* oure lyuys.

We fish not.

Set we na saynes in þe see · ne sese we na fischis,

We hunt not.

Ne nouthire hunt we ne hauke · ne hent we na foules,

[Fol. 74.]

Bot sike as growis on þe gronde · *with*-outen gomes werke.
And þat we fede vs *with* in-fere · & fillis fuH oure tables,

We desire no dainties.

A dayntefull diete · þat damage vs neuire.

[1] *In the margin.* [2] MS. *inserts* pis, *struck through.*
[3] MS. terranrry, *alt. to* terrandry.
[4] MS. filning, *corr. to* filling.

Alex. and Dind., p. 13. We never eat too much,

Haue we no cures of courte · ne na cointe[1] sewes,[2]
Swanes ne na swete thing[1] · to sweH oure wames.
All superfluyte of soule · & surfet vs wlattis,
To pegge vs as a peny hoge · þat praysis noȝt oure laȝes.

and are always in health.

Forþi failis vs all infirmit[e]s · of ffeuyre & of ells,
Ne for na febiH at we fele · na fysyke vs nedis.

We need no medicine.

Vs mistris neuire na medcyne · for malidy oñ erthe,
Bot ay as fresche & as fere · a[s] fischñ quen he plays.
Oure lord has lemett vs elike · þe lenthe of oure days,

We die at a fixed age.

For þar leues na lede in oure lande · langire þan othire.
If he be sexti ȝere of sowme[3] · þat a segge lastis,
His successoure has bot þe same · & þan þe saule ȝeldis.

We use no fire.

We chaufe vs at na Chymmneys · for chelis of wintir,
Ne comes na clathis oñ oure corps · for na cald wyndis.

We flee lusts.

We bede noȝt to blemysch oure blode · with bodely dissires.

Alex. and Dind., p. 14. We slay the foes within us;

Perseuerance of pacience · & pes we reserue;
Oure inward enmys ilkane · we inwardly drepis,
þat is to say, aH þe syñ · at solp may þe saule,
As surfet, surquidry, & slawthñ · þe seuyñ aH bedene;
So þat oure werraours without · vs worthis noȝt at drede.
For wele sonere is a cite · sesid, or a casteH,
þat segid is oñ bath sidis[4] · [than] þat segid[5] is with-out.

thou fightest against outward foes.

And þou wirkis bot oñ þa witerward · & worthis þaim ouire,
And suffirs so within þi flesche · þe faes of þe saule.
And we sitt all-way so sure · be sand & be wattir,

[Fol. 74 b.]

þat na supoweH vndire soñ · seke we vs neuire,
Ne schroude to scheld with oure schap · bot þe schire banes,
And with þe braunches of þe bowis · þat beris vs oure fodis.
Haue we na deliteable drinke · of diuerse wynes,

[1] MS. comite; *but indistinct.*
[2] *The former* e *in* sewes *is above the line.*
[3] *The* me *added above the line.*
[4] MS. sidid, *alt. to* sidis. [5] MS. gegid, *alt. to* segid.

We drink of a well.

Bot watir of a wale weH · or of a wild bourne.
And þat sullepe sire · at sett aH þe werde,
In him we lely[1] beleue · & in na laȝe ellis.

We praise God in all things.

In all oure diȝans oñ daies · þat duke we comendȝ,
Wele wenand in anothire werd · to woñ ay o-lyue.

Alex. and Dind., p. 15.

And quat as pertenys to na profe · vs plese noȝt at lesteñ,
Ne mekills[2] mellis noȝt oure mouth · bot mesure oure words.

We always speak the truth.

Quen as we speke any spech · we speke ai þe treuth,
And þan is still as a stane · & stirs it na ferryñ.

We are not covetous, nor envious.

Riches ne no rede gold · rose we þam nouthire,
Bot ay voide of enuy · & of vayne thoȝtis.
Is þar na berne vs eblande · biggir þan anothire,
Of land ne of lor[d]schipñ · bot all elike simple.
þe pouert of oure personñs · for plente we hald,
þe quilke[3] is part vs, aH þe pake · be parcells euyñ.

We forsake warfare.

Is þar na brag in oure bondis · ne bering[1] of armes,
B[o]t ay perpetuall pes · piȝt iñ oure landis.
Ne nouthire Iugement ne IayH · ne Iustice of aire;
For dose na douth þar no dere · to dome to be callid.
Ne custome in oure contre · contraris oure laȝes,

We shew no mercy.

Is þar na mercy ne methe · in oure marche vsyd;
And I sall quethe þe forqui · & quat is þe cause:

None have to ask for mercy. [Fol. 75.]

þar dose na modirsoñ o-mys · na mercy to craue,
For auyrice & errogaunce · & aH we devoide,
And to na licherous lustes · leeue ve[4] oure membris,

Alex. and Dind., p. 16. We flee lusts.

A-vowtri ne na vayne glorie · ne na vice hauntis,
Ne neuire to-pliȝt worth a perle · to-ponyscht be-fore.
Fynd we na faute in na freke · þat vs emange duellis,
For ay oñ reson & oñ riȝt · rewelle we oure-selfe.
Ne seȝes na segge of oure sede · sodanly of lyue,
For þe aire within oure habitacle · is ai vñ-corumpid.
Nouthire to toly ne to taunde · transmitte we na vebbis,
To vermylioñ ne violett · ne variant littis.

[1] MS. lyly lely; *with* lyly *struck out.* [2] *Read* mekill.
[3] MS. quikke; *wrongly.* [4] *Sic; for* we.

Our wives wear no finery of any kind.

Oure *par*amo*ur*s vs to plese · ne pride þai*m* bewenes,
Nouthire ffurre*r*s, filetts, ne frengs · ne frett*is* of *per*le.
Is þa͞m na surcote of silke · ne serkis of raynes,
Ne kirtils of camlyn̄ · bot as þa͞m kynd leues.
Ne ne3e we neuire þai*m* on̄ ni3t : to naite for na luste,
Bot for to sustayne oure sede · & syn̄ ay to voide.

Alex. and Dind., p. 17. We never use a bath except the dew.

Make we na salues for na sares · ne na som*ir*-bathis,
Bot w*ith* þe wale dewe · & w*ith* þe warme son̄.
Howe durst any be so bald · to blemysche for schame
þe hand-werke of þ*at* hi3e gode · þ*at* aH oure happ̄e haues ?

All are equal amongst us.

List vs na lordschips lache · of ledis as oure-selfe,
For all oure li*ber*tes elike · ere lante vs & paysed ;
And to sett hi*m* in-to *ser*uitute · a syn̄ vs it thinke,
þ*at* god has fo*ur*med to be free · & to his face licknud.[1]
Make we na vessaH of virre · ne of na clere silu*ir*,
Ne store staned strenthis · ne na stithe hames,
Manere mynstre, ne mote · ne marbryn̄ werkis,

We dwell in caves.

Bot duells here in disolat*is* · in dennes & in cauys ;
Ne nouthire housing we haue · ay quils we here dueH,

[Fol. 75 *b*.]

Bot at is fetid of flesch̄ · & of na fr*a*unche piers ;
þ*at* is þe carions kistis · þ*at* couers þe saule,
A full faynt forcelett · & of fen̄ makid.

Alex. and Dind., p. 18. We do not go to sea.

We ere na sailers on̄ þe see · to sell ne to byi ;
Ne rede we neuire na retorik · ne rial to speke ;
Bot c*er*tis in aH simpilnes · sett we oure wordis,
þ*at* lat*is* neuire lesing · in oure lippis spring[1].

We do not cultivate learning.

Ne folo3e we na ficesyens · ne philisoph*our* scolis,
As sophistri & slik thing · to sott w*ith* þe pepiH.
It is bot wiles & wrenkis · at þai w*ith* dele,
And aH þ*ar*e fete & þ*ar* fare · in[2] falshede it endis.

We dislike play.

Lufe we no laike in oure lede · ne la3and mirthis,

We only read romances.

Bot queñ vs pleses to play · we passe & we rede
Of þe actis of oure auncesto*ur*s · & of þ*ar* athill thewis ;
And queñ we gamen suld & glade · we grete & we pleyn̄.

[1] *Or* licknid ; *with misformed* n. [2] *Written above the line.*

And othire sertis wee see[1] · þ*at* solace oure hert*is* ;
First, þe faire firmament · fichid fuH of sterres,
þe rede son̄, queñ he ryses · & rynnys in his sercle,
þ*at* aH þe land w*ith* his leme · lewis & cleres ;
þe playne p*ur*peryn̄ see · fuH of prode fischis,
For tide ne for tempest · it touchis no3t oure kythis,
Ne neuire sondres oure soile · bot sesis at þe brink*is*.

Alex. and Dind., p. 19. We observe the sun, and the purple sea, which is not subject to storms.

¶ Vicesimus passus Alexandri.

Anothire mirthe is in May · þ*at* vs maste ioyes,
þe faire florysch̄t filds · of floures & of herbys,
Quare-of þe breth as of bawme · blawis in oure noose,
þ*at* ilk sensitife saule · mast souorly delyte,
As in þe woddis for to walke · vndire wale schawis,
Queñ all is lokiñ ouire w*ith* leuys · as it ware littiH heuen.

We love the woods, [Fol. 76.]

þañ haue we liking[1] to lithe · þe late of þe foules,
þe swo3ing of þe swift wynde · & of þe swete wellis.

and the songs of birds.

þe kind of þire customs · we kepe euire-mare,
þe quilk, I hope, s*er*, þe to hald · vnhalesom̄ it ware.

Alex. and Dind., p. 20.

If þou wiH chalang[1] þai*m* be chaunce · chese if þe likis,
For here is written̄ aH þi wiH · & we na writh serue.
As þe teno*ur* of 3o*ur* titiH is · oure techis haue we schawid,

These are our customs.

Oure dedis & of oure disciplyne · a dele of þai*m* aythir ;
And of þi lare a litiH-quat · likis me to write,[2]
For þe sothe of oure solitude · wiH s*er*ue þe stille aft*ir*.
Sire, 3e haue la3t now on̄ late · w*ith*in̄ a lite 3eres
AH Europ & Asie · & Auffrik þe mare ;
þ*at* seising[1] burde sufficiant · þofe so3t 3e na ferre.
Bot ay mekiH wald haue mare · as many man spellis ;
þe son̄, for sake of 3o*ur* syn̄ · sesys his li3t,
Be-cause of 3oure couatise · to clym̄ to his bou*n*ds.

Thou preventest the sun from shining.

[1] *Written above the line.*
[2] MS. lere write ; *with* lere *struck out.*

And 3e *with* wodnes of weris · aH þe werde fret*is*,
And 3it for-fe3tils 3oure face · all fasting it semes.
A-nothire la3e is in 3oure lande · at oure lord hat*is*,
As, slaa 3oure soñnes in sacrifice · & othire synnys many,
To sawe emang þ*ir* simpiH meñ · sedis of debate,
And make a terant of a tulke · þ*at* neuire tene tho3t.
Þe soile ne þe foure sees · suffice 3owe nouthire,
Bot if 3e mi3t keñ þe costis · of þe clere heuen.
3oure gilt*is* growis of 3o*ur* gods · or god geue þañ sorowe,
For many modirsoñ þai marre · mi3t ellis haue bene safe.
A-vise 3ow now be Venus · q*uat* ver*tous* him folo3es,
Þe Iusule of Iupit*ir* · & of his Iapis als,
Dame Pro*serpyne*, a pr*o*phetese · of 3oure pr*ay*sid la3es;
Lat*is* þis be witnes of[1] my word*is* · & wait*is* now þ*ar* tetchis.
Venus was a-vowtrere · & many vice hauntid,
And Iupit*ir* a Iettoure · þ*at* Iapid many ladis[2];
Dame p*roserpine* in preue place · playd as hire likid.
Loo, sary sott*is* slike a sowme · of synnars 3e lufe!
3e lett meñ of þ*ar* liber*tes* · at þañ oure lord grauntid,
Thryng*is* þañ in-to thraldoñ · & of thaire þede spoiles.
Vn-iust is 3o*ur* Iugement*is* · so is 3oure Iugis aH;
Þe dedis of 3o*ur* domesmen · 3e for dere halde.
Is þare na renke in 3oure rewme · þ*at* othire rewiH kepis,
Bot "þus me þinke" & "so me þinke" · & threpis it is lawe!
Þus fra þe rote of ri3twisnes · rauyst ere 3e clene,
And to þe way of wickidnes · be warla3es gidid.
3e hald na wee of þe werd · of witt worthe a myte,
Bot he cañ practise & paynt · & polisch his wordis.
For all 3oure wisdoñ, I-wis · is[3] wrokeñ to 3o*ur* tongis,
And aH þe sauo*ur* of 3oure sauls · is sattild in 3o*ur* mouthis.
3oure grete garisons of gold · vngastly 3e spende

Alex. and Dind., p. 21. Ye sacrifice your children.

Ye cannot have enough.

Your gods used to work all evil.

[Fol. 76 b.]

Jupiter was lecherous. So was Proserpine.

Alex. and Dind., p. 22.

Ye are all unjust.

Ye esteem flatterers.

[1] *In the margin.* [2] MS. dadis ladis; *with* dadis *struck out.* [3] *In the margin.*

In bigging[1] of burgis · & bilding of toures;
And quen 3e sitt in 3oure sale · w*ith* syris & duk*is*,
Þan haue 3ee seggis 3ow to ser*ue* · sowmes enogH.
Þañ as a Mare at a moghe · 3oure mawis 3e fiH,
W*ith* bakin mete & w*ith* briddis · bolnes 3oure paunches,
Stuffis so 3o*ur* stomake · w*ith* stullis & of wynes,
Þ*at* vnethis haldis, be 3e hoo · þe hide of 3ow hale!
Quat dewis 3ow þan þire diat*is* · & aH þis dere fode,
3oure sowping in vnsesoñ · 3oure surfete of drink*is*,
Bot sett*is* 3ow in-to sekenes · of sere-lepy kynd*is*,
And gers 3ow die or 3oure day · many dre3e wynt*ir*?
Þan 3e couett & craue · castels & rewmes,
And thrist*is* eft*ir* aH thing*is* · at in 3oure tho3t rynnes,
Iaspre, Iuwels, & gemmes · & Iettand per*le*:
And all sall leue 3ow at þe laste · & in-to laire worth!
And maydese 3it, for aH y*our* molle · þ*at* modire ws[1] cried,
Þ*at* four*med* þe flode & þe flynt · & þe faire lyndis.
And, as I brefe it in þis buH · þe br*ag*meyns takens
Surmont*is* aH 3o*ur* sapient*is* · & oure assemy thewis.[2]
And o þ*ir* werkis of wast · is wro3t in 3oure landis,
As, graffis garnyscht of gold · & gilten tombis,
Thurghis to thrawyn in · quen 3e þraa worthe,
Sum of silu*ir*, sum of sipirs · sum of sere gemmes.
Þus make 3e vessels in vayñe · to 3oure foule corses,
To croñ in 3oure cariouns · þ*at* kind 3ow defendis,
Þ*at* ilk slymand slugH · quen 3e ere slide hyne,
And wiH no3t suffire þe erth · to haue at him fallis.
For iolite of Iupit*ir* · 3e ioyeñ vp templis,
W*ith* Imagis of 3oure ydolatry · aH w*ith*in payntid;
Symolacr*is* vp sett · of Seropis & othir,
And slees in-to þe sacrifis · many sere bestis.
Quen 3e haue tildid vp-oñ [top] · 3o*ur* trouthles gods,
Sum of gold, sum of glas · sum of gray marbiH,
Sum of latoun & of lede · & sum of li3t siluir,
And sum ere tiffid aH of tree · & sum of tyñ pured,

Ye like to have many servants.

[Fol. 77.]

Ye are but earth-born.

We surpass you in all things.

Alex. and Dind., p. 23. Ye build fine tombs.

Ye make temples and idols,

[1] *Read* 3ow. [2] MS. twethewis, *alt. to* thewis.

and worship your graven gods.

Þan fall 3e flatt oñ þe fold · *with* fees þai*m* adoures,
Bath Amon & Appolyne · & asskis at þam welthys;
Of any gud at 3e geet · a gift ye þam offirr*e*,
[Fol. 77 *b*.] A quantite of all-q*uat* · of quik*e* & of ellis;
3e latt as þai mi3t all leth · at ony lede wald,
And þai may send 3ow bot vnsele · & no3t o*þir* godis.
Þus 3e comende þai*m* on knees · as cocards suld,
Þat nouthir*e* si3t has ne saule · bot of segge werke;

God hears not man because of sacrifices.

3e haue na sauo*ur*, I suppose · how þat þe kyñg of heue*n*
He has na hert vs to here · ne no hathiH ellis
For calues ne for kidis blode · ne for na crispe wethris,

Alex. and Dind., p. 24.

Bot an[l]y for oure orisons · & for na no*þir*e giftis.
God se3is oure sa3es for his soñ · at in him-selfe duellis;
For sekir*e* god is þe soñ · þat all oure sede loues.

We are like unto God through His Son. All are sustained by Him.

And sothly, by þe same soñ · we ere him all like,
And aH he sustayned of þat soñ · þat any saule wildis.
Forþi vnhappy we 3ow hald · þat in 3oure hert*is* leues
3oure kind *with* slike a conquiro*ur* · to come*n* or to euen.
And othire harlotry 3e[1] hant · þat heris þe goste,
Of fornicacioñ & filth · & many foule synnes,
Maumentry, & manslat*ir* · mosardry & pride,

After death ye will go to hell.

Þat dose 3ow dompe to þe deviH · que*n* he[2] ere dede hethen.
And we[3] þe contrari clene · kepis aH oure lyue,
Þat we may bowe to þat blis · þat neu*ir* saH haue ende.

Alex. and Dind., p. 25.

3e gronde 3ow no3t[4] on[5] a god · þat aH of glett fo*ur*med,
Þat note newid aH of no3t · þat neuir*e* sall haue ende,
Bot o*þir*e many do 3e menske · ere him na[6] mare sibbe
Þan was þe flesch of þe fysch[7] · to þe fair*e* me[m]bree.
Ilk lede þat li3t is of 3o*ur* lede · 3e call þe litiH werde,

Ye have as many false gods as a body has limbs.

And gesse wele as many gods · as growis in him membr*is*;
Ilk a p*ar*cele of his p*er*soñ a-p*ro*prid · is a-p*er*t dri3tin,
And euir*e*-ilk lym, it awne lust eft*ir* · as him list cr*a*ues!

[1] MS. *inserts* to hald, *struck through*. [2] *Read* 3e.
[3] MS. 3e, *but underlined, and corrected to* we *in the margin*.
[4] MS. *repeats* no3t; *but the second* no3t *is underlined*.
[5] MS. ai (?) [6] MS. no, *alt. to* na. [7] MS. fesch, *alt. to* fysch.

Mercury is god of the *tongue*;

For marcur*e* was mansla3t · a ma*m*mlere of wordis,
3e graith hi*m* to be gouenour*e* · & god of þe tonge.

[Fol. 78.] Hercules presides over the *arms*;

And Arcules has aythir*e* arme · in his awen warde,
For þe xij wondirfuH werkis · he wro3t w*ith* his hand*is*.
Mars for his maist*er*ris · & for his many weris,
Him brefe 3e for his[1] baratris · þe breste to defend.

Juno, over the *heart*; Alex. and Dind., p. 26.

Dame Iuno was a iett*ir* · & ioyned fuH of iree,
For-þi scho hedis to þe hert · & has it to 3eme.

Bacchus, over the *throat*;

Bary[2] he was brayne-wode · for bebbing of wynes,
Forþi [þe] swire & þe swalow · þat swier*e* he kepis.

Cupid, over the *stomach*;

Cupido has þe custodi · & cur*e* of þe mawe,
For he[3] was couatus & cursid · vnclene of hi*m*-selfe.

Ceres, over the *womb*.

Serenon is sustenou*r* · & sir*e* of þe wambe,
For he*m* was quart*ir*s of qwete · vmqwile out of nombr*e*.
Dame ven*us* þe a-v[er]o*us*[4] · for vices oponñ ni3t*is*,
Is possesso*ur* & principale · of aH þe pr*e*ue menbris.

Alex. and Dind., p. 27.

Þus ilk canteH of 3oure cors · 3e caH þam̄ dri3tins,
Deu[i]dis it in-to duesses · & o*þir*e deuels many.
Of ilk gobet of þat glett · 3e a god make,
And leues no3t as mekill as a lym̄ · 3o*ur* liches oñ to stand.

Ye believe not in the Creator.

3e haue na hoping in þat hathill · at oñ hi3e sitt*is*,
How he 3oure nase & 3oure nebb · & aH of no3t cried,
Bot þinkis on þ*ir* othir thefis · & þam̄ as thraH ser*u*ys,
And sacrifice to ilk a segge · a sere-lepy gifte.

To Mars, ye offer a boar;

To Mars in his mynst*ir* · at maynteines þe weris,
3e bringe hi*m* a wild bare · for his wale dedis.

to Bacchus, a kid;

Þe carcas of a fatt kid · þat carayne is worthe,
Þat bring 3e to ser bacus · to bere vp his drinke.
And Iupit*ir* þat Iogl*ur* · sum Iape bos haue[5];
A bullok or a fell bule · is bro3t to his temple.

to Juno, a peacock;

And Iuno þe IentiH · for ioy of his pride,
3e presand hire a pakoke · w*ith* pennes of añ AungeH.

[1] MS. 3o*ur* his; *with* 3o*ur* *marked for erasure*.
[2] *Read* Bacy, *i. e.* Bacchus; *see* l. 4525. [3] *In the margin*.
[4] MS. a vio*us*. [5] MS. hs haue, *with* hs *struck out*.

Mine*r*ua[1] was a maistres · of many king*is* werk*is*,
A ratland niȝt ravyñ · is him to rent ȝoldeñ.
[Fol. 78 *b*.] To Ven*us* þe vowtriere · may noȝt ells a-vaile,
Bot ilk moneth to mede · &[2] mi[l]ke-quite doufe.
to Apollo, a white swan; Appollo *with* a quite swan · is paid hi*m* to tende ;
A manere of[3] corne to me*r*cure · þ*at* we þi muld caH.
And Serenon is sone se*r*ued þ*at* sees to þe paunche ;
to Ceres, bran. Haue he a boll fuH of brañ · bedis he na mare.
Alex. and Dind., p. 28. And Ercules as emp*er*oure · emyddis aH he[4] stand*is*[5] ;
And for he preuyd ay þe prise · iñ prowis of armes,
He has a hatt oñ his hede · hiȝtild o floures,
Of palme & of p*er*uyk · & othire proud blossoms.
The temple of Cupid is strewn with roses. þe kirke of cupido · is clenly a-rayed,
þe stallis & iñ all stedis · strowid *with* Rose.
Lo, to so many mayned gods · ȝ*our* menbris ȝe dele,
And will noȝt knaw ȝ*our* creato*ur* · at ȝow of clay fo*ur*med.
þire deme ȝe for ȝ*our* driȝtins · þ*at* drepis þe saule ;
For þai may sende ȝow na sele · bot sla ȝow *with*in.
For your worship, ye shall be punished. As many of þ*at* feleschiꝑ · as ȝe trow & adoures,
As many turment*is* & tene · ȝow tidis in heH.
A-vise ȝow now q*uat* velany · & vices þai ȝow teche :
Ane leris ȝow to be licherus · & leris ȝow to syñ ;
Ane, to be grindand glutt*is* · & glorand dronkin ;
And ane, to bragg & to bost · & bate *with* þe pepiH.
If ȝe be herd of ȝ*our* happ[6] · vn-happe þai ȝow keñ ;
Forþi bot harlotry or harme · is at ȝe here craue ;
Alex. and Dind., p. 29. Whether they hear you or not, ye suffer. And if ȝe hede to ȝ*our* hest*is* · ȝ*our* hert is a-meued,
So que*þir* þai here or els-q*uat* · it hurt*is* ay þe saule.
ȝ*our* doctou*r*s ere ȝoure duesses · þaire ditis aleg*is*,
How þ*at* þai hampire in ȝ*our* here · *with* many hard payñ.
þai cause aH vnkindnes · & corp*er*aH lust*is*,

[1] MS. Minue*r*a. [2] *Read* a. [3] *In the margin.*
[4] MS. y he ; *with* y *struck out.* [5] MS. stond*is*, *alt. to* stand*is*.
[6] happ *marked for erasure.*

As surquitry & sacrilag · & othire sere tecches ;
Constrene ȝow iñ-to cauatise · to clame aH þe werd,
To rayme & to robry · to rayme meñ þaire godis,
Wailaway to wriches · & wa is ȝow in erthe ; [Fol. 79.]
Herefore ȝe hinge moñ in hell · queñ ȝe ere hethen passed ! " Ye shall dwell in torment.
Alex. and Dind., p. 30. þan was þe kyng of his carpe · crabbid vnfaire,
For he was spetous of speche · & spised his driȝtins ;
Alex. and Dind., p. 31. Queñ he had lokid oñ þe lyne · he lappid it to-gedire,[1]
And notid to him a-nothire new · þ*at* now next fologhes.

Vicesimus primus passus Alex*andri*.

" Alexander, son of Ammon, " þe kynge crouned of kyngis · o lord*is* aH othire,
Ser Alex*ander* þe athelest · of Amoñs childire,
And of þe quene Olimpades · þ*at* I was of geteñ,
to Dindimus, greeting. To þe best of br*ag*meyns · blissing & hele[2] !
If all is true, ye are very good men. Sire, be þis sothe at ȝe say · of all seggis oute
ȝe may be sett be ȝow-selfe · for syn doo ȝe neuire !
Bot sothely slike a simpilnes · as me my saule demys,
It comes bot of acustoumes · & of na clene thewes.
And ow*þir* ȝe gesse at ȝe be gods · for ȝoure gud werkis,
Or deynes *with* oure driȝtins · for[3] þ*at* we þam dere hald.
Alex. and Dind., p. 32. ȝe say ȝe sawe neuire soile · ne na cit*is* biggis ;
How suld ȝe telle *with*outeñ toles · or any tild rere ?
Ye have no iron. Is *þer* noñ Instrument*is* of Ireñ · in aH þ*at* Ile founden,
Ne nakiñ metaH of to make · messelyne ne othire.
For-quy as best*is* oñ þe bent · ȝe growe oñ þe greuys,
Refete ȝow *with* refuse · of rotis & of herbys ;
A hungry wolf must eat earth. þe same wyse dose a wolfe · þ*at* want*is* of his pr*ay* ;
Quen he has faute of his flesch · he fallis to þe soile !
Lo, if me list in-to ȝoure land · *with* all my ledis entre,
Quat wisdom at ȝ*our* wricchidnes · or witt miȝt I lere ?
þe, lede, is litiH to loue · þ*at* leuys ay in sorowe,
Bot mekill mare he is menskid · þ*at* in a mene duellis.

[1] MS. to godire. [2] MS. helee. [3] MS. *inserts* we, *underlined.*

[Fol. 79 b.]

Ware þai so wyse þat has waes · qua ware so[1] wide praysed
As þa þat lepros ere & lame · þat neuire of leth knewe?
Alex. and Dind., p. 33.
If I 3oure parties aproche · & pi3t vp my tentis,
If I it mi3t, as I ne may · for missyng of schipis,
Þare suld my folk for defaute · be famyscht for euire,
And worthe in a wale quile · to wricchis as 3our-selfe!
Your wives use no gay apparel,
3e say 3our womeñ has na wedis · þe werd with to plese,
Garlands ne no gay gere · to glyffe[2] iñ 3our e3eñ,
Silke of Sipris, ne say · ne saffrond kellis;
For-quy þare is nane to gete · now neuyñ I þe cause!
and no man commits adultery.
Adultery oñ aH wise als 3e deuoyde,
Echchewis[3] ay þat caffare · as castite wald;
If 3e na wiH haue to þat werk · it wondres me littiH;
How suld 3e nayte euir þat note · þat ne3es neuir þe fode?
Slik lust is lang oñ þe leuir · & likand spices,
Mast cherischid & enchesoñ · of chasteand metis;
Ye are chaste perforce.
And 3e[4] bot fede 3ow with frute · at flays no3t 3oure hongir,
Alex. and Dind., p. 34.
For-þi neuire ailes 3ow þat apetite · þir artis with to dele.
Ye never study;
Is þar na lare iñ 3oure land · labour of scolis,
Fesike, ne no philosofy · ne no fourme ellis,
Piromancie, ne poisei · ne practyse of lawe,
and never shew mercy.
Ye are as beasts.
Ne neuire na mercy 3ow emeH · as mynes me 3our pistiH;
AH þis condicions I call · bot comoñ of bestis,
Þat has no sent in þaire saule · ne sauour in na gude.
Bot we þat fourmed is & fast · & has a fre wiH
Differris as iñ oure fraunches · fere fra 3oure kynde.
It ware no possible poynt · to paise iñ my witt,
Þat all mi3t ay be eftir ane · with-outen any chaunge.
After bale comes bliss.
For eftir baret or bale · blis vs aperis
And eftir wele comys wa · for so þe werd askis.

[1] MS. *inserts* wyse h, *underlined*. [2] *A curl over the* g.
[3] MS. Ethchewis. [4] *In the margin.*

Ouir[1] wild is many ways wraiste · as þe wedire skiftis;
Alex. and Dind., p. 35. [Fol. 80.]
In fair weather, men are merry.
For a clere cloudles day · mas a clene mynde;
Quen it is[2] bri3t all a-bowte · it blithis oure hertis.
And be þar gold in oure gate · or any gud stanes,
We do bot foules it with oure fete · vs fayns it na more,
And quen it walows · & wannes aH oure thestres,
3et ere we toghid to & fra · be turnyng of eldris.
Man changes according to his age.
For quilk a frek is bot a fañt · þan is he first simple,
And quen he preues fra þat prike · þañ is he proud-lokid,
Metis oñ þe mediH merke · & þare his mynd stablis.
Mekill variaunce of vertus · enveronis oure saules,
We use our five wits, sight, savour, taste, touch, and hearing.
For we ere fetid fuH faire · & has oure fyue wittis.
Ane, oure si3t with to see · & sauour at þe nasee,
And ane to tast & to touche · & þen oure twa eris.
Of all þe frutis oñ þe foldˉ · we fange at oure wiH,
Alex. and Dind., p. 36.
We catch fish.
Bath venysoñ & volatile · & variand fisches.
If 3e refreyne 3ow þar-fra · it falis bot of pride
Or ellis 3ow writhis with 3our wele · for 3e na welth haue!
Your deeds are folly."
Be many opynion I prefe · þat pure is 3oure tecches,
Mare fonden opoñ foly · þan ficchid oñ resoñ."
Sone as þe kyng of þe kith · þe clause had devysid,
He settis him doun full sobirly · & sendis him anothire.
"Dindimus to Alexander, greeting.
¶ "I, sir Dyndyñ þe derrest · at duells in þis Ile,
Alex. and Dind., p. 37.
þe best of þe bragmeyns · of bounte & of thewis,
To Alexander, þat aire · þat erles aH þe werd,
þe souerayne sire of aH þe soile · salus & ioye.
We are as pilgrims from Paris to Rome.
Sire, we erd no3t in elementis · as euirmare to dueH,
Bot as qua pas a pilgrymage · fra Parysch to rome;
To othire hames vs hi3e · quen we ere hethen voided,
And in þe cites of syñ · þañ sitt we na langire.
Vse we nane Epocrise · ne ire, ne no theftis,
Ne nothire gesse we vs gods · ne grym̃ at oure dri3tiñ.
For many seerties we seet · þat sysed aH þe werde,
And wro3t þe will of ilk we · to wale as him likid.
[Fol. 80 b.]

[1] *Or* Oñ. [2] *In the margin.*

Alex. and Dind., p. 38. He who avoids evil is God's friend.

And he þat wayues ay þe werst · & wirkis þe bettir,
þat[1] gome is gods gud frend · & god neuire þe hildire.
And þis similitude þat oure sede · þou settis my pistiH,
þe same ensampiH, as me semes · in-to 3oure-self touches.
For so þe qwele of qwistounes · 3oure qualite encreses,
þat noþir gesse 3e gouernour · no god bot 3our-selfe !

Ye say we are as gods.

3e brixsill our[2] benignite · oure bonerte repreues,
And beris a-poñ vs blasfeme · þat neuire bale tho3t.
All be we suggets in oure-selfe · & simpiH oure latis,
Voide & vacand of vices · as virgyns it ware.
Neuir-þe-les of a la3e · hald we vs dri3tins.

But ye are so rather, being rich,

It is 3oure-selfe & no3t oure-self · þat ai þe self hantis ;
Aboundance of Auoure · 3ow all has englaymed,
For 3e bot fage ay þe flesche · & felsen it wele.
3e bide no besynes of bedis · bot to þe body clethe,
Els 3e may cast 3ow to be coynt · 3e count for na ferrir.

and gaily clad.

With soft serkis of silke · 3oure sidis vm̄-loke,
Doubeletis of damaske · & sum of dere tars,
With ilka fingire on 3oure fist · fillid fuH of ryngis,
Schard al of shire[3] gold · as it a schryne were.
Quat profetis 3ow þis paraile · & all þis proud iettis ?

Gold feeds no one.

For nouthire saues it þe saule · ne 3our-selfe fedis.
Bot we, þat knawis wele & ken · þe kynd of þe noble,
Quen we ere drinkeles & dry · we draw to þe bourne ;
And be þar gold in oure gate · or any gud stanes,

We spurn it.

We do bot foulis it with oure fete · vs faynes it na more.

Alex. and Dind., p. 39.

For nouthire purgis it oure pli3t · ne priues it oure hungir,

Gold quenches not thirst.

Ne nouþir salues it oure sares · ne sesis it oure thrist.
For folowid it slike a fraunchis · at it[4] vs fede wald,
þe cursed laike o couatis · ware clene[5] with it drenchid.

[Fol. 81.]

3e vise 3ow þar-of vesseH · for vanyte & pride ;
As gud ware crestyns of clathe · þe caryoñ to serue.

[1] MS. þate, *with* e *expuncted.* [2] MS. 3our, *altered to* our.
[3] MS. schre, *altered to* schire. [4] *In the margin.*
[5] MS. chene.

The more gold a man has, the more he wants."

I se na godlaik in gold · bot grefe to þe saule,
For þe fastir it fallis oñ a freke · þe fastir he couettis."
Sire Alexander aH at ese · avisis him oñ þis pistiH,
And wayues[1] to him a-noþire writt · at oñ þis wyse spellis.

Alex. and Dind., p. 40.

¶ " Hi3e kyng with-out comparisoñ · of kyngis aH oþire,
Of all lordis þe lord · þat leues vndire heuen,
Sire Alexander, þe aire · of Amon oure dri3tiñ,

"Alexander, son of Ammon, to Dindimus.

To þe, ser Dyndyn oñ þi dese · þis dities I write.

Alex. and Dind., p. 41. No strangers can come to you.

In slike a side of þe soile · 3our-selfe is in-closid,
May wele na wee, if he wald · wyñ to 3our kithis.
Forþi enhabete 3e in angwysch · at 3oure vnthankis ;
And aH 3oure lefing & 3oure lare[2] · at 3e so loude prayse,
It comis bot of a kyndnes · & of na clene thewys.
And als 3e fonde may na forþire · to hi3eñ 3oure name,

Ye are like wretched prisoners."

Bot pyned þar in a parroke · inparkid as bestis,
þus pere to þir presoñs · þat ay in payñ lengis,
And he þat se3is to vs sage · 3e bot a sott caH.
Be þe[3] grace of my god[2] · mi3t I 3our grond entre,
I suld 3ow ken to be kni3tis · & clethe 3ow with armes."

Alex. and Dind., p. 42. Alexander rears a pillar of marble.

þan pi3t oure prince in þat place · a pelare[4] of marble,
Quare-oñ a tulke with a toile · þis titiH vp he wrate,
Sum langage oñ latine · & lettres of ynde,
Sum was graithid o grew · þat þus to-gedire spekis :
"I, Philip̄ soñ þe fell kyng · þe fondere of grece,
Sire Alexander þe athill · þ[a]t a3e aH þe barbres
Eftir þe day & þe dethe · of Dary & of Porrus,
þus fere I folo3ed haue my faes ;" · & here a fitt end.

[*End of* Alexander and Dindimus.]

¶ Vicesimus secundus passus Alexandri.

[Fol. 81 *b.*]

Now gase he fra gangañ · and aH his ging eftir,
Fondis forth with his folke · & a fild entris,

[1] *Or* waynes. [2] *In the margin.*
[3] MS. Be þe be þe; with Be *altered to* Bet, *and the second* be þe *underlined ;* Bot be þe *is probably intended.*
[4] *A curl over the* e.

They come to a wood,
Vmfaldin *with* a faire wod · florischt[1] out ouire
Of Appils & almands · & aH manere of frut*is*.
All þe chiere of þe champe · was chargid *with* floures,
Acrea, sais oure auto*ur* · þ*at* angiH is hatteñ.
full of giants,
3it wont meñ in þa woddis · as þe buke tellis,
Of Ioynttou*r*s as Ieants · in Iopons of hidis,
who eat fruit only.
And þai ware fedd all of frute · & of na fode ellis,
Of gr*a*pis & of gernets · & othire gude spices,
Of sike as growis iñ þe grewis · I tald of before.
þai ware as rugHe as a resche · þe bake & þe sidis;
Que*n* þai p*er*sayued of oure prince · & slik a pake Armed,
They stand staring at Alexander.
þan stode þai glorand on his gome · *with* grisely mawis.
And he mas heraud & heres · to hant for þe nanes,
Alexander's men raise a shout,
And sett vp a scharp̄ schoute · at aH þe schaw ryng*is*.
And þai for skere of þe skrike · in-to þe schaw fledd,
For þai hadd herd neuire of how · ne of mans noyse;
and the giants flee and are slain.
And sex hundreth was slane · & sesid *with* oure kniȝt*is*,
And foure and threti, as I flode[2] · was in þe fild drepid,
And iiij[3] score oñ þis side · & seue*n* at was armed
Was *with* þe churles in þe chace · choppid to deth.
þ*us* thre daies in þ*at* thede · thurgH-out þai lengid,
The Greeks eat damsons.
And diet*is* þam̄ *with* damysens · & oþ*ir* dere frute.
þañ ferd he furth to a flu*m*me · & sett þare his tent*is*,
And newly eft*ir* þe none · or nere þare-aboute,
þare coms a bonde of a brenke · & breed þai*m* vnfaire;
An uncouth beast appears,
A burly best & a bigg[4] · was as[3] a mañ shapeñ,
Vmquile he groned as a galt · *with* grysely lat*is*,
[Fol. 82.]
Vmquile he noys as a nowte · as a nox queñ he lawes,
3armand & 3erand[4] · a 3oteñ hi*m* semed;
with bristles like a boar,
And was as bristils as a bare · aH þe body ouire;
Doñ as a dore-nayle · & defe was he bathe,
With laith leggis & lange · & twa laue[4] eres;
and a head like a horse.
A heuy hede & a hoge · as it a hors ware,

[1] MS. florischst.
[2] MS. flode, *in the margin, substituted for* fynd.
[3] *In the margin.* [4] *Or* lane.

And large was his odd lome · þe lenthe of a 3erde.
With þ*at* comands oure kyng · his kniȝt*is* hi*m* to[1] take,
And þai a-saillid him sone · bot he na segge dredis,
For nouthire fondis he to flee · ne na fens made,
Bot stude & stared as a stott · & stirred he na forthire.
Alexander sets before him a naked maid.
þan callis to hi*m* þe conquiro*ur* · a comly maydeñ,
Bad hire be broȝt be-fore þe best · & bare to be nakid.
And he be-held oñ þ*at* hend · & hissis as a neddire,
He wald haue strangild hire streȝt · ne had stiffe me*n* bene;
He is then caught,
He wald haue schowid oñ þ*at* schene · had noȝt men halde*n*,
and burnt.
And to þe prince pauelioñ · prestly him lede.
Queñ he had ferlied his fiH · oñ his foule schapp̄,
He gers þai*m* bynde hi*m* at a braid · & brent hi*m* to poudire.
þen rade he fra þ*at* reu*ir* · & remowid his ost
In-till a brade bent fild · & bildid vp his tent*is*.
þare fande he lindis oñ þ*at* lande · þe[2] lenthe of a spere,
And þai ware frett fuH of frute · þe fairest of þe werde.
Alexander comes to the trees of the Sun and Moon,
It ware to tere any tong to tell · of þa trees kinde,
For þai wald sett *with* þe soñ · & *with* þe soñ rise.
Fra morewane to þe mydday · merely þai spring,
which wax and wane in a day.
And þan discende þai dou*n* · as þe day passis.
Lo, þis was a wondirfull werk · bot gods aweñ wiH,
þ*at* þai suld wax soo & wane · *with*in a wale time.
For, fra it droȝe to þe derke · ay tiH it dawid eft*ir*,
It was bot vacant & voide · as vanite it were.
[Fol. 82 *b*.]
þe kyng in his cabañ · *with* his kniȝt*is* he ligis,
Tutand out of his tents · & þe trees wait*is*.
A man who attempts to pluck an apple is slain.
A bacl a berne of a bobb · bring hi*m* a nappiH;
þañ bowis furth a bachelere · his bedinge to fiH;
And he was sodanly sesid · & slane *with* a sprete.
With þ*at* enverrouns aH þe vale · a voice fra þe heue*n*,
Said, "qua so fang*is* o þis frute · bees fey in a stounde!"

[1] *In the margin.* [2] MS. a þe, *but corrected.*

The birds on the trees are defended by flames of fire.

Ȝit bred *þar* briddis in þa braunches · at blith was & tame,
And if a man had þai*m* hent · or w*ith* his hand touchid,
Þan floȝe þ*ar* flawmes out of fire · before & be-hind,
And quare it liȝt oñ his like · it lichid hi*m* for euire.
Now bowis furth þis barato*ur* · & bidis na langire,

Alexander climbs a huge mountain.

Vp at a maȝte[1] mountane · he myns w*ith* his ost,
And viij daies be-dene · þe driȝe was, & mare,
Or he miȝt couire to þe copp̄ · fra þe caue vndire.
Queñ he was comeñ to þe crest · his kniȝt*is* wald haue esid;

Dragons, dromedaries, snakes, &c., appear.

And namely a new note · neghis oñ hand,
Of dragons & of dromondaris · & of diuerse neddirs,
Of liones & of leop*ar*ds · & othire laith best*is*.
Þare was hurling oñ hiȝe · as it iñ heH ware,
Quat of[2] wrestling of wormes · & wonding of kniȝt*is*.
As got*is* out of[3] guttars · in golanand wedres,
So voidis dou*n* þe vemoñ · be vermyns schaft*is*.

Many men are stung to death.

At o*þir* time of[4] oure tulkis · was tangid to dede,
And slayñ w*ith* þa serpents · a sowme out of noimbre.
So hard þai hampird oure heere · & herid oure erles,
Vnneth it chansid þai*m* þe cheke · þe cheffire to worthe.
Que*n* he sckonfet & skerrid · all þa skathiH fendis,

They next come to a valley, very dark.

Þe*n* metis he dou*n* of þe mounte · in-to a mirk vale,
A drere[5] dale & a depe · a dym̄ & a thest*ir*.
Miȝ[t] þare na saule vndire soñ · see to a-nothire;

[Fol. 83.]

Þai ware vmbe-thonrid[6] in þ*at* thede · w*ith* slike a thike cloude,
Þ*at* þai miȝt fele it w*ith* þaire fiste · as flabband webbis;
W*ith* all þe bothom fuH of bo*ur*nes · briȝt as þe siluire,
And bery-bobis oñ þe braes · brethand as mirre.

They are 9 days in darkness.

Þ*us* drafe þai furth in derknes · a neȝen daies eue*n*,
So lang[t] þai*m* lackis at þe last · þe liȝt of þe soñ.
Þañ come þai blesnand tiH a barme · of a brent lawe,[7]

[1] *Written* maȝtene; *see* l. 4883. [2] MS. ost.
[3] *In the margin.* [4] MS. of of. [5] MS. dreȝe.
[6] *Or* vmbe-thourid. [7] MS. lawe, *substituted for* schawe.

Neȝe throtild w*ith* þe thik aire · & thrange in þare andes.

They next climb for 11 days,

Þai labourde[1] vp a-gayñ þe lift · añ elleuen dais,
& que*n* þai couert to þe crest · þen clerid þe welkyñ;

and the sun shines out.

Þe schaft*is* of þe schire soñ · schirkind þe cloudis,
And gods glorious gleme · glent þam e-maunge.

They come to a plain,

Þañ past þai dou*n* fra þ*at* pike · in-to a playñ launde,
Quare all þe gronde was of gols · & growen fuH of Impis,
A cubete lenth, sais þe clause · cald was þe maste,
Quare-of þe feloure & þe frute · as fygis it sawourd.

with excellent rivers.

Þare fand þai Revers,[2] as I rede · ricchest of þe werd,
Þof it ware Ioly Iurdañ · or Iacobs weH;
Was neu*ir* no mede ne no milke · so mild vndire heue*n*,
Ne cliffe of cristall so clere · at euire god fo*ur*med.
A hundreth daies & a halfe · he held be þa playnes,

They come to a steep cliff,

TiH he was come*n* tiH a cliffe · at to þe cloudis semed,
Þ*at* was so staire & so stepe · þe store me tellis,
Miȝt þ*ar* no wee bot w*ith* wyng*is* · wiñ to þe toppe.

with two paths,

Ȝit fand he clouen̄ þurȝe þe clynt · twa crasid[3] gat*is*,

one north, and one east.

Ane to þe noke of þe north · a-nothire to þe est.
Sire Alex*ander* him a-vises · &[4] all him a-wondres,
And trowid it was wroȝt · of na lede werk*is*.

They go eastward.

W*ith* þ*at* stairis he forth þe stye · þ*at* streȝt to þe est,
And seuen̄ dais w*ith* his men̄ · he soȝt be þa cost*is*.
And on þe aȝtent day · eftire þe prime,

They find a basilisk,

A Basilisk in a browe · breis þai*m* vñ-faire,
A straȝtill & a stithe worme · stinkand of elde,

[Fol. 83 *b*.]

And is so bitt*ir* & so breme · & bicchid in hi*m*-selfe,
Þ*at* w*ith* þe stinke & þe strenth · he stroyes noȝt allane,
Bot quat he sett*is* on his siȝt · he slaes in a stonde.
He vemons in þe vaward · valiant kniȝt*is*,
Maistirs out of Messedone · of Mede & of Per*s*ee;

who slays many knights.

Þai seȝe dou*n* sodanly · slane of þaire blonk*is*,
To step̄ & to stand-dede · & in þe strete liggis.

[1] MS. babourde.
[2] *Written in the margin, as a substitute for* þiuers.
[3] MS. traside. [4] *In the margin.*

With þat areris aH þe route · & radly þai said,
" þe writh of þe wale god[1] · vs of þe wai lettis."
Alexander finds the basilisk asleep, þe kyng to knaw of þat case · vp to þe cliffe wendis,
Saȝe quare þe same serpent · slepit in a roke.
þañ mas he bonds in a braide · at sall na pepiH pas,
In bole & in balañ · buskes he his fetes,
A blasoñ as a berne-dure · þat all þe body schildis,
and sets a mirror before him. And fiches in a fyne glas · oñ þe fere side.
þe sc[h]rewe in þe schewere · his schadow be-haldis,
Then the basilisk slays himself. And so þe slaȝtir of his siȝt · in-to him-selfe entris.
þañ cals oure kyng him his kniȝtis · & comandis him to bryñ,
And þai as sone as þai him saȝe · him for his sleȝt thankis.
Sone[2] as þis balefuH best · was broȝt out o lyfe,
þan ridis furth oure riche kyng · & remowis his ost.
And of þis way at he went · sone worthis him a nende,
So at he flitt may na ferre · ne his folke[3] nouthire.
They come to huge mountains, þare was so hedous & so hoge · hillis þam beforñ,
Cloȝes at was cloude · he clynterand torres,
Rochis & rogh stanes · rokkis vnfaire,
Scutis to þe scharpe schew · sckerres a hundreth.
and return to the plain. þan ȝaris he him ȝapely · & a-ȝayne turnes,
[Fol. 84.] And past in-to þe proud playñ · I proued to ȝow first,
þat aH was brett-fuH of bowis · & blossoms so swete,
þat bawme ne braunche o aloes · bettir was neuire.
They next try the path to the north. Fra þens oure note[4] men be northe · nymes þaim þe way,
And þat þañ[5] fonde aH þe flote · fiftene dayis.
And þai croke ouire crosse · to cache þaim anothire,
þat led þam to þe left hand · & þat a lange quile;
And þus þai dryfe furth þe driȝt · of daies foure score,
They come to a cliff covered with diamonds. Till at þai come till a cliffe · as þe clause tellis,
Ane egge þat was all ouire · of Adamand stanes,
With, hingand in þe rughe roches · rede gold cheynes.
þan was þare graythed of degreces · for gomes vp to wynde,

[1] *In the margin.* [2] MS. Cone. [3] MS. fokke.
[4] *Here follows* o, *expuncted.* [5] *Perhaps* þaim.

Twa thousand be tale · & fyue trew hundrethe. It has 2500 steps on its face.
And þai ware sett so in soute[1] · of safers fyne,
þat of þe noblay to neuen · it neyd any cristeñ.
þare logis þe leue kyng · late oñ añ eueñ,
Vndire þis maȝte mountayne · & oñ þe morne eftir,
þare setts he furth of sere gods · a selle nounbre, Alexander offers to the gods.
þat he honours & his ost · & offirs ilk ane.
Syne tas he with him titly · his twelue tried prince[s],
Gas him vp be degreces · to þe grete lawe, He then ascends the steps.
Trenes to þe topward · þat touched to þe cloudis,
þat he miȝt lend þar o-loft · & waite eftir wondirs.
Vp-oñ þe copē of þe cliffe · a closure he fyndis, On the top is a palace,
A palais, ane of[2] þe precioussest · & proudest in erthē,
A bild, as þe buke sais · with twa brade ȝatis,
And seuenty wyndows beside · of serelepis werkes.
þe ȝatis ware of ȝeteñ gold · ȝarkid of platis, with gates of gold;
þe windows on þe selfe wyse · as þe writ schews[3]; [Fol. 84 b.]
And þai ware coruen fuH clene · & clustrid with gemmes,
Stiȝt staffuH of stanes · stagis & othire.
ȝit was a mynstir on þe mounte · of metall as þe nobiH, also a temple,
Vmbe-gildid with a gardeñ · of goldeñ vynes, and a garden of golden vines.
Was chatrid fuH of chefe frute · of charbocle stanes,
With-outen mesure emaunge · of margrite grete.[4]
þis hame at houes on þis hiH · was in þe hiȝe est,
Forthi ȝit hedirto it hat · þe hous of the soñ. This is the house of the sun.
It was so precious a place · & proudly a-tired,
þare was na place it a pere · bot paradyse selfe.

¶ Vicesimus tertius passus Alexandri.

Þen aires furth ser Alexander · in-to þis athiH temple, Alexander enters the temple,
With Caulus & with cleopas · & othire kidd princes,
And fand a berne in a bedd · bawnand alane, and finds a man in a bed.
Ane of þe graciousest gomes · þat euire god fourmed.
All lemed of his letere · þe loge as of heueñ,

[1] *Or* sonte. [2] *In the margin.* [3] *Substituted for* schis.
[4] *Substituted for* stanes; *see line above.*

For it was gayly begane · *with* goldeñ webbis.
A blewe bleaut o-bofe · brad hi*m* al ouire,
Was browde all *with* brent gold · fuH of bri3t aungels.
The bed is gorgeously adorned. Þe testre trased fuH of tr*o*nes · *with* trimballand wing*is*;
Þe silloure fuH of Seraphens · & othire sere halows,
With curtyns aH of clene silke · & coddis of þe same,
With cu*m*ly knott*is* & *with* koynt*is* · & knopis of p*er*le.
It ware to tere me to teH · þe tirement to-gedire,
Or a nany[1] clerke · þe cost to de-vise;
[Fol. 85.] And he þ*at* rist*is* in þ*at* rowme · þe romance it tellis,
Was ane of þe borliest bernes · þ*at* euire body hade,
With fell face as þe fire · & ferly faire schapeñ,
Balgh brade in þe brest · & on þe bely sklendire.
His cheuelere as chauele[2] · for changing of eld,
The man's beard is white as snow. And as bla3t was his berd · as any bri3t snaw.[3]
Sone as oure prince *with* his peris · his p*er*soñ avyses,
Alexander perceives it is a god. He gesse hi*m* wele to be god · & of na gome kind.
He knelis dou*n* *with* his kni3t*is* · on þe cald erthe,
With haile hi*m* hailsis oñ he3e · & o*þir* hend wordis.
Þe renke *with*in þe redeH · þan raxsils his armes,
Rymed hi*m* fuH renyscHly · & rekind *þir* wordis:
The god salutes him, "Haile, Alex*ander!*" q*uod* þis athiH · "at[4] aH þe erth weld*is*,
and welcomes him. Þ*ou* ert welcu*m*, I-wis · & all þi wale princes.
Sire, þou sall see *with* þi si3t · slike signes, or þ*ou* passe,
As neuire segge vndire soñ · sa3e bot þine ane.
And þ*ou* saH here apoñ happis · or þ*ou* hethen fou*n*de,
Þ*at* neuire hathill vndire heue*n* · herd bot þi-selfe."
"A! A! happy haly here mañ" · q*uod* þis hathiH þañ,
Alexander is surprised to find himself known. "How þ*at* þ*ou* neuynes my name · & þ*ou* me neuire kend?"
"3is, sothly, s*er*," saied þe segge · "þi-selfe & þi werk*is*,
Or any drope of þi delume · drechet had þe erd.
"Do you wish to List þe no3t loke on þe lindis · þ*at* leuys euire mare,

[1] *Sic in* MS. [2] *Or* chaaele; *indistinct.*
[3] *Substituted for* swaw. [4] *In the margin.*

hear the trees of the Sun and Moon tell your fate?" Þ*at* has þe surname of þe soñ · & of þe mone alls;
Þ*at* is to mene, bot of þe mone · & mi3t has to speke,
And teH þe trewly aH þe text · q*uat* tide saH here-eft*ir*?"
"3is, by my croune," q*uod* þe kyng · & kyndly was ioyed,
"Yes, gladly." "Þis word I wald, be 3*our* wiH · no3t aH þe werd leu*ir*!"
"S*er*, waite at þ*ou* be wemles · for woma*n* touching[1],
[Fol. 85 *b*.] Þan may 3e leuely oñ þam̃ loke · & lesten 3*our* wirdis.
For be 3e pure of þ*at* pli3t · 3e may þis place entre,
Þ*at* is þe sette of þ*at* sire · þ*at* sett aH þe werd."
"S*er*, I am clene of þ*at* craft · I knaw wele my-selfe,
Be þ*ou* oure gide to þe greuys · apoñ gods name."
The god rises from the bed, *With* þ*at* bownes hi*m* þ*at* berne · & fra his bed ryses,
Cled aH in clene gold · kirtiH & mantiH,
A grym grisely gome · *with* grete g*ray* lokis;
Al glite*r*ed þe ground[1] · for glori of his wedis.
and bids Alexander lay aside all his arms. "Sirs, 3e þ*at* will has to wend · 3*our* wapens deuoidis,
Nymes of 3*our* nethirgloue · & nakens 3oure leggis,
Pesan, pancere, & plat*is* · aH to 3oure preue clathis,
Iopoñ & iesserand · & radly me folows!"
Þe kyng at his comaundment · *with* his kni3t*is* him spoilis,
He, Alexander, and two others, set out. Putt*is* of to þe selfe serke · senture & othire,
Tak*is* *with* hi*m* s*er* telomew · añ of his princes,
And Antiet, añ athill duke · & eft*ir* hi*m* wend*is*.
Þai ferd furth all in fere · *þir* foure aH to-gedire;
The guide goes through a wood, Þe lede at was þ*ar* ladisman · þe lord & his kni3t*is*
Went þur3e a wale wode[1] · was wondire of to teH,
As it ware hi3tild in þ*at* hill · *with* handis of aungels.
For þare ware tacchid vp trees · þe triest of þe werd,
A hundreth fote to þe hede · þe hi3t was & mare,
containing olives, sycamores, &c. Lyke oleues out of lebany · & lores so grene,
With sichom*ur*es[2] & sipresses · & sedrisse e-blande.
Þ*ar* trekild dou*n* of þa · teres of ie*m*mes,
Boyland out of þe barke · bawme & mirre,

[1] *Here follows an* s *erased.* [2] MS. sicho*ur*mes.

[Fol. 86.]

Of scence & of othire salue · as sechis out of wellis,
þat rase neuire of Aromitike · sike rekils in erthꝫ.
They find a tree bare of leaves,
þai fande a ferly faire tre · quare-oñ na frute groued,
Was voidꝫ of aꝫ hire verdure · & vacant of leues,
A hundreth fote & a halfe · it had of leȝt large,
With-outen bark ouþir bast · fuꝫ of bare pirnes.
upon which is a strange bird.
þar bade a brid oñ a boghe · a-bofe in þe toppꝑ,
Was of a port of a paa · with sike a proude crest,
With bathe þe chekis & þe chauyls · as a chykiñ bridꝫ,
And all gilden[1] was hire gorg · with golden fethirs,
All hire hames be-hind · was hewid as a purpure.
And aꝫ þe body & þe brest · & oñ þe bely vndire
Was finely florischt & faire · with frekild pennys,
Of gold graynes & of goules · fuꝫ of gray mascles.
The king wonders.
þan waitis oñ hire þe wale kyng · & wondire him thinke,
Was in þe figure of hire fourme · noȝt ferlid a littiꝫ.
"Quat loke ȝe?" quod þe ladisman · "do lendis oñ[2] forthire,
He is told it is a phœnix.
ȝone is a fereles foule · a Fenix we calle."
þan[3] bowe þa forthe aꝫ ebland · & to þire treis comes,
þe plants of þe proud soñ · & of þe pale mone.
Their guide tells Alexander to ask what his fate will be.
"Behalds now," quod þis hare mañ · "to þir haly bowis,
And quat þou wiꝫ of þaim to wete · wis in þi saghe.
Appose þaim aꝫ in preuate · bot make na playñ wordis,
And þou may swythe haue a sware · at swike sall þe neuire.
þan may þou gesse in þi gast · it is a gude sprete
þat sends þe sike asouerance[4] · & sees to þi thoȝtis."
The tree of the Sun is like gold.
þire boles was, as þe boke sayes · borly & hiȝe,
þe lind of þe liȝt soñ · louely clethid,

[Fol. 86 b.]

With feylour as of fine gold · þat ferly faire lemes,
The Moon-tree is like silver.
þat oþir loken ouire with leues · as it ware liȝt siluir.
þañ Alexander at þis athiꝫ · askis a demande,
"In quatkyn manir of lede · sall me þir treis sware?"

[1] MS. wing lidin gilden; *with* wing lidin *struck through*.
[2] *In the margin.* [3] MS. þam. [4] MS. asouerante.

"Sothly, ser, þe soñ-tree" · said þe segge þañ,
The Sun-tree begins to speak in Indian, and ends in Greek.
Entris in with yndoyes · & endis in greke;
And mast-quat ay þe mone-tree · þurȝe miȝt of hire kynde,
Quen it kithis vs any carpe · þe contrarie spekis;
For scho begynes aꝫ in grew · & endis in ynde,
The Moon-tree does the contrary.
And þus be twinlepi tongis · teꝫ þai oure wirdis."
þan knelis doun þe[1] conquirour · vn-to þe cald erthe,
And aithire bole eftir bole · blithly he kissis,
Alexander asks if he will return home.
And þoȝt if he suld with þe thra · of aꝫ þe thedes wete,
If he suld move agayñ to Messedoñ · quare his modire duellid.
þañ schogs hire þe soñ-tree · & schoke hire schire leues,
The Sun-tree tells him he will not.
And with a sweȝand swoȝe · þis sware scho him ȝeldis:
"Sire, þou ert lele of ilk lede · þe lorde & þe fadire;
Bot þi sire soile in na side · see saꝫ þou neuire.
For þi modire nor ȝit Messedoñ · þou seȝis þaim na mare."
He then asks about his death.
þañ list him lithe of his lyfe · & of his last ende:
The Moon-tree tells him he will live a year and eight months.
"So maideux," quod þe mone-tree · "þi meere bees na langir
Bot out þis anlepi ȝere · & aftir viij monethis;
þañ sall he duale þe with a drinke · at þou fuꝫ dere traistis."
þañ makis he[2] mournyng & mane · & in his myndꝫ thinkis,
He asks, "who will kill me?"
Qua suld þat trecherous trayne · of tresoñ him wirke.
He said, "hende haly tree" · & halsid hire in armes,
"Quat personñ sall do me depresse · I pray þe me teꝫ?"
The Sun-tree refuses to tell.
"Sire, sothely," said þe soñ-tree · "if I[2] þe sothe neuened,
Qua suld þe wite out of þe werd · & þe þi werdis dele,
þan suld þou slaa þe same segge · & so my sawis faile;
And þat[2] may worthe be na wai · for ay my wordis standis."

[Fol. 87.]

þañ lokid oñ him his ladismañ · said, "lefe of þi wordis,

[1] MS. þe k conquirour. [2] *In the margin.*

For writhing of *þir* wale treeis · & willne *þaim* na mare.
Bot *gray*the þe, gome, oñ gods behalue · and a-gayñ turne,
For ouire þe lemet*is* of *þir* lindis · may no lede founde."
Alexander weeps, Þen bownes agayñ þe bald kyng · baldly he wepis,
Þat he so skitly suld skifte · & fra[1] his skars *ter*me.
So did his princes, sais þe prose · for pete of hi*m*-selfe,
With ȝedire ȝoskingis & ȝerre · ȝett out to grete.
and tells his companions never to say what they have heard. Þañ bedis *þaim* þe barotour · oñ bathe þaire eȝen twa,
Þat þai suld neuire þis note · to nane of his ost neuyñ,
Quat þai beheld in þe hiH · & herd *with* þaire eres ;
And he þan stynt*is* of his stoure · & steris his hert.
"If ȝe will gange," q*uod* þis gide · "a-gayñ to ȝoure knigt*is*,
Moves ȝow to þe nethire-ward · next I it hald."
Þan passis he to þis proud place · & oure kynge leues,
And he gose dou*n* be grece · a-gayñ to his tent*is*.
Alexander laments his fate. *Þar* logis he fra þe late nigt · till efte þe[2] ligt schewis,
With sare sighing*is* & sadd · for sake of his wirdis ;
Costreynes hi*m* *with* his contenance · to *with* his knigt*is* play,
Bot *þat* bot sprang of þe splene · þe sprite was vñ-esid.
Sone as þe day-rawe[3] rase · he risis vp belyue,
Riches hi*m* radly to ride · & remows his ost,
Driues oñ *with* his dukis · day eft*ir* othire,
TiH he was meteñ to þe meere · quare he þe monte entird,
He returns to the plain, *Þat* was þe proucH playñ fild · I proueH ȝow be-fore,
Quare aH þe face of þe filcH · was of fyne goules.
and remains there one day. *Þare* pigt he dou*n* his pauylions · & *with* his princes bidis,
And þe drigt of a day · he duellis in þa costis.
[Fol. 87 b.] Betwene þa styes in a stounH · *þat* strekis þurȝe þe mountis

[1] *Sic ; perhaps read* for. [2] MS. his þe ; *with* his *struck out.* [3] MS. day day rawe ; *but corrected.*

He mas twa pylars[1] dou*n* to pynche · all of playñ marble,
He makes two pillars of marble, And tacchis vp of treid gold · a pelar*e* in þe myddis,
With a *pro*louge in *þat* plate · oñ aithir*e* post writeñ.
"I, Alex*ander* þe athiH · eftire þe date[2]
Of þe prince & *Per*sye & Porr*us* · *þir*e pilars en-haunsid.
Qua list þis lymit ou*ir*-lende · lene to þe left hanH,
For þe rake oñ þe rigt hand · *þat* may na mañ passe."
inscribed with 'a title in prose.' Þis titill was of twa tongis · tane out & *gráuen*,
Of Ebru & of yndoys · & of þire ald lettres,
Of latine & of othire lare · & leues out of grece,
Proudly prikid aH in prose ; · & here a pas endis.

¶ Vicesimus quartus passus Alexandri.

He removes his tents. Now strekis he furtH *with* his sto*ur* · & steris *with* his tent*is*,
He leuys all þe marcH-gats · I neuenH ȝow before,
And ny*m*mes a-nothire oñ þe north · þe next to his kith,
Þat to þe marche of Messedone · was hi*m* mast qweme.
He comes to the Precious Land. Sone was he lent in a lande · a large & a noble,
Preciosa, þe *pre*cious · þe prose þus it callis ;
And clene aH *þat* contre · que*n* þai his come wist,
He receives presents of skins of fishes. *With* sike as pro*vid* in þa p*ar*tis · *present*is hi*m* faire,
Su*m* fellis of fischis · ferly to teH,
Was like as of lep*ard*s · & lions sky*n*nes ;
Su*m* *with* lions oñ lyue · & lamprays sloȝis,
Þat sex cubett*is* clere · was of clene lenghe.
In a city in that land *Þar* was a cite in[3] *þat* side · asisid aH *with* ge*m*mes,
With-outen lyme or laire · a lady it kepid,
[Fol. 88.] A worthi wedow & a wlonk · *with* thre wale childire,
dwelt queen Candace. *Þat* qwene Candace þe clere · was callid in þa bonds.
Now sall I sothely of hire soñs · say ȝow þe names ;
Þe first wos Candoyle callid · a knigt althire-fairest ;
Þe medilmast of þe meñ · was Marcipy hatteñ ;
Þe thrid Caraptus is cald · *þat* kepid aH hire landis.

[1] *A curl over* p. [2] MS. dat*er*e. [3] MS. þ in ; *with* þ *struck out.*

Alexander writes to Candace.

Sone as þe kyng of hire knew · a clause he hire writis,
Añ Image all of athill gold · of Amoñ hire sendis;
To mete him in þe montayns · þat mild he[1] be-sechis,
þat þai miȝt sacrif[is]e samme þar · to his sere driȝtins.
Sone as þis princes of pris · þis pistiH had deuysid,

Candace sends him presents,

þañ sendis scho to him sandis-men · with selid lettris,
With tribute & trouage · & many tried giftis,
And þire þe wordis of hire write · at oñ þese wyse spekis.

and writes a letter.

¶ "To þe kiddest kyng · of kyngs aH othire,
Sire Alexander þe athilest · of Amons strinds,
I, Candace þe conquires · coround of Mede,

"I commend myself to you.

To ȝour honoure with obeyaunce · me ane I comaunde.
For it was purveid a-pert · of þe kyng of heuen,
Pre-desteyned of his prouydence · & of his pure miȝt,
þat ȝe suld pas in-to Pers · & prese it with armes.
Itale, Egipt, & ynde · & aH þire Iles ouire,

Your worth is widely known.

ȝour wirschiþ & ȝour worthenes · [in] aH þe werd sprong[1],
ȝour curtassy, ȝour kniȝthede · & aH ȝoure clene thewis.
And þat with meñ of þe mold · noȝt melid vs alane,
Bot driȝtins & duesses · ȝour dedis declaris.
Forþi like it to ȝour lordschiþ · & lathis noȝt my sawis.

[Fol. 88 b.]

We at ere voide ay of vice · & vacant of syñ,
Quat suld we moue in-to þe montts? · þat mysters bot litiH,

We do not care to adore Apollo;

Outhire Appole to adoure · or any othire driȝtins.
Bot señ it syttis noȝt to oure simpilnes · ȝour saȝe to with-stande,
Ne noþir to mele ne to mote · ȝoure maieste a-gayñ,

but I send you presents,

ȝit sall I send ȝow fra my soile · a sertañ of giftis,
For reuerence of ȝour rialte · & of ȝoure rosid werkis.
I drysse ȝow here a diademe · ȝoure druits to were,
þe gaiest gift vndire god · of gold & of stanes,
And to ȝow selfe of þe same · o serelepy hewis,
A hundreth in a hale heere · hiȝtild with crestis,

[1] MS. ho; *in the margin.*

And twa hundret & teñ · be tale at þe leste,
Of rekanthes of rede gold · railed of gemmes,
With pellicans & pape-ioyes · polischt[1] & grauen,

pelicans, and parrots, all of gold,

With cambs & with coronacles · aH of clene perle,
Thretti gobletis of gold · þe grattest in þe worde,
Fyue hundreth aH of euyñ elde · of Ethyops childire,
Rynoseros,[2] a roghe best · with raggid tyndis.

a rhinoceros,

Añ aȝte to[3] ȝour empire · I fra myn erd wayue,
Berrers of ane Ebyñ-tree · & brilles a thousand,
Foure hundreth Olifants in fere · þis fardiH to bere,

400 elephants,

And thretti hundreth of my thede · þat threuen ere & tame.
I presand ȝow, of panters · fuH of proud mascles,

and 400 panther-skins."

Foure hundreth fellis ȝit to fee · þat fynely ere tewid."
Of lepards & of lionesses · þis lady him sendis,
A purtrayour in preuate · scho prays with þam to pas,

She privily sends a painter to take Alexander's portrait.

And his personele proporcions · in perchemeñ hire bring.
All was done as scho demed · & he[4] hire dere thankis,
And graithis hire giftis agayñ · þe gaiest vndire heuen.
þe payntour presentis his aport · & shoo was proud þeñ,
For scho had depely many day · desyrid him to see.

[Fol. 89.]

þeñ wendis furth hire dere soñ · a litiH dais eftir,
þat was ser Candoile þe kene · þat was hire kidd aire,

Candace's son, Candoil, goes from home.

His wife & his womeñ · & with his wale feres,
Out of þe cite þai soȝt · to solace þar hertis;
þe kyng of Bebrike þe bald · him oñ þe bent metis,

The king of Bebrik assaults him,

With a company clene · of kniȝtis enarmed,
Maynes many of his meñ · & him his make refis,
For he þat lady had loued · many lange wintire.

and robs him of his wife,

He gers a berne oñ a blonke · hire bremely to cast
Before a bald bachelere[5] · oñ a bigg stede;
Scho gaffe skirmand skrikis · at aH þe skowis range,

who shrieks shrilly.

It miȝt a persid any hert · to here how scho wepid.

[1] MS. polischa, *altered to* polischt. [2] MS. lynoseros.
[3] MS. fra to; *with* fra *struck out.*
[4] *In the margin.* [5] MS. bachele, *altered to* bachelere.

Candoil goes to Alexander's tents,

Þan was *ser* Candoile in þ*at* cas · kenely distourbid,[1]
Aires oñ as bely[ue] · to Alex*ander* tent*is*,

to ask his help.

Tho3t he wald sewe to þ*at* sire · & seke hi*m* of gr*a*ce,
If he wald helpe w*ith* his heere · þ*at* hend to reschowe.
Be he þe pauylioñ a-pr*o*chid · it past w*ith*-in euen,
And sone þe wacche-meñ w*ith*-out · quen þai hi*m* þare sawe,

Candoil is led to Ptolemy, the second in command.

þai tuke hi*m*, & to Telomew · titte þai hi*m* ledd,
þe mast praysed of þe pers · bot þe prince selfe.
"Quat dons mañ ert þou?" q*uod* þe duke · "& q*uat* dos þou here,
Quat is þe cause of þi come? · do kith vs þi name."

Candoil tells him of his misfortune.

"Sirs, Candaces soñ þe conquires · & Candoile I hi3t;"
And clene tald hi*m* [of his[2]] care · þe cause aH-to-gedire.
Þan tr*i*nes oñ *ser* Telomew · & fra his tent wyndis,
Comands *ser* Candoile to kepe · in a kni3t*is* warde,
Cairys in-to a cabayne · quare þe kyng ligg*is*,[1]

[Fol. 89 *b*.]

Fand him slowmand oñ slepe · & sleely him rayses,

Ptolemy tells Alexander.

And tellis him of þ*at* tithand*is* · þe tale how itt stand*is*,
How þ*ar* was comyñ slike a kni3t · to craue hi*m* of help̄,
þe soñ of Candace þe quene · þe kepare of Mede;
And how þe Bebrik kyng · had hi*m* his wyfe refid.

Alexander tells Ptolemy to personate him,

"3a, aire a-gayñ," q*uod* Alex*ander* · "in-to þine aweñ tent;
Do oñ þi hede a dyademe · þe derrest at I haue,
A crouñ all of clene gold · & a kyngis mantiH,
A-se3ee þe dou*n* in my sege · as þou my-selfe ware;
Lat coñ a-boute þe my kni3t*is* · & call ye my name,

and to call for him by the name of Antiochus,

w*ith*[3] li3t lions lat*is* · as a lord suld;
Say þi-selfe is my-selfe · & þañ my-selfe caH,
As I ware Antioc þ*at* athill · noñ aghe of me þou stand,
And I sall hi3e to þi hest · as [I] þi hathiH ware.
Quen I coñ to þi call · & knele þe before,
þou saH declare me þe cas · of Candals aunt*ir*,

[1] MS. distrouubid. [2] MS. tald hi*m* hi*m* care.
[3] MS. w, *followed by a blot and* with; *probably* with with.

Befor his p*er*soñ ap*er*t · ilk poynt as he touchid.
Be no3t a-baist quen I bow · ne bede me[1] no3t to ryse,
Bot lat þi semblance be sadd · que*n* þ*o*u þi sa3e 3ildis;
And sai þañ, 'Antioc, myn athiH' · quen þ*o*u has aH tald,

and leave the rest to him.

'Latt se þi witt in þis werke' · & wysely me rede."
þañ[2] trines furth *ser* Telomew · & tyris hi*m* belyue;
In emp*er*our*is* ap*ar*eH · his[3] p*er*soñ he clethis.
And Alex*ander* as belyue · in antioks name,

Alexander pretends to be Antiochus,

Quen he was[4] callid, w*ith* a kni3t · he coms *in* a stounde.
þan tellis to hi*m* *ser* Telomew · þe tale aH-to-gedire,
Be-fore *ser* Candale þe kene · his consaile hi*m* ask*is*.
"Ware[5] it 3o*ur* will," q*uod* þe wee · "wale emp*er*oure,

and offers his advice.

þan wald I fare w*ith* þis freke · his fere to reskowe,
And bid þe Bebrike · oñ bathe twa his e3eñ,

[Fol. 90.]

W*ith*outen bade to þis bri3t · his brid to restore;
And say þ*at* sire, oñ þi[6] be-half · bot he hire sone 3eld,
We saH his cite & him-selfe · synge in-to poudire!"
W*ith* þ*at* inclynes þe kni3t · & kyndly him loues,

Candoil is pleased.

Said, "antiok, of aH men · ay be þ*o*u Ioyed;
It semes þe, for þi sapience · to sit in a tr*o*ne,
And to be cled as a kyng · w*ith* croune & w*ith* sept*ir*!"
þan aires hi*m* furth *ser* Alex*ander* · as Antiok it ware,

Alexander, supposed to be Antiochus,

Cairis oñ w*ith* candoile · & ca3t him his leue,[7]
So3t furth þe same ni3t · & to þe cite wan,
Quare þe Bebrik kyng · w*ith* þe bird lengis.

goes against king Bebrik,

Sone þe wacchis oñ þe wallis · þañ wi3tly ascryes,
Qua þai ware, & of quethen · & quat was þ*ar* errande.
"It is *ser* Candoile," q*uod* þe kyng · "is comy*n* for his spouse;

and says he is come for Candoil's wife.

And I am messangere made · þ*at* mild to delyuire.
þe maist*ir* out of Messedone · 3ow maynly enjoynes,
If 3e 3oure cite wiH saue · to sese hi*m* his brid."
þan was þe burgaige a-baiste · & brest vp þe 3at*is*,

[1] ne bede me *in the margin*. [2] MS. La þañ; *corrected*.
[3] MS. his his; *corrected*. [4] MS. had was; *corrected*.
[5] MS. With; *altered to* Ware. [6] *In the margin*.
[7] MS. wyfe, *altered to* leue.

She is restored.

Of þe palais of þe proud kyng · his *par*amo*ur* hi*m* tuke.
Sire Candoile to oure conquiro*ur* · carpis þire wordis,
And adoures hi*m* for his athiH dede · & Antiok hi*m* calls.

Candoil asks the supposed Antiochus to go with him to Candace.

"I p*ray* þe, prince, *with* me pas · to my p*ray*sid modire,
Þat þou may m*er*ote haue &[1] menske · & mede for þi werk*is*."

Þan was oure kyng of þat carpe · kyndly reioyed,
For him had list oñ hire to loke · many lang[1] wint*ir*.
He said, "aire we to Alex*ander* · & ask*is* hi*m* his leue,

[Fol. 90 *b*.]

And I saH fayñ *with* þe found · & felsyñ þi wiH."
Þan t*r*ines he to s*er* Telomew · at in[2] his trone sitt*is*,

Alexander pretends to ask leave to go.

Laȝt his leue at þe lede · as he his lorde ware.
Þis kid he for a coyntise · & kest slike a wile,
Lest he ware knawyñ for þe kyng · þe kniȝt for to blinde.

Candoil and Alexander ascend a hideous hill.

Þan caires he furthe *with* Candoile · vp at a cliffe wyndis,
A hidous hiH & a hiȝe · þat to þe heue*n* semed,
Was loken all in lange lindis · like to þe cedres,
Growand full of gernetts · & gracious frutes.
Þare fand þai bery-buskis · & braunches *with* g*ra*pis,
Þat vnnethes bere miȝt a berin · a bole oñ his schuldire.
W*ith* hesils hild of hodere · cloud lang[1] þa appills,
And aH þe woddis fuH of wolfes · & of wild apis.
Þai bow vp to a[2] banke · & þe burgh neȝes;

Candace hears they are coming,

And Candace þe conquires · que*n* scho þe cas heris,
How bathe hire barne & his brid · was broȝt hame sond,
Þan was scho glad in hire gast · & gretly reioysed.
In-to a chambre[3] scho chese · & changid hire wedis;

and attires herself richly.

A Robe aH of rede gold · & þan a riche mantiH,
A croune & a corecheffe · clust*er*t *with* ge*m*mes,
And [cam] dou*n* of hire closere · *with* kniȝt*is* hi*m* to mete.
A grete gate be degrece · agayñ þai*m* scho found*is*;
"Kys me, s*er* Candoile" · & clappis hi*m* in armes,

[1] *Above the line.* [2] *In the margin.*
[3] *The* h *is above the line.*

She welcomes her son Candoil.

Said, "welcu*m* be þou, wale soñ · & þou, my wale doȝt*ir*!
And I am glad of ȝoure gest · as gode geffe me ioye."
Sire Alex*ander* hire a-vises · & aH his hert liȝt*is*,
Him þoȝt hire like at a loke · his lady his modire.

Alexander is pleased with Candace.

Scho was so faire & so fresche · as faucoñ hire semed,
Añ elfe out of añ-othire erde · or ellis añ AungeH.
Hire palais was fuH precious · þof it p*ar*ades ware,
Plied ou*ir* *with* pure gold · aH þe plate-rofes,

[Fol. 91.]

And þat was ioyned fuH of gemes · & of ioly stanes,
W*ith* breme blasenand bemes · briȝt as þe soñ.

Alexander enters a large hall,

þe kyng w*ith* dame Candace · þe casteH he entres,
Silis in *with* þat semely · in-to a somere-haH,
A strenthe, was stiȝtild all of stagis · þe stithest of þe werd,
Was nane so comly a close · vndire þe can[o]pe of heuen,
þe bild was aH of brent gold · þe beddis of þe same,

full of precious stones and adorned with gems.

Piȝt fuH of pentests · & oþire proude stanes,
Of Onycles & orf*ray*s · & orient p*er*les,
And *with* þire p*re*cious piers · of p*ar*adise stremes,
Bathe þe benkis & þe bordis · bett of þe noble,
Smeteñ fuH of smaragdins · & oþ*ir* small ge*m*mes,
Of Acats & of Amatist*is* · & adamants fyne,
Calcidoynes & crisopaces · & oþ*ir* clere bees.

The pillars are of porphyry.

þe pilars ware of purfire · polischt & heweñ,
W*ith* gomes grouelings of gold · g*ray*thid for þe nanes,
Fondand on aH foure · on fote & oñ handis,
Buskid vndire þe baise*n*s · to bere vp þe postis.

A crystal river runs through the hall.

þare ran a reuire, as I rede · vndire þat riche hame,
Was neu*ir* na cristaH so clere · as was þa clere strand*is*.
þe kyng & Candace þe quene · & Candeile hire aire,
þe same day in þe sale · was se*r*ued to-gedire.

Next day Candace takes Alexander to her chamber.

Scho sesis him on þe se*c*unde day · [& sone] *with* hi*m* laches,
Raȝt hi*m* by þe riȝt hand · & raik*is* to a chambre,
Was p*ar*raillid aH of plate-gold · p*ar*iet & oþire,
W*ith* stoute starand stanes · þat stremed as þe soñ.

Was *þar* na leuyand lede · ne lyfe bot þam ane.
And þan scho laches him be-lyfe · & ledis him forthire,
In-to a clochere *with* a kay · þe clennest of þe werde,
Was sammed aH of sipris · & seder-tables.

¶ Vicesimus quintus passus Alexandri.

[Fol. 91 *b*.]

This room turned round by concealed machinery.

It begins to move.

Candace calls him by his true name.

Alexander turns pale.

Candace shews her portrait of him.

When he sees this, he trembles.

She tells him he

Þis selere was be sorsry · selcuthely foundid,
Made for a mervaH · to meeue *with* engine;
Twenti tamed Olifants · *tur*ned it a-boute,
Quirland aH oñ queles · que*n* þe quene entres.
Quen þai ware sett *þar* in sameñ · oñ silkin webbis,
Sone begynnes it to gaa · & gretly he wondres.
"Ware slike a wondire in oure marche · of Messedone,"
he said,
"It ware a daynte to deme · for any duke oute!"
Þañ answars him þis athiH quene · & Alex*ander* him
callid,
"Mekill gretti*r* it ware to 3ow of grece · & to[1] gomes
here."
Þan stemes he *with* þe stoute kyng · & stiggis *with* his
name;
His chere out of chere hew · it changis in-to pale,
Þan has *þat* hende him by þe hand · & hent vp a la3ti*r*.
In to A *preue* p*arlour* · þai passe bathe to-gedire,
And *þar* in p*er*chement depayntid · his p*er*soñ scho
schewid.
Said, "se þi-selfe a sampiH · *þat* I þe sothe neuyñ!"
As fast as he oñ þis figo*ur* · festid his si3t,
AH falowis his face · & his flesche trimblis;
"Qui fadis so þi faire hew?" · said þe faire lady
"Þe werreo*ur* of aH þe werd · & wasto*ure* of ynde,
Þou *þat* has brettend oñ þe bent · þe barbrins folke,[2]
Þe pepiH out of Panty · þe Persens & þe Medis.
Loo, now, þe here *with*outen hi3t · in-to my handis sesed,

[1] *In the margin.* [2] MS. fokke.

is in a woman's power now.

[Fol. 92.]

Alexander is enraged, and gnashes his teeth,

because he has no sword.

If he had one, he would kill her and then himself.

Candace assures him he is safe.

She takes him back to her sons.

Caratros says he must kill Alexander,

or his wife will go mad.

Bot in a womans ward · for aH þi wale dedis!
Ser, wete it wele 3oure worthenes · *þat* for na wele here
Suld neuire no hathiH vndire heuen · [be] to hi3e losed;
For aH þe welthe of þe werd · ware it a wee grantid,
It wit*is* a-way at a wapp̄ · as þe wynd t*ur*nes."
Þan chawfis him *þat* chiftane · & *with* him-selfe chidis,
All if he spared to spek · his sprete he rehet*is*.
As any terand for tene · he *with* his tethe gnaistes,
And hitter*ly* on ilk side · his heued he declines.
"Qui colkins þou, *ser* conquiro*ur* · & crabbis so þi saule,
Quat may þi vertu now a-vaile · & aH þine vayñ pride?"
"I swete," q*uod* þe swete kyng · "*þat* I na swerd haue,
For I na wapeñ haue, I-wis · my writh *with* to venge!"
"Now, bald barato*ur* oñ bent · if þou a brand hade,
Quat prowis mi3t þi p*er*soñ · a-preue in þis stounde?"
"For I vnwarly," q*uod* þe kyng · "am to 3oure wiH
taken,
I suld þe slaa þare þou sitt*is* · & þan my-selfe eft*ir*!"
"Now, be my crouñ," q*uod* þe quene · "as kni3tly þou
swaris;
Bot neu*ir*-þe-latt*ir* 3it be li3t · & lete of þi sorowe.
For þou has bro3t my soñ wife · of bebricans handis,
And I sall surely þe saue · vnsesid of þe berbrens.
For ware it knaweñ of þi come · þai walld þi cors schind,
For opressing of þe gud prince · Porr*us* of Ynde.
And Caratros my kid soñ · has couplid him to wyfe
þe do3t*ir* of þis dere kynge · *þat* þou to dethe bro3t."
With *þat* scho sesis þis sire · & to þe sale ledes,
Sendis eft*ir* hire sons · & sobirly þaī tret*is*
Þis athiH of *ser* Alex*ander* · as þai were aH haldeñ,
At þai suld menske him & mirthe · & make him at esee.
"I knaw it wele," q*uod* Caratros · "my comly modire,
þat he my brothirs[1] brid · has out of bands leuird,
& how þe kyng, be *þat* cause · has to þis kith sent;
Bot my wyfe will ga wode for wa · bot I þis wee spiH.

[1] MS. brothird.

Ne ware he a messangere · & ȝit mare for ȝoure-selfe,
Sure suld him sowe for his sake · at him has sent hedire.
[Fol. 92 b.] So saH his maistir, & I may · be my dire saule, 5349
For he þe fadire of my fere · has in þe feld drepid."
"A!" quod þis lade, "leue soñ · if we þis lede sloȝe,
Suld we vs nymme any name · oȝt bot of sorowe?"
Candoil says he must save him. "ȝa, Cartros," quod Candoile · "þis kniȝt has me saued,
And I sal[1] lede him on lyue · vn-to his lord tentis."
'Quat baitis þou me so, my brothire · with þi breme wordis, 5355
List[2] ye we stryfe in þis stede · & strike aithire oþir?"
The brothers quarrel. "þat kepe I noȝt," quod Candoile · "ȝit for na cas neuend,
Bot if þe langis to þat laike · lo me here redy!"
Candace tells Alexander to pacify them. þan callis Candace þe kniȝt · in consaille him takis,
Sees hire sons wald him sla · & radly scho pleynes;
'Lord Alexander, þine are · quare is þi wittis? 5361
I prai þe for þi prouidence · pesse now my childire."
þan bows þis baratour · þire brethire to stere,
He finds the brothers fighting. Fand caratros & candoile · at knyfes to-drawen,
Bad, "blyns, bernes of ȝoure brathe · & of ȝour breme wordis; 5365
ȝe fare bot with folite · quare ere ȝoure fyue wittis?"
Alexander pacifies Caratros, þan carps he to ser Caratros · & kythis on þis wyse,
Ser, if þou lessen my life · na lowere þou wynnes.
For Alexander of his awen · has many athiH kniȝtis
þat ere mare sekire at a-say · þan slike seuen houndreth.[3]
For if I ware fallen fey · him forced bot littiH. 5371
saying that it is not worth his while to kill him. For ware I a tresour to þat tulk · trowe wele þi-selfe,
þat me so sodanly þat sire · had noȝt sent hedire,
With-outen wees me to warde · nay, wene þou þat neuir.
Bot if þe list oñ þat lede · loke with þine eȝen, 5375
Sire Alexander þe athiH · þine aldfadire bane,
þe thare bot graunt me to geue · quat guds as I craue,

[1] *In the margin.* MS. Lift.
[3] MS. henndreth, *altered to* houndreth.

And I saH prestly þat prince · present in-to þi handis." [Fol. 93.]
þan ware þire brethire fuH blithe · þus ware þai bath pesed, 5379
Candoil thanks Alexander. And Candoile callis to þe king · & kindly him thankis,
"Had I ȝow ay with me here · happy ware I þan,
þan wald I wene with ȝour witt · to wast aH my fais."
Candace gives him a crown covered with gems. With þat scho kende him a crouñ · clustrid with gemmes,
With Amatists & Adamands · & an athiH mantiH,
Sterind & stiȝt fuH of stanes · sithin stelis to him cussis,
With othire preuates him plesis · bad pas oñ with hele.
Nowe aires furth oure conquirour · & candoile him gidis,
Driues furth all þe dai · till doun was þe soñ, 5388
And so þai come till a caue · was out of course hoge,
Be-twene twa hillis in a hope · & herberd all niȝt.
Candoil and Alexander come to a magic cave. "Sire," quod candoile þe kene · & to þe kynge said,
"All spritis in þis spelonk · here speke þai to-gedire,
Here is þaire comoñ consaile;" · & þis þe kyng heris,
Makis he gracis to his goddis · & þan þe grofe entres.
Quen he was douñ in þe depe · he saȝe a dym cloude
Full of starand sternes · and stiȝtild in þe myddest
A grete grysely god · oñ a gay trone, 5397
þat liȝt lemand eȝen · as lanterns he had.
Oure mode kyng was so maied · myndles him semed:
An oracle calls Alexander by name. "Haile, Alexander þe hende" · quod þat hiȝe driȝtin.
"Sire, qua ere ȝe?" said oure ser · "Synches I hiȝt;
And to my powere vndire-putt · is aH þe playñ werd.
For þi name a cite has þou sesid[1] · bot þou settis me na temple." 5403
Alexander is told he shall never return to Macedon. "Sire, if I miȝt merke to Messedone · a Maistir I þe hiȝte;
SaH nane be like it in na lede;" · "nay,[2] lange noȝt þar-eftir!
þou saH neuir loke on þat land · ga lawere & be-hald."
þañ kend him quare anothire cloude · was fuH of briȝt sternes, 5407

[1] MS. sesis. [2] MS. nay nay.

[Fol. 93 *b*.]

And quare a-nothire grym̄ god · was *gra*ythid oñ a sege.
"Sire, quat ert þou," said þe segge · "*ser* Sirapis, I-wis;
þe grond & þe begininge · of all þe godis oute."

Alexander asks Serapis who is to slay him.

"Now I be-seke þe, Serapis," · said oure kyng' þañ,
Quat segge is sett me to slaa · þe sothe þou me teH."
"Sire, I haue neuend þe or now · *þat*, ware *þat* note knaweñ 5413
Till any douth of quat dome · þeñ died I for sorowe.

Serapis will not tell him.

þou has[1] a blisfuH burȝe · biggid to þi name,
Quare many bernes sall debate · & bald em*perouris*,
þare saH þi berynes be bildid · & þi body graueñ." 5417
þan come vp oure kidd kyng' · and fra þe kniȝt p*artis*,
þus kaires he fro candele · bad, 'kepe wele hi*m* driȝtin.'

Alexander and his men come to a valley full of snakes,

Moues him oñ to his meny · & oñ þe morne eft*ir*
þañ dryues he furth w*ith* his dukis · in-to a deyne entris,
A vale fuH of vermyñ · & all of vile neddirs. 5422

all with crowns on their heads.

And þai ware crokid & coy*n*nt · w*ith* coroun*s* oñ hede,
As it smytten [ware] aH of smythis · of smaragdens fine.
ȝit ware þai pasturde of pep*ir* · as þe prose tellis, 5425
Of gyloffre & of gingere · els ioyed þai*m* na fodis.
For all ouire couerd' was þe coue · claggid w*ith* spices,
þat mak*is* þire wormes so wele · & wond in þaire kyndis,
þat ilka twelmonth a *tur*ne · þai t*ur*nay to-gedire, 5429
Ilkane mellis w*ith* his make · & so þare many dies.

The snakes kill some of his men.

þañ pas þai thethen tiH a place · of p*er*lious bestis,
W*ith* clouen clees, sais þe clause · as kynd of þe hoggs.
þai ware thike & threuen[2] wele · thre foote o brede,
Quare-w*ith* þai faȝt w*ith* in-fere · & fellid of his kniȝt*is*,
þai ware so brefe at a blisch · borely & grym̄.

Griffins also appear.

Oñ ilka best a bares hede · fuH of breme tuskis, 5436
þus ware þai fo*ur*med aH be-fore · & farand be-hynde
Like as it ware lep*ar*ds · & lions w*ith* tailis.
ȝit was þ*ar* gedird out of gripis · & griffons emange,
þat felly flappid at þe faces · of þe feH erles, 5440

[1] MS. *inserts* biggid, *struck through*.
[2] MS. theeuen, *altered to* threuen.

[Fol. 94.]

And eu*ir* ilka best was so bigge · of body & of wyng',
þat he miȝt bere away a blonke · & a kniȝt armed.
þe kyng was oñ his couresere · to comforth his duk*is*,

Alexander mounts Bucephalus,

Oñ þe bald bucifaloñ · eblande þai*m* he rydis,
Prekis fra place in-to place · bad, "pluk*is* vp̄ ȝo*ur* hert*is*," 5445
And cherischest his chiftans · w*ith* chelous wordis.

and encourages his archers.

He bald*is* of his bachelers · & his bowmen he cheris,
To flay w*ith* flanes of þe fowlis · & þe feH best*is*. 5448
And it was done at his dome · w*ith*-drewe þai na lang*ir*,
Bath archere & alblast*is* · & all þai*m* a-sailed.

A great battle.

þe bataile oñ bathe half*is* · brymly begynnys,
Oure seggis & þe Synagyns · semblid vnfaire;

The griffins tear men out of their saddles.

Gripis gripis of oure gomes · out of gilt sadils, 5453
Tuk þam̄ in þaire talons · & titt fra þaire blonk*is*.
Bot ȝit oure kyng w*ith* his kniȝt*is* · so kenely defendis,
And w*ith* his ginge out of grece · *þat* he þe gree wynnes.

The army comes to a great river full of reeds,

Bot ȝit was herid of his here · twa hundreth & ouire,
þus gafe vp̄ þe gaste · w*ith* gold oñ þai heles.
þan ferd he furth tiH a flode · & *þat* a ferly hoge, 5459
Twenti forelang' & ferre · it had of fuH breede,
And aH þe strands of þe streme · stode fuH of stitH reedis,
Quare-of he beds at a braid · hi*m* bargis to make.

which they cross in barges.

Que*n* it was hewyn at his hest · w*ith* heggis ouire-foldeñ,
þan ent*ir*s in of his erles · & ouire þe ee passis. 5464

Alexander receives presents of shells and seal-skins.

And aH *þat* kith of oure kyng · que*n* þai his come wist,
þai perid to hi*m* w*ith* p*re*sands · þe proud*is* of *þat* land'.
Sum spends oñ him of spon[ges][1] · a sparles nounbre,
Of mirre & of mekiH quat · milke-quite[2] 5468
Sum meñ muscles hi*m* mett · & w*ith* so mekiH schellis,
þat sex pond miȝt of paise · haue ni of watre.
Sum of seelis of þe see · sendis to hi*m* cotis,

[1] MS. þ spon, *followed by a small blank space. The Latin text has* spongias.
[2] *The line is incomplete; add*—'& purpre.' *Latin text*, albas et purpureas.

[Fol. 94 b.]

Sum bees at ware blode-rede · & borely wormes
As large as a mans lege · & lamprays of weȝt
Twa hundreth pond ay a pece · & past it be fifty.

In that river were creatures like women,

ȝit was þar wonand in þis watir · as women it semed,
þat ferly faire ware of face · with haare to þaire heelis.
Ouire-stride þar any strange mañ · or be þir strandis sailed,
þai droȝe þam̄ doun in-to þe depe · & drowned þaim for euire,

who drew men down under water, and drowned them.

Or els þai tillid þaim to þe trees · as þe buke tellis,
And gert þaim laike with þaim so lange · till þaim þe life wantis.

Two of them are caught.

Oure meñ tuke of þaim twa · was teñ foote of hiȝt,
Als blaȝt as any briȝt snaw · & as biche sons[1] tothed.

Vicesimus sextus passus Alexandri.

Alexander encloses two and twenty kings,

þan aires furth ser Alexander · & with his arte closis
Of terands of þir tartaryns · twa & twenti kyngs.
He stekis þam̄ vp with þar stoures · in a straite lawe,
And I saH neuen ȝow þar names · if ȝe þaim neuire herd.

including Gog and Magog.

Gogg & magogg þe grete · he with þir gomes pyndis,
Agekany & Anafrage · & Almade bathe,
Sire Camour & ser Cacany · with aH þar kidd ostis,
And ane ser Clambert þe kene · was kyng of þer ostis;
Gamarody þe goblyn · a-nothire gryñ[2] sire,
Marthyney þe miȝtfuH · & Magen his fere,
Appedanere, Olaathere · & Alane þe grete,

Names of all the kings.

And ane ser naþy onone · he in þe nabb speris.
He lockis in ane ser limy · with a laith mey[n]he,
And raryfey, a riche ray · he in þe roche stoppis,
Sire Filies, a fell kyng · with aH his fers kniȝtis,
And ane ser Bedwyñ þe baldᵈ · with many briȝt helmes.

[Fol. 95.]

Arteneus ane athiH kemp̄ · als-so he in-parkis,
And ane ser Tarbyñ, a tulke · with many toore thousandis;

[1] *Or* sous. [2] *Read* grym.

Sire Saltary, a-nothire sire · now is þe sowme reckend.
All þire he closis in þat cliffe · & cairis on forthire
To þe occyañ at þe erthes ende · & þar in an Ilee he heres

Alexander comes to the ocean at the world's end.

A grete glauir & a glaam · of grekin tongis.
þañ badᵈ he kniȝtis þaim vnclethe · & to[1] þat kithe swym̄,
Bot all at come in-to þat cole · crabbis has þaim drenchid.
þañ sewis furth þat souerayñ · ay by þa salt strandis
Toward þe settynge of þe soñ · in sesoñ of wintir;

He turns to the west,

Sexti dais with his sowme · sadly he ridis,
Raȝt oñ to þe reede See · & ridᵈ þare his[2] tentis.

and reaches the Red Sea.

þare was a miȝti montayne · at to þe mone semedᵈ,
He gessis it gaynir to god · þan to þe grounde vndire,
And slike a fonned fantasy · þan feHt in his hert,
How þat he liftid miȝt be fra þe lawe · vn-to þe liȝt sternes.

He wishes to ascend in the air.

þan made he smythis to gaa smert · & smethe him a chaiere
Of blake ireñ & of bigge · & bynde it with cheynes,

He has an iron chair made,

A sekire sege in to sitt · & sett him on-loft.
And foure Griffons full grym̄ · he in[1] þat graythe festes;

to be raised by four griffins.

He makis to hinge ouir þaire hede · in hokis of ireñ
Flescḥ on ferroim̄ þaim fra · at þai miȝt noȝt to reches,[3]
To make þaim freke to þe fliȝt · þat fode for to wyñ,
For þai ware fastand be-fore · halden for þe nanes.
Now is he woñ þurȝe þar wingis · vp̄ to þe wale cloudis;

They bear him up to the clouds,

So hiȝe to heuen þai him hale · in a hand-quile,
Midil-erth bot as a mylnestane · na mare to him semed,
And aH þe watir of þe werd · bot as a wrethen neddire.
þe vertu of þe verray god · envirounis[4] him swythe,
And þañ þai feH oñ a fild · as ferre fra his ost

and descend in a field.

As any freke miȝt founde · in fiftene daies,
And he vnhurt with mikiH vnhome · he to his ost wynes.

[Fol. 95 b.]

[1] *In the margin.* [2] MS. is his; *with* is *struck out.*
[3] *Read* reche. [4] *The first* i *above the line.*

A-nothire wondirfuH witt · ȝit worthid in his hert,
He wishes to dive in the sea. How he miȝt seke doun sounde · in-to þe see bothom̄,
To see quat selcuthe is seet · in þe salt watir, 5533
How many kind of creatours · þat in þe cole duellis.
He has a glass box made, strengthened with iron, Þan gert he gomes for to gang · & grayth̄ him a tonn̄
Of grene glitterand glas · with gerrethis of ireñ,
Þat he miȝt sitt in him-selfe · & with his seȝt persee
Ane & othire & aH þing · at outwith it lengid. 5538
Sone was it blawen at a braide · & broȝt him be-forne,
and supported on chains. AH boun as he badd · & bunden with cheynes.
Þan of his bald bachelers · þe biggist out callis,
And raȝt to þaim þire rekenthis · to rewle & to hald.
He makis a conand with his kniȝtis · & kend þaim þe time, 5543
Howe lange him likid fra þe lande · to leng in þe depe,
He enters the box, and is let down. In at a wicket he[1] went · & wynly it speris;
Princes pointid it with pik · & he þe plunge entres.
Þare saȝe he figours of fischis · & fourmes diuerse, 5547
Þat kend he neuir so many kindis · ne of so qwaynt hewis.
He sees strange four-footed fishes. Sum ferd all oñ foure feete · & farand as bestis,
Bot quen þai blischt oñ þis berne · þan bade þai na langir.
And oþir sellis[2] he saȝe · at sai wald he neuir, 5551
Þat ware vnlikly to leue · to any man wittis.
Sone so þe setnes was gane · þat him-selfe made,
He is drawn up again. Þai dreȝe him vp to þe drye · & he na dere sufird.
Þan raikis he by þe reede see · & rides ay þe sannd,
Ferly ferre with his[3] folke · &[4] ficchid his tentis, 5556
Strange beasts attack his men. Þare fande he bestis oñ þe brym̄ · with bemes as sawis,
Þat ware as bitand breme · as bladis of swerdis.
Þai sett in a sadd sowme · & sailid his kniȝtis,
Porris doun of his princes · & persys þar schildis, 5560
[Fol. 96.] ȝit fellid his folke of þaim fey · foure score hundreth̄,
And foure hundreth, & ferre · be fifti, þai drepid.

[1] *In the margin.* [2] MS. seer sellis; *with* seer *struck out.*
[3] MS. he, *altered to* his. [4] MS. *repeats* &.

He comes to a great desert. Þan driues he þethin with his dukis · in-to desert landis,
Is riȝt betwene þe reede see · & Arrabie costis, 5564
A wilsom wast & a wild · & wons fuH of neddirs,
And þai ware hedously hoge · & horned as Tupis.
Þai turred doun of his tulkis · & with þar tyndis sloȝe;
Bot þe dreȝest deele of þaim died · of his dukis handis.
He fights against various strange beasts. Þan past he to a-noþir place · & piȝt doun his tentis,
And fand a bataiH of bestis · as breme as þe first. 5570
Þai ware of figour & of fourme · as fendis of heH,
With heuy hedis & hoge · as horses it were.
Some are like fiends. And þai ware tacchid fuH of tethe · as tyndis ere of harows,
And feH flammes as of fire · floȝe fra þaire mouthes.
A selly sowme of his seggis · was slane or he wist,
And he þañ hertis his here · biddis, "hewis oñ, my childire;" 5576
And ferly ferd of his folke · was in þe fild strangild.
Bot aH þe dreȝe of þa deuels · þai drenchid or þai past.
He comes to a plain. Þan fondis he furth with his folke · in-to a fild entris,
And þar he logis with his lordis · & lengis for a quile.
For slike a feH infirmite · was in his hors bundeñ,
Bucephalus dies. Bucifalon þe bald stede · þat he for bale dies. 5582
Þe berne blischis oñ his blonke · & seȝes his breth faile,
Sighis selcuthly sare · & sadli he wepis,
For he had standen him in stede · in stouris fuH hard,
Woñ him wirschip in were · fra many wathe saued.
Alexander laments over him, Þe kynge to þis carioñ · he castis his eȝen,
Said, "fare wele, my faire foole · þou failid me neuire!
SaH now þi flesch here be freteñ · with fowlis & with wormes, 5589
Þat has so doȝtyly done? · nay, driȝtin for-bede!"
and builds him a costly tomb. Þañ bilds he þare a berynes · þis beste in-to ligg,
Of schene schemerand gold · as it a schrine ware,
A tombe as a tabernacle · & tildis vp̄ a cite 5593
[Fol. 96 b.] In reuerence of þat riche stede · & eftir him it callis.
He comes to a great river; Þan ridis he to a Reuere · a ruyde & a hoge,

Detiraty þe depe · þe meñ þare it callis ;
Fyue thousand Olifants in feree · þa frithmeñ him broȝt,
A hundreth *Mille*[1] heuy chargis · ware heweñ for þe were.

and then to a palace of Xerxes.

Þan pas he to a proude place · a palas of ioye,
Of Sexis, at sum time · was senyour of Persy.
Þar fand he garettis aH of gold · & gildiñ chaumbres,
And many a miracle in þe mote · þat miche ware to reken.

He finds white birds,

Þar fand þai bridis in þa bilds · borely & quite,
Of feþir frescH as any fame · as ere þir fediH dowfis,
Þat see wald of a sekemañ · or any sorow ailid,
Queþir he suld wariscH of þat waa · or of þe werd turne.

who can tell whether a sick man will recover.

For if þai blithly vp blenkid · & blischt oñ his face,
Þañ suld he couir of his[2] care · men knew by þe takens ;
And if þai chaungid opoñ chaunce · his chere to be-hold,
With-outeñ doute he was dede · þañ durid he na langir.

He conquers Babylon, and kills king Nabuzardon.

Now bowis furth þis baratour · & Babiloyñ he wynnys,
Brettenes þe bald kyng · & bringis him of lyue,
Ane Nabizanda was named · & a noble kniȝt,
Was ane þe proudest of his pirs · & prince of his ward.
He lengis in lithis & in lee · to his lyues ende,

He writes home to his mother and to Aristotle.

A seuen monethis in sonde · & sende out a pistiH
To his modire in-to Messedone · & to his maistir als
Of his auntours, of his angwisch · & of his athiH werkis,
And AristotiH be-lyue · him anothire writis.
"To þe kyng of kyngis," quod þis clerke · "comande I myselfe.
Sire, quen I waitid oñ ȝour werkis · I wex aH affraid

[Fol. 97.]

Sum grayne of godhede, I gesse · was growen ȝow within ;

Aristotle's reply.

For þou has said þat neuir did segge · ne saȝe bot þine ane ;

[1] I. e. thousand. [2] *In the margin.*

ȝit miȝt neuir, I lofe oure lorde · my lege, ȝow withstande ;
Sire, blissid be aH þi bachelers · at þe in[1] bales helpid !"
And now fynes here a fitt · & folows a-nothire.

Vicesimus septimus passus Alexandri.

Alexander builds a throne in Babylon.

Oure bold kyng in Babiloun[2] · nowe bildis vp a trone,
þe postis with aH þe apurtynance · as pure as þe noble,
Þat was so wondirly wroȝt · of werkis diuerse,
Þat slike a sege vndire soñ · was neuire sene eftir.
So grete garisons of gold · þe grekis in broȝt,
þe Medis & þe Messedons · many horsis chargid,
Þat þai out of ynde & els-quare · with olifants lede ;
It wald haue wlated any wee · þat welth to be-hald.

It was 12 cubits high, with 12 images.

Twelfe cubettis fra þe cald erth · he castis it oñ hiȝt,
And xij degreces aH of gold · for gate vp̄ of lordis ;
And twyse sex Semylacris · sesid he þar-vndire,
Þat held oñ hiȝe with þaire handis · aH þir heuy werke.
And þar was grauyn in þos gomes · with grekin letteris,
And titild in þe tried names · of his twelfe princes.
With ilk a statute þat þar stude · stoutely enarmed,
And euer-ilk a personñ a prince · payntid was eftir.

The seat was of precious stones.

AH þe sete of þe sege · was smaragdyns fyne,
Off tried topaces & trewe · tyrid was þe wawes,
A tabernacle ouir þe trone · tildid vp̄ oñ[3] loft,
And þan with stanes of ilka state · waH þe stoure clustrid.
A charbocle as a chasse · was in þe chefe boH,
Þat brynt in bely-blind niȝt · as briȝt as þe soñ,

[Fol. 97 b.]

With Imagis vndire in ilka nend · & Impid in þe names
Of aH þe prouynces & þe places · þat he was prince ouire.

It had inscriptions in various languages,

And þai ware visid aH in versis[4] · in variant lettirs,
Sum in latens lare · sum langage of grece,

[1] *In the margin.* [2] MS. Baliloun.
[3] *In the margin.* [4] MS. verser.

Assisid aH of sex foote · & sett in betwene,
Ay thre paire oñ a plate · qware a poynt ristis.
with the names of all the countries he had conquered; Now sall I neuyñ 3ow þe names · note 3e þe wordis;
¶ þe pepiH out of Panthi · is plant in first',
Pruto, Picard, & Pers · & Pamphalie[1] bathe,
such as Portugal, Portingale & Paiters · it paies me trouage,
Arabia, Arrabe & Artoyes · and Assie þe mare,
Abbeoñ & Aufrike · & Acres anothire,
Ethiopia, Effosyñ & Ethiops · þire ebrues folke;
AH Ermony & Ewrope · enterely me serues,
England and India, and Ireland, Ingland, Itaile, & Yndee · & Ireland costis,
Meede & Mesopotayme · & Massedoyne eke;
Turke, Tuscane, & Troy · and Tartary[2] clene,
Surre, SysyH, & Saarde · & Syres aH ouire;
Greece and Gascony, Gyane, Garnad, & Grece · & Gascoyne I haue,
Baxe, Bayoñ, & Burdeux · & Bretayñ þe graunt,
Capidos, & Calde · þe Canony pepiH,
Russia and Cornwall, Russe, Romayñ & Ramys · a rent þai vs 3eld.
AH Calabree & Corwaile · oure coroun obieñ,
Bathe naples & Norway · þire Nauernes aH,
Hungary and heathen Spain, þe beeris[3] out of Hungry · & out of haythen Spayñ,
Frigie, Flandres, & Fraunce · & Femony vs loutis,
Ascalioun, & Arcagee · all of vs haldis;
Tyre, Thessaly, and Palestine. Tiree, & Tasse, & Tessale · oure tributars ere,
Poliponens, & Pentapoł · & Palestyne þe riche.

5653 5657 5661 5665 5669 5677

[*Here ends the fragment in the* Ashmole MS.]

[1] MS. Pamplalie. [2] MS. Tartasy.
[3] *Sic; perhaps for* heeris.

The remainder of the story may be briefly paraphrased as follows from the Historia de Preliis :—

Alexander next causes a golden crown to be made, adorned with precious stones, with an inscription.

A certain woman in Babylon is delivered of a monstrous child,

the upper half of which is born dead. A soothsayer tells Alexander that it signifies his approaching death.

At that time there was a man in Macedon named Antipater, who conspired with others to kill Alexander. He designed to do so by poison.

Antipater procures very strong poison, and sends it to his son Cassander. Cassander instructs his brother Roboas (whom Alexander loved, but had chidden for a slight fault) how to convey the poison to Alexander.

Alexander makes a great feast in Babylon. Roboas puts the poison in a cup, and hands it to Alexander, who drinks it, and cries out, "Help, help!" In falling, his sword pierces his liver; yet he rises again, and bids his guests continue the feast.

Alexander asks Cassander for a feather, to cause vomiting, and Cassander hands it to him, dipped in poison, which only increases the malady. Alexander passes a sleepless night, during which his lamp goes out. He crawls along on hands and knees to drown himself in the Euphrates. Roxana stops him, and replaces him in his bed, lamenting. Alexander sends for a notary to make his will.

The will instructs Aristotle to give a thousand talents of gold to the priests of Egypt. If Roxana gives birth to a boy, he is to be emperor; if to a girl, she is to be empress, married to some princely Macedonian, who is to be made emperor. Let Ptolemy have Egypt and marry Cleopatra; let Cleother have Ethiopia, Antiochus Syria, Arrideus Peloponnesus, Aristus India, Nicanor Seleucia, Ysmachas Hungary, Haulus Armenia, Lyochus Dalmatia and Sicily, Simon the notary Cappadocia and Pelagonia; lastly, let Cassander and Roboas have all as far as the river named Sol, and let their father Antipater have Cilicia.

When the will was made, there followed thunders and lightnings and great earthquakes, and all the world knew that his death was near. The Macedonians crowd round the palace, demanding to see him, and to know who is to be his successor. He names Perdiccas, to whom he commends Roxana and all his soldiers.

Then the Macedonians all begin to kiss him and to weep bitterly. Their lamentations are as low thunder, and even the sun is eclipsed.

A certain Macedonian, named Solentius, asks what they shall do when Alexander is gone. They all deplore the great calamity, and think that the great empire will fall to ruins. Alexander directs his crown to be sent to the temple of Apollo, gives instructions for the embalming of his body, directs Ptolemy to erect to his memory a golden sepulchre in Alexandria, and dies.

After his death, his princes dress the body in imperial state. He is conveyed to Alexandria, and buried in a costly tomb.

Alexander was of middle height, with a long neck, bright eyes, and ruddy cheeks. The days of his life were thirty-two years and seven months. He began to war at eighteen, and in seven years subdued all the barbarian nations. He was born on the eighth of the kalends of January, and died on the fourth of the kalends of April. He built twelve cities (which are enumerated).

Alexander's tomb was of gold. It was visited by philosophers, of whom the first said: "Alexander has made his treasure of gold." The second said: "Yesterday all the world was not enough for him; to-day four ells of it suffice him." The third: "Yesterday he ruled the people, to-day the people rule him." The fourth: "Yesterday he could deliver many from death, to-day he could not deliver himself." The fifth: "Yesterday he led an army out of the city, to-day he is led by it to his burial." The sixth: "Yesterday he pressed the ground, to-day the ground presses on him." The seventh: "Yesterday all nations feared him, to-day they despise him." The last: "Yesterday he had both friends and enemies, to-day all men are alike to him."[1]

[1] Compare the Gesta Romanorum, ed. Herrtage (E. E. T. S.), p 516, no. xxxi.

The Story of Alexander.

[The following epitome of the life of Alexander, in English prose, is copied from the Dublin MS., beginning on fol. 45, back.]

Alexander the grete, þe sone of philip̄ kyng of macedon̄, which philip regned vij 3ere, and þe said alexander began to regne in the xviij 3ere of hys age. And he said to hys peple in þis wise: "Fair lordez, I will in no wise be contrarye to your willes, ne to your dedes. But I schewe to you þat I hate frawdez & maleces, & as I haue loued you duryng my faders lyff, so will I do in tyme Commyng. And I bothe councell & pray you that 3e drede god, obeye hym as souerayn of aH, And chese hym for kyng; & be most obeyssiant to hym þat shall best purvay for þe gude astate of hys people, & þat shall be most debonar & mercifuH to pure folkez þat beste[1] woll kepe iustice & þe right of þe feble ayenst the mighty; hym also that shaH best dispoyse for þe publyke wele[2] & for no dilectacion of wordly[3] plesaunce shaH not be slowefuH to kepe & defende you, and by whom 3e shall be defendytt, & aH eueH & harmez by þe meane of hys goode dedes shall be distroyed; And he þat most hardly shall put hym in devour to distroy your enmys; for suche ought to be chosen kyng and none other."

Alexander begins to reign.

His address to his lords.

"Dread and obey God;

obey also him who takes most care for the public welfare;

and him who best endeavours to destroy your enemies."

[1] MS. þat beste þat best. [2] MS. publyke like wele.
[3] *A correct form.*

His people applaud him.

And whan hys people had herd hys reasons aboue-
said, & knowen his grete discrecion, witte, & vnder-
stondyng, thei wer gretly amerveld, and answered to
hym þus: "We haue herd & vnderstand thy grete
reasons, And haue resseyued & resseyue thy good
CounceH, and theirfor we will & beseche the that þou
regne vppon vs & haue þe lordship vppon vs. Duryng
þi lyf we hope *þer* is none that hase so wele deserуyd
to be our kyngt." And þus þai chese hym to be þair
kingt, and Coroned hym, & yaff hym þair blessyngez,
And prayd to god that he wold blesse & maynt[en]e[1]
hym. To whom he said: "I herd þe prayer that 3e
haue made for me, besechyng *þat* he wol stedfast þe
loue of me in your hertes & coragez, And þat by no
maner of the delectacion he suffre me do *þat* thyng
þat is ayen your profectez ne to my disworship."

"We beseech thee to reign over us."

He thanks them for their prayers on his behalf.

And sone after he send letters to all hys princez &
good townez of all hys Royaume. And when [he] hedt
sent hys letters, one Dary, king of perce & of medy,
sent to alexandre for tribute like as he hed of hys
fadre. And he sent hym word at þe henne þat layde
þe gret egge was deyde. And after þis alexandre
made grette conquestes, And conquerdt Inde, he went to
a cuntree called Bragman; the which when þai wist of
hys Comyngt, þai sent mony wise men to hym, whiche
salute hym & sayd: "Sir alex*ander*, þou hast no cause
to werre vppoñ us, ne to euill willyng; For we be[2]
both meke & poure, & we haue no-þing bott sapience,
the whiche if you will haue, pray god *þat* he wyll
gyff hir the; for by batayH þou shalt neu*er* hafe hir."
And when alex*ander* herd hym say so, he made all hys
oste to tarye, & with few of hys knyghtez went within
þe sayd cuntree, for to enquere further of þe trouth.
And when he entred within þe same ground he found
mony poore folkez, women & chyldre all naked, gad-

Darius, king of Persia, demands tribute from him, which he refuses.

The Brahmans of India ask Alexander not to war against them.

He goes to visit them.

He finds them to be very poor.

[1] MS. maynte. [2] MS. be ben.

deryng herbis in þe feldez. And he asked of þaim
mony questions, to whiche þai answerd wisely. And
þan he bad þaim aske of hym some þing þat might
do þaim good & to all þair people, and he wold gyff
þaim it gladly. And þen þai said: "Sir, we aixe þe
none other þing bot at þou wol gyff vs eu*er*lastyng
lyfe." Thenne alex*ander* answerd & said: "howe
might a man make other men*n*es liues eu*er*lastyngt whan
he may nott lennthe hys awne life one houre? And
þat 3e axie of me is in no mannez power *þat* leueth."
Thenne þai said to hym: "Seth þou hase good know-
legh therof, wher trayvelles þou þi-selft to distroye all
the worlde and gadre aH[1] þe wordly tresours, And
wotte not when þou must lefe þaim?" Then Alex-
ander sayd to hym: "I do nott aH þis at 3e say as of
my-self. Butt god hath sent me thrugh all þe world
for texalte[2] and magnifye hys lawe and distroy all þem
þat beleue not in hym."

He offers to grant them a boon.

They ask for everlasting life.

He says he cannot give it.

They ask him why he toils so much to win what he cannot long keep.

He replies that he is doing God's will.

And some tyme Alex*ander* wente disgysedt visityngt
hys lordez & enquiryngt of þair dedes. And on a tyme
he Come in-to a towne of hys awne, And sawe two men
of þe same towne bifore a iuge pletyngt, of the which
on said to þe Iuge: "Sir, I haue boght on house of
thys man; And, longt after, I haue founde in it a
treso*ur* vnder þe erthe, which is nott myne. And I
haue offerdt to deliuer it to hym: And he hath refusyd
it; wherfore, Sir, I beseche the he be compellyd to
take it, for alse moche as he knoweth it is not myne;
for I haue no right *þer*to." Thenne the Iuge com-
maundt hys adu*er*sarie p*ar*te to answere to þe same.
And þen he sayd: "sir Iuge, that same treso*ur* was
neu*er* myne; but he hath edyfyedt in *þat* place that
was byfore comyn to aH þoo that wold haue edyfyed
ther-in. And *þer*fore I haue no right to take it."

He visits a town, and sees two men pleading before a judge.

One says, "I have found a treasure in the house which I bought of this man; compel him to take it."

The other replies that the treasure was never his.

[1] MS. and gadre alle (fol. 46 *b*) And to gedyr all.
[2] MS. to texalte: (texalte = to exalte).

Both ask the judge to take it himself,

And þen þai both required þe Iuge that he wold take it to hym-self[1]; to qwom he answerd & sayd: "sithen
it is so that ye say that [ye] haue no right herto, ne he hath no right to whom þe herytage hath longed and yet bylongeth whar þe tresour was founden, how shuld

but he refuses.

I haue ony right *þer*to, that am bot a straunger in that caas, And neu*er* afore herd speke *þer*of? And ye wold excuse yow *þer*of[1] & yeue me þe charge of þe tresour*e*; which is euyH done." Then*ne* he askyd of þaim *þat* hed founde þe tresour, whether thay had ony childreñ? and þe tone answerd & sayd, he hed a soñ: and [he] asked *þat* other in like wyse, & he sayd, he hed a doghter. And þen þe Iuge comaundyd to make a maryage bitwene þaim two, And at þai shuld haue þe tresour by *þat* meane. And when Alex*ander* herd þis Iugement,[1] he hed gret m*er*vayle therof, and sayd þus to þe Iuge: "I trowe *þer* is nott in all þe world[2] so rightwise a Iuge as þou art." And the Iuge, *þat* knew hym nott[1], sayd[2] & asked of hym whether ony Iuge in hys cuntree wold haue done otherwyse: "ye, certanly," sayd alex*ander*, "in many landez." Thenne

He finds that one of them has a son, and the other a daughter; and says, they must be married, and so divide the treasure.

Alexander is astonished, saying, that many judges would have done otherwise.

The judge makes a reply,

þe Iuge, hauyng grete m*er*vayH þ*er*of, asked of hym whether it rayned and þe sone dyd shyne in tho landez; as he wold haue sayd[2], that[1] it was m*er*vayH *þat* god shuld send ony light[1] or rayne or other goode thyngez to them that do nott right & trew Iugement[1]. And therfore Alex*ander* had gretter m*er*uayH than by-fore, And said, þ*er* was bott few suche people vpon erth as þai were in þat land.

at which Alexander marvels still more.

And as alex*ander* went owt of *þat* land[2], he passyd thurgh a cite in þe which all þe housez of *þat* Cyte were of one hight, & byfore þe dure of eu*er*y hous was a grete pitte or graue; in whiche cite *þer* was no Iuge, wherof he had gret m*er*vayll; and asked of þe inhabit-

Alexander comes to a city where all the houses are of equal height, and before every house-door there is a grave.

[1] The latter syllable (*ment*) is written in the middle of the lower margin of the leaf. Fol. 47 *begins with* he hed.

antis therin wherof such thyngez shuld s*er*ue. The which answerd[2] hym & sayd: "First, for þe outragez[1] hight of housez, loue & Iustice can nott be long[1] a towne emong þe people." And þai sayd, þe pittez & grauez wer þair awne housez, to þe whiche þat þai shuld sone go to, and *þer* dwelle vnto þe day of Iugement. And as tochyng[1] that thai hed no Iuge, þai sayd, þai made good[2] Iustice of þem-self, wherfore þai nede no Iuge. Thenne Alex*ander* dep*ar*ted from þaim[2] right well pleasyd.

The inhabitants explain to him the meaning of these things.

And afore hys deth, he wrote a lett*er* vnto hys moder, des*er*ing[1] hir to make no sorow for hym. And sone aftir Alex*ander* died & was putt in a coffre of gold, & buried in alex*andria* with grete reu*er*ence by princez & o*þer* grete lordez that keped[3] & fulfillyd hys testa-ment[1] as he had ordeigned: thenne stert vp one of þe grettest[1] lordez of þaim that kept[4] hym, and sayd þus: "Thay *þat* neu*er* . . .

Alexander writes to his mother, dies, and is buried in Alexandria with great honour.

[*The rest of the story is lost.*]

[1] *So in* MS.; *read* outrageouz. [2] MS. þaim them. [3] MS. kepeth. [4] MS. kepth.

NOTES.

In the following notes some attempt is made to elucidate a few passages in the text, especially where additional light is to be obtained from comparing it with the original Latin, or with the other English versions. In some cases phrases are explained, but the reader should, in general, turn to the Glossarial Index for help with respect to the more difficult words. The question of the various texts of the Alexander Romance is more fully treated of in the Preface. It is sufficient to mention here that the Latin text cited below is the "Historia de preliis," as printed (at Strassburg) in 1489. The English alliterative fragment cited as "A." is that edited by myself in 1867 as an Appendix to William of Palerne (E. E. T. S.); whilst that cited as "B." is the text called "Alexander and Dindimus," also edited by me in 1878. These two fragments are allied to very different parts of the present text. A part of A. resembles ll. 23—803* of our text, whilst B. resembles ll. 4019—4714.

Lines 1—22 are obviously original, and intended as a Prologue.

13. *Bot if*, unless. "It were a wonder else, unless they would in many a way (desire to hear wanton works); for, as their wits are within (them), so their will follows (those wits)."

15. *Ettillis*, I will endeavour, the present being used for the future. *Ettillis* is the first person; and the suffix *-is* at once marks the dialect as Northumbrian; for further remarks on this point, see the Preface.

17. *The buke*, i. e. the Latin text here followed.

18. "All the world over" is a phrase still in use.

21. *And ye will*, if ye will. *Renkis*, men, hearers; the story is supposed to be recited or read aloud.

23. Here the Romance begins, and in order to shew clearly how the translator has treated his original, the whole of the first chapter of the Latin text is here given, answering to the Primus Passus of the translation, which ends at l. 213. It should be further compared with the corresponding passage of A., viz. ll. 452—573.

"[S]apientissimi Egipcii, scientes mensuram terre vndasque maris et celestium ordinem cognoscentes, id est, stellarum cursum, motum etiam firmamenti, tradiderunt etiam vniuerso orbi per altitudinem et per noticiam artium magicarum. Dicunt enim de Anectanabo rege ipsorum quod fuerit ingeniosus in astrologia et mathematica eruditus. Quadam autem die dum nunciatum fuisset ei quod Artaxerses rex persarum cum valida manu hostium super eum veniret, non mouit militiam neque preparauit exercitum, sed intrauit cubiculum palacii sui; et deprendens

concham eream plenam aqua pluuiali tenensque in manu virgam eream, hic per magicam incantationem demones conuocabat, et per magicas incantationes intelligebat in ipsa concha classes nauium super eum potentissime venientes. Erant enim principes in custodiam militie positi Anecta[na]bi a confinibus persarum. Uenit quidam exors dicens, "Maxime Anectanabe, insurgit in te Artaxerses rex persarum cum multitudine hostium et gentilium infinitis. Sunt enim Parthi, Medi, Perse, Syrii, Mesopotamii, Drapes, Phares, Argiri, Caldei, Bachiri, Confires, Hircani, atque Agiophii, et alie pluresque gentes de orientalibus partibus procedentes." Cum hec audisset Anectanabus, suspirans dixit: "Custodiam quam tibi condidi bene obserua, sed non tamen sicut princeps militie egisti, sed sicut homo timidus. Uirtus enim non hec valet in multitudine populi sed in fortitudine animorum; an nescis quod vnus leo multos ceruos in fugam vertit?" Et hec dicens iterum intrauit cubiculum solus, et fecit nauiculas ereas in concha cum aqua plena pluuiali, tenensque in manu virgam palme et respiciens in ipsam incepit totis viribus incantare, et videbat qualiter egyptii sternebantur impetu classium Barbarorum. Statimque mutato habitu, radens sibi caput et barbam, et tulit aurum quantumcunque portare potuit, et quecunque erant sibi necessaria ad astrologiam et ad artes magicas exercendas, fugit prope pelusium de egypto. Denique veniens ethiopiam induit linea vestimenta egipcius quasi propheta, intrauit macedoniam, sedensque manam (*sic*) grecis (*sic*) coram omnibus palam videntibus diuinabat. Egiptii vero vt viderunt quia Anectanabus non inueniebatur ad curtum, perrexerunt ad Serapim deum illorum maximum, et rogauerunt eum vt vera responsa daret eis de anectanabo rege eorum. Serapis autem respondit: "Anectanabus rex vester abijt de egipto propter Arthaxersem regem persarum, qui vos suo imperio subiugabit. Post modicum vero tempus reuertetur ad vos reijciendo a se seruitutem et vlciscetur de inimicis vestris subiugando illos vobis." Et hec responsa recipientes statim fecerunt statuam regalem ex lapide nigro in honorem Anectanabi, et scripserunt ad pedes eius responsa vt in posterum memorie mandaretur. Anectanabus autem mansit macedonie incognitus."

We must not omit to notice here that Gower, in his Confessio Amantis, bk. vi. (ed. Pauli, iii. 61), gives a long extract from the Alexander Romance, which he designates as being

> "A great cronique emperiall,
> Which euer into memoriall,
> Among the men, how so it wende,
> Shall dwelle to the worldes ende."

See also the verse translation of "Kyng Alisaunder," edited by Weber, and the Life of Alexander by Plutarch.

25, 26. Here we have mention of the two lower elements, earth (*mulde*) and water (*see*).

27. Here the third element of *air* is mentioned, beyond which was a "periphery" of fire, not noticed. The "odde home" above the air refers to what Gower calls *orbis* or the fifth element, otherwise the firmament; see Conf. Amant. iii. 105, 107. In this *orbis* are contained the seven planets and the fixed stars. The "courses of the clear stars" in l. 28 refers to the orbits of the planets.

29. For *aghill tre* read *athill thre*. The reference is to the three "peripheries" into which the element of air was subdivided.

> "This air in periferies *thre*
> Devided is, of such degre," &c.; Gower, C. A. iii. 93.

Articus and *Antarticus* refer to the two poles of the heavens.

35. A clear reference to the opening words of the Latin text—"Sapientissimi Egiptii," &c.

36. "They taught all, that desired to learn it, (some) of that lore." *Lere* is here improperly used, the right word being *learn*. The converse error, of using *learn* in the sense of 'teach,' is common in provincial English.

41. "When he beheld the heaven, he was wise enough to reckon the destinies of men alive."

44. How Aristotle taught Alexander "the nature of philosophy" is told by Gower in his seventh book. On the "seven arts," see my Notes to P. Plowman, p. 243.

46. The three authors alluded to are doubtless Plato, Pythagoras, and Priscian; they are not mentioned in the Latin text, the translation being much amplified.

50. "To pass (i. e. to march) against him."

56. Compare A. 480—"Of rain-water ryght full · þe rink gon it dress." Lat. "concham plenam aqua pluuiali."

70. *Hare wod*, hoar wood, i. e. bare wood, one stripped of leaves, as in winter-time. So also "*hore* okez" and "bare twyges," Gawain and the Grene Knight, 743, 746; "a forest highe and *hore*," Le Morte Arthur, ed. Furnivall, l. 314.

71. *Anec*, for Anectanabus; this shortened form occurs frequently.

81. *Artaxenses*, Artaxerxes. As in all M.E. poems, the spelling of proper names is very inaccurate. So in l. 87, the MS. has *panthy*.

87. These names may be compared with those in the Latin text (above), and in A. 494—500. Hence *Syre* is Syria; *Sychim* (perhaps suggested by Sichem in the Bible) answers to none of the Latin names; *Capidos* no doubt means Cappadocians; *Faire* represents the Lat. *Phares*; *Batary*, the Lat. *Bachiri* (perhaps Bactrians). See note to A. 493.

97. *Kepe to þe marche*, guard the border-land; or, as A. has it, "Keepe well thyne owne koste" (coast).

105. "But only in that case where they (i. e. men) are blended (i. e. compounded) with greatness of will" (i. e. of courage).

107. For *þe* (as in MS.) we should certainly read *þu*, thou (voc. case).

110. "Will cause to take to flight, and will terrify, many harts." See note to A. 515.

118. "Without more hindrance."

126. None of the texts help to explain this line.

128. This line curiously resembles that in Chaucer, C. T. 3209—"His astrolabie, longing for his art." See Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe.

129. *Quadrentis*, quadrants. We suggest this word as an improvement upon the corrupt reading *In adrentis* of the MS. The alliteration demands a word beginning with *qu*, and as the MS. has the rest of the word, the correctness of the suggestion can hardly be doubted.

130. *Mekil quat*, much of various kinds, many various things. See Morris, Outlines of English Accidence, p. 137, § 213.

145. *Openly deuynes;* Lat. "palam . . diuinabat." Frequent similar coincidences of expression leave little doubt as to the fact that the poet's translation was made (mainly) from the "Historia de preliis."

146. "Let him hear, whoso desired"; *here* being in the imperative mood. Phrases of a similar cast are not uncommon in Middle English.

150. *Tere* is a less common form of *tore*, difficult; see *tere, tor* in Stratmann, and the Glossary.

161. *Ser Sirraphis*, the Egyptian god Serapis. See l. 5409.

168. This is an instance of an ambiguous oracle, but the ambiguity only appears in the original Greek, as given in the note to A. 565. It could be read as meaning: "Your fugitive king will again return to Egypt, not as an old, but as a young man, and will destroy and subjugate our enemies," or otherwise, "and will subjugate our enemies, the Persians"—*τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἡμῶν πέρσας ὑποτάξει*. See ll. 184—189 below. It was fulfilled in the latter sense, when Alexander, the son of Anectanabus, arrived in Egypt before defeating the Persians; see ll. 1121—1136.

174. *Bees*, shall be; just as the A.S. *beón* is often used with a future sense.

179. "Since it is ordained to be so, and it cannot fail, nor (be) shewn to be in any other way, nor (are) we (likely) to avoid it, (there is nothing for us) but to give them up the girdle; it avails us not (to think) otherwise." Many of the sentences have similar abrupt transitions; it is easier to catch the sense than to define it precisely. The phrase "to give up the girdle" means to submit to the inevitable, to acknowledge oneself to be powerless, and is a translation of a French proverb given in Cotgrave, s. v. *ceincture*. In Howel's Familiar Letters, 5th ed. (1678), p. 463, we find: "The other Proverb was *Il a quitte sa cienture* (*sic*), he hath given up his girdle, which intimated as much as if he had becom bankrupt, or had all his estate forfeited, It being the ancient Law of *France*, that when any upon som offence had that penalty of confiscation inflicted upon him, he us'd before the Tribunal of Justice to give up his *Girdle*, implying thereby, that the *girdle* held every thing that belong'd to a mans estate, as his budget of money and writings, the keys of his House, with his Sword, Dagger and Gloves, &c."

192. Here again we are referred to "the book"; and accordingly the Lat. text (sign. a 1, col. 2) has "ex lapide nigro."

199. For "at his fortes," as in MS., read "at his feet," as in A. 570. Lat. "ad pedes eius;" same column.

210. *All his ane*, alone by himself; precisely equivalent to the mod. Sc. *his lane* (short for *his all ane*).

214. Here the Second Passus begins precisely where the second chapter of the Latin text does, but comprises four chapters of the latter; and, in general, each Passus contains several such chapters.

227. "Put his hand up to his hair, and bent it downward but a little." This was a form of salutation, much like that practised by the modern soldier. Lat. "extendensque manum suam salutauit eam;" a 1, back, col. 1.

228. Lat. "*Aue regina* Macedonie; dedignatus ei dicere *domina*."

246. "For there dwell, in that region that thou before didst speak of, the wisest men," &c.

257. "Whether the child be a male or a female." *Werdes*, destinies.

274. Lat. "protulit de sinu suo purificam tabulam eream et eburneam mixtam auro et argento, tres in se circulos continentem. Primus continebat in se intelligentias duodecim. In tercio vero sol et luna parebant. Post hec apparebat cathena eburnea et ex eo protulit septem splendidissima astra, horas explorantia et natiuitates hominum, et septem lapides sculptos et duos lapides ad custodiam hominum constitutos;" a 1, back, col. 1. The "blesand table" was an astrolabe planisphere, with circles (1) of the 12 intelligences, (2) of the "dozen of beasts," i. e. 12 signs of the zodiac, (3) the circle of the sun and moon. Gower expressly calls it an astrolabe; C. A. iii. 64. And see Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, l. 287.

282. The seven stars are the seven planets, and the seven stones are the precious stones severally assigned to them; see them enumerated in the note to A. 628.

295. "What shall happen between us, viz. between me and Philip."

299. "Nevertheless, ere any long time, it shall happen as thou saidst."

308. *Or it be fere*, ere it be far, ere long.

309. *Is amed*, is destined to know thee carnally and afterwards to help thee in all adversities.

317. "But just so between the two, and too much of neither."

319. "With two tough horns, attached to his forehead." These horns characterised the god Ammon. Hence Alexander acquired the surname of Dulkarnein, or the two-horned, as being the supposed son of Ammon.

340. *Erne till exorȝise*, eager to exorcise. Here *erne* stands for *ȝeorn*, eager, as shewn by Mätzner, s. v. *eorne*, and cf. Alex. A. 1091. In the word *exorȝise*, the symbol ȝ stands (as occasionally in other

MSS.) for the letter *z*. *Ethis euer elike*, conjures continually. The verb *ethen* is only known to occur in two other passages, both in Gawayne and the Grene Knyght, ll. 379, 2467—

"Fyrst I *eþe* þe, haþel, how þat þou hattes."

I. e. first I conjure thee (to tell me), noble one, what is thy name. And again—

"Þerfore I *eþe* þe, haþel, to com to þy naunt."

Dr. Morris translates it by 'ask,' and Mätzner thinks it may be allied to the word *ask*. Both have missed the obvious etymology. The M.E. *e* (when long) often corresponds to A.S. *é*, as being a modification of *á*; as in *ehte*, possessions, from A.S. *éht*, a derivative of *ágan*, to own. So also here, *ethen* = A.S. *éðan**, to conjure by oath, from *áð*, oath. This sense explains all three passages.

368. "Then shall I cherish thee with such demeanour as if thou wert my child." The translator has quite missed the point. Lat. "te quasi patrem pueri habebo;" a 2, col. 1. In fragment A. 771, this is given correctly.

397. "For it (the child) and Philip her husband were related afar off," i. e. were not sufficiently nearly related.

403. "Even to the value (lit. weight) of a pea."

408. See note to fragment A. 808.

421. "Make his market with her." Doubtless a proverbial phrase.

423. See notes to fragment A. 826, 837.

427. *The bounde*. Surely the translator must have read his text as having *cursus* (not *currus*) *solis*. *Bounde* would signify limit, orbit. This is verified by l. 442, where we have the very word "course." So also in A. 853. Other versions have ἐκτύπωμα ἡλίου (see Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibl. du Roi, xiii. 233, Append.); *solis effigies*, *solis forma* (id. 270); and *le char du soleil* (id. 296).

440. *Chefe sall*, shall achieve, or attain to be.

464. "Either meat has mended thee," i. e. food has fattened thee.

477. Read *þe na* for *þe þe*. "No blame shall be to thee from me, nor from any man else."

488. Here the translator again appeals to the Lat. text, which reads: "Anectanabus autem per artem magicam induit formam draconis, et per medium triclinium discumbentium transiens fortiter sibilabat, vt conuiuantes omnes pauore ac perturbatione maxima torquerentur;" a 2, back, col. 1. Cf. Gower, C. A. iii. 74; also Alex. A. 981.

501. So also in Gower, C. A. iii. 76; and Alex. A. 999.

525. See the *French* version of this passage, as given in Alex. A., p. 209.

532. For *doute*, a better reading would be *doutis*, i. e. fears.

539. "On account of the pain I go nearly mad, and I suffer such woe that I would rather be dead (lit. it were dearer to me to be dead) than thus remain alive."

580. *Schoutid;* Mr. Stevenson prints *schouted*, but the Lat. text shews that the right reading is *schontid*, i. e. shunted, moved; Lat. "vidi elementa *mutari;*" a 2, back, col. 2.

581. "And nevertheless, on any account, let him be kept awhile and nourished as particularly as if he were my own."

583. "Yet will noble people make remembrance of him, and record it hereafter, that I had in my time such a divine son."

588. The poet here departs from his original, which says, on the contrary, that Philip's elder son was not to be his heir; Lat. "in filii quem ex altera vxore habui succedat [Alexander] locum;" a 2, back, col. 2.

597. As the Latin text is appealed to, the description of Alexander is here given. "Coma capitis sicut leonis aspersa videbatur. Oculi eius sicut stelle micantes sed colore dispari radiabant, vnus niger, alter vero glaucus apparens. Dentes siquidem eius erant acuti, impetus illius feruidus vt leonis."

608. "If, as the original shews, he was wall-eyed." Here "wall-eyed" seems to be used in the sense of having eyes of different colours.

642. "He escapes him with great difficulty, unless he can skip away more quickly."

668. *Sa party is*, is so different from mine.

676. "It shall not annoy thee to the value of an egg, viz. none of his thoughts" (shall annoy you).

678. Here begins the Dublin fragment; see p. 23.

684. For *sterne* read *merke*, as in the Dublin MS., on account of the alliteration. The reader, having both texts before him, can readily supply for himself improvements of this character.

686. "Only follow me." Here *noȝt bot* is the familiar North of England *nobbut*, i. e. not but, only.

692. "Many winters being done," as in Dublin MS., i. e. many winters ago.

703. Lat. "Vide stellam Herculis qualiter conturbatur. Mercurius vero gaudet. Iouem siquidem video coruscantem;" a 3, col. 1.

708. I. e. death at the hands of my own son. Cf. l. 722.

722. Here two leaves are lost in the Ashmole MS., as shewn by the Dublin MS., which supplies the missing 122 lines. As we are here dependent upon one MS. only, the corresponding portion of the Latin text is here given (a 3, col. 1, &c.):

"Alexander dixit, 'Ergo filius tuus sum?' Anectanabus respondit, 'Reuera ego genui te.' Et hec dicens expirauit. Alexander autem filiali pietate motus eleuansque corpus eius super humeros suos portauit ipsum in palacium suum. Cumque videret illum Olimpia dixit Alexandro, 'Fili Alexander, quid est hoc?' Cui ille respondit, 'Corpus Anectanabi est.' Olimpia dixit, 'Anectanabus pater tuus fuit.' Respondit ille, 'Quemadmodum stulticia fecit tua, ita est.' Et iussit illud sepeliri.

Qualiter quidam princeps de Capadocia adduxit equum bucifallum ad Philippum regem Macedonum.

[I]n ipsis denique temporibus princeps Capadocie adduxit vnum equum indomitum, magnum corpore et pulcrum nimis, ligatumque ex omni parte cathenis ferreis. Comedebat enim ille equus Bucifallus homines, propter aspectus horribilitatem, siue a signo quod thaurinum caput quod maius habebat vstum, seu quod in fronte eius quedam mine corniculorum procedebant. Cum igitur vidisset Philippus rex ipsius equi pulcritudinem, dixit ministris suis: Conficite cancellos ferreos vt latrones qui mori debent ex lege trucidentur ab eo.

Qualiter reuelatum fuit Philippo quod ille post eum regnare debebat qui dictum equum Bucifallum equitabit, et de Alexandro sedente in curru et de verbis habitis cum rege Arridorum.

[I]n ipsis denique diebus responsum habuit rex Philippus per somnium quod post mortem suam ille regnare deberet qui hunc ferocem equum equitaret. Alexander itaque cum esset annorum duodecim factus fortis, audax, sapiens et discretus. Didicerat enim plene omnium liberalium artium disciplinas Aristotilis et castoriem. Quadam vero die cum pertransiret per locum vbi stabat ille equus indomitus, vt videret inter cancellos ferreos, et ante eum manus et alia membra hominum dispersa iacentia, miratus est valde; misit ilico manum suam per cancellos. Equus autem extendens collum suum cepit lambere manum illius, et prostrauit se in terram pedibus complicatis, erigensque caput cepit fortiter aspicere Alexandrum. Intelligens autem Alexander voluntatem equi aperuit cancellos, et ingressus cepit dorsum equi suauiter manu tangere. Statimque incepit ille mansuescere nimis. Et sicut videtur canis coram domino suo, sic equus coram Alexandro parebat. Denique Alexander ascendit illum et equitans cepit exire. Cumque ergo vidisset eum Philippus, dixit ei: 'Fili Alexander, omnia responsa deorum impleta sunt in te, quia post mortem meam regna mea tuo imperio gubernabuntur.' Cui Alexander ait: 'Pater, si fieri potest, dirige me vt in curru sedeam regali.' Respondit ei Philippus: 'Gratanter hec facio. Tolle tibi centum equites et septuaginta milia solidorum aureorum, et vade potenti militia circumfulsus.' Et factum est. Exiens igitur Alexander vna cum Ephesio philosopho amico et duodecim pueris quos elegerat et iugo suo docuerat, detulitque ornamenta preciosa et solidos. Precepitque militibus suis vt equis curam imponerent diligentem. Ueniente itaque Alexandro in Peloponensem, occurrit ei Nicolaus, rex eiusdem prouincie, cum exercitu suo, vt pugnam cum eo committeret. Et appropinquans dixit ei: 'Quis es tu, dic mihi.' Cui Alexander respondit: 'Ego sum Alexander Philippi Macedonis.' Nicolaus rex ait: 'Quem me speras esse?' Alexander respondit: 'Tu es rex Arridorum. Non tamen eleuetur cor tuum in superbia, quia regalem honorem tibi attribui. Solentque alta petere profundum, Paruitas vero vsque ad sidera sublimari.'"

Compare also Alex. A. 1110—1201.

751*. "Bears a brand on his shoulders like a bull's head, and out of his top there stick up as it were tines of horns." Thus the English version adopts *both* reasons for the name of Bucephalus (i. e. Bull-head), where the Latin text merely offers alternative explanations. The reason assigned in the Greek text is: ἐπειδὴ ἐν τῷ μηρῷ αὐτοῦ ἔκκαυμα βοὸς κεφαλὴν ἐξέφηνεν (Notices des Manuscrits, xiii. 246). See note to Alex. A. 1114, p. 248.

766*. *At*, from. As to the seven arts, see note to l. 44 above.

769*. *Warloked*, fettered. In the Prompt. Parv. we find *warlok*, a fetter-lock. The verb is also found in the form *warroken*, as in P. Plowman, B. iv. 20.

778*. Here a line has probably been lost, as shewn by the sudden change of subject. In the preceding line, *hys* refers to Alexander; but here *He* refers to Bucephalus. In Alex. A. 1164, the words *þe horss it awaytes* partly fill up the gap.

803*. Here ends all agreement with fragment A. of the romance. Here also begins the imperfect edition of Julius Valerius, as edited by Mai in 1817.

809*. "Neither men nor any excellent armour shall be lacking to thee; and hold on (go forth) with a well-equipped (lit. hale) army, where thou shalt be obeyed." For the form *held*, see *helden* in Stratmann. And see l. 820, p. 39.

813*. It is remarkable that the Latin text has *Ephesio*, for the English form *Eufestyus* is somewhat nearer the mark; probably our author found in his copy the form *Ephestio*. The person alluded to is certainly Hephæstion of Pella, celebrated in history as Alexander's friend; even in the romance the Greek text has Ἡφαιστίωνι (Notices des Manuscrits, xiii. 248).

828*. Julius Valerius says that Nicolaus was king of Acarnania (ed. Mai, p. 3).

729. *Sa ma aydeus; So madeus.* These are corruptions of the hybrid phrase *So m'aide deus*, so may God aid me, the first word being English, the rest French.

738. "As angry as a wasp" is given in Heywood's Proverbs; see Skelton, Elynour Rummyng, 330, and Dyce's note.

743. The Ashmole MS. is right here; it means, "as a speck of my spittle is sprinkled on thy face." See l. 745.

748. *Cure*, i. e. cur, hound; Lat. "Tolle quod te decet habere, catule, et erubesce;" a 3, back, col. 2.

757. *Seis*, shalt see; cf. note to l. 174.

758. "And I will either gain for myself thy kingdom, or reach up the girdle." To *reach up the girdle* is the same as *give up the girdle;* see note to l. 179. Omit the second *me* in the Dublin MS.

773. Lat. "Itaque tubis bellicis clangentes vterque hostiliter sunt commoti, et acriter pugnare ceperunt;" a 4, col. 1.

798. In the Dublin MS. the insertion of *þar* before *wod* seems necessary; "they wrested in pieces their wood," i. e. the shafts of their spears. It deserves to be especially noted here, as a proof of our author's poetical powers, that the whole of the fine passage comprised in ll. 777—806 is expanded out of the four words *et acriter pugnare ceperunt!*

804. *Starand stanes*, shining stones. This seems to shew that the helmets of chieftains, at any rate in romances, were adorned with gems.

817. The Ashmole MS. is the better here; Lat. "Imposuerunt siquidem milites Alexandro *et equo* coronam;" a 4, col. 1.

821. "Inuenit autem Philippum in conuiuio nuptiali sedentem;" ib.

826. This line is hardly correctly translated. Lat. "Prime mee victorie palmam recepi coronatam. Attamen quando matris nuptias celebrabo, sociando eam regi alteri in vxorem, te nullatenus inuitabo; cum ipse nuptias facias, ad quas nullo indicio sum vocatus;" ib.

834. *Lesias;* Lat. "Lisias;" Julius Valerius has "Lysias," p. 8; but Plutarch has "Attalus."

838. *Wardrere*, warder, i. e. staff or truncheon; Lat. "baculo."

847. *Snapirs*, trips up. Though Stratmann gives but two examples of this word, it is not very scarce. Jamieson cites from Kelly, p. 26, the Scotch proverb—"A horse with four feet may *snapper* by a time," i. e. sometimes. "I *snapper*, as a horse dothe that tryppeth; my horse dyd nat stumble, he dyd but *snapper* a lytell;" Palsgrave. And see Dyce's index to Skelton.

872. *At grete*, to weep. The use of *at* for *to*, as in Scandinavian, is a clear instance of Northern dialect.

879. *Anes with*, becomes one with, is reunited to. *Woydis*, leaves.

885. *Litill kyngis;* Lat. "reguli;" a 4, back, col. 1. This accounts for the reference to the original "clause."

890. *Sais*, tell; imperative plural. Lat. "Postquam enim Philippi filius adoleuit, gallina que oua aurea generabat consumpta est sterilitate;" ib. An allusion to the fable of the goose with the golden eggs.

907. *Ermony* is the usual M.E. form of Armenia; Lat. "Armenia."

911. This line is omitted in the Dublin MS., as shewn by the dots. On the other hand, l. 933* is omitted in the Ashmole MS.

916. Lat. "Pausania (*sic*) filius Cereuste;" ib.

935. *Hopid*, supposed; see Notes to P. Plowman, p. 371.

946. *Sygnes*, standards; Lat. "signa et vexilla;" a 4, back, col. 2.

949. Lat. "Fili Alexander, vbi est fatum quod a diis accepisti, vt victor et non victus existeres?" (ib.)

969. *Bane*, murderer; Lat. "interfectorem;" ib. Cf. Icel. *bani*, a slayer. So also in l. 3248.

985, 986. Lat. "Uiri Macedones, Traces, Thessalonicenses, et Greci, intuemini Alexandrum; a 5, col. 1.

1010. *Here-wedis* is probably a compound word; lit. 'army-weeds,' i. e. armour. So also, perhaps, *topp-haris*, hairs of our head, in l. 1009.

1018. "Quia iuuenes solent mortem recipere in iuuentute sua nimium confitentes. Senes autem agunt cuncta consilio titubantes;" ib.

1028. *Calodone;* Lat. "Calcedoniam;" a 5, col. 2.

1033. *Namely;* read *maynly*, as in the Dublin MS.

1042. *Besandis*, besants; used to translate Lat. *talenta*.

1044. "Alexander vero, recepto a Romanis tributo, et a cunctis

Italiam habitantibus vsque ad mare Occidentis, quorum regio vocatur Europa, reliquit eos in pace;" ib.

1053. "In qua paucos rebelles inuenit;" ib.

1057. "Venit ad Pharanradem (*sic*) insulam ad deum Hamonem consulendum;" a 5, col. 2. Valerius has "Pharum." In North's Plutarch, ed. 1631, p. 686, it is "the Ile of Pharos, the which at that time was a little aboue the mouth of the riuer of Nilus, called Canobia, howbeit it is now ioyned vnto firme land, being forced by mans hand."

1063. The Lat. text (ib.) has simply "ceruus," without further description. Read *with tyndis;* it means "a hart with a huge head, the hoarest on earth, (which head) was to look upon like a harrow, covered all over with tines." The allusion is to the immense number of tines on the horns of this very aged hart; they were as numerous as the tines (prongs) of a harrow. The age of a hart was known by the number of tines; see the Book of St. Albans.

1077. "In locum qui dicitur Taphostri;" ib. Valerius calls it Taposiris, which he explains as 'tomb of Osiris;' from Gk. *τάφος*, a tomb. The form *Caphoresey* seems to have come out of *Taphosiri*, first changed to *Taphorisi*, and then misread as *Caphorisi*.

1097. Note that l. 1098 is purposely omitted in the numbering; see footnote 1, p. 56.

1106. "Post bibitam potionem mortem gustabis amaram. In iuuentute enim finies tuos (*sic*). Noli tamen horam aut tempus inquirere, quia nullatenus tibi reuelabo. Dicetur enim tibi a diis orientalibus fatum tuum;" a 5, back, col. 1. As to this matter, see ll. 5024, 5406, 5413.

1116. *Ascoiloym*, Ascalon; not mentioned in the Latin text.

1120. *Alexsander*, an error for *Alexandria*.

1121. *Egist*, an obvious error for *Egipt*, Egypt. The translator has inserted this line, quite forgetting that Alexander is already supposed to be there.

1126. This black monument is the one already mentioned, in l. 192.

1142. *Sydoyne*, Sidon; not in the Lat. text.

1147. "What with one thing, and what with another."

1149. "Erat fortis ciuitas, tam maris circumdatione, tam edificiorum constructione, tam et ipsius loci fortitudine naturali quod nullatenus ciuitatem poterat cum impetu obtinere;" a 5, back, col. 2.

1154. *Populande*, poppling. To *popple* is to bubble (Halliwell), or to purl, ripple (Jamieson). *Hurle* is shewn by the alliteration to be an error for *purle* or *perle* (as in Dublin MS.). The sense, however, is not 'pearl,' but 'ripple' or 'wave'; it is the Scotch *pirl*, a ripple (Jamieson). Thus the sense is—'the pure rippling wave (or bubbling ripple) encompasses it around;' a poetical rendering of *maris circumdatio*.

1171. Lat. "ad pontificem Iudeorum nomine Iadelum;" ib. Josephus mentions this letter, and calls the high priest Jaddua; Antiquities of the Jews, bk. xi. c. 8. §§ 3, 4.

1178. "For the (sake of) any riches, advises him rather," &c.

1191. The right reading is to be got by comparing the MSS., viz. "I sall seche Iewise on the Iewes enioyne or I die," I shall enjoin such punishment on the Jews ere I die. *Iewres* is certainly an error for *Iewies* = *Iewise* or *Iuwise*, not an uncommon word for judgment, punishment, used by Chaucer. It is merely the O.F. form of the Lat. *iudicium*. Lat. "Talem faciam vindictam de Iudeis vt discernant quorum precepta debeant obseruare;" a 5, back, col. 2.

1193. Here begins the famous episode known as 'the foray of Gadirs,' which is sometimes expanded almost into a separate romance. This foray is the subject of the first part of 'The Buik of the most noble and vail3eand Conquerour Alexander the Great,' printed at Edinburgh for the Bannatyne Club in 1834, being a reprint from an earlier edition by Arbuthnot in 1580.[1] It is concerned with the exploits of Meleager and others in trying to obtain cattle for the support of the army at Tyre. In the present romance, this episode terminates at l. 1336. *Gadirs* is in the Latin text *Gadii;* and, since Plutarch describes Alexander as making war at this time against the Arabians of Antilibanus, I suppose the place meant is Kedesh in Galilee, which belonged to the Tyrians, and is at no great distance from Tyre; see *Kedesh* in Smith's Dict. of the Bible.

1207. The Lat. has "predamque ducerent *infinitam*;" a 6, col. 1.

1212. Lat. "Theosellus dux armentorum;" ib.

1225. *Arystes;* not mentioned in the Lat. text till further on (l. 1277), where the Lat. has *Arrideus*.

1229. Lat. "Gaulus vero ipsius ducis armentorum verticem amputauit;" ib.

1242. *Beritinus;* Lat. *Bitirius*. "Dum igitur hec omnia essent Bitirio cognita, de ciuitate Gadii exiuit cum equitibus triginta milibus ad prelium preparatis. Tanta siquidem erat copia pugnatorum quod ex nimio clamore terre [*read* terra] tremere videbatur;" ib.

1270. *Malstrid;* so written, but (by the common use of *t* for *c*) it stands for *malscrid*, as noted by Stratmann, s.v. *malskren*. It means bewildered; see *Maskede* in Halliwell.

1282. This line, in the Dublin MS., is written in large letters merely because it is the first line on the page. Ll. 1281—1341, with all their graphic details, are expanded out of a few lines of the Lat. text, which merely has the following passage. "Alexander autem relinquens Tyrum venit in Iosaphat vbi Bytirium et totum eius exercitum confudit. Reuersus autem Tyrum inuenit edificium quod in mari construxerat funditus dissipatum. Balaam enim cum omnibus habitantibus Tirum, post recessum Alexandri egressus, edificium illud viriliter expugnauit. Quod videntes Macedones iterum turbati sunt;" ib.

1350. *Feetles to mete;* probably *feetles* is for *fetles*, vessels (Stratmann). Then *fetles to mete* would mean 'vesselsful by measure,' which is equivalent to 'floods enough' in the Dublin MS.

[1] See an epitome of it in Weber's Metrical Romances, vol. i. p. lxxiii.

1360. *Foulire*, for *foule hire*, i. e. tread her (the city) under foot; Lat. "ipsamque pedibus conculcabis;" a 6, col. 2. "*Fouler*, to tread, stampe, or trample on;" Cotgrave.

1366. "Where the building that he built was first reared."

1370. *Ane eld*, put for *a neld*, or *ane neld*, a needle; so also *a nedyll* in the Dublin MS. The Lat. has: "Construxit itaque in mare ingens edificium classium quod erat centum anchoris alligatum. Erat siquidem tante celsitudinis quod muris et turribus Tyrorum Alexander eminebat;" ib.

1385—1420. This spirited passage, evidently written with keen enjoyment of the scene, is not in the original.

1421—4. This somewhat varies from the original, which has: "Descissis itaque anchoris edificium parebat ad latera muri ciuitatis;" ib.

1437. "Alii scalis, alii manibus adherentes;" ib.

1447. "In quibus quanta mala sustinuerunt Syrii vsque hodie memoratur;" a 6, col. 2, and a 6, back.

1457. A large portion of the Seventh Passus, down to l. 1687, agrees rather closely with the account in Josephus, Antiq. of the Jews, b. xi. c. 8, which should be compared with the text.

1460. "Had refused him an errand," Ashmole; "had denied him by saying nay," Dublin.

1462. "In all his greatest need, had he not failed that man."

1466. "On as many halidoms as open and shut." The sense of *halidom*, in this case, is a small box for containing relics. Hence the phrase "to swear on the halidom"; Rob. of Brunne, Handlyng Synne, 5629. See the glossaries to Layamon and the Ormulum.

1469. *Iaudes*, Jaddua; see note to l. 1171.

1504. "Deinde ipsum ira domini conculcabit;" a 6, back, col. 1. Hence *ire*, not *ayre*, is right.

1513—1572. This splendid passage, abounding in fancy and invention, is not in the Latin text.

1536. "And powdered (sprinkled over) with jewellery, which was purer than (any) other." Cf. Rich. the Redeles, i. 46.

1575. *By sum skill*, for some reason. Lat. "peruenit ad locum qui *scopolus* nuncupatur, vnde templum et ipsa ciuitas conspicitur;" ib. *Scopolus* represents the Gk. σκόπελος, a look-out place. Josephus (tr. by Whiston) says: "a place called *Sapha*, which name, translated into Greek, signifies *a prospect*, for you have thence a prospect both of Jerusalem and of the temple;" Antiq. xi. 8. 5.

1583. "Doctors both of dialectics and of decrees."

1592. Lat. "super caput ei[u]s habentem syndonem mundam et desuper laminam auream fabricatam, in qua nomen Dei *tetragramaton* scriptum erat;" ib. Josephus likewise mentions this head-plate. The *tetragrammaton*, or word of four letters, is YHVH, or *Yahveh*, the exact origin of which is still disputed; see Gesenius, Heb. Dict. 9th ed. p. 323.

1605. Lat. "Uiuat viuat altissimus Alexander venit. Uiuat viuat altissimus imperator Alexander," &c.; a 6, back, col. 2.

1614. Lat. "Uidentes hec reges Syrie plurimum obstupefacti murmurabant;" ib.

1617. *Permeon;* Lat. (ib.) "Parmonen;" in Josephus, Parmenio.

1630. *Anell;* read *angell*, i. e. angle, corner. *Aysy*, Asia.

1631. Lat. "illud siquidem in somnio me negligere nullatenus incitabat, sed confidenter transire;" a 6, back, col. 2.

1633*. Not in the Ashmole MS. For *he*, read *I*, twice; for *hoppyd* read *hopis*, 1st pers. pres. indicative. Lat. "Ideoque animaduerto ipsum esse quem per somnium intuebar;" ib.

1650. *Lythis of*, listens to; the reading *lightez* is corrupt. In the Dublin text it would be better to put commas after *&* and *wald;* it means, "and, as the law appointed, he offers," &c.

1655. See Daniel vii. 6; viii. 3—8, 20—22; xi. 3. The text expressly meant is no doubt Dan. viii. 21.

1679. "Then we should be bound, all the heap of us, to speed thee (*otherwise*, to pray for thee) for ever."

1681. *Men of Medi*, i. e. the Jews dwelling in Media. Lat. "vt Iudei in Media et Babylonia constituti suis legibus potirentur;" a 7, col. 1.

1687. Here ends the parallel passage in Josephus.

1691. The Lat. text (ib.) calls him Adromaticus.

1710. The words "he thought him so feeble" are in a parenthesis; the "three things" are in the accusative case.

1712. Lat. "Direxit ei pilam ludricam et zocham que fit de virgis que a capite curuatur, et cancram auream;" ib. See note to l. 1900.

1720. Part of the story here following agrees tolerably closely with the account in Julius Valerius, ed. Mai, ch. xlii, &c.

1725. *In fang with;* Lat. "vna cum;" a 7, col. 2.

1731. *Puruayd þe pletours*, provided for thyself pleaders. *Pleaders* is here used as a term of reproach; Jamieson gives *plede*, a quarrel, broil. Hence it means brawlers; Lat. "latrunculos;" ib.

1738. *Fere*, far, by a long way.

1744. "Therefore it is better to unbend [*as in* Dublin MS., *for see* 1974] and desist from thy violence, and feign all with fairness, and rejoice as far you may." Perhaps for *feyne* (or for *fayne*) we should read *fange*, i. e. receive, accept.

1753. *Sorowe* is certainly an error for *schrewe*, i. e. shrew-mouse. "Ane erd-growyn schrewe" is a close translation of the Lat. "mus prosiliens de scissura;" ib.

1756—8. Not in the original.

1759. Lat. "Egressus enim de terra Cethim et per spaciosa loca Perside tradis, saltus et ludos exercis [*read* exercens] vt mus in domibus vbi catule vel muscipule non sunt;" ib.

1766. "I shall set an assault (i. e. make an attack) on thee."

1767*. "For if thou overshoot thy shot, thou spoilest thine arrows." A hyphen should be inserted between *ouer* and *sheet*, *ouersheet* (overshoot) being all one word. For the distinction between *shot* (shot) and *shete*, to shoot, see Stratmann, s. v. *schot*, *scheoten*.

1774. *Forthe*, afford; the simple verb whence M.E. *aforthen* (now spelt *afford*) is derived.

1792. *Atell;* for *athell* (the usual spelling). See l. 1831.

1809. "The great stores of gold shall gather up our hearts," i. e. rouse our courage.

1813. This harsh command is made more intelligible by noting that it was meant in retaliation for the threat of Darius to *crucify* Alexander; for, in l. 1789, where the E. version has *pyne þe to dede*, the Latin has "vt principem latronum *crucifigant;*" ib. Cf. l. 1821. Julius Valerius tells the story very well; ed. Mai, pp. 55, 56.

1816. "Alas! what fault lies in us?"

1832—5. The Lat. text is more clearly worded. "Sedentibus illis dixerunt Alexandro, Rex, si vestre placet maiestati, imperate vt equites mille nobiscum veniant, quia Darium in manibus eorum trademus. Quibus Alexander respondit, Letetur animus vester in hoc quod sedetis, quia pro traditione vestri regis non dabitur vnus miles;" a 7, back, col. 1.

1837. *Crest;* i. e. the crest on the seal; see l. 1845.

1846. "If we see with a sooth," i. e. truly; Lat. "si bene volumus inspicere veritatem;" a 7, back, col. 2.

1850. *þe rime*, the rim; not *þi reme*, thy realm (as in Dublin MS.). Lat. "cum omnes in rota fortune volubili militemus;" ib.

1858. "Therefore a wise man, though he be in prosperity."

1859. *Set*, sets. This is a Midland and Southern form, short for *setteth;* the right Northern form is *settis*.

1864. "Cum minimus sepissime extollatur, et altissimus vsque ad puluerem deprimatur;" ib.

1874. "Sed cum dii sint immortales, mortalium habere consortium penitus vilipendunt;" ib. He argues that, if Darius were really godlike, he would not have any transactions with a mortal like himself.

1881. "Nor any praise, except that you happened to overcome a little thief" (Lat. latrunculum).

1882. "But if it befal me, that am a child, to be the stronger" (lit. chiefer).

1893. Lat. "et quam nos dixisti habere paupertatem repellere;" b 1, col. 1.

1900. "Per zocham que a capite curua existit, contemplamur quod omnes reges et terrarum principes coram nostra presentia curuabuntur. Per cancram auream, quod caput hominis induit et congirat, nos victores et non victos arbitramur;" ib.

1911. Lat. "Primo et Anthiocho satrapibus gaudium;" ib. J. Valerius calls them Hystaspes and Spynther; p. 61.

1915. *Fra*, from the time that. *For*, i. e. since, is better.

1924. Lat. "vt illo pueriliter flagellato induam purpura et dirigam eum matri sue Olimpie derogatum;" b 1, col. 2.

1929. Lat. "sed cum pueris puerilia exercere;" ib.

1949. "Before our worship departs;" *or*, "For our worship is gone."

1951. *Be þat*, by that time.

1953. Lat. "super fluuium qui Siragma dicitur;" ib. J. Valerius gives no name to the river.

1970. "For very great (lit. well wide) would be thy weal," &c. Read *þi wele*, as in Dublin MS.

1972. *Mayntene*, hold, keep. Perhaps *þi-selfe* is in the dative, and means 'for thyself.'

1974. See note to l. 1744.

1976. *Nyf*, were it not for; understand *wer*. Note the reading *yf ne wer* in the Dublin MS. Lat. "Cum absque nostra dominatione terra posset quasi vidua nuncupari;" b 1, back, col. 1. Perhaps *vidua* merely means 'empty, desert,' rather than 'a widow.'

1984. Lat. "hec grana papaueris que in mantica destinamus;" ib.

1988. "If thou failest to count them;" Lat. "quod si facere non valebis;" ib. See *trukien* in Stratmann.

1991. "For this seed that I send thee shall ever be uncounted;" Lat. "innumerabilis est nostrorum copia pugnatorum;" ib. For *neuire* read *euir*, as in the Dublin MS.

1997. *Tastis* is the right reading, as shewn by the alliteration. Lat. "mittens manum in mantica tulit de ipso semine, mittensque illud in os suum cepit mandere dicens: Uideo quod homines illius multi sunt, sed sicut hoc semen molles reperiuntur;" ib., and col. 2.

2004. *Wald worth*, would become, i. e. set out. *For* in the Dublin MS. is a mistake for *worth*.

2021. "An host (which is) a trouble thus to enumerate," i. e. too great to count; Lat. "maxima copia pugnatorum;" b 1, back, col. 2.

2025. "Shall be subdued, all the pack, unto these peppercorns" (Ashmole); "So subdued by all the pack of these little grains" (Dublin).

2037. Lat. "Amonta princeps militie;" ib.

2051. Lat. "passus fuit sol eclipsim nolens tantam sanguinis effusionem contemplari;" b 2, col. 1.

2060. Lat. "tergauersus de manibus inimicorum vix cum paucis euasit;" ib.

2067. *In his loue*, in the palm of his hand; Lat. "in manu;" ib.

2097. "His heart was none the fuller of pride, even by the value of a haw;" lit. "was never, the higher by a haw, his heart full of pride."

2103. *Cecile* is the usual M.E. form of *Sicily;* but the Lat. has *Cilicia*, which is clearly intended. So also in l. 2487. It is due to changing *Silice* into *Sicile*.

2106. *Yssanna;* Lat. text (ib.) *Sauinia*, which is not called an island. In fact, the M.E. *ile* merely means 'province'; see l. 2116, where it is used of Phrygia.

2109. *The tor of Tare*, the tor of Taurus. *Tor* is still used in Devonshire in the sense of hill-top. In passing from Cilicia, Alexander

crossed the Taurus range of mountains. Lat. "Ascendit . . . in montem Thaurum;" b 2, col. 2.

2112. Here the poet must have had a different reading or have used a different text, since the Lat. has only "in qua [ciuitate] sunt nouem milia;" ib. I have no doubt this allusion is due to a passage in Julius Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 69, where, immediately after a mention of the "culmen Tauri montis" (see l. 2109), we have an account of Alexander coming to a "Pierian" city, sacred to the muses; "ibidem musæ etiam Pierides consecratæ videbantur, unaque omnigenûm figmenta viventium Orphei musicam demirantia."

2117. Lat. "ingressus templum solis ibidem victimas immolauit;" ib.

2118. *Flum*, river; Lat. "flumen." *Fyue;* the Lat. says *fifteen*.

2120. Lat. "Beati qui laudes Homeri adepti estis. Quidam vero ex circumstantibus nomine Doccomictus respondens ait: Rex Alexander, vberiores laudes de te scribere queo quam fecit Homerus de hiis qui ciuitatem destruxerunt Troianam;" ib. In l. 2123, *And* has the force of 'than.'

2124. Lat. "Magister, cupio sapientis esse discipulus magis quam vilis laudes habere;" ib. The translator has quite missed the point; it means, "I would rather be the disciple of a wise man (like Homer) than receive the praises of an inferior man (like you)."

2131. *Abandra;* Lat. "Abdyron;" ib. Abdera is meant; see J. Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 74.

2150, 2151. *Wyothy;* Lat. "Brochia;" b 2, back, col. 1. *Caldipol;* Lat. "Caldeopolis."

2152. But the Lat. calls it "flumen senis;" ib. In J. Valerius, ed. Mai, p. 75, it is called lake Mæotis.

2165. "Then all the strong steeds stand us in stead not to the value of a straw."

2170. *Luctus;* Lat. "Lutrus;" ib. Locris is meant; see J. Valerius, p. 77.

2174. *Tergarontes;* Lat. "Tragacintes;" ib. In J. Valerius, p. 77, it is called Agragantum.

2179. *Zacora;* Lat. "Zochora;" b 2, back, col. 2. For *summe* read *nunne*, as in the Dublin MS.; the Lat. calls her "sacerdos femina virgo."

2210. Insert *to fonde*, i. e. to advance, as in Dublin MS.

2215. *Sechus;* Lat. "Zochus;" ib. The allusion is to Zethus, brother of Amphion.

2221—30. Not in the original. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 79.

2234. *Sicistrus;* Lat. "Sistorus;" b 3, col. 1.

2237. *Hismon;* Lat. "Ysuimea;" ib.

2252. *Cletomacus;* Lat. "Dithomatus;" ib. But Clytomachus in J. Valerius, p. 83, where the story is told at length.

2258. Lat. "Ille qui Thebanam construet ciuitatem tres victorias consequetur;" ib. Thebes was rebuilt by Cassander, B.C. 316.

УНИВЕРЗИТЕТСКА БИБЛИОТЕКА * БЕОГРАД *

2285. *Beddells*, beadles; Lat. "precones;" b 3, col. 2.

2286. Lat. "Sine ciuitate vocor;" ib.

2288. *&;* error for *at*, that. *To-name*, nickname.

2298. *Strasageras;* Lat. "Straxagonas;" ib. In J. Valerius, "Stasagoras"; p. 86.

2299. *Duse him in*, enters; referring to Alexander.

2303. "He that ruled the city;" i. e. Strasagoras.

2308. "Non es digna sacerdotio fungi. Alexander ingressus est ad te, et bene vaticinata es ei; mihi autem dixisti quod vniuersum perderem principatum;" b 3, back, col. 1.

2312. "Venit Athenas; audiens autem que Athenienses dicebant, scripsit," &c.; ib. The English is obscure, but is cleared up by referring to J. Valerius, p. 88, where it appears that the *prince* (l. 2311) is Strasagoras, who "goes to Athens, and complains of (Alexander) the noble one. And they (the Athenians) said harm would come to him (Alexander) unless he yielded up the city to Strasagoras."

2332. *Afle*, an error for *Afric;* Lat. "Affrice;" ib.

2348. *Eschilus;* Lat. (b 3, back, col. 2) "Eusculus," as if Æschylus were meant; but J. Valerius (p. 90) correctly has *Æschines*.

2352. *Domystyne*, Demosthenes; Lat. "Demosteni;" ib.

2361. *Sexes*, Xerxes; but the Lat. has "Sennes;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 93.

2384. "Culpa enim Straxagonis interuenit; quoniam sicut audiuimus Alexandrum etiam sapientia circumfulsum, quod sine culpa Straxagonem minime eiecisset;" b. 4, col. 1.

2397. *Payse*, weight; "pensantem libras centum quinquaginta;" ib.

2412. Omit *&*, which interrupts the sense.

2419. The English is obscure. "Non cogitauimus ciuitatem vestram cum exercitu introire, sed tantum cum principibus quos habemus. Proposuimus siquidem vos ab omni suspitione criminis liberare. Uos autem de nobis contrarium cogitastis, prout vestra manifestat conscientia;" b 4, col. 2.

2425. "Sed, vt scitis, mali semper cogitant mala et committunt;" ib. The next line is not in the Latin.

2430. *Gradid*, degraded; "deposuimus;" ib.

2431. "Scripsimus vobis vt decem philosophos mitteretis;" ib.

2436. "Because ye held to the counsels of the sage Demosthenes."

2440. *Lacedoyne*, Lacedæmonia. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 111.

2451—2460. Expanded out of a few words: "Ascenderunt etiam naues sibique ad littus maris obuiam exierunt;" b 4, back, col. 1.

2466. "Et nolite manus extendere ad altissima que tangere non potestis;" ib.

2469. Lat. "vt gratis de vestro nauigio exeatis priusquam ignis vos turpiter compellat prosilire;" ib.

2480. Compare note to l. 2466 above.

2487. *Sycile*, Sicily; but Cilicia is meant; see note to l. 2103.

2494. "Whereas I threatened him as being a robber (fit only) to

despoil small nations." Lat. "Ego autem putabam illum esse latrunculum qui tanquam predo regiones debiles preliaret;" b 5, col. 1.

2505. "For his fame, notwithstanding all his littleness of stature, is celebrated throughout the world."

2506. Lat. "magnitudo nostra deficiat;" ib.

2508. *Leues*, leaves, grants; answering to Lat. "concedere;" ib.

2512. *Oriathire;* the Lat. has "Macher;" ib. But J. Valerius (p. 115) has Oxyathrus.

2513. "Magnificasti Alexandrum, dicens quod ille exardescit ingredi Persidiam quam nos Elladam occupare;" ib. Here *Elladam* clearly stands for *Hellada*, i. e. Hellas or Greece, and such is meant by *Elanda* in l. 2514. "We are to give up Greece, and he is to enter Persia."

2519. "Debeo ab illo, an ille a me exemplum colligere?" b 5, col. 2.

2528, 2529. *Itaile;* Lat. "Itali;" ib. *Appolomados;* Lat. "Appollimati." *Panthis*, for *Parthis;* Lat. "Parthi."

2533. "A wolf will worry many flocks of sheep." Compare the saying of Anectanabus in l. 109, which gives point to l. 2522 above. In the text, *a wee* is taken as being an inferior reading to *þe we*, i. e. the man, which in that case is Alexander. This clearly gives the most point to the story, and was probably the original form of the narrative; and, if so, the gathering together of the Persians (ll. 2527—32) should also refer to the same occasion; cf. l. 889. Still, it must be admitted that, as the story now stands, the right reading must be *a wee*, i. e. a certain man, viz. another of the courtiers of Darius. This requires the insertion of marks of quotation after *drede* (l. 2532), and then l. 2533 should be read—"ȝa, bot a wolfe," quod a wee · "will were [i. e. worry] many flokkis," &c. The side-note should be altered accordingly. The Lat. text and J. Valerius agree with this latter view.

2540. *Mocian;* Lat. "Oceanus;" b 5, back, col. 1. In Plutarch, the river is the Cydnus, according to the usual account. So also in J. Valerius, p. 117; cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 145.

2554. *Philip;* called by Plutarch "the Acharnanian."

2559. *Permeon*, Parmenio; see the epitome of the story in the note to J. Valerius, p. 119. The Lat. calls him "Parmerius;" ib. Parmenio was put to death by Alexander, but not on this occasion. In fact, he is alive again in l. 3113. This error is noticed in Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 146.

2575. *Fysch-hale*, fish-whole, as sound as a fish. Hazlitt's Proverbs, p. 71, has "as sound as a roach" and "as sound as a trout." *Fysh-hole* occurs again in the Chevalere Assigne, l. 353. And see l. 4282 below, p. 232.

2586. *Adriac;* Lat. "Adriacus;" b 5, back, col. 2.

2588. *Vncachid hertis*, lost their courage; Lat. "timuerunt;" b 6, col. 1.

2592. *Him to tell;* an error for *thaim to sewe*, to follow them, as in the Dublin MS. Lat. "deinde omnis exercitus sequeretur;" ib.

2593. *Writhis*, better *wrethis*, grows angry; "iratus est;" ib.

2598. *Sylus*, or *Nilus;* Lat. "in Nilo incorperantur" (*sic*); ib. This is a singular specimen of medieval geography.

2603. *The floure*, i. e. the floral crown of victory.

2631. So also in J. Valerius, note to p. 119; and in Kyng Alysaunder, ed. Weber, p. 160.

2646. "Nonne cognoscebas me esse Alexandrum adiutorem et seruum vestrum?" b 6, col. 2.

2670. *Degrayd*, subdue; Lat. "superare;" b 6, back, col. 1. But a line or two should have been added after this line, stating that a new battle took place, in which Darius was soon worsted.

2673. *Batran;* Lat. (accus.) "Bacerem;" ib.

2707. "Sed impossibile est inertem et ponderosum asinum ad sidera sublimari, cum alis et volatiuis careat instrumentis;" c 1, col. 1. Hence *As* = ass.

2725. *Lazes*, laughs; Lat. "subridens;" ib.

2733. *Dedly*, mortal. "Sicque mortales puniunt cum sibi nomen immortalitatis assumunt;" ib. Hence l. 2734 means—"who have assumed the name of Lord of Immortality."

2759. *Siphagoyne;* Lat. "Deplogione" in the gen. case; c. 1, col. 2. *Surry*, Syria. *Capados*, Cappadocia. *Landace*, Laodicea.

2767. Lat. "et nostris militibus tam indumenta quam calciamenta preparentur;" ib.

2773. *Nostanda;* Lat. "Nostodi;" ib.

2795. *He*, i. e. Darius; as the Latin shews; c. 1, back, col. 1.

2810. *Lyse*, I lie, abide; *lokis*, I look, expect, wait.

2811. "And, as I hope to recover (lit. may recover) of my sickness that I am now involved in, so am I sorry," &c.

2819. *Rodogars;* Lat. "Rodoga;" ib. Her name was Sysigambis. J. Valerius calls her Rogodune; p. 131.

2839. *Hade;* read *haue*. "For, as for any noble under heaven, it were safer for him to give up that which he cannot have than to pursue (his object) further."

2851. An early example of the "Birnam wood" story. Cf. Kyng Alysaunder, ed. Weber, p. 168.

2875. *Emynelaus;* Lat. "Eumulus;" c 2, col. 1.

2882. *Granton;* Lat. "Grancus;" ib. Evidently the Granicus, though the battle there fought belongs to an early period in Alexander's career.

2884. *Strama;* Lat. "qui Stagnia lingua Persica nuncupatur;" ib.

2900. Lat. "cursu tam rapido fluit," &c.; c 2, col. 2.

2906. *What dones man*, what sort of man, lit. man of what make or sort; Lat. (ib.) "quis es tu?" On this curious expression see my note to P. Plowman, B. xviii. 298 (p. 419); and cf. Alex. and Dindimus, ll. 222, 999. For the story, cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 171.

2955. *Anepo;* Lat. "Anapolus;" c 2, back, col. 1. In Weber's edition, he is called Pertage; l. 4230. Cf. ll. 883—888.

2988. For *to* read *on*, as in D. *On the trode-gate*, along the trodden road, along the pathway; Lat. "recto tramite incedebat;" c 2, back, col. 2.

3003. Lat. "Sed antequam exiret, dissolutus est fluuius, et equum eius absorbuit, et ipse cum difficultate maxima exiliuit;" ib.

3011. "Multitudo muscarum nullam inferet lesionem vespium paucitati;" c 3, col. 1. Cf. ll. 109, 2533.

3032. *The firste*, the former one; see l. 3004.

3060. Lat. "sicut messis in campo;" c 3, col. 2. See *rizome* in Halliwell.

3078. "Nunc fugitiuus et subiectus factus sum;" ib.

3080. "Si cognitum esset homini misero quid accidere sibi debeat in futuro, illud in presenti cogitaret. In puncto enim vnius diei venit quod homines vsque ad nubes exaltat fortuna, et sublimes vsque ad tenebras demergit in profundum;" c 3, col. 2, and back, col. 1. Perhaps some lines have been lost in the English version.

3100. Lat. "omnes suas victorias in Ellada consummauit." *Ellada* (E. *Elanda*) appears to refer to Hellas, i. e. Greece, as above; see note to l. 2513.

3113. *Permeon*, Parmenio; see note to l. 2559.

3123. *He put it*, i. e. let him put it.

3148. *Kist*, chest, i. e. tomb. The sense intended is that the amethyst was so transparent that the body could be as clearly seen as if it had been tombless. "Et tam lucidus erat ametistus vt etiam a foris integrum corpus hominis appareret;" c 4, col. 1.

3164. *At*, against; Lat. "contra illos qui," &c.; c. 4, col. 2.

3174. Cf. the parallel passage in Valerius, p. 121.

3190. The two traitors are, by Valerius, called Besas (usually written Bessus) and Ariobarzanes; p. 122. See l. 3428 below.

3219. *Cusys*, put for *Curys*, i. e. Cyrus (as in the Lat. text).

3242. "Iuro enim tibi per potentissimos deos meos quod veraciter tibi totum imperium renuncio;" c 5, col. 1.

3248. *Thi banes*, thy murderers; "interfectores tuos;" ib. See l. 969.

3267*. This line is essential to the sense.

3274. "In humilitatis foueam demergatur;" c. 5, col. 2.

3293. "Et quem deprimit exaltare potest; et quem exaltat hominem potest sternere in profundum;" ib.

3296. For *ere* (are) read *is;* "for victory is granted thee by God."

3299. Lat. "aranearum artificio comparatur;" ib.

3301. For the second *werd* read *werk* (as in l. 3299) or *web*. "With the least wind in the world that touches the work (*or* web), each (bit of the) work is destroyed and all comes to nothing." *Note* is profit, advantage, &c.

3315. *Rosan*, Roxana, whom Alexander married; but it is doubtful if she was the daughter of Darius. See Mai's note to J. Valerius, p. 125.

3324. *Mote*, meeting, assembly; "ad regale palacium Darii;" c 5, back, col. 1.

3326. *Cusus*, i. e. Cyrus; as before. See l. 3219.

3342. "Secundus ex smaragdo;" c 5, back, col. 2.

3349. "Amatistus enim reprimit fortitudinem et fumositatem vini;" ib.

3355. Lat. "vt nequaquam incidat ratione impericie in sinistrum;" ib.

3365—7. "Ne prout thopasius ostendit caput eius, hoc est dignitas ipsius ex altitudine vsque ad puluerem deprimatur;" ib.

3376, 3377. These two curious lines are not in the Latin text; but the same statement occurs in Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvii. p. 270. In the Bestiary by Philip de Thaun, ed. Wright, p. 125, we are told that the adamant could be broken by means of the blood of *goats*, and this is what is meant in l. 3378, where the Lat. has "nec . . . potest collidi nisi sanguine fuerit hircino perfusus;" c 6, col. 1.

3386. *A kyng* is here a dative case; "the same diligence is for a king," i. e. is needful for a king to have.

3390. *Cried*, created; Lat. "procreatum;" ib.

3427. "Omnis populus Persarum fleuit amarissime;" c 6, col. 2.

3428. Lat. "Byffex et Anarbasontes;" ib. Cf. note to l. 3190.

3437. "And, unless your crimes had been discovered, I should not have kept my oaths." The story is told at much greater length in Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 192.

3443. Perhaps a line is lost before this, as the sense is imperfect. "Eodem siquidem tempore quidam senex cui nomen erat Duricius auunculus Darii imperatoris, qui plurimum a Persis amabatur, hic ad petitionem totius populi ab Alexandro dux in Perside est constitutus;" c 6, back, col. 1.

3458. *Feyne*, put for *fyne*, cease; "nolite me colere;" col. 2.

3467. Here ends the *first part* of the romance; the second part is concerned chiefly with the war against Porus and the description of the wonders of India. See ll. 3472, 3473. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. p. 135. Ll. 3464—3479 are not in the Latin text.

3494. "Alexander autem iste nihil optat nisi vt vniuersum mundum debellando sibi subiiciat. Prelia enim et contentiones nutriunt corpus suum;" ib.

3517. *Heried*, harried, beaten; "sicut hucusque vici;" d 1, col. 1.

3521. *Me*, for me. *Driȝtin*, &c., the Lord forbid it!

3534. *Bot rede*, but (we are) ready to follow.

3540. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. c. 4.

3547. "Cum tuipse oculos habeas et non videas;" d 1, col. 2.

3550. For the second *fiȝt* read *folk*, i. e. people; "cum mollibus siquidem pugnasti;" ib.

3556. *Denys*, the French form of *Dionysius;* Lat. "Dionisius Bachus, qui Liber pater dictus est;" ib. Hence Porus refers to Dionysus or Bacchus; and this explains the context, especially l. 3555, which means "all gods and goddesses are afraid of my name;" Lat. "non solum homines verum etiam Dii nomini nostro famulentur." This also

explains *ministration*, i. e. lowly service, in l. 3554. See J. Valerius, p. 139.

3558. "Ante siquidem quam Xerxes regnaret in Persida, Indis censum Macedones erogabant. Sed quoniam inutilis erat eorum terra regique displicens, dedignati sunt illam Indi;" ib. In l. 3559, *At* = that, i. e. know that.

3560. *Vs;* "it pleases us (to regard) them no longer."

3604. *Oure mey[n]he*, our company; see l. 3619.

3622. "All that, in the times (of fighting), get away unharmed never durst afterwards abide on the field, (each with) his face to his foes."

3633. "Statimque ex calore nimio vrebantur;" d 2, col. 1.

3642. "Itaque per continuos viginti dies pugna durauit;" ib.

3658. "Offers to all his old gods, and thanks them for his honour; as well the Indians as his own men, he buries them all." For *graue* read *graues*.

3665. "Quadringentas columnas aureas cum capitellis aureis preparatas;" ib.

3670. Lat. "alii de smaragdis, et alii onichimata quod naturaliter videretur ibi esse. Parietes vero ipsius palatii erant de laminis aureis cooperti," &c.; d 1, coll. 1 and 2.

3676. "Erantque ipsi parietes ornati ex margaritis, vnionibus, carbunculis, smaragdis, et amatistis;" d 1, col. 2.

3682, 3683. Not in the Latin text; yet the translator alludes to his original here.

3688. "And a shrine was built over each man."

3707. "Sed in ea multa genera serpentium consistebant;" ib.

3711. Lat. "Talifrida;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 202.

3725. "Audiuimus quod animus tuus sapientia floreat et coruscat, et preterita recolis, presentiaque disponis, habens noticiam futurorum;" d 2, back, col. 1.

3738. "Et sumus numero ducentarum quatuordecim milia feminarum;" ib.

3746. "Si autem femina fuerit, nostris moribus enutritur;" col. 2.

3751. "Cum autem cum victoria redimus, a nostris vnanimiter adoramur. Itaque si contra nos veneris, viriliter proposuimus preliari. Quod si tu nos viceris, nullam laudem penitus consequeris," &c.; ib.

3759. "Quia multa tibi possent aduersa contingere que nullatenus meditaueris;" ib.

3768. "Sed quia conuersationem vestram diligimus, in consilium vobis damus," &c.; d 3, col. 1.

3771. For the second *to*, we should perhaps read *but*.

3775. Lat. "polleros decem indomitos;" ib.

3777. The line is too short; read *many mayn giftis*.

3778. *Conquiris*, put for *conqueres*, conqueress.

3780. Cf. J. Valerius, bk. iii. c. 11, p. 145.

3782. *Batriane;* Lat. "Bactricen"; i. e. Bactria (ib.). Written

"Bactriacen" in the Lat. text given in Cockayne's Narratiunculæ, 1861, p. 53, l. 1; which text may also be profitably consulted.

3790. *On;* read *of*, i. e. "*by* the sun."

3794. Lat. "vbi multitudo serpentiam et ferarum erat;" ib.

3800. *Zephall;* Lat. Zephir (col. 2); or, in Cockayne's Latin text, Severus. A similar story is told by Plutarch. See 2 Sam. xxiii. 16.

3807. "An ego solus nutriar sine illis?" (ib.)

3820. "Habebat enim elephantes mille Alexander, qui aurum eius portabant, et quadringentas quadrigas omnes falcatas, et mille ducentas bigas, equites trecenta milia, camelos, mulos, dromedarios, innumerabilem multitudinem qui annonam et alia necessaria exercitui deferebant;" ib. It may be observed that the translator, in the latter part, begins to curtail the story, omitting some unimportant details. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 211.

3834. "Et in ipso castro homines apparebant;" d 3, back, col. 1.

3844. "Et cum iam quartam partem fluminis transnatassent, insurgentes ipsius fluminis yppotami eos continuo deuorauerunt;" col. 2. See Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 214.

3849. "Occurrebant eis leones, pardi, et vrsi, rinocerontes, tigres, dracones, et eos fortiter impugnabant;" ib.

3852. "Mirantes autem ipsum fluuium circa horam vndecimam inuenerunt stagnum mellifluum et suaue;" ib.

3858. "Que silua . . . ex prenominatis calamis est iuncta;" ib. It would thus appear that *ryse* means 'rushes', with reference to *redis* in ll. 3815, 3832, where the Latin text also has *calamis*.

3862. "Cumque luna inciperet lucere, subito inceperunt in ipsum stagnum scorpiones mire magnitudinis aduenire; deinde dracones et serpentes ceperunt ex diuersis coloribus festinare, totaque ipsa terra ex eorum sibulis resonabat," &c.; ib.

3884. "Then (some) of his soldiers were emboldened." Lat. "milites eius confortati sunt;" d 4, col. 1.

3888. Lat. "viginti milites et triginta serui a draconibus perierunt;" ib.

3891. "And to him, finally, falls all the praise."

3894. Lat. "habentes dorsa duriora cocodrillis;" ib.

3898. "Uerum multos ex eis interfecerunt. Alii intrauerunt stagnum;" ib. The English is obscure; but cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, l. 5380:

> "Ac natheles in her honden
> Hy henten grete fire-bronden:
> And thorugh that fyre, and goddes mighth
> Hy hem sloughen dounerighth."

3902. Lat. "venerunt super eos leones albi;" ib.

3906. *Berys*, (properly) bears; but read *barys*, boars; Lat. "porci;" ib.

3907. Lat. "quorum dentes vno cubito longi erant; et illis homines agrestes . . . vna cum porcis super homines similiter currebant;" col. 2.

3918. "And then he bids them quickly to light, close upon the pool, outside his army everywhere, horrible fires."

3921. *Meere*, mare; "similis equo;" ib.

3926. "Nominabantur autem, secundum Indicam linguam, *Onocenthaurus;* et antequam de ipsa aqua biberet, fecit impetum super illos;" ib. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 224, where the same strange animals are called *deutyrans*. But the name should certainly have been printed *dentyran*, short for *denti-tyran*, Lat. *dentityrannus*. In fact, Cockayne has "dentem tyrannum;" p. 56, l. 18. This is the Lat. form of *Odontotyrannus*, the name given to the creature in J. Valerius, p. 167. The E. version has *Adanttrocay*, evidently founded (partially) on the same name; for which *Onocenthaurus* has been substituted by confusion in the Lat. text. It is probable, however, that the form *Odontotyrannus* is also a corruption (as it gives no good sense); and I suspect that the original word was *Odontokeratias*, i. e. 'with horns like teeth.' The form in the E. version seems to point to this name. In Mandeville's Travels, ed. Halliwell, p. 290, a picture of the animal is given; he is there called *Odenthos*.

3932. Lat. "mures maiores talpis," ib.; Cockayne has "mures . . . *uulpibus* similes;" p. 56.

3936. "Ceperunt enim volare vespertiliones vt columbe, quorum dentes erant vt dentes hominum;" ib. J. Valerius (p. 168) has: "Ad hæc alites quibus apud nos vocabulum vespertilio est, sed quæ illic super columbæ magnitudinem," &c.

3939. "And they sharply wounded that which was unarmed," i. e. the unprotected faces of the soldiers.

3943. *Blemest*, killed; in a stronger sense than mod. E. *blemished*. The Lat. has "vulnerantes," from the employment of which word the poet infers that no one was actually killed.

3944. "Venerunt aues magne, colorem rubicundum habentes, pedes vero et rostra nigra, neque nocuerunt eis;" ib. Cockayne has "aues *uulturibus* similes;" p. 56. Hence *vowtres* are vultures. *Boukes* (bodies) is an error for *bekkes* (beaks).

3947. *Did bot plaid by*, did no more than played with.

3950. Lat. "venerunt in partibus latrimariis" (*sic*); d 4, back, col. 1.

3957. "Et arbores folia vt lana habentes, que gentes ipse colligebant et ex ea vestimenta faciebant;" ib. An interesting notice of silk. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 268; Cockayne's text, p. 53, l. 2.

3987. "Confidebat igitur Porus in altitudine corporis sui, que in quinque cubitorum altitudine videbatur;" d 4, back, col. 2.

3995. "So sharply that he totters with it, and (he) nearly felled him for ever."

3996. "Milites vero Pori altis vocibus vociferauerunt, audiens itaque Porus clamorem quem suus exercitus faciebat, faciem suam versus eos voluit;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 148.

4010. For *3our* read *our;* it refers to the Indians.

4015. Lat. "ceperunt Alexandrum tanquam deum glorificare;" ib.

4019. Here begins the "Fragment B" of the Alexander Romance, edited by me for the E. E. T. S. under the title of Alexander and Dindimus. The Latin original of several passages is printed in the same book, to which the reader is particularly referred. See also the notes to the same, at p. 45. It is needless to repeat here explanations which have been already given. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxix.

4026. "As naked as a needle;" a proverbial phrase. See P. Plowman, C. xv. 105, xx. 56; and the Notes to P. Plowman, p. 290.

4044. Insert *in* before *wildernes*. The scribe has obviously omitted it by error.

4060. "Why dost thou hasten from place to place?"

4064. *Rifte;* evidently an error for *riste* = *reste*, rest. "It would be my desire to rest, but another spirit, and not my spirit, prevents my spirit from so doing." Lat. "Uellem siquidem in pace consistere," &c.; d 5, col. 2.

4067. Here there is a break in "Fragment B"; see Alex. and Dind. p. 5.

4068. Lat. "vbi erant statue quas Hercules erexerat;" ib.

4074. Insert *with* after *fillis;* "and fills them with florins, to the number of 1500." The story is that this enormous quantity of gold was required (or at any rate, assigned) merely to fill up the holes which had been made through the statues. This is shewn by the parallel passage in J. Valerius, p. 214, which is much more clearly expressed.

4096. "Exiuit . . bestia similis ippotauro habens pectus vt cocodrilli, dorsum vt serra, dentes vero ipsius vt gladii acuti videbantur. In accessu uero ipsius tarda erat vt testudo;" d 5, back, col. 1. Cf. Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 236.

4103. *Eumare;* Lat. "Thamar." Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 236.

4108. The Latin is clearer. It tells us that the squealing of swine (called *swelyng* in l. 4112) was efficacious in frightening the elephants. Hence Alexander directs his men to take swine with them, and beat them till they should squeal. Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 237.

4121. *Viaunce*, viand, food; as if from Lat. *uiuentia*.

4126. Lat. "habentes corpora pilosa sicut bestie;" d 6, col. 1. Cf. Kyng Alis. p. 239.

4130. Lat. "se in ipsum fluuium dimerserunt;" ib. Cockayne has "marini fluminis se immerserunt uorticibus;" p. 58.

4140. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 169.

4158. Lat. "propter autumnale equinoctium hoc contingit;" ib.

4162. Lat. "omnia que ventus disperserat collegerunt;" ib.

4166. Lat. "cadebantque niues magne vt lana;" d 6, col. 2. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 169.

4168. For *And* read *He;* "and, lest it should not cease, he made his men tread it down, like floors, with their feet."

4182. "And, where it approaches the unprotected skin, it harms it for ever."

4188. See the references, in the margin, to the parallel passages in Alexander and Dindimus. The side-notes, in many places, closely correspond.

4221. See the note to Alex. and Dindimus, p. 47 (l. 221).

4228. "And your learning shall be none the less, even to the value of a leek," i. e. in the least degree.

4233. *He*, i. e. Dindimus. *Him* (l. 4234), Alexander.

4246. The fourth *subiectis* should be *subiect.* "For an unwise king cannot rule his subjects, and (make them) to be subjects as subjects should be, but his subjects make him subject to his subjects."

4263. "We decline, amongst us, all that is too much above measure."

4264. "Except that which Nature leaves us."

4293. *The seuyn*, i. e. the seven deadly sins.

4318. "Which is parted, among all the pack of us, by equal portions." In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 15) read "*quia* communiter omnia supportamus," not *quam;* e 1, col. 1.

4321. *Iustice of aire*, judge on circuit; "justice in eyre" is a common law-phrase.

4326. For *nulla*, in the Lat. text (Alex. and Dindimus, p. 15) read *nulla mala;* the word *mala* was accidentally omitted.

4376. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 19) for *moueter* read *mouetur*.

4387. "The which I suppose, sir, it would be unwholesome for thee to observe." In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 20) for *vident* read *videtur*.

4389. *And we*, &c.; "and we deserve no wrath." Cf. the E. version in Alex. and Dind. l. 512.

4397. "Much would have more;" a proverb.

4408. *Or* should probably be *our;* "may our God give them sorrow!" It is a form of curse.

4410. *Him;* a curious error. Read *hir*, her.

4416. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 21), last line but one, read *Proserpina*. The letter *p* was unfortunately shifted.

4417. Insert a comma after *sottis;* it is in the vocative case.

4446. *Maydese*, may God aid us! "And yet, as may God aid us, for all your toil (?), that mother created you;" [read *ȝow* for *ws*].

4449. *Assemy;* perhaps an error for *semly*, seemly. The alliteration demands the letter *s*.

4460. *Seropis*, Serapis. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 23, last line but two) for *solem* read *solam*.

4470. "Ye act (lit. let) as though they might cure all that any man would like (to have cured)." *Leth* is the same as *lethien*, to mitigate, relieve, assuage, comfort, cure. The sb. *leth* occurs in l. 4593.

4473. "Which (gods) have neither sight nor soul, but (are) the work of man."

4478. *For his son*, for the sake of His Son. This is a curious specimen of anachronism; the Brahmans are here made Christians. In

l. 4486, they are made to denounce 'maumetry', i. e. the idolatry supposed to be practised by Mahometans.

4487. "That thrusts you plump down to the devil, when ye are dead (and gone) hence."

4492. "But ye pay respect to many others that are no more akin to Him than is the flesh of fish to the fair member (of men)," i. e. to a man's limb.

4494. See note to l. 645 of Alex. and Dindimus, p. 52.

4510, 4511. *Serenon*, a form due to *Cererem*, acc. of *Ceres;* see the Latin. *Hem* is for *him*, i. e. Ceres (supposed masculine). "For formerly quarters of whete without number (were owing) to him;" i. e. Ceres first sowed wheat. See notes to Alex. and Dind. p. 54, l. 692.

4517. "And leave not so much as a limb for your bodies to stand on."

4528. "For joy of his (the peacock's) pride."

4531. For *him* read *hir;* "is yielded to her as tribute."

4534. See notes to Alex. and Dind. p. 54, l. 719.

4583. "Nor any sort of metal to make (tools) with, neither *meslin* nor other metal."

4589. *Lere at*, learn from.

4592. "Were they that have pains so wise, who would be so widely praised as lepers?"

4619. "That all might continue in one condition."

4621. *So*, &c.; "so the world requires." A common phrase; see P. Plowman, B. prol. 19; Alex. and Dind. l. 407.

4622. *Ouir wild;* an error for *our will;* Lat. "humana voluntas;" e 2, back, col. 2.

4626. "We do but trample on it." See l. 4681.

4639. "Or else ye are angry with your good fortune."

4640. Probably *pure* is an adverb, signifying purely, wholly. If so, omit the comma after *tecches*.

4649. "From Paris to Rome." A singular illustration.

4653. "Nor (are) angry with our Lord." Understand *ar*.

4654. *Seerties*, varieties; Lat. "varietates;" e 3, col. 1. For *we seet* read *he set*, he appointed; Lat. "constituit."

4657. "That man is God's friend, and (yet) is none the more a god." Lat. "non Deus, sed Dei amicus appellatur;" ib.

4658. Read *in* before *my*. "This similitude, that thou appliest to our race in my letter." Also by "my letter" we must understand "the letter sent to me."

4664. *All be we*, although we be. At the end of l. 4665, substitute a comma for the full-stop.

4666. "Nevertheless (as *ye* say) we consider ourselves to be gods by a (recognised) law(?); but it is *you*, not *we*, that continually practise the same," viz. that attempt to be as gods.

4682. In the Lat. text (Alex. and Dind. p. 38, last line, p. 39, first line) for *bibiberit* read *biberit*.

4685. "The cursed game of avarice would be altogether drowned (i. e. put an end to) by it."

4714. Here ends Fragment B. of the Romance.

4720. *Acrea;* Lat. "Adzea;" e 3, back, col. 1. *Angill*, angle, nook.

4734. For *flode*, read *fynd*; see the footnote. "As I find (in the book)."

4741. Lat. "venit super eos quidam homo agrestis corpore magno et pilosus vt porcus et vox illius tanquam porci, et non loquebatur sed semper tanquam stridebat;" e 3, back, col. 2. The description in the English text is much amplified.

4765. *Lindis*, lindens; hence, trees in general. Cf. J. Valerius, p. 171; also Alex. and Dind. p. 5.

4777. *A bad*, he bade. *A nappill*, an apple.

4791—4802. The Lat. merely has: "Subito peruenit draconum serpentium et leonum multitudo, qui eos maxima angustia angustiauerunt. Tandem ab eorum periculis euaserunt;" e 4, coll. 1 and 2.

4808. *Bothom*, bottom of the valley. *Bournes*, streams.

4810. *A nezen daies*, a (period of) nine days; Lat. "Completis . . octo diebus;" e 4, col. 2. Cf. l. 4814.

4812. Lat. "peruenerunt ad radicem vnius montis;" ib.

4819. *Gols*, gules, i. e. red; cf. l. 5060. Lat. "inuenerunt planiciem maximam, cuius terra erat valde rubicunda. Erantque in ipsa planicie arbores infinite que vltra mensuram cubiti non crescebant, quarum fructus et folia suauissima vt ficus;" ib.

4830. "Erantque ipsi montes excissi vt paries, ita vt nullus posset ascensum facere ad cacumen;" ib.

4850. Lat. "constituit terminos quos nullus [trans]ire presumebat. Et fecit fieri clippeum magnum et longum cubitis septem et latum cubitis quatuor; et ab exteriori parte in superficie clippei fecit speculum maximum fieri. Fecitque sibi subtalares lineos. Cepit contra basiliscum opposito sibi clippeo incedere," &c.; e 4, back, col. 1. The English version is too much abridged.

4867. The plain is described before; l. 4818.

4875. "Et . . . peruenit ad quendam montem adamantinum in cuius ripa auree cathene dependebant;" e 4, back, col. 2.

4885. "That he and his host honour, and offers to each."

4908. "Inuenerunt hominem iacentem in lecto aureo pallio textillorum ornato;" e 5, col. 1. Lines 4912—4919 are not in the Latin text.

4925. Lat. "cuius caput et barba tanquam purissima lana videbatur;" ib.

4936. "And thou shalt hear, perhaps, ere thou go hence."

4941. For *þi delume* read *þe deluuie*, the deluge; Lat. "Priusquam vnda diluuii operiret terram;" ib. And probably *drechet* should be *drenchet*. The form *diluuie* (deluge) occurs in P. Plowman, B. x. 411.

4942. "Does it not please thee to look on the trees that live for evermore?" As to the Trees of the Sun and Moon, cf. J. Valerius,

p. 172; Kyng Alisaunder, p. 277. See also Yule's edition of Marco Polo; Mandeville's Travels, p. 298; Cockayne's text, p. 60.

4947. "This word I would desire (to hear), if it be your will; all the world is not dearer to me (than this desire)."

4964. Lat. "vna cum Ptholomeo et Anthiocho et Perdica incedebat;" ib.

4972. "Erantque ipse arbores alte pedibus centum et lauris erant similes et oliue ex quibus thus et balsamus largissime effluebant;" ib.

4982. The Lat. description of the Phœnix is as follows. "Et auis gerebat in capite cristam similem pauoni, et fauces cristatas, et circa collum circulum aureum fulgentem. Postrema vero parte purpurea erat. Extra caudam vero roseis pennis in quibus ceruleus color erat;" e 5, col. 2.

4996. "Sursum aspicite et de quocunque scire volueritis in corde vestro reuoluetis. Sed palam nolite aliquid enarrare;" ib.

5017. "Si cum triumpho Macedoniam remearet;" ib.

5036. *For writhing*, for fear of making angry, for fear of offending.

5083. Lat. "encenia plurima sibi contulerunt, videlicet, pelles ex piscibus habentes figuram pardi et leonis, et pelles morenarum que per longum septem cubitis tendebantur;" e 5, back, col. 2.

Hence *slo3is* (5085) means 'sloughs' or skins.

5088. Lat. "sine calce constructa;" ib. Cf. J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 44, p. 177. The name of *Candace* is doubtless borrowed from Acts viii. 27. Cf Kyng Alisaunder, ed. Weber, p. 305.

5092. Called in the Latin Candeolus, Marsipius, and Carracorinus. In J. Valerius, the eldest son is called Candaules; in Weber, Candulake.

5113. *With*, by. Before *melid* understand *is*. "And that is not only told us by men of this world."

5123. "Dirigo Amoni deo tuo bipedes centum, aues spirciones ducentas, cathenas aureas insertas lapidibus preciosis in quibus erant decem dependentes plena auibus supradictis; et ceneras aureas triginta, uectes hebenos mille quingentos, rinoceros octuaginta, pantheras tria milia, pelles pardi et leonis quingentos;" e 6, col. 1. The translator makes the description in l. 5127 refer to the *rekanthes* (i. e. chains) in l. 5128, and translates the whole in a very free way. He seems to have consulted J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 47, which has: "Habebis ergo tibi ex nobis amicitiæ argumentum centum laterculos auri grandissimos, Æthyopas impubes quinque (cf. l. 5132), psittacos sex, phrygasque sex, præterque hæc Hammoni deo nostro coronam smaragdis ac margaritis etiam toreumatis pretiosiorem. His et loculos refertissimos cuiusque generis margaritarum atque gemmarum ad decem numerum, eburneosque alios loculos octaginta una misi . . . elephantos trecentos quinquaginta," &c.

5151. Lat. "rex Ebraicorum;" ib. But J. Valerius has "a quodam Bebryciorum tyranno;" p. 181. See Weber, p. 307.

5158. "It might have pierced any heart."

5163. "By the time that he approached the tent."

5205. "And say to that sire, on thy behalf," &c. *On thi behalf* = in thy name, i. e. in the name of the (pretended) Alexander.

5239. "Uidebant etiam vites habentes vuarum botros maximos, quos vnus homo portare non potuisset, et nuces ferentes maximos fructus vt pepones;" e 6, back, col. 1. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 265.

5268. *Pentests*. There is no such word in the Lat. text, nor in J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 57.

5299. "Respondit regina, bene dicis, Alexander. Plus enim apud Grecos quam apud Indos digna fuissent;" f 1, col. 1. Hence, in l. 5300, *&* stands for 'than'.

5319. "Audiens hec Alexander stridere dentibus et caput eius reuoluere cepit omni parte;" ib.

5323. "Ut quid inter temetipsum irasceris et turbaris?" (ib.)

5333. *Bebricans handis*, the hands of the Bebrician; cf. l. 5151.

5337. Lat. "Karotherus" (col. 2); but before, Carracorinus; see note to l. 5092.

5377. "It is only needful for thee to grant (assent) to give me what goods I ask for."

5401. "Quis est tu, domine? At ille respondit, Ego sum Thinthisus, regnum mundi tenens et mundum subiugans, qui vniuersos mundanos tue supposui maiestati. Fabricasti nomini tuo ciuitatem [i. e. Alexandriam], et nomini meo non construxisti templum;" f 1, back, col. 2. J. Valerius, lib. iii. c. 67, calls this deity Sesonchosis.

5413. "I have told thee ere now;" see l. 1103. Lat. "Si esset homini nota causa mortis, dolore intollerabili moueretur;" ib. The E. text is corrupt; in l. 5414, *I* should of course be *he*. "Were that evidence known to any man, of what (were his) doom, then *he* would die for sorrow." Serapis, being immortal, could not die at all.

5417. "Ibi fabricabitur sepulcrum tuum;" ib.

5419. "Prayed that the Lord would well preserve him."

5425. "Ipsi vero serpentes viuebant de lasere et pipere que vallis ipsa gignebat;" ib.

5433. The side-note, by an oversight, is wrong. Alexander's men are not killed by the snakes, but by the beasts having claws three feet wide.

5442. A picture of this griffin is given on the title-page of Halliwell's edition of Mandeville's Travels; see ch. xxvi. of that book, p. 269.

5458. For *thai* read *thair*. "With gold on their heels," i. e. knights of rank, who wore gold spurs.

5467. Lat. "obtulerunt ei munera, scilicet spongias albas et purpureas mire magnitudinis et conchas maximas, per singulas duos vel tres sextarios continentes. Necnon et tunicas de vitelis (*sic*) maximis confectas, et vermes quos de ipso fluuio attrahebant, quorum grossitudo erat maior coxa hominis, et eorum gustus erat dulcis vt piscis . . . et morenas . . Pondus autem de vnaquaque morena erat ducentarum quinquaginta librarum;" f 2, coll. 1 and 2.

5475. Here we have the story of the sirens or mermaids.

5482. Lat. "dentes habebant vt canes;" col. 2.

5483. Cf. Mandeville's Travels, ch. xxvi. p. 265.

5487. Lat. "Gog et Magog, Agatan, Magehon, Alegthor, Appelmai, Limith, Iunii, Rothe, Redem, Cemarre, Cabellea, Camarciant, Cathomi, Amarde, Getimadi, Anafag, Candorem, Rinocephali, Thirbei, Alonis, Accimei, Philonis, Satramei et Soltani;" ib.

5504. Lat. "homines lingua Greca loquentes;" f 2, back, col. 1.

5512. Lat. "vt fere celo propinquius esset;" ib.

5520. "Flesh a little way off from them that they could not reach to."

5530. Lat. "cum angustia maxima ad exercitum peruenit;" col. 2.

5531. I give the Latin of this remarkable passage. "Post hec ascendit in cor Alexandri vt maris profunda quereret et omnium piscium genera scrutaretur. Statimque iussit vitrarios ante se venire, et precepit eis vt facerent dolium ex vitro clarissimo et splendidissimo vt possent a foris omnia clarissime conspici. Factumque est ita. Deinde iussit eum cathenis ferreis religari et a fortissimis militibus teneri. At ille intrans ipsum dolium clausa porta ex pice composita descendit in profundum maris. Uiditque ibi diuersas figuras piscium et diuersos colores habentes imagines bestiarum terre, et per terram in profundo maris tanquam bestie pedibus ambulantes et comedebant fructus arborum que in profundo maris nascebantur. Ipse autem belue veniebant vsque ad eum, postea fugiebant. Uiditque alia mirabilia que nemini voluit enarrare eo quod hominibus incredibilia viderentur. Tempus vero mansionis sue in aquis quod militibus suis predixit Alexander completum erat, et traxerunt eum milites ad superiora;" ib.

5557. "Inuenerunt animalia que habebant in capite ossa serrata et acuta vt gladius;" f 2, back, col. 2, and f 3, col. 1.

5566. *Tupis*, tups, rams; Lat. "arietes;" f 3, col. 1.

5594. Lat. "quam in eius memoriam nominauit Bucifallam;" col. 2.

5596. *Detiraty;* Lat. "flumen qui (*sic*) dicitur Tyrum. Et obuiauerunt sibi homines illius terre ferentes ei elephantum quinque milia et currus falcatos centum milia;" ib.

5613. *Nabizanda;* Lat. "Nabuzardon;" ib.

5615. Lat. "vsque ad diem obitus sui ibidem per septem menses, in pace mortuus;" ib.

5619. The letter of Alexander to Aristotle is given by J. Valerius, bk. iii. capp. xxiii—xliii, and contains an account of the wonders which Alexander had seen in his expedition, many of which have already been narrated in the present version. An Anglo-Saxon version of Alexander's letter was edited by Mr. Cockayne in 1861 in his "Narratiunculæ Anglice Conscriptæ."

5641. *Statute*, an error for *statue;* the Lat. text has *statua*.

5644. "Parietes vero ex topasio et per vniuersos gradus erant preciosi lapides cuiusque generis inserti. Erat etiam in summitate ipsius lapidis rubicundus qui tam in nocte quam in die lucebat. Et in ipso

throno erant imagines vndique constitute, in quibus erant versus scripti Grecis literis et Latinis nomina omnia prouinciarum que seruiebant Alexandro;" f 3, back, coll. 1 and 2.

5656. This list of names is not in the Latin text. *Panthi* is Parthia. Many of the names seem to be inserted at random, and the list includes places scattered over almost every part of Europe and Asia; compare the list of places conquered by king Arthur, as given in the alliterative Morte Arthure, p. 2.

5677. The fragment ends here. The rest of the story, as given on pp. 276—278, is abridged from the Latin text, leaf f 3, back, &c.

NOTES ON THE "STORY OF ALEXANDER."

P. 280, l. 42. See p. 42, l. 893 of the Poem.
" , l. 45. See ll. 4019—4066 of the Poem; and cf. l. 4194.
P. 281, l. 62. See Alexander and Dindimus, p. 3, l. 69.
" , l. 72. See the same, p. 4, l. 88.
" , l. 75. This story is neither in the Romance here printed, nor in Alexander and Dindimus. The same remark applies to the next story, beginning at l. 120.
P. 283, l. 135. See p. 274, l. 5617.
" , l. 140. "One of the grettest lordez" may refer to Ptolemy of Egypt; but the story referred to is insufficiently indicated.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX, AND INDEX OF NAMES.

Forms enclosed in marks of parenthesis, as for instance (Abaytez), given under Abates, occur in the Dublin MS. As a rule, words should be looked for under the form in which they occur in the Ashmole MS. Thus *abaytez* in the Dublin MS., l. 2161, should be sought as if spelt *abatis*, the spelling in the Ashmole MS. in that line. It is then easily found under Abates.

Lines marked with an asterisk, such as 789* (under Aboute), occur only in the Dublin MS. See the starred lines, 723* to 844* on pp. 25 to 33; also a few additional lines so marked further on, which can cause no difficulty.

Besides the abbreviations *s.*, *adj.*, *adv.*, for *substantive*, *adjective*, *adverb*, &c., the following are used in a special sense:—*v.*, a verb in the infinitive mood; *ger.*, a gerund; *pr. s.*, present tense, 3rd person singular; *pt. s.*, past tense, 3rd person singular; *pr. pl.*, present tense, 3rd person plural; *pt. pl.*, past tense, 3rd person plural. Other persons are denoted by the figures 1 or 2. Note also *imp. s.*, imperative singular, 2nd person; *imp. pl.*, imperative plural, 3rd person; *pp.*, past participle.

A large number of references are given, but they are not exhaustive. All forms of words are recorded, with but few unimportant exceptions.

A, *art.* a, 13, 22, 39, 47, &c. So, probably, in l. 131.

A, *adj.* one, 57, 1131, 3066.

A, *interj.* ah! 242, 964, 3252; (Aa, *in* Dublin MS.), 964.

A, *pron.* he, 4777; (A), 1492.

A, *v.* have, 5158.

Aande, *s.* breath, 4000. Icel. *andi*, *önd*. See Ande.

A-baist, *pp.* abashed, afraid, 2593, 5191; (Abaysed), 1492; Abaiste, dismayed, 4109; Abayste, cast down, 402.

Abandra (Bandara), *a city*, 2131. See Abrandra.

A-baste, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* abase, 3877. (*Error for* Abase.)

Abates (Debates, *wrongly*), *pr. s.* lessens, 2506; Abatis (Abaytez), *pr. pl.* fail, sink, 2161.

A-bayste, *pp.* afraid, cast down, 402; (Abaysed), 1492. See A-baist.

Abbeon, a country, 5660.

Abet (Habet), *s.* habit, dress, 2308; Abite (Habett), garment, dress, 1487, 1531. See Abite, Abytt.

A-bide (Abyde), *v.* endure, 2137; Abidis (Abydez), *pr. s.* awaits, 1576. See A-byde.

Abite (Habett), *s.* habit, dress, 1624. See Abet, Abytt.

Able, *adj.* powerful, 941.

Abletus, *for* Abbetus, *pl.* habits, robes, 1928. See Abet.

A-bleyd, *pp.* with sorrowful looks, sad, 402. "To look *blae*, to look blank, having the appearance of disappointment;" Jamieson.

Abofe (Abowne), *adv.* above, 1398; (Aboue), 1374; (Abowue), to the top, uppermost, 727. MS. D. can be read either as *abowue* or *abowne;* perhaps the latter is better. See *Above* in Murray's New Dict.

A-bofe (Abowne), *prep.* over, 1587.
A-bofe, *s.* a being above, exaltation, 4241.
A-bore, *pp.* born, 590.
Aboue (Abofe), *adv.* above, 1416. See Abofe.
Aboundance, *s.* abundance, 4668.
A-boute, *adv.* about, around, 108, 505, 556, 945; (Abowt), all round, 1152; (About), everywhere, 1763.
Aboute, *prep.* around, round, 595, 2209; About, 505; (Abouute), 789.* See þer.
A-bowe (Bowe), *pr. s.* submit, 2418.
A-brade (On brade), *adv.* abroad, widely, 774.
A-brade, abroad, cast or strewn abroad; *but prob. an error for* As brade, as large (see note), 4166.
Abrandra (Bandra), *a city*, 2148. See Abandra.
(Abreggez); see Breggis.
Absens, absence, 637.
A-byde, *ger.* to resist, 3017. See Abide, Bide.
(Abytt), *s.* habit, dress, 2886. See Abet, Abite.
Acats, *pl.* agates, 5273.
Acheles, Achilles, 2125.
A-cheues (Achevys), *pr. s.* achieves, wins, 1052; (Achefe), *pr. s. subj.* may happen, 822*; A-cheued (Achevet), *pt. s.* finished his journey, got away, 1036; Achewid, *pt. s.* achieved, 3730; A-cheued (Chefyd), *pp.* achieved, 2712; Achevyd (Acheuett), 1237.
A-corde, *s.* agreement, 620.
A-corde, *v.* agree, 3311; A-cordis (Acordes), *pr. pl.* agree, 1023.
A-count, *ger.* to account of, 1934; A-counte, *ger.* to reckon, compute, 3693; A-counte (Acount), *ger.* to count, 1993; A-count, *v.* count, 1987; A-conte, *v.* count, 673.
A-coupe (Acoup), *v.* accuse, blame, 2433. O.F. *acouper*, to blame.
Acrea, *Lat.* Adzea, 4720.
Acres, Acres, 5660.
Actis, *pl.* acts, 4369.
Actons, *pl.* tunics, leather jackets, 3413. Orig. a jacket of quilted cotton, worn under the coat of mail. O.F. *auqueton*, from Span. *alcoton*, lit. 'the cotton.'
Acustoumes, *pl.* customary behaviour, customs, 4577.
Adamand, *s.* adamant, diamond, 4876; Adamands, *pl.* 5384; Adamants, 5273. See Adomant.
Adanttrocay, 3927. See the note.
Adill, *ger.* to earn (for themselves), 3191. Icel. *öðla*, refl. *öðla-sk*, to earn for oneself; from *óðal*, property. See *Addle* in Murray.
Admitts (Admittes), *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* admit, receive, 2358.
Adomant, *s.* adamant, diamond, 3345; (Adamant), 3372. See Adamand.
Adoure, *ger.* to adore, 2176, 5118; (Adour), *v.* adore, 1059; Adoures, *pr. s.* does honour to, honours, 5224; (Adours), reverences, 2680; Adoures, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* adore, 4466, 4548; Adoured (Adouret), *pt. pl.* 1619; Adhoured, 1931; (Adoure), *imp. s.* adore, 3242.
A-dred (Dred), *pp.* afraid, 1355; (A-drede), 2489.
Adriac (Andriake), *prop. name.* 2586.
Aduersites, *pl.* adversities, 309.
A-ferd, *pp.* afraid, 492.
Affie (Affye), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* trust in, 1725. See Affyed.
Affinite, affinity, kindred, 923; followers, 1235.
Affirmed (Enformed), *pp.* declared, 1897.
Affraid, *pp.* afraid, 4151, 5621; (Affrayd), 3189. See Afray.
Affrike, Africa, 3765; (Aufrike), 1047; (Aufrik), 1050; the South wind, 4144.
Affyed, *pt. pl.* trusted, relied; þam affyed, put their trust in, 3572. See Affie.
Afle, *error for* Asie, Asia, 2332. (Dublin MS. *has* Asy.)
Aforne; see Beforne.
Afray, *v.* frighten, affright, 448; A-fraid (Afrayd), *pp.* 851; A-frayd, 675; (Affrayed), 1795. See Affraid.
A-friȝt, *pp.* affrighted, 395, 675, 3189.
(After), *adv.* after, afterwards, 1435; (Aftir), 736.* See Eftire.

(Aftir), *prep.* after, 763*; Efter (After), 976; Eftire (Aftir), 695.
Agayn, *adv.* again, 188, 332, 383; Agayne, 1336; Agayn (Ayayn), back, 1183, 1785; Agayn, back, 185, 889.
Agayn, against; Agayn-stande, *v.* resist, 636.
Agayn, *prep.* against, 50, 82, 3545; towards, 4814; (Ayayns), against, 1322; (Agayns), to meet, 1123; A-gayne, to meet (them), 3964; (Agayns), against, 2423; (Ayayns), against, towards, 795, 1969, 2382; Agaynes, against, contrary to, 473; (Agayns), against, 1501, 1878, 1973; towards, to meet, 170, 953; Agayns (Ayayns), *prep.* against, 2208, 2748; to meet, 2857.
(Agayn-come), *s.* return, 2890.
(Agaynward); see Agynward.
Age, *s.* age, 315, 1002, 1108, 1109, 1474.
Agekany, *Lat.* Agatan, 5488.
Aghe, *s.* awe, 5186.
Aghille, *adj.; error for* Athille, 29. See Athill.
(Aght), *pt. s.* ought, 3370.
A-glopened (Aglopned), *pp.* terrified, alarmed, 874. The prefix *a-* is intensive (A.S. *á-*). Icel. *glúpna*, to be downcast.
Agraythen, *v.* to array, deck, set out, 3456. Icel. *greiða*, to arrange.
A-greuyd, *pp.* aggrieved, angered, 1954.
A-grydis, *pr. pl.* dash, clash, 3611. Cf. *gride*, v. as used by Milton, P. L. vi. 329; M. E. *girden*, to strike.
Agynward (Agaynward), in return, 1933.
Ai, *adv.* ever, always, 239, 242, 1875, 3529; (Ay), 1225, 1401, 1773, 2114, 2250. See Ay, Aye.
Ailis (Ayles), *pr. s.* ails, 849; Ailes (Aylez), 2158; incites, 4609; Ailed, *pt. s.* (who) was ill (of), 5605.
Aiquare, *adv.* everywhere, 3408.
Aire, *s.* air, 27, 542, 4334; Of the aire (ayre), (made) of the air, 1487; Airis, *pl.* atmospheres, 29.
Aire, *s.* heir, 233, 3470, 3579; (Heyr), 2755, 3086; (Hayr), 1606; (Ayre), 977; Ayr, 2006.
Aire, *s.* eyre, circuit, 4321.
Aires, *pr. s.* goes, journies, 2680, 3595; (Ayres), 1277, 1907, 1994; (Ayrez), 1050, 1072, 2239; (Ayers), 912, 2034; Airis, goes, 53, 135, 407; (Ayres), 695, 873, 1597; (Ayers), 795, 1121; (Ayrez), 2248; Aires, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 2637; *pr. pl.* go, 3110; Airid, *pt. s.* went, 843; Aire, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* go thou, 5179; Aires, *imp. pl.* go, 989, 2770; Airis, 1185; Airand (Ayrand), *pres. pt.* coming, 942. O.F. *eirer*, to journey, Low Lat. *iterare;* from L. *iter*, a journey. See Ayres.
Aiþir, *adj.* each, either, 2614; Aithire, 2620, 5066; (Ather), 770, 785, 1520, 3417; (Aþir), 802.
Aixe, *for* Axe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* ask, p. 281, l. 61; Axie, 2 *pr. pl.* p. 281, l. 66.
(Ak), *conj.* but, 875. A.S. *ac.*
Akis, *pr. s.* aches, 538.
Al, *adv.* all, 943; wholly, 640, 790, 798, 799; Al to, wholly too, much too, 1010, 1738. See All.
Al, *conj.* although, 3464.
A-lande, *adv.* on land, *hence* downwards to a place of rest, 393. See the context.
Alane, *adj.* alone, 132.
Alane, *Lat.* Allonis, 5493.
Albastis, *for* Alblastis (Alblastrez), *pl.* cross-bows, 2225.
Alblaster (Awblester), cross-bow, *or* cross-bow-bolt, 1400; (Alblastres), *pl.* cross-bow-bolts, 3046.
Alblastis, *pl.* cross-bow-men, 5450.
Ald (Old), *adj.* old, 2263; (Olde), 2117; (Alde), 2176; Alde (Ald), 1020.
Aldfadire, *gen.* of thy father-in-law (?), lit. old father's, 5376. A.S. *eald-fæder*, a grandfather, ancestor.
(Aldours); see Eldirs.
Alegis, *pr. pl.* allege, 4558.
Alexander, *passim, spelt* Alexsandire, 17, 620; *gen.* 904.
Alexsander (Alexander), Alexandria

(the town), 1120. See Alysaundire.
Algate, *adv.* by all means, i. e. especially, 128.
Alkin; Alkin rewmys (Alkyn realmes), realms of every kind, 2363; Alkens (Alken), of every kind, 1400.
All, *adj.* all, 68, 76, 82, &c. See Al, All-þir, Allire.
All, *adv.* wholly, entirely, 121, 532, 875, 1302; All him-selfe, quite by himself, 111, 335; All his ane, alone by himself, 210, 1377; All him ane, 407; All þus, just thus, 2907. See Al.
All, *conj.* although, 933, 2646, 4664; notwithstanding that, 2647; All if, although, 3876, 5320.
Allane, *adj.* alone, 4840; (Alon), 1828.
Allanely, *adv.* only, solely, 3101. Compounded of *all* and *anely*, i. e. only.
Allas (Alas), *interj.* alas, 1816, 3434.
All-bedene, all at once, 3532. See Bedene.
Allire (Aller), *gen. pl.* of them all, 1255; Allirs, of all, 620; Oure allirs, of us all, 3513. See All.
All-quat, *s.* everything, something of every kind, 4469.
Alls, *adv.* also, 4943. See Als.
All-þir, *put for* Alþir, *gen. pl.* of all; (All-þar), 1855; All-þir hiest (eldest), highest of all, especially, most particularly, 1765; All-þir-mast (All þe most), most of all, greatest of all, 2637; All-þire-first, first of all, 3039. From A.S. *ealra*, gen. pl. of *eal*, all, with inserted *th*. See All, Althire.
All-to-gedire, *adv.* altogether, 476; (All-to-gedyr), 1703; (All-to-geder), 715, 1204, 3255; (All-to-geder), 782.*
All-to-hewyn, *pp.* cut all to pieces, 3201.
All-way, *adv.* always, 404; ever, 4299; (Alway), continually, 2492; All-ways (Always), 2517.
Almade, *Lat.* Amarde, 5488.
Almands, *pl.* almonds, 4718.
Almast (Almost), *adv.* almost, 1459.
Aloes, *pl.* aloes, 4869.
A-losed, *pp.* renowned, 2341; *mis-written* A-lose (Lowsed), 1960. O.F. *aloser*, to praise; from *los*, sb. praise, due to L. *laus*.
Als, *conj. and adv.* as, 430, 439, 2353; also, 1840, 2677, 5617; (Als), as, 693, 2152; Als, as, when, 2844; as it were, 751*, 752*; where that, 769*; Als (Also), so, 1270; as (I hope), 724*; Als belyue, as soon as may be, 2183; Als beliue (belyfe), as quickly as possible, immediately, 2671.
Also, also, 31; Als-so, also, 5499.
Althire-fairest, fairest of all, 5092. See All-þir.
Althire-finest, finest of all, 3701; Althire-fynest, 3368.
Alþire-graythist, readiest of all, *but an error for* Alþire-gretist, greatest of all, 162.
Alþir-heist (All-þar heldest), *adj.* the highest (chief) of all, 1855; Althire-hiȝest (All þe heldest), *adv.* chief of all, especially, 2509.
Alþire-mast, *adv.* greatest of all, excessive, 486.
Althire-thickest (All þe thikest), *adj. superl.* thickest of all, 1323.
Alto-bretind, *put for* Al to-bretind, *pt. pl.* utterly broke in pieces, 3905. See Bretens.
Alto-bruntes (-brountes), *pr. s.* wholly destroys, 1214. Bruntes *is an error for* Brutens, *pr. s. of* Brutenen, *or* Brutnen, to dash, break in pieces. See *brutnen* in Mätzner; and see Alto-bretind.
Altogedre, *adv.* altogether, 174; Alto-gedire (All-togedre), 903.
Alto-maukid, *misprint for* Alto-mankid = Al to-mankid, *pt. pl.* maimed to pieces, mangled, 4100. See *Mank* in Jamieson. Cf. Lat. *mancus*.
Alto-schatird, *pt. s.* (*for* Al to-schatird), utterly shattered in pieces, utterly scattered, 4150.
Alyens, *pl.* aliens, strangers, 3445; (Aliens), 989; Alyens, *gen. pl.* strangers', 947.

Alysaundire (Alexaunder), Alexandria, 2764. See Alexsander.
Am, 1 *pr. s.* am, 574, 842*, &c.
(Amaced), *pp.* amazed, 1814.
Amatist, amethyst, 3145, 3349; Amatast, 3341; Amatists, *pl.* 5384; Amatistis, *pl.* 5273; Amytists, 3679.
Amay þe, *imp. s.* dismay thee, be dismayed, 2816; A-maied, *pp.* dismayed, 1814; Amayd, *pp.* 1253, 3885. O.F. *esmayer*, to dismay.
Amazoyne, the land of the Amazons, 3708, 3722.
Ame, 1 *pr. s.* I think, judge, suppose, 3830, 4104; Ames, *pr. s.* aims, thinks, 3624; addresses, 2563; (Amez), directs his way, 1047; pitches, sets, 2586; Ames (Aymes, *MS.* aynes), *pr. s.* aims, endeavours, 843; Ames, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* supposest (but a false reading), 2649; Amed, *pt. s.* intended, 2821; *refl.* intended to go, 219; Amed (Ameyd), *pt. pl.* purposed, intended, 2395; Amed, *pp.* determined, 309; reckoned, considered, 3736. F. *aimer*.
Ame, *s.* aim, guess, suspicion, 2965; aim, endeavour, 2484; At myn ame (ayme), as I suppose, 2987.
Amend, *ger.* to amend (the gift), to add (thereto), 3776; Amendid (Mendyd), *pp.* recovered, 2127.
(Amenyst), *pp.* diminished, 2629.
A-meued, *pp.* moved, 4556; (A-meved), 1253.
Amlaȝe (Amlaugh), *s.* an imbecile, weak person, 1705, 3542. Icel. *amlóði*.
Amon, Ammon, 345, 404, 420, 3398; Amone, 4212; Amon (Amone), 1059; (Amoyn), 2863; Amon (Amonez), *gen.* Ammon's, 1072.
Amonest (Amonesh), 1 *pr. s.* admonish, charge, 1493. E. *admonish*.
Amonta, *proper name*, 2059, 2078; Amont, 2037.
Amoued (Ameyved), *pp.* moved, disturbed, 1796; (Amoved), moved, exhorted, bidden, 1493.
Amphion, *proper name*, 2216.
Amytists; see Amatist.
An, one, 3532; a space of, 4814; (Ane), an, 800. See Ane.
Anabras, Anarbasontes, 3428.
Anafrage, *Lat.* Anafag, 5488.
An-ane (Anone), *adv.* anon, at once, 1377. See Anone.
Ancestris (Auncesters), *pl.* ancestors, 2844.
Ancient, *adj.* old, 3445.
And, *conj.* and (*usually expressed by* &), 6, 12, 15, &c.; if, 21, 354, 2164, 2339, 2653; than, 540, 2840, 3819, 5300. *An* = than, is given in Halliwell as in use in the *North* and *East*. Hence, in l. 540, the reading *and* is to be retained. Cf. Icel. *en, enn*, than. See *And* in Murray, p. 317, col. 2.
Ande (Aynde), *s.* breath, 749; Andes, *pl.* breathings, 4813. See Aande.
Ane, *adj.* one, 40, 189, 307, 586, &c.; an, 191, 697, 767*; alone, 391; some one, 465; Eftir ane, after one pattern, all alike, 4619; Ane oþer, another, 1240; þine ane, thyself alone, 732, 5623; Him ane, himself alone, 53, 169; ȝour ane, each one of you, 3176. See All, An.
Anec, *short for* Anectanabus, king of Egypt, 40, 71, 79, 95, 168, 191, 210, 219, 242, 290, 306, 352, 398, 537, 670, 701, 717, 1126, 1134.
Anectanabus, king of Egypt, 533, 693; Anecanabus, 486; Anectabus, 1131. See Anec.
Anelepy, *adj.* a single, 109. See Anlepi.
Anell (Angle), *put for* Angle, nook, corner, region, 1630. See Angle.
Anely (Only), *adv.* only, merely, 995, 2464, 2729; alone, 1020. See Anly.
A-nente (Anense), *prep.* about, concerning, 735 [Anense = Anentes; *and hence* Anens-t, *with added* t]; A-nentes (Anence), touching, regarding, 2716. See Enentis.
Anentes, *pr. s.* becomes annihilated, 3302. O.F. *anienter*, to bring to naught. See *aniente* in Murray.
Anepo, *proper name*, 2955.

Anes, *adv.* once, 478, 1191 ; At anes (At onys), at once, 929. See Anys.
Anes, *pr. s.* unites, 879.
(Anest), *prep.* as regards, 3164. *Put for* Anenst. See Anente.
Angire (Angre), *s.* anger, 857, 1908, 2724 ; (Anger), trouble, sorrow, 2889 ; Angirs, *pl.* angers, passions, 750 ; (Angers), miseries, 2160. See Angres.
Angirs, (Angers), *pr. s.* becomes angry, 837.
Angle, *s.* corner, place, province, region, 3657 ; Angill, 4720 ; Anglis (Anglez), *pl.* angles, corners, 2332 ; Anglies (Anglez), nooks, 1917.
(Angres), *pl.* sorrows, troubles, 3173. See Angire.
Angrile (Angirly), *adv.* angrily, 733 ; Angrily (Angerly), 2185 ; (Angrely), 832.*
Angwisch, *s.* anguish, pain, 3173 ; hardship, suffering, 2160, 5618 ; woe, 3916 ; Angwische, 1011 ; Angwischis, *pl.* sorrows, 3828 ; annoyances, 3793.
Ankers ; see Aunkirs.
Anlepi, *adj.* one, single, 5025. A.S. *ánlépig*. See Anelepy.
Anly, *adv.* only, simply, 4240. See Anely.
(Anone), *adv.* anon, 2294. See Anane.
Anoþer (Ane oþer), another, 822 ; Anoþer, 585 ; Anothre (Ane oþer), 2237 : Anoþire, 297, 501, 795, &c.
Anoyed (Noyet), *pp.* annoyed, vexed, 737.
Anoyntis. *pr. s.* anoints, 413.
Answare (Answer), *s.* answer, 3158 ; (Answer), 2180. See Aunswer.
Answaringis, *pl.* answers, 2180.
Answars, *pr. s.* answers, 234, 290, 362 ; (Answers), 2183, 2263 ; Answard (Answerd), *pt. pl.* answered, 1000.
Antagoyne (Antigon), Antigonus, 1912.
Antarticus, the Antartic or south pole, 31.
Anters, *pl.* adventures, 656. See Aunter.
Antiok, Antiochus, 5208 ; Antioc, 5186, 5193 ; Antiet [*or* Antiec], 4965 ; Antioks, *gen.* 5197.
Any, any, 84, 134, 261 ; (Ony), 1200 ; Any mare (more), any more, 1011.
Any-gates, *adv.* in any way, 4216.
Anyly (Only), *adv.* only, singularly, 3399. See Anely, Anly.
Anys, *adv.* once, 3508 ; (Onys), 1467, 2654 ; At anys (anes, onys), at once, 1609, 2326, 2345. See Anes, *adv.*
Apareld (Aparaerld), *pp.* apparelled, 1497 ; Aparaild (Apparelt), 2300.
Aparell, *s.* apparel, 5196.
Apart, apart ; *or for* Apert, openly, 3575.
Ape, *s.* ape, 1705, 3542 ; Apis, *pl.* 5242.
A-pere, *v.* appear, 361 ; Apere, 3215, 3422 ; be present, 2579 ; Aperis, *pr. s.* appears, 451, 1084 ; (Apperes), 1487 ; A-perid (Aperyd), *pt. s.* appeared, 2862 ; (Appered), 1084, 1626. See below, and see Apperys.
A-pered, *pt. s.* appeared (to them), 3056. *Perhaps for* Apeired = harmed.
Apert, *adj.* open, evident, obvious, 2833, 4496 ; manifest, 3726 ; Aperte, well-known, 261.
Apert, *adv.* openly, plainly, 1896, 2295, 5190.
Apetite, *s.* appetite, 4609.
Apon, *prep.* upon, 31, 251 ; (Vpon), 778, 930, 1130 ; on, 773 ; (Vppon), on, 1641 ; in, 1670, 2247.
Aport, *s.* outward appearance, personal bearing, deportment, 598, 5145.
Apparaill (Apperale), *ger.* to apparel, prepare, 1919.
(Apparement), *s.* apparel, 820.*
Appedanere, *Lat.* Appelmai, 5493.
(Apperys), 2 *pr. s.* appearest like, 1842. See Apere.
Appils (Appills), *pl.* apples, 4718, 5241.
Appollo, Apollo, 4534 ; Appole, 5118. See Appolyne.
Appolomados, 2529. See note.
Appolyne, Apollo, 4467 ; Appoline (Apolyn), 2254 ; (Appolyn), 2176 ; (Appolyne), 2183. See Appollo.

Appose, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* question, 4998.
A-prefe, *v.* approve, be approved, 598. See Apreue.
A-prefe, *s.* approbation, approval, 648.
A-preue, *v.* exhibit, prove, make good (lit. approve), 5328 ; A-preued (Preved), *pt. pl.* acquired (for themselves), 1206 ; A-preuyd, *pp.* gained, attained, 614. See Aprefe, Aproues.
Aproche, *ger.* to approach, 1595 ; *pr. s. subj.* 74 ; Aprochid, *pt. s.* approached, came, 4102.
A-proprid, *pp.* considered by itself, 4496.
Aproues, *pr. s.* proves good, 4220.
Apurtynance, appurtenance, 5628.
Aquiloun, the wind Aquilo, north wind, 4144.
Arabie (Araby), Arabia, 2034.
Aray, *s.* order, manner, 425 ; (Arayes), *pl.* ranks, 1320.
Aray, *pr. s.* 2 *p. subj.* array, 1494 ; Arais (Arayes), *pr. s.* arrays, 1513 ; Araies (Arays), *pr. pl.* 2980 ; Arayd, *pp.* dressed, 1633 ; (Arraed), arrayed, 1382 ; Arayed, arrayed, 93 ; (Arayede), 883.
Arcagee, Arcadia (?), 5675.
Archere, *s.* archer, 5450 ; Archars (Archers), *pl.* 1390, 3041 ; Archars (Arches, *for* Archers), 2455.
Arcules, Hercules, 4500 ; Arculious, 4068.
Ardromacius (Andromacius), *proper name*, 1691.
Are, *s.* favour ; þin are, with thy favour, 5361. A.S. *ár*.
Are, *adv.* ere, before, 246, 1140. A.S. *ǽr*.
Areris, *pr. s.* retreats, draws backward, 4846.
Arest, *s.* arrest, seizure, 3504.
Arestes (Aristes), *proper name*, 1277. See Arystes.
(Arestotell), Aristotle, 766.* See Aristotil.
(Arghes), *imp. pl.* be afraid, fear, 989. See Arȝes.
Arise (Rise), *v.* arise, 1880.
Aristotil, Aristotle, 3460 ; Aristotill, 44, 5619 ; Arystotill, 623, 637.
Arly, *adv.* early, 350, 351.
Arme, *s.* arm, 494, 503, 805 ; Armes, *pl.* 345, 384, 420.
Armed, *pp.* armed, 49, 83, 1213 ; (Armyd), 2034, 2102 ; (Enarmed), 757, 954.
Armee, *s.* army, 2363.
Armes, *pl.* arms, 90, 803*, 996 ; (Armez), 764, 908, 1594 ; Armys, 9, 16, 444 ; (Armes), 2363 ; Armes (Armez), coat-armour, *hence*, array, special dress, 1624.
Armoure, *s.* (Armors, *pl.*) armour, 3413 ; (Armour), 996.
Aromatike (Aromatyke), *adj.* aromatic, 1566.
Aromitike, aromatics, 4977.
Arows, *pl.* arrows, 2455 ; (Arowes), 1390 ; Arowis (Arowez), 2211 ; (Arows), 2224.
Arrabe, Arabia, 5659 ; Arrabie, *gen.* Arabia's, 5564.
Arrabiens, *pl.* Arabians, 92.
(Art), 2 *pr. s.* art, 843.* See Ert.
Artaxenses, Artaxerxes, 49, 81, 169.
Arte, *s.* art, science, 128, 333, 681, 5483 ; Artis, *pl.* arts, 44, 376, 522 ; ways, 4609 ; (Artez), 766.*
Arteneus, *Lat.* Accimei, 5499.
Articus, Arctic pole, north pole, 29.
Artoyes, Artois, 5659.
Arystes (Arestes), *proper name*, 1225. See Arestes.
Arystotill, Aristotle, 623, 637. See Aristotil.
Arȝes, *pr. s. impers.* it terrifies me, I am afraid, 537 ; Arȝed, *pp.* terrified, afraid, 3606, 3873. A.S. *eargian*, to be inert. See Arghes.
As, *conj.* as, 11, 14, 17, 18, 24, &c. ; as if, 193, 225, 368, 421, 504, 506, 558, &c. ; like, 1063, 1152, 1159, 3796 ; As . . . as, as . . so, 2811, 2812.
As, *as rel. pron.* that, which, 1783.
As (Asse), *s.* ass, 2708.
Asaile (Assaylle), *ger.* to assail, 1296 ; Asaille, 3923 ; Asailes (Assaylez), *pr. s.* assails, 2038 ; (Assalez), 1029. See Assaile.
A-saile (A-sawte), *s.* assault, attack, 924. See Asaute.

Asald, *s.* ass, little ass, 1928. See below. O. Northumb. *asal, asald,* Matt. xviii. 6 ; xxi. 2.
Asaleny (Aslyn), *s.* little ass, 1705. See above.
A-saute, *s.* assault, attack, 2550 ; (Asawte), 924. See Asaile.
A-say, *s.* trial, 5370.
Ascalioun, Ascalon, 5675. See Ascoiloym.
Ascendis (Ascendez), *pr. s.* ascends, climbs up, 1377 ; (Assendes), mounts, 767 ; Ascendis (Ascenden), *pr. pl.* 1434 ; (Ascenden), 1398 ; (Ascendyn), 1030 ; Ascendid, *pt. pl.* 1030, 1398.
A-schapid, *pp.* escaped, 2987.
Ascoiloym (Ascolon), Ascalon, 1116. See Ascalioun.
Ascres, *pl.* newts, lizards, 4198. M.E. *ask, arsk ;* see Mätzner.
Ascryes, *pr. pl.* cry out to, challenge, demand of (them), 5215. Cf. O.F. *escrier ;* see *ascrien* in Mätzner.
A-semblis, *pr. s.* assembles, 2219 ; (Assembles), gathers, 762 ; (Assemblez), 923 ; Asembles (Assemblez), 1470 ; A-sembild (Assembled), *pt. s.* assembled, encountered, 783 ; A-sembles (Assembles), *imp. pl.* gather together, 2527. See Assemblis.
A-sent, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* assent, 4262 ; Asentis (Assent), *pr. pl.* 1510.
A-sewis, *pr. pl.* agree, suit, 4254.
A-seȝee, *imp. s.* sit, 5182. O.F. *asseoir,* from Lat. *assidere.*
Asie (Asy), Asia, 1917, 2114. See Aysy.
Asisid, *pp.* constructed, 5087. Lat. text, *constructa.* O.F. *assis,* pp. of *asseoir,* 'to set, settle' ; Cot. See Assisid.
Askis, *pr. s.* asks, 670 ; (Askez), 1672, 1701 ; asks for, 3612 ; requires, 1500, 4265, 4621 (see note to this line) ; Askis (Asken), *pr. pl.* seek, 727 ; ask, 888 ; Askid (Askyd), *pt. pl.* asked, 2254 ; (Asked), 888 ; Aske, *imp. s.* ask thou, 1670, 1685.
Askis, *pl.* ashes, 4180.
Askyng (Askyns = askyngs, *pl.*), *s.* request, 3173 ; (Asking), enquiry (*a false reading*), 732.
(Aslakes), *pr. s.* ceases, 857. Lit. 'grows slack.'
Asouerance, *s.* assurance, 5001.
Asperly, *adv.* fiercely, 2039, 3041 ; quickly, eagerly, 2672 ; sharply, roughly, severely, 1088, 3939 ; fiercely, swiftly, 3001.
Assaile (Asayle), *ger.* to assault, 1380 ; Assaill (Assaylle), to assail, 1162. See Asaile.
Asselis, *pr. s.* seals up, 424.
Assemblis, *pr. pl.* collect, re-unite, 4161 ; (Assembled, *pt. pl.*), encounter, 1387 ; Assembild on, *pt. pl.* gathered against, attacked, 4134. See Asemblis.
Assemy, 4449. Probably a false reading ; the alliteration requires a word beginning with *s,* and *oure* gives no sense. For *oure assemy* read *ȝoure semly* (i. e. your seemly).
Assie, Asia, 5659.
Assisid, *pp.* made of a certain size, sized, 5653. See Asisid.
Asskis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* beseech, 4467. See Askis.
Astate, *s.* estate, dignity, rank, condition, 723, 3353, p. 279, l. 11.
Astralabus, *pl.* astrolabes, 128. (MS. Astr*a*lalus.)
Asuris (Assurys), 2 *pr. s.* trustest, art secure, 2736 ; Asurid (Assuryd), *pt. s. refl.* assured himself, felt confident, 2568.
A-swage (Swage), *v.* be assuaged, 750.
Asy. See Afle, Asie.
Asye, Asia, 3765. See Asie, Assie.
At, *prep.* at, 71, 132, 178, 5364 ; of, 1618 ; of, from, 766*, 1670, 2715, 4467 ; by, 757* ; to, suitably with, 4208 ; against, 3164 ; At hand, 81. See Att.
At, *pron.* which, that, 927 ; who, 1045, 1171 ; that which, 636 ; whom, 1059, 1216 ; that, 10, 56, 68 ; *conj.* that, 100, 266, 1480. Most common as a relative pronoun, as in 152, 161, &c. Used like mod. E. *that.* See Þat.
At, to (as sign of gerund), 872, 4294.

At, 3559 ; *read* Al, i. e. all.
At flee ; see At-flee.
A-tamed (Attamyd), *pp.* pierced, 3042. See Gloss. to Piers Plowman.
At anes (At anez), at once, 784.
Atell), *for* Athell, *adj.* noble, 1088, 1792, 2030. Only in the Dublin MS. See Athel.
Atenes (Athens), Athens, 2343 ; Ateynes, 2446 ; Atenenys (Athenez), 2391. See Athenes.
Ateynes, *pr. s. refl.* attains, reaches, 2315.
At-flee, *v.* flee away, pass away (from you), be dismissed, 988. It is better to take *atflee* as *one* word. A.S. *œtfleón.* See *atfleon* in Mätzner.
Athe, *s.* oath, 3770 ; Athis, *pl.* 3437.
Athel, *adj.* noble, 242 ; Athill, 17, 168, 306, 404, 620, 849, 1994, 3145 ; (Athell), 810, 996, 1577, 1597 ; (Atell), 1831 ; Athil, excellent, 3341 ; Athil (Athell), 701, 909, 1134 ; Athill (Athell), *adj. as sb.* noble one, 681, 837, 964 ; noble king, 3204 ; Athils (Hatels), *pl.* nobles, 1433 ; (Athelles), 1474 ; (Athellys), 1445 ; (Athells), 2225. A.S. *æþel.* See Atell.
Athelest, *adj. superl.* noblest, 40, 4571 ; Athelist, 3757 ; Athilest, 5104.
(Athelfullest), *adj.* noblest, 1606.
Athenes (Athens), Athens, 2419 ; (Atthenys), 2322 ; Athenas, 2312. See Atenes.
(Ather) ; see Aiþer.
Aþire (Ather), *adj.* either, each, 3023. See Aiþer.
Atired (Attyred), *pt. s.* attired, decked, 1525 ; (Atyred), *pt. pl.* 2427 ; A-tired, *pp.* 4904 ; (Attyred), 1628 ; (Atired), 1294, 1633. See Atyres.
(Att), *prep.* at, 964.
(Att), *conj.* so that, 1527.
(Attachyd), *pp.* attached, 2580.
Attamyd ; see Atamed.
(Attellys), *pr. s. refl.* advances, 2315 ; (Attelyt), 1 *pt. s.* intended, 1819 ; (Attelland), *pres. pt.* devising, expecting, 3191. See Etlit. Icel. *œtla,* to think, intend.
Atter, *s.* poison, 1390. A.S. *átor.*
Atterand, *pres. pt.* poisoning, i. e. poisonous, 4198. See above.
(Atthill), *miswritten for* Attell, 1 *pr. s.* direct, 2322. See Attellys.
Attrid (Atterd), *adj.* poisoned, 2455. See Atter.
At-wendis, *pr. s.* leaves, escapes, goes away from, 3247. Cf. A.S. *œtwindan,* to flee away, escape.
At-wynde, *pr. s. subj.* may depart, 1949. A.S. *œtwindan.*
Atyres, *pr. s.* attires, 1294 ; Atyred, *pp.* adorned, made, 3343. See Atired.
Aufrike, Africa, 5660 ; Auffrik, 4395. (*For* Au- = Av-, *see under* Av-.)
Augard (Awgerd), *adj.* proud, *or* excellent, 2343. This word is the same as *ogart,* proud, in Halliwell, and allied to *overgart,* excessive, in Stratmann. I suppose the orig. sense to be merely 'extreme' ; it stands probably for *of-gart,* where *gart* is the pp. of *gar,* to make. Cf. Swed. *afgjord,* pp. of *afgöra,* to settle ; Dan. *afgjort,* pp. of *afgjöre,* to finish ; Norw. *avgjord.* See Augird.
(Aughfulest), most terrible, 1062.
Augird (Awgerly), *adv.* exceedingly, 772. See Augard, Augirly.
Augirly, *adv.* extremely, excessively, 661 ; (Awgardly), 717 ; (Awgerdly), 972 ; (Augerly), entirely, wholly, 2987 ; Augrily (Augerdly), extremely, 3252 ; (Augerdly), proudly, 1726 ; severely, greatly, 1277 ; fiercely, 1401 ; Augrely (Awgerdly), extremely, 1342. See above.
August, August, 3789.
Auncestours, *pl.* ancestors, 4369.
Auncient, *adj.* ancient, 1002 ; Auncean't, old, 2391.
Aungell, *s.* angel, 4529, 5258 ; (Angell), 1487, 1872, 2893 ; Aungels (Angels), *pl.* angels, 1556 ; figures of angels, 4913 ; *gen.* Aung[e]ls (Angels), angel's, 2863.
Aunkirs (Ankers), *pl.* anchors, 1372.

(Aunswer), *s.* answer, 751. See Answare.
Aunter, *s.* adventure, 3204; peril, 538; (Awentur), mischance, 1109; Auntir, adventure, 5189; Aunter, (*pl.* Aunters), adventure, case, 693; Auntirs (Aunters), *pl.* adventures, 1278; Auntours, 3470, 5618; (Aunturs), 3204. See Anters.
Authere (Owder), *conj.* either, 1180.
Authly, *adv.* (?) 3234. It seems to mean 'sadly'; cf. Icel. *auðr*, void, desolate.
Autour, author, 4720.
Auutere, *s.* altar, 1572.
A-vaies, *pr. s.* informs, 1508; Avaied, *pp.* informed, made aware, 116; If þou avaied worthe, if thou art (well) informed, if you take heed, 103. O.F. *aveier*, *avoier*, to set on the road, guide, inform; Godefroy, p. 537.
A-vaile, 2 *pr. s. subj.* prevail (to be), 1880.
A-vaile (Avale), *imp. s.* lower, diminish, 2836. O.F. *avaler*.
A-vanced (Auancyd), *pp.* advanced, exalted, 2096; Auancet, *pp.* advanced, chief, 2391; A-vansid, *pp.* advanced, exalted, 389; (Auancet), *pp.* advanced in years, 1002; (Auancett), *pp.* advanced, honoured, 2200; A-vaunced, *pp.* advanced, rendered prosperous, 3773; (Avaunsyd), exalted, 2755.
Auaunt, *shortened form of* Auenaunt, courteous, 2387. O.F. *avenant*, spelt *advenant* in Cotgrave. See the context; and see *Aveaunt* in Halliwell.
(Avaunte), *imp. s.* vaunt, 2713.
A-ventour (Aventur), *s.* mishap, 2889.
A-verous, *adj.* avaricious, 4512.
A-vise (Avyse), *imp. s.* consider, 1767; *imp. pl.* 4410; A-visis (Awysez), *pr. s.* reads over, 2066; Avises him, considers with himself, 4000; Him a-visis, 3624. See Avyses.
Auoure, *s.* property, wealth, 4668. O.F. *avoir*.
A-vow (A-wowe), *s.* vow, 2605.
A-vowtrere, *s.* adulterer, 4414.
A-vowtri, *s.* adultery, 4329.
Avyn, *adj.* own, 188. See Awen.
Auyrice, *s.* avarice, 4327.
Avyses, *pr. s.* perceives, 4926; Avysis, beholds, 3234; (Visys), *pr. s.* notices, takes notice of, 2959; (Avysed), *pt. s.* perceived, 753*; Avysid him, looked, 116. See Avise.
A-wai, *adv.* away, 865; Away, 508.
Awe, *pt. s.* behoved, 868. (Properly *pr. s.*) A.S. *áh*. See Awght.
Awen, *adj.* own, 364, 420, 623, 708, 3659; (Awne), 873, 3178.
Awen (Awne), *adj.* one, 2569. (A curious spelling; confused with *awen* = own.)
Awgerd, Awgerdly, &c.; see Aug-.
(Awght), eight, 764.* See Aȝt.
(Awght), *pt. s.* behoved, 868. A.S. *áhte*, pt. t. of *áh*. See Awe, Aȝe.
Awne, *adj.* own, 4497; *also in* 739*, 759*, 777*, 800*, 814.* See Awen.
(Awnterez), *pl.* adventures, 1011. See Aunter.
A-wondres, *pr. s.* surprises, 4832; *refl.* is amazed, 4047; Awondird, *pp.* astonished, 302.
Awyn, *adj.* own, 79, 168, 210, 219; (Awne), 3236. See Awen.
Ax, *s.* axe, 1400.
Ay, *adv.* ever, 265, 298, 972, 994, &c.; Ay elike, always alike, 536, 2046. See Ai, Aye.
(Ayaynez), *prep.* against, 829.*
Aydeus (*for* Aide deus), God aid (me), 729. Adapted from O.F. *aide deus*.
(Aydom), *adj.* 2307. See Ayndain.
Aye, *adv.* continually, 3438. See Ay.
Aykewordly, (Aukwardly), *adv.* indirectly, ambiguously, 2183.
Ayndain, *adj.* 2307. The Dublin MS. has *aydom*. These forms point to a reading *aydand*, i. e. aiding, assisting, *hence* favourable, which seems to be the sense required. See the note. Cf. F. *aidant*, helping; *Dieu aidant*, if God help me; Cotgrave.

Ayre, *s.* heir, 588. See Aire.
(Ayres), *pr. s.* goes, 832*; (Ayrez), 2114; (Ayres hym), goes, 749; (Ayres), *imp. pl.* go ye, 889. See Aires.
Aysy (Asy), Asia, 1630. See Asie.
Aythire, *pron.* either, each, 4500; (Ather), 2043; Aythir, 4391; (Ather), either, 1583.
(Ay-whare), *adv.* everywhere, 781.*
Aȝayne (Ayayn), *adv.* again, back again, 1393, 3240.
Aȝe, *s.* awe, terror, danger, 2987; (Aw), awe, 1459; Artaxenses aȝe, fear of Artaxerxes, 169.
Aȝe, *pr. s.* ought (lit. owes), 3370; ought (to be), 4245; (Aght, *pt. s.*), 3370; (Awght, *pt. s.*), it becomes (him), 1820; (Aught, *pt. s.*), it becomes, 1928. A.S. *áh*.
Aȝe (Awe), *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* owe, 2763; *pr. s.* owns, rules over, 4712. A.S. *áh*.
Aȝed, *pp.* terrified, lit. awed, 3635. See Aȝe, *sb.*
Aȝefullest, *adj. superl.* awefullest, most terrible, 16.
Aȝt (Awght), *pt. s. impers.* ought (for him to do), 717; owed, 918; Aȝt, possessed, 2125; (Aught), 2 *pt. pl.* did possess, 2292; Aȝte, *pt. s.* owned, possessed, 18. A.S. *áhte*. See Awght.
Aȝt, *num.* eight, 3462, 3930.
Aȝtand, *ord.* eighth, 3830; Aȝtent, 4836.
Aȝte, *s.* possession, valuable property, *hence*, present, 5134. Lowl. Sc. *aucht*; A.S. *éht*.

Bab, *s.* babe; The bab with to play = for the babe to play with, 2500; Babbis, *pl.* babes, 1772.
Babilon, Babylon, 1683; (Babyloyne), 2597; Babiloun, 5627; Babiloyn, 5611.
(Babyst), *error for* Bayst, 2146. See Baise.
Bac (Bake), *s.* back, 932; Backis, *pl.* 3894.
Bachelere, *s.* young knight, 4209, 4778; (Bachelers, *pl.*), 1594; Bachelers, *pl.* bachelors, young knights, novices in arms, 155, 974, 1003, 1797, 2088; Bachelars, 4111.
Backes, *pl.* bats, 3936. "Bakke, *vespertilio*"; Prompt. Parv.
Bactry, Bactria, 3950.
Bacus, *s.* Bacchus, 4525.
Bad, *pt. s.* bade, 2294, 3138, 3458; (Bade), 1667; Badd, 5540; Bad, *pt. pl.* 2195; (Byde), *pt. pl.* 2285.
Baddis (Baddez), *pl.* cats, 1763. Cf. Sc. *badrans*, a cat; the game called *cat* is also called *bad* (see Halliwell).
Bade, *pt. s.* abode, 4982; remained, waited, 811*; *pt. pl.* waited, abode, 5550.
Bade (Bode), *s.* delay, tarrying, 2908, 2951, 5204.
(Badly), *adv.* badly, 1782. A corrupt reading; see Badrich.
Badriche, *s.* foolish one (?), 1782. It seems to be a vocative case. Cf. A.S. *bædling*, an effeminate person; *badling*, a worthless person (Halliwell).
Bages, *pl.* badges, 4181.
Baggis, *pl.* bags, 123.
Baies (Bays), *pr. s.* bays, barks, 1805.
Bailyfs (Bailȝais), *pl.* bailiffs, 2294.
Baise, *imp. pl.* abase (yourselves), be dismayed, 4156; Baiste (Babyst), *pt. s.* humbled, 2146; Baist (Bassyd), *pp.* abashed, cast down, 2567; (Basyt), humbled, 2447. See Bayst.
Baisens, *pl.* basins, 5278.
Baistell (Bastell), *s.* building, fort, tower, 1161, 1306, 1339, 1398, 1422; Baistall, 1333. O.F. *bastille*, from *bastir*, to build.
Baisting, *s.* boasting, 2016.
Baitis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost bait, dost provoke, 5355.
Bak, *s.* back, 928; Bake, 124, 218, 711, 732*, 3054, 3602; Bakis (Bakkez), *pl.* backs, 2601.
Bakin, *pp.* baked, 4435.
Bakward (Bakeward), *adv.* backward, 1408.
Balaan, *proper name*, 1293, 1430, 1442; Balaa[n], 1301, 1312.
Balan, *s.* (perhaps) a kind of hempen

cloth, 4851. Lat. text—'subtalares lineos.' Cf. O.F. *ballin*, a kind of hempen cloth (Godefroy); Bret. *ballin*, *pallin*, a linen quilt, a winnowing-cloth. See Bole. "*Baullin*, pièce de toile grossière que l'on étend sur le sol quand on vente le blé;" Godefroy.
Bald, *adj.* bold, 157, 289, 761*, 915, 1138, 1263, 1394, 1442; a bold man, 1228.
Baldest, *adj. superl.* boldest, 764.
Baldire (Balder), *adv.* more boldly, 1825.
Baldis, *pr. s.* encourages, 5447; (Beldez), 1018. Cf. A.S. *byldan*.
Baldly, *adv.* boldly, 969.
Baldnes, *s.* boldness, 2991.
Bale, *s.* bale, calamity, 396; sorrow, harm, injury, 1146, 1974; ill, evil, 4194, 4620; sorrow, 2053; illness, 5582; misfortune, 2444; evil fate, 3248; Bales, *pl.* dangers, 5625.
Bale, *s.* fire, blaze, 2231. A.S. *bǽl*.
Bale-fyre, *s.* pyre, fire for burning a man, funeral pile, 562, 2658. See above.
Balefull, *adj.* destructive, 4858.
Balefully, *adv.* sorrowfully, 155.
Bale-nakid, *adj.* belly-naked, naked down to the belly, *hence*, entirely naked, 4125. See *Belly-naked* in Halliwell.
Balgh, *adj.* swelling out, full in shape, 4923. Cf. A.S. *belgan:* and see examples in Mätzner, s. v. *balȝ*.
Ball (Bale), *s.* ball, 1898, 1929; (Balle), 1712.
Banars (Banerys), *pl.* banners, 3027; (Baners), 774. See Baners.
(Band), *pt. s.* bound, tied, 1371, 2903.
Band, *s.* bond, 786*; Bande (Bandes, *pl.*), imprisonment, 3104; Bands, *pl.* bonds, 5344; (Bandez), 769.*
Bane, *s.* slayer, 5376; murderer, 969; Banes, *pl.* murderers, 3248, 3429. Icel. *bani*.
Baners, *pl.* banners, 781, 4181; (*miswritten* Barners), 1563. See Banir, Banars.
Banes, *pl.* bones, 773*, 3308.
Banir, banner, 2088.
Banke, *s.* bank, 5243; (Bank), low hill, 2441.
Banned, *pt. s.* cursed, 157.
Barante (Baraynte), *s.* barrenness, 894. See Barayn.
Baratour, *s.* bold fighter, hero, warrior, 2476, 2825, 2991, 3320, 4786; Barotour, 5043; Barratour, 4001; Baratours, *pl.* fighters, 830*, 1138, 2593, 3502, 3877; Baratorus (Baratours), 2159; (Barotours), 1799. O.F. *barateour*, from *barat*, confusion, strife.
Baratris, *pl.* conflicts, 4503. *Error for* Baratis, *pl. of* Barat, confusion, strife. See Baret.
Barayn (Baren), *adj.* barren, 1199.
Barbare (Barberon), *adj.* barbarous, barbarian, 991; Barbarine (Barberon), 2418; Barbres, *pl.* barbarians, 3499, 3611; (Barbers), 2488; (Barbrys), 2650; (Barbrens), 2606; Barbers (Barbres), 2534. See Barbryn.
Barbis (Barbes), *pl.* barbs of arrows, 2455.
Bar-bryn (Barberen), *adj.* barbarian, 2919; Barbryne (Barbaryn), 3051; Barbrene, 3586; Barbyne (Barbren), 2626; Barbrins, *gen. pl.* barbarians', 5311. See Barbare.
Bare, *s.* boar, 4523, 4746; Bares, *gen.* 5436; Bare, *gen.* 610.
Bare, *pt. s.* bore, pushed along, 711; (Bare), bare, 974; *pt. pl.* bore, 1408; (Borne), carried, 1570.
Bare, *adj.* bare, 1339, 2246, 3842.
(Bare), *s.* bar (of justice), 758.*
Barely, *adv.* nearly, 894.
Baret, *s.* strife, debate, hardship, 4620; trouble, 527; (Barettes), attacks, 2137. O.F. *barat*, *baret*, confusion.
Barge, *s.* barge, raft, 4206; Bargis, 66, 5462; (Bargez), 1305, 2457.
Barke, *s.* bark (of a tree), 4975.
Barme, *s.* brim, edge, verge, 4812. Icel. *barmr*, brim, edge.
Barmeken, barbican, the outermost defence of a fortified town or castle, 1301. Lowland Sc. *barmkin*. See Barme.
Barne, *s.* bairn, child, 396, 517, 585, 597, 1559, 1712, 1927, 3320, 4117;

young man, 811*; Barnes, *pl.* children, 2717, 4046; (Bernes), 1473; (Barnez), 1018.
(Baron), *s.* baron, 761*; Barons, *pl.* 155, 974, 1003, 2159. See Beron.
Baronage, baronage, assembly of barons, 984.
Barotour, Barratour; see Baratour.
Barrayne, *adj.* barren, 3582. See Barayn.
(Barre), *s.* enclosure formed by bars, 783*; (Barrez), *pl.* bars, 1081.
Barrere (Barre), *s.* barrier, 2903; Barrers, *pl.* barriers, 3681; (Barres), 2229.
Barris, *pr. s.* bars; Barris (Barres) to, bars to, fastens up, 1312; Barris, *pr. pl.* (Barred, *pt. pl.*) bar, fasten, 2133; Barred, *pp.* 1080.
(Barslett), *s.* a kind of hound, 786.* Barslett in band = hound in a leash. See *Barsletys* and *Bercelettus* in Halliwell.
Bary, *error for* Bacy, Bacchus, 4506.
Basenet, basnet, helmet, 4002; Basinettis (Basynettes), *pl.* 2457; cf. 787.
Basilisk, *s.* basilisk, 4837.
Bast, the inner bark of a tree, 4981; Als bare as a bast (baste), as bare as a tree with only its inner bark left, 1339 (cf. l. 4981).
(Basyng), *s.* abasement, attempt to put down, 2016. *Short for* Abasyng.
Batailid (Bateld), *pp.* embattled, 1152.
Bataill, *s.* (1) battle, 296, 3643; (Batell), 999, 1879, 1891, 2047; (Batele), 1808; Bataile, battle, war, 650; Batall, 2374; Bataills, *pl.* 4023; (2) Bataill (Batell), battalion, body of troops, 768, 783; Batails, *pl.* battalions, 93, 3037. See Batell.
Bataill-axes, *pl.* battle-axes, 4084.
Batary, *prop. name*, 93.
Bate, *ger.* to debate, to fight, contend, 4009, 4553.
Bate (Bates, *pl.*), debate, conflict, 2615.
Bate, *s.* stick, piece of wood, lit. bat, 1340. See Battis.
Batell, *s.* battle, 2908, 830*; Batill, 137. See Bataill.
Bath, *adj.* both, 4046; (Both), 1983, 2678; Bathe, 88, 177, 5203; (Bath), 769, 1422, 1584; þe bath, both of them, 2927; Bathe, *adv.* also, 492.
Bathe, *ger.* to bathe (Bathyd, *pp.*), 2542.
Bathire, *adj.* both, 3946. Icel. *báðir*, both.
Batill; see Bataill, Batell.
Batis (Botez), *pl.* boats, 1305.
Batis, *imp. pl.* abate, lower, 4156.
Batriane, Bactria, 3782; Batran, 2673; Battri (Battrye), 3106.
Battis, *pl.* lumps, large pieces, 4166. Cf. *brick-bat*. See Bate.
Bawdkyns (Bawdkens), *pl.* rich cloths, expensive pieces of cloth, 1514. O.F. *baudequin*, Ital. *baldacchino*, from Ital. *Baldacco*, Bagdad.
Bawers, *pl.* archers; Baratours bawers, warrior-archers, 3960. Lit. 'bowers,' bow-men.
Bawme, *s.* balm, balsam, 4380, 4869, 4975.
Bawnand, *pres. part.* 4908. The sense is clearly 'abiding' or 'dwelling'; prob. for *bownand*, as if from M.E. *bounen*, to get ready; but used in the sense of the orig. Icel. verb *búa*, to dwell, abide.
Baxe, a country, 5668.
Bayne, *adj.* prompt, ready, 323. Icel. *beinn*.
Bayon, Bayonne, 5668.
Bayst, *pt. s.* cast down, made abashed, 466. See Baise.
Be, *v.* to be, 5, 118, 159, 1476, &c.; *ger.* 179, 180, 204; Sall be, shall be, 178; Be, *pr. s. subj.* 249, 322; may be, 308; whether it be, 257; 2 *pr. s. subj.* 844*; *pr. pl. subj.* 106, 2076; *imp. s.* be thou, 242; Be þis = if this be, 2549. See Bee.
Be, *prep.* by, 58, 206, 240, 443, 617, 2084; by aid of, 714; beside, close to, 3940; with respect to, 4410; through, 3792. See Bi.
Be, *conj.* by the time that, 3900, 5163.

Be now, by now, by this time, 3825.
Be þis (þat), by this (that) time, 1313.
Be tyme, betimes, 1746.
Bebbing, *s.* bibbing, drinking, 4506.
Be-bled (To-bled), *pp.* covered with blood, 1274.
Bebricans, the Bebrician's, 5333.
Bebrik, *adj.* Bebrician, 5178, 5214.
Bebrike, Bebricia, 5151.
Be-cause, *conj.* because, 230. See Bicause.
Becomen, *pp.* gone, 166.
Bed, *s.* bed, 381; (Bede), 1506; Beddis, *pl.* 5267; (Beddes), 1763.
Beddels (Bedels), *pl.* heralds, lit. beadles, 2285, 2294.
Bede, *v.* bid, 2860; Bedis, *pr. s.* bids, commands, 3565; Beds, 5462; Bedis (Biddez), 1473, 1668, 1906; Bedis (Byddes), *pr. s.* bids, 1492, 3137; (Biddes), 2749; Bedis, *pr. s.* offers, 3115; Bedis þam þe bake, offers them his back, takes to flight, 3054; Bede, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* offer, 4289; Bedis (Bydes), *pr. pl.* bid, advise, 2658; Bed, 1 *pt. s.* (Byd, 1 *pr. s.*) bade, 2479; Bede, *pt. s.* bade, 811*, 3319; Bed, *pt. s.* offered, 3557; (Badde), offered, 1664; Bed hem (bidden þaim) þe bake, took (taken) to flight, 1944; Beden, *pp.* bidden, 71.
Bedell, *adj.* sharp, 4096. Evidently a variant of M.E. *bitel*, biting, sharp, Ormulum, 10074; Layamon, vol. ii. p. 395; vol. iii. p. 73.
Bedene, *adv.* forthwith, at once, quickly, 474, 1905, 2100, 2656, 3367, 4056, 4113, 4225; continually, 4788; All bedene, all at once, 3743. See All-bedene.
Beding, *s.* bidding, 3529; Bedinge, 4778.
Bedis, *pr. s.* requires, asks, 4537; (Bedes), prays, 1482; Bede (Bid), 1 *pr. pl* pray, ask, 1683.
Bedis, *pl.* prayers, 4670.
Bedsted, *s.* place for a bed, 373.
Bedwyn, *name*, 5498.
Bee, *v.* be, 3793; (Be), *ger.* to be, 2092; Bees, *pr. s. used as future*, will be, shall be, 174, 1899, 1991, 4781; (Beys), 892; will be, can be, 3378; Bees (Be), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* be ye, 2604; (Beys), 874, 2435; *used for the sing.*, 1355. And see Be.
Beeris, *error for* Heeris (*as shewn by the alliteration*), *pl.* armies, hosts, 5673.
Bees, *pl.* ornaments, jewels, chains (of gold), 1548, 2337, 5274; (Beys), 3225. A.S. *béah*. In l. 5472, *bees* signifies ornaments of gold; and as gold is, in poetry, said to be *red*, the author has been led by alliteration to describe the *bees* as blood-red.
Beet, *ger.* to kindle, 3918. A.S. *bétan*.
Beete, *ger.* beat out, forge, 3626.
Befall, *v.* happen, 251, 433; (Befalle), 1641.
Before, *prep.* before, 1146, 2295, 2303; Befor, 272, 1900, 3973; *adv.* before, beforehand, 76, 736*, 798*, 1240; Be-for (Before), *conj.* before, 2290; Here-before (beforne), ere now, 721.
Be-forne, *prep.* before, 361, 3769, Beforn, 4862; Beforne (Before), 1321, 1598; (Aforne), 2964.
Be-forne, *adv.* before, 2262, 2274; in front, 1561.
Begane, *pp.* adorned, 4911. A.S. *be-gán*, pp. of *be-gán*, to go round.
Begin (Begyn), *v.* begin, 2272; (Began), *pt. pl.* 2044. See Begyn.
Be-glouird, *pt. s.* deceived, beguiled, lit. flattered, 417. See *glaveren* in Stratmann.
Begyle, *ger.* to beguile, 415; Begylid, *pt. s.* 390.
Begyn, *ger.* to begin, 324; Begynnes (Begynnez), *pr. s.* 1026; Begynnys, *pr. s.* 5451; *pr. pl.* 2044.
Be-hald, *ger.* to behold, 1063; (Behold), 2270; Behaldis, *pr. s.* (Beheld, *pt. s.*), looks, 1589; Behaldes (Bihaldyn), beholds, 2058; Behaldis, *pr. s.* beholds, 266; Behald, 2 *pr. pl.* 269; Beheld, *pt. s.* 42, 223, 264; Behald (Byhald), *imp. s.* 702, 740; Behalds, *imp. pl.* 4996.
Behalue, *s.* behalf, 5037.

Be-heryd (Heret), *pp.* bepraised, 1616. A.S. *herian*.
Behind (Byhynde), *adv.* behind, 1433; Be-hynde, 5437; Be-hynd (Byhynde), back, 1596.
Be-houys, *pr. s.* it behoves, must needs, 172.
Be-hynde; see Behind.
Be-kend, *pp.* proclaimed, made known; Was þe croune be-kend, was proclaimed as the crown, i. e. as the chief, 3479. Or *croune* may be taken as dative; i. e. he was entrusted with the crown. *Be-kenne* is properly to commit to, entrust to.
Bekirs (Bekers), *pr. s.* fights, 1297; Bekire (Bekeryng), *pr. pl.* skirmish, 1394. E. *bicker*.
Be-knew, *pt. s.* acknowledged (to), 671; (Be-knewe), made known, 2872.
(Beld), *pp.* built, 2256.
(Beldez); see Baldis.
Bele, *s.* belly, 394. See Bely.
Belechiste, belly-chest, belly, 423.
Beliue (Belyfe), *adv.* soon, 2209; Belyue (Beliue), 1511; Belife, 256, 731*; Als beliue, as soon as possible, at once, 800*; (Als belyue), 2183; (Als belyfe), 3181. See Belyue, Bilyue.
Bellis (Bellys), *pl.* bells, 1563.
Bely, *s.* belly, 4923. See Bele.
Bely-blind, lit. belly-blind, extremely dark, 5648. See Balenakid.
Belyme, *error for* Belyue, *adv.* quickly, 3761. See Belyue.
Be-lyue, *adv.* quickly, soon, forthwith, 493, 670, 777, 2793; (Belyfe), 956, 1810, 2285; (Byliue), 1792; (Beliue), 1452; Belyfe, 190, 382, 621; (Belyue), 1051; (Beliue), 909; Belyf (Belyue), 1425; Als belyfe, as soon as possible, 710, 2404; (All belyue), very soon, 2404; As belyue, as quickly as possible, 3029, 5160.
Bemes, *pl.* beams of light, 1543; (Bemys), sun-beams, 3225; Bemys, 62.
Bemes, *pl.* beams, i. e. projecting horns (*but prob. an error for* Banes, bones, Lat. text, *ossa*), 5557. See the note.
Bemys (Bemes), *pl.* trumpets, 1387, 2616; Bemen (Beeme), *gen. pl.* of trumpets, 3038. A.S. *býme*, *béme*, a trumpet.
(Ben), 1 *pr. pl.* are, 1992.
Ben, *for* Baned, i. e. boned, 1702. MS. D. *has* baned *correctly*.
Benche; see Benke.
Bend (Bynde), *ger.* to bend, soften, cause to give way, 2243; Bendis (Benden), *pr. pl.* bend, 2225; Bende, *pt. s.* bent down to, 1620; Bend up, *ger.* to wind up or draw up (their crossbows and bows), 2211.
(Bene), *v.* to be, 1465; (Bene), *pr. pl.* are, 1008, 2155; Bene, *pp.* been, 233, 489, 596; (Ben), 1004, 1123.
Bene (Beyne), *s.* (the value of a) bean, 2567.
Benere (Bener), *adj. comp.* fitter, better, easier, 1715. See Bayne.
Benignite, benignity, goodness, 4662.
Benke, *s.* bench, seat, 625, 4236; Benkis, *pl.* 5271; Benkes (Benche), 2927.
Bent, *s.* field, plain, grassy field, 830*, 1328, 2053, 2825, 3027, 3126, 3170, 3502, 3557, 5151.
Bent-fild (Feld), open field, field of battle (lit. field of bent-grass), 2786, 3139, 4764.
Benyson, *s.* benison, blessing, 1692, 3308.
Berand, *pres. part.* making a noise, roaring, 3903. See Bere, *s.*
Berbrens, *pl.* barbarians, 5334; *gen.* 3572.
Berd, beard, 320; Berdis, *pl.* 4117. See Bered.
Berdles, *adj.* beardless, 2556.
Bere, *v.* bear, carry, 124; bear (a child), 439; bear, 835, 1906; wear, 1715; Beres, *pr. s.* carries, 732*; (Beres), bears, 1219; Beris, bears, 312; thrusts, 788; carries about, 3351; (Berez), thrusts, 932; Beris, 2 *pr. pl.* bear, 2120; Beris, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.*: Beris a-pon vs, bring upon us, accuse us of, 4663; Bere, *pt. s.* bore, 751*.

Bere, *s.* noise, din, 489, 496. See *bere* in Mätzner.
Bere, *s.* bear, 4126; Beres, *pl.* 3849.
Bered, beard, 122. See Berd.
Beren (Berne), *s.* man, 3138. See Berin, Berne.
Beres, *pr. s.* resounds (Beryd, *pt. s.*), 3038. See Bere, *s.*, Berand.
Beried (Beryd), *pp.* full of graves, lit. buried, 3139.
Berin, *s.* man, 5240. See Berne.
Bering, *s.* bearing, 4319.
Beritinus, *proper name*, 1242; (Bertinus), 1263.
Berne, *s.* man, hero, 107, 157, 402, 446, 547, 585, 761*, 872, 999, 4110; (Bern), 787*, 1328, 1349, 2172; Bernes, *pl.* men, warriors, 66, 489, 747*, 781, 1146, 1214, 1220, 2517, 3432, 3572; husbands, 3741; (Bernez), 1037; Bernns (Bernes), 2214; (Bernes), 984; Bernys, 93, 296, 4125; (Bernes), 1307. A.S. *beorn*. See Beren, Berin.
Berne-dure, *s.* barn-door; As a b., as great as a barn-door, 4852.
Bernys (Bernez), *pl.* barns, 1763.
Beron, baron, 1594; (Barouns), *pl.* 1594. See Baron.
Berrers, *pl.* caskets (?), lit. bearers, things to carry things in (?), 5135. Lat. text, *loculos*, of which it is probably a translation.
Bery, *s.* berry, 1349, 1357.
Bery, *ger.* to hide, 4048; *imp. pl.* bury, 3308.
Bery-bobis, *pl.* bunches of berries, 4809. See Bobb.
Bery-buskis, *pl.* bushes bearing berries, 5239.
Berynes, *s.* sepulchre, tomb, 5417, 5591. See the Troy-Book (E. E. T. S.).
Berys, *pl.* bears, 3906. (But see the note.)
Besan, Byffex, 3428.
Besandis, *pl.* besants, i. e. coins of Byzantium, 124; (Besaundes), 3104; (Besandez), 1042; Besands (Besaundez), 1664, 1891; (Besaundes), 1906.
Be-seche (Beseke), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* beseech, 1097; Be-sechis (Besekes), *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* 1012. See Beseke.
Beseke, 1 *pr. s.* 311, beseech, 801*; (Beseche), 3172; Besekis (Besekez), *pr. s.* beseeches, 1075; Beseke (Besekyn), 1 *pr. pl.* beseech, 1947, 2699; *pr. pl.* 2352. See Beseche.
Besely, *adv.* quickly, 1944.
Besemes (Besemys), *pr. s.* beseems, befits, suits, 2944; Be-semys, 439.
Beseȝis, *pr. s. refl.* considers, 751. A.S. *beséon*, to look about.
Beside (Besyde), *prep.* beside, 1158. See Besyde.
Besom, brush, 320. Du. *bezem*, A.S. *besma*.
Be-soȝt, *pt. s.* besought, 303, 515. See Beseke, Beseche.
Best, *adj.* best, 35, 807*; Beste, 401.
Best, *adv.* best, 160, 289, 373, 439.
Bestaill, *s.* cattle, 1199. O.F. *bestaille*.
Beste, *s.* beast, 3920, 5591; Best, 762*, 4096, 4742, 5133, 5436; Bestis, *pl.* beasts, 280, 3493, 3572, 3593, 4118; animals, 5431; creatures, 3793; Bestes, beasts, 2765; Bestis (Bestes), 1207, 1532, 1540, 2853.
(Beste), *error for* Boste, *s.* boasting, 2447. See the other MS.
(Bestound), *for* Be stound, by the time, at this time, 1468.
Besy, *adj.* busy, 595.
Be-syde, *prep.* beside, 236, 1144; (Bysyde), against, with respect to, 875; Besyd (Besyde), beside, 2131. See Beside.
Besyde (Bysyde), *adv.* near, 1694.
Besyly, *adv.* busily, 2991; (Besely), 2934.
Besynes, *s.* business, busy employment (about), 4670.
Bet, *adv.* better, rather, 3494.
Bet, *pp.* beaten, made, 3696; (Betyn), beaten, 2088.
Be-takens (Betokyns), *pr. s.* betokens, foretells, 3000; Be-takend, *pt. s.* betokened, 613.
Bete, *ger.* to beat down, 2246; Beten (Betyn), *pp.* beaten, made, 2927. See Betis, Bett.
Be-tid, *pt. s.* betided, befel, happened, 214, 524; (Betyd), 2366; Betid (Betyd), *pp.* happened, come to pass, 3279.
Be-time (Be-tyme), *adv.* betimes, in time, 1768, 1978.
Betis (Betes), *pr. s.* beats, 1223; (Betyn), beat, 1153. See Bete.
Betokyns; see Be-takens.
Bett, *pt. s.* kindled, 4167. A.S. *bétan*.
Bett, *pp.* beaten, 1927; beaten (out), 5271. See Bete.
Better, *adj.* 1102; *adv.* 106, 642.
Be-twene, *prep.* between, 295, 317, 353, 660; (Bytwene), 797.
Betwene, *adv.* between whiles, 1414; at times, 1299; (Bytwene), between, 1370.
Betwyx, *prep.* betwixt, 4216.
Beute (Bewte), *s.* beauty. In ll. 2739, 2919 it occurs in the unauthorised sense of 'kindness'; but it is probably an error for *bonte*, i. e. bounty, goodness, kindness.
Bewenes, *error for* Beweues, *pr. pl.* cover (themselves with no proud clothing), put on (no proud clothing), 4337. See *biweven* in Mätzner, and *biweved* in Halliwell.
Bewte, *s.* beauty, 224. See Beute.
Beȝonde, *adv.* beyond, i. e. on the other side of the stream, 3742.
Bi, *prep.* by, 79; along, 1538. See Be.
Bi-cause of, because of, 3273. See Because.
Bicchid, *pp.* as *adj.* evil, 4839. See *bicched bones* in Chaucer.
Biche, *s.* bitch, 5482.
Bid, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* pray, 1782; Biddis (Biddez), *pr. s.* prays, asks, 2191.
Bide, *ger.* to bide, wait, remain, stay, 137; (Byde), *v.* 2172; *ger.* 1689; (Abyde), *v.* 2180, 2195; Bidis (Bydes), *pr. s.* waits, 3054; endures, 527.
Bide (Byd), 1 *pr. s.* bid, command, 3415; Bidd, 3562; Bidd (Bidde), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* I bid, require, 2337; Biddis, *pr. s.* bids, 5576; (Byddes), 1717, 2211.
Big, *adj.* strong, 1295; Bigg, big, great, 4742, 5156; (Big), bold, 1808; Bigge, strong, stout, 5516; Big (Bigg), 915; Bige, big, strong, 4085.
Bigg, *ger.* to build, 2256; Biggis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* build, 4580; Biggid, *pp.* built, 5415; (Bigged), 2215; (Bigget), 1366. Icel. *byggja*.
Bigger, *adj.* stronger, 2340; Biggire, bigger, 3903.
Biggest, *adj.* strongest, 2159.
Bigging, *s.* building, 4431; Biggingis (Biggenges), buildings, towns, 2697. See Bigg.
Bigly, *adv.* strongly, 1371; stoutly, 1138; largely, 423.
Bignes, *s.* greatness, 105; arrogance, 1018.
Bild, *s.* building, 1366, 4892, 5267; (Beld), building, 1297; town, 3106; (Belde), building, 1307, 2926; town, fort, 1080; (Beylde), 1338; Bilds, *pl.* buildings, 5603; Bildis (Beldes), 3137.
Bilds, *pr. s.* builds, 5591; Bildis, *pr. s.* (Beldit, *pt. s.*), builds, pitches (tents), 2441; Bildis, *pr. pl.* build, *hence* dwell, 3741; Bi[l]did (Bild), *pt. s.* built, 1366; Bildid, *pt. s.* set up, 2673; Bildid, *pt. pl.* built, pitched, 3950; Bildid, *pp.* built, 5417; Bild, *pp.* 1161.
Bildid, *pt. pl.* became emboldened, took courage, 3884. (*Of* = some of.) A.S. *byldan*.
Bilding, *s.* building, 4431.
Bilding (Beldyng), *s.* emboldening, encouragement, 1797. See Bildid.
Bill, *s.* bill, writing, 1827.
Billis, *pl.* bills, beaks, 3696.
Bilyue (Belyue), *adv.* soon, 2271.
Bird, *s.* lady, 5214; Birdis, *pl.* women, ladies, 595, 3723, 4259.
(Birde); see Bride.
Bire (Bir), rush, force, 711. Lowl. Sc. *birr*, *beir*, force. Cf. Icel. *byrr*, a favouring wind.
Birth, *s.* birth, 256, 289; child, 439, 526.
Bischop, *s.* bishop, 1458, 1473, 1489; (Bishop), 1506, 1570, 1644, 1692; (Bischopp), 1598, 1664.
Bise (Byse), *adj.* bice, blue colour, 1532. Often described as purple;

see *bis* in Mätzner. O.F. *bisse*, Lat. *byssus*, Gk. *βύσσος*.

Bitis, *pr. s.* bites, 224, 2070; (Bitez), 1805; Bitand, *pres. pt.* biting, sharp, 610, 788, 3197, 5558; Bitten, *pp.* 3934.

Bitterly, *adv.* keenly, 1301; bitterly, 963.

Blaa, *adj.* livid, 559. Icel. *blár*, Dan. *blaa*.

Blade, *s.* blade of a razor, 122; Bladis, *pl.* blades, 5558.

Blak, *adj.* black, 112, 606, 3920; Blake, 192, 562; (Blak), 1127.

Blakenid, *pp.* blackened, 556.

Blamed, 2 *pt. pl.* (Blame, 2 *pr. pl.*), blamed, 2429.

Blan, *pt. s.* ceased, 381, 1228. A.S. *blinnan*, pt. t. *blann*. See Blin.

Blasand, *pres. part.* blazing, bright, ardent, 2871; (Blesand), 1563; (Blysnand), 1524, 2229.

Blase, *s.* blaze; On blase, in a blaze, 559; (On a blasse), 2231.

Blasenand, *pres. part.* blazing, shining, 5262. See Blasand, Blasynand.

Blasfeme, *ger.* to blaspheme, 2737.

Blasfeme, *s.* blasphemy, 4663.

Blason, *s.* large shield, 4852; Blasons, *pl.* shields of arms, 787.

Blaste (Blast), *s.* blast, noise, 3038; blowing, drawing, 3233; Blastis, *pl.* blasts, 3959, 4162.

Blasynand (Blasenand), *pres. pt.* blazing, shining, 3225. See Blasenand.

Blawis, *pr. s.* blows, 4380; Blawen, *pp.* 5539; (Blayn), *pp.* 1757.

Blaȝt, *adj.* bleached, white, 4925, 5482; (Blaught), 1559. Lowl. Sc. *blaucht;* cf. A.S. *blǽced*, bleached, pp.

Ble, *s.* countenance, mien, 466; Blee, 394. A.S. *blé*o.

Bleaut, *s.* coverlet of linen, 4912. O.F. *blialt*, *bliaut*, F. *blaude*, a rich vestment. Hence E. *blouse*.

(Bleez), *pl.* appearance, 1548; see Ble. But doubtless an error for *bees*, as in MS. A.

Blemysche, *ger.* to blemish, pollute, 4345; Blemysch, to harm, 4289; Blemyschid, *pt. s.* blemished, damaged, spoilt, 4181; Blemysched (Blemyst), *pt. pl.* blemished, harmed, tore, 2985; Blemest, *pt. pl.* blemished, (but here) killed, 3943; see note.

Blend, *pp.* blended, compounded, 105.

Blenkid, *pt. pl.* glanced, looked, peered, 5607. E. *blink*.

Blesand, *pres. pt.* blazing, 604, 4230; shining, bright, 274. See Blasand.

Blesenand, *pres. part.* blazing, 562; Blesynand (Blysnand), flashing, 802; Blesnand, gazing, staring, 4812; Blesenand, 4080. See *blusnen* in Mätzner; so also the M.E. *bluschen* means (1) to shine, (2) to gaze.

Blew, *pt. pl.* (they) blew, 2616; Blewe (Blew), 1387.

Blewe (Blew), *s.* blue, 1524.

Blid (Baldit), *error for* Bild, *pp.* emboldened, encouraged, 1891. See Bildid, of which *Bild* is a shorter form.

Blin, *v.* cease, 4167. See Blan, Blyn.

Blinde, *ger.* to blind, deceive, 5234; Blindid (Blyndyd), *pt. s.* became dark, 3046.

Blis, *s.* bliss, 244, 1489; (Blysse), mirth, joy, 1834, 2871.

Blisch, *s.* glance; At a blisch, at a glance, in a moment, 606, 5435. See *blusch* in Mätzner; cf. E. 'at the first *blush*.'

Blische (Blissh), *ger.* to look, 2053; Blischis, *pr. s.* looks, gazes, 5583; Blisches (Blyshys), looks, 1338; (Blyssez), looks, 984; Blischis (Blisshes) vp, looks up, 872; Blischis, *pr. pl.* look, 4189; Blischt, *pt. pl.* looked, glanced, 5550, 5607. See *bluschen* in Mätzner.

Blisfulle, *adj.* happy, fair, 5415.

Blissid, blessed, 5625.

Blissing, *s.* blessing, 4573.

Blithe, *adj.* blithe, 517; (Blyth), 1834.

Blithis, *pr. s.* gladdens, 4624.

Blithly, *adv.* blithely, 5607.

Blode, *s.* blood, 640, 991; kindred, 585, 590; (Blod), 2053; Blod (Blode), 1966; Blod (Blude), kindred, 2739. See Blude.

Blonk, *s.* horse, 749*, 758*. (Blonke), 1222, 2172; Blonke (Blonk), 767, 928; (Blonnke), 2974; (Blonkez), *pl.* horses, 791, 821*; (Blonnkes), 1247; Blonkis (Blonkes), 886, 2057. Orig. a *white* horse.

Bloþirs (Blothers), *pr. s.* gurgles, rattles, 970. Cf. *bloberond*, bubbling, gurgling, in the Troy-Book, l. 9462; and see *blother* in Halliwell.

Blude (Blode), *s.* blood, 2048; race, 2418. See Blode.

Blyckenand, *part. pres.* glittering, 604. See *blyknen*, to glitter, in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.

Blyn, *v.* cease, 2737; Blynnes, *pr. s.* 4160; Blynes, *imp. pl.* desist, leave off, 4011; Blyns, cease, 5365. See Blin, Blan.

Blyndid, *pt. pl.* blinded, 3283.

(Blysse), *s.* prosperity, 1827. See Blis.

Blyssis, *pr. s.* looks, 789*. See Blisch.

Blyth, *adv.* blithely, gladly, 3768.

Blythly, *adv.* gladly, 789*, 3502.

Bobance, *s.* arrogance, vanity, presumption, boasting, 2500; Bobans, 4252; (Bobas, *for* Bobans), 2016. "*Bobance*, insolencie, surquedrie, proud or presumptuous boasting;" Cotgrave.

Bobb, *s.* bunch, cluster, 4777; Bobis, *pl.* 2852; (Bobbez), 2851. Lowl. Sc. *bob*, a bunch. Cf. 'a *bob* of grapys;' Cath. Anglicum.

Bocifalon, Bucephalus, 3613; Bocifilas (Bucifolon), 767.

Bode; see Bade.

Bode, *s.* command, message, 534, 2805, 3137. A.S. *bod*.

Bodely, *adj.* bodily, 4289.

Bodword, *s.* message, 48, 1458 (Bodworde), 1489. See Bode.

Body, *s.* body, 1127, 1548; Bodi, 224; (Body), 870, 894, 1482; Bode, 192; Bode (Body), body, person, 2444; Bodis, *pl.* 3903; (Bodes), 2476.

Boghe, *s.* bough, 4982.

Boke, *s.* book, 597, 625; (Buk), 1207.

Bole, *s.* trunk (of a tree), 5015; Boles, *pl.* trunks (of trees), 5002; Bolis (Bulesse), *pl.* boles, trunks, 2851. *Bulesse* in Dub. can hardly mean 'bullaces.' Cf. Icel. *bolr*, *bulr*, trunk.

Bole, *s.* coarse linen, 4851. "*Baule*, pièce de toile grossière;" Godefroy. See Balan.

(Boles), *gen.* bull's, 751*.

Boll, *s.* bowl, cup, 55, 112, 2938, 4537; a cluster, 5240; a boss, 5647. Cf. *Bolls*, ornamental knobs; Halliwell. In l. 5240, perhaps we should read *bob;* see Bobb.

Bolne, *v.* swell, 394; Bolnes, 2 *pr. pl.* swell, fill out, 4435. Icel. *bólgna*.

Bolstirs (Bolsters), *pl.* cushions, 1569.

Bonde, *s.* peasant, *hence*, uncouth man, 4741. Lat. *homo agrestis*. Icel. *bóndi*.

Bonden, *pp.* bound, 396, 3681; (Bondyn), 745*.

Bondis, *pl.* bounds, territories, 4320. Bonds, limits (Lat. *terminos*), 4850; bounds, 3782; territories, regions, 4085, 5090.

Bondsward; To our bondsward, i.e. to our bounds-ward, towards our bounds, 3752. See Bondis.

Bone, *s.* boon, prayer, request, 547, 1492, 1672.

Bone, *s.* command (lit. petition), 3137. (But read *bode*, as in D.)

Bonerte, *s.* goodness, 4662. Short for Debonerte.

Borde (Burde), *s.* board, table, 842; (Borde), 1340; Borde, 1857; Bordis, *pl.* tables, 5271; (Burdez), 2927; boards (of the tablets), 640. See Damme-borde.

Borden, *adj.* wooden, 3602.

Bordren, *error for* Broden (Brouden), *pp.* ornamented, 787. A.S. *brogdən*, pp. of *bregdan*, to braid, &c.

Borely, *adj.* burly, great, large, 4089, 5435, 5472, 5603; Borly, 5002. See Burly.

Boris, *pr. s.* becomes dim, is surrounded by a *burr* or haze, 556. A haze round the sun or moon is called a *burr* in the Whitby dialect and in East Anglia.

Borliest, *adj. superl.* burliest, biggest, 4921. And see Borely.
Borne, *pp.* born, 517, 590, 597.
Borne, *s.* burn, stream, 3831.
Borowid (Borowed), *pp.* borrowed, 1849.
Bos, *pr. s.* behoves; Bos haue, behoves to have, must needs have, 4526; Vs bos (buse) haue, it behoves us to have, 2503; Bos (Bus), it behoves, 2340; Bose, 1927; is necessary for, 3298; (Bus), it is necessary, 2309. See Bus, Bud.
Bosom, *s.* bosom, 274.
Bost, *ger.* to boast, 2737.
Bost, *s.* boasting, 2447, 3581, 4023.
Bot, *conj.* but, 53, 101, 146, 147, 159, 161, 2913, 3321; (Bott), 686, 793; unless, 2313, 3437, 4427; Bott, but, 844*, 4225; (Bott), 686, 846; (Bod), 1623; Bot, only, 106, 139, 447, 5054, 5525; Bot if, unless, 13, 642, 1786; Bot and, but if, 3756; Bot out, except the whole of, save wholly, 5025.
(Bote), *pt. s.* bit, 2070.
Bote, *s.* use, advantage, 137; remedy, 160. A.S. *bót.*
Botez; see Batis.
Both; see Bath.
Bothom, *s.* bottom, 5532; (Bothom), 1306; (Bothum), 712; Bothom, bottom (of the valley), 4808.
Botis, *pr. s. impers.* it profits, 208. See Bote, *s.*
Bott, *prep.* but, except, 2080; (Bot), 1328.
Boukis, *pl.* bodies (but see the note to l. 3944), 3946.
Boun (Bowne), *v. reflex.* get himself ready, 2878; Bounes, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 3030; (Bownez on), advances, 768; Bounes him (Bownes hym), *pr. s.* makes him ready, 1506; (Bownez hym on), 3030; Bound, *pt. pl.* made themselves ready, hence, journeyed, went, 1116. Formed from Boune, pp. and adj. See Bownes.
Bounde, *s.* orbit, circuit, 427 (see the note); Boundis, boundaries, lands, 3582.
Boune, *pp.* (*properly* ready to go), gone, 218; *adj.* ready, 323, 534, 3037; (Bowne), 870, 999; Boun, 4206, 5540; Boun (Bowne), 2805. Icel. *búinn*, pp. of *búa*, to make ready.
Bounte, bounty, goodness, 2717.
Bourde, *s.* jest, 462.
Bourne, *s.* stream, burn, brook, 3741, 4081, 4304; (Burne), 2587, 2597; Bournes, *pl.* burns, water-courses, 3487. See Burne.
Bowe (Bow), *v.* bow, submit, 991; *ger.* to bend, 3551; Bow, *v.* pass, go, 2195; Bowes, *pr. s.* bows down, 423; turns, 1333; proceeds, 534; Bowis, *pr. s.* bends, comes, 4778; Bows, *pr. s.* goes, applies himself, 5363; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. s.* bows, 1672; (Bowys), bows down, 1692; (Bowez), bows down, is subservient, 2911; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. s.* directs himself, 2893; stoops, 1598; Bowes þarin, enters in, 4209; Bowis (Bownes), *pr. s.* goes, hastens, 1312, 1553 (but here we might rather read *bownis*); Bowis (Bowe), 1 *pr. s.* bow, 2777; Bowe, *pr. pl.* bend, turn, 2597; Bow, go, mount, 5243; Bowis (Bowes), *pr. pl.* yield, submit, 2476; (Bowed), *pt. s.* bowed to, 1620; Bowid, *pt. pl.* bowed, 196; Bow, *pr. s. subj.* if he return, 296; Bowe, *pr. pl.* submit to, 2606; (Bowed) (Boȝet), *pp.* bowed, bent, 1900; Bow, *imp. s.* bend, 547; Bowis (Bowys), *imp. pl.* return, 3118; (Bowes), depart, 2469; Bowes, return, 4011.
Bowes, *pl.* bows, 4084; Bowis (Bowes), 1413, 2210.
Bowis, *pl.* boughs, 4302, 4868, 4996; (Bowes), 2851.
Bowlis (Bulez), *pl.* game of bowls, 1929.
Bowmen, *pl.* archers, 3600, 5447.
Bowne, *adj.* ready, 1380. See Boune.
Bownes, *pr. s. refl.* prepares him, gets ready, 4954; goes, 1305; (Bownes þaim up), make their way up, 699. See Boune.

Boyland, *pres. part.* oozing, welling, 4975.
Boȝes him vp, *pr. s. refl.* turns, goes up, 699.
Brad, *pt. s.* spread, 4912. A.S. *brǽdan.* See Braidis, Bredid.
Brade, *adj.* broad, 496, 768, 732*, 783*, 1653, 1717, 3965, 4089; (Brode), 1340, 1514; Brad, 2118; (Brod), 2133; (Brade), 1408; (Brade), 802, 1297; On brade, abroad, in public, 1800; aloud, 3565; On brad, aloud, 2294. See Brode.
(Brades vppe), *pr. s.* opens, 783*; (Brade), *pt. s.* drew, 2639. A.S. *bregdan*, Icel. *bregða.* See Braidis.
Bradnes, *s.* broadness, breadth, 1374.
Braes, *pl.* steep banks, 4809.
Brag, *s.* bragging, 4319.
Bragg, *ger.* to brag, 4553.
Bragging, *s.* braying, noise, 3965; Braggins (Braggyng), brayings, loud sounds, 3037.
Bragmenys, *pl.* Brahmans, 4194; Bragmeyns, *gen. pl.* 4236, 4448.
Bragmeyn, the land of the Brahmans, 4209.
Braide (Brayde), *s.* instant, moment; In a braide (brayde), in a short time, at once, 381, 1956, 4850; At a braide, in a moment, as soon as possible, 1220, 1956, 2231, 3918, 4206, 5539; At a braid, 5462; Braidis, *pl.* attacks, sudden assaults, 2137. Icel. *bragð.* See Brayde.
Braidis, *pr. s.* draws, 2639; (Brades), snatches, 2951; leaps, 928; leaps quickly, jumps, 2892; Braide (Bradyn), hurry, 2229; Braidis, *pr. pl.* seize; Braidis to, take to, 3884; (Braden to), seize, 1413; Brait (Brade), *pt. s.* drew, 802. See Brades vppe, Braydis.
Braidis, *pr. s.* spreads, extends, 1514; (Bradez), *pr. pl.* unfurl, display, 774. See Brad, Bredid.
Brak, *pt. s.* broke, 510; Brake, 2 *pt. pl.* ye brake, 1357.
Bran, *s.* bran, 4537.
Brand, *s.* brand, fire-brand, 3138, 4230; sword, 446, 802, 3197, 3248; (Brande), 842, 870; (Brannde), 1426; Brande, sword, 427, 1223; Brandis (Brandes), *pl.* brands, burning logs, 2236; swords, 3674, 3842.
Brant, *adj.* straight, erect, 3648. Cf. Swed. *brant*, steep. See Brent.
Bras, *s.* brass, 55, 276; (Brace), 1387; Brase, 4085.
Brasen, *adj.* brazen, 112.
Brased, *pt. s.* pricked (?), 1317; *but doubtless an error for* broched, *as in MS.* D.
Brast, *pt. s.* burst, 510, 1416; Braste, 872.
Brathe, *s.* anger, 1744, 5365; (Breth), 1956; Brath (Breth), violence, fury, 1220. Cf. Icel. *bráðr*, sudden, rash.
Brathly, *adv.* severely, 1214; vigorously, 2211. Icel. *bráðr*, sudden.
Braunches, *pl.* branches, 2851, 4782, 5239.
Brayde, *s.* turn, throe, 527; At a brayd (brade), in a moment, 1380. See Braide.
Braydis, *pr. s.* rushes, 496; Braydis him vp (Brades up), springs up, 842; Brayd, *pt. s.* drew, 274. See Braidis.
Brayne, brain, 4002; (Brane), 2645; Braynes, *pl.* 1419.
(Brayne-pan), *s.* cap, hat, headpiece, 2499; (Brayn-pan), 1713.
Brayne-wode, mad in the brain, 4506.
Bre, *ger.* to frighten; To bre hire o bourde, to frighten her in jest, 462; Breis, *pr. s.* terrifies, 4837; Breed, *pt. s.* terrified, 4741. A.S. *brégan*, to terrify; from *bróga*, terror. '*Bree*, to frighten, North'; Halliwell.
Bred, *in phr.* Bred-full, i. e. brimfull, 4089. Swed. *brädd*, brim; *bräddfull*, brimful. See Bretfull.
Brede, *pr. pl.* breed, 4199; Bred, *pt. pl.* bred, 4782; Thyn bred, *pp.* thinly grown, 320.
Brede, *s.* breadth, 3856, 4070, 5433; (Brede), 1502, 2118; O brede, in breadth, 3065, 3833. A.S. *brǽdu.*

Bredid, *pp.* scattered abroad, dispersed, lit. made broad, 2447. See Brad, Braidis.
Breed, *pt. s.;* see Bre.
Breede, *s.* breadth, 5460. See Brede.
Brefe, *s.* letter, 1717, 1906, 2749; (Breue), 1956; (Breve), 3118. "*Bref*, a briefe, note, short writing;" Cotgrave. See Breue.
Brefe, *adj.* speedy, quick in action, 5435. Cf. '*brief* in hand' in Shak. K. John, iv. 3. 158, which Schmidt explains by 'must be speedily dispatched.' Jamieson gives '*brief*, keen,' as in use in Upper Clydesdale.
Brefe, *v.* describe, 256; briefly state, 4448; *ger.* to record, 208; Brefe, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* appoint, 4503. Icel. *brefa*, to give a brief account of; from Lat. *breuiare*. See Breue.
Breggis (Abreggez), *pr. s.* abridges, shortens, 3289. *Short for* Abreggis.
Breis, *pr. s.* frightens, 4837. See Bre.
Breke, 1 *pr. s.* disclose my opinion, 2601; Brekis, *pr. s.* breaks, 787; (Brekys), 1230. *Break*, to disclose or open one's mind, occurs in Shakespeare; cf. *breaking*, disclosure, Antony, v. 1. 14.
Breke, *s.* breeks, breeches, 3842. A.S. *bréc*, pl. of *bróc*.
Breme, *adj.* glorious, bright, 5262; fierce, 610, 787*, 2146, 4001; furious, 3038, 4147, 4839; sharp, 5558. A.S. *bréme*, illustrious; and see Mätzner.
Bremely, *adv.* fiercely, 767, 1398, 3880; (Bremly), 2619; Bremely, sternly, 969; severely, 3913; angrily, 1413, 1805; quickly, 1827, 5155; Bremly, extremely, 3960.
Brene, *ger.* to burn, 606; Brenes, *pr. s.* 1037; Brent, *pt. s.* burnt, 4762; Brent, *pp.* burnished, 3696, 4913; Brend (Brent), burnished, 1713. See Brin.
Breneid, *adj.* cuirassed, armed with a 'birnie' or breastplate, 66. See Brenys.
Brenke, *s.* brink, bank of a river, 4741; edge of a dike, 699. See Brinkis.
Brent, *adj.* steep, 4812. See Brant.
Brenys, *pl.* 'birnies,' coats of mail, 1247, 2980; (Brenes), 2214; (Brynnes), 2622; (*used for the sing.*) Brenys (Brenes), a cuirass, coat of mail, 915; Breneis (Brenes), coat of mail, 1295. Icel. *brynja*, A.S. *byrne*.
Brerys (Breres), *pl.* briars, 2985.
Brest, *s.* breast, 224, 932, 970, 841*; (Briste), 1599; Brestis (Brestes), 2162. See Brist.
Breste, *s.* breast, 4097. (Prob. an error for *beste*, beast.) See Cowdrife.
Brestes, *pr. s.* bursts, 728*; Brest, *pt. pl.* burst, 5221; Brest, *pp.* broken, 2645. See Brosten.
Bretage (Britage), *s.* battlement, parapet, 1416. "*Bretesche*, *Bretesque*, a port, or portall of defence in the rampire or wall of a towre;" Cotgrave. "*Bretage*, a parapet;" Halliwell. See Britage.
Bretagid (Britagett), *pp.* fortified with wooden towers, 1152. See above.
Bretayn, Britain, 5668.
Bretens, *pr. s.* breaks, batters, 1307; Brettens, cuts in pieces, 3197; Brettenes, beats down, 5612; Bretned (Brityned), *pt. pl.* cut to pieces, 1263; Bretind, *pt. pl.* 3905 (See Alto-); Breten, *pr. s. subj.* may break in pieces, 3294; Brettend, *pp.* defeated, 5311; Bretind (Bryttynyd), beaten down, destroyed, 2479; Bretened (Bryttynett), *pp.* killed, 1328. Cf. A.S. *brytnian*, to dispense, distribute; *bryttian*, to dispense, allied to Icel. *brytja*, to chop. See Bretted.
Bret-full, *adj.* brimful, 1548; Brettful, 4868. See Bred.
Breth, *s.* breath, 970, 1274, 3233, 5583.
Brethand, *pres. part.* breathing, smelling, 4809. Cf. A.S. *brǽð*, an odour.
Brethire, *pl.* brothers, 2512, 5363.
Bretted (Brytynd), *pp.* broken to pieces, 2256; (Bryttynd), destroyed, 2697. Icel. *brytja*, to chop, from *brjóta*, to break; Swed. *bryta*, to break. See Bretens.
Breue, *s.* brief, letter, 1181. See Brefe.
Breue, *ger.* to describe, 1374; Breues, *pr. s.* speaks, 984; (Brevys), utters, 3251; Breuys, *pr. s.* utters, 462; (Breues), 1797; Breue, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* mean, indicate, 1898; Breuyd, *pp.* recorded as being, noted, 1172; Breued, *pp.* described, 35; assigned, 749*; Breueyd (Breuet), recorded, 764; Breue, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* tell, 2285. See Brefe.
Brid, *s.* bird, 411, 503, 4982; Briddis, *pl.* 252, 4435, 4782; Bridis, 5603; (Birdes), 1532.
Brid, *s.* bride, 5204; (Birde), bride, 854; spouse, 3104; Brides, *pl.* wives, 4046; Bridis, women, 4125.
(Bridyll), bridle, 789*.
Brig (Brigg), bridge, 2587.
Brigge, *ger.* to abate, mitigate, lit. abridge, 3803. *Short for* Abrigge.
(Brightfull), *error for* Bretfull, 1548. See Bretfull.
Brilles, *pl.* beryls, 5135. Cf. F. *briller*, to shine, which is derived from a sb. *brille**, a beryl (Littré).
Brin, *ger.* to burn, 3137; *v.* 3682; (Bryn), 2658. See Brene, Bryn.
Bring, *v.* bring, 1199; *ger.* to carry, 1715; (Bring), *v.* 2101; Bringes (Brynges), *pr. s.* brings, 927; Bringis (Bringes), 1653.
Brinkis, *pl.* brinks, shores, 4377. See Brenke.
Brist, *s.* breast, 2871. See Brest.
Brist, *s.* want, need, 3819. Swed. *brist*, want, need, failure; A.S. *byrst*, loss, defect. In this line & = than; the sense is, 'more for the harm of their beasts than their own need.' See *burst* in Mätzner.
(Bristes), *pr. s.* bursts, 872. See Brestes.
Bristils, *adj.* bristly, 4746. A false form; *read* And had bristils.
(Britage), *s.* fortification, parapet, 1301. See Bretage.
(Britens), *pr. s.* destroys, 1037. See Bretens.

Brixsill, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* reproach, upbraid, blame, 4662. Icel. *brigzli*, s. shame, blame; *brigzla*, to upbraid.
Briȝt, *adj.* bright, 276, 427, 559, 604; fair, 466; *as s.* bright one, 5204; (Bright), 1524, 1715; (Bryght), 2337.
Briȝtens (Bryghtyns), *pr. s.* brightens, renders clear, 3357.
Broches (Brochez), *pr. s.* spurs, 2892; Brochis (Brochez), 2974; (Brochys), pricks, 1317; (Brochen), *pr. pl.* pierce, 787. F. *brocher*.
Brode, *adj.* broad, 1898; (Brode), 1553. See Brade.
Brode, *s.* child, lit. brood, 1929.
(Broke); see Broweke.
Broken (Brokyn), *pp.* broken, 1223, 1349.
Brolle, *s.* child, brat, 1928. See Gloss. to P. Plowman.
Bront, *s.* brunt, 783.
Brosten (To-bristen, *pr. pl.*), *pp.* broken, 789. See Brestes.
Brothire, *s.* brother, 5355; Brothirs, *gen.* 5344.
Browden, *pp.* braided, woven, twisted, 1524; Browde, 4913. A.S. *brogden*, pp. of *bregdan*, to braid.
Browe, *s.* brae, steep bank, 4837.
Broweke (Broke), *v.* possess, use, enjoy, 3412. A bad spelling; read *browke*.
Broȝt, *pt. s.* brought, 974; (Broght), 3118; Broȝt (Broght), *pp.* 48, 727, 1228; (Broghtyn), 3158.
Brunt, *s.* sudden blow; At a brunt, on a sudden, 3934. See Bront.
Brusche (Broush), *s.* conflict, sudden rush, swift movement, 783; (Brush), 2133.
Bruschis (Brushes), *pr. s.* hastens, hurries, 1222, 1426; Brusches (Brushys), flings himself, 963.
Brym, *s.* shore, 5557. A.S. *brymme*.
Brym, *s.* river, 4080. A.S. *brim*, wave, surf, sea.
Brym, *adj.* fierce, 496. See Breme.
Brymly, *adv.* fiercely, 1222, 1333, 5451. See Bremely.
Bryn, *ger.* to burn, 4856; Brynt, *pt. s.* burnt, shone, 5648; (Brynt),

pt. pl. burnt, 2474; Brynnand, *pres. part.* burning, shining, 2639; Brynt, *pp.* burnished, 276, 2926; Brynd (Brynt), burnt, 2697. See Brin, Brene.
(Bryn), *s.* burn, mark made by a brand, 751*.
Bryng furth, *v.* bring forth, 526; Bryngis (Bringez), *pr. pl.* bring, 1207.
(Bryssyt), *pp.* bruised, broken, harmed, 2645; Bryssid (Bresyd), bruised, *hence* broken in, much experienced, 1003. See *brusen* in Mätzner.
(Bryttynd), *pp.* broken to pieces, 3294; destroyed, 2697. See Bretens.
Bucifalon, Bucephalus, 5582; (Bucifelon), 1316; (Bucyfall), 3178; Bucifelon, 3648; Bucifal, 3031.
Bud, *pt. s. impers.* it behoved, 3793; Bud, *pt. s. subj.* would behove, 3274. See Bus.
Buke, *s.* book, 17, 35, 192, 203, 881, 916; (Boke), book, i. e. Romance, 1371, 1570.
Bule, *s.* bull, 4527; Bules, *pl.* 3903; Se-bules, sea-bulls, 3846.
Bulle, *s.* writing, record, 4448.
Bullok, *s.* bullock, 4527.
Bunden, *pp.* bound, 3602, 5540; firmly settled, 5581.
Burde, *s.* sport, play, 2500.
Burde, *s.* board, plank, 1340; (Borde), table, 2969.
Burde, *pt. s.* behoved, 510, 1966; (Burd), ought, 776*; Burde, *pt. s. subj.* should prove to be, 4396. Icel. *byrja.*
Burdeux, Bourdeaux, 5668.
Burgaige, *s.* burgesses, people of the borough, 5221. See *bourgage* in Cotgrave.
Burgh, *s.* city, 1559, 5243; Burgis, *pl.* boroughs, 4431; Burghes (Burges), towns, 1078.
Burly, *adj.* burly, great, 4096, 4742; (Borely), 2632. See Borely.
Burne, *s.* burn, brook, 3062. See Bourne.
Burneschid, *adj.* burnished, 55.
Burnet (Burnett), brown stuff, 1569. "*Brunette*, fine black cloth;" Cotgrave. Orig. a *brown* cloth; F. *brun.*
Burȝe, *s.* town, borough, city, 218, 3746, 5415; Burȝ, 147; (Burgh), 928, 1037; (Burght), 1380, 2148; Bu[r]ȝe (Burgh), 2256, 2673; Burȝes (Burghes), 2337; (Burghez), 1446.
Burȝe-walles (Burgh-walles), *pl.* town-walls, 2246; Burȝe-wallis (-walle, *sing.*), 1297.
Bus, *pr. s. impers.* it behoves, 3354; (Buse), 3358; Buse, 1808. See Bos, Bud. *Short for* Behofis.
Busche, *s.* bush, 3920.
Buschels, *pl.* bushels, 4241.
Busifolen, Bucephalus, 749*. See Bucifalon.
Buske, *ger.* prepare, 373; *v.* get ready, deck, 1511; (Buske), *v.* go, 2195; Buske þe, *v.* prepare thyself, 2908; Buske hym, *v.* prepare himself, 3126; Buskis (Buskes), *pr. s.* puts, 1506; (Buskes hym), gets ready, 811*; arrays himself, 1295; Buskis (Buskez), goes, 1306; Buskis (Buskes), *pr. pl.* prepare, make ready, 774; (Buskys), *pr. pl. refl.* prepare themselves for, get themselves ready for, 2452; Buske, 2 *pr. pl. subj.* if (ye) come, if (ye) advance, 3752; Busked (Buskett), *pt. s.* prepared, 2676; Buskid, *pp.* made ready, 3609; (Busked), arrayed, 2214. Icel. *búa-sk*, to prepare oneself.
(Buske), *s.* bush, stick, 1340; Buskis, *pl.* bushes, 2851.
Buskest, *adj. superl.* readiest (?), 1247. (*But prob. an error for* Busket, *pp.* arrayed; see Buske). Cf. Lowl. Sc. *buskie*, fond of dress.
But, *prep.* without, 1678, 3378; (Bout), 1340; Butt, 2380.
Butlers (Botlers), *pl.* butlers, 2934.
Buwne (Bowne), *ger.* to go, lit. get ready, set out, 1511. See Boun.
Buxsom, *adj.* obedient, consenting, 323; (Buxme), obedient, 2805; (Buxum), 786*.
Buȝes (Bownes), *pr. s.* turns, lit. bows, bends, 1181. See Bowe.

Buȝes (Bowez), *pl.* boughs, 2985. See Bowis.
By, *prep.* by, 54, 250, 253; near, beside, 482, 681, 769*; (Be), by reason of, for, 921. See Be.
(Byd), *v.* offer, 1891.
(Byde), *ger.* to dwell, 966; Bydis (Bydes), *pr. s.* abides, sits, 2963; Bydis (Abydez), *pr. pl.* wait for, 1116.
Bydene, *adv.* forthwith, 2699. See Bedene.
(Bydome), *error for* Beden, *pt. pl.* bade, advised, 2656.
(Byforne), *prep.* before, 770*.
(Byggyd), *pt. s.* set up, 2673; *pp.* built, 1161.
(Byheld), *pt. s.* saw, 780*, 1600.
Byi, *ger.* to buy, 4359.
(Byliue), *adv.* soon, 857. See Beliue.
Bynde, *v.* bind, 4762, 5516; (Bynd), *ger.* 2852; Bynd, *ger.* 3432.
Bytand, *pres. pt. as adj.* sharp, biting, 122, 446.

Caban, *s.* cabin, tent, 4775; Cabayne, 5173; Cabons, *pl.* 4177.
Cablis (Cablys), *pl.* cables, ropes, 2599.
Cacany, *Lat.* Cathomi, 5489.
Cache, *v.* take, assume, 2417; *ger.* to gain, 4872; Cachis (Cachez), *pr. s.* goes, marches, 1049; (Caches), gathers together, 2134; Cache, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* catch; Cache vp þine hert, regain thy courage, 470; Caches (Kachez), *imp. pl.* take, 2564.
(Cafe), *s.* cave, hollow, 730*.
Caffare, *error for* Chaffare (*as shewn by the alliteration*), *s.* chaffer, traffic, intercourse, 4603.
Caggis (Cachez), *pr. s.* draws, fastens, 1521. See numerous examples in Mätzner of *caggen*, to bind, fasten.
Caire (Care), *ger.* to go, 1688, 1832; Caire, *ger.* to go, to cross, 2588; Caire, *v.* return, 3507; Caire (Cayre), *v.* return, travel back, 3418; Caire, 1 *pr. s.* go, 2280; come, 1878; Cairis (Cares), *pr. s.* goes, walks, 859; Cairys, goes, 5173; Caires (Carys), goes, 953; (Carez), 1038; Caires, comes, 3964; returns, 3962; Cairis, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 3008; Caires (Cairen), *pr. pl.* go, 887; Cairis (Caires), go, 900; Caired, *pt. pl.* went, 2402; Caire, *imp. s.* turn, return, 3562; Caire (Carez), go thou, 1501; Caires (Cayrez), let them retreat, 3414; Caires, *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* go ye, 889. Cf. Icel. *keyra*, to prick on, urge, drive. See Kaire, Cares.
Caitefe (Catef), *adj.* caitiff, vile, 1775.
Caitefe, *s.* caitiff, wretch, 3078; Caiteffe, 3562. See Caytefe.
Cait[if]este (Catyfest), *adj.* most caitiff, vilest, 1707.
Calabree, Calabria, 5671.
Calcidoynes, *pl.* chalcedonies, 5274.
Cald, *adj.* cold, 1599, 4928; (Cold), 3169.
Calde, Chaldea, 5669; Caldec, 90.
Caldipol (Cadypolez), *a city*, 2151.
Calistride (Lat. Talifrida), queen of the Amazons, 3711, 3721, 3778.
Calke, *v.* calculate, 673.
Call, *v.* call, name, 618; (Calle), call, 1479, 1848; Call, *ger.* 229; (Calle), *ger.* to call upon, 2244; Callis, *pr. s.* calls, 431, 1077; (Calles), 948; Calls, 5224; Cals, 4856; Callis, 2 *pr. s.* 1871; Cald, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* called, 3195; Callid, *pt. s.* 559; Callyd, *pt. pl.* 2138; Callid (Callyd), *pp.* called, 1046, 1903; summoned, 5198; Caled (Callyd), called, 823; Cald, *pp.* called, said to be, 1820; reckoned, 3908.
Calodone (Calydon), Chalcedon, 1028; (Calidon), 1038.
Calodoyns (Calodons), *pl.* men of Chalcedon, 1032.
Calues, *pl.* calves, 3892; *gen.* of calves, 4476.
Cambs, *pl.* combs, 5130.
Camels, *pl.* camels, 2769.
Camlyn, *s.* camlet, the name of a stuff, 4340.
Camour, *Lat.* Cemarre, 5489.
Can, *pr. s.* 1 *p.*; Can noȝt þare-on, cannot agree to that, 3507; can bear, endure, 832; know, 260,

685; Can, *pr. pl.* can, 248, 250. See Kan.
Candace, *prop. name*, 5090, 5105, 5177, 5245, 5263, 5281.
Candill, candle, 4230.
Candilstickis (Candelstyke), *pl.* candlesticks, 1571.
Candoyle, Candaules, 5092; Candoile, 5148, 5159; Candele, 5419.
Canony, *a country*, 5669.
Can[o]pe, *s.* canopy, 5266.
Cantelle, *s.* portion, 4514. *Cantle* in Shakespeare.
Capadose, Cappadocia, 742*; Capados (Capadoce), 2761; Capidos, 90, 5669.
Cape, *s.* cope, vault, 1537, 1755, 1871; (Cope), 2368.
Capho Resey (Chaipho rosey), *a place-name*, 1077. See note.
Captayns, *pl.* captains, 3590.
Capyll, horse, 754*.
Caraptus, *prop. name*, 5094.
Caratros, *prop. name*, 5337, 5343, 5364, &c.
Carayne, *s.* carrion, 4524. See Carion.
Carcas, carcase, 4524.
Care, *s.* anxiety, 149, 166, 349, 1104, 3508, 4013; trouble, 5608; sorrow, 3239.
Care (Kare), *imp. s.* be anxious, care, 2815.
Carefull, *adj.* mournful, 3869; (Carfull), sorrowful, 1815.
Careles, *adj.* free from anxiety, 405.
Cares hym, *pr. s.* betakes himself, turns, goes, 730*; Carez, goes, 768*. See Caire.
Carid (Cared), *pp.* cared, 1461.
Carion, *s.* carcase, 5587; Carions, *gen.* body's, 4357; Cariouns, *pl.* carcases, 4455. See Caryon, Carayne.
Carpe, *s.* speech, talk, 3500, 3929, 4566, 5011; relation, 3112; meaning, 1794; story, tale, 3469; Carpe (Carpyng), *s.* speech, saying, message, 2346; speech, 748; story, 1455; decision, 1023.
Carpe, *v.* talk, say, 592; Carpe, *ger.* 8; Carpis, 2 *pr. s.* speakest, 100; (Carpys), 2911; Carpis (Carpez), *pr. s.* speaks, 860; *miswritten* Crapis (Carpes), 833, 2490; *pr. pl.* speak, 1604; Carps, *pr. s.* says, 5367; Carpid, 1 *pt. s.* spoke, told, 3058; 2 *pt. s.* spakest, 234; *pt. s.* spoke, 230; Carped, *pp.* 108. Cf. Icel. *karpa*, to boast.
Carpentaris (Carpenters), *pl.* carpenters, 1117; Carpentars, 4205.
Carryg (Carrak), *s.* carrack, carrick, barge, 3376; Carrygis, *pl.* 63. "*Carraque*, the huge ship termed a carricke;" Cotgrave.
Cartes, *pl.* carts, cars, 3058.
Carte-wise, chariot-wise, 3629.
Cartros, Caratros, 5353. See Caratros.
(Carye), *put for* Cayre, *ger.* to go, cross, 2588. See Caire.
Caryn þaim, *pr. pl.* return, 3110. See Caire.
Caryon, *s.* carcase, body, 4687. See Carion.
Cas, *s.* case, 282; event, 940; chance, 292, 405, 719; (Case), circumstance, 2350, 2641; way, means, 1362; luck, 2163; (Cause), chance, 1104; Case, circumstance, 671, 848, 1464; misfortune, 401; Cases, *pl.* things, circumstances, 3727.
Caspy, Caspian Sea, 3705.
Cast, *s.* throwing, casting, 1302; Castis (Castez), *pl.* plans, 1764. See Kast.
Cast, *ger.* to cast, 5155; *v. refl.* endeavour, 4671; Castis, *pr. s.* casts, 5587; (Castes), plans, 1361; (Kest), throws, 1537; Castes, casts, 1997; Castis, *pr. pl.* cast, 163. See Kast, Kest.
Castans (Castanez), *gen.* of a chestnut; Of castans hewes, of the colour of a chestnut, 1086; (Castans), *gen. sing.* of the chestnut, of chestnut colour, 1537. See Kastand.
Castell, *s.* castle, 1152, 2266, 3602, 5263; Castels, *pl.* 4442; Castells (Castellys), 3414.
(Castell-ȝarde), castle-yard, 768*.
Castite, *error for* Chastite, *s.* chastity, 4603.
(Castor), *prop. name*, 766*.
Cauatise, covetousness, 4562.

Cauels, *pl.* fragments, 799. Icel. *kafli*, a piece, bit.
Caues, *pl.* caves, 4020, 4049; Cauys, 4354.
Caulus, *proper name*, 1229, 4907.
Cause, cause, 577, 848, 921; cause, plea, side (in the dispute), 3993.
Caused (Causyd), *pt. s.* made, 3278.
Causles, *adj. as adv.* without a cause or reason, unreasonably, 3190; Causeles (Causles), 1817.
Cayrayne (Caryon), *s.* carrion, 3255. See Carayne.
Caytefe (Catyff), *s.* wretch, 3278; Caytefes (Catyffez), *pl.* wretches, 1754. See Caitefe.
Caȝt, *pt. s.* took, 5212. See Kaȝt.
Cecile (Cesyll), Sicily, 2103.
Cedres, *pl.* cedars, 5237.
Cellis, *pl.* cells, 4024.
Cerastis, *prop. name*, 916.
Certayn, *adv.* certainly, 326; Certayne, 1101; For certayn, 183.
Certifi, *v.* certify, 250; Certified (Certyfyed), *pt. s.* informed, 2774.
Certis, *adv.* certainly, 4360.
Ceyle; see Sele.
Chace, *s.* chase, 3057, 4736.
Chache, *v.* catch, seize hold of (one), 1804; Chach, catch, derive, 4227; Chacches (Chakez), *pr. s.* brings together, 1281; Chache (Cache), *imp. s.* receive, 748.
Chaffe, *or* Chasse, 468. It seems to mean 'great heat,' or 'a chafing-dish,' from F. *chauffer*, to heat, chafe. Or *chasse* may mean a jewel case of *red* gold. See Chasse.
Chaiere, *s.* chair, 5515; Chaiare, 493.
Chalang, *v.* challenge, claim, 4388; (Chalynge), claim, 1848.
Chalk-quite (Chalke-white), white as chalk, 1584; Chalke-quyte, 468; *miswritten* Shalk-quyte (Chalke-white), 1562.
(Chaltird), *pp.* 746*. Sense unknown; the sense required is 'tightly bound,' with reference to the horse's jowl.
Chambre, chamber, 53, 111, 151, 358; (Chamer), 944; (Chaumbre), 1762; (Chawmbre), 1113, 1181; Chambres (Chaumbres), *pl.* chambers, 2979.
Chambirlayn (Chamerlayn, *MS.* chamernlayn), chamberlain, 1584.
Champe, *s.* field, meadow, plain, 4719; space in which the gems were set, 3677.
Chance, *s.* chance, accident, 144; (Chaunce), chance, 2788; Chanche misfortune, 403.
Chance (Chaunce), *pr. s. subj.* (if) it befall, 1882; Chansid, *pt. s.* happened, 4801.
Changis, *pr. s.* changes, 120, 382; (Chaungez), 1851; Changis (Changes), 2 *pr. s.* changest, 831; Changid, *pt. s.* changed, 377, 466; (Chaungett), 1119; Changand, *pres. part.* changing, 3271, 3687.
Chape, *ger.* to escape, 2788; Chapid, 1 *pt. pl.* escaped, passed, 4215.
Chaplayne (Chapelayn), chaplain, 1584.
Chaplets, *pl.* chaplets, garlands, 3687.
Charbocle, carbuncle, 4900; Charbocles, *pl.* carbuncles, 5647; Charbokles, 3677.
(Chare), *s.* chariot, 822*.
Charge, *s.* amount, lit. weight, 403; Chargis, *pl.* loads, 5598; Charges (Charge), commands, 2660.
Charge, 1 *pr. s.* charge, command, 1918; Charge[s], (Chargez), *pr. s.* charges, enjoins, 1194; Chargid, *pt. pl.* loaded, 5632; Chargid, *pp.* covered, 4719; Charge, *imp. s.* care for, mourn, 866.
(Chariott), *s.* chariot, 802*; Chariotis, *pl.* chariots, 3021, 3057.
Charme, *s.* charm, incantation, 343.
Chasse, *s.* 5647. One sense of F. *chasse* is 'a shrine for a relick' (Cotgrave); Lat. *capsa*. Here 'as a *chasse*' may mean 'as big as a box,' or 'as big (or as red) as a jewel-case.' See Chaffe.
Chasteand, *pres. pt.* correcting (*but here apparently used in the sense of* provoking), 4607. O.F. *chastier*, to chastise, correct, amend.
Chater, *v.* chatter, gabble, mutter, 115; (Chaterand), *pres. pt.* talking, 824*.

Chatrid, *pp.* filled, filled quite full (?), 4900. A doubtful word; cf. *chokkefull* in Morte Arthure, 1552.
Chauele, 4924. Indistinct in the MS. Perhaps we should read *chanele*, which we might explain as 'hoary,' or 'whitened with age.' Cf. O.F. *chanes*, white hair, *chanuer*, to turn white, said of the hair; from Lat. *canus*, hoary.
Chaufe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* warm, chafe, 4287; Chawfis, *pr. s.* chafes, 3519.
Chaufing (Chawfyng), *s.* heat, 2545.
Chaumbres, *pl.* chambers, 5601.
Chaunce, *s.* chance, good fortune, 4388; Opon chaunce, perchance, 5609.
(Chaungez), *pr. s.* changes, 1854; Chaungid, *pt. pl.* changed, i. e. turned sad in look, 5609.
Chaunses (Chauncez), *impers. pr. s.* befalls, happens to, 1036.
Chauyls, *pl.* jaws, 3696, 4984; Chaviles, 3632; (Chauelez), 746*. A.S. *ceaflas*, jaws.
Chawfis; see Chaufe.
Chaye, *s.* (*perhaps*) company, assembly, 3349. Roquefort gives O.F. *chaye*, company, assembly. The sense may thus be: 'an amethyst, which all the company consider rich (so says the romance), and, as for rankness of wines, it lets no drunkenness hurt them, viz. the men who bear it.' As to the virtues of the amethyst, see the note.
Cheele, *s.* chill, cold, 4164. See Chele.
Chefe, *adj.* chief, 115, 440, 493; excellent, 343; large, 3677.
Chefe, *s.* chief, chieftain, 440.
Chefe, *adv.* chiefly, 363.
Chefe, *v.* happen, befall, 403; (Chefyd), *pp.* achieved, 2712. See Gloss. to Troy-Book.
Chefely, *adv.* especially, 2660.
(Chefest), *adj.* chiefest, largest, 1985.
Cheffire, *adj. comp.* chiefer, superior, 4801.
Cheke, *s.* check, resistance, defence, 4801; Chekis (Chekez), *pl.* checks, victories, 3098.
Chekis, *pl.* cheeks, 3942, 4984; (Chekez), 2782; (Chekys), cheeks, face, 1747.
Chele, *s.* chill, 2545; Chelis, *pl.* 4287. See Cheele.
Chelous, *adj.* zealous (?), 5446.
Chere, *s.* face, countenance, 468, 743, 5302, 5609; appearance, 375; favour, 368; (Chere), look, 1815.
Chere, *adj.* dear, loving, *hence* bright (?), 5302. A curious use of the word, as if confused with *cheerful*. *Clere* would make better sense.
Cheris, *pr. s.* cheers, 5447.
Cherische, *v.* cherish, 368; Cherischest (*for* Cherischet), *pt. s.* cherished, comforted, 5446; Cherest, *pt. pl.* cherished, 594; Chereschest, *for* Chereschet (Cheryst), *pp.* cherished, made much of, 2562.
Chesboll (Chessebollez, *pl.*), poppy, 1985. "*Hec papauer*, chesbolle;" Wright's Vocab. col. 644, l. 15.
Chese, *v.* choose, 337; (Chose), 1773; (Chese), *ger.* 1178; Chese, 1 *pr. s.* 1020; Chese, *pt. s.* chose, 493; Chese him, chose for himself, 1194; (Chesez hym), chooses for himself, 1194; Chese, *imp. s.* choose, 363, 807*, 4388; Chese (Chesse), *imp. pl.* 1922.
Chese, *pt. s.* went, chose (to go), 5247. A badly selected word; merely introduced for the alliteration. See above.
Chesses, *pl.* seed-pods of a poppy, called *cheeses* from the shape, 1985. See Chesboll.
Cheualous, *adj.* chivalrous, brave, 3608; Cheualus, 655.
Cheualry, *s.* chivalry, 3098; (Chevallry), deeds of chivalry, 2712.
Cheuelere, *s.* hair, 4924. F. *chevelure*.
Cheuer, *adj.* chiefer, superior, 1882.
Cheuys, *pr. s.* achieves to be, 655; Cheues, *pr. pl.* prosper, 2379; Chevyd hym, *pt. s.* there happened to him, 739*; Cheuyd (Chefyd), happened, happened successfully, 2788; Cheued (Chefyd), *pt. s. refl.* achieved, accomplished, 3098; 1 *pt. pl.* arrived, attained, 4215.

F. *chevir*, to compass, &c.; Cotgrave.
Chevalry, cavalry, 816*.
Cheynes, *pl.* chains, 1081, 3681, 4877, 5516; (Chynes), 1565, 2587.
Chidis, *pr. s.* chides, 5319.
Chiere, *s.* face, surface, 4719. O.F. *chiere* is given by Godefroy as a spelling of O.F. *chere*, face. See Chere.
Chiftayne, *s.* chieftain, captain, 3021; Chiftan, 440, 655; Chiftane, 1194. Chiftan (Cheftan), 1036; Chiftans, *pl.* captains, 5446; Chiftanes, 807*, 824*.
Child, *s.* child, 594, 697, 835; knight, 825 (*in* MS. D., *where* A. *has* knyȝt); With child, 393; Child, *gen.* child's, 824*; Childir, *pl.* children, 1017; Childire, 256, 3116, 5576; Childer, 723*; young men, 815*; Childire (Childer), *gen. pl.* children's, 1773; (Chelder), *pl.* children, 2678.
Childhede, *s.* childhood, 4215.
Chill (Chyll), *s.* chill, i. e. frost, ice, 2541. See Chele.
Choll, *s.* cheek, jowl, 746*. E. *jowl*; from A.S. *ceafl*, jaw, cheek, whence M.E. *chaul*, *choll*.
Choppid, *pt. pl.* chopped, cut, 3057; *pp.* hewn, cut, 4736.
Chosely, *adv.* choicely, 594.
Chosen (Chosyn), *pp.* chosen, 1562, 1985; Chosyn, *pp.* chosen, choice, 802*; Chosene, 3786.
Chosest, *adj. superl.* choicest, 337.
Churles, *pl.* churls, savages, 4736.
Chykin, *s.* chicken; Chykin-brid, *s.* young bird, 4984.
Chymmneys, *pl.* fire-places, 4287.
Chynez, *pl.* chains, 746*, 788*. See Cheynes.
(Cipriss), cypress, 790.
Cite, *s.* city, 407, 1118, 1148; (Cyte), 1513; (Cety), 1510; (Site), 1144; Citis (Citez), *pl.* 2104, 2115; (Setez), 1694.
Cite-ward; To þe cite-ward, i. e. toward the city, 2487.
Cithe, *s.* country, 209. (The *c* is hard, as *k*.) See Kithe.
Citizens (Cytezeyns), *pl.* citizens, 3403; (Citesyns), 2199.
Claggid, *pp.* clogged, sticky, 5427. Lowl. Sc. *clag*, to clog.
Clambert, *name*, 5490.
Clame, *ger.* to claim, 4562.
Clame (Clam), *pt. s.* clomb, 2108.
Clamp (Clampe), *s.* pinch, i. e. moment, 3263.
Clappis (Clepys), *pr. s.* clasps, clips, i. e. embraces, 3237; Clappis, 384, 5252.
Clarions, *pl.* clarions, 2617; Clarons (Clarions), 775.
Clathe, *s.* cloth, 4687; Claþe, 141; Clathe (Clath), clothing, garment, 1086; Clathis, *pl.* cloths, 236, 4149; garments, 4960; Clathis (Clathez), clothes, garments, 1498.
Clatirs, *pr. s.* mutters, 412; Clatird, *pt. s.* muttered, 342; *pt. pl.* rattled, 555.
Clause, clause, passage (of the text), 278, 885; story, 1613, 3361; short letter, message, 1794, 1955, 5095.
Clayme (Clame), *v.* claim, 1848.
Clede, *pt. s.* clad, 121; Cled (Clad), 2735; Cled, *pp.* 3693, 4955, 5210.
Clees, *pl.* claws, 5432. A.S. *clés*.
Cleke, *s.* snatch, clutch, 2163.
Clekis, *pr. s.* draws, plucks, 282; snatches, 2937; (Clekez), seizes, 842. See Clyght. Lowl. Sc. *cleik*.
Clene, *adj.* pure, 3822, 4700; good, 259; clear, 1479; fair, 495; bright, 1378; new, 978.
Clene, *adv.* cleanly, 55, 1497; wholly, thoroughly, entirely, altogether, 19, 174, 209, 357, 671, 799, 900, 1023, &c.
Clenly, *adv.* neatly, 1837; wholly, 555, 3904.
Clennest, *adj. superl.* cleanest, purest, brightest, 5289; purest bred, 3775.
Cleopas, Cleophas, 4907.
Cleopatras, Cleopatra, 823, 835.
Clepis, *pr. s.* calls, 534; (Clepys), 1507, 2184, 3117; Clepid (Clepyd), *pp.* 2884. A.S. *cleopian*.
(Clepys); see Clappis.
Clere, *adj.* clear, bright, 28, 259, 282, 1378, 3361; pure, 1571, 1892; fine, 1043; fair, 5090; illustrious, 2692.
Cleres, *pr. s.* becomes clear, becomes

bright, 4374; Clerid, *pt. s.* grew clear, 4815.
Clerest, *adj. superl.* finest, 2372.
Clerete (Clarite), *s.* brightness, 2052; (Clarett, *error for* Clarete *or* Clartee), radiance, 3147. O.F. *clarte.*
Clergi, *s.* learning, skill, 54; Clergy (Clerge), clergy, 1509.
Clerily, *adv.* clearly, 442.
Clerire (Clerar), *adj. comp.* clearer, 2541.
Clerke, learned man, scholar, 39, 121, 231, 370, 398, 514, 1353; poet, 2121; Clerkis, *pl.* 624, (Clerkez), 1549.
Clethe, *v.* clothe, 4706; Cleth, *ger.* 820*; Clethe (Cloth), *ger.* 1775; Clethis, *pr. s.* clothes, 140; Clethe, 2 *pr. pl.* put on clothes, 4670; Clethe (Cleth), *imp. s.* clothe, 2868; Clethid, *pp.* clothed, 4082, 5003; (Clethyd), 1624.
Cletomacus (Clytomacus), Clytomachus, 2252, 2273.
Cleuys, *pr. s.* cleaves, sunders, 4002.
Cleuys (Clefys), *pr. s.* cleaves, sticks, 3377.
Clientis, *pl.* clients, subjects, 3411; attendants, 1549; (Clyentez), servants, 2940.
Cliffe, *s.* rock, cliff, 4825; (Clyff), 775, 3008; Clife (Clyff), 3377; Cliffis, *pl.* (Clyffe, *s.*), 2849.
Clippis (Clepys), *s.* eclipse, 2052. "The *clippys* of the son and moyn, *eclyppsis;*" Cath. Anglicum.
Clochere, *s.* room, apartment, 5289. Cf. E. *closet.* See Closere.
(Clodes), *pl.* clouds, 3081.
Close, *ger.* to enclose, 2206; Closis, *pr. s.* encloses, 5483, 5502; Closed, *pt. s.* enclosed (himself), 3034; Closid, *pp.* enclosed, 3831; (Closyd), wrapped up, 2912; (Closed), enclosed, 1378.
Close, *s.* enclosure, fort, 5266.
Closere, *s.* enclosure, chamber, 5250. See Clochere.
Closettis, *pl.* closets, secret chambers, 153.
Closure, *s.* enclosure, 4890.
(Clothez), *pl.* cloths, 1515. See Clathe.
Cloud, 5241. The sense is incomplete; probably parts of one or two lines are omitted.
Cloude, *s.* stone, rock; *or adj.* rocky, 4863. A.S. *clúd*, stone, rock; *clúdig*, rocky. (Or it may be short for *clouded*, covered with clouds.)
Cloudis, *pl.* clouds, 555; (Clowdez), 2108.
Clouen, *pp.* cloven, 4830, 5432.
Cloȝes, *pl.* cloughs, ravines, *but used in the sense of* cliffs, 4863. So in Morte Arthure, 941.
Cluster (Clostre), *s.* cluster, heap, 1438.
Clustird, *pp.* clustered, 978; Clustert, 5249; Clustrid, 3668, 5383; thickly set, 2396.
Clyentis, *pl.* vassals, retainers, 3195. See Clientis.
(Clyftez), *pl.* cloven bits, splinters, 799.
(Clyght), *pt. s.* snatched, 2937. Pt. t. of *cleke;* see Clekis.
Clym, *ger.* to climb, ascend, 3353, 4399; Clyme, *v.* 1440.
Clyne (Incline), *v.* incline, bend, 1901.
Clynt, *s.* rock, crag, cliff, 4830. Icel. *klettr*, a crag; Swed. *klint*, top of a mountain; Dan. *klint*, a cliff.
Clynterand, *pres. part.* forming crags, craggy, 4863. See above.
Cocards, *pl.* foolish people, 4472. *Coquard*, "a proud gull, peart goose, quaint fop, saucy doult;" Cotgrave.
Cocatrices, *pl.* cockatrices, 3961; Cocatricesse, 4199; Cocatryse, *gen. sing.* cockatrice's, 3895.
Cocken, *pr. pl.* strive, contend, fight like cocks, 2042; Cock, 1 *pr. pl.* dispute, 3311; Cockid, *pp.* contended, fought, 4013. A word borrowed from the sport of cock-fighting. See Cokke.
Coddis, *pl.* pillows, 4916. "A cod, *ceruical, puluinar;*" Cath. Anglicum.
Cofyre, coffer, chest, 807*; Cofirs, *pl.* 4035; (Coffers), 3280.
Cogill-stane, *s.* cobble-stone, round stone, 3895. O.Du. *kogel*, a globe, sphere, bullet; Hexham.

Cointe, *adj.* quaint, curious, 4275. O.F. *cointe.*
Cokke (Cok), 1 *pr. s.* contend, fight, 3169. See Cocken.
Cole, *adj.* cool, 2541, 3800.
Cole, *s.* cold water, 5506; cold sea, 5534. Merely the above adj. used as a sb. See two more examples in Mätzner. We still say, 'the *cool* of the evening.'
Cole, *s.* coal, 606; Colis (Colez), *pl.* coals, 2247.
(Colettes), *pl.* acolytes, 1549. "Colytte, *accolitus;*" Prompt. Parv. See Way's note.
Colkins, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost gasp (?), dost gulp (?), 5323. Cf. l. 5320. Cf. O.Du. *kolcken*, 'to swallowe or to gulfe in,' Hexham; Dan. *kulke*, to gulp.
Collt (Colt), *s.* colt, 2881. See Coltis.
Color (Colour), colour, 3370; (Colour), 1086.
Coltis, *pl.* colts, 3775. See Collt.
Coltris, *pl.* 3794. Prob. an error for *coltris* = *cokatris*, i.e. cockatrices. See Cocatrices.
Colwers, *pl.* adders, snakes, 3794. F. *couleuvre*, O.F. *coluevre*, an adder; Lat. *colubra.*
Comande, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* commend, 3313, 5620; Comaunde, 5106; Comand (Comaund), 2778. See Comendid.
Comandis, *pr. s.* commands, 1117; (Comandes), 1381; (Commandes), 2283; Comandes, 3448; Comands (Commandez), 1810; (Comand, *pt. s.*), 1475; Comaundis (Commandez), 2213; Comand, *pt. s.* commanded, 821*; (Command), 1177; Comande, 1064; Comandid, *pp.* commanded, 73; Comands (Comand), *imp. pl.* 1832.
Comandment (Commaundement), commandment, 1192.
(Comber), *pr. s. subj.* vex, 1480; Combrid, *pt. s. subj.* would embarrass, 1755. E. *cumber.*
Come, *s.* coming, arrival, 54, 456, 1458, 1576, 3188, 3212, 3904, 3952; (Commyng), 1040.
Come, *ger.* to come, 1256, 1362, Com (MS. Con), to come, happen, 292; (Come), *v.* 982; Comes, *pr. s.* comes 78, 940; Coms, 4741; Comes (Comez), 1501; (Commes), 2273; Comys, *pr. s.* comes, suits, 3316; Commes, comes, 768*; Comes, it is becoming, 3974; Comys, *pr. pl.* come, 946; (Comes), 815; Comyn (Come), 983; Come, *pt. s.* came, 144, 503, 696, 882, 5418; it became, befitted, 627; Come, *pt. pl.* came, 815, 885, 905; Come, *pr. s. subj.* may come, 1104; Comen, *pp.* come, 1313; (Commyn), 2002; Come, 578; Comyn, 85, 3564; Comen (Common), 1613; Comen, *pp.* come, descended (from), 2650; Comen doun of, descended from, 3156; Comand, *pres. pt.* coming, 63, 176.
Comendid, *pt. s.* commended, 659; Comend, *pt. pl.* praised, 4015. See Comande.
Comending (Commendyng), *s.* commendation, 2346.
Comensure (Commensour), 2392. Prob. an error for *commentour*, i.e. commentator. Godefroy gives *commenteor*, a commentator.
Comers, *pl.* comers, men who come, 3418.
Comforth, *s.* comfort, pleasure, 8; Comfurth (Comforth), 859.
Comforthis, *pr. s.* comforts, 4155; Comfurthis (Comforthez), 3008; Comfurthid, *pt. s.* comforted, strengthened, 3876; Comfurth (Comforth), *imp. s.* comfort, 3239.
Comliest, *adj. superl.* comeliest, 3887.
Comly, *adj.* comely, 354, 470, 1086, 1621, 1822; (Comle), 1281.
Comly, *adv.* in a comely manner, 456; fittingly, 878.
Comon, *adj.* common, 3895, 5393
Comonly, *adv.* publicly, 108.
Comparrison (Comparison), *s.* comparison, 1721.
Compas, *s.* compass, circumference, 278.
Compas, *v.* contrive, 415; Compas, *pr. s.* compasses, contrives, 1361; Compast, *pp.* fashioned, contrived, 3629; constructed, 3219.
Compere, *s.* peer, equal, 3396.
Comyn, *adj.* common, p. 281, l. 89.
Comyng (Commyng), *s.* coming, 953.

Con (Can), 1 *pr. s.* can, 2837; *as auxiliary verb*, did, 115, 673, 2376; Con plese, pleased, 3697.
Conand, *s.* agreement, 5543. "A conande, *condicio, pactum;*" Cath. Angl.
Concepcion, *s.* conception, 388.
Concience (Conscience), *s.* conscience, 2422, 2577.
Condicion, condition, stipulation, 2652.
Coniurisons, *pl.* incantations, 58, 342. O.F. *conjuroison* (Godefroy).
Connynge, *s.* knowledge, 4227; (Connyng), 1021.
Connyng, *adj.* skilful, 2369.
Conquire, *v.* conquer, 3096; Conquired, *pt. pl.* 209; Conquirid, *pp.* 10, 174.
Conquires, conqueress, female conqueror, 5105, 5169; Conquyres, 3454; Conquirese, 3711, 3721; Conquiris, 3778.
Conquirour, *s.* conqueror, 1501; Conquerour, 815; Conquiroure, 1480.
Consaile (Counsell), *s.* counsel, 832; thought, purpose, 254; Consail, council, 1955; Consaille, counsel, 5359.
Consaile, *ger.* to take counsel, 618; Consals (Councellys), *pr. pl.* advise, 1509; Consall, 1 *pr. pl.* (we) counsel, 3768.
Consayue (Consaue), *v.* conceive, 835; Consaue, *pr. s. subj.* conceive, 3744; Consayued (Consaued), *pt. s.* conceived, contained, 1837; Consayued, *pp.* conceived, 349, 578; Consauyd, 429; Consayued (Consaued), conceived, understood, 2437.
Constreynes (Constraynes), *pr. s.* constrains, 2496; Constrene, *pr. pl.* compel, 4562.
Constru (Constrew), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* infer, 1901; Construed, *pp.* construed, made out, 2437.
Consumed, *pp.* consumed, 894.
Contenance, countenance, 484; demeanour, 2496.
Contrarie, *s.* contrary, 5011; Contrari (Contrary), 2422; Contrare (Contray), 3263.
Contraries (Contrarys) *pr. s.* is contrary to, contravenes, 2205; Contraris, 4323.
Contre, *s.* country, 39; (Cuntree), 1122; Contries, *pl.* 108; Contres (Cuntres), 1056.
Conyschance, *s.* cognisance, 3370; (Conyshaunce), badge, 1128; Conyschaunce (Conysaunce), appearance, 2868; Conyschantis, *pl.* tokens, cognisances, badges, emblems of rank, 193.
Cop, *s.* top, 4890; Coppe, 4789.
Coppis, *pl.* spiders, 3300. Hence E. *cob-web*, i. e. *cop-web*.
Corage, *s.* heart, 2243; courage, 2369; Coragez, *pl.* hearts, courageous thoughts, p. 280, l. 35.
Corageous (Coragiouse), *adj.* courageous, 1892.
Corde (Acord), *v.* consent, agree, 2350; Cordis (Cordes), *pr. s.* accords, agrees, 878; Cordid (Cordytt), *pt. s.* agreed, 2652.
Cordis (Cordez), *pl.* cords, 1521, 2224.
Corecheffe, *s.* kerchief, 5249.
Corne, *s.* corn, 3971; Cornes, *pl.* grains, seeds, 1998, 2070; (Cornez), 2025.
Coronacle, *s.* coronal, circlet, coronet, head-dress, 3451; Coronacles, *pl.* 5130.
Coronals, *pl.* capitals (of pillars), 3665.
Corone, crown, 193; Coron, 1128; (Crowne), crown, chief, 2800; Coroune (Croune), 2283; Corouns, *pl.* crowns, 5423.
Coroned, *pt. pl.* crowned, p. 280, l. 31; Coround, *pp.* 5105.
Coronest, *adj. superl.* most worthy of a crown, chiefest, worthiest, 624; Corounnest (Coroundest), 1910.
Corporall, *adj.* bodily, 4560.
Corrupcion, *s.* corruption, 3255.
Cors, *s.* body, 349, 730*, 1775, 2542, 2933; Corps (Cors), corpse, 3148; Cors, *s.* body, (living) frame, 3987; Corses, *pl.* corpses, bodies, 3129, 3933, 4454.
Coruen, *pp.* carved, 129, 3665; (said of mullions), 4896; Coruyn, 426.
Coruns (Corownez), *pl.* crowns, 1043. See Corone.

Coruptible, *adj.* corruptible, 3459; (Corruptible), mortal, 1878.
Corwaile, Cornwall, 5671.
Corynthi (Corinthy), Corinth, 2266.
Coste, *s.* coast, region, country, province, 1610, 3418, 3590; (Cost), 1028; Cost (Coste), region, 1843; side, 2641; Costis, *pl.* coasts, regions, 4407, 5564; (Costez), 1204; Costes (Costez), sides, 1522.
Costious, *adj.* costly, precious, 3142, 3451, 4180; *put for* Costiousest, most costly, 3330.
Costis, *pl.* ornaments, costly things, 4180.
Costreynes, *pr. s.* constrains, forces, 5053. See Constreynes.
(Cosyn, *for* Chosyn), chosen, 816*.
Cote, cottage, 1804.
Coth (Cothe), disease, 2815. A.S. *cóðu*.
Cotis, *pl.* coats, 5471.
Couaitise, *s.* covetousness, 4399.
Couatus, *adj.* covetous, 4509.
Couatyng (Covetyng), *s.* coveting, desire, 1016.
Coue, *s.* hollow, cove, 5427.
Couent, meeting, assembly, 1576. "A couent, *conuentus;*" Cath. Angl.
Couer, *v.* recover, regain, 520, 5608; *ger.* 2163; Couers, *pr. s. refl.* covers himself, arms himself, 3034; Couert (*for* Couerit), *pt. pl.* gained their way, attained, 4815; Couerd, *pp.* won, lit. recovered, 3714; Couerid (Coueryd), *pp.* won, 1038; Couerd, covered, 5427. See Couir.
Couertours, *pl.* coverings, tent-covers, 4177. "*Couerture*, a covering, apparel, a coverlet;" Cotgrave.
Couet (Couett), *v.* covet, 1754; Couet (Couett), 1 *pr. s.* 690; Couettis, *pr. s.* covets, 3353; (Couates), 2207; Couettis, *pr. pl.* desire, 8; Couett, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* covet, 4442; Couet (Couett), *pt. s.* desired, 2542.
Couir (Couer), *ger.* to recover, gain, get, 1755; Couire, 794; Couir, *v.* attain, 1362; Couirs (Couers), *pr. s.* covers, 1902; (Couerys), 3237; Couird (Couered), *pp.* recovered, 2815. See Couer.
Count, *s.* computation; At a count (*or* At a-count), by computation, 3614.
Countid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* accounted, esteemed, 2501; *pp.* computed, 3338.
Coupe (Cupe, Cope), *s.* cup, 2937, 2940; Coupis, *pl.* 3142, 3702.
Couple (Cowpyll), *ger.* to couple, 828; Couplid, *pp.* 5337.
Couresere, *s.* courser, 5443; Courseris (Coursours), *pl.* 2163.
Courte, *s* court, 78, 4275; Courete, 213.
Couthe, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* knew, 354; (Couth), 685; Couthe, *pt. s.* was able, could, 337; Couth, knew, 43; Couthe (Kowth), *pt. s.* knew, 2555; (Couth), knew how, 835*; Couthe, *pt. pl.* knew, 25; Couth, *pt. pl.* knew, 160; (Couth), could, 1439.
Cowdrife, *adj.* sluggish (Lat. *tarda*), 4097. Lowl. Sc. *caldrife, cauldrife*, cold, slow.
Coynt, *adj.* curiously arrayed, gaily dressed, 4671; Coynte, strange, 412; Coynnt, curious, 5423. See Cointe.
Coyntise, *s.* trick, wile, 5233. Godefroy gives 'ruse' as one sense of O.F. *cointise*.
Coɜrres (*sic*), *pl.* 3822. Evidently a corrupt reading; probably for *coferes*, i. e. coffers, boxes, which gives good sense.
Crabbe-fische, crabfishes, 3892.
Crabbis, *pl.* crabs, 5506.
Crabbis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* vexest, 5323; Crabbid, *pt. s.* made crabbed, angered, vexed, 4566; Crabbid, *pp. as adj.* angry, venomous, 3794.
Craft, *s.* craft, art, 33, 650; skill, 3380; work, dealing, 4953; Craftis, *pl.* crafts, skilful arts, 125, 414; feats, 9; employments, 4037.
Crafti, *adj.* skilful, 3665.
Craggis, *pl.* crags, 4025; Cragis (Craggez), 3375.
Crasid, *pp.* broken, rough, 4830. (MS. *trasid*, wrongly.) See *crasen* in Mätzner.

Craton (Crathan), *s.* a poor creature (?), 3078. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *crat*, puny, feeble; also, as a sb., a weakling. Godefroy gives O.F. *craton*, of which the sense is unknown.
Craue, *ger.* to crave, 4326; (Crauen), to ask, 887; Craue, 2 *pr. pl.* 4442; Craues, *pr. s.* craves, desires, 4497. The last line means—'and every limb craves, as (it) pleases it, according to its own desire.'
Create, *pp.* created, 3390.
Creatour, creature, mortal, 3093; (Creature), creature, 1475, 3281; (Creatur), 1707; Creatours, *pl.* 5534.
Creatoure, creator, 259.
(Credylytt), *pp.* cradled, 1707.
Crepis, *pr. pl.* creep, 4025.
Crest, *s.* crest (of the hill), 4790; crest, 1837; Crestis, *pl.* 3869, 5126.
Crestyns, *pl.* panniers, vessels for carrying food, &c., 4687. O.F. *crestin*, the same as *cretin*, a sort of pannier; Godefroy.
Creuesses, *pl.* crayfishes, 3864. "*Escrevisse*, a crevice, or crayfish;" Cotgrave.
Creuessis, *pl.* crevices, 4199; Creuesse, 4025. "A creuesse, *fissura, rima;*" Cath. Angl.
Crie (Cry), cry, proclamation, 981, 1815, 2154; (Crye), 1604.
Crie (Crye), *v.* cry, proclaim, 2294; *ger.* 1475; Crie (Cry), *ger.* 2252; Cries, *pr. pl.* cry, 2138; Cried, *pt. s.* 491; *pt. pl.* called out, 959.
Cried, *pt. s.* created, 4446, 4519; *pp.* 1707, 3390 (*where* D. *has* Create). O.F. *crier*, to create (Roquefort); Span. *criar*.
Crisopaces, *pl.* chrysoprases, 5274.
Crispe, *adj.* curly, i. e. woolly, 4476.
Cristall, *s.* crystal, 2541, 3221, 5280.
Cristen, *s.* Christian, 3333.
Croft, *s.* croft, small field, 3971.
Croke, *pr. pl.* cross, go sideways, turn aside, 4872.
Crokid, *adj.* crooked, 5423.
Crom, *ger.* to cram, push, 4455; (Cromys), *pr. s.* crams, thrusts, 2937.
Chronaclis (Cronacles), *pl.* chronicles, 940.
Crosse; Ouire crosse, cross ways, diagonally, 4872.
Crossis (Crosez), *pr. s.* crosses, 1049; Crosse (Crossyn), *pr. pl.* cross, go across, 2459.
Croune, *s.* crown, 978; (Crowne), 817; (Corone), 1016; Croune, crown of the head, 121, 231, 639.
Crouned (Crownyd), *pp.* crowned, 2280.
Cruell, *adj.* cruel, 2650.
Cubete, *s.* cubit; Cubete lenth, cubit's length, 3908; Cubettis, *pl.* 3987, 5635; Cubet, *pl.* 3338; Cubetis (Cubettes), 2118.
Cumbre, *ger.* to oppress, lit. to cumber, 4032; (Combred, *for* Combre), *v.* trouble, vex, 1471.
Cu[m]furth, 1 *pt. s.* comforted, 3508.
Cumly, *adj.* comely, 4917. See Comly.
Cunnyng, *s.* knowledge, 4244. See Connynge.
(Cuntre), country, 742*; (Cuntree), 827*. See Contre.
Cupido, Cupid, 4508, 4542.
Cure, *s.* care, anxiety, 3386 (*kyng* is in the *dat.* case); Cures, *pl.* cares, 4275.
Curre, *s.* cur, dog, 1804; Cure, 748.
Curses, *s. pl.* courses, 28.
Cursid, *pp.* cursed, 4509.
Cursoure (Coursour), courser, horse, 2881; Cursoures, *pl.* 3629; Cursours (Coursours), 2621; Cursers, 3024.
(Curtasly), *adv.* courteously, 835*.
Curtassy, courtesy, 5112; (Curtasy), 2718, 2743; Curtaissy, 9.
Curtast (Curtasest), *adj. superl.* most courteous, 2388. Read *curtasest*, as in D.
Curte, *s.* court, 149; (Courte), 887, 900, 981.
Curten, curtain, 860; Curtyns, *pl.* 4916; (Cortyns), 860; Curteyns (Curtaynez), 1521.
Cussis, *pl.* kisses, 5385.
Custum (Costome), *s.* custom, 2946.
Cusus (*for* Curus), Cyrus, 3326; Cusys (Susys), *error for* Curys, i. e. Cyrus, 3219.

Cuthe (Couht), *pt. s.* knew how, could, 1364; Cuthe, 1 *pt. pl.* could, 4216; Cuthe (Couth), *pt. pl.* 1412, 1701.
Cutt (Cutte), *ger.* to cut, 2850; Cutis (Cuttes), *pr. s.* 2599; Cuttis, 3859.
Cyte, *s.* city, 335; (Cyte), 1362, 2110, 2189; Cytes, *pl.* 72.

Daies, *pl.* days, 3462, 5529; Dais, 4814; (Dayes), 1172; (Days), 1024; Daies, *gen. pl.* 4810; On dais, for some days, 1363.
Dale, *s.* dale, valley, 782; Dales, *pl.* 1337.
Daliance, dalliance, pleasure, 1877.
Dam (Dame), *gen.* dam's, 1769. See Dame.
Dam, *s.* dam of a reservoir, the reservoir itself, 3928.
Damac; see Damaske.
Damage, *pr. s.* hurts, 4274.
Damaging (Damagyng), *s.* injury, 1188.
Damaske, Damascus, *or* damask, 4673; Damac (Damask), Damascus, 1141.
Dame, *s.* dame, lady, 322, 459, 3778, 5263; wife, 2678. See Dam.
Damme-borde (Dame-borde), *s.* damboard, sluice-gate, 1857.
Dampnes, *pr. s.* condemns, 2661; (Dampned), *pp.* condemned, 757*.
Damysens, *pl.* damsons, 4738.
Dangell, *or* Daugell, 126. Sense unknown; the reading is probably corrupt.
Dangird (Dangert), *pp.* legally bound, bound under penalty, 1176.
Daniell, Daniel, 1655.
Darid, *pp.* dazed (MS. D. *has* dasyd), 3044. See *darien* in Mätzner.
Darius, 882, 895, 902, 1176, 1188, 1777, &c.; Dari, 2009; (Dary), 1958; Dary, 2005, 2066, 2140, 2144; Darie (Dary), 2607; Darye (Dary), 2663; Darys, 2035, 2058; Daris (Daryus), 2772.
Darke, *v.* lie hid, 4045. See William of Palerne, 17, 1834, 2851, for the phrase 'to *darke* in a den.'
Dartis (Dartez), *pl.* darts, 1299, 1396.
Dart-wondid, dart-wounded, wounded with a dart, 225.
Dasches, *pr. s.* dashes, 3882.
Dased, *pp.* dazed, 3997; (Dasyd), 3044.
Dauncid, *pt. pl.* danced, pranced, 2618.
(Dawes), *pl.* days; (On dawes), in your days, 1766. See Day.
Dawid, *pt. s.* dawned, 3944, 4773. A.S. *dagian*.
Dawyng, *s.* dawning, 431. See above.
Day, *s.* day, 47, 158, 288; life, time, 518, 763*; Daye (Day), 1802; Day, death-day, 1100; Days (Dayes), *gen. sing.* of the day; A litill days, a little of the day, soon, 858; Dayis, *pl.* days, 3955; Days, days (of life), 1112.
Daynte, *s.* novelty, wonderful thing, 5298; dignity, 229. See Deynes.
Dayntefull, *adj.* dainty, delicate, 4274.
Day-raw, *s.* dawn, 392; Day-rawe, 5055. So in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
Debate, *s.* strife, 4404.
Debate, *v.* debate, 5416; Debatis (Debates), *pr. s.* fights, 1217.
(Debates), *error for* Abates, 2506.
Debonar, *adj.* courteous, p. 279, l. 12.
Debonerte, *s.* humility, 3274.
Declare, *v.* declare, 254, 442; Declaris, *pr. s.* declares, 514; (Declares), 1793.
Declines, *pr. s.* hangs down, 5322; (Declynes), bows, 2289; Declynes (Declines), sinks, 2714; Declyne, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* set aside, 4263; Declined, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* crushed, brought down, 2334.
Decre, *s.* decree, decretal, 1583.
Ded (Deth), *s.* death, 1112. See Dede.
Dede, *s.* deed, 313; action, 3545; Dedis (Dedes), *pl.* deeds, 1095, 1863, 2058. See Deyd.
Dede, *adj.* dead, 540, 718, 935, 1166, 1233, 2100, 3130, 3934. See Dee, Deyde.
Dede, *s.* death, 532, 1789, 2661, 3886, 4798; (Deth), 3205. See Ded, Deth.

Dedely, *adj.* mortal, 1877; Dedelike, 4057. See Dedly.
Dedeyne (Disdayne), *s.* disdain, 3155; anger, 2942; (Dysdane), disdain, 2424; (Dysdene), 1711.
Dedly, *adj.* mortal, 2733; (Dedlich), 1879. See Dedely.
Dedly, *adv.* mortally, 1396.
Dee, *ger.* to die, 4055; (Dey), *v.* 720; Dee, 1 *pr. s.* 400; Deed, *pt. pl.* 3069. See Deis.
Deele, *s.* deal, part, 5568.
Deere, *s.* harm, injury, 4235. See Dere.
Defaute, *s.* default, lack of food, want, 2153, 4596.
Defe, *adj.* deaf, 4747.
Defence (*pl.* Defencez), *s.* defence, 1151.
Defend (Defende), *ger.* to oppose, 2139; Defend, *v.* defend, 349; Defendis, *pr. s.* forbids (to keep), 4455; (Defenden), *pr. pl.* defend, 1298; Defend (Defenden, *pr. pl.*), *pt. pl.* (*with* of), kept off, 1406; (Defendyng), *pres. pt.* defending, 1031.
Defendoure, *s.* defender, 429.
Deffirred, *pp.* made to differ, 4223.
Degrayd (Degrad), *ger.* to overcome (Lat. *superare*), 2670; De-grayd (Degradyd), *pp.* degraded, put down, overcome, 3125.
Degre, *s.* degree, rank, 485; (Degree), rank, 3407. See below.
Degre, *s.* step, 3344; Degrece (*for* Degrees), *pl.* steps, stairs, 1183, 3339, 5251; (Degrees), 3216; To degrece, to the steps, 3446; Degreces (*a double plural*), steps, 4878, 4887, 5636.
Deis (Dyes), *pr. s.* dies, 1459; Deid, *pt. s.* 3448, 3471; Deid, *pp.* dead, 3476. See Dee, Dede, *adj.*
Delauyly (Delavy). *adv.* abundantly, 1351. Cf. E. *lavish*. Godefroy gives: "*deslaveement*, à la manière d'un grand lavage."
Dele, *s.* part, portion, 432, 1368, 3475, 4391; (MS. adele), 521; A fewe dele, a small portion, 3703; Grete dele, great deal, 544; Ilk dele, each bit of it, 3493; Neuire a dele (Neuer a dele), never a bit, 2913; Neuer a dele, not at all, 1355. See Deele.
Dele, *ger.* to deal, to give, to impart, 736, 3475, 4058; (Dele), 1015; Dele, *v.* deal, 5032; Dele, 2 *pr. pl.* distribute, 4544; Dele, *pr. pl.* mark out, divide, apportion, 3992; Delt (Deltyn), 1 *pt. pl.* dealt, 2091.
Delingis, *pl.* dealings, 451.
Delite, *s.* delight, 265; Delitis, *pl.* pleasures, nuptial joys, 3743.
Deliteable, *adj.* pleasant, 4303.
Deliuere, *for* Deliuered, *pp.* delivered, 3564.
Delume, *miswritten for* Deluuie, *s.* deluge, 4942. See the note.
Delyte, *pr. pl.* please, 4381.
Delyuire, *ger.* to deliver, 5218; Delyuire (Delyver), *v.* deliver, give; *hence* Let delyuire him, let be delivered to him, 997; Delyuird, *pt. s.* speedily destroyed, 3930; Delyuerd, *pp.* delivered, 548.
Demaunde (Demande), *s.* demand, request, 1096; Demayndes (Demaundes), *pl.* demands, 3411.
Deme, *v.* judge, esteem, 2122; decree, 1260; *ger.* to be considered, 5298; Deme, 1 *pr. s.* deem, consider, 1849; Demes, *pr. s.* represses (Lat. *reprimit*), 3349; (Demys), condemns, 2661; Me demys, judges for me, 4576; Deme, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* account, 4546; (Demys), *pr. pl.* assure, 3069; Demys, *pr. pl.* tell (us), 1231; Deme, *pr. pl. subj.* 2 *p.* decide, 400; Demed, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* decreed, ordered, 2663; *pt. s.* judged, 593; Demed, *pp.* decreed, doomed, 836; (Demyd), doomed, 2164; condemned, 757*; appointed, 98, 313; (Deme), *imp. s.* judge, 735*.
Demerlayke, *s.* magic, jugglery, 414. See *dweomerlak* in Mätzner.
Demyd, *pt. s.* dimmed, 561.
Den, *s.* a den, 1769; Dennes, *pl.* dens, 4045, 4354.
Denys, Dionysius, *but put for* Dionysus, i. e. Bacchus, 3556.
Departid, *pp.* parted, divided, 1941.
Depaynt, *pp.* painted, coloured, 3692; Depayntid, painted, 5305.

Depe, *adj.* deep, 225, 265, 336, 700, 1866.
Depe, *s.* deep, sea, 64; (Depe), 1308.
Depely, *adv.* deeply, passionately, 919; greatly, 1673; heavily, 1698; (Deply), deeply, 1186, 1363, 1396.
Depest (Dyppest), *adj. superl.* deepest, 712.
Depresse, *v.* cast down; Do me depresse, cause me to be slain, 5030.
(Depriues), *pr. s.* deprives, 2311; Depriued (Depriffyd), *pp.* deprived, 2845; Depryued (Depriued), 895; (Deprevett), 1469.
Depurid (Depuryd), *pp.* thoroughly cleansed, 2768.
Dere, *adj.* dear, 1024, 1545; beloved, 479; precious, costly, 1655, 4438; pleasing, 1638; *as sb.* dear one, 265; For dere halde, hold dear, 4421.
Dere, *adv.* dearly, 2122, 5143.
Dere, *adj. comp.* dearer, liefer, 540.
Dere, *s.* harm, 4322, 5554. See Deere.
Dere, *v.* harm, 3351; Deris (Deres), *pr. s.* injures, 2041. A.S. *derian*.
Derely (Derly), *adv.* dearly, earnestly, 2352; (Derely), heartily, 2699.
Dere-worth, *adj.* precious, dear, 3194; (Darworth), worthy, noble, 2679.
Derfe, *adj.* bold, 1958, 2667, 3850; (Derf), 3157; Derfe, presumptuous, 1811; strong, 2140; noble, 2772; steep, huge, 1211; rugged, 3868; severe, 2091, 2424; Derf, mighty, 2489; (Derf), strong, bold, 2607; (Derfe), firm, bold, 1024. A.S. *deorf*.
Derfely (Darfly), *adv.* boldly, angrily, 2942; Derfly, boldly, 3006; (Derfly), 2489; Derfley, strongly, 1406.
Derke, *s.* dark, night, darkness, 4773; (Dirk), 687; (Dyrke), 1505.
Derknes (MS. Dreknes), darkness, 561.
Derling, *s.* favourite, 3442.
Derne, *adj.* secret, 4045. A.S. *derne*.
Derrest, *adj. superl.* dearest, 1909, 2823; most worthy, 4644; most valuable, 5180.
Dese, *s.* daïs, throne, high seat, 47, 479, 902, 1720, 1841, 2009, 2066, 3085, 4214; (Deyse), 2924.
Desert, *s.* desert, 406.
Desiris, *pr. s.* desires, 922; (Desired), *pt. s.* desired, 922; Desyrid, *pp.* 5146.
(Desperset), *pp.* dispersed, 1941.
Despetously (Dyspytussly), *adv.* shamefully, 746.
Destaned, *pt. s. impers.*; þam destaned, it was destined for them, 4115; Destaned, *pp.* destined, 313, 518; (Destinate), 692, 763*, 836; Destand (Destinate), 809; Destayned (Destanet), fated, 1100.
Destany, destiny, 706.
(Destinate); see Destaned.
Det (Dett), *s.* a debt, 1849; Dett (Dette), due, 895; Dettis (Dett), *pl.* dues, 887.
Dete (Deteys, *pl.*), *s.* writing, letter, tale (lit. ditty), 2726.
Deth, *s.* death, 512, 744, 836, 966; (Dede), 2196; (Deyde), 922; Dethe (Deth), 957; (Dede), 720, 1263. See Dede, Ded.
Detiraty, *Lat.* Tyrum, 5596.
Deu[i]dis, 2 *pr. s.* dividest, 4515.
Devill, *s.* devil, 4487; Deuels, *pl.* devils, 4515, 5578.
Deuire (Deuer), *s.* duty, 867; (Diuour), 2383. F. *devoir*.
De-vise, *ger.* to tell, 4919; (Deuised), *pp.* explained, 1905.
Devoide, *ger.* to destroy, to get rid of, 3625; to escape, 2061; Deuoide (Voyde), *v.* escape, avoid, 2424; (Deuodes), *pr. s.* escapes, 2061; Devoide, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* eschew, 4327; Deuoyde, 2 *p.* are free from, avoid, 4602; Deuoydid (Deuoyded), *pt. s.* hid away, 2938; Deuoidid, *pt. pl.* 1 *p.* emptied out, got rid of, 4218; Devoided, *pp.* avoided, put away, 4261; Devoidid, destroyed, 3875; Deuoidis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* lay aside, 4959.
Devour, *s.* duty, p. 279, l. 20.
Deuowrid, *pp.* devoured, 3875.
Deuydid, *pp.* divided, scattered, sundered, 2790.
Deuyllis, *gen.* devil's, 414; Deuyls, *pl.* devils, 342; fierce animals, monsters, 4090.

Deuynes, *pr. s.* divines, 145; (Devynez), considers, 1363.
Deuys, *s.* device, shape, 359; (Devyse), design, will, 830.
Deuyse, *imp. s.* think, 4050; Deuysid, *pt. s.* perceived, 3053; made out, 5099; Devysid, *pp.* looked at, considered, 4642; (Deuysid), devised, pourtrayed, 280; (Devysed), spoken, said, 2511. See below.
Deuysid (Devyse(d) hath), *pt. s.* made out, read, 2691. (A bad use of the word; *deuyse* is rather to write or indite.)
Dewe, *s.* dew, 3801, 4344.
Dewe (Dew), *s.* due, right, 1176
Dewessis, *pl.* goddesses, 3555. A curious fem. form of F. *dieu.*
Dewis, *pr. pl.* avail, 4438. (A bad spelling of *dowis;* see Dowe.) Cf. Dewt below.
(Dewly), *adv.* duly, 763*.
Dewt, *error for* Dowt (= doute), fear, 2618. Cf. Dewis above.
(Deyd), *s.* deed, 1071. See Dede.
(Deyde), *adj.* dead, 933*. See Dede.
Deyne (Dene), *s.* disdain, 1863.
Deyne, *s.* dell, valley, 4075, 5421. A.S. *denu.*
Deyne (Digne), *adj.* worthy, 882, 1958.
Deynes, *pr. s. impers.* it deigns (me), i. e. (I) deign, 830; Deynes, *pr. s.* is it worth; Quat deynes ȝow, lit. what is it worth your while, why is it worth your while, 4006; Deyne, *pr. s. subj.* may deign, 3475; Deyned, *pt. s.* was thought worthy, 4225; Deyned, *pt. s. refl.* deigned; Deyned him na daynte, no dignity allowed him, his dignity did not allow him, 229.
Deynes, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* are disdainful, are filled with disdain, scorn (at), 4579. Misused for *dedeynes*
Dialiticus (Dialeticus), dialectics, 1583.
Diademe, *s.* diadem, 3240.
Diates, *pl.* diets, feasts, 4438. See Diete.
Did, *pt. s.* did, 414; put, 3440; Didd, did, acted (so to her), 346; Did on, put on, 487; Did, *pt. pl.* did, 593; put, 3329.
Die, *v.* die, 3298; *ger.* 2003; (Dye), 2164; Die (Dye), 1 *pr. s.* 1191; Dies, *pr. s.* 5430; (Dyes), 1908; Died, *pt. s.* died, 1908; Dies (Dyez), *imp. pl.* die, 1033. See Dye.
Diete, *s.* diet, 4274. See Diates.
Dietes, *pr. pl.* feed, 4738.
Differris, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* differ, 4617.
Digne, *adj.* worthy, 1720.
Dignite, *s.* dignity, 3240; Dignites (Dignitez), honours, 1905.
Dike (Diche), *s.* ditch, 3274; (Dyke), 700, 712; Dikis (Dykez), *pl.* dikes, ditches, 2986. See Dyke.
Dilectacion, *s.* delight, p. 279, l. 15; Delectacion, p. 280, l. 36.
Dindimus, 4235; Dindyn, 4214.
Dingis (Dynges), *pr. s.* dashes, strikes, 2041.
Dint, *s.* blow, 3997; Dintes, *pl.* 3933; Dintis (Dyntes), 2091.
Dire, *adj.* dear (?), 5349. (A bad spelling; read *dere.*)
Discende, *ger.* to descend, to fall, 3051; *pr. pl.* descend, 4770; Discendid, *pt. pl.* descended, fell, 3654.
Discheualer, *adj.* having ruffled hair, with loose hair, 3687. (Insert a comma after this word.)
Disc[i]ple, *s.* disciple, 2124.
Disciplyne, *s.* disciple, 4391.
Disclosid, *pt. pl.* opened, 3632.
Discrecion, discretion, 4243.
(Diseassyd), *pp.* disturbed, 2842*.
Disese (Disease), disease, 2549.
Dishonoure (Dishonor), dishonour, 1866.
Disire, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* desire, 4243; Disire (Desirre), 1 *pr. s.* 1673; Disired (Desirred), *pt. s.* 919.
Disolatis, *pl.* desolate places, 4354.
Dispersons, *pr. s.* reviles, insults, 746.
Dispice (Dispyse), *v.* despise, 2504; Dispices, *pr. s.* 3985; Dispisis (Dispysys), 746; (Dispysez), 1709; Dispice, 2 *pr. pl.* 4222; Dispiced, *pt. s.* 1709.
Dispite, *s.* contempt, scorn, 1711, 2497; (Dispyte), 1863.
Dispoyle, *ger.* to despoil, rob, 2494.
Dispoyse, *v.* dispose, p. 279, l. 15.

Dissert, *s.* desert, 336, 3485, 3798; (Deserte), 2585.
Dissires, *pl.* desires, 4289.
Disspaire (Dispare), *s.* despair, 3269.
Distourbid, *pp.* disturbed, 5159.
Distressid (Distryssyd), *pp.* distressed, 2781.
Distreyne, *v.* control, rule, govern, 4244. (See the note.)
(Distrobles), *pr. s.* disturbs, 3167*.
Distroy, *v.* destroy, 1454, 1639, 1658; *ger.* 912; Distruye, *v.* 187; (Distroy), *ger.* 1027; Distruy (Distroye), *ger.* to destroy, 2216; (Distroyde), *pt. s.* 1941; (Distroyd), *pp.* 2088.
Distruccion, *s.* destruction, 3253; 3733 (for *he þat* read *þat he*).
Disworship, *s.* dishonour, p. 280, l. 37.
Disyre, *v.* desire, wish for, 3563.
Dite, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* indite, 1841; Ditis (Dytes), *pr. s.* indites, dictates, 2726; Ditis (Ditez), indites, 1909; Dites, commands, 3462; (Ditez), indites, 2005.
Dites, *pl.* enditings, declarations, 3509; sayings, 4558; Ditis, words, 1823; sayings, 1954; (Detes), writings, 1908; Dities, *pl.* greetings, 4214; sayings, words, 4695; (Dytes), sayings, 2411; (Ditez), 2009; (Dytes), letters, 2066. See Dytez.
Diuined, *pp.* explained, 1905.
Diuinour (Deuinour), *s.* diviner, interpreter of dreams, 1355; wise man, 2393; diviner, sorcerer, 406, 431; Diuinours (Deuynours), sages, 1545; (Dyuynours), augurs, 2349.
Diuyse, *s.* order, 4207.
Diȝans, *pl.* (*put for* Dizans), sayings, 4307. F. *disant*, pres. pt. of *dire.* Cf. l. 4309, which speaks of *listening* to them.
Diȝtes (Dytes), *pr. s.* appoints, 2662; Diȝtis, *refl.* prepares himself, 922; Diȝt, *pt. s.* got ready, 2005; (Dight), *pt. s. refl.* prepared himself, 922; Diȝt (Dight), *pt. pl. refl.* prepared themselves, 2472; buried, 3130; Diȝt, *pp.* dight, destined, 744; clothed, 232, 322, 3447; (Dight), prepared, ready, 3013; ordained, 1504; Diȝt (Dyght), *pp.* arrayed, treated, 3155; handled, treated, 3205.
Do, *ger.* to do, 98, 736, 1260; *v.* 1071; Doo, 2 *pr. pl.* 4575; Do, *imp. s.* 2 *p.*; Do on, don, put on, 5180; Do kith, do tell, 5168; Do, *imp. pl.* do; Do lendis, do go on, 4992; Doo (Doys), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* cause, 3422; (To do), i. e. to be done, 735*.
(Do), *s.* deed, 2733.
Dobbed, *pt. s.* dubbed, i. e. arrayed, 3447.
(Dochre), 1647. Prob. an error for *dochee*, i. e. duchy. Or it may be meant for *duchery*, like E. *dukery*, with the same sense.
Doctoneus, *proper name*, 2122.
Doctour, doctor, 232, 432; Doctours, *pl.* 1545, 1583; teachers, 4558.
Doctryne, doctrine, 4225; Doctrine (Doctryne), 1655.
(Doghty), *adj. pl. as sb.* doughty men, 2627, 3006, 3061, 3130, 3157.
(Dokes), *pl.* dukes, 1326.
Dole, *s.* a portion, part, 736, 3727; Forthing-dole, fourth part, 3844; (Dele), part, 2687.
Dole, *s.* dool, grief, sorrow, trouble, 1877, 2472, 3863. F. *deuil.*
Dolour, *s.* pain, 3305; Doloure, dolour, 935.
Dom, *adj.* dumb, 4747.
Dome, *s.* doom, judgment, sentence, fate, 521, 720, 1095, 2164, 3253, 3457, 5414; condemnation, 2602; trial, 2196; To dome, in accordance with judgment, justly, 4250; Domes, *pl.* sentences, decrees, 593; fates, fatal circumstances, 706, 736.
(Domesman), *error for* Dones man; *see* Dones.
Domesmen, *pl.* magistrates, 4421; executioners, 3202.
Domestyne, Demasthenes, 2352, 2393, 2436; Domestiane (Domestyn), 2411.
Dompe, *v.* dive down, descend swiftly, fall, 4487. See *dumpen* in Mätzner.
Don, *imp. s.* don, put on, 3240. *Short for* do on.

Done, *pp.* caused, made, done, 346, 1186; put, 3476; destroyed, 3713; (Done), ended, 692.
(Done), *adv.* down, 2088. See Doune.
Dones, *in phr.* Quat dones man, i. e. a man of what make, what sort of man, 2906, 5167. (See note, p. 304.)
Dones men; þa dones men, those men of that kind, such men, 3202; þe donesmen, 1811. (But prob. in both cases an error for *domesmen* (as in D.), i. e. judges, great men, nobles.) See Dones, and see Domesmen.
Dore-nayle, *s.* door-nail, Dom as a dore-nayle, dumb as a door-nail, 4747. Cf. 'deaf as a door-nail,' a proverb.
Dos, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost, 5167; (Dose), 2 *pr. s. as fut.* shalt do (*read* dose on = shalt put on), 3240; Dose, *pr. s.* does, 226, 406; (Doys), 793; Dose him (Doys hym), goes, departs, 2678; Dose him, *pr. s.* goes, gets him (out), 2181; Dose, *pr. s. as fut.* will do, 4250; Dos (Doys) on, makes one (of his men), 3111; Does him furthe (hym furth), advances, 1024; Dose, *pr. pl.* do, 528; Dose þam in, go in, 902. See Duse.
Doubeletis, *pl.* doublets, 4673.
Douce, *fem. adj.* sweet one, 830.
Doufe, *s.* dove, 4533. See Dowfis.
Doughty, *adj. as sb.* valiant men, 3205. In D. 2349, it is better to read *douth*, as in A.
Doukand, *pres. part.* ducking, diving, 4090.
Doune, *adv.* down, 332, 452, 547; (Downe), 791; (Doun), 853; Doun (Downe), 1183; (Done), 2088.
Dounes, *pl.* downs, hills, 3486, 4045.
Doute, *s.* doubt, 5610; terror, fear, 2015; (Dowte), 1166.
Doute, *ger.* to fear, 1965; (*for* Doutes), *pr. s.* fears, 532; (Dout), 2 *pr. pl.* fear, 1801; Dout, 2 *pt. pl.* feared, 3509.
Douth, *s.* manhood; *also, collectively*, a band of young men, a band, host, army, soldiery, 1647, 2100, 2349, 2627, 2663, 2733, 2775, 3006, 3061, 3130, 3157, 3205, 3351, 3890, 3928, 4113. A.S. *duguð*, manhood, army; cf. G. *Tugend*.
(Dow), 2015. A false reading; read *ne doute*, as in A.
Dowble, *adj.* double; Be dowble, by double, twofold, 3322.
Dowe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* avail, am able (to do), 4058. A.S. *dugan*.
Dowfis, *s.* doves, 5604. See Doufe.
Dowis, *pl.* doves, 3937. See note.
(Downe), *adv.* down, 730*, 2057.
(Dowte), *s.* doubt, 2196.
Doykis (Dukez), *pl.* dukes, 791.
(Doyngez), *pl.* doings, 1823.
Doȝtir, *s.* daughter, 3315, 5253; (Doghter), 823, 2633.
Doȝtyly, *adv.* doughtily, 5590.
Drabland, *part. pres.* trailing, 232. M.E. *drabelen*, to dirty, Prompt. Parv.; Sc. *drabble*, to dirty; *hence* prov. E. *drabble*, to draggle in the mire (Halliwell).
Drafe, *pt. s.* drove, went quickly, rushed, 336, 487, 561, 712; came, 2035; (Draue), 1141; (Drof), 2585; Drafe (Drofe), went (to meet him), 2906; (Drafe hym), *pt. s.* went, gat him (out), 2181; (Drafe), 1 *pt. pl.* drove, dealt (blows), 2091.
Dragon, *s.* dragon, 378, 451; Dragons, *pl.* dragons, 3868, 4792; Dragons, *gen. sing.* dragon's, 359.
Dragon-hame, *s.* dragon-covering, 487. A.S. *hama*, a covering.
(Drawe), *ger.* to draw, 818*; Drawis (Drawes), *pr. s.* draws, pulls, 1308; (Drawys), comes, 2924; Drawis (Drawes), *pr. pl.* draw, 706; Drawe, *imp. s.* draw, go, 1769; Drawen (Drawyn), *pp.* drawn, 3269. See Draȝes.
Draȝes (Drawez), *pr. s.* draws, drags, 1857; Draȝen, drawn, *hence* covered, 4207; (Drawen), drawn, acquired, tried to get, 2734. See Drawe.
Draȝt, *s.* drawing, picture, 280; Draȝte (Draught), draught, 1106; drawing (of a bow), 1067.
Drechet, *pp.* vexed, spoilt, 4942; Drechid, destroyed, 1106. A.S. *dreccan*, *dreccean*, to vex.

Dred (Drede), *s.* dread, fear, 2140; Drede, 2015.
Dred, 1 *pr. s.* dread, fear, 400; Dredis, *pr. s.* 532, 669; Dred, *pp.* afraid, 2489, 2913; Dred, *imp. s.* dread thou, 98; Drede, *imp. s.* fear, 322.
Dredfull, *adj.* dreadful, 359.
Dredles, *adv.* without dread, i. e. doubtless, 1472; (Dredles), 1965.
Dreis, *pr. s.* endures, 531. Sc. *dree*. See Dreȝe.
Dreme, *s.* dream, 474.
Dreme, *v.* dream, 346; Dremyd, *pt. s. refl.* 432.
Drench, *v.* be drowned, 3274; Drenches, *pr. s.* drowns, 1308; Drenchis (Drenchez), 1857; Drenchyd, *pt. s. subj.* should drown, 2590; Drenchid, *pp.* drowned, 5506.
(Drenchett), *error for* Drechett, *pp.* destroyed, 1106. See Drechet.
Drenke (Drynkez, *pl.*), *s.* drink, potion, 2564.
Drepars (Drepers), *pl.* murderers, slayers, 3422.
Drepe, *ger.* to kill, slay, 867, 1777, 3632; Drepis, 1 *pr. pl.* 4291; *pr. pl.* 4546; Drepid (Drepyd), *pt. s.* slew, killed, 1067; Drepid, *pt. pl.* 5562; Drepid, *pp.* killed, 3169, 3713, 4134, 4734, 5350; (Drepyd), 744, 961, 1233. A.S. *drepan*, Icel. *drepa*.
Drere, *adj.* dreary, 4804. (But the MS. reading *dreȝe* should have been retained; see Dreȝe, *adj.*)
Drerely, *adv.* drearily, sadly, 976; Drerily, sorrowfully, 2699.
Drery, *adj.* dreary, sorrowful, sad, 2472, 2989, 3085.
Dressis (Dressyd, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* directs, sends, 1711; (Dresse), 2 *pr. s. subj.* appoint, 801*; Drest (Dressyd), *pp.* dressed, adorned, 2801. See Drissis, Drysse.
Dreuyn, *pp.* driven, 1647, 3305; (Drėven), passed, 1337; (Dryven), gone forward, 687.
Drewe (Drew), *pt. s.* drew near, 1337; Drewe vp, 336.
Dreȝe (Dre), *v.* suffer, endure, 3194. Sc. *dree*. See Dreis.
Dreȝe, *adj.* tedious, weary, long, 4441; severe, 2091. See below.
Dreȝe, *adj.* tedious, wearisome, 4804. This is the reading of the MS., and should have been retained; see the footnote. See *dreȝ* in Mätzner.
Dreȝe, *s.* annoyance (lit. tediousness), 5578. See *dreȝe* in Mätzner.
Dreȝe, *pt. pl.* drew, 3629, 5554. See Drawe.
Dreȝest, *adj. superl.* chief, greatest, most considerable, 5568. Lit. 'most tedious;' see Dreȝe, *adj.*
Dreȝt (Droȝt), *s.* length, extent, 1112. Spelt *dreight* in the Troy-book, l. 10,633. See Driȝt.
Drifes, *pr. s.* drives, 225; Driffe (Dreffe), *pr. pl. refl.* drive themselves, endeavour 2733. See Driue, Dryfe.
Drifte, *s.* drift, 1756.
Drinke, *s.* drink, 1106.
Drinkles, *adj.* drinkless, without drink, 3798; Drinkeles, 4679.
Drissis, *pr. s.* prepares, arrays, disposes, 3182; Drised (Dressyd), *pp.* dressed, robed, 1935. See Drysse.
Driue (Dryve), *ger.* drive, scour, 1198; Driues (Dryves), *pr. pl.* 1396; Driuand (Dryvand), *pr. pt.* driving, hurrying, 882. See Drifes.
Driȝe, *s.* interval, space of time, 4788. See Driȝt, Dreȝt.
Driȝt, *s.* duration, length, interval, 4874, 5062. See Dreȝt, Driȝe.
Driȝt, *s.* host; O driȝt, in a host, 3868. A.S. *dryht*, *driht*.
Driȝten, *s.* a lord, the Lord, 809; Driȝtin, 3457, 5400; Driȝten (Drighten), 1260; (Dryghten), 1472; Driȝten (Dryghten), 2734; (Dryghtyn), 3291; Driȝtyn, 518; Driȝtens, *pl.* lords, 3555; Driȝtins, 4546; gods, 4183, 5118; Driȝtens (Drightenez), *gen.* Lord's, 1504. A.S. *dryhten*.
Dromondaris, *pl.* dromedaries, 3850, 4792.
Dromonds, *pl.* swift vessels, 64. Low Lat. *dromondus*, from Gk. δρόμων, a swift ship.

Dronken, *pp.* drunken, drunk, 2936; Dronkin, 4552.
Dronkynnes, *s.* drunkenness, 3351.
Drope, *s.* drop, 3863, 4941. See the note to l. 4941.
Dropis (Dropes), *pr. s.* drops, lets drop, i. e. discloses, 1363; Droppid, *pp.* dropped, 3801.
Droues (Drafes), *pl.* droves, flocks, 1211; (Drawes), 1233.
Droune, *v.* be drowned, 3274; Drouned, *pt. s.* was drowned, 3032; Droune, *pr. pl. subj.* be drowned, 2590.
Drowe, *pt. pl.* drew, 3024. See Droȝe, Drawe.
(Drowpys), *pr. s.* droops, falls, 734*.
Droȝe, *pt. s.* drew, drew nigh, 4773; (Drogh), drew, 1067; (Droght, *error for* Drogh), 2963; Droȝe, *pt. pl.* drew, 3847, 5478; went, 3798. See Drawe, Drowe.
Druits, *pl.* friends, 5123. O.F. *drut, dru,* a friend; see Godefroy, s. v. *dru;* also Lex Salica, ed. Hessels and Kern, s. v. *druchte.*
Drye, *s.* dry land, 5554.
Dryfe (Dryve), *ger.* to drive, 1777; Dryffe, *v.* drive, hasten, 2860.; Dryfes (Dryffes), *pr. s.* drives, 1231; Dryfes, *pr. pl.* 64; (Dryfen), drive, rush, 3202; Dryfuys (= Dryfvys), *pr. pl.* they drive, 791. See Drifes, Driue.
Dryi, *adj.* dry, 4093.
(Drynched), *pt. s.* drowned, 3072. See Drench.
Drynke, *pr. pl.* drink, 3816.
Drysnynge, *s.* drizzling, few drops, 3801. From A.S. *drosen,* dregs (Leo).
(Drysse), *v.* prepare, 2860; Drysse, 1 *pr. s.* I direct, send, 5123. See Dressis, Drissis.
Dryue (Dryfe), *v.* drive, go, 2860; Dryues (Dryvez), *with* vp, *pr. s.* drives, sends, 718; Dryue[s], drives on, 3061.
Duale, *v.* poison, put to a mortal sleep, 5026. Cf. *dwale* in P. Plowman.
Duchepers (Docesperes), *pl.* peers (lit. douce-peres), 791. O.F. *doze pers,* the twelve peers (of France).
Ducsses, *pl.* 1965. An obvious error for Duesses, q. v.
Duelle (Dwelle), *ger.* to dwell, 830; Duell (Dwell), *v.* remain (so), 2842; Duellis, *pr. s.* dwells, remains, 2989; Duell, 1 *pr. pl.* 4050, 4355; Duells, 4354; Duellis, *pr. pl.* dwell, 5534; Duellid (Dwellyd), *pt. s.* dwelt, 913, 2848; Duellid (Dwellyd), *pt. pl.* 1045; Duelled, 3795.
Duesses, *pl.* goddesses, 4515, 4558, 5114; *miswritten* Ducsses, 1965. O.F. *dieuesse,* goddess; Roquefort.
Duke, *s.* duke, leader, general, 1211, 1231, 1442; (Duk), 1879; Dukis, *pl.* 64, 480; (Dokez), 1141; Duykis, 47.
Duly (Dewly), *adv.* duly, 836, 895.
Durand (Endurand), during; Durand his lyfe, while his life endures, 1188. See Dure.
Dure, *v.* endure, last, 540, 4055; Dures, *pr. s.* 1687; Durid, *pt. s.* 5610; Dured, *pt. s.* endured, lasted, lived through, 158.
Dure, *s.* door, p. 282, l. 122.
(Durely), *adv.* with difficulty, *hence* (*perhaps*) mournfully, 976. (Apparently only used for the alliteration; cf. *dure,* difficult, in Halliwell.)
Durst, 1 *pr. s. subj.* if I durst, 1673; (Durst), 2 *pt. s.* durst, 1966.
Dusan, *adj.* dozen, twelve, 280.
Dose him (Dose hym), *pr. s.* goes, lit. does him, 2299. See Dos.
Dust (Duste), dust, 782.
Dute, *adj.* afraid, 3555. From O.F. *duter, douter,* to fear.
Duykis, *pl.* dukes, 47. See Duke.
Duȝtiest, *adj. superl.* doughtiest, 5654.
Dwaȝe (Drawgh), *s.* a feeble person, puny creature, 1752. Jamieson gives Scot. *dwaub,* a feeble person, *dwable,* flexible, weak, *dwaffil,* pliable. The spelling *drawgh* probably stands for *dwawgh.*
Dwerȝe, *s.* dwarf, 1752. A.S. *dweorg.*
Dwinyng (MS. A. dwinnyg, MS. D. dwynyng), a diminutive person, 1752. From A.S. *dwínan,* to dwindle.

Dyademe, *s.* diadem, 3329; (Diademe), 2801.
Dyanaas (*Dubl. MS.* Dienas, *for* Dianas), *gen.* Diana's, 2299.
(Dyd), *pt. pl.*; (Dyd þaim), went, 902.
Dye, *ger.* to die, 1100, 1874, 2155; (Dy), 692; Dyi (Dye), *v.* 1260; Dye, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* die, 990; Dyi (Dye), 1638. See Die.
Dyke bothum, bottom of the ditch or dyke, 712. See Dike.
Dym, *adj.* dim, 5395.
Dymed (Demmyd), *pt. s.* grew dim, 782.
Dymly, *adv.* dimly, faintly, 718.
Dyn, *s.* din, noise, 2618; (Dyne), 935.
Dyndyn, Dindimus, 4644.
Dyntis, *pl.* blows, 451.
(Dytez), *pl.* enditings, words, 2842*. See Dites.
Dyuerse, *adj.* diverse, 85.

Ebland, *prep.* amongst, 160, 3723 (where it follows its case), 4023, 4086; Eblande, 4315, 5444. Dan. *iblandt,* prep. among.
E-blande, *adv.* among, 4973; Ebland, amongst (them), together, also, 3910, 4994. See above.
Ebru, Hebrew, 5072; Ebrues, Hebrews, 5661.
Ebyn, *s.* ebony-wood, 3682.
Ebyn-tree, *s.* ebony-tree, 3681, 5135.
Echchewis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* eschew, 4603. [MS. Ethchewis.]
Eddirs, *pl.* snakes, adders, 4198.
Edyfyed, *pp.* built (a house), p. 281, l. 88.
Ee, *s.* water, stream, 5464. A.S. *éa.*
(Eey), *s.* eye, 2491. See Eȝe.
Effecte, *s.* work, 357.
Effosym, Ephesus, 5661.
Eft, *adv.* again, 140, 185, 511, 1359, 2821, 3126, 3159, 3510, 3783; Efte, in return, 2141, 5051.
Efter, *prep.* after, 2, 95, 518; for (i. e. sends for), 352; (After), for, 3152, 3183; according to, in the likeness of, 191; Eftir, *prep.* according to the likeness (of a prince), 5642.
Efter, *adv.* afterwards, 205, 309, 478, 4773; Eftire, 360, 614; (Aftir), 1551.
Eftirsons, *adv.* again, 408. See below.
Eftsones (Eftsons), *adv.* again, immediately, 2281; Ef[t]sones, afterward, 1083.
Egg, *s.* egg, 507, 509; (Egge), 893.
(Egen), (*for* Ege), fear, care, 731. Read *eȝe,* as in MS. A. The final *n* is wrong.
Egge, *s.* edge of a hill, backbone of hills, 4876. Wenlock *Edge* (Salop) is a long ridge; and so elsewhere.
Eggis, *pl.* (*for* Heggis), hedges, 4137.
Eging (Eggyng), *s.* egging, instigation, 2409.
Egipt, Egypt, 23, 71, 135, 173, 233, 239; Egipte (Egipt), 1132; Egist (Egip), 1121.
Egirly, *adv.* sharply, 551, 580; eagerly, 3151; fiercely, 3848; (Egerly), 703, 1205.
Elacion, elation, 1729.
Elanda, *prop. name, put for* Hellada, i. e. Greece, 2514 (see note, p. 303); 3100, 3106 (see note, p. 305). In l. 3106, perhaps Elam is meant.
Eld, needle; Ane eld = a neld, i. e. a needle, 1370. MS. D. *has* nedyll.
Elde, *s.* age, 622, 657, 764*, 5132; old age, great age, 184, 4838; Eld, age, 646; (Elde), 1001.
Elder (Helder), *adv.* rather, 1016. *Properly spelt* helder; cf. Icel. *heldr,* rather.
Eldest, *for* Heldest, most especially, 1765. See above.
Eldire, *adj. comp.* older, 616; (Alder), 1619; (Elder), elder, 1474.
Eldire, *s.* greater age, 4215.
Eldirs, *pl.* forefathers, 3491; (Elders), ancestors, 2465; (Aldours), 2483; (Alders), elders, 2844; Elders, parents, 838*; Eldris, *pl.* parents, elders, guardians, 4628.
Eldist, *adj. superl.* eldest, 3577; (Eldest), chief, 2006.
Element, *s.* element, 60; Elementes, *pl.* elements, 542, 580; El[e]mentis (Elementes), 784.
Elfe, *s.* elf, spirit, 5258.

Elike, *adv.* alike, 536, 1225, 1258, 1422, 4283; continually, 560; Elike (Elik), 1401; Ay elike, ever the same, 1288; Euer elike, continually, 340.
Elike-dele, in like measure, similarly, 4158.
Elis, *adv.* else, 107. See Ellis.
Elkend, *pt. pl.* adored, propitiated, 164. Cf. A.S. *óleccan*, to adore, flatter, soothe.
Elleuen, *num.* eleven, 4814; Elleuyn, 646.
Elleuynt, *adj.* eleventh, 4139.
Ellis, *adv.* else, otherwise, 181, 290, 395, 477, 570, 685; (Elles), 841, (Ellez), 1814; (Ellys), 1761. See Elis, Els.
Ellyn (Elne), ell, 800.
Els, *adv.* else, otherwise, 13, 5426; (Ellys), besides, 1685; Ells, anything else, 4279; Els, *conj.* except, 4671. See Ellis.
Els-quare, *adv.* elsewhere, 5633.
Els-quat, *adv.* otherwise, 4557.
Emang, *prep.* amongst, 47, 104, 565, 1163, 3489; Emange, 628, 4331; Emaunge, 4817.
Emaunge, *adv.* among, in the midst, 4901.
Emell, *prep.* amongst, 4613; (governing *us* understood), 4263. Dan. *imellem*, between.
Emperoure (Emperour), emperor, 975, 1125, 1516, 1607, 1720, &c.; Empereure (Emperour), 882; Emperouris, *gen.* emperor's, 5196; Emperours, *pl.* 189.
Empire, *s.* rule, empire, 1001, 3983.
Emyddis, *prep.* amidst, 4538.
Emynelaus, *proper name*, Eumulus, 2875; Emynelows, 3005.
Enarmed, *pp.* fully armed, 652, 1397, 1787, 2020, 2137, 3019, 3601, 3749, 5152, 5641. (Ennarmed), 2685, 2982; (Enarmed), 954.
Enbawmed, *pp.* embalmed, 3319.
En-blanchid, *pp.* whitened, made white, 3690.
Enbrouden (Enbrowden), *pp.* embroidered, 1569. See Brouden.
Enchafis, *pr. s.* inflames, 2545.
Enchant, *v.* make enchantments, 115; Enchantis, *pr. s.* 412.
Enchantmentis, *pl.* enchantments, 377.
Encheson, *s.* occasion, cause, 4607. O.F. *encheson*, *encheison*, occasion.
Enclosed, *pt. s.* surrounded, came round, 3812.
Enclynes, *pr. s.* inclines, bows, 3114; (Inclines), *pr. pl.* bow down, 1603; *refl.* bows (himself), 495.
En[c]ounbre (Combre), *v.* vex, trouble, harass, 2550. See Encumbre.
Encontres, *pr. s.* encounters, 3993
Encressis (Encresses), *pr. s.* increases, grows, 891; Encreses, 2492.
Encumbre (Combre), *v.* destroy, overcome, 1881; Encumbrid, *pt. s. subj.* should trouble, should vex, 1480; Encumbrid (Encombred), *pp.* destroyed, 1817. See Encounbre.
Ende, *s.* end, 880; death, 1103; End, (one) end, 173; death, 739*; Endis (Ende), *pl.* ends, parts, 1733; districts, 3721; Ends, *pl.* ends, limits; Of clene all þus ends, of all those limits (*or* boundaries) entirely, 3479.
Endentid, *pp.* indented, engraved, 3671.
(Endered), *for* Hendered, 1 *pt. s.* hindered, opposed, 2497.
Endis, *pt. s.* ends, puts an end to, 1220; Endid (Endytt), *pp.* ended, 1486; Endid, *pt. s.* finished, killed, made an end of, 453.
Enditis (Inditez), *pr. s.* indites, 1955; (Inditid, *pt. s.*), 1836; Endited (Indited), *pt. s.* indited, 1823.
Endles, *adj.* endless, 60, 1916.
Endurand; see Durand.
Enduris, *pr. s.* endures, 527; *pr. pl.* 1483; (Indurett), *pt. pl.* 1483; Endured, *pp.* 7.
Enentes (Anentes), *prep.* anent, about, concerning, 3245.
Enerid (Enhered), *pt. s.* inherited, possessed, 1132. See Enherit.
Enfamyschist (Enfamyshyd), *pp.* famished, 2153.

Enfeffid, *pt. s.* enfeoffed, gave (them) lordships, 2793.
Enforce, 2 *pr. pl.* enforce, bid, 2804; Enforced (Enforsed), *pp.* strengthened, 1155.
Enfourme, *s. put for* Enfourmer, informer, teacher, 626. (See the context.)
Enfourmes (Enformes), *pr.* prepares, 2751; Enformed, *pt. s.* indited, 2413; Enfourmed, *pp.* instructed (in), informed (of), 3747; informed, 306; (Enformed), 904, 1897.
Engine, *s.* engine, machinery, 5292; Engynes, *pl.* engines, 1302, 1415; (Engynez), 2218.
Englaymed, *pp.* ensnared, 4668. Lit. caught as with birdlime; see *engleimen* in Mätzner.
Engrauen, *pp.* engraven, 279.
Enhabetis, *pr. pl.* inhabit, dwell, 245; Enhabet, *pt. pl.* 23; *pp.* 3493.
Enhansis (Enhaunses), *pr. s.* enhances, exalts, 2714; En-haunsid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* enhanced, raised, 5068; Enhansid (Enhaunsed), *pp.* advanced, increased, 2513; (Inhaunsyd), 3406; Enhansed (Enhaunsyd), exalted, 2498.
Enherestis (Inheretes), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost inherit, 1870. See below.
Enherit, *v.* inherit, 588. See Enerid.
Enioyne, *v.* enjoin, lay a command, 1191; Enioyne (Enjoyne), *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* bid, 2664; Enjoyned, *pp.* compounded, put together, 3694; enjoined, 1493.
Enlympyd; *error for* Limpid.
(Enmite), *error for* Enmy, enemy, 2681.
Enmy, *s.* enemy, 819, 2681, 3096; Enmys, *pl.* 60, 453, 1916, 4291; Enmes, 206; (Enmys), 1251, 2096.
Enmyte, enmity, 1729, 2560.
Enoȝe, *adj. pl.* enough, sufficient, abundant (this pl. adj. always *follows* its substantive), 2135; (Enogh), 1663; Enoghe, 3931; Enogh, 38; (Enowe), 1350, 819*.
Enoȝe, *adv.* enough, sufficiently, 41; (Enogh), 1324, 782*.
Enpire (Empyre), *s.* empire, 2292, 2327; (Empire), 1899.
Enproched (Aproched), *pt. s.* approached, 2902.
Enquere (Enquire), *ger.* to ask, 2420; Enquire (Inquire), *imp. s.* ask, 1110; Enquirid, *pt. s.* enquired, 239.
Ensampill, *s.* example, 3878; parable, 4659; Ensample (Ensaumple), example, 1802; Ensample (Ensampyll), example, instance, 730; (Sampyll), ensample, 3279.
Ensence, incense, 163.
Ensurid, *pp.* promised, 2633.
Enterely, *adv.* entirely, wholly, 2790, 3243, 5662; Enterly, 2584; Enterely (Entirely), 1899; (Enterly), 2327, 2465.
Enteris, *pr. s.* inters, buries, 4017; Enterid, *pp.* interred, buried, 3323.
Enteris, *pl.* approaches, entries, ways of approach, 71.
Enterment, interment, 738*.
Entre, *ger.* to enter, 2419; *v.* 2514; Entire (Entre), *ger.* 1760; (Enter), *v.* 1359; Enter, 511; Entris, *pr. s.* enters, 381, 4075, 5009, 5421; Entres, 450; Entirs, 53; (Entrees), 1039; Entirs him (Entrez hym), *pr. s.* enters, 1125; Entird, *pt. s.* entered, 490; Entred, 1433; Entrid (Entred), *pp.* 1916; Entird, 206.
Entring, *s.* entering, beginning, 4158.
Entyre (In tere), *adj.* entire, in detail, 1261.
Envemonde (Enuenmonyd), *pp.* envenomed, 1390.
Enverom, *ger.* to surround, 3617; Envirounis, *pr. s.* environs, 5527; Enveronis, environs, surrounds, 4632; Enverrouns, resounds through, pervades, 4780.
Enuy, *s.* envy, 4256; (Enuye), 1729.
(Enys), *adv.* once, 1191 (*but a misreading*).
Epocrise, hypocrisy, 4652.
Equinox, *s.* equinox, 4158.
Er, *pr. pl.* are, 1013; (Er), 949, 797*. See Ere.
Erand, *s.* message, 1467, 2770. See Errande.
Ercules, Hercules, 703, 2184, 4538.

Erd, *s.* earth, 551, 580, 3493; country, land, region, 239, 246, 453, 3983; Erd, *s.* dwelling-place, 3737; land, native land, native country, 2842; Erde, earth, 271; region, land, 1046, 2348, 5258; native country, 135, 206, 4043; (Erth), land, 912, 975. A.S. *eard.*
Erd, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* dwell, 4648; Erdid (Erdyd), *pp.* dwelt, 2681.
Erd-growyn (Erth-growen), *adj.* earth-grown, 1753.
Erdis (Erdes), *pr. s.* buries, 975. See Erþed.
Erdly (Erthlich), *adj.* earthly, 1612.
Ere, *pr. pl.* are, 1, 12, 14, 104, 105, 437, 542, 789, &c. See Er.
(Ereles), *pl.* earls, 1121. See Erle.
Eris, *pl.* ears, 3941, 4635; Eres, 3151, 4748.
Erle (Erell), *s.* earl, 1612; Erlis, *pl.* 153; Erles, 64; (Ereles), 1001, 1166; (Erelez), 907, 1578.
Erles, *pr. s.* governs, lit. is the earl of, 4646. A coined word; from the sb. above.
Erly, *adv.* early, 3444.
Ermed, *pp.* armed, 3935.
Ermets, *pl.* hermits, 4020.
Ermony, Armenia, 907, 912, 942, 5662; Ermonye, 2560; (Ermony), 1046.
Erne, *adj.* eager, anxious, 340. Put for *ȝern*; see two other examples in Mätzner, s. v. *eorne.*
Ernest; On ernest, in earnest, 1359.
Ernestly, *adv.* earnestly, 2348.
Errande, errand, 5216. See Erand.
Errogaunce, arrogance, 4327.
Erroure (Errour), *s.* wrong, 1699.
Erryd, *pp.* erred, wandered, 3267.
Erst, *adv.* first of all, 1531.
Ert, 2 *pr. s.* art, 102, 834*, 1738.
Erthe, *s.* earth, 158, 1190; country, land, 1046; Erth, earth. 509, 784; land, country, territory, 23, 173, 233, 942, 2560; Erthes, *gen. s.* earth's, 5503.
Erþed, *pp.* buried, laid in the earth, 588. See Erdis.
Ertid (Ertyd), *pt. s.* urged, 2409. O.F. *arter*, Span. *artar*, to compel, from Lat. *arctare.* See *arten* in Mätzner.
Erytage (Herytage), *s.* heritage, 3243.
Es, *pr. s.* is, 663, 1008, 1713.
(Eschapys), *pr. s.* escapes, 2987.
Eschilus (Esculus), Æschylus, 2348, 2409.
Ese (Ease), *s.* ease, 1829; Esee, 3861, 5342. See Esse.
Esid, *pp.* eased, rested, 4790.
E-soundir, *adv.* asunder, 510; Esoundire, 3977; Esondre (In-sonder), 760. See Esundire.
Esse (Ease), ease, peace; At esse, in peace, 1047. See Ese.
Est, *s.* east, 20, 445, 4902.
Esundire, *adv.* asunder, 338. See Esoundir.
Esye (Easy), *adj.* easy, peaceful, 2477.
Esyngis (Esynges), *pl.* easings, eavesings, eaves, edges of the roofs, 1522.
Ete, *pt. pl.* ate, 3941.
Ethfully, *adv.* easily, 3647. A.S. *éaðe*, easy.
Ethis, *pr. s.* conjures, 340. See the note.
Ethyope, Ethiopia, 140.
Ethyops, Ethiopia's, 5132; Ethiops, Ethiopians, 5661.
Etill (Atthill), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* direct, 2322; Ettillis, attempt, intend, 15; Etille (Attellyd, 1 *pt. s*), 1 *pr. s.* purpose, aim, intend, 2419; Etils (Ettlys), 2 *pr. s.* attemptest, intendest, 2829; Etils (Etellez), *pr. s. refl.* attempts, 1157; Etlyd, *pt. s.* intended, sought, 2821; Ettild (Ettled), 2 *pt. pl.* attempted (as regards), 2484; Ettild (Etteld), *pp.* designed, proposed, purposed, intended, 3165; Ettid (Attelytt, 1 *pt. s.*), *pp.* attempted, 1819. Icel. *ætla.*
Etyn, *pp.* eaten, 774*.
(Euell), *adj.* evil, 1759.
(Euell), *adv.* evilly, ill, 1066.
Euen, *s.* evening, 697.
Euen, *adj.* straight, smooth, 2598; *as sb.* fellow, antagonist, 2281. See Euyn.
Euen, *adv.* exactly, 1357, 4810; even, 731*; (Euen), evenly, 1127; (Euen onon), just immediately, 940; Even-furth, straightway, directly, 53.
Euen, *ger.* to make equal, 4483; Euens, 2 *pr. s.* art equal, 1870.
Euer, *adv.* ever, 16, 158.
Euer-elike, continually, 340, 781*; Euerelike, 972; (Euerelike), always alike, 2046; (Euerilyke), ever the same, 1288. See Elike, Eueryllyke.
(Euerilke), each, every, 1497, 1802; (Euerylke), 999.
Euer-mare, *adv.* evermore, 205.
Eueryllyke, *adv.* continually, 727*. See Euer-elike.
Eufestyus, *prop. name*, 813*.
Eufrates, Euphrates, 2598; Eufraten, 2586, 2770.
Euill, *s.* evil, harm, 1699.
Euire, *adv.* ever, 329, 1165; (Euer), 1067.
Euire in ane (Euer onon), continually, 2184.
Euire-ilk, *adj.* each, 4497.
Eumare, the river 'Thamar,' 4103; Eumaure, 4124.
Euor, *s.* ivory, 3680; Euour, 275.
Europe, Europe, 1046, 2327; Europ, 3765, 4395.
Euyll, *adj.* evil, 703.
Euyn, *adj.* even, equal, 5132. See Euen.
Euyn, *adv.* exactly, fully, even, just, 18, 140, 542, 551, 646, 1045; (Euen), alike, 1381; Euyn on (Euen ouer), *adv.* even on, fully throughout (the host), 1793.
Euyn, *s.* evening, eve, 350, 3055, 3699; Euyns, *gen. as adv.* in the evening, 375.
Euynsange, evensong; Euynsangetyme, the hour of evensong, 4139.
Ewrus, *s.* Eurus, the east wind, 4144.
Excludit (Exclud), *pp.* shut out, 2842.
Exidraces, *pl.* a nation of Gymnosophists, 4020.
Exorȝise, *ger.* to exorcise, practise charms, 340. (Here ȝ stands for *z.*)
Eȝe (Egen), *s.* fear, heed, care, 731. A.S. *ege.*
Eȝe, *s.* eye, 222, 1589; Eȝen, *pl.* eyes, 344, 498, 603, 3151, 3940; (Eghen), 688, 1133, 2242; (Eughen, *for* Eghen), 1782; (Eeyn), 3285. See Eey.
Fa, *adj.* few, 106.
Faa, *s.* foe, 54; (Foe), 3421; Faas, *pl.* 452; (Foes), 2700. See Faes, Fais.
Fable, *s.* fable, 1886.
Face, *s.* face, 600, 965; Face to face, 357.
Facultes (Facultez), *pl.* possessions, 1847.
Fadere (Fader), father, 2323; (Fadre), 1491; (Fader), 701, 910, 961; Fadire, 600; (Fadir), 741, 1652; (Fadre), 824, 874; Fadirs, *pl.* fathers, 3; (Faders), 1675.
Fadis, *pr. s.* fades, 5309; (Fades), 1007.
Faes, *pl.* foes, 2061, 2096; (Foes), 1238, 2364, 2804. See Faa, Fais.
Fage, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* flatter, soothe, 4669. See *fagen* in Mätzner.
Faile, *v.* fail, 102, 341; (Faille), 1643; Failes, *pr. s.* fails, 1274, 1325; (Failez), 1443; (Falys), is wrong, 2965; Us failis, (Vs falez), fails us, 1006; Failed, *pt. s.* it failed; Fayled me, it failed me, I failed, 3285; Failid, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* failedst, 5588; Failis, *pr. pl.* fail, are absent from, 4279; fail, 844.
Faile, *s.* failing, error, 1886. *Read* fable, *as in* Dublin MS.
Faire, *adj.* fair, 601, 1725, 1847; good, 454; (Fair), 1541, 2116.
Faire, *adv.* fairly, well, exactly, 195, 424, 535, 878, 899, 1041; kindly, 1695, 1700; completely, 2230; courteously, 2750; (Fair), kindly, 1897, 2478; (Faire), quickly, 2250.
Faire (Fare), *s.* welfare, 2019.
Faire, *prop. name*, 91.
Fairere (Feirare, *in MS.* feirhare), *as s.* greater part, 1238.
Fairnes, *s.* courtesy, 1745.
Fais, *pl.* foes, 136, 186, 217, 810, 1945, 5382; (Faes), 1034. See Faa, Faes.
Faithly, *adv.* truly, certainly, verily, 3874; (Faythfully), 3175, 3282; (Fathfully), 2279.

(Faldes), *pr. s.* folds, bends, 779*; Falden, *pp.* folded, 2401.
Falle, *v.* befall, happen to, happen, 1109; Fall, 172, 295, 1641, 2722; (Falle), 1897, 3257; Fall (Fale), *ger.* to fall, 849; Fallis, *pr. s.* falls, 78, 509, 568; (Falles), 846; (Fallez), 1135; (Falles hym), falls before him, 779*; Fallis, *pr. s.* betakes him, 4587; befalls, 405; happens (to), 3767; Falis, befalls, 4638; Fallys hym, falls away from him, 2482; Fallis, *pr. s.* suits, 4457; (Falles), befits, 975, 1927; Fallis me, suits me, 829; (*with* to), befits, 864; belongs, is fit for, 1549; (Falles), belongs, 896; Fallis, *pr. pl.* fall, 815, 1822, 2055; Fall on, attack, 2132; Fall þe, *pr. s. subj.* if it befall thee, 2279; (Fall þou), if thou succeed, 2279; Fall (Fallez), *pr. s. subj.* may befal, may concern, 1192; Fall (Fallys), befall, 2600; Fall (Falle), happen, 1785; Fallyn (Fallen), *pp.* fallen, 1756; (Fallyn), 2323; Falne (Fallyn), 856. And see Falne.
Falne (Fallyn), *pp.* fallen, (but misused in the sense of 'felled'), 2087.
Falowis, *pr. s.* turns pale or yellow, 5308.
Fals, *adj.* false, 1697; (art) false, mistaken, 715; (False), false, 2186.
Fals, *adv.* falsely, 298.
Falshede, *s.* falsehood, 4366.
Fame, *s.* foam, 5604.
Famen (Faymen), *pl.* foemen, 2208.
Fames, *pr. s.* foams, 2974; Famand (Fomand), *pres. part.* foaming, 3203.
Famyd (Famed), *pp.* famed, 2387.
Famyschist (Famyshyd), *pp.* famished, 1167; Famyscht, 4596.
Fand, *pt. s.* found, 536, 2110, 2300, 3063, 3664, 5364; Fande (Fand), 1053.
Fand (Fond), *ger.* to try, prove; To fand with my wittez, to try my wits against, 2336; Fande, (Founde), *ger.* to go, 1196; Fandis, *pr. s.* is trying, 681; tries, exercises, 376; (Foundez), goes, advances, 2671, 2594; takes, 2977; Fand (Fonde), *imp. s.* advance, go, 2867. A.S. *fandian*. See Fonde.
Fang (Fange), *s.* hold; In fang, in the embrace, in the hold, in the protection, 1725. Cf. Icel. *í fang*, in the grip or hold.
Fange, *v.* take, 2879; Fange (Fonnge), *v.* receive, accept, 3186; (Fang), catch, get, 2168; Fange, *ger.* to take, 110; Fang (Fange), to receive, 1692; (Fannge), to receive, 1257; Fangis, *pr. s.* takes, 411, 508, 4781; (Fangez), takes, 819*; Fanges hym, *pr. s.* receives for himself, 760*; Fangis, *pr. s.* (Fange, *pt. s.*), seizes, 2971; (Fonges), takes, 766; (Fangez), collects, 1332; Fanges (Fonges), takes, 877; (Fannges), gathers, 2059; Fangis (Fangez), catches, 2197; Fangis (Fonnges), 2 *pr. s.* catchest, obtainest, 2720; Fange, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* take, 4636; *pr. pl.* catch, take, 2642, 3055; Fangis, 2028; Fang (Fangen), 899; Fangid, *pt. s.* took, 819; gained, 500; (Fonge), took, 2217; Fangid (Fonge), 2 *pt. pl.* received, 2478; Fangid (Fonged), *pp.* taken, 2629; Fange (Fonge), *imp. s.* take, 2867; Fange (*with* to), hold to, keep to, 1990; Fang þe, *imp. s.* take to thyself, 805*; Fange vp (Fongez vp), *imp. pl.* pluck ye up, 988. A.S. *fón*.
Fanons, *pl.* maniples of the priests, 1581. "Fanon, *fanula, manipulus;*" Cath. Anglicum.
Fant, *s.* infant, 4629; (Faunt), son, 1788; child, 1477.
Fantasy, *s.* fancy, 5513.
Far, *adv.* afar, 831*.
Farand; see Fare, *v.*
Fardill, *s.* burthen, 5136. O.F. *fardel*.
Fare, *s.* journey, march, 2250; equipment, 3694; doings, acts, manner of action, behaviour, 300, 1990, 2242, 4366; business, welfare, 172, 433, 672; affair, 925; condition, state, 2554; circumstance, 513, 569, 3257.

Fare, *v.* fare, prosper, 1788; go, 5202; Faris, *pr. s.* fares, goes, 847; Fares, 2116; Faris vp, gets up, 545; Faris (Farys) with, 2 *pr. s.* behavest, 2944; Fares, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* go, 3748; Fare, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* act, 5366; Farne, *pp.* gone, 216; past, 3901; departed, 2323; (Faren), gone, 1004; Farand, *pres. part.* going, walking, 5549; *as adj.* seeming, 5437; good, excellent, 2. A.S. *faran*.
Farkis (Ferkys), *pr. s.* goes, 766; Farkis furth, goes forth, 545. See *ferken* in Mätzner, p. 102. See Ferkis.
Fast, *adj.* fast, constant, firm, 4616; close, 1369; enduring, 3259.
Fast, *adv.* fast, 505; steadfastly, 1034; earnestly, searchingly, 2570; close, closely, 433, 672; hard by, 3285; soon, 2575, 5307; quickly, soon, 380, 891; As fast as, as soon as, 3944; Faste, close, 626.
Fast, *ger.* to fast, 1477; Fastand, *pres. part.* fasting, 5522.
Fast, fastened, 747*.
Faster, *adv. comp.* faster, 847, 943; Fastir, more quickly, 1805; more, 4689.
(Fastnes), *s.* stability, 3259.
Fattest, *adj. sup.* fattest, 759*.
Fauchon, falchion, 448.
Faucon, *s.* falcon, 5257.
Faund, *pt. pl.* found, 4116.
(Faunys), *pr. s.* fawns, 785*.
Faute, *s.* lack, deficiency, 4587.
Fautis (Fawtes), 2 *pr. s.* lackest, wantest, 2710; Fautis, *pr. s. impers.* lacks, 2482; Fauted (Fautyd), *pp.* been in fault, erred, done wrong, 2659.
Fax, *s.* hair, 601. A.S. *feax*.
Fay, *adj.* dead, 591; (Fey), dying, 792. Icel. *feigr*. See Fey.
Faylis, *pr. pl.* fail, 3492; Fayle, *pr. s. subj.* may give way, 1372; (Faylett), *pt. s. subj.* 1372; Faylid, *pp.* proved wanting to, 1462.
Fayn, *adv.* gladly, 1, 5230.
Fayn, *ger.* to gladden, 2; Fayne, *v.* be glad, rejoice, 1745; Faynes, *pr. s.* gladdens, 4681; Fayns, *pr. s. impers.* pleases, delights, 4626.
Fayne, *adj.* glad, 2264.
Faynt, *adj.* faint, weak, feeble, 2359, 3717, 4358; (Faynte), 1275, 1738.
Fayntir (Faynter), *adj. comp.* weaker, 2085.
(Fayr when vs likez), let us go on when it pleases us, 740*. See Fare.
Fayre (Faire), *adj.* fair, 2019.
Fayre, *adv.* fairly, honourably, 164.
(Fayrnes), fairness, beauty, 753*.
Faythly, *adv.* faithfully, 3808.
Fazt, *pt. s.* fought, 643; *pt. pl.* 5434.
Febill, *s.* weakness, 4280.
Feble, *adj.* feeble, weak, 1710, 1275; mean, poor, 1516; Febill (Feble), 1013.
Feche, *ger.* to fetch, 884; Feches (Faches), *pr. s.* fetches, 806.
Fedare, *s.* feeder, provider, 2961.
Fede, *ger.* to feed, 1775; Fed, *pp.* fed, 1, 575, 3592; Fedd, 3495; (Fed), 2173; Fede, *imp. pl.* 1 *p.* let us feed, 591.
Fedill, *adj.* (*perhaps*) fatted, well-fed, in good case, 5604. This is a guess; cf. "*Altilis*, fedels" in Wright's Glossaries, ed. Wülcker, col. 190. If the word be of French origin, it may mean 'faithful,' from O.F. *fedel*, Lat. *fidelis*.
Fee, *s.* reward, 2284; Fees, *pl.* offerings, 4466; Fees (Feys), fiefs, 1847; To fee, i. e. as a tribute, 5139.
Feete, *pl.* feet, 844, 4168; (Fete), 2852; (Fote, *sing.*), 1360; Feet, 199.
Feete (Feetez), *prob. for* Feetes, *pl.* (cf. the Dublin MS.), feats, deeds, works, acts, 3105.
Feetis, *pr. s.* acts; Feetis him forth, acts beyond him, surpasses him in feats, 3989. See *feted* = acted, behaved, in Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knight, 1282. From *feet*, sb. See Fetid.
Feetles, *s.* a vessel, small vat, 1350. See *fetles* in Stratmann.
Feetly, *adv.* well, excellently, 4219; Feetely, 3694.

(Feffys), *pr. s.* enfeoffs, 2793.
(Feght), *s.* contest, fight, 910, 2270.
(Feghtyn), *pr. pl.* fight, 2042.
(Feghys), *pr. s.* fastens, 1369. A.S. *fégan*; see *fęzen* in Mätzner.
Felaw (Felow), fellow, comrade, 864. See Feloze.
(Feld), *s.* field (of battle), 1004.
Feld, *pt. s.* felt, perceived, 3257. See Fele.
Fele, *adj.* many, numerous, 448, 471, 803*, 1005, 1037, 1155, 1215, 2001, 2055, 2071, 3059, 3717. A.S. *fela.*
Fele (Feyle), *pr. pl.* 2 *p. subj.* feel, 2357; (Fele), *for* Feld, *pt. s.* felt, perceived, 3257. See Feld.
Fele, *s.* feeling, perception, *hence* power over oneself, 850.
Feleschip, *s.* company, 4548.
Felire, *adj. comp.* more in number, 2084. See Fele.
Fell, *adj.* furious, 3180; fell, fierce, 613, 906, 3881; (Fell), 1220, 2075; (Fele), 825, 861, 2197; (Feyle), 2279; Fell, destructive, 1756, 5581; terrible, 1697; sharp, cruel, bitter, severe, 91, 1795, 3925, 4165.
Fell, *pt. s.* fell, 56, 550, 1133; happened, 501, 2085, 3063; Him fell, it was fitting for him, 4017; Fell (Felle), *pt. pl.* were born, 2081; Fell, *pt. pl.* (which) fell, 567.
Felle, *v.* fell, kill, 3011; Fellis (Felles), *pr. s.* fells, 1215; Fellis (Felles), *pr. pl.* they fell, 792; Fellid, *pt. s.* felled, 5561; Fellid, *pt. pl.* felled, killed, 1406, 5434; Fellyd, 2055; Fellid, *pp.* overcome, 3550; (Fell), *imp. s.* fell, 1360.
Fellis, *pl.* skins, 5083, 5139; (Fellys), 2766.
Fellis, *pl.* fells, hills, 4046; (Fellys), 1211.
Fellis (Fyllys), *pr. s.* fills, 3065.
Felly, *adv.* savagely, fiercely, boldly, 1053, 2971, 5440; (*miswritten* Fellyd), terribly, 1795; furiously, 3839; bitterly, 3647; (Felly), fiercely, 906; keenly, 1341.
Felons, stern warriors (not in a bad sense), 819*.
Feloure, *s.* foliage, 4821. "*Fueillure*, leaviness, also leaves;" Cotgrave. See the note; and see Feylour.
Felowis, *pr. pl.* follow, 1555.
Feloze (Felow), *s.* companion, equal, 3282. See Felaw.
Felsen (Filson), *ger.* to aid, assist, 829; Felsyn, *v.* perform, fulfil, 5230; Felsen, 2 *pr. pl.* aid, foster, 4669. The same word as *filstnen*, in Ormulum, 6170; from A.S. *fylstan*, to aid.
(Femand), *pr. pt.* foaming, gushing, 1133.
Femony, a country, 5674.
Fen, *s.* clay, 4358.
Fendere (Fender), defender, 1839.
Fendid, *pt. pl.* defended; Fendid of, repulsed, 1031.
Fendis, *pl.* fiends, 4802, 5571.
Fendis, *pr. s.* shifts, makes a shift, 3366. (Doubtful. The right reading is probably *fynis*, i. e. comes to an end, corrupted to *fyndes* in Dubl. MS. See Feyne, Feyned.
Fenix, *s.* phœnix, 4993.)
(Fennder), *s.* defender, 2961.
Fens, *s.* defence, 4753.
Fenyschid (Fenyshyd), *pp.* finished, ended, 2144; Fenyst (Fynyshytt), 1107; (Fenyshit), put an end to, 1766*.
Fer, *adv.* far, by far, 3922. See Fere.
Ferd, *pt. s.* went, 813*; Ferd (Fared), journeyed, 1057; (Faryd), went, 2118; Ferd, 1 *pt. pl.* fared, 3510; went, 1943; *pt. pl.* went, 4966; went about, 5549; (Faired), went, stepped, 2049. See Fare.
Ferd, *s.* host, 5577. A.S. *fyrd.*
Ferd, *adj.* fourth, 3344; (Fourte), 3368.
Ferd, *pp.* afraid, 395, 569, 851, 1443; Ferde, 846; (Ferd), 2447.
Ferd, *s.* fear, terror, 136, 2590.
Ferdfull, *adj.* frightful, terrible, 3036, 750*.
Ferdschip (D. frendshipys), terror, 988.
Fere, *s.* fellow, comrade, companion, 3282, 4078; consort, husband, 397; wife, 434, 497, 2728, 5202, 5350; Feres, *pl.* companions, 5149; Feris, 637, 643, 2409, 3751, 3967. A.S. *geféra.*

Fere, *adj.* far, 136, 217, long hence, 308; far, i.e. outer, 4853.
Fere, *adv.* far, by far, 1738. See Fer.
Fere, *s.* fear, dread, 1167, 1276; danger, 2155.
Fere, *adj.* healthy, 4282. Icel. *fœrr.*
Fere, company; In fere, together, 4123, 5136.
Feree; see In-feree.
Fereles, *adj.* fearless, 4993.
(Ferer), *adv.* farther, 847.
Ferid, *pp.* terrified, 101.
Feris; see Fere, *s.* (p. 368).
Feris, *pr. s.* assembles, provides (for himself), 3592. This verb is perhaps formed from *fere*, sb., a companion. It answers rather (perhaps) to A.S. *geféran*, to go, also to obtain, allied to *geféra*, a 'fere,' than to A.S. *geferian*, to convey. Both are from *faran*, to go.
Ferkis (Ferkez), *pr. s.* sallies, 926. See *ferken* in Mätzner, p. 102. See Farkis.
Ferlied, *pp.* wondered, 4761; Ferlid, astonished, amazed, 4991; Ferlyd (Farlyd), wondered, 3228.
Ferly, *adj.* strange, wondrous, 601, 5083; large, 5577. A.S. *fœrlic*, sudden.
Ferly, *adv.* wonderfully, 4922; strangely, 513; extremely, very, exceedingly, 380, 457, 3189; (Ferly), 3036.
Ferly, *s.* wonder, 395, 501, 925.
Ferlyd; see Ferlied.
Ferme, *adj.* firm, 3259; (Ferme), strong, 1057.
Fermes, *pl.* farms, rents, 4012; (Fermez), 1847.
Fernes (Fernesse), *s.* distance; O fernes (On fernesse), in the distance, 1424.
Ferre, *adj.* far, distant, 210, 1057, 3900.
Ferre (Fere), *adv.* far; To ferre, too far, by too much, 2085.
Ferre, *adj. comp.* farther, more advanced, 633; more, 5460.
Ferre, *adv.* farther, 3492, 3878, 4396; (Ferrer), 1455.
Ferrir, *adv. comp.* further, 4671; Ferrire, 208; Ferryre, 98; (Ferre), 2600.
Ferrom, *adv.* afar; On ferrom, far off, 5520. Cf. A.S. *feorran*, adv.
Ferryn, *adv.* farther, 4312.
Fers, *adj.* fierce, proud, strong, 216, 657, 884, 899, 2007; (Fers), 743*; (Ferce), 1167, 2087, 2357; (Ferse), 836*, 1839. See Firs.
Fersere, *adj. comp.* fiercer, 3922; (Forcer, *for* Fercer), 2031.
Fersly, *adv.* fiercely, 1031, 1406; Fersely (Fersly), 2208; (Fersly), 1053.
Feruent, *adj.* hot, 3871.
Fesike, *s.* physic, 4611.
Fesisiane (Fysycyan), physician, 2554.
(Fessid), *prob. for* Feffid, *pp. as adj.* enfeoffed, 2320. See below.
Fest, *pp. as adj.* established, set, 2320. See above. (Perhaps for *feft*, i. e. enfeoffed.)
Feste, *s.* feast, 480; Fest, 821, 856, 2946; (Feste), 825, 1828; company, 492; Festis, *pl.* feasts, 3742.
Festes, *pr. s.* fastens, 5518; Festis, *pr. s.* holds him fast (?), 3366 (but prob. an error for *fraystes*, as in Dub. MS.); Fest, *pr. pl.* fasten, set, 2230; Fest, 1 *pr. s. subj.* (if I) fasten, (if I) set, 2470; Festid, *pt. s.* fastened, 5307; Fest, *pt. pl.* fastened, plighted, 1259; Feste (Fest), *pp.* fastened, 2972.
Festid, *pp.* feasted, 1.
Festing (Festynyng), *s.* fastening, 2590; (Festyng), support, lit. fastening, firm hold, 2482.
Fete, *pl.* feet, 133, 505, 779*, 850, 1135, 1348, 2482, 3946; feet, i. e. heels (in departing), 3246. Cf. the phrase 'to shew a fair pair of heels.'
Fete, *s.* action, movement, lit. feat, 30; feat, doings, 4366; (Fetez), *pl.* feats, 817*.
Fetelakis (Fete-lakez), *pl.* fetlocks, 2049.
Feþir, *s.* plumage, 5604; Fethirs, *pl.* feathers, 4985.
Fethirhame, *s.* clothing or covering of feathers, 3694; Fethire-hames, *pl.* plumage, 380, 2710. A.S. *feðerhama.*

Fetid, *pp.* fashioned, made, 4356, 4633. O.F. *faitier*, to arrange (Godefroy); from O.F. *fait*, sb. See Feetis.
Fetoure, *s.* feature, fashion, make, 2959; Fetour, feature, 600.
(Fett), *ger.* to fetch, 884.
Fettild, *pp.* prepared, 626; (Feteld), fitted, 2995.
Feuire (Feuer), *s.* fever, 2546; Feuyre, 4279. *Written* ffeuyre; *the* ff *is merely the* (*sole*) *way of writing the capital letter.*
Fewe, *adj.* few, 251, 501, 654, 2061.
Fewis. *for* Fewist, *adj. superl.* fewest, 3738. See Fewist.
Fewist; At þe fewist, at least, 3599.
Fewlis, *pl.* birds, 3690.
Fewtire (Fewtre), *s.* rest for a lance, 2621. O.F. *fautre*, *feutre*, in Godefroy.
Fey, *adj.* dying, fated to die, ready to die, 1215, 2055, 2087, 4002*; (Faye), 1034; Fey, dead, 2153, 2323, 4018, 4781, 5371, 5561. Icel. *feigr*. See Fay.
Feyle, *adj.* many, 2055; (Fele), 2460, 3268.
Feylour, *s.* foliage, 5004. See Felour.
Feyne, *v.* feign, 1745; Feynys (Fenys) *pr. s.* 2 *p.* feignest, assumest, 2242; Feyned (Fenyd), *pp.* feigned, pretended, 715, 2197.
Feyne, *error for* Fyne, *imp. s.*; Fyne of = cease from, 3458. See below.
Feyned, *pt. s. error for* Fynyd (*as in* Dubl. MS.), ended, died, 3100. The same error recurs in l. 3458.
Feynes, 2 *pr. s.* dost faint, art discouraged, 101. O.F. *faindre*, 'hésiter, manquer de courage'; Godefroy.
Feȝt, *ger.* to fight, 217, 910; *v.* 3767; (Feght), *v.* 2208; Feȝtis (Feghtez), *pr. s.* 1401, 2039; Feȝtis (Foghten, *pt. pl.*), *pr. pl.* fight, 1262, 1441; (Fighten), 2228; Feȝtand, *pres. pt. as adj.* fighting, 91; (Feghtand), 2080; (Feghtyng), 1315; (Fightand), 2535.
ffeuyre. See Feuyre.
ffurrers. See Furrers.
Ficesyens, *pl.* physicians, 4363.
Fiches, *pr. s.* fixes, 1369, 4853 (see the note); Ficchid, *pt. s.* fixed up, 5556; *pp.* fixed, 4641; Fichid, *pp.* stuck, 4372. O.F. *ficher*.
Fifte, *ord.* fifth, 3901; Fift, 3372.
Fight, *s.* fighting, 817*.
Fight, *s.* fight, 2051. An error for *sight:* note the alliteration.
Figour, *s.* figure, form, 360.
Fild, *s.* field, *also* field of battle, 450, 454; (Feld), 926, 961, 1238; (Felde), 770, 819; Filde, 500, 2061; Fildis, *pl.* 4136.
Filetts, *pl.* fillets, 4338.
Filies, *Lat.* Philonis, 5497.
Filisphire (Philosofre), philosopher, 2347.
Fill, *ger.* to fulfil, grant, 3173; (Fylle), to fulfil, 2660; Fillis, *pr. s.* fills, 56; fulfils, 547; (Fillez), fills, 1661.
Fill, *s.* fill, 4761; (Fyll), 3228.
Filling, *s.* the being full, 4265.
Filour, *s.* thread-work, filagree-work, 3690. F. *filure*, a spinning.
Findis (Fyndez), *pr. s.* finds, 1125, 2034.
Finely, *adv.* well, 5139.
Fineschid, *pp.* finished, 3900.
Fingire, finger, 4674.
Fire, *s.* fire, 558, 4167; (Fyre), 2230; A fire, on fire, 2470.
Fire (Fyre), *ger.* to set on fire, 2217; Fired (Fyryd), *pp.* set on fire, 2478.
Firment, *s.* firmament, 3363; Firmament, 30.
Firmes (Fermes), *pr. s.* fastens, makes firm, 1369.
Firs (Fers), *adj.* fierce, 770, 2961. See Fers.
First, *adj.* first, 657; (Frist), 893, 1429; Firste, 375.
First (Frist), *adv.* first, 1366, 2423; first of all, 1712.
Fisch, *s.* fish, 4282; Fischis, *pl.* 4270, 5083.
Fist, *s.* fist, hand, 4674; (Fistez), *pl.* 799.
Fitt, *s.* fit, division, canto, passus, 4018, 4714, 5626; (Fytt), 3203; Fittis, *pl.* 3473. Cf. A.S. *fittan*, to sing.
Fiȝt (Fight), *ger.* to fight, 759;

Fiȝtis (Feghtez), *pr. s.* 1225, 1301; Fiȝtis (Feght), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* fight ye, 1034.
Fiȝt, *s.* fight, 1004; fighting, 3495; battle, 418, 3550. For the second *fiȝt* in l. 3550, read *folk;* see the note.
Flabband, *pres. part.* flapping, 4807. See Flappid.
Flaggis, *pl.* flakes, 4165. Lowl. Sc. *flag*.
Flames, *pr. s.* burns, flames, 558; Flammand, *pr. pt.* flaming, inflaming, 1133; Flamband, *pres. part.* flaming, glowing, 3690.
Flammes, *pl.* flames, 5574. See Flawmes.
Flandres, Flanders, 5674.
Flane, *pl.* arrows, 3839; Flanes, 2210; Flanis, 5448; Flanys, 3045. A.S. *flán*, pl. arrows; *flan-es* is a double plural. See Flayne, Flonys.
Flange (Flonge), *pt. s.* flung, 1348.
Flappid, *pt. pl.* flapped, 5440.
(Flasshed), *pt. s.* flashed, rushed suddenly, 1133.
Flat (Flatt), *adv.* flat, 1135.
Flaw, *s.* flake, mass of snow, 1756. See Flaggis.
Flawmes, *pl.* flames, 3871, 4784. See Flammes.
Flay, *ger.* scare away, 5448; *v.* terrify, 110; Flays, *pr. s.* appeases, lit. drives or frightens away, 4608. "To flay, *terrere;*" Cath. Anglicum.
(Flayne), *pl.* arrows, 1767*. See Flane.
Flee, *v.* flee, 988; Flees (Fleen), *pr. pl.* flee, go, 3180; Fled, *pt. s.* fled, 136.
Flees (Fleys), *s. pl.* flies, 3011.
Flekirs, *pr. s.* flutters, 505. A.S. *flicerian*.
Fleme, *v.* banish, 300. A.S. *flýman*.
Flesche, flesh, 569; (Fleche), 1006.
Fleschely, *adv.* carnally, 308.
Flete, *s.* train, host, 803*. Cf. E. *fleet*. See Flote.
Flett (Flete), hall, 821. A.S. *flet*, a floor, a house, a hall.
Fleȝtirs, *pr. s.* flutters, 505. See Flekirs, Fliȝtir.
Flinges, *pr. s.* hurls, shoots, 3839; rushes, darts, 3967; (Flyngez), rushes, 1218. See Flonge.
Flisch (Flechett, *pt. s. subj.*), *pr. s. subj.* may bend, may give way, 1372. F. *fléchir*.
Flitt, *v.* remove, advance, 4861; Flittis, *pr. s.* removes, 3784; (Flittes), 2173, 2439; Flites (Flyttes), 3184. Cf. Icel. *flytja*.
Fliȝand, *pres. pt.* flying, 380.
Fliȝt, *s.* flight, 110, 508, 5521; (Flyȝt), 1236; *miswritten* Filȝt (Flyght), 2788; sudden blast, 4143; On fliȝt, to flight, 3905.
Fliȝtir, *s.* flight, 3944.
Fliȝt-loomes (Flyght-lomes), *pl.* implements of flight, means of flight, 2710. A.S. *lóma*.
Flode, *s.* flood, sea, 558, 2460; river, 2119, 3814; water, 56; flood (of tears), 1133; (Flodez), *pl.* floods, 1350. See Fludis.
Flode, *error for* Fynd (see note), 1 *pr. s.* find, 4734.
Flode-ȝatis (Flode-ȝates), *pl.* floodgates, 1856.
Flokkis (Flokkez), *pl.* flocks, 2533.
Flonge owt, *pt. s.* rushed out, 831*. See Flinges.
(Flonys), *pl.* arrows, 3045. See Flane.
Florantis, *pl.* florins, 3820. (The Lat. has qui *aurum* eius portabant, which seems to have suggested this translation.) The right form is rather *florencis*. Mätzner (s. v. *florin*) gives examples of the pl. *florences* and *floranse*. Hence "with his florantis" means "with his florins," i. e. to carry his florins or money. See Florentis.
Flore, *s.* floor, 3220; (Floure), 1348; Flores, *pl.* floors, flat surface, 4168.
Florentis, *pl.* (*read* with florentis), florins, 4074; Florens, 819*. See Florantis, and cf. 3820.
Florischt, *pp.* overgrown, 4717; Floryscht, flowered, adorned, 4379.
Flosches (Flosshez), *pl.* pools, 2049. See *Flosche* in Halliwell; cf. prov. E. *floss*, as in 'The Mill on the Floss.'
Flote, *s.* (lit. fleet), armament, host,

3592; company, 1210, 1758, 1943, 2001, 2264, 4871; Flote (Flete), company, 1196, 1581; band of men, 770. Icel. *floti*, a raft, a fleet. See Flete.
Floum, *s.* river, 2898. See Flum.
Floure, *s.* flower, 1007; profit, 2603; victory, 500, 819, 3982; flour, 3822; Floures (Flourez), *pl.* flowers, 1539.
(Flowe), *pr. pl.* flow, 1350.
Floȝe, *pt. s.* flew, 503, 508; *pt. pl.* flew, 3936, 4784, 5574; Floȝen, *pt. pl.* fled, 1392.
Floȝes (Flowes), *pr. s.* flows, 2053.
Fludis (Flodez), *pl.* floods, waters, 1155. See Flode.
Flum (Flume), *s.* river, 2118; Flumme, 3829, 4739; Flummes (Flomes), *pl.* rivers, 2595. O.F. *flum*. See Floum.
Flynt, flint, rock, 4447.
Fode, *s.* food, meat, 2, 1174, 3497, 4605, 4723; Fodis, *pl.* food, kinds of food, 4302, 5426.
Fode, *s.* child, i. e. one who is fed, 270. (Not uncommon.)
Fodeles, *adj.* foodless, without food, 2155.
(Foes), *pl.* foes, 810. See Faa.
Foke, *s.* folk, 3053. See Folk.
Folawand, *pres. pt.* following, 803*; (Folowand), 1248.
Fold, *s.* earth, the earth, 3, 30, 251, 312, 429, 792, 1135, 2502, 4636; land, 3105; ground, 2087; (Falde), 1641; On fold, on the battle-ground, 3623.
Fold-ward, earthward, 3363.
Fole, *s.* foal, horse, 133, 808, 1218, 1236, 743*, 753*; Foles, *pl.* 805*; (Folez), 2049, 2155. A.S. *fola*. See Foole.
Fole, *s.* fool, 1766*, 1990.
Folewis (Folowez), *pr. s.* follows, 1860.
(Folez), *pl.* follies, 1766*.
Folite, *s.* folly, foolishness, 5366.
Folk, people, 1; Folke, 91, 375, 454, 591, 1174, 2084, 5561; *written* Fokke, 5311; Foke, 3053.
Folowe, *v.* follow, 640; Foloȝe (Folow), *ger.* to follow, 829; Folowis, *pr. s.* follows, 14; Fologhes, 4569; Foloweth, 736*; Foloȝes (Folows), 2250; Folowis, follows (*perhaps an error for* Flowis, flows), 1350; Foloȝe, *pr. pl.* (they) follow, 3829; Foloȝes (Folows), 2080; Folowis (Folows), 1783; Folow (Flowen), *pr. pl.* follow, go (*but an error for* flow *or* flowen, fled), 1697; Folowid (Foloued), *pp.* followed, 1675; Folowand, *pres. pt.* following, 1758, 3473; Foloȝand (Folowand), 3268.
Foly, *s.* folly, 736*, 2470, 4641.
Fon (Fonne), *s.* fool, 2944. So in Chaucer.
Fonde, *v.* advance, 3492, 4701; Fonde, *ger.* to go, 2210; Fondis, *pr. s.* attempts, endeavours, 4753; Fondis, *pr. s.* goes forward, advances, 2502, 4716; (Fonndez), 2129; Fondis, goes, 5579; (Fondes), goes, 2311; (Fonndez), goes, 1856; Fonde, *pr. pl.* explore, 4871; Fondand, *pres. pt.* going, 5277. A.S. *fandian*. See Fonndis, Founde.
Fonden (Founden), *pp.* found, 3144; Fondyn, 2171.
Fonden, *pp.* founded, 4641. Miswritten for *fonded;* the pp. *fonden* can only mean 'found.' See above.
Fondere, founder, 4711.
Fone, *adj.* few, 3180. Stratmann suggests that the form should be *foue;* but we also find *fon;* and *u* (= *v*) is never a *final* letter.
Fonges, 2 *pr. s.* receivest, 3101; (Fongez), *pr. s.* takes, 819; Fonge, *pt. pl.* took, 3634. A.S. *fón*.
Fonndis, *pr. s.* advances, 2439; (Fonndez), 2114. See Fonde.
Fonned, *adj.* fond, foolish, 5513. See Fon.
Foole, *s.* foal, horse, 5588; (Fole), 2879, 3032; Fooles (Folez), *pl.* horses, 3072. See Fole.
For, *prep.* on account of, because of, 169, 1164, 1801; as, as being, 35; from, 285; in spite of, 4196; as a defence against, to prevent, 747*, 3959.

For, *conj.* because, 2136, 2478, 2651, 4013; forasmuch as, 3550; for, 138, 173; in order that, so that, 141.
For to, to (*with gerund*), 147, 160, 217, 313, &c.
For-bede, *imp. s.* forbid, 5590.
Forbod, *s.* prohibition, 4154.
Force, force, strength, 1006, 1443, 1738, 3989; (Forse), 850; Na force, it is no matter, 471.
Forcelett, *s.* fortress, defence, 4358. See Forslet.
Forces (Forcez), *pr. s.* matters, 2001; Forced, *pt. s. subj.*; Him forced, it would signify to him, 5371; Forced (Forsyd), *pp.* compelled, 2659.
Fore, *pt. s.* fared, 457. See Fare, *v.*
Forelange, *s.* furlong, 2898, 3065, 3967; Forelang, *as pl.* 5460. See Forlange.
Forfet, *pp.* forfeited, done amiss, 471.
For-feȝtils, *pr. s.* appears lean (?), 4401. Apparently from the verb *fetill*, to fettle, prepare, set in order, with the prefix *for-*, giving it a sinister sense; hence *for-fettle*, to disorder, to mar, which is here used in the intransitive sense, 'to seem marred' or 'to seem disordered,' to be out of condition.
For-foȝten, *pp.* exhausted with fighting, 3917; (For-fouughten), 1271.
Forgais, *pr. s.* forgoes, gives up, 188.
For-gatt, *pt. s.* forgot, 3276.
For-geue (Forgyfe), 1 *pr. s.* forgive, 2434.
Forge[f]nes, *s.* forgiveness, 3525.
Forgid, *pp.* fabricated, made, 3346; Forged, 3703; (Forgett), 1542, 1590; (Forgyd), 2995.
For-helid (Foreheld), *pp.* covered over, 1063. A.S. *helan*.
Forlange, *pl.* furlongs, 3833. See Forelange, Furelange.
Formast, *adj. superl.* furthest, extremest, lit. foremost, 4102.
Formed, *pt. s.* made, 1611.
Forne, in front, 3925.
Fornicacion, fornication, 4485.
Forrayouris, *pl.* foragers, scouts, 2171.
For-quy, why, wherefore, 4584; Forqui, 4325.
Forsake, *ger.* to give up, 2840; Forsaken, *pp.* 824.
Forsen (Frosyn), *pp.* frozen, 2883.
Forslet, *s.* stronghold, fortalice, 3834. See Forcelett.
For-sothe, *adv.* of a truth, forsooth, verily, 665, 2808; Forsothe, 498; Forsoth, 1070.
For-sworn (Forsworne), *pp.* forsworn, 1465.
Forthe (Forth), *adv.* forth, 827; Forth, 371; (Forth), 749, 732*.
Forthe (Forth), *v.* afford, 1774. A.S. *forðian*.
Forthi, *conj.* therefore, 3465; Forþi, 241, 1012, 4279; on that account, 4609; wherefore, 1767.
Forthing-dole, *s.* fourth part, quarter, 3844. Lit. 'farthing-deal.'
For-thinkis (For-thynkez), *pr. s. impers.*; Him for-thinkis, it repents him, 1464.
Forthire, *adv.* further, 523; (Forther), 1907, 1989; (Ferþer), 2314; Forthere (Ferther), 1693.
Forthire (Furthers, *error for* Furthere), *v.* further, help, assist, 2700; (Forther), *ger.* to help, 1948.
Fortoun (Forton), fortune, 1851, 1856.
For-top, forehead, 319.
For-trauailid (For-traveld), *pp.* worn with travail, 1009.
(For-tyred), *pp.* tired out, 1009.
Forward (Forwardez, *pl.*), *s.* agreement, 1259.
Forward (Forthward), forward, 847.
Forwith (Forewith), *prep.* until, 1675; before, 861, 2242; in presence of, 15.
Fosterd, *pt. s.* brought up, 2729; Fostard, *pp.* nourished, 3495.
Fostring, *s.* fostering, bringing up, 575.
Fote, foot, 1236; A fote (On fote), a single foot, one foot, 2423; (Fute), 3220; (Fote), 844; On fote, on foot, 2250; Fotes, *pl.* feet, 4851; *miswritten* Fortes, 199. The curious plural *fotes* (= foots), occurs also in Sir Gawain and the Grene Knight.

Foteman, *s.* foot-soldier, 3175; Fotemen, infantry, 3059.
Fote-thike (Fute-thyke), of a foot thick, 2883.
Foule, *s.* fowl, bird, 4993; Foules, 4271. See Fowell.
Foule, *adj.* unclean, 3936.
Foule, *adv.* foully, 746; in an ugly manner, dirtily, 4082.
Foules, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* trample, tread on, 4626; Foulis, 4681.
Foulire (*for* Foule hire), tread her, i. e. the town, 1360. See below.
Foun, *pp.* found, 159; (Funde), 3259.
Founce, *s.* bottom, 4130. O.F. *fons* (Burguy); from Lat. *fundus*. See Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
Founde, *v.* go, 5529; advance, 5038; Found, go, 5230; (Found), go, 2879; Foundis, *pr. s.* marches, advances, proceeds, 450, 2423; (Fundes), departs, 3246; Foundes (Fondytt, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* goes forward, 1145; Founde, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst go, 4936; Foundid (Foundez, *pr. s.*), *pt. s.* went, took, 1236; Foundid, *pp.* gone, 169. See Fonde.
Foundid, *pp.* founded, built, 5291; (Fondyn, *wrongly*), 1649.
Founding, *s.* going, advance, 4154.
Foure, *num.* four, 633, 2133, 764*; On alle foure, on all fours, 5277.
Fourme, *s.* manner, way, 172, 4219; form, shape, 312, 359, 613; (Forme), 987, 1708; disposition, 1276.
Fourmed, *pt. s.* formed, prepared, 2413; (Formede), made, 1739; Fourmed, *pp.* formed, made, 3, 275, 576, 3459, 4616.
(Fourte), *ord.* fourth, 3368.
(Fourth), *adv.* forth, 887.
Fowell (Foule), *s.* bird, 2264 (alluding to a common proverb, "as fain as fowl of the day"); Fowlis, *pl.* birds, 5448, 5589; Fowles, 3146; Fowls, 3944. See Foule.
(Fowly), *adv.* foully, evilly, greatly, 934.
Foxes, *pl.* foxes, 3932.
Foȝten (Foughten), *pt. pl.* fought, 2460; (Feghten), 2375; (Feyten), 2090.
Fra, *prep.* from, 56, 136, 139, 173, 296, 332, &c.; (Fro), 3245; from the time, 2323; Fra þat, from the time when, 2019, 2373; Fra now, from this time, 1094.
Fraid, *pp.* afraid, 3458. See Frayed.
Fraist (Fraysted), *pp.* enquired about, 2019. Icel. *freista*, to make trial of. See Fraystes.
Franche (Fraunches), *s.* freedom, franchise, 917. See Fraunches.
(Franes), *pr. s.* enquires, asks, 832*; 2 *pr. s.* askest, 2305. See Frayne.
Frantites (Francides), the name of a country, 1057.
Fraunche, *adj.* without flaw, excellent, 4356. Cf. E. *free-stone*.
Fraunches, *s.* franchise, freedom, 4617; (Franchez), 2486; Fraunchis, *s.* benefit, good quality, 4684; Fraunches, *as pl.* liberties, 4012.
Fraward, *prep.* from the direction of, away from, 1335, 1759; (Froward), 1289.
Frayed, *pp.* frightened, 3567; (Frayd), 3036. See Fraid.
Frayne, *v.* enquire, ask, 3837; Frayn (Frayne), *ger.* to ask for, enquire, 2655; Fraynes, *pr. s.* asks, 267, 433, 457; (Franes), 2067; (Franez), 1700; Frayns, 672; Frayned, *pt. s.* enquired, 2305. A.S. *frignan*, Icel. *fregna*.
(Fraystes), *pr. s.* tempts, tries, puts to trial, 3366. See Fraist.
Fre, *adj.* free, 4616; noble, 497.
Freke, *s.* man, 270, 298, 360, 672, 675, 851, 2186, 2642, 813*; Frek, 101; (Freke), 1477, 2659; (Frekes), *pl.* 1992, 3268. A.S. *freca*.
Freke, *adj.* eager, 5521. A.S. *frec*.
Frekild, *adj.* freckled, spotted, 4988.
Frekly, *adv.* quickly, soon, greatly, 1795. (Ill used.)
Frelettis, *pl.* frailties, 3268.
Frely, *adj.* noble, 270; (Frelich), 2728.
Frely, *adv.* freely, liberally, 4012, 785*; courteously, 1695; well, 429; very, 4082.
(Frend), friend, 814*; Frendis, *pl.* 619.
Frendly, *adv.* friendly, 1695.
Frengs, *pl.* fringes, 4338.

Fresche (Fressh), *adj.* new, 891; (Fresh), fresh, 1350; (Freshe), 1007; Fresch, bright, 5604; Fresch (Fresh), *adj.* fresh, 1174, 2766; (Frehsse), fresh, 1235; vigorous, 792, where the Dublin MS. has *fers*.
Freschely, *adv.* eagerly, 3816; Freschly (Freshly), vigorously, 2132; (Fresly), quickly, 923; Freschely (Freshly), boldly, 1031; Freschly, boldly, *or* quickly, 906.
Fresons, *pl.* Frisians, i. e. men in cloth of Frieze, men roughly clad, 1758. F. *frison*, a Frisian; also a cloth of Friesland (Littré).
Fresys, *pr. s.* freezes, 2896.
Fretis, 2 *pr. pl.* fret, vex, irritate, 4400; Freten, *pp.* devoured, 5589.
Frett, *pp.* adorned, decked, covered, 4766; Fret (Frett), 1542. A.S. *frætwian*.
Frettis, *pl.* ornaments, 4338. A.S. *frætwe*.
Freȝt (Friȝt), *pp.* frightened, 1441.
Frigie, Phrygia, 5674; (Frige), 2116.
(Frist), *adv.* first, 805*, 1067; (On þe first), among the first, 2347 (where MS. A. has *on first*).
Frithis, *pl.* friths, forests, woods, 4131.
Frithmen, *pl.* woodmen, men of the wood, 5597.
Fro, *prep.* from, 2691; (Fro), 742*, 842, 1056; *conj.* from the time that, 725*. See Fra.
(From), *prep.* from, 831*.
Frosen, *pp.* frozen, 3063.
Frusch (Frush), *s.* charge, rush, onset, 1215. See the Troy-book.
Frute, *s.* fruit, 4608; offspring, 575; Frutis, *pl.* fruits, 4636; Frutes, 5238; (Frute, *s.*), 2426.
Frynde (Frend), friend, 864; (Frende), 2944; Frynd (Frend), 2720; Fryndis (Frendes), *pl.* 3421; Frynde (Frendes), *pl.* 1258.
Fude (Fode), *s.* food, 2168. See Fode.
(Fulfyll), *imp. s.* fulfil, 3173.
Full, *adj.* full, 56, 65, 66, 112, 358, &c. In l. 1275, the phr. 'full of themselves' seems to mean full of their troubles, full of anxieties. In l. 2168, we have *at the full* = fully.
Full, *adv.* very, 55, 129, 143, 171, 176, 234, &c.; (Ful hey), very high, 779.
(Fully), *adv.* full, 1530.
Fulth, *s.* plenty, abundance, fullness, 2171.
Fundirs (Fonders), *pr. s.* founders, trips up, 846.
Furelange, *pl.* furlongs, 3856. See Forlange.
(Furelenth), *s.* furrow's length, furlong, 2898.
Furrers, *pl.* furs, 4338. O.F. *fourrure*, fur.
Furth, *adv.* forth, 53, 120, 286, 335; far on, 375; forward, 636, 3829; Furthe, forth, away, 333, 408, 621; Furth in with euyn, forth into the even, far advanced in the evening, 3055.
(Furthers), *imp. pl.* assist, 2700.
Fute, *s.* foot, 545. See Fote.
Fuyll (Ful), *adv.* full, very, 2197. See Full.
Fyaunce (Fiance), confidence, 1641.
Fyfe, five, 633.
Fyfte, fifth, 3345.
Fyftene, fifteen, 1078.
Fyfti, *adj.* fifty, 3785.
Fygis, *pl.* figs, 4821.
Fygour (Figour), *s.* figure, 2867; appearance, 312; Figoure, 613.
Fyld (Feld), *s.* field, 1943.
(Fyll), 1 *pr. pl. subj.* may fill, 2168*.
Fynde, *ger.;* To fynde, to be found, 3799; Fynd, 1 *pr. s.* I find, 24, 272, 300, 308, 643; Fyndis (Fyndes), *pr. s.* finds, 821, 1315, 1656; (Fyndez), 962, 1078, (Fyndes hym), *pr. s.* finds himself, finds out his true value, comes to himself, 3366.
Fyne, *adj.* fine, 1542, 1590; good, 814*; fine, clear, transparent, 4853.
Fyne, *adv.* finely, 2766.
Fynely, *adv.* finely, 3220.
Fynes, *pr. s.* finishes, ends, dies, 4002*; ends, 740*, 5626; Fyne, *imp. s.* cease, 1990; (Fynyd), *pt. s.* ended, died, 3100; Fyne,

imp. s. cease, leave off trying, 2720.
Fynesch, *ger.* to finish, to put an end to, 3976 (it means—it suits him better to finish the fight himself); Fynyst (Fynyshit), *pt. s.* finished, ended, died, 808; (Fyneshit), *pp.* accomplished, 797*; Fynyst (Fynyshyt), finished, 687.
Fynest, *adj. superl.* finest, 3368.
Fynger, finger, 1089; Fyngirs, *pl.* 673.
(Fyre), fire, 750*; Fyris, *pl.* 3859; see Bale-fyre.
Fyrmament, firmament, 567.
Fyrs, *adj.* fierce, 418. See Fers.
Fysche-hale (Fyssh-hole), *adj.* as sound as a fish, 2575. Cf. "As sound as a trout," and "as sound as a roach"; see the note, p. 303.
Fyschis, *pl.* fishes, 3947.
Fysyke, *s.* physic, 4280.
Fytt, *s.* fit, canto, 740*. See Fitt.
Fyue (Fyfe), *num.* five, 1196, 1372, 3175.
Fyȝt, *s.* fight, 450.

Gaa, *ger.* to go, 5515; (Go), depart, 1826; to move about, 5296; Ga, *ger.* to go, 966; (Go), 2873; Gaa, *v.* proceed, 636; Ga (Go), *v.* go, 1717; Ga (Gay), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* I go, 1671; Ga, 2 *pr. pl.* go, 459; Ga, *imp. s.* 5406; Gaes (Gose), *pr. s. refl.* goes, 3016; Gais him (Gase), goes, 1451; Gais him vp, goes up, 535.
Gadirs (Gaders), name of a place, 1200, 1243, 1335.
Gafe, *pt. pl.* gave, 1070; (Gaue), 742; Gaffe, uttered, 5157.
Gai, *adj.* gay, 3797.
Gaiest, *adj. superl.* gayest, 5124.
Gailis (Galays), *pl.* galleys, 2474. See Galays.
Gais; see Gaa.
Gais, *an error* (*probably*) *for* Girt, *pp.* struck, 3645. Cf. *thurgh-girt* in Chaucer.
Galawis (Galouse), *pl.* gallows, 1813.
Galays, *pl.* galleys, 2456; Gales, 65. See Gailis.
Gale, *s.* gale, a kind of plant, 4094. "Gayle, *mirtus;*" Cath. Anglicum, q. v.
Gales (Galez), *pr. s.* speaks, 2257; (Galet), *pp.* announced (lit. sung, said), 798*. Icel. *gala.*
Galt, *s.* boar-pig, 4743. See *Galte* in Cath. Anglicum.
Gamarody, *name*, 5491.
Gamen (Gamme), *s.* sport, amusement, 2280, 2604; Gammen (Gamen), 2272; (Gamez), *pl.* 2259; (Gammez), 1773.
Gamen, *v.* play, sport, 4370.
Gan, *pt. pl.* did, 201.
Gane, *pp.* gone, 5553; dead, 4008; Gane many winter, many years ago, 692, 3556.
Gang, *ger.* to go, 5535; Gange, 1257; *v.* 5047.
Gangem, Ganges, 4188; Gangan, 4715.
Gapand, *pres. part.* gaping, 3870.
Gardens, *pl.* guardians, 3409.
Garettis, *pl.* watch-towers (lit. garrets), 5601; Garettis (Garrates), 1417.
Garisons, *pl.* stores, treasures, 4430, 5631; (Garison), 1809. O.F. *garison.* See Garsons.
Garland, *s.* garland of victory, 818; Garlands, *pl.* 4599.
Garment, *s.* garment, 1588.
Garnad, Granada, 5667.
Garnyscht, *pp.* garnished, 4451; Garnest (Garneshed), adorned, 1533.
Garsons (Garisons), *pl.* rewards, 1662; Garsons, tributes, sums, 1074. See Garisons.
Garysons, *s. pl.* (Garyson, *sing.*), garrisons, 3015. See Garisons.
Gas; see Gase, Gaa.
Gasa (Gaza), Gaza, 1451, 1453.
Gascoyne, Gascony, 5667.
Gase, *pr. s.* goes, 631; Gase him, goes, 332, 1183; Gase (Goys), 1285; (Goyse), 3216; Gas (Gays), 1648; Gase, *imp. pl.* go ye, 3522.
Gast, *s.* spirit, 4065; life, 726*.
Gat, 1 *pt. s.* begat, 724*; Gatt, *pt. s.* 1190; Gate, *pt. pl.* got, 3653.
Gate, *s.* way, road, passage, 3339, 4625, 812*; Gate vp, ascent, 5636; Gatis, *pl.* roads, 143; paths, tracks, 4830; (Gatez), streets, 1519; His gate, on its own way, in its own direction, 1310.
Gaude (Gaud), *s.* trick, 2966; Gaudis (Gawdes), *pl.* gauds, ornaments, vanities, 2732.
(Gaue), *pt. s.* gave, 726*; Gaue (Gafe), 1778.
(Gay), *adj.* gay, 790*; Gay, *adv.* gaily, 1533.
Gayly, *adv.* gaily, 4911; Gaile, beautifully, 3346.
Gaynes, *pr. s.* avails, 181; Gayn, *pr. pl.* advance, promote, 2746. Icel. *gagna*, to help, be of use.
Gaynest, *adj. superl.* nearest, shortest (way), 3484; At the gaynest (ganest), by the nearest way, 1137, 1318. See below.
Gaynir, *adj. comp.* nearer, 5512. Icel. *gegn*, near, convenient.
Gedire (Gedir), *v.* gather, 2531; (Geder), 1809; Gedire (Geder), *ger.* 2101; (Gedder), *ger.* 3129; Gedirs, *pr. s.* gathers, 1334; Gedirs him, gathers for himself, 911; Gedirs, *pr. pl.* gather, 3958; (Gerdyn, *for* Gedryn), 2054; Gedird, *pt. s.* gathered, 3480; Gedird, *pp.* 338, 5439; (Gederit), 1739; (Gedderyd), 2830.
Geere (Gere), *s.* stuff, gear, provision, 3177.
Geet, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* get, 4468.
Gefe, *ger.* to give, 3772; (Gefe), *v.* 1980; (Gyfe), *v.* 1826; Geffe, *pr. s. imp.* may give, 5254; Gefe, *imp. pl.* 1 *p.* let us give (up), 181; Gefes, *imp. pl.* give, 1035. See Geue.
Gemetry, geometry, 339; Gemetri, 43; *written* Gremetry, 410.
Gemmes, *pl.* gems, 3670; (Gemmys), 978, 1535, 2396; Gemmys, 3224; Gemes, 3951.
Generall, *adj. as s.* a general meeting, 1507.
Genosophis, *pl.* gymnosophists, 4022.
Gentill, *adj.* gentle, 4022; (Gentyll), 705; Gentils, gentry, 3402.
Gentilli, *adv.* skilfully, completely, thoroughly, 43.
Gentill-man (Gentell-man), *s.* gentleman, 2664.
Gere, *s.* gear, dress, 4599; equipment, 824*, 3034; implements, 131; warlike preparation, 2129; trappings for a horse, accoutrements (used of a bridle), 790*; (Gere), dress, 2905; Geris, *pl.* toys, playthings, 1773.
Gernets, *pl.* pomegranates, 4724; Gernetts, 5238.
Gerrethis, *pl.* girths, bands, 5536.
Gers, *pr. s.* makes, 1219, 4441, 4762; causes, 5155; Gert, *pt. s.* made, 5535; caused, 3860; *pt. pl.* made, 5480; Gert make, caused to be made, 191. Icel. *gjöra.*
Gesse, *v.* suppose, 5000; discern, 4216; Gesse, 1 *pr. s.* suppose, imagine, 990, 5632; (Ges), 2732; Ges (Gesse), 577, 2507; Gessis, *pr. s.* supposes, 5512; Geses (Gessed, *pt. s.*), 2071; Gessis (Gessys), *pr. s. refl.* expects, 2670; Gesse, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* suppose, 4495, 4578; Gesses (Gessyn), *pr. pl.* suppose, 2905; Gessid (Gessyd), *pp.* guessed, supposed, 3266.
Gesse, *s.* guess, thought, supposition, 3552.
Gest, *s.* guest, 5254; Gestis, *pl.* 485, 497; bedfellows, 460; (Gestes), guests, 2948.
Gest, *s.* story, 4022.
Gett, *v.* get, 188, 1440; *ger.* to win, 794; Geten, *pp.* begotten, 473, 3578; (Gettyn), 756, 973; won, 1453; Getis, *imp. pl.* get, obtain, 2468.
Gett, *s.* child, one who is begotten, 391, 435, 473, 577.
Geue, *ger.* to give, 5377; Geues (Gyfez), *pr. s.* 1662; Geuys (Gyffez), 1074; Geuyn (Geven), *pt. pl.* gave, 2327; Geuyn (Gefyn), *pp.* given, 1883; Geuyn vp, *pp.* given up, 813. See Gefe.
Gide, *s.* guide, 4953, 5047.
Gidis, *pr. s.* guides, 5387; Gidid, *pp.* guided, 4425.
Gife, *conj.* if, 565.
Giffe, *v.* to give (*but an error for* Giffis, gives), 4184.
Giftis, *pl.* gifts, 3777; (Gyftes), 3128; (Gyftez), 1660, 2027.

Gilden, *adj.* golden, 3667, 4985; Gildin, 5601.
Gile, *s.* guile, treachery, 2574.
Gilid, *pt. s.* beguiled, 417.
Gill-stremes, *pl.* cascades, 3231. (*Wrongly* gylle-stormez *in the* Dublin MS.) Icel. *gil*, a ravine.
Gilt, *s.* guilt, fault, offence, 2384, 2434, 3525; (Gilt), 3213.
Gilt, *adj.* gilt, gilded, 1873; (Gilt), 790*.
Gilt (Giltyd), *pt. s.* offended, 2430; Giltid, *pp.* sinned, 472.
Gilten, *adj.* gilded, 3456, 4451.
Gilty (Gylty), *adj.* guilty, 2574.
Ging, *s.* gang, following, host, company, 3484, 4715; (Genge), 3015; (Gyn), 1213, 2038; Ginge, 3618, 5456; (Geng), 2674; Gingis (Gyng), *pl.* followers, retinue, 1648; companies (of you), 2435. In ll. 1213, 2038, the Dublin MS. has *gyn* = device, plan (wrongly).
Gingere, ginger, 5426.
Girdill, girdle, 181; (Girdyll), 758. See the note to l. 179, p. 288.
Girdis, *pr. s.* strikes, pierces, 1219; (Girdes), 1213; Girdes (Grydes), throws, flings, 2278; Girdis out (Gyrdes oute), bursts out, 3159; Girdis, *pr. pl.* beat, 2474; strike, 796; Girds, strike, spring, leap, 3845; Girdis (Gyrdyn), throw, 2227; Girdis (Girdes), *pr. pl.* strike, 1417; Girdis vp (Girdes vp), rush up, climb up, 1435; Girdid, *pt. pl.* burst, rushed, 3231; Gird, *pp.* beaten, 1865; Gird (Girde), struck, 2787; Girdand, *pres. part.* dashing, rushing, 1243. See *gurden* in Mätzner, p. 332.
Girdis, *pr. s. refl.* surrounds himself, 2038. The Dublin MS. has *girdez in*, strikes in, attacks.
Giugne, *s.* June, 3537.
Glaam, *s.* clamour, loud talking, 5504. Icel. *glam*, noise.
Glace (Glas), *s.* ice, 3002.
Glad, *adj.* glad, 1257; Glade (Glad), *adj.* glad, rejoicing, 3244.
Glade, *v.* rejoice, 4370; Gladis, *pr. s.* gladdens, cheers, encourages, 485, 3929; (Gladdes), 966; (Glad), 1 *pr. s. subj.* may please, 724*.
Gladen, *s.* gladdon, a kind of flag or iris, esp. the stinking iris (*Iris fœtidissima*), 4094.
Gladen, *s.* a lucky moment, 131. "A gladen he waytis," he watches for a lucky moment. This is clearly the sense. The Icel. *glaðr* means (1) glad, (2) bright, said of sky or weather. Hence Icel. *glaðna*, to brighten up, said of the weather, from which verb the word here used is derived. Similarly, we have prov. E. (Northern) *gladden*, explained as (1) a glade [E. D. S. Gloss. 1] or (2) a void space free from encumbrances [E. D. S. Gloss. 17], i. e. a clear space, with reference to *space* instead of *time*.
Gladnes (Gladnesse), *s.* gladness, 1971.
Glas, *s.* glass, 4463, 5536.
(Glasynand); see Glyssynand.
Glauir, *s.* glaver, chattering, noise of tongues, 5504. See Mätzner.
Gledis, *pl.* burning coals, glowing or live coals, 226, 3627, 3898; (Gledes), 2474; Gledes, 2975. A.S. *gléd*.
Gleme, *s.* gleam, 2044, 4817.
Glent, *pt. s.* glinted, shone, 4817.
Glesenyd, *pt. pl.* glistened, 3797; Glesenand, *pres. pt.* 603.
Gletirand, *pres. pt.* glittering, 3346.
Glett, *s.* mud, slime, 4516; clay, 4490. See Mätzner.
Glide, *v.* pass, come, 358; Glidis, *pr. s.* glides, flows, 3233; (Glydes), glides, 1310; Glidis (Glad, *pt. s.*), *pr. s.* glides, 2451; Glid, *pp.* glided, 2857; Glidand (Glydand), *pr. pt.* gliding, 1079.
Glitered, *pt. s.* glittered, 4957; Glitirand, *pres. part.* 3797; Glittirand, 3686; Glitterand, 5536.
Glode, *s.* way, path, track, road, 1334. A.S. *gelád*.
Glorand, *pres. pt.* staring, gazing fixedly, glaring, 4552, 4728; gleaming, 3627. Icel. *glóra*, to stare, glare like a cat's eyes.
Glori, *s.* glory, 1730; (Glory), 1983; Glorie (Glory), 1883, 1971.

Gloriosest (Gloriest), *adj. superl.* most glorious, 1611.
Glorius, *adj.* glorious, 2776.
Glotony, *s.* gluttony, 3265.
Gloue (Glofe), *s.* glove, 1984; Gloues, *pl.* gloves, 2767; *see* Nethire.
Gloumes, *pr. s.* becomes gloomy, is overcast, 4142. Cf. E. *glum*.
(Glowys), *pr. s.* glows, 3368.
Gluttis, *pl.* gluttons, 4552. So in P. Plowman's Crede. O.F. *glout*; Roquefort.
Glyffe, *ger.* to dazzle, glare, look bright, 4599. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *gliff*, a glimpse.
Glyssynand (Glasynand), *pres. part.* glistening, glittering, 3015.
Gnaistes, *pr. s.* gnashes, 5321.
(Go), 1 *pr. s.* go, 2280. See Gaa.
Gobet, *s.* gobbet, morsel, 4516; (Gobett), piece, 1310.
Goblets, *pl.* goblets, 3701; Goblettis, 5131; Gobletis (Goblettes), 2935; Goblettis (Goblettez), 2948.
Goblyn, *s.* goblin, 5491.
Gode (God), *s.* God, 329, 1073, 2905; Godis (Goddes), *gen.* God's, 876; Gods (Godez), 1591; Godis, *pl.* gods, 307, 5410; Goddis, 271, 5394.
(Gode), *adj.* good, 804*.
Godesses, *pl.* goddesses, 1874.
Godhede, *s.* godhead, 5622.
Godlaik, *s.* goodness, virtue, 4688.
Godness (Gudnes), *s.* goodness, 3270.
Gods (Gudez), *pl.* goods, wealth, 3280.
Gogg, Gog, 5487.
Golanand, *pres. pt.* blowing; hence, rainy, tempestuous, 4796. Cf. Icel. *gola*, *gula*, a fair breeze, *gol*, a breeze; E. *gale*.
Gold, *s.* gold, 276, 436, 607; gold (spurs), 5458 (see the note); (Goldes), *pl.* gold coins, 1847.
Golden, *adj.* golden, 201; (Gold), 1533; Golde, 425.
Gols, *s.* red, gules, a red colour (see the note), 4819.
Gome, *s.* man, 391, 417, 435, 516, 742, 818, 966, 1467, 1691, 2259, 2384, 3276; (Grome), 1190, 1936; Gomes, *pl.* men, 1417, 2054, 3387, 3552; (living) men, 3686; statues of men, 5276; (Gomez), 1657, 1739, 2531; Gomes, *pl. gen.* of men, 4272.
Gone, *pr. pl.* go, 3456.
Gorge, *s.* throat, 3627; Gorg, neck, 4985.
Gorred, *pp.* gored, 3645.
Gose, *pr. s.* goes, 5050.
Goste, *s.* spirit, soul, 4484. See Gast.
Gostid, spiritual, endowed with spirits, 1874.
Gotis, *pl.* streams, 4796. A *gote* is properly a mill-stream; cf. "*goyts* of mills, where the stream passes out;" E. D. S. Gloss. B. 17.
Gouerne (Goueryne), *v.* govern, rule, 3387 (*where the* Ashmole MS. *has* gouner*e*); (Gouern), 1973.
Gouernoure (Gouernour), *s.* governor, 1623, 1936; (Gubernare), 852; Gouerners, *pl.* rulers, 3552.
Goules, gules, red, 4989, 5060; of a red colour, 3368.
(Goys), *pr. s.* goes, 2111.
Grace, *s.* favour, grace, 307, 358, 994; success, glory, 2534; Gracis, *pl.* prayers, lit. thanks, 5394.
(Graceux), gracious, 798*.
Gracious, *adj.* beautiful, 3667; (Graciouse), gracious, 1748, 1844; (Gracieux), favouring, 1964.
Graciousest, *adj. superl.* most handsome, 4909.
Gradid (Gradit), *pp.* degraded, 2430.
Graffis, *pl.* graves, 4451.
Graithe, *v.* prepare (myself) to go, direct (myself), 3522; Graithes (Grathez), *pr. s.* prepares, 3016; Graithes him, arms himself, 911; (Grathez hym), prepares himself, 3159; Graith, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* appoint, 4499; Graithed (Grathed), *pt. pl.* prepared, 1933; Graithid (Grathed), *pp.* arrayed, 1844; Graithis, *imp. pl.* yield, prepare, 1904. Icel. *greiða*. See Grathez.
Graithely (Grathly), *adv.* readily, worthily, 756; Graithly, readily, 201. Icel. *greiðr*.
Graithist (Grethest), *adj. superl.* best prepared, *hence*, richest, 1865. Icel. *greiðr*.
Gramere, grammar, 631.

Granate, *s.* garnet, 3344, 3368.
Grane, *v.* groan, 1219; Granys (Granes), *pr. s.* 717; (Gronys), 3252.
(Grane), *s.* groan, 726*.
Grant (Graunt), *ger.* to grant, to ransom, 3103; (Graunte), *v.* grant, 1671, 1676; Grantis, *pr. s.* grants, 362; Grant (Graunt), *pr. s. subj.* grant, allow, 3125; 2 *pr. pl.* grant, 1826; Grantid, *pp.* granted, 5317. See Graunt.
Granton (Grantum), the river Granicus, 3002, 3016, 3062, 3133; (Gratun), 2882.
Grape, *s.* grape, 2426; (Grope), 1347; Grapis, 3667, 4724, 5239.
(Grase), *s.* grass, 2426.
(Grathez on), *pr. s.* puts on, dons, 790*; (Grathes hym), gets ready, 812*; Grathis (Grathen), *pr. pl.* get ready, 2456; Graþed, *pp.* prepared, ready, 131; Graþid (Grathed), arrayed, 1588; (Grathyd), made, 3387; (Grathed), armed, 1213. See Graithe.
Grattest, *adj. superl.* greatest, 5131.
Graue, *v.* engrave, 201; *ger.* to bury, 1330; Graue, *for* Graues, *pr. s.* buries, 3659; Grauen, *pp.* buried, 3319, 5417; engraved, graven, 436, 1591, 3343; Grauen (Grafen), engraved, 3145.
Grauys, *pl.* graves (*s.* Graue), 2101; Graues (Grafys), 3130.
Graunt, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* grant, 516, 1684, 804*; Grauntis (Grauntez), *pr. s.* 2295; Graunt (*for* Graunted), *pp.* granted, 3296. See Grant.
Graunt, *adj.* great, 1737, 5668; Graunt mercy, many thanks, gramercy, 370, 458.
Graunt, *s.* permission, 990.
(Graunt), *s.* grant, grace, 2387. (Corrupt.)
Gray, gray, 1330, 2044.
Grayd, *adv.* excellently, 3689. Cf. Scot. *graid*, made ready, short for *graithid;* also *grayd* for *grathyd* in lines 3339, 3348.
Grayne, *s.* grain, small portion, 5622; (Grane), grain, seed, 2426; Graynes (Granes), *pl.* seeds, 1984, 2071; granules (?), 3375; grains, spots, 4989; Grayns (Granes), seeds, 2024.
Grayne, *s.* arm (of the sea), branch (of the sea), 2451. Icel. *grein.* See *Grain* in Jamieson.
Grayne, *meaning uncertain*, 2767; *perhaps it means* (skins) dyed in grain. (*Grayue* means a greave, but this hardly helps us.) In fact, we find *greyn* used in the sense of 'stuff dyed in grain' in the Babees Book, p. 178—"wheþur he were saten, sendell, vellewet, scarlet, or *greyn*." Or it may actually mean 'tanned leather'; for Hexham gives a Middle Du. verb *granen*, to tan leather, and *graner*, a tanner; whilst Jamieson gives *grainer*, the knife used by tanners and skinners for stripping the hair from the skins.
Graythe (Grath), *v.* prepare, get ready, 2873; Grayth, 5535; Graythe (Grath), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* direct, 1984; Graythis (Grathez), *pr. s.* gets ready, 3133; Graythes (Grathes), prepares, 2129; Graythis (Grathes) him, *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself, 1453; Graythid, *pt. s.* prepared, 3480; Graythed, *pp.* prepared, 4878; Graythid, formed, constituted, 1874; Graythid (Grathyd), adorned, set, 2935; prepared, 2767; *shortened to* Grayd, prepared, 3339, 3348; Graythe, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* get ready, 5037. Icel. *greiða.* See Graithe.
Graythe, *s.* machine, gear, contrivance, 5518. From the verb.
Graythist, *in comp.* Alþire-graythist, i.e. most excellent (or benevolent) of all, 162. See Graithely.
Grayuyn, *pp.* engraven, 425. See Graue.
Gre, *s.* degree, *hence* victory, 3296 (for *ere* read *is* in this line); (Gree), 3125; prize, 818. See Gree.
Grece, Greece, 852, 994, 1435, 1657, &c.; *written* Grace, 1753.
Grece, *s.* stairs, 535, 5050; Grecis, 332. Grece = *grees*, pl. of *gree*, a step. Grecis = *gree-s-es*, a double plural.

Grecen (Greken), *gen. pl.* of the Greeks, 3216.
Gredely, *adv.* greedily, eagerly, 1435.
Gree, *s.* victory, superiority, 3518, 3651, 3756, 5456; (Gre), 994, 1883, 2278. O.F. *gre*, from Lat. *gradus.* See Gre.
Grefe, *s.* grief, 1285; harm, 4157; Gref (Grefe), grief, trouble, 2435.
(Grefully), *adv.* extremely, 973. Put for *gref-fully*, i.e. grievously.
Grege (Grig), *s.* grig, cricket, 1753.
Greke, the Greek language, 5009.
Grekin, Grecian, 5504, 5639.
Grekis (Grekez), *pl.* Greeks, 986, 1179, 1279, &c.
Greme, *s.* anger, 4157. Icel. *gremi.*
(Gremly), *adj.* terrible, 726*.
Grene, *adj.* green, 5536.
Grese, *s.* grass, herbs, 338.
Grete, *s.* a kind of stone, 1330. Properly 'gravel' (A.S. *gréot*); but see examples in Mätzner, s. v. *greot*, of its use for sepulchral purposes.
Grete, *adj.* great, 26, 65, 358, 852, 1809; great with child, 459; (Grett), 1873; great (one), 1347; Gret (Grete), 1254; (Gret), 1352.
Grete, *ger.* to weep, 872, 5042; *v.* 3159; Gretis, *pr. s.* 3320; (Gretes), 1285; (Grettez), 973; Grete, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* weep, 4370; Gretis, *pr. pl.* 155. A.S. *grétan.*
(Grethest), *adj. superl.* most excellent, 1591. (But read *grettest*, as in the Ashmole MS.)
Gretis, *pr. s.* greets, 79, 535; (Gretes), 1488; *pr. pl.* 1603; Grete (Gret), 1 *pt. s.* saluted, 1623.
Gretly, *adv.* greatly, 472; (Grettly), 2746.
Gretter, *adj. comp.* greater, 5300; Grettir, 1334; (Gretter), 1267.
Grettest, *adj. superl.* greatest, 271; (Grethest, *wrongly*), 1591; (Gretest), 1904, 1911; Grettist, 307.
Grettis, *pl.* great (men), 3651.
Gretyng, *s.* weeping, 3238.
Greues, *pr. pl.* pain, 2012.
Greues, *pl.* greaves, 3898.
Greues, *pl.* groves, 4044; Greuys, 4584, 4953; Greues (Gravez), 2857.
Greuously, *adv.* grievously, 973, 2787; Greuosly, 796.
Greuys, *pr. s.* grieves, 472; Greued (Grefyd), *pt. s.* grieved, harmed, 2544; Greued, *pp.* grieved, vexed, troubled, 874; Greuyd (Grevyde), 1342; (Greved), 1467; Greues (Grefez), *imp. pl.* grieve, 2434.
Grew, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* grew, became, 3280.
Grew, Greek, 4710, 5012.
Grew, *s.* (*for* Gree), degree, bit, 3270. (*The* Dublin MS. *has* dele.) It can hardly be the Gk. γρῦ.
Grewis, *pl.* groves, 4725. See Greues.
Gridis, *pl.* outcries, 544. Such seems to be the sense; but the preservation of this O.F. form *gride* is remarkable, as the usual O.F. form is always *cri;* only Italian has the form *grido*, a cry, shriek, outcry. The Span. has *grita*, but *grida* occurs in O. Spanish. See Diez, s. v. *gridare.*
Griffons, *pl.* griffins, 5439, 5518.
Grindand, *pres. pt.* grinding, 4552.
Gripis, *pr. pl.* seize, 5453.
Gripis, *pl.* vultures, 5439; Gripis gripis of our gomes, vultures seize upon our men, 5453.
Grippis, *pl.* pangs, 544.
Grisely, *adj.* grisly, horrible, 4728; *adv.* frightfully, 3870.
Gro, *s.* shuddering, horror, 3238. (*But perhaps read* grone, *as in* Dublin MS.) Cf. Dan. *gru*, horror.
Grochedd, *pp.* begrudged, 1467.
Grofe, *s.* cave, 5394. *Grove* is the regular word for 'mine' among the Derbyshire miners; E. D. S. Gloss. B. 10.
(Grome), *s.* man, 2101.
Grond, *s.* ground, land, 3077, 4705; origin, 5410; (Ground), ground, 2787, 2857; Gronde, ground, 188; (Grund), land, 1973; (Grunde), ground, 1215. See Ground.
Gronde, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* ground, found (upon), base (upon), rely (upon), 4490. See Grond.
(Grone), *s.* groaning, 3238.
Groned, *pt. s.* groaned, grunted, 4743.

Grouelings, *adv.* in a grovelling posture, bending forward, 5276.
Ground, *s.* real reason, source, 476; ground, earth, 162, 1964; Grounde (Grund), ground, 2278.
Growis, *pr. s.* grows, 3683; *pr. pl.* (*or s.*), grow, 2426; Groued, *pt. s.* grew, 4978; Growen, *pp.* grown, 5622; mature, 1347; Growand, *pres. part.* growing, 5238.
Grub (Grob), *s.* grub, 1753.
Grune, *pp.* ground, pounded, 338. Short for *grunden*.
Grym, *adj.* grim, terrible, threatening, 26, 65, 5408, 5435; large, 1079; (Grymme), 1085; Grym (Greme), *adj.* bitter, sad, 3238.
Grym, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* grow angry, *or rather adj.* angry (*are* being understood), 4653. The M. E. *verb* is *gremen*.
Grymly, *adv.* terribly, 603; fiercely, 796.
Gryn, *adj.* (*for* Grym), grim, 5491.
Grype (Gripe), *s.* bunch of grapes, cluster, lit. handful, 1347. So the O.F. *grappe* means 'a cluster,' not a single grape.
Grysely, *adj.* terrible, 5397; horrible, 4743; (Gryslyche), terrible, 3238.
Grysely, *adv.* horribly, grisly, severely, 3645; (Grysly), terribly, 796.
Gud, *adj.* good, 459; (Gude), 1074; (God), 731; precious, 1662; Gude, 390, 3128; sufficient, 3585 (in which line read *vs* for *ȝow*).
Gud (Gude), *adv.* well; And þaim gud þinke, if it seem well to them, 2948.
Gude (Goode), *s.* property, 1778. See Gudis.
Gudis (Godez), *pl.* goods, wealth, property, possessions, 1852; (Goddez), 1865; Gudis (Gudez), *pl.* goods, wealth, 2738; Gudes (Gudez), possessions, 2683. See Guds.
Gudly, *adv.* fairly, well, 485, 516.
Gudman (Godman), master, lord, 2407; sir, 436; Gudmans, *gen. s.* hero's, 3433.
Gudnes, *s.* goodness, mercy, 1747, 3103; (Goodnesse), 1676.
Guds, *pl.* goods, property, 5377. See Gudis.
Gun, *pt. s.* began, did, 394. See Gan.
Gunnes (Gunnez), *pl.* guns, engines for casting stones, 2227.
Gurds, *pl.* gourds, 3701.
Guttars, *pl.* gutters, 4796; Gutars (Gutters), small streams, 3231.
Gy (Gye), *ger.* to rule, direct, 3387.
Gyane, Guienne, 5667.
Gydid, *pp.* guided, governed, 197.
Gyes (Gydez), *pr. s.* guides, 1642.
Gyfes, *imp. pl.* give, 1904.
Gyloffre, *s.* cloves, 5426.
(Gyn), *s.* device, 812*, 1213, 2038. But in all three places it is obviously an error for *gyng*, a troop. See Ging.
(Gynge), *s.* gang, company, 2129. See Ging.
(Gyrddand), *pres. pt.* bursting, 3231.
Gyse, manner, fashion, 631.

Haare, *s.* hair, 5476.
Habet, *s.* habit, dress, 3513.
Habitacle, *s.* habitation, 4334.
(Hable), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst strengthen, lit. make able, 1768.
Hade (*error for* Haue *as in* Dublin MS.), have, get, obtain, 2839.
Hafe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* have, 461; (Haue), *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* 1004; Hade, 1 *pt. s.* had, 584; 2 *pt. s.* hadst, 5327; Had (Hade), 2 *pt. s. subj.* had, 1739; Hade, *pt. s.* 592; Had, 71, 190; Hadd, 346, 3204; Had (Hadon), *pt. pl.* had, i. e. made way, 803; Hadd, had, 571; (Haddyn), 1447.
Haile, *interj.* hail! 228, 235, 4929, 4932; (Hale), 1066.
Haile-stanes, *pl.* hailstones, 3047.
(Haille), *s.* health; Euill haille, ill success, 1759.
Hailsis, *pr. s.* greets, salutes, 4929. Icel. *heilsa*. See Haylsid.
Haire (Heer), *adj.* hoary, bare, 776. Icel. *hárr*, hoary, white. The reference is to the hoary appearance of old bare trees in winter. The epithet 'hoary,' better spelt *hare* [for *haire* and *heer* properly mean 'hair'], is the stock epithet of trees and forests in alliterative poetry, so that the sense is certain. Cf. '*hore* okez' in Gawain and the Grene Knight, 743. Jamieson gives examples of 'ane *hare* wode,' a hoary wood, from Wyntown, viii. 26. 228, and 'ane *hare* wode' from Douglas's Virgil; but wrongly supposes the etymology to be from A.S. *hǽr*, hair. It is from A.S. *hár*, hoary. See also Hare (below), and note to l. 70.
Hald, *v.* hold, keep, 1093; perform, 366; (Held), hold, keep, observe, 1075; Hald, *ger.* to hold, 5542; to keep, 1596; Halden (Hald), *v.* to hold it, 2296; Hald, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* hold, account, 1102; hold (it as right), recommend, 5048; consider, 4579; (Halde), esteem, 1862; Haldis, *pr. s.* holds, 57; esteems, 3722; beholds (lit. holds), 1527; (Haldez), 948; Haldis (Haldes), *pr. s.* holds, 917; Haldis on (Heldes on), proceeds, 820; (Haldes), holds, 780*; Hald, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* keep, 4267; (Halden), *pr. pl.* hold (their way), go, 1123; Halden, *pp.* kept (so), 5522; seized, 2808; held back, 4759; bound, 5341; beholden, bound, 1679; held, 441; Halden (Haldyn), *pp.* esteemed, 2389; (Halden), held as, 1913; (Haldyn), *pp.* considered, *hence,* named, 2540; esteemed, 2150.
Hald, *s.* hold, grip, 1440.
Haldit (Heldit), *pp.* inclined, given way, 2141. Icel. *halla*, to incline, swerve, lean over; Dan. *helde*, to tilt over.
Hale, *adj.* whole, 441, 5126; sound, 102; complete, 632; solid, 4072; safe and sound, 820; whole, unburst, 4437; sound, good, 810*. Icel. *heill*.
Hale, *v.* uplift (lit. hale, drag), 724; draw quickly, come, 2817; *pr. pl.* hale, drag, 5524; Halis, *pr. s.* rushes, 962; (Hales), hales, hauls, 854; Halis (Halez), *pr. pl.* hale, drag, 2224.
Half, *s.* side, region; Fra half to halfe, from realm to realm, 4060; Halfe, side, 731; Halfis, *pl.* sides, 5451.
Halfe, *adj.* half, 1368.
Halfe-dede (Halfe-deyde), *adj.* half-dead, 962.
Halidoms (Halydoms), *pl.* holy relics, 1466. Icel. *helgidómr*, Du. *heiligdom*.
Hall, hall, 490; Halle, 2922; (Halle), 854.
Hallis, *pl.* (*for* Halis), tents, 4148. "Hale, a tent, pavilion;" see Halliwell.
Halowe, *ger.* to consecrate, keep as a holy day, 3463.
Halows, *pl.* holy ones, saints, 4915.
Hals (Halse), neck, 2654. A.S. *heals*.
Halsis (Halsys), *pr. s.* embraces, 2576; (Halsys vmbe), *pr. s.* embraces, 3250; Halsid, *pt. s.* embraced, 5029.
Haly, *adj.* holy, sacred, 584, 1457, 1600, 1636, 4939, 4996; (Holy), 1637.
Haly, *adv.* wholly, 257, 1946; (Holy), 1780, 2744.
Hame, *s.* home, 148, 461, 820; abode, dwelling, 4902, 5279; (Home), 2921; Hames, *pl.* homes, 4048, 4352, 4650; (Homez), houses, 3135.
Hame-come, *s.* home-coming, return, 2890.
Hames, *pl.* plumage, lit. coverings, 4986. A.S. *hama*.
Hampire, *pr. pl.* torment, vex (lit. hamper), 4559 (Lat. text *cruciant*); Hampird, *pt. pl.* hampered, harassed, 4800.
(Hanchyd), *pp.* eaten, gnawed; Som hanchyd of the heued, some with the head gnawed of, 774*. "*Hancher*, to graspe, or snatch at with the teeth;" Cotgrave.
Hand, *s.* hand, 57, 114, 198; On hand, close at hand, 4791; At hand, near, 81; Hande, hand, 448, 980; To hande (To hand), to close combat, 1256; Vndire hand (Vnder hand), for manual skill, 2237; Handis, *pl.* hands, 5568, &c.

Hand-ball (Hand-balle), *s.* ball to play with, 1895.
Handille, *ger.* to handle, 2480.
Hand-quile, *s.* short space of time, 5524; Hand-quyle, 632; (Hand-while), 3260, 3290. So in P. Plowman.
Hand-tame, *adj.* hand-tame, so tame as to come to the hand, 504.
Hand-werke, *s.* handiwork, 4346.
Hangid (Hanged), *pp.* hanged, 2657.
Hant, *ger.* to assemble, come together (lit. to haunt, frequent a place), 4729; Hantis, 2 *pr. pl.* practise; þe self hantis, practise the same, endeavour after that very thing, 4667; Hant, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* practise, 4484. O.F. *hanter*, to frequent, practise.
Happe, *s.* fortune, 4346; Hap (Happe), good fortune, 3272; Happis, *pl.* haps; Apon happis, perhaps, haply, 4937.
Happend (Happynd), *pp.* chanced, 2364.
Hard, *adj.* hard, stiff, 2981; severe, 512, 527.
Hard, *adv.* hardly, severely, 3287, 728*; hardly, 839.
Hard, *s.* difficulty, 3004.
Hardere, *adj. comp.* harder, 3894.
(Hardly), *adv.* boldly, 777*.
Hardy, *adj.* hard, 84; bold, strong, 2876. In l. 84 we should rather read *hard for to rekyn.*
Hardynes, hardiness, 615, 658.
Hare, *s.* hair, 227, 854; Haris, hairs, 320; (Horez), 1009.
Hare, *adj.* hoary, gray-headed, 4996; hoary, hoar, bare, 70. See the note to l. 70, and remarks on Haire (above).
Hareest, *adj. superl.* most hoary, whitest, 1062.
Harlotry, *s.* evil-doing, wickedness, lechery, 4484, 4555.
Harme, *s.* harm, 285, 638, 2220; Harmes, *pl.* injuries, crimes, wicked deeds, 3437.
Harmes, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* do harm, do execution, 3879.
(Harmez), *for* Armez, arms (of the body), 3237, 772*.
Harnais, *s.* harness, armour, 3791.
Harnas (Harnes), *imper. s.* let him harness, 998; Harnest, *pp.* armed, 3785. See above.
(Harnepanne), 1902; see Hernepan.
Harow, *s.* harrow, 4267; (Harrow), 1063; Harows, *pl.* 5573; Harowis, 3907.
Has, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* hast, 348, 460, 463; Hase, 2712; Hase, *pr. s.* has, 2380; Has, 81; Hase, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* have, 2201; Has, *pr. pl.* have, 10, 471. See Hafe, Haue.
(Haslokst), *adj. superl.* 1864. Certainly a corrupt reading; see the Ashmole MS. As it stands, it is a bad spelling of *hastlokest* = *hastilokest*, superl. of *hasty*, quick, rash.
Hast, *s.* haste, 2817; In haste, 379.
Hastely, *adv.* hastily, soon, speedily, 3784; Hastily (Hastely), 1457.
Hastis, *pr. pl. refl.* hasten, 1116; Hast (Hastyd), *pt. s.* 3014.
Hat, *pt. s.* was called, *or pr. s.* is called, 4903; Hatt, *pr. pl.* are called, 2199; (Haten), *pp.* named, 836*. See Hatten.
Hate, *adj.* hot, 4080.
Hate, *s.* hate, hatred, 921, 1979.
(Hated), *error for* Heded, beheaded, 2582.
(Hatellayke), *put for* Hathellayke, *i. e.* nobleness, 2505. See Hathill. But it is a false reading; read *lytillaik.*
Hately, *adv.* hotly, 2910.
Hathill, *adj.* noble, 447, 741, Hathille (Athell), noble, good, brave, 3164; Hatill (Athelles), *adj.* 1945. The spelling *athell* is the correct one; from A.S. *æðele*, noble. See below.
Hathill, *s.* noble one, noble person, prince, lord, 84, 285, 1102, 2120, 4518; (Athell), 734, 777; Hathill (Athyll), prince, 3272; Hathils, *pl.* nobles, warriors, 584; (Hatels), 1002; (Athellys), 2086; (Hatellys), 1920. See above. *In* l. 747 *it is misspelt* Hatill.
Hatirly (Hetterly), *adv.* severely, 2544; Haterly, passionately, 264. See *heter* in Stratmann. See Hatter.

Hatis (Hatez), *pr. pl.* hate, 2732.
(Hatness), *s.* hotness, rage, 2835.
Hatt (Hat), *s.* hat, 1714, 1895; (Hatte), 1900; Hattis (Hattes), *pl.* hats, 2981.
Hatten, *pp.* called, named, 40, 914, 1913, 2037, 2319, 2540, 4720, 5093; (Haten), 2106, 2297. A.S. *háten.* See Hat.
Hatter, *adj.* cruel, 702; savage, 490. See *heter* and *hatel* in Stratmann; and see Hatirly.
Hatterly (Heterly), *adv.* fiercely, 803. See above.
Hattir, *s.* clothing, 4118. See *hatre* in Stratmann.
Haue, *ger.* to have, possess, 747, 919, 1669; Haue, *v.* 355, 575; Haue, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* 258, 585; Have, 98; Haues, 2 *pr. s.* hast, 1728, 3101; Hauys, 428; Hauys (Hase), *pr. s.* has, 1807; (Haue), 2 *pr. pl.* have, 734*; Haue, *pr. pl.* 272; Haue, *pr. s. subj.* if he have, 4537; 2 *pr. s. subj.* 470, 951; Haue, *imp. s.* 97, 731, 2240. See Hafe.
(Haven), *s.* haven, 1160.
Hauen-lest, *adj.* neediest, least possessed of wealth, 1864. A false superlative form of the adj. *hauenles* = A.S. *hafenléas*, poor. Shropshire *avenless*, shiftless.
Hauke, 1 *pr. pl.* hawk, 4271.
Hauntis, 1 *pr. pl.* practice, 4329; enjoy, 3743; track to their home, pursue to their home, 4122; Hauntis, *pr. pl.* practise, use, show, 4021, Hauntid, *pt. s.* practised, used, 16, 4414.
Hauten, *adj.* haughty, 4255. F. *hautain.*
Hautes, *s.* haughtiness, 2835. O.F. *hautesse*, haughtiness; see Cotgrave.
Hawe, *s.* haw, the value of a haw, a whit, 2097.
Haylsid (Haylsed), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* worshipped, 1622. See Hailsis.
Haythen, *adj.* heathen, 5673.
He, *adj.* high, 70, 4863; On he, upwards, 2855.
He, *pron.* he, 19, 41, 42, &c.
(He); see Heȝe.
He, he (*where the* Dublin MS. *wrongly has* Ere, formerly), 3291.
He, *for* ȝe, ye, 4487.
(Hed), *pt. s.* had, 812, 2976; 750*, 765*, 776*.
Hede, *s.* head, 438, 445, 494, 2552; chief, 2647; king, 148; (Hed), 702; (Heued), 2283; On hede, *adv.* headlong, 962; To hede, with respect to its head, 1375; Hedis, *pl.* heads, 3433; (Heddez), 2981.
Hede, *s.* heed, 3094.
Hedid, *pp.* beheaded, 2582, 3439; (Hedit), 2086; Heded, 2377.
Hedire, *adv.* hither, 5373; (Hyder), 2914; (Heder), 1923.
Hedire-to (Hyder), hitherto, 2364.
Hediretoward, *adv.* hitherto, 3517.
Hedirward (Hyderward), *adv.* hitherward, 740.
Hedis (Hedes), *pr. s.* takes heed, observes, looks, 3226; pays attention, 678; (Hedys), heeds, observes, 2627; (Hedes), 1527; Hedis, *imp. pl.* pay heed, 3879; (Hedes), take heed, 3094.
Hedous, *adj.* hideous, dreadful, 3926, 4862.
Hedously, *adv.* hideously, 5566; (Hydusly), 1150.
Heede (Heyd), *ger.* to watch, heed, 2220.
Heelis, *pl.* heels, 5476.
Heere, *s.* army, 4800, 5162; host, number, collection, 5126. A.S. *here.*
Heere (*for* Wode, *as in the* Dublin MS.), 776. See Haire.
Heff, *ger.* to heave, raise, exalt, 2708.
Heggis, *pl.* hedges, sticks, 5463.
(Hegh), *adj.* high, tall, 744*; (On hegh), on high, 1589; Heghe, high, 445.
(Heght), *pt. s.* hight, was called, 914.
(Heght), *s.* height; On heght, on high, 678.
Held, *ger.* incline, bow down, 726; (Heldes), *pr. s.* inclines, bows down, 726; sinks, 933*; Heldis, *pr. pl.* bow, 983; Heldid, *pt. s.* inclined, 227; (heldit), *pt. pl.* 983.

See note to l. 227. A.S. *heldan, hyldan.*
(Heldes), *pr. s.* holds (*for* beholds), 1589; Held, *pt. s.* held, had hold, 1346; Held, *pt. pl.* held; Held in, pressed in, 3912; (Heldyn), kept, 1616; Held, 2 *pt. pl.* (Halden, 2 *pr. pl.*), kept, 2436; Held, 1 *pt. s. subj.* should (not) have kept, 3437; (Held on), *imp. s.* hold on, continue, advance, 810*.
(Heldest), *adv.* most; (All the heldest), most of all, 2509; (Allþar heldest), 1855. See Heldire.
(Heldest), eldest, 2319.
Heldire, *adv. comp.* sooner, 2714; (Helder), sooner, rather, 1016, 1633*, 1805, 2097, 2589. See Elder. Icel. *heldr.*
Heldyd, *pp.* inclined (?), 829*. See Held; but the reading is probably corrupt. Perhaps read *held*, i. e. held. But we should rather read—Had rasyd vp a rude hoste, and *rode* hym ayaynez.
Hele, *s.* health, safety, 3512, 4573, 5386; (Heale), 741; (Heyle), 2503, 2665; (Heylh), 2552; Hele (heylle), recovery, 2576; health, 2806 (in which line *I* should be omitted, as in Dublin MS.).
Hele, *v.* be healed, 2817.
Hele, *ger.* to cover, 4118.
Heles, *pl.* heels, 5458; Helis (Heles), 1758.
Helle, hell, 5571; Hell, 562.
Hellid, *pp.* poured, 3813. Icel. *hella.*
Helme, helmet, 1715, 3802, 3811; Helmes, *pl.* 804, 5498.
Helpe, *v.* help, 404; Help, *ger.* 309, 1256, 1314, 2220; Help, *pr. s. subj.* help, 1472; Helpid, *pt. pl.* helped, 5625; Help, *imp. s.* help, 950.
Helpe (Help), *s.* help, 1636; Help (Helpe), 1946.
Helpere (Helpar), *s.* helper, assistant, 2647.
Hemmes, *pl.* (*sing.* Hem) hems, 1538.
Hemp, *adj.* made of hemp, 2224.
(Hem-selfe), themselves, 2268.
Hen (Henne), *s.* hen, 893.
Hend (Hand), *pl.* hands, 1440; (Hendez), 774*.
Hend, *adj.* courteous, gentle, 669; (Hende), 2876; Hende, 5029, 5400; Hend, *adj. as sb.* gentle one, lady, 264, 291, 4757, 5162. A.S. *gehende.*
Hende, *adv.* courteously, 212.
Hendlaike (Hynlake), *s.* courtesy, 2715.
Hendly, *adv.* gently, 494; excellently, 883; tamely, 780*.
Hent, *v.* catch, 520; (Hynt), seize (for himself), get, 810; Hentis, *pr. s.* seizes, grasps, 780; (Hentez), 1402; (Hentes), 936; Hentes, 3880; Hent, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* catch, take, 4271; Hent (Hynt), *pt. s.* caught, 2544; Hent (Hyntes, *pr. s.*), seized, 1066; Hent, *pt. pl.* drew, 3838; Hent, *pp.* taken, caught, 4783; Hent, *imp. s.* take, receive, 747.
Hepe, *s.* heap, crowd, number, people, company, 1679, 1780, 1946, 2086; Hepis, *pl.* heaps, 552; (Hepes), 1418; (Hepys), 2247; On hepis, into heaps, 1308.
(Her), *adv.* here, 740*
(Her-aftir), hereafter, 714.
Heraud, *s.* herald, 1596, 4729; Heraudis (Harraldes), 883; (Harhaldes), 2715.
Herberd, *pt. pl.* harboured, sheltered, 5390.
Herbis, *pl.* herbs, 336, 408; (Erbes), 2852; Herbys, 4379.
Herde (Place), *s.* home, place, 3227. *For* Erde.
Here, *adv.* here, 366, 830; (Her), 951, 1864.
Here, *ger.* to hear, 67, 982, 1164; Here, *v.* 1, 212, 416; Here, 1 *pr. s.* hear, 2498; Heres, *pr. s.* 2315, 5503; Here, *pr. s. subj.* he may hear, 146; (Here), *imp. s.* hear, 740; Here, let him hear, 146; Herd, *pt. s.* heard, 51, *refl.* 669; (Harde), 2968; Herd, *pt. pl.* heard, 1616; (Harde), 1122; Herd, *pp.* heard, 1492; Herd of ȝour happ, heard (by your gods) concerning your fortune (Lat. *si exaudierint te dii tui*), 4554. See Heris.

Here, *s.* army, host, 5457; (Heir), 1256; (Heer), 2798; (Heyre), 820; (Here), 810*; Heres, *pl.* armies, hosts, 4729. A.S. *here.*
Here (Heere), chief, lord, 3160; Heris (Herez), *pl.* 1920. Icel. *herra.*
Here man, *better* Here-man, lord, master, 4938. Compounded of *here*, lord, and *man.* So Icel. *herramaðr*, lord, knight, lordly man. See above.
Here, *s.* hair, 4559. The Lat. text has—quæ te velut mortuum cruciant et tormentant. The Eng. seems to mean—'pull you by the hair.' Or read *herte*, i. e. heart.
Hered, *pp.* praised, adored, 1637; (Heret), praised, 1616. A.S. *herian.* See Herid.
Her-efter (Her-after), *adv.* hereafter, 1111, 2921; Here-eftire, 583.
Here-efterward, hereafter, 732.
Here-fore, *conj.* therefore, for this reason, 4565.
Here-wedis (Here-wedes), *pl.* armour, lit. battle-garments, 1010.
Herid, *pp.* praised, 2200. See Hered.
Heris, *pr. s.* harries, greatly harms, 4484; Herid, *pt. pl.* harried, ravaged, worried, 4800; Herid, *pp.* harried, despoiled, killed, 5457; Heried, vexed, 3517; defeated, 3731. A.S. *hergian.* See Hery.
Heris, *pr. s.* hears, 925, 5244; (Herys), 952, 2667; Heris, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* hear, 3502. See Here.
Heris (Herez), *pl.* lords, 1920. See Here.
Herken, *ger.* to listen to, 6; to hear, 2304; *v.* listen, 212; Herken, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* hearken thou, 740.
Hernepan, *s.* cap, head-piece, 1713, 2499; (Herne-payn), 1895; (Harnepanne), 1902; Hernepanne, helmet, 1771. Lit. 'brain-pan.'
Hernes, *pl.* brains, 839, 2545. O. Icel. *hjarni.*
(Heron), upon it, 832.
Herre (Hyer), *adj.* higher, superior, 2364.
(Hersouns), *pr. s.* glorifies, 1600; Hersid, extolled, 2200; Hersude (Hersud), extolled, 2498; (Hersound), 810*. Cf. Icel. *hersir*, a lord, chief.
Hert, heart, 2, 225; courage, 470, 658; Hertis (Hertes), *pl.* hearts, courage, 988, 1809, 2054, 2161.
Hert, *s.* hart, 1062, 1069; Hertis, *pl.* 110.
Hertis, *pr. s.* heartens, encourages, 5576.
Hertly, *adv.* heartily, 1659, 2576, 728*.
Hery (Herye), *ger.* to harry, 2509; (Hery), 3164. See Heris.
Herys, *pr. s.* hears, 3188. See Here.
Hes, *pron.* his, 1232; (Hys), 3212.
Hesils, *pl.* hasel-trees, 5241. Icel. *hesli.* (The line is obscure.)
Hest, *s.* promise, 366; Heste (Hest), command, 2141; Hestes (Hestez), *pl.* promises, 1075; Hestis, *pl.* (Heste, *s.*), commands, 2350; Hestis (Heestes), hests, commands, 3122.
Hete, *s.* heat, 3791; (Het), 1518; Hetis, *pl.* heat, 3803; heat, burnings, 3633.
Hete, *v.* promise, 1075, 2686; 1 *pr. s.* 2869, 3175; Hetes (Highten), *pr. pl.* promise, 2398. A.S. *hátan*, Icel. *heita.*
Heterly, *adv.* vehemently, 669, 678; (Hetterly), keenly, greatly, 2855; (Heterly), *adv.* extremely, 1659; Hetterly (Heterly), *adv.* earnestly, 1075; (Hetterly), sharply, fiercely, 2910; Hettirly, 3912; extremely, 4169. See Hetire, Hatirly.
Hethen, *adv.* hence, 4487, 4565, 4650, 4936. Icel. *héðan.*
Hethenward, hence, 734.
Hething (Hethyng), *s.* scorn, 1714; Hethyng (Hethinge), 1869. Icel. *hæðing.*
Hetire, *adj.* cruel, 520; Hetter, bold, fierce, 615. A.S. *hetol*, full of hate. See Hatter.
Heued, *s.* head, 2457, 3920, 5322; (Heued), 751*, 774*, 812; chief, 1433.
(Heued), *for* Heueded, *pp.* beheaded, 2377.
Heuen, *s.* heaven, 56, 84.
Heues, *pr. s.* lifts, 1589; (Hefys),

raises, 3290; Heued (Hefyd), *pp.* raised, 2827; levied, raised, 2608; Heues (Hefes), *imp. pl.* lift, 3094. See Heuys.
Heuy, *adj.* heavy, 1010, 5572; (Hevy), stupid, dull, 2708.
Heuyd, *s.* head, 426. See Heued.
Heuydman (MS. Heuysdman), chief man, 441.
Heuyn, heaven, 42, 250, 553, 568; (Heuen), 713; Heuyns (Heuens), *pl.* heavens, 1528.
Heuys (vp), *pr. s.* heaves, lifts, raises up, 677; Heuyd, *pt. s.* heaved, i. e. raised, 3014. See Heues.
Hewe, *v.* hew, cut, 3433; Hewis (Hewes), *pr. s.* hews, 1224; Hewis, *pr. pl.* hew, 803; Hewen, *pp.* hewn, cut, 1127, 5598; (Hewyn), 3384; (Heven), 3150; Hewyn, 5463; Hewis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* hew, 5576.
Hewe, *s.* hue, 467; Hew, 5309; Hewes, *pl.* 1086, 3687; Hewis, 3864, 5125; Hewys, 605.
Hewid, *pp.* hued, coloured, 3945, 4986.
(Hey), *adj.* high, 779, 933*.
(Heyle), *s.* prosperity, 3272. See Hele.
(Heyre), *s.* heir, 838*.
Heȝare, *adv.* higher, 2097.
Heȝe, *adj.* high, great, 3731; (Hye), 883, 3288; (He), 3291; On heȝe, aloud, 4929; To heȝe (To hygh), too high, 2714.
Heȝe (Hegh), *adv.* loudly, 948.
Heȝe, *ger.* to enhance, further (lit. exalt), 2806.
Heȝe (Hyen), *pr. pl. refl.* hasten, hie, 3214.
Hid, *pt. s.* hid, 146.
Hide, *s.* skin, 4437; Hidis, *pl.* 4118, 4207.
Hidirto, *adv.* hitherto, 4903.
Hidous, *adj.* hideous, 5236.
Hie, *v.* honour, exalt, 329.
Hied, *pt. pl.* (Hyen, *pr. pl.*), hastened, 2981.
Hiest, highest, most, 1765.
Hieȝe, *adj.* high, great, 329.
(Hight), *pp.* named, considered, 2200.
Hight, *s.* height. p. 282, l. 122.
Hild, *pt. s.* concealed, 146; *pp.* covered (only), 3450; covered, 5241; Hildid, *put for* Hild, covered, 1010 (*where the* Dublin MS. *has* hold). Icel. *hylja.*
Hildire, *adv. comp.* rather, more, 4657. See note; and see Heldire.
Hildis, *pr. s.* leans; Hildis him vp, leans up, raises himself a little, 3250; Hildis (Heldes), *pt. s.* falls, 3201; Hilds, *pr. s.* pours, 3811; Hildid (Heldit), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* bowed down to, 1622. A.S. *hyldan.*
Hill (Hille), hill, 1093; Hilles, *pl.* 4137; Hillis, 1211, 4862; (Hillez), 776.
Hilla! *interj.* halloa! 1066.
Him, *dat. and acc.* to him, him, 48, 50, &c.; for himself, 113. *Put for* þam, them, 409.
Him-self (Hym-self), *pron.* him, 2834; Him-selfe, himself, 500; Him-self, 83; Him-seluen, himself, 46, 1120; Him-seluyn, 411.
Hindire, 1 *pr. s.* oppose, 2497.
Hinge, *v.* hang, be hung; Hinge mon, must hang, 4565; *ger.* to hang, 5519; Hingis, *pr. s.* hangs, 27; Hingand, *pres. part.* hanging, 3260, 4877.
Hirdis (Herdez), *pl.* herds, keepers of the flocks, 1224.
Hire, *pron.* her (said of a fortification), 1308; her, 222, 236; *dat.* for her, 305.
Hire, *pron. poss.* her, 224, 264.
Hire-selfe, herself, 266, 347.
His, his, 45, 47, 49, &c.
Hismon (Hisman), *name*, 2237.
Hissis, *pr. s.* hisses, 4757.
Hit, *v.* hit, attain, 445; hit, 1065; Hittis, *pr. s.* hits, 839; *pt. s.* hit, put, 512; (Hitte), hit, 839.
Hit (It), *pron.* it, 1374.
Hitterly, *adv.* vehemently, 5322. See Heterly.
Hiȝe, *adj.* high, great, 61, 596, 726; (Hye), noble, 1920; high, 812; (Hegh), 1002, 1123; On hiȝe, on high, 678.
Hiȝe, *ger.* to exalt, 1679; Hiȝen, 4701.
Hiȝe, *v.* hasten, 5187; Hiȝis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* hastenest, 4060; Hiȝis him (Hyes hym), *pr. s.* hastens, 777; Hiȝe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p. refl.* hie, hasten, go, 4650.
Hiȝe, *adv.* highly, 5316; (Heyly), 2200.
Hiȝely, *adv.* highly, 658.
Hiȝere, *adj. comp.* higher, 810; (Hyer), 1368; (Hegher), 1375.
Hiȝere (Hyer), *adv. comp.* higher, 724; Hiȝhare (Heyere), 3295.
Hiȝt, *s.* height, 3988, 5481; (Hight), 700; Hiȝte, 3989; On hiȝt, on high, 57, 1518; Hiȝt (Hert, *wrongly*), *s.* height, majesty, 2706; Hiȝtes, *pl.* heights, glories, 3584.
Hiȝt, *s.* hope; Withouten hiȝt, without hope, hopelessly, 5313. Or it may mean—without expectation, unexpectedly. A.S. *hyht*, hope, expectation.
Hiȝt, 1 *pr. s.* am called, 5167; am named, 5401; Hiȝt (Hyght), 1 *pr. s.* am called, 2286; (Hight), 1 *pt. s.* was called, 2187; Hiȝt, *pt. s.* was called, 2170; Hiȝt, *pp.* called, 3926.
Hiȝte, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* promise, 5404; Hiȝt, 1 *pt. s.* promised, 3436; Hiȝt (Hyght), *pt. s.* 2651; Hiȝt (Hight), *pt. pl.* promised, 2196; Hiȝt (Hyght), *pp.* 2565.
Hiȝtild, *pt. s.* ornamented, decked (for himself), 1541 (MS. D. has *heghtlet*, set, put); Hiȝtild, *pp.* ornamented, decked, 4540, 5126; decked, prepared, set in order, 4969. See Allit. Poems, ed. Morris, B. 1290. Cf. *Hiȝtly* in Gloss. to Sir Gawayne.
(Hocour), *s.* mockery, derision, 1714. A.S. *hócor.*
Hodere, *s.* 5241. The line is plainly imperfect. See the note, which gives the original Latin.
Hoge, *adj.* huge, large, 490, 568, 924, 3926, 4749, 5389; (Hoge), 744*, 821, 1062, 1541, 2827.
Hoge, *s.* hog, 4278; Hoggs, *pl.* 5342.
Hogely, *adv.* earnestly, attentively, 269; (Hugely), extremely, 3226.
Hogere, *adj.* huger, greater, 3047.
(Hoghez), *pl.* houghs, hams, 3151.
Hokis, *pl.* hooks, 5519.
(Hole), *s.* hole, 777*; Holes, *pl.* holes, hiding-places, 3214; Holis, *pl.* holes, caves, 4045, 4122.
Hologhe, *adj.* hollow, 4072; Holoȝe, 3802; Holuȝe, 3486; Holewe (Holys, *for* Holow), 1900.
Holtis, *pl.* holts, woods, 4137; (Holtez), 776.
Home, *s.* home, 27.
Homore, Homer, 2121.
(Honest), *adj.* seemly, splendid, 1496.
Honest, *pp.* brought to shame, destroyed, 3791. From the stem (*honiss-*) of the pres. part. of O.F. *honir*, to disgrace. See Hunyschist.
Honge, *pp.* hung, 779.
Hongir, *s.* hunger, 4608.
Honoryd (Honourd), *pp.* honoured, 3160.
Honour, *s.* honour, 2125, 2248; Honouris, *pl.* praises, 2121.
Honourable, 223, 310. See Honurable.
Honoure, *v.* honour, 1059; Honours, *pr. s.* 1073; Honourd, *pt. s.* (Honours, *pr. s.*), 2117; Honourd, *pp.* honoured, 995; Honoured (Honored), *pp. as adj.* 2008.
Honurable (Honorable), *adj.* honourable, 1840; Honourable, 223, 310.
Hony, *s.* honey, 3855.
Hoo, 2 *pr. pl.* desist; Be ȝe hoo, by the time that ye desist, 4437; *imp. s.* stop, cease, 2835.
Hope, 1 *pr. s.* suppose, 3548, 3749; Hopis (Hopys), 2 *pr. s.* expectest, 1765; Hopis, *pr. s.* expects, 3288; hopes, 1640; Hopid (Hopyd), *pt. s.* expected, 679; (Hoppyd), 1633*; Hopid, *pt. pl.* (Hopen, *pr. pl.*) supposed, 596, 935; Hope, *imp. pl.* imagine, 2648.
Hope, *s.* hope, 1859.
Hope, *s.* dingle, sheltered spot, 5390. See Grein's note on A.S. *hóp.*
Hoping, *s.* hope, 4518.
Horned, *pp. as adj.* having horns, 4267, 5566.
Hornes, *pl.* horns, 319, 752*.

Hors, *s.* horse, 777; (Horse), 744*; Horsis, *pl.* horses, 2156, 2399, 5632; Hors (Horsez), *pl.* 883; Horsis (Horse, *pl.*), 1250; Hors, *gen. pl.* horses', 2852. A.S. *hors*, pl. *hors*.
(Horse-fleshez), horseflesh, 2161.
Hoste, *s.* host, army, 2036, 829*; (Host), 1793; Hostis, *pl.* hosts, armies, army, 3008, 3704; (Hostez), 1694.
Hote, *adj.* hot, severe, 702.
Hottre, *s.* contempt, derision, 1714; *miswritten for* Hoccre = Hocer. A.S. *hócor*. Chaucer has *hoker*. The Dublin MS. has *hocour*.
Houen (Heuen), *pp.* lifted, heaved, 1864. See Houyn.
Houes, *pr. s.* dwells, remains, 4902; (Hewen), *pr. pl.* await, 2530; Houys, *pr. pl.* (Hoved, *pt. pl.*), tarry, hover, 2212; Houande (Hofand), *pres. part.* hovering, tarrying, 3260; Houe (Hofe), *imp. s.* tarry, wait, 734, 2890. Cf. E. *hover*.
Houndreth, *num.* hundred, 5370.
Houre, *s.* hour, 572, 3830.
Hous, *s.* house, 4903.
Housing, *s.* shelter, covering, 4355.
Houyn, *pp.* raised (lit. heaved), exalted, 2708. See Houen.
How, how, 7, 117; Howe, how, 4345; How þat, how (is it) that, 459.
How, *interj.* ho! *used as sb.* a shout, outcry, whoop, 4732.
Howis, *pl.* hills, 3486. Icel. *haugr*.
(Howre-selfe), ourselves, 1855.
Hoȝes, *pl.* houghs, hocks, hams, 3150. A.S. *hóh*.
Huge, *adj.* huge, great, 821, 1062, 1150; (Hoge), 1282, 2876.
Hugir (Hoger), *adj. comp.* huger, 1368.
Hum (*wrongly for* Him), him, 1717.
Hunde, hound, 321, 494.
Hundrethe, *num. adj.* hundred, 94; (Hundreth), 1043; Hundreth, 66, 1316, 1426, 1562; Hundret, 5127.
Hunger, *s.* hunger, 1168.
Hungry, Hungary, 5673.
Hunyschist, *error for* Hunyschit (Honyshyd), *pt. s.* shamed, disgraced, *hence*, killed, 3004. O.F. *honnir*, *honir*. See Honest.
(Hup), up, 3049.
Hurkils, *pr. s.* crouches down, nestles, 504. See Glossary to Allit. Poems, ed. Morris.
Hurle (*in Ashmole MS. wrongly for* perle, *which is in Dublin MS.*), sound, rush, noise (of the sea), 1154. See Hurling.
Hurled (Hurlett), *pt. pl.* hurled, 2224.
Hurling, *s.* roaring, 4794. F. *hurler*, to howl, yell; Cotgrave.
Hurte, *s.* hurt, 285.
Hurtis (Hurtez), *pr. s.* hurts, 1224.
Hurtles, *adj.* unhurt, safe, unwounded (lit. hurt-less), 102.
Hus (*for* Us), *dat.* for us, 3518.
Hydis, *pr. s.* hides, 504; Hydis (Hyden), *pr. pl.* 3214; Hyddyn, *pt. pl.* hid, 3105.
(Hye), *ger.* to hasten, 2806; (Hyes), *pr. s.* hies, 962; (Hyed), *pt. pl.* hastened, 1205; Hy, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* hie thee, 734.
(Hye), *adj.* high, 700, 1491, 1636; illustrious, 841*.
(Hyest), highest, 726.
Hym, *pron.* him, 682, 725*.
Hym-selfe, himself, 1058.
Hynd (Hend), *adj.* courteous, 2744; (Hynde), obedient, 820. See Hend.
Hyndelaike, *s.* courtesy, 615; (Hyndlaike), 2718. See Hendlaike.
Hyndely (Hendly), *adv.* courteously, 3250; Hyndly, 2920.
Hyne, *adv.* hence, 4456; (Hyne), 799*. Du. *heen*.
Hyne (Hynes), *pl.* men, servants, 2220. E. *hind*.
(Hyneward), hence, 734. See Hyne.
(Hynget), *pp.* hung, 779.
(Hynten), *pr. pl.* seize, 780. See Hent.
Hyre, *pers. pron.* her, 412.
Hyrnes, *pl.* corners, lurking-places, 3214. A.S. *hyrne*.
(Hys), his, 679, 680, 695, 696.
Hyue, *s.* hive, 3855.

I, *pron.* I, 15, 21, 24, 76, &c.
Iacobs, Jacob's, 4823.

Iape, *s.* jest, *hence* pleasant offering, 4526; Iapis, *pl.* tricks, arts, 43, 339; pranks, 4411.
Iapid, *pt. s.* seduced, 4415.
Iaspre, jasper, 4444.
Iaudas, *name*, 1488; (Iaudes), 1652; Iaudis (Iawdez), 1171; Iaudes, 1469.
Iayll, *s.* jail, 4321.
(Iche), each, 1647.
Ieants, *pl.* giants, 4722.
Iemmes, *pl.* gems; *but clearly miswritten for* gummes, i.e. resinous gums, 4974. See the note.
Ientill-man (Gentilman), gentleman, 2249, 2400.
Ientilly, *adv.* excellently (Lat. *mirifico opere*), 3340.
Ierusalem, 1171, 1454, 1470, 1488, 1652.
Iesserand, *s.* coat of mail, 4961; Iesserantes (Iesserauntez), *pl.* coats of mail, 2450. See *Iaseran* in Cotgrave.
Iettand, *pres. pt.* making a great show, 4444.
Iettis, *pl.* proud gestures, 4676.
Iettoure, *s.* bragger, 4415; Iettir, flaunter, 4504.
Iewis (Iewes), *pl.* Jews, 1191, 1587, 1601, 1620, 1652; Iewes, 1171.
(Iewres), *an error for* Iewise, judgment, doom, 1191. O.F. *juise*. *The right reading is*—I shall seche Iewise on the Iewes · enioyne or I dye.
Iewry, Judæa, 1546.
If, *conj.* if; But if, unless, 13; If, though, 231, 258.
Ile (Yle), *s.* isle, 2106, 2116; district, 1057; Ile (Ylez, *pl.*), district, 1039; Ilee, 3736, 5503; Iles, *pl.* islands, 3536, 3683; Iles (Yles), *pl.* regions, provinces, 2800. See Yles.
Ilk, *adj.* each, 1334, 3603; (Ilke), 731, 777; (Iche), 1379; same, 350, 418; Ilke, same, 861, 2927.
Ilka, each, every, 521, 999; (Ilke), 1080; (Iche), 3412; Ilka (Ilke), each man, 1258; Ilke a, every, 432. *For* ilk a.
Ilkane, each one, every one, 1593, 5430; (Ilk one), 2765; (Ichone), 2548, 3154; (Ilkon), 2115; Ilkan, 3635.
Ill, *adv.* ill, unpropitiously, 2308.
Ille, *s.* ill, 4216; (Ille), 1699; (Illys), *pl.* evils, 3267*.
Imagis, *pl.* images, idols, 4068, 4459. See Ymage.
Impid, *pp.* set; Impid in, set with, marked with, 5649.
Impis, *pl.* shoots, 4819. See the note.
In, *prep.* in, 23, 24, &c.; (Into), in, 1852.
In with = in-with, *prep.* within, 3900.
In-bland with, *prep.* together with, in medley with, 2786. See Ebland.
Inchantement, enchantment, 337.
Incheson, *s.* occasion, cause, reason, 343.
Inclosid (Enclosyt), *pp.* enclosed, 1837.
Inclynes, *pr. s.* inclines, bows, 5207.
In-dities, *pr. s.* indites, 4041.
Indityngs (Dityng), *pl.* inditings, 1801.
(In-fere), *adv.* together, 3366; Infere, 1259, 1276, 3602, 3933, 4273, 5434.
In-feree, *for* In-fere, *adv.* together, 5597. See above.
Infirmite, *s.* infirmity, sickness, 5581; Infirmits (*for* Infirmites), *pl.* infirmities, 4279.
Infourmed, *pp.* informed, 3341; (Informed), 1915; Infourmede (Enformed), 1531.
Ingland, England, 5663.
Inhabet, *pr. pl.* inhabit, dwell, 4020.
Inhabetting, *s.* habitation, dwelling, 3736.
In-hanses (Enhaunses), *pr. s.* enhances, i.e. advances, promotes, 3290.
Inioynes, *pr. s.* commands, orders, instructs, 3040; (Inioneyd), *pp.* enjoined, 2400.
In-myddis, *prep.* in the midst of, amid, 1586.
Innes, *pl. as sing.* inn, dwelling, residence, 2920.
Inowe (Enowe), *adj. pl.* enough, 2291. See Enoȝe.

In-parkis, *pr. s.* encloses, 5499; Inparkid, *pp.* 4702.
Inpossible, *adj.* impossible, 2707.
(Insew), *v.* sew in, 1925.
In-sondire (In-sonder), asunder, 798.
Instrumentis (Instrumentes), *pl.* instruments, 1564; Instrumentis, 145.
In-till, *prep.* into, 4764.
Into, *prep.* into, 151, 153; to, 724; in, 797*; (Vnto), unto, 1503.
Ioglour, *s.* juggler, 4526; Iogloure, 410.
Iogis, *pl.* judges, 1546.
Iogis, *pr. s.* jogs, i. e. stirs up, 1507.
Iolite, *s.* agreeableness, delight, 3537; pleasant season, 4202; honour, revels in honour of, 4458; Iolyte, happiness, 3108; Iolite (Iolyte), mirth, 1469.
Ioly, *adj.* beautiful, 4823, 5261.
Iolyle, *adv.* jollily, joyously, 705.
Iopone, *s.* short coat or doublet worn under the armour, 4961; Iopons, *pl.* 3042, 4722; (Iompons), 2450. "*Iupon*, a short cassock;" Cotgrave. Dimin. of O.F. *gipe*, later *juppe*, a frock, &c.
Iosaphat (Iosaphatt), the vale of Jehoshaphat, 1197, 1284.
Iournais (Iornays), *pr. s.* journeys, travels, 2249.
Iournay (Jornay), journey, 1197.
Ious, *s.* juice, 339. See Iuse.
Iowell, jewel, 2400.
Iowke, *pr. pl.* sleep, lie torpid, 4202. A term applied to hawks. "*Se jucher*, to roost, or pearch;" Cotgrave. See *Iouken* in Gloss. to P. Plowman.
Ioy, *s.* joy, 486, 704, 1469; Ioye (Ioy), 1914; jest, 2188; O Ioy, of joy, i. e. joyful to behold, excellent, 3042.
Ioyen, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* (*for* Ioyn), (ye) join, build together, 4458.
Ioyes, *pr. s.* gladdens, 4378; rejoices, 1659; (Ioys), 2128; Ioys, 456; Ioy, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* delight in, possess, enjoy, 4035; Ioyed, *pp.* rejoiced, gladdened, full of joy, 242, 3455, 4947, 5426; Ioyd (Ioyned, *error for* Ioyed), 2235.
(Ioyfully), joyfully, 705.
Ioyles, *adj.* joyless, 1284, 2249.
Ioyly, *adj.* joyful, joygiving, delightful, 3340. (But prob. an error for *Ioly* = jolly, good.)
Ioynes (Iniones), *pr. s.* enjoins, 1197; Ioynes him, *pr. s.* marches, approaches, 1284, 1454; Ioyned, *pp.* constructed, 5261; framed, 4504; constructed, joined together (Lat. *constructi*), 3340; composed, put together, 3464; (Ioned), joined, 2450.
Ioyntly (Iontly), *adv.* together, 1470.
Ioynttours, *pl.* joints, limbs, 4722.
Ire, *s.* anger, rage, 733, 737, 805, 1504, 2185, 2424; Iree, 4504. *In* l. 1504 *the* Dublin MS. *has* ayre.
Ireland, 5663.
Iren, *s.* iron, 3628, 3826, 4085, 5516, 5519; Iryn (Irne), 3376.
Is, *pr. s.* is, 4, 67, &c.; Is, 1 *pr. pl.* (we) are, 4312; *pr. pl.* are, 178, 5361; (Er), 2478.
(Is), *for* His, his, 697, 903, 2052.
Isodry, Isidore, 3683.
It, *pron.* it, 13, 36, 56, &c.; It-selfe, 277.
Itaile, Italy, 5663; (Ytalle), 2528; Itale, 5110; Italee (Ytale), 1039.
Ithis, *pl.* waves, 63. A.S. *ýð*. See Ythes.
Iubiter, Jupiter, 705, 3108. See Iupiter.
Iugemen (Iuggez), *pl.* judges, 3402.
Iugid (Iugged), *pp.* judged, 2664.
Iulus, *s.* July, 3537; Iuly, 4202; Iuli, 3789.
Iuno, Juno, 4504.
Iupiter, Jupiter, 4411, 4415.
Iurdan, Jordan, 4823.
Iuse, *s.* juice, 410. See Ious.
Iustice, *s.* justice, judge, 4321; Iustis (Iustice), *pl.* justices, 1601, 3402; (Iustes), 1546.
Iusting, *s.* jousting, 3042.
Iusule, *s.* lechery (?), 4411. The alliteration shows it is not *Insule*, as in Stevenson's edition. It is perhaps for F. *jeu seul;* but it is difficult to guess at the true etymology.
Iuwels, *pl.* jewels, 4035, 4444.
I-wis, *adv.* certainly, truly, clearly, verily, 11, 203, 3262, 3580, 4933; (Iwys), 2203; (I-wisse), 2018; I-wisse, 3119, 3436; I-wys, 348.

Kaire me (Caire me), *v.* turn myself, go, 828; Kaires, *pr. s.* returns, 5419; (Cairez), turns, 1056; Kairis, *pl.* go, 153. See Caire.
Kall (Calle), *s.* call, 983.
Kan, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* can, 100, 577. See Can.
(Karyn), *pr. pl. refl.* go, 2792; (Karys), *imp. pl.* go, 2770. See Kaire.
(Kast), *s.* contrivance, 2484; Kastis (Castyng), *pl.* casts, throwings, 1395. See Cast.
Kast, *v.* contrive, 415; Kast out, cast aside, 184; Kastis (Castes), *pr. s.* overthrows, 2281; (Kyst, *pt. s.*), intends, 1688; Kast, *pr. pl.* throw, hurl, 1395; Kast vnder, *pp.* overthrown, 138; Kast (Castyn), cast, 2247; Kast (Kest), thrown down, 1421. See Cast.
Kastand (= Kastanid), *pp. as adj.* made like the chestnut, i. e. of a chestnut colour (Castans *in the* Dublin MS.), 1537. See Castans.
Kay, *s.* key, 5289. See Keys.
(Kayres), *pr. s.* returns, 3005; *refl.* goes, 2637; Kayres hym, goes, 2680. See Kaire.
Kaȝt (Kacht, *in MS.* Katht), *pt. s.* seized, caught hold of, 2070. See Caȝt.
(Keches), *pr. s.* takes (leave), 1693.
(Ked) excellent, 1229. See Kid.
Kellis, *pl.* cauls, hair-nets, 4600. "Kelle, *reticulum;*" Prompt. Parv.
Kell-wyse; Opon kellwyse, in the manner of a caul, 3300. See above.
Kempe, *s.* soldier, hero, warrior, 5499; (Kemp), 2216. A.S. *cempa.*
Ken, (1) *v.* inform, 2353; teach, 4706; (Kenne), show, teach, 1192; Ken, *ger.* teach, 1982, 3278; make known, 2023; Ken, *pr. pl.* disclose, manifest, 4554; Kend, *pt. s.* told, instructed, 5543; showed, 5407; showed, gave, 5383; Kend, *pp.* informed, taught, 650. See below.
Ken (2), *ger.* to know, 690; *v.* know how, 4078; Ken, 1 *pr. s.* know, 577, 843*, 2718; perceive, 278; Kennes, *pr. s.* knows, 3991; Ken, 1 *pr. pl.* know, 4678; Kend, 1 *pt. s.* recognised, 3281; *pt. s.* knew, 696, 5548; discerned, 2849; Kend, *pt. pl.* knew, 2933; 2 *pt. s.* knewest, 4939; Kend, *pp.* known, discerned, 3148.
Kendly, *adv.* kindly, greatly, 2394. Better read *kenly*, as in the Dublin MS.
Kene, *adj.* keen, 427, 3971; shrill, 1604, 1815, 2345; sharp, 1804, 3818; eager, 1892; brave, bold, 90, 176, 748; *adv.* quickly, 746.
Kenely, *adv.* sharply, 639; carefully, 1361; strictly, 821*; quickly, 1353; sorely, 4151; eagerly, 412; loudly, 2154; bravely, boldly, 58, 384, 1064; (Kenly), *adv.* keenly, greatly, 2394.
Kenere, *adj. comp.* keener, 544; Kenir, bolder, 3583.
(Kengez), *gen. s.* king's, 1040.
Kepare, *s.* keeper governor, 5177.
Kepe, *v.* keep, protect, 285, 405; be kept (*after* latt), 581; Kepe, *ger.* to keep, i. e. for men to keep, 5172; to keep, 1292; to observe, 1192; to guard, 72, 1480; to heed, care for, 3096; to look, pay heed, 821*; Kepe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* care for, heed, 3557; care, 2417; Kepis, *pr. s.* preserves, 3356; Kepe, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* heed, observe, 4386; Kepis (Kepys), 2 *p.* care, heed, 1455; (Kepe), *pr. pl.* defend, 1395; Kepid, *pt. s.* governed, kept, held, ruled, 5088; *pt. pl.* kept, 594; Kepid (Kepyd), *pp.* kept, 3413; Kepe, *imp. s.* keep thou, 97; Kepis ȝou, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* take heed to yourself, 2564.
Kerue[s], *pr. s.* cuts, 1056; Keruand, *pres. pt.* cutting, 63, 3024; biting, bitter, 3818. A.S. *ceorfan.*
Kest, *v.* cast up, reckon, 673; *pt. s.* cast, 2052, 3147; imagined, 5233;

cast, contrived, took up with, 921; *refl.* cast himself, flung himself, 794; Kest vp, *pt. s.* cast up, lifted up, 484; *pt. pl.* cast, 1604, 2154; devised, 3190; Kest in fewtire, laid their lances in rest, 2621.
Keys (Kees), *pl.* keys, 2147. See Kay.
Kid, *pp.* renowned, famous, 514, 4091, 4205; (Kyd), 959, 2151, 2207, 2761, 3114; proved, 1824; Kidd, renowned, illustrious, 3974, 5418. Lit. 'made known.' See below; and see Ked, Kyd.
Kid, *pt. s.* showed; (Kyd), 1 *pt. s.* showed, 2743; Kide him, made himself known, 213. A.S. *cýðan.*
Kid, *s.* kid, 4524; Kidis, *gen. pl.* of kids, 4476.
Kiddest, *adj. superl.* most famous, most renowned, 33, 1934, 5103; (Kyddest), 2367; Kiddist, 3709; Kidest (Kyddest), 1885.
Killid (Kyllyd), *pp.* killed, 2377.
Kind, *s.* nature, 4264, 4386; (Kend), character, 3386.
Kindiles, *pl.* young ones, broods, 4199. See *Kyndlyn* in Prompt. Parv.; and see Kyndild.
Kindille (Kyndyll), *v.* kindle, be set on fire, 2724; Kindill (Kyndle), *pr. s. subj.* be kindled, 1979; Kindils, *pr. s.* kindles, 3859; is kindled, 149; Kindlis (Kyndeles), *pr. pl.* are kindled, 1730.
Kindling (Kyndyllyng), *s.* kindling, ardour, 3292.
Kindly (Kendly), *adv.* by nature, naturally, 3281.
King, *s.* king, 50, 184, 456; Kinge (Kyngez), *gen. pl.* kings', 3414.
Kingis, *error for* Kinnes; Of many kyngis werkes, of works of many a kind, 4530.
Kinlid, *error for* Knilid (Dublin MS. *has* knellyd), *pt. pl.* clanged, resounded, 775. "Knyllynge of a belle, *tintillacio;*" Prompt. Parv.
Kirke, church, 1549; temple, 4542.
Kirnells (Kernels), *pl.* battlements, 1421. O.F. *crenel.*
Kirnels, *pl.* kernels, 2070.
Kirtill, *s.* kirtle, 4956; Kirtils, *pl.* 4340.
Kisses, *pr. s.* kisses, 384; Kist (Kyssitt), *pt. s.* 878.
Kist, *s.* coffin, 3148; chest, coffer, 1043; Kistis, *pl.* coverings; *used in the sing. sense*, cover, covering, 4357; (Kystez), 1043.
Kithe, *s.* country, 184, 3962; (Kyth), 1871; Kith, 144, 2011, 3562; (Kyth), 2769; Kithis, *pl.* countries, 4697; Kithes (Kythez), 889; Kitthis (Kythez), 1204; (Kithes), 2011. A.S. *cýððe*, native land. See Cithe.
Kithe, *v.* make known, proclaim, 3469; Kith, tell, 5168; Kithis, *pr. s.* tells, 5011. A.S. *cýðan.*
Kithid, *s.* kindred, 3507. (Prob. an error for *kithe.*) See Kithe.
Kith-ward; In-to oure kith-ward, towards our country, into our country, 4032.
Knafe (Knaffe), knave, male, 835; Knaf, man-child, 3744; (Knaffe), knave, wretch, 3078; Knaue, boy, 592; (Knaffe), boy, 2501.
Knaw, *v.* know, 100; (carnally), 308; *ger.* 1455; Knawe, 679; Knaw, 1 *pr. s.* 1878; Knawe, 183; Knawis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* knowest, 875, 2523; (Knawys), 869; Knawes, 1962; Knawis (Knawys), *pr. s.* knows, 848; Knaw, 2 *pr. pl.* 627; (Knawe), 2205; Knaw, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayest know, 2014; Knawen, *pp.* known, 204; Knawyn, 5234; renowned, 33; (Knawyn), known, 719. See Knew.
Knawlage, *s.* knowledge, 3727.
Knawlage, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* acknowledge, 3093.
Kneis (Kneys), *pl.* knees, 983; (Knees), 1603; Kneys, 78; Knes, 1822; Knese, 4014; (Knes), 815.
Knelis, *pr. s.* kneels, 4183; Knele, *pr. pl.* 2941; Kneland, *pres. part.* kneeling, 1599.
Knew, *pt. s.* knew, 28, 63; Knewe, 211. See Knaw.
Knew, *pt. s.* made known, 2872. A wrong sense; due to miswriting *he knew* for *be-knew*, as in the Dublin MS.
Knilid; *see* Kinlid.
Kniȝt (Knyȝt), *s.* knight, 1617, 1229;

Kniȝtis (Knyghtez), *pl.* 981, 1002, &c. See Knyȝt.
Kniȝthede (Knyghthode), knighthood, 1824; (Knyghthod), 2205. See Knyȝt-hede.
Kniȝtly (Knyghtly), *adj.* knightlike, bold, 2448.
Knok, *v.* knock, 639; Knockis (Knokez), *pr. s.* 1599.
Knopis, *pl.* knobs, buttons, 4917.
Knottis, *pl.* knots, 4917.
Know (Knaw), *v.* to know, 1104. See Knaw.
Knyfes, *pl.* knives, daggers, 3024, 5364.
Knytt, *pr. pl.* knit, 3300.
Knyȝt, *s.* knight, 100; (Knyght), 729*, 835*; Knyȝtis, *pl.* knights, men, 117, &c. See Kniȝt.
Knyȝt-hede, knighthood, 659; Knyȝthode, 9. See Kniȝthede.
Knyȝtly, *adv.* knightly, 484.
Kokell, *adj.* shaky, unsteadfast, 2588. Cf. *coggle*, to be shaky, Halliwell; *cocklety*, unsteady; id. Jamieson cites *cockle-headed* from Sir W. Scott's Rob Roy: "he's crack-brained and *cockle-headed* about his nipperty-tipperty poetry nonsense." See Rob Roy, ch. xxi.
Koyntis, *pl.* adornments, quaint ornaments, 4917. See Cointe.
Kutt, *pp.* cut, 1421.
Kyd, *pp.* shown, 719; renowned, famous, 52, 742*, 767*, 1987. See Kid.
Kyn, *s.* kin, kindred, 3316.
Kynd, *s.* kind, nature, 28, 3380, 3911, 5432; race, 3268; (Kend), nature, race, lineage, 2800; (Kynde), nature, 3147; Kynde, nature, 578, 2894; race, 696; manner, 650; Kyndis, *pl.* natures, 5428.
Kynd, *for* Kyndled, *pp.* kindled, 2247. The Dublin MS. *has* kyndlett.
Kyndild, *pt. s.* came forth, was born, 669. See Kindiles. "Kynled, or kyndelyd, in forthe-bryngynge of yonge beestys, *Fetatus;*" Prompt. Parv.
Kyndill, *ger.* to kindle, 3139; Kindils, *pr. s.* kindles, excites, 166; (Kyndels), *pr. s.* takes fire, is kindled, 2871; Kyndild (Kyndlett), *pp.* kindled, 2231; (Kyndlett), 2247.
Kyndlaike, *s.* kindness, 2718.
Kyndly, *adv.* heartily, 4946.
Kyndmen, *pl.* well-disposed men, *hence*, bold men, 2459. Dublin MS. has *kene men.*
Kyndnes, *s.* natural inclination, 4700; kindness, 1982.
Kyng, *s.* king, 39, 73, 78, 97, &c.; Kynge, 193, 202, 215; Kyng, *gen.* king's, 618, 627; Kyngis, *gen.* king's, 5181; (Kyngez), 823; Kyngis, *pl.* kings, 388; (Kengez), 885.
Kyngdome, *s.* kingdom, 138.
(Kynne); Some kynne gamez, games of some kind, 2259.
Kyssis, *pr. s.* kisses, 456, 495, 3250; Kys, *imp. s.* kiss, 5252.
Kythe (Kyth), *v.* manifest, show, 2433; show, 690; Kythis, *pr. s.* makes known, declares, 5367; Kyth (Kythen), *pr. pl.* show, manifest, 1021.
Kythe, *s.* country, 219; (Kyth), 827*, 843*; Kythe (Kyth), region, 1049; Kythis, *pl.* countries, lands, 136, 4376; (Kythes), 1777, 1990; (Kythez), 2817.

Labourde, *pt. pl.* laboured, toiled, 4814.
Lacedoyne, Lacedæmonia, 2440; Lacedone (Lacidon), 2471; (Lacydon), 2443.
Lachen, *v.* take, 3861; Lache, *v.* grasp at, 4347; (Lache), seize hold of, 1439; Lache, *ger.* to take, 2149; Laches, *pr. s.* takes, 5283; wins, 1055; (Lacchys), 2976; (Laught), *pt. s.* seized, 1055; Laches, *imp. pl* catch ye, 1923; Laches (Lachys), *imp. pl.* catch, gain, 2604.
(Lachynge), *s.* taking, capture, 1835.
Lackis, *pr. s.* fails, is deficient, 4811.
(Lad), *pt. s.* led, 793*.
Laddis (Laddez), *pl.* lads, low fellows, 1734; (Laddes), camp-followers, 2591, 772*.

Ladisman, *s.* leader, guide, 4967; (Lodesman), 2341. From A.S. *lád*, a leading.
Lady, *s.* lady, 223, 302, 370, 517; Lade, 5351; Ladi, *gen.* lady's, 379; Ladys, *pl.* ladies, 156; Ladis, 213, 595, 3739; (Lades), 1602, 3116; Ladis (Ladys), *gen. s.* lady's, 2415.
Ladyschip, *s.* ladyship, 3715.
Laftyn, *pt. pl.* left, 886; Laft, *pp.* left, 824; (Left), 1331.
Laghe, *adj.* low, short of stature, 3985.
Laghtnes, *s.* lowness (?), humility (?), 3293. Probably corrupt; the line gives no sense; see the Ashmole MS. *Laucht* = low, occurs in Barbour, xii. 19 (MS. E.).
Laghtyn; see Laȝt.
Laide, *pt. s.* laid, 494; (Lade), 893; Laide, *pp.* 382.
Laike, *s.* game, sport, jest, play, 644, 4367, 5358; sin, vice, lit. game, 4685; Laikis (Lakez), *pl.* games, 1761. Icel. *leikr*. See Layke.
Laike, *v.* sport, 5480; (Layke), *ger.* to amuse, disport (thyself with), 1770.
Laingire (Langer), *adv. comp.* longer, 2195.
Laire, *s.* earth, clay, soil, loam, 4445, 5088. Icel. *leir*. See Halliwell, and see note to l. 5088.
Laite, *v.* (Lates, *imp. pl.*), seek, find out, 2341; *ger.* to seek, 152. Icel. *leita*. See Layte.
Laith, *adj.* hateful, harmful, 5495; ugly, 4748; noxious, 4793; hideous, 3866.
Lake, fault, defect, blame, 1816.
Lamprays, *pl.* lampreys, 5085, 5473.
Lance (Launce), *s.* lance, 1223; Lances (Launcez), *pl.* 1399; (Lancez), 788.
Land, *s.* land, country, people, 109, 118, 168; Lande (Land), 757, 1760; Landis, *pl.* 10, 73, 210, 217; (Landez), 900.
Landace, Laodicea, 2762.
Lang (Lange), *adv.* long, 1145; Lange, 299, 461, 645.
Lang, *v.* belong, 1682; Langis, *pr. s.* longs, 385; Lange, *pr. s. subj.* may remain, remains, 3715; If þe langis, if it belongs to thee, if thou dost long, 5358; Lange, *imp. s.* long, 5405. (In l. 3715 the reading *lenge* would be better, as that is the spelling usual with that sense; see *langen* and *lengen* in Stratmann).
Langage, language, 240.
Lang on, *prep.* along of, dependent on, 4606.
Lange, *adj.* long, 602; (Lang), 757, 920, 1325; (Long), 1399.
Lange, *adv.*; see Lang.
Langing, *s.* longing, 6.
Langir, *adv.* longer, 3311, 3560; (Langer), 1411; Langer, 801; Langire (Langer), 734; (Langre), *adv.* longer, 811*; Na langire (No lenger), no longer, 1344.
Langour, *s.* languor, pining sickness, 3810; (Langor), 2807; ill fortune, 3289; Langor, pining, 7.
Langwysches, *pl.* languishings, attacks of weakness, 2810.
Lante, *pp.* lent, 4348.
Lanterns, *pl.* lanterns, 5398.
Lape, *s.* lap, 507.
Lappid, *pt. s.* folded, 4568.
Lare, *s.* lore, doctrine, teaching, learning, 36, 287, 633, 644, 1674, 4228; language, 5652; story, 523. See Lore.
Large, *adj.* large, 602.
Largely (Largly), *adv.* bounteously, 1351.
Largenes, largeness, extent, 68; grace, 3404.
Laschis (Lashes), *pr. s.* lashes, draws swiftly, 1325; darts, 553; Lasch (Lashe), *pr. pl.* strike, 1392; Laschid, *pt. pl.* lashed, drew, 801. See *lash* in Jamieson.
Lasse, *s.* girl, 3746.
Last, *adj.* last, 592; latest, i. e. very recent, 2785. At þe last, at last, 1007.
Last, *error for* Lest (*as in the* Dublin MS.), least, 2818.
Lastis, *pr. s.* lasts, lives, 989; (Lastes), 1678; (Lastez), 1220; Lastis (Lastes), *pr. s.* lasts (*where* I *should be omitted, as it is in the* Dublin MS.), 2806; Lastid, *pt. s.* lasted, 3643; (Lastyd), 2047.
(Lat), *s.* bar (lit. lath), 770*; (Lates), *pl.* 756*. A.S. *lætta*.
Lat, *v.* let, permit, allow, 355; (Latte), 1674; (Latt), *ger.* to let, 1677; Lattis, *pr. s.* lets, 3351; Latis (Lettes), 2665; Lat liȝtly (Letes lyghtly), consider lightly of it, think little of it, 2557; Latt, 2 *pr. pl.* act, go on, 4470; Lattis, *pr. pl.* let, i. e. suppose (themselves to be), 11; Lat. *imp. s.* 2 *p.* let, permit, 588, 2711; Lat thou (Lett þou), let thou, 724; Lat (Latt), let, 2888; Latt, let, 581; (Lat), 865, 1014; Lat, 102, 355; Lat ane (Lett be), let (it) alone, let (it) be, 2688; God lat, God grant, 364; Lat, let him, 997; Latis, *imp. pl.* let, 4413; Lattes (Lettes), *imp. pl.* let, bid, 2579.
Late, *adj.* late, 1736, 5051; On late, lately, 3549, 4394; Opon late (On late), lately, 2331.
Late, *adv.* lately, 2705, 3434, 4221.
Late, *s.* lightning, 553. See *laite* in Gloss. to the Troy-Book. Icel. *leiptr*.
Late, *s.* aspect, manner, 491; voice, song, 4384; Latis, *pl.* gestures, port, 152, 4743, 5184; outward habits, 4664; behaviour (of the onlookers), 3998. Icel. *læti*.
Latens, Latin, lit. of the Latins, 5652.
Lathely, *adj.* loathly, hideous, 491. See Laythely.
Lathely (Lothly), *adv.* loathingly, 2931.
Lathire, *adj. comp.* loather, more loath, 1258.
Lathis, *imp. pl.* loathe, abhor, 5115.
(Lathys), *pr. s.* invites, 1828. A.S. *laðian*.
Latine, *adj.* Latin, 4709, 5073.
Latoun, *s.* latten, a mixed metal, 4464.
Lattire, *adj. comp.* latter, 3891. See Neuer.
Laue, *adj.* drooping, 4748. Cf. Icel. *lafa*, to droop, dangle as a flap. "*Lave-eared*, long-eared;" Halliwell.

(Laughtyn), *pt. pl.* drew, 801. See Lache, Laȝt.
Launce, *s.* lance, 1325. See Lance.
Launde, *s.* plain, open space, lawn, 4818.
Law, *adv.* low, 2289; (Lawe), 2362; Lawe, lowly, humbly, 196, 495, 1012, 1620.
Lawe, *adj.* low, 1868; On lawe, low down, below, 199, 728; (In law), 3261, 3553. See Low.
Lawe, *s.* law, 1546, 1582, 1682, 3402; (Law), 1568; Lawis (Lawez), *pl.* laws, 2996.
Lawe, *s.* mountain, hill, 4812, 4887, 5485, 5514; (Low), 1090.
Lawene, *pp.* brought low, humiliated, 3293.
(Lawer), *adv. comp.* lower, 2714; Lawere, 5406.
Lawes, *pr. s.* lows, bellows, 4744.
Lawest, *adj. superl.* lowest, worst, 2092.
Lawid, *pt. s.* glowed, 226. Icel. *loga*.
Lawly, *adv.* lowly, humbly, 3172.
Lawnes (Lownys), *s.* lowness, littleness, 2706.
Lay, *s.* faith, religious belief, 3425.
Lay, *pt. s.* lay, 3230. See also Lies.
Layd, *pt. s.* laid, stretched, 778*; *pp.* laid, 507.
Layke, *s.* play, 385. See Laike.
Lays, *pl.* lays, 6.
Layte, *v.* seek, 372. See Laite.
Laythely (Lothlyche), *adj.* loathly, dreadful, 3230. See Lathely.
Laythly, *adv.* with loathing, 1709, 3985.
Laȝand, *pres. part.* laughing, merry, 4367; Laȝes, *pr. s.* 2725, 3760.
Laȝe, *s.* law, 4306; custom, 4402; Of a laȝe, by a law, with good reason, 4666; Laȝes, *pl.* laws, 4007, 4222; observances, 4412.
Laȝt, *pt. s.* took, 77; Laȝt leue, took leaue, 331; Laȝt his leue, 5232; Laȝt (Laghtyn), *pt. pl.* drew, 3193; Laȝt, *pp.* seized, conquered, taken, 4394; Laȝt (Laght), caught, 2807; derived, 2522; (Laughten), taken, 2028.
Laȝter, laughter, 96; Laȝtir, 5303; (Laughter), 2197.

Lebany, Lebanon, 4972.
Lebards, *pl.* leopards, 3573, 3849.
Leche, *s.* leech, physician, 2573.
(Leches), *pr. s.* heals, 1331; Lechid, *pp.* healed, cured, 2814.
Leddirs (Ledderys), *pl.* ladders, 1439.
Lede, *s.* man, 96, 226, 240, 438, 664, 757, 834, 858, 1090, 1292, &c.; (Led), 2241; Of na lede werkis, of the works of no man, of no human contrivance, 4833; Ledis, *pl.* men, 7, 77, 141, 199, 4347; (Ledes), 2067, 2253, 2413, 2762, 3171; Lede, *put for* Ledes, men, 42, 1392. In l. 461, we may take *lede* = woman, but it would be better to read *lady*. In l. 3293, *lede* = man (but in the Dublin MS. it is a verb). In l. 4494, the repetition of *lede* is due to some corruption; perhaps the second *lede* should be *land*, i. e. country. In l. 4590, dele the commas before and after *lede*.
Lede, *s.* nation, people, country, 240, 1503, 3100, 3750, 4494 (where it may be an error for *land*), 844*.
Lede, *s.* lead (metal), 4464.
Lede, *s.* language, 5007. *Short for* leden.
Lede, *ger.* to lead, 3787, 816*; *v.* 939; (Lede), guide, 3293; Ledis, *pr. s.* leads, 1645, 3887; (Ledes), 877, 1202, 2079; Ledes, conducts, 2875; Lede, *pr. pl.* bring, 5633; Led (Lede), *pt. s.* led, 697; carried, 2976; Lede (Ledyn), *pt. pl.* led, 1124; *pp.* taken, 621; Ledis (Ledes), *imp. pl.* lead, 1923.
Lederly; see Lethirly.
Lee, *s.* lea, field, 3561.
Lee, *s.* shelter, escape, 2060. See Jamieson. Or an error for *lyfe*, as in the Dublin MS.
Lee, *s.* delight, 5615. "*Lee*, joy, pleasure, delight"; Halliwell.
Leege; see Lege.
Leeve, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* leave, 4328.
Lefe (Leue), *v.* live, 1607; Lef (Leue), 1609. See also Leue.
Lefe, *v.* to leave; *hence* Lefys, *pr. s.* leaves, 330; Left, *pt. s.* left, 393; remained, 800; Lefe, *imp. s.* leave off, 5035; Left, *pp.* left, 814, 1269, 2253; (Laft), 728.
Lefe, *s.* leave, 1826, 2079; (Lefe), 1816.
Lefe, *s.* leaf, page, 4041; leaf (of a book), 1656; (Leffe), 1932.
Lefe, *v.* believe, 287.
Lefe, *adj.* dear, 653; (Leyue), 893.
Lefe (Leue), *adv.* lief, gladly, 1082.
Lefe, *ger.* to live, 3810; (Leue), *v.* live, 1605, 1607, 1609; (Lefys), *pr. s.* 989; Lefis (Lefyn), *pr. pl.* live, dwell, 3397.
Lefyng, *s.* living, mode of life, 4248; Lefing, 4699.
Legaunce (Legeance), allegiance, 2791.
Lege, *adj.* liege, 1607, 1948; (Leyge), 3087; (Leege), 987.
Lege, *s.* liege lord, 5624; Leggis (Leigez), *pl.* lieges, subjects, 3386.
Lege, *s.* leg, 5473; Leggis, *pl.* 4748, 4959; (Leggez), 772*.
Legeman (Lege man), liege man, 3172; Lege men (Legemen), *pl.* liege men, 1918.
Leke, leek; Of a leke, to the extent of the value of a leek, 4228. See the note.
Lekyn; see Lycken.
Lele, *adj.* leal, true, 3116; loyal, 1948; trusty, 2818.
Lele, *adv.* truly, 5020.
Lelist (Lelyst), *adj.* most loyal, 2877.
Lely, *adv.* leally, faithfully, 880, 1682; loyally, 4306.
Leme, *s.* light, ray, flame, 226, 4174, 4374. A.S. *léoma*.
Lemes, *pr. s.* glows, 5004; Lemed, *pt. s.* 4910; Lemed, *pt. s.* flashed, shone, 3335 (omit the first *as* in this line); Lemand, *pres. part.* glowing, shining, 553, 5398.
Lemetis, *pl.* limits, bounds, 5038.
Lemett, *pp.* limited, fixed, 4283.
Lemmans, *pl.* lovers, 7.
Lend, *v.* go, journey, march, 2192, 2888, 3520, 4889; ascend, 221; Lende, go, 3498; Lend, *ger.* to go, cross, 2591; Lendis, *pr. s.* comes, goes, 393, 858; (Lendez), arrives, 1693; Lendes, 1482; advances, 2149; Lendis, *pr. s. refl.* goes, 2440; Lendis him vp, goes up, 573; Lendis, *pr. pl.* go, 3656; Lendis þaim, come, 3849; Lendis (Lenden) þaim, *pr. pl.* land themselves, arrive, 3193; Lendid, *pt. s.* arrived, 379; Lend, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* go thou, 1980; Lendis, *imp. pl.* go, advance, 4992. See Lent.
(Lendes), *pl.* loins, 965.
Lenes, *pr. s.* leans forward, 1708; Lened, *pt. s.* leaned, 262; (Lenytt), 1708; Lene, *imp. s.* 3 *p.* let him lean, incline, 5069.
Lenes (Lennys), *pr. s.* lends, grants, 3108.
Leng, *ger.* to tarry, 5544; Lenge, *v.* live, linger, 1104; remain, abide, sojourn, stay, dwell, 273, 372, 2192; (Lenge), 1682; Lengis, *pr. s.* dwells, 1482; tarries, 1029; (Lengez), 1082; (Lenges), 2128; remains, 1293, 3535; Le[n]gis (Lenges), *pr. s.* abides, 2442; Lenges, tarries, 418; remains, 3746; Lengys (Lengez), continues, remains, 1144; Lengis (Lenges), *pr. pl.* are found, 2769; Lengid, *pt. s.* dwelt, 5538; (Lenged), 1293; *pp.* tarried, stayed, 461; Lenge (Leng), *pr. s. subj.* linger, 2162.
Lengthe (Lenth), *s.* length, 800; A lenghte, in length, 3987; Lenghe (*for* Lengthe), length, 5086. See Lenthe.
Lennthe, *v.* lengthen, p. 281, l. 65.
Lent, *pt. pl.* 1 *p.* went, lit. arrived, 1942; *pt. pl.* came, 3902; Lent, *pp.* arrived, 5079; Is lent, is put, 3527 (perhaps from inf. *lene*); Lent ware (wer), had remained, 3068.
Lenthe, *s.* length, 4750; Lenth, 68, 3908. See Lengthe.
Lenxis, *pl.* lynxes, 3573.
Lenȝth, *s.* length, 3299. See Lenthe.
Leon, *s.* lion, 109; Leons, *pl.* lions, 3849, 3902.
Lepards, *pl.* leopards, 5084, 5140, 5438; Leopards, 4793.
Lepis (Lepys), *pl.* leaps, dances, 1761; (Lepys), 791*.
Lepros, *adj.* leprous, 4593.
Lere, *v.* learn, 36, 4589 (see note to this line); *ger.* 621; Leres, *pr. s.* learns, 629; Leris, *pr. s.* teaches, 4551; Lerid, *pt. pl.* taught, 36; Lerid, *pp.* learned, instructed, 653; Lered, learned, 3732; (Leryd), learnt, 765*. Properly 'to teach'; but frequently misused.
Lere, *s.* face, 379. A.S. *hléor*.
Leres, *pl.* lessons, 3759. See Lare.
Les, *adj.* less, 1055, 4228.
Les, *adv. comp.* less, 472.
Les (*for* Lest), lest, 732. The Dublin MS. has *lest*.
Lesards, *pl.* lizards (probably crocodiles), 3573.
(Lese); see Lose.
Lesias (Lesyas), Lysias, 834; (Lysyas), 866.
Lesing, *s.* leasing, lying, 4362; legend, fiction, 4. The use of this word in l. 4 is very remarkable, as it usually has a bad sense.
Lesis (Lossez), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* shalt lose, 2306.
(Lesse), *adj.* less, 1596.
Lessen, *pr. s.* 2 *p. subj.* lessen, take away, 5368.
Lest, *adj.* least, 3301, 3643, 3908; Leste, 5127.
(Lest), *adv.* least, 2546.
Lest, *conj.* lest, 2141, 4167; (Lest), 1372, 1981.
Lesten, *ger.* to listen, 523; At lesten, to listen to, 4309; Lestyn, *ger.* 8; Lestin, *v.* listen to, 3468; Lesten, *v.* hearken to, 4949.
(Let), *ger.* to let, 750; Letes, *pr. s. refl.* behaves, accounts himself, 1726; Lete, *pt. s.* let, 750, 1828; made, 491; behaved, 612; Lete, *pt. pl.* let, 5; Lett, *pp.* permitted, 2192; Lete, *imp. s.* cease, let go, 5332; Lett, 3 *p.* let, 1497; Letis (Lettes), *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* let ye, 988; Lettis (Lett), let, 1800. A.S. *lǽtan*.
Let (Lett), *v.* hinder, let, 1781; Lettis (Lettes), *pr. s.* hinders, 2807, 4065, 4847; Lett, 2 *pr. pl.* 4418; (Let), *pt. pl.* delayed, 801.
Letere, *s.* bed (lit. litter), couch, 4910.
Leth, *v.* listen to, 4470. A bad spelling of *lithe*; see Lithe, Lythe.

Cf. the Lat. text—'facias vt exaudiant preces tuas.'

Leth, *s.* alleviation, healing, cure, 4593. See *Lith* in Glos. to Havelok.

Lethire, *adj.* evil, wretched, 3548; (Lethir), cowardly, 2445; wicked, 2362; Lethir, vile, 3732; Leþer (Lether), wicked, 840. A.S. *lyðre.*

Lethirly, *adv.* shamefully, 2791; (Lederly), badly, ill, 2376; Lethirely (Letherly), wickedly, 1465. See Lithirly.

Lett, *s.* hindrance, 118.

Letter, *s.* letters, reading, 624, 644; Lettir (Lettre), letter, 1463, 1719, 1806; Lettirs, *pl.* letters, 201; (Lettres), 1170, 1868, 1995, 2010; Lettris, 5100; Letteris, 5639.

Letterure (Lettre), *s.* story, 2170.

Lettird, *adj.* lettered, learned, 199; Lettrid (Lettred), 2241.

Leue, *v.* leave, 1193, 3498; leave off, 1744; (Lefe), 2149, 3080; Leue (Leven), *ger.* 1258; Leue (Lefe), 1 *pr. s.* leave, 2950; Leues, *pr. s.* 1047, 4340; 4264 (to which line see the note); Leues (Lefys), 2486; he (God) grants, 2508; (Leuys), 1283; Leuys (Lefys), 2887; Leues, *pr. pl.* leave, 886; remain behind, 3750; Leuys (Lefes), leave, 3202.

Leue, *s.* leave, 331, 766, 899, 1012, 2028; Be ȝoure (yonr) leue, by ȝour leave, 1680, 1681, 3465; departure, 1693.

Leue (Lefe), *v.* live, 2814, 3171; Leve, *ger.* 933; Leues, *pr. s.* lives, 1722, 4284; (Leues), 880; Leueth, p. 281, l. 66; (Leued), *pt. s.* 920; Leuand, *pres. part.* living; Leuand of lyue, living in life, living alive (tautological), 2877.

Leue, *ger.* to believe in, 5552; Leue, 1 *pr. s.* believe, 1781, 2688, 3715; Leuys (Leues), 2 *pr. s.* 1760; Leues, 2 *pr. pl.* believe, expect, 4482; (Leue), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayest believe, 1986; (Leuyn), *pr. pl. subj.* may believe, 2688 (misused for the singular); Leued, 1 *pt. s.* believed (myself), 3282; Leued, *pt. s.* expected, 3874.

Leue, *adj.* dear, 4, 287, 573, 697, 4882; Leue (Leyfe), *adj. as sb.* sir, lit. dear one, 2688.

Leuefull, *adj.* lawful, permissible, 1674.

Leuell, *s.* level, 3261.

Leuely, *adv.* dearly, with welcome, 4949. See Leue, *adj.*

Leuer, *adv.* rather, 1465.

Leues, *pl.* leaves (of a book), 5073; leaves, 3957, 5005. See Lefe, and Leuys.

Leuir, *adj.* rather, 4947.

Leuir, *s.* liver, 4606.

Leuire, *ger.* to deliver, 3718; Leuird, *pp.* delivered, 5344.

Leuyng, *s.* living, manner of living, 4222.

Leuys, *pr. s.* leaves, 77, 135; Leuyd, *pt. s.* left, 148.

Leuys, *pl.* leaves, 3666, 4145. See Leues.

Leuys, *pr. pl.* live, 4942; Leuyand, *pres. pt.* 5287. See Leue.

Lewis, *pr. s.* becomes warm, 4374.

Leyge. See Lege.

Leȝe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* lie, tell falsely, 314.

Leȝt, *s.* 4980. Evidently a misspelling; and probably an error for lēȝt = lenȝth, a spelling which occurs in l. 3299. Of leȝt large = of lenȝth large, i. e. of a large length, of a great height. Compare the parallel phrase "of a longe lengthe,' i. e. of great length, in P. Plowman, B. xiv. 241.

Libertes, *pl.* liberties, 4348, 4418.

Liche, body, 141; Liches, *pl.* 4517. A.S. *lic.*

Licherous, *adj.* lecherous, 4328; Licherus, 4551.

Lichid, *pt. s.* (*for* Lechid), healed; It lichid him for euire, it healed him once for all (viz. by killing the man), 4785.

Licken, *ger.* to liken, compare, 3095; 1 *pr. s.* 438; Lickyns (Likens), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* likenest, comparest, 2706; Lickenand, *pres. pt.* likening, *hence* alike, 666; Lickned, *pp.* likened, 3553; (Lykkynd), 3095; Licknud, made like, 4350.

Lickid, *pt. pl.* licked, 3826.

Licknes, *s.* likeness, 3679; (Liknes), 1709. See Liknes.

Licoure (Liquor), *s.* liquor, juice, 1351; Licor (Liconr), draught, 2569.

Liddis, *pl.* lids, eye-lids, 965.

Lies, *pr. s.* lodges, 1145; (Lay), *pt. s.* lodged, 1145. See also Lay, Ly.

Life, *s.* life, 1918; (Lyfe), 2162; Lifis, *pl.* lives, 5.

Lift, *s.* air, sky, 4814; Lifte, 674.

Liftis, *pr. s.* lifts, raises, 3289; (Lyftes), 965; Lift (Liften), 1 *pt. pl.* lifted (up), rose (up), 1942; Lift, *pt. pl.* 196; Liftid, *pp.* lifted, 5514; Lift (Lyft), 728.

(Lig), *v.* lie, 756*; Ligge, 345; Ligg, *ger.* to lie, 5591; Ligg, *v.* lay (*misused*), 2101; His buke on to lig, for his book to lie on, 1570; Liggis, *pr. s.* lies, 5173; (Liggez), stays, rests, 3176; (Ligges), 730*; Ligis, lies, reposes, 4775; Liggis, *pr. pl.* lie, 4845; (Liggez), 772*. See Lies.

Light; see Liȝt.

(Lighter), *adv.* more easily, 1055.

(Lightyd), *pp.* relieved, cured, 2814. See also Liȝtis.

Like, *adj.* like, 240, 599, 654, 666; (Leke), 2445.

Like, *s.* body, 2931, 3232, 4785. See Liche.

Likis, *pr. s.* (it) pleases, 22, 292, 523, 3522; (Likez), 987; Likis (Liked), likes, 2013; (Likez), 2 *pr. s.* likest, 1765; Like, *pr. s. subj.* may it please, 5115; Likid, *pt. s.* liked, 146; pleased, 373; Likid, *impers. pt. s.* it would please, 5544; (Liked), might please, 2172; would please, 1948; Likand, *pres. pt.* pleasing, 4606.

Likkys, *pr. s.* licks, 778*.

Liknes, *s.* likeness, shape, 382. See Licknes.

Limpe, *v.* happen (to), 3759; Limp (Lympe), befall, happen, 2162; Limpis, *impers. pres. s.* happens, 3891; Limps (Lympys), happens, suits, 3095; Limpis, belongs, 3563; Limpes, 2 *pr. s.* chancest, 3754 (rather read *if þe limpes*, if it happens to thee); Limp, *pr. s. subj.* may happen (to thee), 3297; Limpid (Enlympyd), *pt. s.* happened, succeeded, 1881; (Limpyd), was secured (for him), 2060; Vs limpyd (Limpyd), *pt. s. impers.*, it befell us, 209.

Limy, *name*, 5495.

Lind, *s.* lime-tree, *used for* tree, 5003; Lindis, *pl.* trees, 5038, 5237; lime-trees, 2851, 4765, 4942.

Line (Lines), *s.* line, 1932; (Lyne), line of writing, 2047. See also Lyne.

Lionesses, *pl.* lionesses, 5140. See also Lyon.

Lippis, *pl.* lips, 3942.

Lire, *s.* flesh, 3942. A.S. *lira.*

List, *pr. s. impers.* pleases, 3297, 3810; it pleases (me), 3472; pleases (it), 3563; List vs, it pleases us, 4347; List, does it (not) please, 4942; (Lyst), it pleases, 2149; Liste (List), *pr. s. subj.* may please (thee), 1761; List, 2 *pr. pl.* (MS. lift), are (ye) pleased, do (ye) desire, 5356; List ȝow, may it please you, 3465; List, *pt. s.* it pleased, 5023.

Lite, few, 2079, 2128, 4394; (Lyte), 2253; (Lityll), 2306. See Lyte.

Lite, *s.* a little, 1942.

Lithe, *v.* listen, hear, 5023; listen to, 3468; *ger.* to listen to, 4384. Icel. *hlýða.* See Lythe.

Lithe, *ger.* to soften, render pliant, hence, to subdue, 3754. A.S. *geliðian.*

Lithirly (Lythirly), *adv.* wickedly, evilly, 3100. See Lethire.

Lithis, *pl.* limbs, 3750. A.S. *lið.* See Lyth.

Lithis, *pl.* pleasures, 5615. Allied to Lithe, *v.*

Litill, *adj.* little, 113, 331, 503, 507; few, 2128, 5147; (Lityll), 866, 965; (Litell), 1754. See Littill, Lytill.

Litillaike, *s.* littleness, smallness of stature, 2505; (Litilayke), 1709; (Lityllaike), littleness, 2931; (Lityllake), pitifulness, 2706.

Litill-quat, somewhat, 4392.

Littid, *pt. pl.* delayed, 801. Bad spelling for *lettid.*
Littill, *adj.* little, 130, 227, 1981; *as s.* a little, 139, 541; *adv.* 1054. See Litill.
Littis, *pl.* dyes, colours, 4336. Icel. *lita.*
Liuers (Delyuerys), *pr. s.* delivers, 3152.
Liȝt, *adj.* bright, 553; white, 4464; royal, 5184; (Light), cheery, cheerful, 2604, 5332.
Liȝt, *s.* light, 3335; (Light), 1781, 2976; Liȝtis, *pl.* lights, 4231.
Liȝter, *adj. comp.* lighter, i. e. delivered, 572.
Liȝt-hertid, *adj.* light-hearted, 2814.
Liȝtis, *pr. s.* lights, alights, 4153; (Lightes), 1560; Liȝt, *pr. pl.* 886; Liȝt, *pr. pl. subj.* alight, light, fall, 732; Liȝt, *pt. s.* alighted, 4785; Lightyd, *pt. pl.* 886; descended, was born, 599; came down, 2362; Liȝt, *pp.* alighted, 2404; Liȝt, *pp.* born, 4494 (cf. l. 599).
Liȝtis, *pr. s.* feels light, is glad, 5255.
Liȝtis, *pr. s.* lights, kindles, 4232; Liȝtid, lighted, 4231.
Liȝtly, *adv.* quickly, 77; without a cause, 3506; (Lightly), easily, 1932.
Liȝtlyere, *adv.* lightlier, more easily, 1055.
Lo, lo! 399, 713, 985. See Loo.
Locerhes; *written* Locerhes *in the* MS., *but prob. an error for* Leches, *pl.* leeches, 4197.
Lockis, *pr. s.* locks, fastens, 5495.
Lockis, *pl.* locks (of hair), 602.
Lofe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* praise, 259, 5624; (Lofe), 2577; Lofed, *pt. s.* praised, 658. Icel. *lofa.*
Lofe, *s.* praise, fame, 664. Icel. *lof.*
Lofe, *s.* love, 226.
(Lofely), *adv.* lovingly, 3172. See Lufly.
Lofes, *pr. s.* loves, 880. See Lufe.
Loft, *in phr.* On loft, aloft, on high, 196, 221, 385, 426; Fra þe loft, from above, 393; Apon loft (Vpon lofte), aloft, 778; Of loft (Onlofte), aloft, 1392.
Loge, *s.* lodge, defence, hold, 1292; lodge, 886, 1158; lodging, 372; apartment, 4910; lodge, i. e. palace, 3335 (omit the former *as* in this line); abode, 791*.
Logis, *pr. s.* lodges, 1082; (Loges), 3657, 4882, 5580. See Loygid.
Lokars (Lokers), *pl.* keepers, 2591.
Loke, *ger.* look for, 372; *v.* look, 273; Lokis (Lukes), 1 *pr. s.* (I) look, expect, 2810; Lokis, *pr. s.* looks, 603, 674, 677, 1129; looks to, 1331; (Lokys), 2241; (Lukes), 965; Lokes (Lukes), *pr. s.* looks, 2942; (Lokez), 840*; seems, 750*.
Loke, *s.* look, 5256.
Loken, *pt. s.* covered, 5005, 5237; Lokin, roofed, 4383. A.S. *locen*, pp. of *lúcan.*
Lokid (Lukkyd), *pp.* decided, decreed, 3404.
Lokis, *pl.* locks, 4956.
Lome, *s.* tool; Odd lome, privy member, 4750. A.S. *lóma.*
Longe, *adj.* long; At longe, at last, 3498.
(Longen), *pr. pl.* belong, 1549.
Loo, lo! 4417; (Lo), 705, 1821. See Lo.
Loose, *s.* loss, 3891.
Looue (Lofe), palm of the hand, 2569. Icel. *lófi.* See Loue.
Loran, *s.* bit, 793*. O.F. *lorain* (Roquefort).
Lord, lord, master, 152, 1656, 1828; (Lorde), sir, 1012; Lorde (Lord), Lord, 848; Lordis, *gen.* lords, 5; Lord (Lordez), *gen.* lord's, 2604; Lordis, *pl.* lords', 196; (Lordez), 814, 1602.
Lording (Lordyng), lord, 2573.
Lordschip, *s.* dominion, 1687, 2306; lordship, 1503; Lordschips, *pl.* titles of honour, 4347.
Lore, *s.* instruction, command, 2791. See Lare.
Lorell (Losell), mean fellow, rascal, 1760. *Lor-el* and *los-el* are mere variants, meaning 'lost' or abandoned wretch.
Lores, *pl.* laurel-trees, 4972.
Lorne, *pp.* lost, 5. A.S. *loren*, pp. of *léosan.*

Lose (Lese), *v.* to lose, 3087; Loste (Lost), *pt. pl.* lost, 3068; Lost, *pp.* 118, 152, 840, 2785.
Lose (Losse), *s.* loss, 3171; Los (Losse), 866.
Lose, *s.* praise, fame, 1881, 2604, 3527; (Loyse), 2505. O.F. *los.*
Losed, *pp.* praised, 5316; (Losyt), renowned, 2505.
Losell; see Lorell.
Losengere (Losynger), *s.* liar, 1923; Losangere, 3543; Losengers (Losyngers), *pl.* 1734.
(Loth), *adj.* loath, 1258.
Lothlyche; see Laythely.
Loude, *adv.* loudly, 491, 612, 1609.
(Loudly), *adv.* loudly, 1709.
Loue, *v.* love, 369; (Loued), *pt. s.* loved, 813*; Loues, *pr. pl.* desire, 2318; Loued (Lofed), *pp.* beloved, 2562.
Loue, *s.* love, 1687.
Loue, *ger.* to praise, to be praised, 4590; 1 *pr. s.* praise, 458; Loues, *pr. s.* praises, 5207; Loued, *pp.* praised, 2505. Icel. *lofa.*
Loue, *s.* palm of his hand, 2067. Icel. *lófi.* See Looue.
Louely, *adj.* dear, 2289; (Lofely), 3579.
Louely, *adv.* beautifully, 426; kindly, 369; (Louely), lovingly, 880.
(Loughly), *adv.* lowly, 1012.
Loute, *ger.* to render obedient, 3494; to bow down to, 3549; Loute, *v.* do obeisance, 369; (Lowte), submit to, 993; Loutis, *pr. s.* bows to, 4238; (Loutez), bows to, 785*; Loutis (Loutes), bows down to, 3211; *pr. pl.* obey, 5674; Louted, *pp.* reverenced, bowed down to, 3454. A.S. *hlútan.*
Louyng, *s.* praise, 3754.
Low; On low, a-low, low, 788*.
Low, *s.* a mountain; see Lawe.
Lowde, *adj.* loud, 96; (Lowd), 1392.
Lowe, *s.* flame, 4177, 4179. A.S. *log.*
Lowere, *s.* reward, guerdon, recompense, 5368. O.F. *louier*, *loier* (Roquefort); *loyer*, 'reward, guerdon;' Cotgrave.
Lownys; see Lawnes.
(Lowsed), *pp.* praised, 1960. See Losed.
Lowsys, *pr. s.* loosens, 788*.
Lowtes, *pr. s.* bends, 788*.
Loygid (Loget), *pp.* lodged, 1952.
Loȝe, *pt. s.* laughed, 96.
Loȝe, *s.* lake, 3899. A.S. *lagu*; Icel. *lögr.*
Luctus, *name of a place*, 2170.
Lufe, *v.* love, 664; Lufe, 1 *pr. s.* love, 289; 1 *pr. pl.* 3768; Lufed (Lofyd), *pp. as adj.* beloved, 3425.
Lufe, *s.* love, 6; (Loue), 920.
Lufe, *error for* I lofe, I praise, 2577. See the Dublin MS.
Lufly, *adv.* lovingly, 1693. See Lofely.
Luggid, *pt. pl.* pulled, dragged, 3942.
Luke, *v.* look, see, 68, 221; Lukis, *pr. s.* 1527.
(Lukkyd); see Lokid.
Lurkare, *s.* lurker, skulker, 3543.
Lurkis, *pr. pl.* lurk, 3991.
Lust, *s.* pleasure, 4497; Lustes, *pl.* 4328.
Ly, *v.* lie, 770*.
Lycken (Lekyn), *v.* liken, 1740.
Lyes, *pr. s.* lies, is, 920.
Lyfe, life, 34, 42; (Lyue), 1188; O lyfe, alive, 663; On lyfe, 540; (On-lyue), 1269; Lyfes (Lyue), *gen.* life's, 880; (Lyfez), *pl.* lives, 1826.
Lyfe, *s.* person, living person, 599, 5287. So in P. Plowman and Gower.
Lyfe-days, days of my life, 369.
Lyft, *s.* sky, 4174. See Lift.
Lyft, *v.* lift, exalt, 3293; (Lift), 1090; (Lyftes), *pr. s.* 731*. See Liftis.
Lyftyng, *s.* lifting, raising; As a hand lyftyng, like what can be lifted in the hand, i. e. as large as could just be raised by hand, 567.
(Lygez), *pl.* legs, 3150.
(Lykkynd); see Licken.
Lylly, *sb.* lily, 3902.
Lym, *s.* limb, 666, 4497; (Lymez), *pl.* 1918; (Lymmes), *s.* 772*.
Lyme, *s.* lime, 5088.
Lymit, *s.* limit, 5069.
Lymp, *v.* happen, 299; Lympid

(Limpyd), *pt. s. subj.* should happen, 2220.
(Lympys); see Limpe.
Lyn, *adj.* linen, 141.
Lyndis, *pl.* lindens, trees, 3957, 4447. See Lind.
Lyne, *s.* line, 1656; (Line), 1821; story, 2060; line (of the book), 1439; Lynes, *pl.* lines of the writing, 2573.
Lyon, *s.* lion, 612; Lyons, *gen.* 426, 602; Lyon, *gen.* 438. See also Lionesses.
(Lyre), *s.* face, look, 3232. A.S. *hléor.*
Lyse, 1 *pr. s.* (I) lie, 2810; (Lyes), *pr. s.* lies, 1816.
Lyte, *adj.* little; To lyte, too little, very little, 1754.
(Lyth), *s.* limb, form, 2931. A.S. *lið.* See Lithis.
Lythe, *ger.* to listen to, 4; Lythis (Lightez), *pr. s.* listens, 1650.
Lythirly; see Lithirly.
Lytill, *adj.* little, 478.
Lyue, *s.* life, 2123; Lyues, *gen.* life's, 5615; On lyue, alive, 5085; Of lyue, alive, 3732; out of life, 4333; Broght of lyue (liue), brought out of life, killed, 1442; Lyues (Lyfez), *pl.* lives, 3071; Lyuys, 1595, 2476.
Lyuir, *adj.* delivered, 3746.
Lyuire (Delyver), *ger.* to deliver, 3120; Lyuers (Leuerys), *imp. pl.* deliver, 3116.

Ma (*for* Me), me, 729. See note.
Maa (Make), *v.* make, perform, 1761.
Maa (Mo), more, besides, 1273.
Macchis (Mache), *pl.* mates, 831.
Maces, *pl.* clubs, 4100.
Mache, *ger.* to match themselves, 3607; Macches, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* match; Macches ȝow, match yourselves, 1033.
Mad, *pt. s.* made, caused, 3449; Made, 235, 469; Mad, *pp.* made, 3921; Made, 318, 1130.
Madame, madame, 229, 874.
Madding, *s.* madness, 1743, 3546.
(Made); *an error for* Nad, had not, 1462. See the footnote.
(Madeus), 729; see Maideux.
Magen, *Lat.* Magehon, 5492.
(Mageste), *s.* majesty, 1491. See Maieste.
Magged, *pp.* mangled, 1268. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *magil, maggle,* to mangle, to hash.
Magnifie (Magnyfye), *imp. s.* magnify, 2838.
Magogg, Magog, 5487.
Mai, *pr. s.* may, 3552.
Mai, May, 3699.
Maideux; So maideux, i. e. so m'aide deux, so may God aid me, 5024. The words *m'aide deux* are Anglo-French. Cf. note to l. 729.
Mai[d]ons, *pl.* maidens, 3722.
Maied, *pp.* dismayed, 5399. Short for *esmaied.* See Mayes.
Maieste, majesty, 2275; (Mageste), 1947, 1969.
Mailes (Malys), *pl.* coats of mail, 803, 2454, 2624; Maillis (Males), 1219.
Maire (Mair), mayor, 1557.
Maister, master, 235, 268, 310, &c.; tutor, 5617; Maistre (Maister), 2238, 2251; (Maistir mair), Mr. mayor, 1557; Maistris, *pl.* masters, lords, 3400; (Maisters), 1545, 1920; Maistirs, lords, 985; (Maisteres), 767*.
Maister, *adj.* chief, 2037, 5404.
Maister-like, *adv.* with dignity, 228.
Maisterlingis, *pl.* princes, 481; Maisterlings, 3310.
Maistres, *s.* mistress, queen, 3763, 4530.
(Maistrett), *pp.* conquered, 1270.
Maistri, *s.* mastery, rule, dominion, 3306; Maistrie (Maistre), 1969; Maisterris, *pl.* masteries, conquests, 4502; Maistryse, *pl.* powerful charms, feats of astrology, 333.
Makare (Maker), *s.* Maker, Creator, 3267.
Make, *ger.* to make, 205, 333, 868; *v.* 356, 583; to be made, 191; Makis (Mase), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* makest, 2908; (Makys), dost, 834*; Makis, *pr. s.* 544, 641, 704; Makis (Mase), *pr. s.* disposes, 2210 (better insert *to fonde,* as in the Dublin MS.); Makis, *pr. pl.*

make, 1266; (Made), *pt. pl.* made, 1266; Maked, *pt. s.* made, 3326; Makid, *pp.* made, 3345, 4358; Maked, 3441; Make, *pr. s. subj.* 890; let him make, 999.
Make, *s.* mate, wife, 574, 5153; fellow, 5430. A.S. *gemaca.*
Make (Makke), *s.* make, form, construction, 3218.
Maleces, *pl.* works of malice, p. 279, l. 7.
Malegrefe (Mawgre), *prep.* in spite of, 2782; Malegreue (Mawgre), 1747.
Malicoly, *adj.* melancholy, 2382; Malicole (Malycole), melancholy, sad, 2741.
Malicoly, *s.* ill-humour, anger, 1981.
Malidy, malady, 4281; (Maledy), 2127.
Malstrid, *pp.* bewildered, 1270. Written for *malscrid;* see *Malskrid* in Will. of Palerne, *malskren* in Stratmann, and *malscrung* in Wright's Vocabularies.
Mammlere, *s.* ready speaker, fluent utterer, 4498. From M.E. *mamelen,* to chatter.
Man, *s.* man, 185, 211, &c.
Man (May), *pr. pl. subj.* may, 1681.
Manars, *pl.* manners, 4223. See Maner.
Manas, *s.* menace, 3570.
Mandment, *s.* mandate, commandment, 3531, 3541.
Mane, many, 104.
Mane, *s.* moan, lament, 5027; (Mone), 1266.
Maner, *s.* custom, 2953; manner, sort, 684, 1130; Manere, kind, sort, 1498, 4353, 4535; Maners, *pl.* manners, 2515.
Manerly, *adv.* courteously, 3953.
Mangery, feast, 831. See P. Plowman.
Mankit. See Alto-maukid (*sic*).
Manly, *adv.* boldly, 762.
(Manly), *adv.; an error for* Maynly, i. e. severely, 3200. (The Ashmole MS. has the right reading.)
(Manours), *pr. s.* governs, 837*.
Manslatir, *s.* manslaughter, 4486.
Manslaȝt, *s.* manslayer, 4498.
Mantill, mantle, 3236, 4956, 5181; (Mantyll), 2864.
Many, *adj.* many, 13, 86, 94, 124; (Mony), 692; Many day (Mony day), long ago, many a day, 919, 1186. See Mane.
Many-fald, *adj.* manifold, 3763.
Manykins; Of manykins hewis, of hues of many a kind, 3864.
(Manysflesche), man's flesh, 748*.
Marble (Marbyll), *s.* marble, 1330.
Marbryn, *adj.* of marble, 4353.
Marchandise (Merchaundyse), *s.* merchandise, 3419.
Marchands (Marchaundez), *pl.* merchants, 1557.
Marche, *s.* border, frontier, region, boundary, country, 97, 245, 762, 913, 1625, 2012, 3452, 3538, 837*; Marchis (Marches), *pl.* marches, borders, 2696; Marches, 1241, 1972, 2037. See Merche.
Marchesmen (Marche-men), men of that march or region, 2540.
March-gats, *pl.* lines of march, 5076.
Marcipy, Marsipius, 5093.
Marcure, Mercury, 4498; (Mercury), 704; Marcure (Mercurius), *gen.* Mercury's, 2865.
Mare, *adj.* more, greater, 118, 130, 182, 1743, 1746, 2584, 2813, 4395.
Mare, *s.* mare, 4434.
Margarits, *pl.* pearls, 3669. See Margrite.
Margon, *s.* muttering, 628. It seems to refer to the muttering of a crowd of boys engaged in learning a task. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *murgeon,* a murmur, the act of grumbling, q. v. in Jamieson. Stevenson explains it by 'sullenness.'
Margrite, *s.* pearl, 4901.
Market, *s.* market; To make his market, to do his business, 421.
Marras, *s.* morass, marsh, 3893, 3932.
Marres, *pr. s.* wounds, 2040; Marris, *pr. pl.* injure, 1420; Marre, hurt, spoil, 4409; (Merred), *pt. pl.* 1420; Marrid, *pt. s.* spoilt, 3546.
Mars, Mars, 4502.
Marthyney, *name,* 5492.
Martrid (Martyred), *pp.* murdered, 1268; Martird, slain, 3644.
Mary, *ger.* marry, 3773.

Mas (Makes), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* makest, 831; (Makys), 2741; Mas, makes, causes, 2587, 3501, 3570, 3616, 4739; (Makes), 1330, 2277, 2674; (Makez), 1518, 1956.
Mascles, *pl.* spots, 4989, 5138. The F. heraldic term *macle* (from Lat. *macula*) is in E. heraldry spelt *mascle*. See *macle* in Cotgrave.
Mased, *pp.* confused, amazed, confounded, 3885; (Masyd), bewildered, 1270.
Massy, *adj.* huge, heavy, 3332.
(Massydon), Macedonia, 837*.
Mast, *adj.* most, greatest, 1462, 3082, 3669, 3921; (Most), 2687; (Moste), 1115; Maste, 4820.
Mast, *adv. superl.* most, 5078; Maste, 1725, 2072; (Most), 2416.
Mast, *s.* mast, *put for pl.* masts, 69.
Mastif, mastiff, 321.
Mast-quat, for the most part, 5010.
Matches (Maches), *pr. s.* provides a match for, 2277.
Mater (Materys, *pl.*), matter, 2780.
Matid (Mated), *pp.* exhausted, 1270.
Maumentry, idolatry, 4486.
Maundment, *s.* commandment, *but here* commendation *or* message, 4237.
Mawe, *s.* maw, stomach, 4508; Mawis, stomachs, 4434; open gullets, 4728.
May, 1 *pr. s.* may, 464; (if I) may, 327; 2 *pr. s.* canst, 366, 1090, 1986; *pr. s.* may, 179, 520, 636; 2 *pr. pl.* can, 684; *pr. pl.* 592.
Mayden, *s.* maiden, 4266; Maydens, *pl.* 3177.
Maydese, *for* m'aide Deus, so may God aid me, an oath, 4446. See note; and see Maideux.
Mayes, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* be ye dismayed, 3010; dismay, 3570. *Short for* Smayis, *imp. pl. of* smay. Cf. O.F. *s'esmayer*, to be astonied; Cot. See Maied.
Maylis, *pl.* mail-armour, coats of mail, 3615; Mayles (Males), 2226.
Mayn, *adj.* chief, choice, 3777; strong, complete, 3018; large, 3932.
Maynes, *pr. s.* maims, wounds, 5153; Mayned, *pp. as adj.* maimed, 1273; *hence*, wretched, miserable, 4544.
Maynly, *adv.* exceedingly, extremely, 399, 934, 1341; strongly, severely, 3200; vehemently, 3434; (Manly), boldly, 1033, 1173, 1951; fiercely, vigorously, 2042; strongly, 1217, 1379; greatly, 2235; Maynely, strongly, 3969; fiercely, 3885.
Maynyng, *s.* maiming, injury caused (by), 4088. See Maynes.
Mayntenance (Mayntenaunce), maintenance, 1179.
Mayntene, *v.* defend, 1972; Mayntеines, *pr. s.* keeps up, 4522; Maynten, *pr. pl.* maintain, keep, defend (his body), 1265.
Maȝte, *adj.* mighty, great, 4787 (see footnote), 4883; Maȝten, 3938.
Me, *dat.* for me, 3170; to me, 214; *acc.* me, 208; myself, 3093.
Meane, *s.* mean, means, way, method, p. 282, l. 105.
Meche, *adj.* great, 3306.
Meche, *error for* Methe, *s.* moderation, 3102. See Meth.
Medcyne, *s.* medicine, 4281; (Medycine), 2555.
Mede, *s.* meed, reward, 1092, 3191, 4534, 5226; ransom, 3120; Wirship to mede, honour for their reward, 3423; Medis, *pl.* (Mede, *s.*), rewards, 2428.
Mede, *s.* mead, 4824.
Mede, Media, 88, 4843, 5105; (Medy), 2528, 3107; Medi, 1681.
Medill, *adj.* middle, 315.
Medilmast, *adj. superl.* middlemost, 5093.
Medis, *pl.* Medes, 3644, 3969, 5312, 5632.
Medy, Media, 2583, 3616.
Meenes (Menys þe), 2 *pr. s.* bemoanest, lamentest, 2741. A.S. *mǽnan.*
Meere, *s.* mare, 3921; Meeris (Merys), *pl.* 2853.
Meere, *s.* boundary, 5058; limit allotted period, 5024.
Meere, *s.* mere, lake, 4093.
Meeve, *ger.* to move, 5292.

Megire (Meger), *adj. as s.* meagreness, famine, 1164.
Meke, *adj.* meek, humble, 1747.
Meke, *ger.* to humble (himself), 1746; Meke (Mekyn), *imp. s.* humble, render meek, 2838.
Mekely, *adv.* meekly, 816, 1947, 2098.
Mekely (*for* Mekilly), *adv.* largely, 3691. (Or an error for *metely*, meetly).
Mekill, *adj.* great, 396, 927, 3313; great, 437; Mekil, great, 69; (Mykle), great, 1947; Mekil quat, many things of various kinds, 130 (see the note), 5468.
Mekill, *s.* much (see the note), 4397.
Mekill, *adv.* much, 268, 464, 513, 659; (Mykyll), 897.
Mekills, *error for* Mekill, *adj.* much, 4310.
Mekly (Mekely), *adv.* meekly, 1686.
Meknes (Mekenes), *s.* meekness, 3286.
Mele, *ger.* to speak, tell, 147, 5120; Melis (Melles), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* speakest, 2911; Melis (Mellys), *pr. s.* speaks, 2078, 2953; Melid, *pp.* spoken, told, 5113. A.S. *mǽlan.*
Meliager, 1195, 1201, 1217, 1237, &c.
Mell (Melle), *ger.* to meddle, 735; to contend, fight with, 1743; (Mell), intermeddle, 1989; Mellis, *pr. s.* cohabits, 5430. O.F. *mesler.*
Mellis, *pr. s.* tells, speaks, 4310; (Mellys), 2 *pr. s.* tellest, 729. (Badly spelt; read *melis*, *melys*; but see further examples s. v. Mele).
Mellis, *pl.* mallets, 4100.
(Meltyn), *v.* melt, 3082; Meltis, *pr. s.* 2899.
Me[m]bree, *s.* member (of the body, limb, 4493; Membris, *pl.* 4328, 4495.
Memory, *s.* remembrance, 1118.
Men, *pl.* men, people, 49, 88, 90, 147, &c.
Menbris (*for* Membris), *pl.* limbs, members, 3806, 4513, 4544; (Membrys), 2552; (Menbres), 771*.
Mendid, *pp.* mended, improved, made more fat, 464.
Mene, *ger.* to mean, signify, 437, 3389; to signify, to say, 4944; Mene, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* mean, 2740; Me[ne], 315.
Mene, *adj.* mean, poor; Al be þe metire bot mene = although the metre be but mean, 3464.
Mene qwile (Meyne qwyle), mean while, 905; (Meynne tyme), 1163.
Mene, *s.* mean, moderate state, the golden mean, 4591.
Menere (Meyner), *adj. comp.* meaner, lesser, 1267.
Menes (Meane), *pr. pl. refl.* bemoan themselves, lament, 2154; Menyd, *pt. pl. refl.* complained, bemoaned themselves, 3489. A.S. *mǽnan.*
Menest, *adj. superl.* meanest, 3332. (This sense is inappropriate; prob. an error for *metest* = fittest; or for *mainest* = chiefest.)
Meneyhe (Meynȝey), *s.* household, 3120; (Meynȝe), multitude, 1586; Meneȝe (Meynȝe), followers, army, 2629; company, 1597. O.F. *maisnee.*
(Meng), 1 *pr. s.* call to mind, 2505. See P. Plowman.
Menske, *s.* honour, respect, 1237, 1746, 4492 (see the note), 5226; *miswritten* Menseke, 1746.
Menske, *v.* honour, 5342; Menskid, *pp.* 4591.
Menskefull, *adj.* honourable, 2953.
(Menskfully), *adv.* honourably, 737*.
Meny, *s.* company, 5420; (Menȝe), 2219; train, 823*. See Meneyhe.
Menys, *pr. s.* means, 253; (Menys), *pr. pl.* tell, relate, 1615; Menyd, *pt. s.* meant, 2292.
Merche, *s.* marches, borders, 4324. See Marchis.
Mercure, Mercury, 4535.
Mercy, mercy, 816.
Mere, *s.* mere, lake, 3853.
Merely, *adv.* merrily, pleasantly, 4769.
Meri, *adj.* merry, 1179; (Mery), 2235.
Meriest, *adj. superl.* merriest, joyfullest, 2438.
Meris (Mers), *pl.* marches, frontiers, boundaries, 1209. See Meere.

Merke, *s.* mark, 4631; note, 2113; boundary, 1108; (Merke), 684.
Merke, *s.* mirkness, darkness, 374.
Merke, *v.* reach, attain, 5404; Merkid, *pt. pl.* marked, i. e. cut down deeply, penetrated, 3674; Merkid, *pp.* marked, 318, 3923; (Markyd), 2636; (Merkyd), made, 1130.
Merote, *s.* merit, desert, 5226.
Merris, *pl.* boundaries, 211. *Put for* Meris, *which see.*
Merryd, *pp.* marred, harmed, 325.
Meruailed þam (Amervale þaime), *pt. pl.* were astonished, 1615; Merualid þam (Mervalett), 897; Mervalled (Mervaylled), *pp.* astonished, 3218.
Meruaill, *s.* a marvel, 549; (Mervell), 1245; Meruale, 1061; Mervaile, 318; (Mervell), 1164; (Mervayle), 771*; Mervale, 565, 1814; Mervall, 5292.
Mervailous (Mervalous), *adj.* marvellous, 2864.
Mery, *adj.* merry, 2740; pleasing, bright, 2864.
Meryly, *adv.* merrily, 3862.
Mesopotane (Mesopothany), Mesopotamia, 2528; Messopotane, 2596; Mesopotayme, 5664; Mesepotayme, 88.
Messadone, Macedon, 455, 481, 2012; (Massidon), 913; Messadon, 143; Messedone, 215; (Massydon), 985; (Masidon), 1989, 2002, 2126; (Masydon), 762, 1625, 1785, 2033; Messedoyne, 211, 905, 1972; Messidoyne, 228.
Messadones (Mesidons), *pl.* Macedonians, 934, 1341; Messedones (Masydons), 1253, 1265, 1279, 1434; Massedons, 2040; Messedoyns (Massidons), 1179.
Message, *s.* message, 1257, 3419.
Messagere (Messynger), *s.* messenger, 1690; Messagere, *error for* Messagers, *plural* (*see the* Dublin MS.), messengers, 2403.
Messangere (Messenger), *s.* messenger, 2911; (Messyngere), 2235; (Messynger), 1951; Messangirs (Messyngers), *pl.* messengers, 897, 905, 1814.
Messelyne, *s.* meslin, a kind of brass, 4583. A.S. *mæstling.*
Mestire (Mister), need, 1774. See *mister* in Cath. Anglicum.
Mesure, *s.* measure, 25, 1374; Out of mesure, beyond measure, 3056.
Mete, *ger.* to meet (i. e. to meet and pass each other), 1324; to meet, 774, 1512; Mete, *v.* meet, 325; Metis, *pr. s.* meets, 455, 770, 1061; (Metes), 926, 1210; Metis on, meets with, 4631; Metis (Metyn), 1 *pr. pl.* 1943; Metis, *pr. pl.* 796, 3538; Mett, *pt. s.* met, 1429; 1 *pt. pl.* 3510; *pt. pl.* found (for him), 5469; Mete, 2 *pr. s. subj.* 1981.
Mete, *ger.* to measure, 1350; Metis, *pr. s.* measures (his way), goes, proceeds, 143, 455, 4803; Meten, *pp.* measured out, completed, 3853; fulfilled, come, 564, 5058; (Metyn), measured, 1108; gone, 1209.
Mete, *s.* meat, 4435; much food, 464 (see the note); food, 748*; Metis, *pl.* food, 4607.
Meteles (Metelesse), *adj. as s.* want of provisions, 1164. Better read *metelest*, sb. = A.S. *meteléast.*
Meth, *s.* moderation, 816, 1981; *hence*, Methe, pity, 147; mercy, 4324. A.S. *mǽð.* See Meche.
Metire, *s.* metre, 3464.
Metis, *pr. s. refl.* dreams, 422. A.S. *mætan.*
Mett, *s.* dimension, 25.
(Metyn), *pr. pl.* meet, 770, 796.
Metyn, *pp.* measured, fulfilled, fully come, 374. See Mete, *v.*
Meve, *v.* move, 1989; Mevis (Mefis), *pr. s.* moves, comes, 1951; Mevis him (Mefez), moves, 2033; Meue, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* move, 2382; Meued (Mefed), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* moved, 2331; Meuyd (Mevyd), *pt. s.* 3200; Meuand, *pres. pt.* moving, 2865, 3893.
Mew (Mefe), *imper. s.* 2 *p.* move, remove, 1785. See above.
Meyhe, *error for* Meynhe *or* Meyne, *s.* troop, host, army, 3604, 3619, 5495. See Meneyhe.

(Meynyd), *pt. pl.* bemoaned, 1265. See Menes.
Meȝne (Meynhe), *s.* company, band, 1269; (Meynȝe), 2084. See Meneyhe.
Mi (My), *pron.* my, 2159, 2289.
Michare, *s.* truant, petty thief, 3541.
Miche, *adj.* much, 5602; (Much), great, 2269.
(Michefe), *s.* misery, 1774.
Midil-erth, middle earth, the world, 5525.
(Might), *s.* might, 816, 1981.
Mikille, *adj.* great, 5530.
Mild, *adj. as s.* mild one, 5097, 5218.
Milke-quite, *adj.* white as milk, 1579, 3776, 4533, 5468.
Mille, *written as a contraction for* thousand, 2685, 3071, 3738.
Minerua, Minerva, 4530.
Minister (Mynyster), *s.* servant, 2911; Ministris, *pl.* servants, 1557.
Ministere, *v.* govern, 1738.
Ministracion, *s.* service, 3554.
Miracle, wonder, 5602.
Mirke, *adj.* dark, 2042, 3851, 4077; (Merke), 3056; Mirk, 4803.
Mirre, *s.* myrrh, 4809, 4975, 5468.
Mirthe, *s.* pleasure, 1853, 4378; Mirthis, jests, 4367.
Mirthe, *v.* make merry, 5342.
Mischife (Mischefe), mischief, mishap, 1163.
Miserie, *s.* servitude; þi miserie, servitude to thee, 3550; misery, 1774.
Missyng, *s.* want, lack, 4595.
Miste (Myssyd), *pt. pl.* missed, 1343.
Mistris, *pr. s.*; Vs mistris, there is needful for us, 4281. See Mestire.
Mitre (Myter), *s.* mitre, 1541.
Miȝt, *s.* power, control, 3306; might, 307; Miȝtes, *pl.* powers, 115; Miȝtis (Mightez), *pl.* powers, 1657; strength, 1226; feats of strength, 1403.
Miȝt (Might), *pt. s.* 2 *p.* mightest, 1972; Miȝt, *pt. s.* might, 598, 1160; could, 124, 845, 937, 1200; could (go), 1370; Miȝt (Mighten), *pt. pl.* might, 1509.
Miȝtfull, *adj.* mightful, mighty, 1491, 5492; (Mightfull), 2040, 2059; (Myghtfull), 3424; Miȝtifull (Mightfull), *adj.* mighty, 1201; (Mightyfull), 1420.
Miȝti (Myghty), *adj.* mighty, 1089; Miȝty, 985.
Miȝtist, *adj. superl.* mightiest, 3722; (Myghtiest), 1241.
(Mo), more in number, 2084.
Mocian, i. e. Ocean, 2540. See note.
Mode, *s.* mood, 3546.
Mode, *adj.*; see Mody.
Modire, *s.* mother, 951; (Moder), 2002; (Modre), 827, 855, 2017; Modir (Moder), 2033; Modyre, 600; Modire, *gen.* mother's, 550.
Modirson, mother's son, i. e. every man, 4326, 4409; Modire-son (Moderson), 1379, 1429, 2098, 2592; Modirsons, *pl.* mothers' sons, 2438.
Mody, *adj.* brave, bold, 1195, 2078, 3327; Modi, 228, 1114; Mode, 215, 704, 5399; proud, 704.
Moghe, *s.* heap of corn, 4434. E. *mow.*
Mold, *s.* earth, ground, 550, 1130, 3120, 3141, 3267; To mold bring, bury, 3310.
Molle, *s.* labour, moil, 628; labour, trouble, 4446.
Mon, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* must, 691, 707; *pr. s.* must, 1502, 3352; will, 2258; Mon, 2 *pr. pl.* must, 4565. Icel. *munu.*
Monand, *pr. pt.* bemoaning, sorrowful, 1114.
Mone, *s.* moon, 281, 3862, 4077.
Mone-tree, moon-tree, 5010.
Monestis, *pr. s.* admonishes, charges, warns, bids, 2592; (Monyshit, *pt. s.*), 1379; Monest (Monyshest), *pt. s.* admonished, 3127; Moneste (Monyshytt), 1173; (Monyshyd), 2592.
Moneth, month, 4533; Monethis, *pl.* months, 5025, 5616; Moneths, *pl.* months (*error for* Moneth, *s.* month), 3699.
Montayne (Mountane), mountain, 1089, 2669; Montayns, *pl.* 3862, 5097.
Monte, mountain, 5058; Montts, *pl.* 5117 (see l. 5097). See Mounte.

Mony, *adj.* many, 2126, 3776; (Many), 1005.
More, *adv.* more, 322, 786*.
Morewane, *s.* morning, 4769. See Morne.
Morne, *s.* morning, morrow, 350, 430, 564, 1114, 1353, &c.
Morne-qwile (Morne-while), *s.* morning-season, *but prob. an error for* Mene qwile, mean season, 2771.
Morsels (Morsellys), *pl.* morsels, pieces, 1268.
Morsure, *s.* biting, 4088.
Morth (Morte), death, murder, 1279.
Mosardry, *s.* indolence, idle dreaming, 4486. "*Musardie*, a muse, dump, study, dreaming; a pawse, delay, lingering;" Cotgrave.
Mose, *v.* muse, 333. See above, and see Muses.
Most, *adv.* most, 808*.
Mot (Most), must, 1773; Mote, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* may, 1834.
Mote, *s.* building, castle, 3832, 4353; palace, 3218, 3324, 5602. "*Motte*, a clod, little hill, a fit seat for a fort or strong house; (hence) also, such a fort or house (of earth);" Cotgrave. E. *moat.*
Mote, *ger.* to discuss, dispute, 5120. E. *moot.*
Move (Mefe), *v.* move, 1989; Moue (Mefe), 1967; Moues, *pr. s.* moves, 5420; Mouys (Mefes), 1201; Movis, *pr. pl.* (Meffyd, *pt. pl.*), move, 2403 (read *messagers*, pl.); (Moved), *pt. s.* 2032; Moued (Amoved), *pp.* moved to anger, 1217; Moves, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* move, go, 5048.
Mounte, *s.* mountain, 4898; Mountis, *pl.* 5063. See Monte.
Mountane, *s.* mountain, 4787; Mountey[n]s (Montannez), 1967.
Mournes (Murnez), *pr. s.* mourns, 1136, 2032; *pr. pl.* 1265, 1341.
Mournyng (Murnyng), *s.* mourning, 1853.
Mouthe, *s.* mouth, 321, 495; Mouth, 245, 904; Mouthis, *pl.* 4429.
(Mouthed), *pt. s.* ate, 748*.
Moȝt (Mott), *pr. s. subj.* may, 1605, 1607, 1609; Moȝt (Myght), *pt. s.* might, could, 3412.
(Much), *adj.* great, 927, 955, 1249.
Muld, *perhaps for* Mult; þi muld = þi mult, thy toll, 4535. Cf. M. E. *multure*, fee or toll for grinding corn. But the Lat. text has *mella*, which the translater perhaps misread or misunderstood. Cotgrave has the F. spelling *mouldure*, which he explains by 'multure, grist.' The proper sense of *muld* is mould or earth; see below.
Mulde, *s.* mould, earth, 25.
Mulis (Mulez), *pl.* mules, 2853.
Multitude, *s.* 69, 104, 927.
Munster, 1173. The simplest correction is to read *minister*, i. e. servant. The sense is—He (Alexander) admonished him (Jaudas) as being his (Alexander's) servant. The Ashmole MS. has—He (Alexander) admonished him (Jaudas) as being his (Jaudas') master; which comes to precisely the same thing.
(Murnand), *pres. pt.* mourning, 1114.
Muscles, *pl.* mussels, 5469.
Muses, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* thinkest, 3551; Muse, 2 *pr. pl.* meditate, 268; Mused (Musyd), 1 *pt. s.* mused, 1629.
Muses (Musys), *pl.* muses, 2113.
Musike, music, 2238; (Musik), 2113.
(Must), *pr. s.* must, 707, 1502, 1927.
Mustours, *pl.* dials, clocks, 130. From O.F. *moustrer*, to shew; lit. 'shewers, pointers'; cf. F. *montre*, orig. the hand of a watch or clock; Ital. *mostra*, "a watch or a dyall of the sunne;" Florio.
My, my, 250, 270; (Myne), 1724.
Mydday, *s.* mid-day, 564, 4769.
Myddest, *adj. superl. as s.* midst, 5396.
Myddis, *s.* midst, 3501.
Myddis þe way (In myd way), midway, in the midst of his journey, 1061.
Myd-fild (Myd-feld), mid-field, 955.
Mydill (Medyll), *adj.* middle, 1108.
Mydniȝt, *s.* midnight, 4077.
Myd-ouir-vndorne, the middle of the period succeeding 'undern,' 3853.

Mydsomere, Midsummer; Mydsomere euen, Midsummer eve, 3698.
Myld, *adj.* mild, gracious, 234; *as s.* mild one, 235. See Mild.
Myle, *s.* mile, 1209; I may a myle knawe, I can tell a mile off, 3286; Mylis, *pl.* 2403.
Mylk-quyte (Milke-whitte), *adj.* milk-white, 1498. See Milke-quite.
Mylnestane, *s.* millstone, 5525.
Myn, *ger.* to mention, relate, 565; (Mene), 2782; (Meyn), to take heed of, notice, relate, record, 1690; Myn, *v.* remember, record, 583; 1 *pr. s.* call to mind, speak of, 2506; Mynnys, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* mentionest; Mynes, *pr. s.* reminds, 4613; (Menys), remembers, 2956; Myns, *pr. s.* intends (to go), 4787; Mynes (Menys), *pr. s. refl.* I remember, 1625; Me mynes, I remember, 2771 (where the Dublin MS. has *me of menys*, i. e. people relate of him); Mynes (Menys), *pr. pl.* tell, record, 1249; Mynned, *pp.* remembered, 1094; Mynes, *imp. pl.* remember ye, 3474.
Mynde, *s.* mind, 738; remembrance, 1094, 1118; mention, 583; Mynd, attention, 269; memory, 437, 1884; remembrance, 205; recalling (of facts), 1245; In gret mynd, in a great mind, 1254; Out of mynde, beyond memory, *hence* countless, 3018; (For to mynd), as I can remember, 3018.
Myndles, *adj.* mindless, stupefied, 5399.
Myne, *poss. pron.* mine, my, 364, 498, 582, 668, &c.; Myn, 1883, 1912; Myne, i. e. my (rules), 2519.
Mynes (Mynyn), *pr. pl.* mine, penetrate, dig, 3141.
Mynesch, *v.* minish, be diminished, 2629.
Mynistris (Ministers), *pl.* ministers, servants, 1267.
Mynstre (Mynster), minster, temple, 2174, 4353; Mynstire, 1564.
Myntis, *pr. s.* points, 1089; (Myntyd), *pt. s.* pointed, 1089. A.S. *myntan.*
Myrrour, *s.* mirror, 3286.
Myrys (Mires), *pl.* marshes, bogs, lit. mires, 2986.
Mys, *pl.* mice, 3932; Myse, 1762.
Myschefe, *s.* mischance, misfortune, 399, 3646; Myscheffe (Mischeff), trouble, 2782.
Myselfe, myself, 183, 258, 537; (My-selue), 1976; (My-seluen), 991.
(Myssys), 2 *pr. s.* missest, art in the wrong, 2649; Myssid, *pt. pl.* missed, 149.
Myster (Mister), need, necessity, 1462. See Mestire.
Mysters, *pr. s.* is needful, 5117. See Mistris.
Myte, *s.* mite, 4426.
Myter, mitre, 1589.
Myȝt, *pt. s.* might, 68, 415, &c.; (Might), 1 *pt. s.* 1629.
Myȝtes, *pl.* powers, 615.
Myȝty, *adj.* mighty, 315.

Na, *adj.* no, 51, 52, 160, 180, 182, &c.; Na mare, no more, 829; Na ma, 890; Na langer, no longer, 830; Na nothire, *for* Nan othire, nothing else, 364, 1683; Na way, no way, 341.
Nabizanda, Nabuzardon, 5614.
Nabb, *s.* projecting point of a hill, scar, 5494. Cf. *Nab Scar*, near Grasmere.
Nacion, nation, 993; Nacions, *pl.* 449.
Nad, *pt. s.* had (he) not, 1462.
Naite, *ger.* to use, enjoy, 4341. Icel. *neyta*, to use, enjoy. See Naytes.
Nakens, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* make bare, 4959. See *nakin* in Stratmann.
Nakid, *adj.* naked, 4043; Naked, 4026; Nakid, stripped (bare), 4756; *adj. as sb.* naked part of the body, 4182.
Nakin, no kind; Nakin metall, no sort of metal, 4583. See the note.
Name, name, 79, 619, 993; To name, as a name, 2734; Names (Namez), *pl.* 1591.
Namely, *adv.* in particular, especi-

ally, 582, 4791; precisely, 293; (Nomely), especially, 2011.
Namely, *adv.* (*error for* Manely = mainly *or* manly), 1033.
Nane, *adj.* none, no one, 45, 52, 74; (not) any, 3935; no, 989; (None), not at all, 1148.
Nanes; For þe nanes, for the nonce, occasion, 3592, 4729, 5276, 5522; (For þe nonest), 3021; For þe nanys (nonest), 1985.
Nany; A nany, *for* An any, *erroneously written for* Any, any, 4919. (The right reading clearly is—Or any [curious] clerke, &c.)
Naples, 5672.
Nappill; A nappill, an apple, 4777.
Narawe (Arow), arrow; A narawe = an arawe, 1066.
Narowly, *adv.* with difficulty, 1370.
Nase, *s.* nose, 4519; Nasee, 4634.
Na-þing (Noþing), nothing, 735.
Naþy, *name* (cf. *Rothe* in the Lat. text), 5494. See note to l. 5497.
Natour, nature, 4027; (Nature), *s.* natural power, 3379.
Naue, navy, fleet, 67, 76; (Navy), ships of war, 1160; ship, 3376.
Naue, *pr. pl.* have not, 1876.
Nauernes, *pl.* men of Navarre, 5672.
(Nawne); þi nawne = þin awne, thine own, 1356.
Nay, *adv.* nay, 298, 470, 1016, 5405; (Nay), *as s.* a refusal, 1460.
Naylid (Nalyd), *pp.* nailed, 3376.
Naytely (Nataly), *adv.* quickly, 2896; (Naytly), 828*. The lit. sense is 'usefully'; Icel. *neytr*, good, fit for use.
Naytes (Nates), *pr. s.* employs, 2518; employs himself, sets about, begins, 2968; Nayte, 2 *pr. pl.* use, 4605; Naytis (Naytes), *imp. pl.* use, employ, 2468. Icel. *neyta*. See Naite.
Ne, *adv.* not, 710; nor, 46, 52, 74, &c.
Ne, *adv.* nearly, 539. Well ne, very nearly.
Nebb, face, 807, 3940, 4519.
Necessari, necessary, 125.
Necke (Neke), *s.* neck, 3251.
Neddire, *s.* adder, snake, 4757, 5526; Neddirs, *pl.* 3865, 4090, 4200, 5422, 5565.
Nede, *adv.* needs, of necessity, 3274; (Nedes), 2309.
Nede, *s.* need, peril, 2518; Nedis, *pl.* necessaries, 3419.
Nedill, *s.* needle, 4026.
Nedis, *pr. pl.* are needful, 125; Nedid, *pt. pl.* were necessary, 3823.
Nedis (Nedes), *pr. pl.* compel, urge, 1819.
Neg, *in phr.* A neg = an eg, i. e. an egg, to the value of an egg, 676.
(Negh), *adv.* nigh, nearly, 1370, 2153.
Neghis, *pr. s.* approaches, 4791; Neghes, 3901.
Nekard (Neker), mean person, niggard, 1743.
Neke, *s.* neck, 3236; Nek (Neke), 2777; (Nek), 807; Nekis (Nekkys), *pl.* necks, 2339; (Nekez), 1812.
(Nekyd), *pp.* denied, 1460. Cf. Icel. *neita*, to deny. See Nyk.
(Nemmys), *imp. pl.* name, 2468.
Nemellus, *pl.* enamels (?), 3671.
Nemyll (Nemyll), *adj.* nimble, quick, 1065. From Icel. *nema*, to take, A.S. *niman*.
Nend; Ilka nend *for* Ilkan end, each end, 5649; A nende, an end, 4860.
Nerand; A nerand = an erand, an errand, a message, 1460.
(Nere), *adj.* near, 1161.
Nere, *adv.* near, closely, 1370; nearly, 400, 489, 1908, 2153, 3995.
Nere, *for* Ne were, were not, 2404. It means that the messengers had *only* gone a few miles before they alighted.
(Nerehand), *adv.* nigh, nearly, 3055.
Nerre, *adv.* more nearly, 590.
Nest, *s.* nest, 506.
Nestild, *pt. s.* nestled, 506.
Nete, *pl.* neat cattle, 1227.
Nethire, lower; To the nethireward, downward, 5048.
Nethirgloue, *s.* nether-glove, i. e. shoe, boot, 4959; Neþire-gloues (Lat. *calciamenta*), 2767.
Nettild (Netlett), *pp.* nettled, 737.
Neuen, *ger.* to tell, 4881; (Nevyn), to name, 2365; Neuyn, *ger.* to name, tell, 318, 449; Nevyn, to reckon, 1466; Neuyn (Newyn), to name, number, 2021; Neuen, *v.* tell, relate, name, 1105, 1456, 1719; Neuyn, 293, 5044, 5655; (Neuen), 1673; Neuyn, 1 *pr. s.* name, 4601; mention, 260; tell, say, 5306; Neuens, *pr. s.* names, 1119; (Neuen, *for* Neuens), tells, 1485; (Neues), names, calls, 2119; Neuynes, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* namest, 4940; Neuyns (Nevens), 2187; Neuenyd, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* named, mentioned, 76; (Neuynd), *pt. s.* 2293; Neuened, 1 *pt. s. subj.* should name, 5031; Neuend, *pp.* named, told, 5413; (that can be) mentioned, 5257; Neuyned, named, 619; Neuen, *imp. s.* name, tell, 833*. Icel. *nefna*.
Neuen, *s.* even; A neuen (An euen), an even, an evening, 1082.
Neuer, *adv.* never, 45, 62, 563; Neuir, 1874; Neuire, 254, 950.
Neuer-þe-lattir, nevertheless, none the less, 5332; Neuer-þe-latter, 299, 844*; Neuire-þe-lattir (Neuer-þe-leter), nevertheless, 2413.
Neuer-the-les (Neuer-þe-lesse), *adv.* nevertheless, 1105.
Neuer þe mare, none the more, 325; Neuer þe more, 322.
New, *adj.* new, 1240, 1460; On newe time, newly, 2011.
Newid, *pt. s.* created, lit. made new, 4491.
Newly, *adv.* newly, soon, 4740.
Next, *adj. superl.* nearest, next, 619, 1456; On next, in the next place, at once, 2795.
Neyd, *for* Noyd, *pt. s. subj.* would vex, would tire, 4881; (Neyt), *for* Noyt, would tire, 771. See Noy.
Neȝbour (Neghburs), *gen. s.* neighbour's, 3245.
Neȝe, *v.* approach, 324; (Negh), 1160; Neȝis, *pr. s.* approaches, draws nigh, 1240, 2221, 2615; Neȝes, 2111, 3863, 4067; touches, 4182 (see the note); Neȝehis, 396; Neȝe, 1 *pr. pl.* approach, 4341; Neȝes, 2 *pr. pl.* 4605; *pr. pl.* 5243; (Neghez), *pr. pl.* 2615; Neȝe (Negh), *pr. s. subj.* approach, draw nigh, 3376; (Neghed), *pt. s.* 2221; (Neghyd), *pt. s.* 1240; Neȝed, *pp.* approached, drawn nigh, 2983.
Neȝe, *adv.* nigh, severely, 3825; almost, 1274; (Neȝ), nigh, 728*.
Neȝen, *num.* nine, 4810.
Nicollas (Nicholas), *name*, 737, 753, 771, 793, 807.
Ninus, Ninus, 3144.
Nite, *pp.* denied, refused, 1460. F. *nier*, to deny.
Niȝt (Nyght), *s.* night, 1084, 1345, 1485; On niȝtes (Of nyghtys), by night, 2896.
No, *adj.* no, 435, 809*; No more, 725*.
No, *for* Ne, nor, 3570.
Nobilnes, nobleness, majesty, 2777.
Noblay, *s.* nobleness, 2716; noble array, 4881.
Noble, *adj.* good, 3132; noble, 39, 985; noble (people), 1266; Nobles, *pl.* nobles, 481.
Noble, *s.* the coin so called, 3673; Nobill, 4898.
Nobly, *adv.* excellently, 260.
Noke, *s.* nook, corner, 506, 3144, 4831.
Nold, *pt. s. subj.* might not, should not, 4167. See the note to l. 4168.
Noll (Nole), noddle, head, 807. A.S. *hnol*.
Nombre, *s.* number, 60; (Nowmbre), 1554.
Nombrid, *pp.* numbered, 1992.
(Nomyn), *pp.* taken, 1094. A.S. *niman*, to take, pp. *numen*.
None, *s.* noon, 3025, 4740; Nonetyme, noon-tide, 563.
(None), *adj.* no, 735*; Non, not one, 4582.
(Nonn), *s.* nun, 2179.
Noose, *s.* nose, 4380.
Nor, nor, 46, 316.
Norisch, *v.* be nourished (*after* latt), 582.
Norway, 5672.
Nostanday, *proper name*, 2777; Nostanda (Nostandy), 2773, 2795.
Note, *s.* employment, business, 3025; work, 324, 4605; fabric (said of a cobweb), 3302; fabric (of the world), 4491; occurrence, circum-

stance, 1456, 1485, 5044; For that note = on that account, 1160; host, troop, 1240, 1471; fleet, 76; Notis, *pl.* deeds, doings, employments, 1876, 3712; (Notes), 1819; acts, 260; instruments, 125; occurrences, 2365, 3091. A.S. *notu.*
Note, *s.* tenour (of a letter), 1719. In this sense probably from F. *note.*
Note, *adj.* excellent (used with *men*), 1227, 4870. See *Nait* in the Troy-book; and cf. Note, *s.* employment, above.
Notesman, *put for* Note man, i. e. excellent one; *hence, as a form of address*, sir, 833*. See above.
Notis (Notez), *pr. s.* indites, 2795; Notid, *pt. s.* indited, 4569; Note, *imp. pl.* note, observe, 5655. F. *noter*, to note.
Noþire, *adj.* another (*after* a), 184; Na noþire = nan oþire, none other, 180, 364, 3275; Na noþir, 1988.
Nothire, *conj.* neither, 402; (Nowder), 1444; Nother, 146, 1372.
Nouches (Ouchez), *pl.* ornaments, 3134. E. *ouch* (see my Etym. Dict.).
Nounbre, *s.* number, 89, 215, 449, 3641; (Nowmbre), 763, 771, 955.
Nouþire, *conj.* neither, 180, 575, 800; Nouþir, 675; Nouþer, 600.
Nouthire-quare (Noþerwhare), nowhere else, 993.
Nowe, now, 101, 188, 193; Now, 80, 212.
(Nowmbre), number, 1094. See Nounbre.
Nowte, *s.* neat, ox, 4744; *pl.* cattle, 3823. Icel. *naut.*
Nowþire, *conj.* neither, 364. See Nouþire.
Nox; A nox = an ox, 4744.
Noy (Noye), *s.* harm, misfortune, 3245; trouble, 67.
Noy, *v.* annoy, vex, 676; To noy (ney) þus [*read* vs] to neuyn, such as would vex us to number, i. e. innumerable, 2021; Noyis, *pr. s.* injures, hurts, 4182; Noyes, wearies, 771; Noyed, *pt. s.* hurt, 1227; Noyd (Noyed), annoyed, 2983; Noyed, *pt. pl.* harmed, 3935. See Neyd.
Noys, *pr. s.* makes a noise, 4744.
Noyse, *s.* noise, 4732.
Noȝt, *adv.* not, 100, 102, 103, 107; (Noght), 721; Noȝt bot, only, 270, 686, 1460, 1670, 3755.
Noȝt (Noght), *s.* a naught, a thing of no value, 1742.
Noȝtid (Noȝtyd), *pp.* set at naught, 753.
Nurtrid (Norturryd), *pp.* well-nurtured, well grown, plump, 3177.
Nychometis, *pl.* (used to translate Lat. *onichimata*), stones of the onyx kind, 3671.
(Nyckyng), *s.* nicking, slight mention, 2968. Cf. E. *nick.*
Nyf (Yf), *for* Ne yf, if not, 1976.
Nyfils, *pl.* trifles, 3807. See Stratmann.
Nyk, *pr. pl.* 2 *p. subj.* say nay, 2339. See Sir Gawayn and the Grene Knight, l. 607.
Nykid, *s.* small bit, a very little, a trifle, 3935. "*Nicket*, a small short faggot, *West*"; Halliwell.
Nyll he so will he, will-he, nill-he, whether he wish to do so or not, 301.
Nymme, *v.* take, acquire, 5352; Nymmes, *pr. s.* takes, 5077; (Nymmez), 3236; Nymes him (Nymmez hym), *pr. s.* takes, seizes, 793; Nymes, *pr. pl.* 4870; Nymes of, *imp. pl.* take off, doff, 4959. A.S. *minan.*
Nynche, inch; A nynche = an ynche, 3675.
Nyngkiling, *s.* inkling, slight mention; A nyngkiling = An yngkiling, 2968.
Nyppid, *pt. pl.* nipped; Nyppid fra, nipped from, 3940.
Nyȝt, night, 344, 419, 563.
Nyȝter-tale, *s.* night-time, 324. Icel. *náttar-tal.*

O, one, a, 3306; (O), 1147.
O, *prep.* on, in; O lyue, in life, alive, 4055. O bourde, in jest, 462.
O, *for* Of, of, 3267, 3385, 3636; cf. l. 276; (some) of, 4781

O newe time (Anew), of late times, recently, 2716; O new time, 1460. Here *o* = of; cf. *of newe*, anew, in Chaucer.
Obedience, *s.* obedience, 1965; (Service obidiens), obedience of service, 1937.
Obeyi, *v.* obey, 3983; Obey, *imp. s.* 2837; Obien (*for* Obeien), *pr. pl.* 5671.
Obesche (Obey), *v.* obey, 2416; Obeschen, *pr. pl.* 1937; Obeschen (Obeysshyng), *pr. pl.* 2694; Obeschid (Obeyd), *pt. s.* made obeisance to, 1620.
Obeyaunce, obedience, 5106.
Obeyssiant, obedient, p. 279, l. 10.
O-bofe, *prep.* above, 4912.
Obrede (Of brede), in breadth, of breadth, 2898.
Occident, *s.* west, 1045.
Occyan, *s.* ocean, 5503; Occiane, 2328.
Occupy, *ger.* to use, perform, 1478; (Occupy in), to be employed about, 1478.
Odd, *adj.* distinguished, illustrious, 2121; special, privy, 4750; (Odde), 2631; Od, *adj.* odd, notable, excellent, 94; Odde, notable, 27.
Oddest, *adj. superl.* most famous, 2008, 3579; Oddist, 189; Oddiste, 1751.
Odly, *adv.* curiously, excellently, 275.
Odmen, *pl.* chieftains, lit. odd (excellent) men, 3783.
Of, *prep.* of, 4, 6, &c.; by, 73, 619, 1106, 3122, 3205, 3621, 3635; from, 210, 1045, 4227, 4844; out of, 1410, 3920; Of lyfe, out of life, 716; Of þe werd, out of the world, 2164; with, 56, 1390; for, 1041, 2576; because of, 1040; at, 302, 456; as regards, 307; at the hands of, by, 739*.
Of, off, 3151, 5035, 774*.
Of (*for* þof), in Dubl. MS., 862.
O-ferrom, *adv.* on far, at a distance, 397.
Off, *adv.* of, from, 599.
Offire (Offre), *ger.* to offer, 2177; to sacrifice, 1478; Offirs, *pr. s.* offers sacrifice to, 3658; (Offers), sacrifices, 1073; Offirre, 2 *pr. pl.* offer, 4468; Offird, *pt. s.* sacrificed, 1651.
Offyrings, *pl.* offerings, 164.
(Of-lofte), aloft, 791*.
(Of-ragthe), lit. attained, pp. of *ofrechen* (but a corrupt reading), 1040.
Oft, *adv.* often, 106, 145, 667; Ofte, 1852.
Oire (*wrongly in MS. for* Oure), our, 2162.
Olaathere, *Lat.* Alegthor, 5493.
(Old), old, 741.
Oleues, *pl.* olive-trees, 4972.
Olifant, *s.* elephant, 3922; Olifantis, *pl.* 3630; Olifants, 3680, 5136, 5293; Olifauntis, 3621. See Olyfauntes.
Olimpadas (Olimphades), 1840, 2008. See Olympadas.
Olle, *v.*; Olle on, to triumph over, scorn, contemn, 1861. From A.S. *oll*, scorn, contumely, only used in the phr. *mid olle*, which occurs twice; see Wulfstan's Sermons, ed. Napier, p. 164, l. 19, and Ælfric's Homilies, ii. 166, l. 15.
Oloft, *adv.* aloft, 4889; O-loft (Onlofte), 858.
Olyfauntes, *pl.* elephants, 3593; Olyfants, 3601. See Olifant.
Olympadas, Olympias, 223, 310, 572; (Olympades), 824; (Olimphades), 879. See Olimpadas.
O-lyue, alive, 3899, 4310; (On lyue), in life, alive, 1331, 2253; Olyfe, 814. For *on lyue;* see below.
O-lyue, out of life, 1304; (Of lyfe), 1228. For *of lyue;* see above.
O-mys, *adv.* amiss, 4326.
On, *prep.* upon, on, 3, 83, 133; upon, 678; in, 13, 230, 341, 666, 1114, 3790; into, in, 4177, 4179; if, 442; at, 214, 3218; upon, over, 3153; Him on, against him, 3783; On first, in the first place, 438; On hand, in hand, 713; On lawe, a-low, low down, 728; On loft, on high, 221; On loude (On lowde), *adv.* aloud, 834; On lyve, alive, 966.
On, *adj.* one (man), 2346; a, 851; (On), an, 964.

Onane, *adv.* anon, forthwith, straightway, 79, 95, 191, 290, 352, &c.; (Anone), 2216.
One; By hym one, by himself, 755*.
Onest (Honest), *adj.* seemly, splendid, 1496. *For* Honest.
On-loft, *adv.* aloft, up, 3193, 3261; (On-lofte), 1440, 731*.
On-lyue, alive, 1875; On lyfe, 540.
Onone, *adv.* anon, at once, 3110, 3460, 3930; (Anone), 1278; (Onon), 1045.
On-slepe, asleep, 1486.
On-tald, *pp.* untold, 3515.
Ony, *adj.* any, 3895; (Ony), 951, 1102, 1993.
Onycles, *pl.* onyxes, 5269.
Open (Opyn), *adj.* 2142. See Opyn.
Opence, *pr. s.* (*for* Opens), opens, shews, clearly, reveals, 2422; Opens (Opyn), *pr. pl.* open, 1466; Open (Opyn), 2 *pr. s. subj.* open, 1496.
Openly (Opynly), *adv.* openly, 824, 868, 1381, 1793; Openly, 145, 1111.
Opon, *prep.* upon, 158; in (see Kellwyse), 3300; Opon lyfe, in life, alive, 42.
Opressing, *s.* oppressing, 5336.
Opyn, *adj.* open, 2446. See Open.
(Opynly); see Openly.
Or, ere, before, 3, 171, 308, 381, 1670, 2915, 3215, 3471, 3728, 4053; Or þat, ere that, 3558; Or þen þat, ere the time when, 3187.
Or, *conj.* or, 3, 67, 107, &c.
Oratori (Oratory), oratory, 1651.
Ordane (Ordayne), *v.* order, prepare, allot, 3176; Ordans (Ordayns), *pr. s.* orders, prepares, endites, 3160; orders, 3408; *refl.* prepares himself, 3184; Ordand, *pt. s.* ordained, arrayed, prepared, 52; Ordand, *pp.* ordained, commanded, 3787; formed, made, 3680.
Ordere, order, 27.
Ore (Or), *conj.* or, 2260.
Orfrays, *pl.* embroideries, 5269. "*Orfrais*, broad welts, or gards of gold, or silver embroidery;" Cotgrave.
Oriathire (Oryather), Oriathar, 2512.
Orient, *adj.* eastern, 5269.
Orient, *s.* the east, 94, 1111, 3079.
Origyne, *s.* race, 91.
Orisons, *pl.* prayers, 1478, 4477.
Oritorie (Oratory), oratory, 2177.
Osses (Ossus), *pr. s.* prophesies, 2263; Ossed, *pp.* 2307. See *Oss* in Halliwell.
Ossing, *s.* attempt, 868; Ossyngis, *pl.* 732. See *Oss* in Halliwell.
Ost, *s.* host, army, 52, 81; (Hoste), 1381; (Oste), 765; Oste, 499; (Ost), 772; (Hoste), 1617; Ostis, *pl.* hosts, 3787; (Hostes), 2848; (Ostez), 1115, 1987, 2031, 2173.
Oþer, *adv.* either, 3.
Oþire, *adj.* second, 2611; the other, 173; Oþir, second, 280; Oþer, other, 1014, 727*; Oþire, *pl.* others, 29, 94, 125, 275, 471; other signs, 240; Othyre (Oþer), others, 3377; (Othre), 2098.
Othire-quile, *adv.* at times, 4231; (Oþer-while), sometimes, 726.
Oþer-wyse, *adv.* otherwise, 2013.
(Ouchez); see Nouches.
Ouer, *prep.* over, 27, 64; (Oure), 1027; (Owre), 1039.
Ouer, *adv.* over, 1028; All ouer, wholly, 766*.
Ouer-comyn, *pp.* overcome, 10, 174.
Ouer-comers (Ouercommer), *for* Ouer-comer, *s.* conqueror, 1903.
Ouerhand, *for* Ouer hand, upper hand, 810.
Ouer-heldis, *pr. s.* overturns, is overturned, 726.
Ouer-laike (Ouerlayke), *s.* conquest, lit. over-play, success in battle, 1861. See Ouirlaike.
Ouer-qwelmys, *pr. s.* overwhelms, rolls over (said of the sea), 560.
(Ouer-rade), *pt. s.* rode over, 1216.
Ouer-sheet, 2 *pr. s. subj.* overshoot (thy shot), 1767*. *Read* Ouersheet *in* one *word.*
Ouer-siȝt (Ouersight), circumspection, 1020.
Ouerȝede, *pt. s.* overpassed, passed away, 350.
Ouir, *error for* Our, *pron. poss.* our, 4622. See the note.
Ouire, *prep.* over, 18, 233; (Ouer), 1182; beyond, 5038; above, 4263 (see the note); against, 4154.
Ouire-comen (Ouercomyn), *pp.* overcome, 1903; Ouircomyn (Ouercommyn), conquered, 1610.
Ouircomere (Ouercommer), overcomer, conqueror, 1610.
Ouire-drafe (Ouer-drafe), *pt. s.* passed away, passed over, 1505.
Ouire-folden, *pp.* folded or covered over, 5463.
Ouire-gos (Ouergose), *pr. s.* surpasses, 2534.
Ouirlaike (Ouerlake), *s.* conquest, success, supremacy, 3101. See Ouer-laike.
Ouir-lende, *v.* pass beyond, 5069.
Ouirmast, *adj. superl.* uppermost, 3347.
Ouire-sett (Ouersett), *pp.* overcome, conquered, 2698.
Ouire-stride, *pt. s. subj.* (if there) strode or crossed over, 5477.
Oure, *pron.* our, 5, 177, 404, 476, 1006.
Oures, *pl.* hours of prayer, 1478.
Oure-selfe, ourselves, 3528, 3745; (Our-selfe), ourself, i. e. I myself, 1727.
Out-bred, *pp.* outspread, unfurled, spread abroad, 2615.
Out-by, *adv.* near beyond, just beyond, 2762.
Oute, *prep.* out, 86; (Owt), 1091; Oute of, 218; Out of, 93, 94, 117, 135.
Oute, *adv.* out, far away, 23; out, 75; Out, 145, 339; Oute, in existence, well-known (just as in modern slang), 598, 4574, 5410.
Outhire, *conj.* either, 464, 1777; (Other), 851, 1236; (Owther), 1033; Ouþir, or, 4981.
Outhire (Other), *pron.* another, 1111.
Outragez, *for* Outrageouz, *adj.* excessive, p. 293, l. 126.
Outwith, *prep.* without, outside, 5538.
Ouyre, *prep.* over, 192.
Owder; see Authere.
(Owre), *pron.* ours, our own, 1423; (Owr), our, 1006.
Owt, *prep.* out, 752*; Owt of, out of, 773*.
Owte, out, i. e. existent, 2574. (As in mod. E.) See Out.
Owþir, *conj.* either, 4579.
Oȝt, *s.* aught, 290; Oȝt bot, anything except, 5352.
Oȝt, *adv.* in anywise, by any means, at all, 299; (Oght), 684, 689, 757, 1090.

Paa, *s.* peacock, 4983. M.E. *po.*
Pacience, patience, 2841.
Paintid, *pp.* painted, decked, 3028.
Paire, *ger.* injure, impair, 74; (Pare), 1187.
Paise, *ger.* to poise, ponder, consider, weigh, 4618.
Paise, *s.* weight, 5470. Anglo-F. *peis.*
Paiters, Poictiers, 5658.
Pake, *s.* pack, crowd, host, band, 648, 954, 1554, 2025, 2083, 2435, 2854, 3009; pack, number, set (of us), 4318; (Pakke), 3009.
Pakoke, *s.* peacock, 4529. See Paa.
Palais, *s.* palace, 220, 355, 952, 3135, 4891; (Palace), 938; (Palass), 901; (Palasse), 997; Palas, 151, 365.
Palestyne, Palestine, 5677.
Pall, *s.* fine cloth, rich robe, 4178; (Palle), 3393.
Pallen webis (Pallen webbes), *pl.* fabrics of pall or fine cloth, 1517.
Palme, *s.* palm (tree), 114, 4541; palm (of victory), 826, 3751.
Palmetres, *pl.* palm trees, 3146.
Pamphalie, Pamphylia, 5657.
Pan, *s.* skull, brain-pan, 3994.
Pancere, *s.* coat of mail, 4960. Lit. a covering for the paunch.
Panters, *pl.* panthers, 5138.
Panthi, Parthia, 5656; Panty, 5312.
Panthy, *for* Parthy, Parthians, 87; Panthis (Peranthis), Parthians, 2529.
Pape-ioyes, *pl.* parrots, 5129.
Pappis, *pl.* paps, 4117.
Paradyse, *s.* paradise, 4905; Parades, 5259; Paradyce (Paradyse), 3217; Paradese (Paradyse), 2595; Paradise, *gen.* of paradise, 5270.
Paraile, *s.* apparel, 4676.
Parailed (Paraeld), *pp.* well apparelled, 1552.

Paramour, *s.* wife, 5222; Paramours, *pl.* lovers (female), wives, 4337; lovers (male), 3769.
Parcele, *s.* part, section, portion, 4496; Parcells, shares, 4318.
Parchement, *s.* parchment, 5305; (Perchemyn), 1704.
Parde, for *par Dieu*, 2707.
Pared, *pp.* prepared, made ready, 4208. F. *parer*.
Pargest*is*, *probably for* Pargeste, *pp.* pargetted; Pargeste of plate, covered over with gold plate (Lat. *de laminis aureis cöoperti*), 3673.
Pariet, *s.* wall, side-wall of a room, 5286.
Parlour, *s.* parlour, 5304.
Parrails (Apperels), *pr. s.* apparels, prepares, 765; Parreld, *pp.* prepared, 480; got ready, 4208; Parraillid, apparelled, 5285.
Parray, *s.* nobles, nobility, assembly of nobles, 4028. O.F. *parroye*, with the same sense as O.F. *parage*, rank, quality; see Roquefort.
Parroke, *s.* park, enclosure, 4702. A.S. *pearruc*.
Part, *s.* character, 361; Parte, part, 2157.
Parti (Party), part, 1115; Partie, 4257; Partys, *pl.* 3764; Partis, *pl.* parts, regions, 139; (Partez), 1731; (Parteez), 2056; Partise, 3560; Partese (Partez), 2267; Partyse (Partyes), *pl.* parts, regions, 2799; Partise, parties, sides, hostile armies, 3992; Partys, parties, people, 3312.
Partis, *pr. s.* parts, 5418; (Partes), 807; divides, gives, 1660; imparts, gives, 2027; Part (Departyd), *pr. pl.* part, break, 1931; Part, *pp.* parted, divided, 4318.
Party, *adj.* separate, different, 668.
Parysch, *s.* Paris, 4659.
Pas, *v.* pass, go on, advance, 3584; go, 997, 5386; depart, 2665; Pas, *v.* pass (from life), die, 4003; Passe, surpass, 635; Pase, *ger.* pass, march, 50; Pas, *ger.* to march over, 444; to go, 1019; (Passe), to go, 1187, 1919; Pas, *pr. s.* passes, goes, 3779, 3788, 4649, 5599; Passis, goes, 132, 133, 334, &c.; Passes, goes, 1076; marches, 170; Passes, surpasses, 656, 2520; Pas, 1 *pr. pl.* go, 1852; Passe, *pr. pl.* 1397; Pas, 1 *pr. pl. subj.* go, 2167; Pas (Passe), 2 *pr. s. subj.* departest, 1099; Past, *pt. s.* went, 139; surpassed, 3988; Past vp, went up, 944; Paste vp, 220; *pt. pl.* passed, 3052; Pas (Passe), *imp. s.* 2 *p.* pass, go thou, 1499; Passand, *pres. part.* surpassing, 4242; Passid (Passyd), *pp.* past, 1008; (Passed), 825*.
Pas (Passe), *s.* pace, 2062.
Pasage, *s.* passage, course, orbit, 32; Passag (Passage), passage, crossing over, 2904.
Passandly, *adv.* surpassingly, 1999, 3596; extremely, 3455.
Passe, *s.* passing, departure, 2978.
Passe, *s.* passus, fit, canto, 2845. See Passus.
Passing, *s.* surpassing excellence, 45.
Passing (Passyng), *prep.* surpassing, beyond, 1750.
Passus, a division of a poem; see pp. 7, 17, 27, 42, 58, 78, 96, 114, 132, 152, 166, 178, 190, 206, 212, 216, 223, 231, 235, 241, 245, 251, 257, 264, 270, 275.
Passyngly (Passandly), *adv.* passingly, exceedingly, 2904.
Pastours, *pl.* pastures, 1198; Pastors (Pasturs), 1234.
Pasturde, *pp.* fed, 5425.
Paued (Pafvyd), *pp.* paved, 3220.
Pauelion, *s.* pavilion, tent, 2175, 4760; Pauillions, 4178; Pauylyons, 4149.
Pauement (Payment), pavement, 1517.
Paues, *pl.* pavises, large shields, 1389; (Pavyce), 2223. O.F. *pauois*, 'a great shield;' Cotgrave.
Paunche, *s.* paunch, belly, 4536; Paunches, *pl.* 4435.
Pauoure, 1 *pr. s.* fear (?), 3242. (The context requires 'beseech.') Probably corrupt, as the alliteration does not require a word with *p*.

Pausanna (Pausana), Pausanias, 914, 930, 936, 952.
Pavyce; see Paues.
Pay, *s.* satisfaction, 4208.
Pay, *ger.* to pay, 1180; Paye (Pay), 1176; Pays, *imp. pl.* pay ye, 3719.
Payne, pain, 530, 3828; Payn, 1782, 1783, 3235; A payn, on pain, 1595; Paynes, *pl.* pains, 3305; effort, difficulty, 2223.
Paynt, *v.* paint, adorn, 4427; Payntid (Depayntyd), *pt. pl.* painted, depicted, 1704; Payntid, *pp.* depicted, 5642; painted, 4149.
Payntour, painter, 5145.
Payse, *s.* weight, balance; In payse (On payse), in the balance, 3260. (Passe), weight, 2397.
Pece; A pece, apiece, 5474; Peces, pieces, 2998.
Pees (Pease), peace, 1041.
Peese (Pese), the value of a pea, 2370.
Pegge (vs), *ger.* to stuff ourselves, 4278. Cf. mod. E. slang *to peg away*, i. e. to eat heartily; prov. E. *peck*, to eat.
Pelare, *s.* pillar, 4707, 5065; Pelers, *pl.* 3666.
Pellicans, *pl.* pelicans, 5129.
Pellid, *pt. s.* beat, 117. See *Palle*, to beat, in Glos. to P. Plowman.
Pelloure (Pelour), *s.* fur, rich fur, 2768; Pelour, 3393, 4036. See *pelure* in Jamieson.
Penaunce (Pennance), penance, 1483.
Pennes, *pl.* pens, wings, 4529; feathers, 3692; Pennys, 4988.
Pennons, *pl.* pennons, streamers, 3028.
Pense (Pensey), *adj.* pensive, lost in thought, 2990.
Pentapol, Pentapolis, 5677.
Pentests, *pl.* gems or precious stones so called, 5268. (Not found elsewhere.)
Peny, *in phr.* Peny-hoge, i. e. penned hog, hog in a stye, 4278. *Perhaps we should read* pen-hoge.
Peper-cornes, *pl.* pepper-corns, 2025.
Pepill (Peple), *s.* people, 2223, 3208; nation, 3412; Peple, 1389. See Pupill.
Pepir, *s.* pepper, 5425; (Peper), 2026, 2074; (Piper), 2023.
Per cas, *adv.* perchance, 4227.
Peralus, *adj.* perilous, 530.
Perce, *v.* pierce, 3374; Percid, *pp.* 264; (Persyd), 3378.
Perchemen, *s.* parchment, 5142.
Percynne (Persyens, *gen. pl.*), Persian, 2885.
Pere, *s.* peer, equal, 647, 3009, 4905; peer, noble, 2036, 2954, 3113; Peris, *pl.* peers, 72, 4926; Peris (Pers), peers, companions, 3033.
Pere, *v.* appear, 3769; Perid, *pt. pl.* appeared, 5466. Short for *apere*.
Peree (Peir), *for* Pere, equal, 1723.
Perell, *s.* peril, 2520.
Perell (Perle), pearl, 1888.
Peres, 2 *pr. s.* comparest thyself, thinkest thyself equal, 1842; Pere, 2 *pr. pl.* (ye) are like, 4703. See Pere, *s.*
Perfite, *adj.* perfected, finished, 194.
Perill (Perle), peril, 1783.
Perill (Perle), pearl, 1569.
Perisch (Perische), *ger.* to perish, 1165; Perische, 2 *pr. pl.* perish, 3809; Perischist, *pp.* (*for* Perischit), perished, slain, 4170.
Perlaous (*for* Peralous), *adj.* perilous, 3949. See Perlious.
Perle, *s.* pearl, 4036; Worth a perle, to the value of a pearl, 4331; Perles, 3677; (Perelez), *pl.* 1663.
(Perle), *s.* purl, i. e. rush of water, used poetically for stream, wave, 1154. "*Purl*, to eddy, as a stream;" Halliwell.
Perlious, *adj.* perilous, 5431. See Perlaous.
Permeon, Parmenio, 1617, 2559, 3113; Permes (Permeon), Parmenio, 2581.
Perpetuall, *adj.* perpetual, 3312.
Perrils (Perlez), *pl.* pearls, 1542. See Perill.
Perrour, *error for* Purer (*as in the* Dublin MS.), purer, 1536.
Perry (Perre), *s.* precious stones, 1536. See *perreye* in Glos. to P. Plowman. And see Pirre.
Pers, Persia, 3240, 3309, 3616, 5109.
Pers, *s. pl.* peers, nobles, 3064, 3781,

5166; (Peres), 2267, 2759. See Pere.
Persayue, *v.* perceive, understand, 142; Persayued, *pt. s.* perceived, 3998.
Perse, *ger.* to pierce, 4071; *v.* 3897; Persee, 5537; Persed, *pp.* 3675.
Persee, Persia, 170, 187, 207, 4843; (Pers), 2703; Perse, 175.
Persens, *pl.* Persians, 1639, 2099, 3481, 3806, 3968, 5312; Perseyns, 87.
Perses, *pl.* Persians, 3644.
Pershed, *pp.* pierced, 2657.
Persid, *pp.* pierced, 5158.
Persie (Perse), Persia, 901.
Person, *s.* person, outward appearance, 1704; person, 1552; figure, 820*.
Personele, *adj.* personal, 5142; Personale, 668.
Persopole (Persipoll), Persepolis, 2111.
Persy, Persia, 50, 74, 117, &c.; (Perse), 1716, 1869; (Pers), 3161; Persye la graunt (Perse le graunt, great Persia, 1737; Persye (Perse), 1658, 1911.
Persyn (Persen), Persian, 2665; Persyns (Persens), *pl.* 2026, 2083; (Persyens), 2904; Persyns, Persians', 3185.
Persys, *pr. pl.* pierce, 5560; Persyd, *pt. s.* 2617.
(Pert), *adv.* openly, 2917; So pert, so openly, quite publicly, 2295.
Pertenys, *pr. s.* pertains, 4309; Pertines (Pertenys), *pr. pl.* 1772.
Pertly, *adv.* openly, 255.
(Perty), *error for* Pouerty, i. e. distress, 2156. See the Ashmole MS.
Peruyk, *for* Peruynk, *s.* periwinkle (flower), 4541. "*Pervinca, Anglice* pervynke;" Wright's Vocab. col. 602, l. 27.
Pes, *s.* peace, 3312, 3779, 3992, 4042; (Pease), 3412; Pese (Pease), 2841, 3420; Pesse (Pes), 2665.
Pesan, *s.* gorget, 4960. It occurs, spelt *pesane*, in the allit. Morte Arthure; and, though left unexplained in the Glossary, is rightly explained in Halliwell's Dictionary (with a reference to that very passage) as "a gorget of mail or plate attached to the helmet." See also *pesane* in Jamieson.
Pese, *s.* pea; Charge of a pese, value of a pea, 403.
Pesid, *pt. s.* calmed, grew calm, 4159; Pesed, *pp.* pacified, appeased, 5379; Pesse, *imp. s.* pacify, 5362.
Pete, *s.* pity, 5041; (Pite), 2240, 3235; (Pyte), suffering, 1169.
(Pete), *adj.* little, lit. petty, 2025. F. *petit.*
Petusly, *adv.* piteously, miserably, 3620.
Philip, 397, 418, 434, 450, &c.; (Philop), 891, 917; (Philopp), 884, 906; (Philipp), 2570; Philips, *gen.* 1788.
Philisophour, *s.* philosopher, 4219; Philosofer (*written* Philofr), 814*; Phylysofyre, 434; Philosofours, *pl.* 2336.
Picard, Picardy, 5657.
Pickid, *pp.* pitched, 4208.
Piers, *pl.* stones, 4356, 5270.
Pik, *s.* pitch, 4172, 5546.
Pike, *s.* peak, 4818.
Piktagaras, Pythagoras, 46.
Pilage (Pelage), *s.* pillage, plunder, booty, 3179.
Pilars, *pl.* pillars, 5068, 5275.
Piple (Peple), people, 1561. See Pepill.
Pirnes, *pl.* long straight shoots or twigs, 4981. Northern E. *prin*, a pin (Halliwell); A.S. *preon*, gloss to *fibula*, in Wright's Vocab. col. 152, l. 37; Icel. *prjonn*, a knitting-pin. See *pirn* in Jamieson.
Piromancie, *s.* pyromancy, divination by means of fire, 4612.
Pirre, *s.* precious stones, 4036; jewellery, 3954; Of pirre, adorned with precious stones, 4149. See Perry.
Pirs, *pl.* peers, 5614. See Pers, Pere.
Pistill, *s.* epistle, 1791, 3160, 3084; (Pistell), 1836, 1909, 1930; (Pistyll), 2026, 2065; Pistils (Pistellys), *pl.* letters, 3420; Pistils (Pistell), 1801.

Pite, *s.* pity, sorrow for the dead, 3321; sorrow, 1286; (Pyte), pity, 754; (Pety), misery, 2156.
Piȝt, *pt. s.* set up, erected (lit. pitched), 4707, 5061; (Pyth), pitched, 2130; (Pyȝt), 2175; Piȝt, *pt. s. subj.* should pitch, 4594; Piȝt, *pp.* set, 3666; set, stuck, 5268; established, settled, 4320; brought, put, 3441; ornamented, 194; Piȝt (Pight), reared, 3135.
(Piȝt-full), *adj.* pitched full, filled, 2284.
Place, *s.* place, 194, 334, 355, 365; (Place), house, 952. "*Place*, a house or residence;" Halliwell.
Plaid, *pp.*; Did bot plaid, did no more than played, merely played, 3947.
Planet (Planett), *s.* planet, 682; Planettis, *pl.* 32; Planetis, 4172.
Plangid, *pt. pl.* plunged, 4130. See Plunge.
Planir, *adj.* flat, 4138. Cotgrave has *planier*, flat, as well as *plain.*
Planke, *s.* plank, 3740.
Plant, *pp.* planted, set, 3146, 5656; (Plantyd), 1654.
Plants, *pl.* plants, trees, 4995.
Plate, *s.* (gold) plate, 3673; (Playte), plate, 1590; Platis, *pl.* plates (of gold), 4894; plates, 3689; Platis (Plates), armour-plates, plate-armour, 2214; Platis (Platez), plates, plate-armour, 1247, 2450; Plates, 911, 917; (Platez), 1378; (Playthes), 1213.
Platea, Platæa, 2297.
Plate-rofes, *pl.* roofs made of plates of gold, 5260.
Plate-werkis, *pl.* works of plate, plated work, 3223.
Plato, Plato, 46.
Play, *ger.* to play, 1772, 5053; to play, to see the (Corinthian) games, 2267; Playe (Play), *v.* play, 1929; With to play (for the child) to play with, 1712; Playd, *pt. s.* amused herself, 4416.
Play, *s.* game, amusement, 2284, 823*.
Playn, *adj.* level, flat, 4138, 4375, 4818; (Playne), plain, revealed, 1099; (Plane), clear, free, unimpeded, 3417; Playn, plain, whole, 5402.
Playn, *s.* plain, 2169, 3655; Playnes, *pl.* 1198, 1210, 4826.
Playnely (Playnly), *adv.* evidently, plainly, 1654, 1896; Playnly, 3764; (Playnly), 1791.
Playntes, *pr. s.* complains, 2312 (the Dublin MS. has *planettys*, corruptly); Playnt (Plenyd), *pt. pl.* complained, 1698. "*Plaindre*, to plaine;" Cotgrave.
Playntis, *pl.* complaints, 1791. F. *plainte.*
Plede (Plete), *v.* plead, debate, 2861; Plede (Pledyn), 2 *pr. pl.* plead, declare, 1893.
Plegg, *s.* pledge, 1783, 3514.
Plente, *s.* plenty, 1852, 1888, 2167.
(Plenys), *pr. s.* laments, 729*. See Pleynys.
Plesaunce, *s.* pleasure, 3382; Plesance, 3162.
Plese, *ger.* to please; The werd with to plese, to please the world with, 4598; (Please), 1180; *v.* 2275; Plesis, *pr. s.* pleases, 5386; Pleses, 4368; Plese, *for* Plesis, *pr. s.* pleases, i. e. it pleases us (to regard them) no longer, 3560; Ples, 2 *pr. s.* pleasest, 2719; Plece, *pr. s. subj.* may please, 365; Plesed, *pp.* 593.
Pletours, *pl.* fighting-men, lit. pleaders, 1731. "*Plait*, sute, controversie;" Cotgrave.
Pletyng, *pres. pt.* pleading, p. 281, l. 78.
Pleynes, *pr. s.* laments for, 4052; complains, pleads, 5360; *refl.* laments, 399; Pleynes (Plenys), *pr. s.* complains, 1147; (Pleynez), laments, 972; Pleynis, *pr. s. refl.* laments, 1169; Pleynys (Plenys), laments, 1286; Pleyn, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* lament, 4370; Pleyne (Plenys), 2156; Pleyned, *pt. s.* lamented, 4204.
Pleynys, *pr. s.* laments, 1286. See Plenys.
Plied, *pp.* (*with* ouir), overlaid, 5260. "*Plier*, to fould, plait, ply, bend, bow;" Cotgrave.
(Plight), *s.* peril, 1783. See Pliȝt.

Plite, *s.* plight, sad state, 3636; state, condition, 635; way, manner, 4042; (Plite), condition, 1165. A word of French origin, and quite distinct from the word below. See Supplement to my Etymological Dictionary, s. v. *Plight* (3); and see Plyte.
Pliȝt, *s.* danger, 4682, 4951. A.S. *pliht*. See Plight.
Plukis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* pluck, 5445.
Plunge, *s.* pool, place to plunge into, 5546.
Plyes, *pr. s.* spreads, lit. folds, 1517. See Plied.
Plyte, plight, condition, state, 305. See Plite.
Pointid, *pt. pl.* secured, 5546.
Poisei, *s.* poesy, poetry, 4612. (*Better* poisie *or* poesie.)
Poliponenses, Peloponnesus, 825*, 2375; Poliponens, 5677.
Polisch, *v.* polish, 4427; Polischt, *pp.* 5129; Polischid (Polyshyd), polished, 3223.
Poll (Polle), poll, head, person, 1497; Pollis, *pl.* heads, men, 3069.
Pollis, *pl.* poles, 3028.
Pompe, pomp, 2334. (The Ashmole MS. has *ponpe*.)
Pond, *s.* pound, 5470; Pond, *pl.* 5474; Ponde (Pound), *pl.* 2397.
Popill (Peple), *s.* people, 2854, 2930.
Populande (Populand), *adj.* rushing, foaming, bubbling, 1154. "*Popple*, to bubble up, *North;*" Halliwell. "*Pople*, to bubble up, purl, ripple;" Jamieson.
Pore, *adj.* poor, 1661, 4021.
Porpure (Purpure), *s.* purple, 1824.
Porris, *pr. pl.* thrust, push, 5560. "To *porre in;* vide *thrust*, and *stuffe;*" Baret's Alvearie (1580), § 579.
Porrus, Porus, 3162, 3183, 3540, 3575, 3588, 3596, 3636, 3655, 3661, 3781, &c.
Port, *s.* port, bearing, appearance, 4983.
Porte, harbour, 2453.
Portingale, Portugal, 5658.
Possede, *v.* possess, 2841. O.F. *posseder*.
Posterne, postern, small back gate, 132; Posternes, *pl.* 2453.
Postis, *pl.* pillars, 3664, 5278, 5628.
Poudire, *s.* powder, dust, 1865, 2334, 3082, 4178, 5206; (Poudre), 2658; (Powder), 2998.
Pouerte, poverty, distress, 2156, 4052, 4317; Pouert (Pouerte), 1852, 1893.
Pouret, *pt. pl.* poured; Pouret out, poured out, i. e. burst out, 3427.
Pouwere (Power), *s.* might, army, 2056. See Powere.
Powarfull, *adj.* powerful, 3242.
Powere, *s.* power, 117, 5402; host, 207; army, 3963; (Power), 2023, 2295; an army, help, 3183. See Pouwere.
Poynt, *s.* point, 682, 3897; circumstance, 305; Poynte, circumstance, 3636; In poynt, at the point, 1165; Poyntis, *pl.* points, 32; minute points, 255; Poyntez, *pl.* points, 808*.
Practisirs, *pl.* practicers, men of experience, 1582; (Practyf men), 1582.
Pray, *ger.* to pray, 1477; Pray, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* pray, 826; Prai, 5362; Prayes, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* prayest, 2803, 4247; Prays (Prayes), 1105; Prays, *pr. s.* beseeches, 5141; Pray, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* pray, beseech, 4243; Prays, *pr. pl.* 1041; (Prayd), *pt. pl.* 1041; Prayd, *pp.* prayed, asked, 3183.
Pray, *s.* prey, 1335; Prai (Pray), 1206.
Prayris (Prayers), *pl.* prayers, 1483.
Prayse, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* praise, 661; Prays, esteem, 328; Prayses, *pr. pl.* praise, 3751; (Praysez), 1750; Prayse (Prasen), 1022; Praysed, *pt. s.* praised, approved of, 3440; Prased, *pt. pl.* (Prasen, *pr. pl.*) praised, 2394; Praysed, 898; Praysed, *pp.* praised, lauded, 2666; (Prassed), 995; Praysid, 5225.
Precep (Precept), precept, instruction, 982.
Preciosa, the name of a country, 5080.
Preciouse, precious, 820*.

Precioussest, *adj. superl.* preciousest, 4891.
Predestayned, *pp.* predestined, foreordained, 2745; (Predestinate), 4062; Predestend, 305.
Predicessour (Predecessour), predecessor, i. e. chief, 1723.
Prefe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* prove, find out, 4640.
Prekars (Prekers), *pl.* prickers, riders, 1234.
Preke, *ger.* to spur, to ride, 3483; *v.* 652; Preke on, ride upon, 2897; Prekis, *pr. s.* pricks, rides, spurs, 5445; (Prekes), 938, 1335; (Prekys), 2169; (Prekys forth), *pr. s.* rides on, 823*; Prekis (Prikkyn), *pr. pl.* spur, ride hard, 2982; Prekand, *pres. part.* pricking, riding, 1578.
Prektane, Priscian, 46.
Prelate, *s.* prelate, 1529; Prelatis (Prelatez), *pl.* prelates, 1499, 1554; (Prelates), 1660.
Prematis, *pl.* primates, 1582.
Prenys, *pl.* 1250. Probably a scribal error for *bernys* (cf. *bernes* in the Dublin MS.), i. e. men. The sense is obvious.
Pres, *s.* throng, press of battle, 3968; Prese, throng, 3972; (Prese), 2637; Presse (Prese), heat of battle, 1019; Pres (Preese), *s.* pressure, 3382.
Presand, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* present, 5138; *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* 4529; Presentes, *pr. s.* 5145; Present, *pr. pl.* deliver, 1791; Presandis (Present), *pr. pl.* make presents, 1041.
Presands, *pl.* presents, 5466; Presandis (Presandez), 1716, 1772; Presand (Presentes), 1869.
Prese, *ger.* to attack, 3483; *v.* to overcome, 5109; Presis (Preses), *pr. s.* presses, hastens, 954; Preses, *pr. pl.* press, throng, 151, 3638; (Presen), 2223; (Pressen), 2453; Presis (Prese), press forward, 1389.
Presens, *s.* presence, 367, 982; Put þam in-to presens, came to court, 3328.
Present, *s.* present signature, 3162. Cf. "know all men by these *presents*."
(Present), *adj.* present, 982.
Presidine, *error for* Presidence (Presydence), *s.* presidence, authority, 2414. (But the text is corrupt.)
Presons, *pl.* prisoners, 4703. See *prison* in Glos. to P. Plowman.
Prest, priest, 328; Prestis (Pristez), *pl.* 1499; (Prestez), 1529, 1582; (Pristes), 1554.
Prestly, *adv.* quickly, promptly, soon, 1198, 2277, 2833; (Pristly), 1919, 2027; fully, 1397; (Presteley), 2581. O.F. *prest*, F. *prêt*.
Preualy, *adv.* privily, secretly, 132, 220, 355, 361.
Preuate, *s.* privacy, silence; In preuate, privately, silently, 4997; Preuates, *pl.* secrets, 255; Preuatez, 1582; Preuates, private marks of friendship, special kindnesses, 5386.
Preue, *adj.* privy, confidential, 3588; secret, 3740; under, 4960; (Prevay), private, 944; (Preuay), private, small, 823*.
Preue, *v.* prove, experience, 4249; Preues, *pr. s.* lit. proves, *hence*, gains experience, 4630; Preued, *pt. s.* proved, experienced, 45; Preuyd, gained, 4539; Preued (Preuett), *pp.* proved, 1004.
Price, *s.* renown, glory, 826.
Prickis (Prikkez), *pr. s.* pricks, 2628.
Prid (Pride), 1 *pr. pl.* pride, 2745.
Pride, pride, 724, 936, 1639.
Prik, *s.* point, high point or reach of wisdom, 45; Prike, *s.* time, age (lit. point of time), 4630.
Prikid, *pp.* inscribed, marked, lit. pricked, 5074.
Prime, *s.* prime of day, orig. 9 A.M., 4836.
Primus (Priamus), *name*, 1911.
Prince, *s.* prince, 914; Prince, *gen.* prince's, 4760; Princes, *pl.* 151, 480; Princis, 51.
Princes, princess, 5099.
Principalete, principality, 2311; Principalte (Principalite), 1737; chief place, 648.
Printe, *s.* impression, imprint (on the seal), 1931.
Pris, *s.* renown, 5099; Prisse, price, value, 4242; Prise, prize, 1860, 2284.

Prise (Pris), *s.* praise, fame, 2508. (Perhaps an error for *perse*, Persia.)
Priues, *pr. s.* quenches, takes away, 4682; Priued, *pt. s.* (Priues, *pr. s.*), deprived, 2381; Priued, *pp.* deprived of, 2657; (Depriued), deprived, 2292.
Proces, *s.* full account, 4259. "*Proces*, story, relation;" Halliwell.
Procession, *s.* procession, 1552, 1561.
Proches (Prokes), *pr. s.* makes extravagant demands, arrogates to himself, 1926. "*Prokkyn*, or styfly askyn; *Procor, procito;*" Prompt. Parv.
Proddest, *adj. superl.* proudest, 3661.
Prode, *adj.* proud, 4375.
Profe, *v.* prove, 367.
Profe, *s.* excellence, benefit, profit, 4309. Apparently the same word as M.E. *prow*. "*Prow*, idem quod *profyte;*" Prompt. Parv. O.F. *prou*.
Profectez, *pl.* profits, p. 280, l. 37.
Profet (Profett), *pt. s.* profited, 2370.
Profurs, *pr. s.* offers, 4052; Proferne (Profre), 2 *pr. pl.* offer, 2202.
Progenie, progeny, race, 4021.
Proiecte, *s.* design, 3331.
Prolouge, *s.* prologue, announcement, 5066; (Proloug), preamble, 2730.
Promicid, *error for* prononsid (*pt. s.*), *or* pronounsand (*pres. pt.*), 3395.
(Pronounsand), *pres. pt.* pronouncing, uttering, 3395.
Propertes, *pl.* properties, peculiarities, 4257.
Prophecy, *s.* prophecy, 1099; Prophasys (Prophecyes), *pl.* 1654.
Prophesid (Prophecied), *pp.* prophecied, 1896.
Prophet, prophet, 261, 328; *written* Proplete, 142.
Prophetese, prophetess, 4412; Prophetas (Prophett), 2300.
Propire, *adj.* correct, certain, 367. See Propure.
Proporcion, proportion, 668; Proporcions, *pl.* 5142.
Propure (Propre), *adj.* proper, correct, 2885. See Propire.
Propurest, *adj. superl.* most ornamental, 3331.
Propurly (P[ro]prely), *adv.* entirely, 1926; (Propyrly), wholly, 3283.
Prose, *s.* prose story, 2062, 2397, 3328, 5041.
Proserpyne, Proserpine, 4412, 4416.
Pro[s]perite, prosperity, 1860.
Proud (Prouude), *adj.* proud, 944, 1000, 1169; Proude, 652, &c.; rich, splendid, 480, 2027; noble, 1660; (Prouud), 729*; Proudis, *pl.* proud ones, 5468.
Proudly, *adv.* splendidly, 652; Proudely, honourably, 4017.
Proue, *ger.* prove, shew, 261, 334; test, 4071; Proued, *pt. s.* employed, 647; (Preved), proved, 2072; Proued, 1 *pt. s.* described, spoke of, 4867; Provid, *pt. pl.* were usual, were easily found, 5082; Proued, *pp.* proved, 1789; approved, 914, 808*.
Prouidens, *s.* foresight, prudence, 3990; providence, 4062; Prouidence, *as dat.* for thy forethought, 2707.
Prouince, province, 187, 825*. See Prouynce.
(Prouud), 729*; see Proud.
Prouwis (Prowez), *s.* prowess, excellence, 2745.
Prouynce, province, territory, 72, 1737, 1941, 3123; *pl.* provinces, 444. See Prouince.
Prouys (Preuez), *pr. pl.* prove, 2000.
Prowde, *adj.* proud, 3481. See Proud.
Prowis, *s.* prowess, valour, 444, 614, 3990, 4539; (Prowes), 936.
Pruddest (Proudest), *adj. superl.* proudest, 2202.
Pruto, name of a country, 5657.
Prynce, prince, 99.
Prynt, *s.* mark, seal, 3162.
Pryse, praise, fame, 614. See Prise.
Pull, *s.* throe, 530.
Pull, *ger.* to pull, 938; Pullis him, *pr. s.* draws himself, 2074.
Punesch (Ponysh), *ger.* to punish, 2733.
Pupill, people, 87; (Peple), 1497, 1658, 1999, 2295; Puple, 142, 175.
Pure, *adj.* pure, 2300; complete, excellent, 3990; clear, 1154; simple, small, 3496; mere, 1869; single, 5108; very, 2099.
Pure, *adv.* very, 3242.
(Pure), *adj.* poor, 1661.
Pured, *pp.* purified, 4465; (Puryd), purified, cleansed, well prepared, 2768.
Purely, *adv.* completely, 187; entirely, 3283; totally, 1639; clean, 1658; (Purely), entirely, 3243; Purly, 4062.
Purfire, *s* porphyry, 5275.
Purgis, *pr. s.* puts away, clears away, 4682.
Purid, *pt. pl.* grew calm, grew clear, cleared away, 4185.
Purpose (Purpasse), *s.* intention, 1767.
Purpose, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* intend, 682.
Purpre (Purpurre), *adj.* purple, 1532; Purperyn, 4375.
Purpure, *s.* purple colour, 4986; Purpree, 1588.
Purse, *s.* purse, bag, 1661, 2023.
Purtrayour, portrait-painter, 5141.
Purvay, *v.* provide, p. 279, l. 11; Purvaid, *pp.* provided, equipped, 175; Puruayd, *pp.* purveyed, provided (for thyself), 1731; Purueid, provided, foreseen, 5107.
Put, *v.* put, 982; put, place (*with* to = into), 2861; (Puttes), *pr. s.* 777*; Put vp, *pt. s.* put up, 227; Put, *pt. pl.* put, placed, 816; Putt, *pt. pl.* put, put (themselves) forward, 3968; (Putten), set (themselves), 1483; Put (Putt), *pp.* 1930.
Putfull, *adj.* put full, filled (*but read* piȝt-full), 2284.
Pylars, *pl.* pillars, 5064.
Pynche, *ger.* (*prob. error for* Pycche), i. e. pitch, place, set, 5064.
Pyndis, *pr. s.* impounds, pens up, imprisons, 5487.
Pyne, *s.* torture, pain, 2723, 3506; trouble, 1206.
Pyne, *v.* torture, 1789; Pyned, *pt. s. subj.* would put to pain, would trouble, 3333; Pynaund, *pres. pt.* causing pain, vexatious, 4172.
Pyned, *pp.* tormented, vexed, 4702. A far better reading would be *pynned*, i. e. pinned, penned.
Pyte, *s.* sad fate, 729*.
Qua, *pron. inter.* who, 636; (Wha), 1092; Qua sa, whoso, whoever, 146, 1439; (Who so), 1527, 1718, 1780; As qua, as one who, 4659; As qua sai, as who should say, as if he would say, 2240.
Quadrentis, *pl.* quadrants, 129. (MS. In adrentes; see the note.)
Qualite, *s.* quality, dignity, 4660; kind, 1556; rank, 3303; sort of character, 1703.
Quam, *dat.* whom, 463; (Whom), 1637; (Whome), 1624.
Quantite, *s.* size, 1703.
Quappid (Wappyd), *pt. pl.* struck violently, 2226. E. *whap*, to hit; M.E. *quappen*, to throb, as in Chaucer.
Quare, *adv.* where, 104, 363, 373; *conj.* (Quar), whether, 2370.
Quare-of, whereof, 4249, 4380, 5462; (Wher-of), 1566.
Quare-on, *adv.* whereon, whereupon, upon what, 268, 269.
Quare-þurȝe (Whar-þorow), whereby, 2544.
Quare-with, where-with, 5434.
Quarrels (Qwarels), *pl.* bolts (for the cross bow), 2226; Quarels, 1414.
Quarto, *adv.* whereto, to what purpose, 4060; (Whare-to), wherefore, 2242.
Quas (Whoys), *pron.* whose, 1192; Quase, *pron. rel. gen.* whose, under whose rule, 4192.
Qua-sum-euire (Who-someuer), *pron.* whosoever, 3362.
Quat, *pron.* what, 171, 251, 253, 295, &c.; why, wherefore, 2519, 3492, 5355; (What), how, 2523; Quat, reason why; For any quat, on any account, 581; Quat so (Qwat so), whatever, 1640; All quat, all what, i. e. all sorts of things, 3046; Mekill quat, much of various sorts, 3777. And see Mekill.
Quat euire (What euer), whatever, 680.
Quatkyn, what kind of, of what kind, 305, 312, 5007.
Quaynte, *adj.* quaint, curious, 129.

Quayntid him, *pt. s.* made himself acquainted, 213.
Quedire, *adv.* wherever, 3499; Queder, *adv.* whither, in what direction, 166.
Quele, *s.* wheel, 3303; Queles, *pl.* 5294. See Qwele.
Quellis (Whelles), *pr. s.* kills, 1307.
Quen, *adv.* when, 149, 159, 194, &c.; (When), 745; Quene, 3509.
Quene, queen, 362, 669, 822; (Whene), 919, 938, 944, 1851.
Question, *s.* question, 1110.
Quethe, *v.* tell, 4325; Queth, 1 *pr. s. as fut.* shall tell, 1110.
Quethin, *adv.* whence, 4192, 5216.
Quethire, *conj.* whether (interrogatively), 2161, 3805; Queþir, 3810; whether (introducing a new clause), 5606; (Wheþer), although, 2090; Queþer ȝit, nevertheless, however, 581.
Quethirs (Whirres), *pr. pl.* whizz, fly whizzing, 1414. See *quhidder* in Jamieson, and *quhedirand* in Barbour.
Qui (Why), why, 1620, 2645.
Quike, *adj.* alive, 4469.
Quikly (Whikly), *adv.* quickly, 1414.
Quile, *s.* space of time, while, 331, 249, 3861; þar-quile, at that time, 157.
Quilk, *error for* Quil, while, whilst, 4629.
Quilke (Whilke), *pron.* which, 519, 679, 1447; (which), 3421; what, 1888; Quilk (Whilk), which, 996.
Quils, *conj. and adv.* whilst, 3535; (Whils), 1678; (Whil), 3416; (Whille), 1687; (Whilse), 989; Quills, 19.
Quirris (Whirrez), *pr. pl.* whir, i. e. go forth with a buzzing noise, 1556; Quirys (Whirres), whir, hurl, 2226.
Quirys (Enquirez), *pr. s.* asks, enquires about, 1703.
Quirland, *pres. part.* whirling, 5294.
Quite, *adj.* white, 4534, 5603; (White), *s.* white robes, 1556.
Quod, *pt. s.* said, 97, 183, 242, 270, &c.
Quy (Whi), why, 2945. See Qui.
Quyche (Which), *pron.* what, how great, 1807.
Quyle, *s.* while, time, 546, 581; (While), 1239, 1861. See Quile.
Quyte, *adj.* white, 129; (White), 1562; (Whitte), 1498. See Quite.
Qwaite, *v.* await, 1109. Put for *Waite*, as in Dest. of Troy, 13245.
Qwat, what, 740, 1272; Qwatt, 849.
Qwatis, *pr. s.* (*probably*) becomes quiet, is lulled again, 560. See *quate, quait*, to lull, in Jamieson, ed. 1880. The sense seems to be that the sea was violently agitated, and again suddenly lulled to rest again. *Euer elike* = continually.
Qwaynt, *adj.* quaint, curious, 5548.
Qwele (Whele), *s.* wheel, 1851, 1854; round, circle, 4660. See Quele.
Qweme, *adj.* convenient, 5078. A.S. *gecwéme.*
Qwen, *adv.* when, 374, 392, 649.
Qwene, queen, 221, 228, 234, &c.
Qwer, *adv.* where, 1515.
Qweryns (Quernes), *pl.* cracks, edges of ice on each side of a crack, 3003. Cf. O.F. *carne*, an edge or corner (Cotgrave); and note that the O.F. *carnel*, a battlement (spelt *carneau* in Cotgrave), is spelt *quarnell* in Jamieson. *Carne* is merely another form of F. *cren*, a notch, cleft, breach, Lat. *crena.*
Qwete, *v.* requite, satisfy, 2420. For *to question enquere* read *questions to enquere* (see the Dublin MS.); the line means—But to enquire questions of you, and to satisfy my wits with them. *Qwete* is the M.E. *quitten*, to quit, requite, also to satisfy.
Qwete, *s.* wheat, 4511.
Qweþire (Wheder), whether, can it be that, 2910.
Qwile, *s.* short time, 653.
Qwi (Whi), *adv.* why, 2287.
Qwilke (Whilke), *pron.* which, 1046.
Qwill, *conj.* until, 507.
Qwirre (Whirre), *s.* whir, whirl, 1854; In a qwirre, with a whizzing sound, 560.
Qwistounes, *pl.* beggars, 4660. O.F. *quistoun*, a beggar; Roquefort. Cf. l. 3303. The wheel of Fortune is here called the wheel of beggars, contemptuously, because those who cling to it as it whirls have a chance of being exalted from the lowest condition; see the context.
Qwistsumnes, 3303. A corrupt reading; the MS. has 'qwistsūnes', which may also be rendered 'qwistsu*n*nes', an error for 'qwistunnes' = qwistoūnes, i. e. beggars. See l. 4660, where the phrase recurs; and see above.

Rabetis, *pl.* war-horses, chargers, 1320. See two examples, s. v. *rabite*, in Halliwell. Cf. O.F. *arabi*, an Arab-horse (Godefroy).
Rabies, *error for* Ribans (in Dubl. MS. rybans), *pl.* borders, streaks, 1538.
(Rachez hym), *pr. s.* prepares himself, 2031. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *rax*, to stretch.
Rad, *adv.* speedily, 2428. See Radly.
(Raddest), *adj. sup.* most afraid, 2510. Cf. Swed. *rädd*, Dan. *ræd*, afraid. See Redd.
Raddour, *s.* violence, 2329. O.F. *rador* (Roquefort), later *roideur*, strength, violence.
Rade, *pt. s.* rode, 3704.
Radly, *adv.* readily, quickly, soon, 409, 430, 1354, 1382, 1494, 1950, 2031, 2973, 3449, 4846, 4961, 5360.
Raged, *pt. s.* was angry, 638; Ragid, *pp.* been wanton, 460.
Raggid, *adj.* jagged, ragged, 5133.
(Raght), *pp.* reached, taken, 799*. Pp. of *rechen.*
Raikis, *pr. s.* proceeds, goes, 5284, 5555. Icel. *reika*, to wander.
Railed, *pp.* covered, decked, bordered, 1538, 5128. From A.S. *hrægl*, a garment. See Gawane and the Grene Knight, and *hrœilen*, in Stratmann.
Rais him, *pr. s.* arrays him, prepares himself, 2031. Short for *arayis.*
Rake (Rakke), course, road, way, track, 3383, 5070. See Gloss. to Gawain and the Grene Knight. "*Cartrack*, a cart-rut;" Halliwell. See Raikis.
Ramys, name of a country, 5670.
(Ran), *pt. s.* ran, 794*.
Rancour (Rankour), *s.* rancour, anger, 2701.
Range, *pt. pl.* rang, 5157.
Ranke, *adj.* luxuriant, well-grown, 3060.
Rankest, *adj. superl.* thickest, 1319.
Ransons (Raunsons), *pl.* rich gifts, lit. ransoms, 1665.
Rapis (Rapez), *pl.* ropes, 1520; (Rapes), 747*.
Raryfey, *name*, 5496.
Raschis (Rachen), *pr. pl.* hurry along, 1239. Cf. E. *rash.*
Rase, *pt. s.* rose, 392, 430, 1216, 1566, 2354, 3817, 5055; (Rose), 1354, 2354.
Rase (Rese), race, hurry, 1513. A.S. *rǽs.*
(Rastelyng), *s.* tumult, 943.
(Rasyd vp), *pp.* raised up, levied, 829*.
Rasyn (Raysyn), raisin, grape, 1352.
Rathere (Rather), *adv.* rather, 1178.
(Raþest) (MS. raþeest), most quickly, 726.
Ratland, *pres. part.* rattling, screeching, 4531.
Ratons, *pl.* rats, 1762.
Raueste (Reuest), *pp.* decked, attired, 1500. Lit. re-vested.
Rauth (Rathe), *adv.* quickly, soon, 2824. See Rather.
Rauyst, *pp.* ravished, torn away, 4424.
Ravyn, raven; Niȝt ravyn, night-raven, i. e. owl, 4531.
Raw (Rawe), row, rank; On a raw = in a row, 1500; Be rawe (*pl.* Rawes), in a row, along a row or line, 1320; Rawis (Rawez), *pl.* lines, 2843; rows, lines (of the letter), 2701.
Raxsils, *pr. s.* stretches out, 4930. See Glos. to P. Plowman.
Ray, *s.* king, 5496. O.F. *rei.*
Rayme, *ger.* to spread over, overrun, rule oppressively, plunder, 4563; *v.* 177; (Rame), 2488; Raymed (Raymet), *pp.* 1940, 2378;

(Raymed), *pp.* taken away from, 2510. Halliwell has "*rame*, to rob, plunder; *Lanc.;*" also *raime*, to rule oppressively. But the true sense is not certain.

Rayme, *s.* plunder, 4563. The line seems to mean—'For plunder and robbery, to rob men of their goods.' But *rayme* should not occur twice.

Rayn, *s.* rain, 4176.

Ray[n]bowe (Rayne-bowe), rainbow, 2466.

Raynes, *pr. s.* rains, 566.

Raynes, fine cloth (or linen) of Rheims, 4339; (Reynes), 1550.

Rayses, *pr. s.* rouses, lit. raises, 5174.

(Raythely), *adv.* excellently, 1538. Prob. a false reading. Cf. *g-raith.*

Raȝt, *pt. s.* reached, arrived, 5510; delivered, 5542; laid hold of, 5284; departed, got away, 3852; (Raght), caught, 2916, 2973; (Raught), went on, 1048.

(Realm), realm, 758, 799*, 826*.

Rebell, *adj.* rebellious, 3504; (Rebellez), 1054.

Rebelte, rebellion, 2428.

Reche, *v.* reach, 2466; Reches, *error for* Reche, *ger.* 5520; Reche vp (vppe), *v.* give over, 758 (see the note); Reches, *pr. s.* gives, hands over, 1653; (Rechez), gives, 1665; reaches out (to), 1996; Rechis (Reches), offers, 1906; Reche vp, *pr. pl.* reach up, 817; Rechen, reach, 817; Rechis (Rechys), reach, hand over, 1791; Reches (Rechen) vp, *pr. pl.* hand up, deliver up, 958; Rechid (Raughten), *pt. pl.* reached, 2405.

Reche (Rachen), *ger.* to relate, 1354; Reched, *pp.* related, 521. A.S. *reccan.*

Reches, *s.* riches, treasure, 3951.

Reckend, *pp.* reckoned, 5501.

Recordis, *pr. s.* records, informs, tells, 214; (Recordez), 709, 1044; (Recordes), 2060.

Recouerd, *pt. s.* won, gained, 19; Recouyre (Recouer), *imp. s.* recover, win for (myself), 758.

Redd, *adj.* afraid, full of dread, 1040, 2510. Swed. *rädd*, Dan. *rœd.* See Raddest.

Rede, *v.* advise, 2837; *ger.* to read, 630; 1 *pr. s.* counsel, advise, 2166, 2464, 2601, 3115; read, 1646; Redis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* tellest, 244; (Redes), *pr. s.* reads, 1182, 1996; Redis (Redes), counsels, 1178; Rede, 1 *pr. pl.* read, 1077; Redes (Redyn), *pr. pl.* 1932; Redd, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* I read, 3858; Redd, *pt. pl.* read, 2471; Redd (Redyn, *pr. pl.*), advised, 2872; Red, read, 2344; Redd, *pp.* read, 3588; Rede (Redde), 2843; Red, 1950; Rede, *imp. s.* advise, 5194. A.S. *rǽdan.*

Rede, *s.* counsel, 1040. See above.

Rede, *adj.* red, 20, 425, 1665, 1779, 4176; Redde, 3951.

Rede, *adj.* ready, 3534. See Redy.

Rede, reed; Rede-ryse, reed-rushes, reeds, 3858; Redis, *pl.* 3815, 3832, 4206.

Redell, *s.* curtain, 4930. O.F. *ridel*, F. *rideau.*

Reden (Riden), *pp.* ridden through, 1940; Redyn (Rydyn), ridden, 1203.

(Redles), *adj.* without counsel, at a loss, 1040.

Redy, *adj.* ready, 1382, 5358.

Redy (Rede), *adj.* red, ruddy, 3369.

Reede, *adj.* red, 5510.

Reedis, *pl.* reeds, 5461. See Rede.

Refete, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* feed, refresh (yourselves), 4587. Formed from L. *refectus.*

Refis, *pr. s.* carries off, 5153; Refid, *pp.* reft, 5178. See Reft.

Refreschid, *pp.* refreshed, 3808.

Refreyne, *pr. pl.* 2 *p. subj.* refrain, 4638.

Reft, *pt. s.* (*with* vp), tore up, 409; Reft, *pp.* taken away (from), 2510, 4010. See Refis.

(Refuse), *s.* refuse, 1887. A false reading; see Ashm. MS.

Region, *s.* region, 992; Regions, *pl.* 19, 1048, 1054.

Regme (Remes, *pl.*), *s.* realm, 1949. See Regne.

Regne, kingdom, 1140, 3000, 3164; (Realme), 2653.

Regne, *ger.* to reign, 518, 836; (Reyne), *v.* 1502; Regnyd, *pt. s.* 19.

Rehers, *v.* rehearse, relate, describe, 21; consider, 329.

Rehetis, *pr. s.* cheers, encourages (them), 3999; revives, recals (his courage), 5320. "*Rehaitier, Rehaiter, Reheter*, encourager, reprendre des forces;" Roquefort.

Reioyed, *pp.* rejoiced, glad, 3960, 5227; (Reiossed), 3407.

Reioysed, *pp.* rejoiced, 3112.

Rekanthes, *pl.* chains, 5128. See Rekenthis.

Reke, smoke, incense, 1566.

Reken, *ger.* to reckon, recount, tell, 150, 1206, 1448; to calculate, count, 41, 2269; Reken (Rekyn), *ger.* to reckon, 771; Rekens, *pr. s.* relates, 1280; Rekend, 1 *pt. s.* related, 4124; Rekind, *pt. s.* pronounced, uttered, 4931. See Rekyn.

Rekenthis, *pl.* chains, 5542. A.S. *racente*, Icel. *rekendr.* Hence prov. E. *reckon-creeak*, lit. chain-crook (Halliwell). See Rekanthis.

Rekils, *s.* odour, perfume, 4977. A.S. *récels.*

Rekils, *pr. s.* smokes, reeks, 566. See above.

Rekinly (Rakenly), *adv.* hastily, 2354; (Rekenly), quickly, soon, 2329; (Rekyndly), 794*. A.S. *recene.*

Rekyn, *ger.* to count, 84; (Reken), *v.* recount, 1404; Rekyns (Rekens), *pr. s.* utters, 2354. E. *reckon.*

Rekyn, *v.* control, take heed to, 21. A.S. *récan*, to reck.

Releckis (Relikkez), *pl.* relics, 1572.

Remembris (Remenbrys), *pr. s.* remembers, 2844; recals, 4233; Remenbris, 2958; Remenbrid, 1095.

Remnant, *s.* part, 22.

Remowe (Remefe), *v.* remove, withdraw, 1975; Remowis, *pr. s.* removes, 4859; Removis (Remewis), 2538; Remowis (Remevez), 2031; (Remevys), rises up, 2943; Remowed, *pt. s.* removed, 1048, 1450; Remewid, 3704.

Remys, *pl.* realms, 86.

Ren (Rynne), *v.* run, 3383.

Renay, *v.* refuse, 3534. O.F. *reneier*, Lat. *renegare.*

Renewid, *adj.* (*prob. for* Renownid, renowned), 2819. The Dublin MS. *has* reuerent, i. e. reverend, noble.

Renge, *the same as* Renke, man, 460.

Rengis (Ringes), *pr. s.* rings, 1385.

(Renishit), *pp. as adj.* passionate, 839*. See Renyst.

Renke, man, 330, 739, 817, 992, 1203, 1216, 2166; Renkis, *pl.* men, warriors, 21, 177; (Renkes), 2378; (Renkez), 958. A.S. *rinc.*

(Renke), *s.* rank, 1850.

Rent, payment, tribute; To rent, in payment, in tribute, 4531.

(Rent), *pp.* rent, broken, 775*.

Renysche, *adj.* furious, 2943; Renyst, passionate, loud, 387. "*Rennish*, furious; *North.*"—Halliwell.

Renyschly, *adv.* vehemently, vigorously, 4931. See above.

Repaire, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* return, 3751.

Reportand, *pres. pt.* reporting, relating, *or* sending back, 2414.

Repreue (Reproue), *s.* reproof, blame, 2421.

Repreues, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* reprove, blame, 4662; (Reproued), *pp.* rebuked, 1789.

Request, *pp.* requested, demanded (by), 3443.

Required, *pp.* asked, 2268.

Rere, *v.* rear, build, 4581; (Rerre), 2258; Rerid, *pt. s.* reared, 5510; *pp.* 4068; Reryd, raised, 81; (Reryd), reared, 1373.

Rerid, *s.* voice, noise, 488; Reryd, 387; (Rerde), noise, 2900. A.S. *gereord.*

Res (Reys), *s.* race, hurry, 2979. See Rese.

Resayfe (Resaue), *v.* receive, 826; Resayues, *pr. s.* receives, 2329; *pr. pl.* 3210; Resayued, *pt. s.* received, took, 3478; received, 1182; (Resaued), *pt. pl.* 1695, 2428; Resaued, *pt. pl.* received,

1124; Resayue (Resaue), *imp. s.* 3115; Resayues, *imp. pl.* 3315; Resayued (Resaued), *pp.* received, 1646.
Resche, *s.* rush, 4126, 4726.
Reschowe, *ger.* to rescue, aid, 5162; (Rescew), 2813. See Reskowe.
Rese (Rase), *s.* hurry, 1996. A.S. *rǽs.* See Res.
Resild, *pp.* reticulated, covered with network, 4126. O.F. *resel*, F. *réseau*, from Low Lat. *retiolum*, network. The sense is 'as covered with network as a rush,' which probably means no more than 'furrowed like a rush,' or rough, without any very close resemblance to actual network. Otherwise, if the reading be corrupt, the easiest correction is to read *refild*, or rather *rifeld*, i. e. rivelled, wrinkled.
Reskowe, *ger.* to rescue, 5202. See Reschowe.
Reson, reason, 1670; cause, 244; talk, 3524; sentence, 387; Resons, *pl.* accounts, 1280.
(Ressynnys); see Risonis.
Reste, *s.* rest; To reste (At rist), at rest, set, spoken of the sun, 686.
Resyn, *pp.* risen, 82, 351.
Rethere, *pl.* the cattle, 1239. See *hreoðer* in Stratmann. A.S. *hríðer*, *hrýðer;* pl. *hríðeru.*
Retorik, rhetoric, 4360.
Reuere, *s.* river, 5595; (Reuer), 2894; Revers, *pl.* 4822.
Reuerence, *s.* reverence, respect, 197, 1124, 1182, 1646, 3463.
Reuerence, *pr. s.* does reverence to, 1600; Reuerenst, *pt. pl.* 2344.
(Reuerently), *adv.* reverently, 817.
Reueschid (Reuest, *pp.*), *pt. s. refl.* dressed himself, 1530.
Reuest; see Raueste.
Reufully, *adv.* sadly, 3083.
Reuire, *s.* river, 5279; Reuir, 3852.
Reuth, pity, 2244; Reuthe (Reuth), sorrow, grief, 1280, 2813.
Revell, *ger.* to spend in revelling, 3463.
Reviles (Revylez), *pr. s.* reviles, 739.
Rew (Rewe), *v.* rue, repent, 1975; Rewis, *pr. s.* 3137; (Rewys), *pr. s. refl.* repents, 871; Rewid, *pt. pt.* repented, 3524; Rewis, *imp. pl.* have pity, 3314.
Rewfully, *adv.* ruefully, sadly, 2843.
Rewill, *s.* rule, 4422; (Rewle), rule, ritual, 1500; Rewle, 2894.
Rewle, *ger.* to guide, 5542; to order, 3609; (Rewle), *v.* rule, 799*; Rewelle, 1 *pr. pl.* rule, 4332.
Rewme, *s.* kingdom, realm, 49, 80, 82, 185, 197; (Realme), 813, 3241; (Reme), 1740; Rewmys (Realmes), *pl.* kingdoms, 2363.
Rewthe, *s.* pity, sad sight, 4010. See Reuth.
Reyne, *s.* rein, 2973.
Reȝt, *adv.* rightly, 1740.
Reȝt (*perhaps*), *adj.* right, upright, 2943. For the spelling, see above.
Rial, *adv.* royally, grandly, 4360.
Riall, *adj.* royal, 244, 941, 3314.
Rially, *adv.* royally, 1530, 1572; (Ryally), 3210.
Rialme, *s.* realm, dominion, 20.
Rials, *pl.* men of the royal rank or kin, 3443.
Rialte, *s.* royal power, rule, 3534; royalty, royal state, 22, 5122; (Riallte), royalty, pride, 2428.
Ribans; see Rabies.
(Ribbez), *pl.* ribs, 775*.
Ricchest, *adj. superl.* richest, 4822.
Richas (Richez), *s.* riches, 1178.
Riche, *adj.* rich, powerful, 197, 351, 871, 992, &c.; (Ryche), 1530.
Riches, *s.* wealth, 20, 1663.
Riches, *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself, 5056. See Gloss. to Gawayne and the Grene Knight.
Richest, *adj.* richest, 1572.
Ridars (Ryders), *pl.* riders, knights, 1054.
Ridding (Riddyng), *s.* clearing, rasing (a town), 2244.
Riddour (Raddour), *s.* harshness, 2329. See Raddour.
Ride, *ger.* to ride, 82, 999; (Ryde), *ger.* to ride over, 1731; *v.* 1502; Ridis (Rydez), *pr. s.* rides, 943, 2062; (Rides), 1319, 1450; Riden (Ryde), 1 *pr. pl.* ride, 1850; Ride (Rydyn), 1 *pr. pl. subj.* 2166; Ride (Ryden, MS. dyden), *pr. pl.* ride, 1803; (Ridyn), *pr. pl.* ride, 796.
Rife, *adj.* abundant, 1663.
Rifte, *error for* Riste *or* Reste, *ger.* to rest, 4064. See note.
Rige (Rigge), *s.* back, 2973; (Rige), 784*; (Riggez), *pl.* 775*.
(Right), *adj.* right, 784*.
(Right), *adv.* just, 798*.
(Rightes hym), *pr. s.* sits upright, 839*.
Rime (Reme), *s.* rim, 1850.
Ringe, *s.* ring, border, 1850; (Ryngez), *pl.* ring-mail, lit. rings, 2980.
Risches (Rechez), *s.* riches, treasure, 3115.
Rise (Ryses), 2 *pr. s.* risest, 1494; Risis (Ryses), *pr. s.* rises, 2347.
Risonis (Ressynnys), *s. pl.* heads of oats, 3060. "*Rizome*, the head of the oat; *Chesh.* 'A plume, or bell, or bunch of oats, and such other corn as does not grow in an ear;' Kennett, MS. Lansd. 1033." — Halliwell. Cf. Prov. Swed. *ressma*, an ear of corn, especially of oats, a spike of corn (Rietz).
Rist, *v.* rest, leave off, 22; Ristis, *pr. s.* 5654; Ristes, 4920.
Riued (Ryfe), *adj.* abundant, full of abundance, 1740, 1779. Icel. *rífr*, rife; *reifa*, to bestow.
Riȝt, *adv.* right, immediately, 95, 431; just, exactly, 101; (Right), exactly, 1365; (Ryght), just, 2483; Riȝt as (Right as), just as, 1756.
Riȝtis (Rightez), *pl.* rights, 3241.
Riȝtwisnes, righteousness, 4424; Riȝtwysnes (Ryghtwyssnes), 3383.
Robies (Rubies), *pl.* rubies, 1663.
Robry, *s.* robbery, 4563.
Roche, *s.* rock, 5496; Rochis, 4864; Roches, 4877.
(Rode), rude, 829*.
(Rodely), *adv.* rudely, boldly, 784*.
Rodogarus, mother of Darius, 3314; Rodogars (Rodogors), 2819; (Rodogoras), 2824.
Rofe, *pt. s.* tore, hurt, 638.
Rogh, *adj.* rough, 4864; Roghe, 4126, 5133.
(Roke), *s.* rock, 4849; Rokkis, *pl.* 4864.
(Rolland), *pres. pt.* rolling, galloping, 794*.
Romance, *s.* the original Romance, 488, 4133; (Romayns), 2900; Romaunce (Romanys), 1077.
Romayn, Roumania (?), 5670.
Rome, Rome, 2328, 4649.
Romys, *pr. s.* roars, cries, 612. Cf. A.S. *hréam*, noise, cry. (Better spelt *remys.*)
Ronde, *adj.* round, 1502.
(Rongen), *pt. pl.* rang, 775.
(Ronke), *adj.* rank, abundant, 1762.
Ronkenes, *s.* rankness, 3350.
Ronsees, *pl.* (Rounsey, *s.*) horses, 2887. M.E. *rouncy*, in Chaucer. See Rounsy.
Roomes, *imp. pl.* roam, stretch out, 2466. See *roam* in my Etym. Dict.
(Rooues), *imp. pl.* rove, roam (after), 2466.
Ropand, *pres. part.* rushing down, falling swiftly, 4176. Icel. *hrapa*, to fall, fall in ruin.
Rosan, Roxana, 3315, 3449, 3463.
Rose, *s.* rose, 4543.
Rose, 1 *pr. pl.* praise, 4313; Rosid, *pp.* celebrated, 5122. Icel. *hrósa.*
Rote, *s.* root, 4424; Rotis, *pl.* 409, 3941.
Rottillyng, *s.* disturbance, 943. Cf. E. *rattle*, which is often provincially pronounced *rottle.*
Roue, *pt. s.* rived, pierced, 1216.
Roune, whisper, secret, 244.
Rounsy, charger, 817. See Ronsees.
Route, *s.* company, set, 2378; throng, 1319; (Rowte), rout, host, 958, 1239.
Row (Rawe), *adj.* rough, 2980.
Rowme, *s.* room, 4920; place, 330.
Rowme, *adj.* roomy, large, 1762. A.S. *rúm.*
(Rowmyd), *pt. s.* made room for (*but read* Removed), 1048.
Rowste, *s.* voice, 488. Icel. *raust*, Dan. *röst.*
Rughe, *adj.* rough, 4726, 4877.
Rughere, *adj.* rougher, 3815.
Ruschid (Rushes, *pr. s.*), *pt. s.* hurled, 1320.

Russe, Russia, 5670.
Ruyde, *adj.* rough, turbulent, 5595.
Ruȝe, *adj.* rough, 3852; wild, 1762.
Rybans; see Rabies.
Ryde, *ger.* to ride, 915, 2813, 762*; Rydes, *pr. s.* rides, 1284; Rydis (Ryden), *pr. pl.* 1239; Rydyn, *pr. pl.* ride (or *pt. pl.*), rode, 1256.
Ryfe, *adj.* rife, plain, evident, 1352.
Ryfenes, *s.* rifeness, plenteousness, abundance, 1887.
Ryft, *s.* rift, cleft, 1756.
(Ryfyng), *s.* rending, 747*.
Rymed, *pt. s.* stretched, 4931.
Ryn, *ger.* to run, 1352; Rynnes, *pr. s.* 1323, 1513; (Rynnys), 2900; (Rynnyn), *pr. pl.* 2979; Rynand, *pres. part.* running, 3737.
Rynge, ring, 425, 436.
Rynges, *pr. s.* rings, 775.
Rynoceros, rhinoceros, 4133; Rynoseros, 5133.
Rype, *adj.* ripe, 1347.
Ryse (Rise), *v.* rise, 2438; Rysis, *pr. s.* 330, 392; (Risez), 782; Rysys, 2871; Ryse (= Risis), 557; (Rysys); (Rysys), 2870.
Ryse, *s.* rushes, 3858. See note.
Ryst (Rist), rest, 2516; To ryst, at rest, 374.
(Rytte), *pp.* torn, 775*. Icel. *rîta*, to scratch, cut (hence also to tear, as G. *reissen*); cognate with A.S. *wrîtan*.

Sa, *adv.* so, thus, 146, 259, 268, 269, 459, &c.; (So), 840.
Sa ma aydeus (So madeus), so may God aid me, 729. *For* So m'aide Deus, so may God aid me.
Saarde, Sardis, 5666.
Sable (Sabyll), *adj.* sable, black, 1126.
Sable, *s.* sable, black colour, 3946.
Sacchell (Sachell), *s.* wise man, philosopher (?), 716. Used ironically; it seems to be formed from O.F. *sache*, wise (Roquefort), Low Lat. *sapius*, wise
Sacrife, *v.* sacrifice, 5098 (*where read* sacrif[ic]e); Sacrifyce, *pr. s.* sacrifices, 1083; (Sacrified), *pt. s.* 1083.
Sacrifis, *s.* sacrifice, 4461; (Sacrifese), 1486; *miswritten* Sacrife, 2182.
Sacrilag, *s.* sacrilege, 4561.
Sad, *adj.* settled, 2895; Sadd, *adj.* full, complete, 3883; Sadd sowme, close rank, lit. close (*or* full) number, 5559; Sadd (Sad), *adj.* close, firm, resolute, 2614; sad, 5052. A.S. *sæd*.
Sadils, *pl.* saddles, 5453. See Sadyll.
Sadly, *adv.* seriously, 347; fixedly, 1859; forcibly, 4146; firmly, securely, 2568; with determination, 1139; Sadli, sadly, 5584.
Sadnes (Sadnesse), *s.* staidness, soberness, steadiness, 1017.
(Sadyll), saddle, 790*, 795*, 839*. See Sadils.
Safe, *adj.* safe, 1677; Safe vouch (Saue woche), 2 *p. pr. pl. subj.* vouchsafe, 2355; and see Vouchid.
Saffrond, *pp.* coloured with saffron, 4600.
Safirs (Saphirez), *pl.* sapphires, 1535; Safers, 4880.
Sage, *adj.* wise, 1649, 4704.
Sagely, *adv.* wisely, 3359.
(Sagh), *pt. s.* saw, 770*.
Saghe, *s.* saw, saying, 4997.
Sagittarius, the name of a place, 1070.
Sai, *v.* say, tell of, 5551; Sais (Says), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* sayest, 730; Sais, *pr. s.* says, 80, 192; (Says), 881, 1371; Sais, *pr. pl.* say, 1732; Saied, *pt. s.* said, 4941; Said, 96, 228; (Sayde), 1355; Said (Saydyn), *pt. pl.* 1815; Sai, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* say, 5193; Sais (Says), *imper. pl.* 2 *p.* say ye, 890.
Saile (Sayle), *ger.* to sail, 1026; Sailand, *pres. pt.* sailing, 61.
Sailers, *pl.* sailors, 4359.
Sailid, *pt. pl.* assailed, 5559. *Short for* Asailid.
(Saire), *adv.* sorely, 2313.
Sake, *s.* sake, 5, 1813, 2022; guilt, 3213. A.S. *sacu*.
Salamon, Solomon, 1649.
Salcary, *Lat.* Soltani, 5501.
Sale, *s.* hall, chamber, room, 48, 222, 332, 487, 502, 1183, 1830, 2063, 2929, 3074, 3229, 3685, 4432, 5339; Sales, *pl.* halls, tents, 4016. A.S. *sæl* (Grein).

Sale (Saule), *s.* soul, 1640.
Sall, 1 *pr. s.* must, am to, 3194; Sall, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* shalt, 688, 774; Sall, *pr. s.* shall, 177, 184, 251, 403, 519; Sal, 388; Sal (Shal), *pl.* 1358.
Salmary, *s.* baggage, collection of instruments, &c., 126. Low Lat. *salmaria*, the same as *sagmaria*, baggage.
Salt, *adj.* salt, 154.
Salue, *s.* unguent, 4976; Salues, salves, 4343; Saluys, 3132.
Salue, *v.* heal, 3132; Salues, *pr. s.* salves, heals, 4683.
Salus, *s.* salutation, 4647.
Salutis, *pl.* salutations, greetings, 3088; (Salutes), 1914; (Salutez), 1490; Salutes, *pl.* greetings, 2759, 2802.
Same, *adj.* same, 288, 741*.
Same, *in phr.* In same, i. e. together (though here used as a mere expletive), 2646. "They gaderyd hem *insame;*" Rich. Coer de Lion, ed. Weber, 4386.
Samen, *adv.* together, 162, 175, 2351, 3671; (Sampnen), 1550; In samen, 5295. See Samme.
Samme, *adv.* together, 5098. See Samen.
Sammen (Samme), 1 *pr. s.* collect, assemble, 3168; Sammes (Sampnez), *pr. s.* gathers, 1520; (Sampnes), *pr. pl.* collect, assemble, 2351; Samed, *pt. s.* assembled, 1026; Samyd, 51; Sammed, *pp.* assembled, 2614; Samed (Sampned), collected, 1732; Samed (Sammyd), *pp.* assembled, gathered, 2828; Sammed, *pp.* filled, gathered full, 5290. A.S. *samnian*.
Sampill, *s.* sample, example, proof, 5306; see Ensampill.
Sampson, 1202, 1221, 1264, 1288.
Sand, *s.* land, 4299.
Sande, *s.* message, 3780; Sand (Sond), embassy, 2524; Sandis (Sondez), *pl.* messages, 890.
Sande, 1 *pr. s.* send, 3168.
Sandisman, *s.* messenger, 4234; (Sondesman), 2866, 2964; Sandismen, *pl.* messengers, 2399, 5100; (Sandesmen), 1830; (Sondesmen), 1790; (Sendesmen), ambassadors, 1170.
Sange, song, 253, 1645.
Sannd, *s.* sand, 5555.
Sanng, *pt. pl.* sang, 3698.
Sanys (*read* Sauys), *pr. pl.* save, preserve, 1749.
Sapience, wisdom, 253, 1022; Sapient, 3725; knowledge, 622; Sapient (Sapience), wisdom, 2374; (Sapiens), 2526; Sapientis, *pl.* wise acts, 4449.
Sarazens (Sariauntez), *pl.* Saracens, 1510.
Sare, *s.* sore, harm, 3771; Saris, *pl.* 3132, 4343.
Sare, *adj.* sore, severe, 797.
Sare, *adv.* sorely, 385, 531, 856, 1464; (Sore), 2532, 2698.
(Sarkenly), 2401. Perhaps an error for *sekirly*, as in A.; or miswritten for *certenly*.
Saroparis (Satrapers), *pl.* satraps, 1913.
Sary, *adj.* sorry, miserable, 665, 1735, 4417; poor, 4037.
Sat, *pt. s.* sat, 482; Satte, 3336.
Satraparis (Satrapars), *pl.* satraps, 2758; Satrapaires, 2694; Satrapairs (Satrapers), 1937.
Sattild, *pp.* settled, 4429.
Sauagyus, *pl.* savages, 3914.
Sauand, saving, except, 4037; Sauand bot, except, 3707.
Saudid (Sawdett), *pp.* stuffed, set, 1535. F. *souder*, to solder, lit. to make firm; Lat. *solidare*.
Saudiours (Saugeours), *pl.* soldiers, 1921, 2105; (Sougeours), 2828; (Sowiours), 763. See Saugeours.
Saue (Safe), *v.* save, heal, 2558, 3087; Saued, *pt. s.* saved, 5586. See Sauyd.
Saue, *prep.* save, except, 3842.
Sauely, *adv.* safely, 3771. See note.
(Saugeours), *pl.* soldiers, 2172. See Saudiours. Cf. prov. E. *sodger*.
Saule, soul, 742, 754, 3089, 3474; (Sawle), 1786, 2628; Sauls, *pl.* 4429.
Sauour, *s.* smell, sense of smell, 4634.

Sauour, *s.* knowledge, 4429, 4474. Cf. F. *savoir*.
Saute, *s.* assault, 1388, 2221, 2380, 3360; (Sawte), 1156, 1431, 1452, 1766, 2135; (Sawt), 1968.
Sauyd (Saued), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* saved, 2093; (Saffed), *pp.* preserved, 2668. See Saue.
Sawe, *ger.* to sow, 4404; 2 *pr. pl.* 4580; Sawis, 1 *pr. pl.* 4268.
Sawe, *pt. s.* saw, 266; (Saw), *pt. pl.* 1616.
Sawe, *s.* speech, saying, 1845; (Saw), 863; Sawis, *pl.* words, 5115; sayings, 51, 99, 200, 262; (Sawes), 1655; Sawes, 3567; (Sawes), prophecies, 797*.
Sawis, *pl.* saws, 5557. See Saȝe.
Sawourd, *pt. s.* savoured, tasted, 4821.
Say, *s.* silk, 4600.
Say, *v.* say, tell, 51, 165, 1097; *ger.* 240, 253, 294; Say, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* say, address, 2735; Sayes, *pr. s.* says, 5002; (Says), 1207; Sayn, *pr. pl.* tell, 2112; Sayd, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* said, 447; 2 *pt. s.* saidest, 246; *pt. s.* 167, 268; *pp.* 262; Say, *imp. s.* tell, 288.
Saynes, *pl.* nets, 4270. F. *seine*, L. *sagena*.
Sayntis, *pl.* saints, 4.
Saynt-ware (Sanctuary), sanctuary, 1567. O.F. *saintuaire*.
Saȝe, *s.* saying, saw, 4220; sentence, 5192; answer, 751; (Sagh), 3249; Saȝes, *pl.* sayings, words, 4478; (Sawes), 1795, 2322, 2774; (Sawez), 1818; (Sawys), *pl.* sayings, 2356.
Saȝe, *s.* saw, 4096. See Sawis.
Saȝe, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* saw, 475; (Sawe), 1635; *pt. s.* 61, 222, 419, &c.; (Sawgh), 2072; (Saw), 1433, 2112; (See), 2301; (Se), 1796; Saȝe, *pt. pl.* saw, 1383, 4003; (Seghen), 2854. See Se.
Saȝtill (Saghtyll), *imp. s.* make peace, be reconciled, 865. A.S. *sahtlian*.
Scales, *pl.* scales, 3895.
Scalid, *adj.* scaled, furnished with scales, scaly, 3865.
Scamandra, Scamander, 2119.
Scath, *s.* harm, 3915.
Scence, *s.* incense, 4976.
Sceptoure (Septour), *s.* sceptre, 3161.
Scere, *ger.* to scare, 3865.
Schade, *s.* shade, 3800.
Schaft, shaft, spear, 780; shaft of a spear, 1402; Schaftis, rays, 4816; (Shaftez), shafts, 789.
Schaftis, *pl.* chaps, jaws, 4797. *Put for* Chaftis. Icel. *kjaptr*, jaw.
Schakis, *pr. s.* shakes, 551.
Schalk, man, 469; Schalkis (Shalkys), *pl.* men, 929; (Shalkez), 2454.
Schame (Shame), *s.* shame, 1800; disgrace, 748.
Schamed, *pp.* ashamed, 469.
Schap, *s.* shape, body, 4301; destiny, 180; Schapp, shape, 4761.
Schapid, *pt. s.* escaped, 3004. *For* Aschapid.
Schapis, *pr. s.* shapes, forms, 4026; Schape, *pr. s. subj.* incline, work towards, 3371; Schapen, *pp.* decreed, 178.
Schard, *pp.* cut, i.e. formed, 4675. From the weak verb *scharen*, of which the pt. t. *scharde* occurs in Sir Degrevant, 1630. See Halliwell.
Scharpe, *adj.* sharp, 602.
Scharpid, *pp.* sharpened, 3580.
Scharply (Sharply), *adv.* sharply, 1299, 1391.
Schathill (Schatell), *adj.* harmful, dangerous, powerful to injure, 2992. See *Scaþel* in glos. to Allit. Poems. Goth. *skathuls*.
Schatird, *pt. s.* shattered, 4150. See Alto-schatird.
Schauadry (Cheualdry), *s.* baseness, 3371. '*Shavelder*, an idle vagabond;' Halliwell.
Schauyn, *pp.* shaven, 231.
Schaw, *s.* shaw, wood, 4730, 4731; Schawis, *pl.* groves, thickets, 4382.
Schawe, *ger.* to shew, 601; Schawid, *pp.* 4390.
Scheld, *ger.* to shield, protect; To scheld with oure schap, to protect our forms with, 4301.
Schell, *s.* shell, 3695; Schellis, *pl.* 5469.
Schel'is, *pl.* sheilings, shelters, 4049. Cf. Icel. *skjól*.

Schemerand, *pres. pt.* glittering, shimmering, 483, 5592. See Schondirhand.
Schend (Shend), *v.* disgrace, 3371; Schende (Shende), *ger.* to destroy, 870.
Schene, *adj.* beautiful, 5592; splendid, 483, 780; *adj. as sb.* bright one, fair maid, 4759.
Schering (Sheryng), *s.* shearing, cutting, 2624.
Schethe (*pl.* Shether), sheath, 802.
Scheue, *s.* shive, splinter of a broken spear, 1402. *Better* Schiue; but see below.
Scheuerand (Sheuerand), *pr. pt.* shivering, splintering, 789.
Scheuyn (Sheuen), *pr. pl.* shake, 776. Cf. *cheueren*, to quiver, shiver, in the Morte Arthure and Troy-book.
Schew, *s.* cloud, sky, 4865. Cf. Icel. *ský*, a cloud; Halliwell gives *skew* = sky, from MS. Cot. Vesp. D. 7.
Schewe, *ger.* to show, 15; (Shewe), 2029; *v.* 255, 684; Schewis, *pr. s.* shews, 286; (Schewez), beholds, 2669; Schewys, shews, 608; (Schewez), 2919; Schewid, *pt. pl.* shewed, 4049; Schewid, *pp.* shewn, 180; Schewyd, 474; Schewid (Schewed), 1896.
Schewere, *s.* mirror, 4854.
Schidis (Shidez), *pl.* splinters, fragments, 789. A.S. *scíde*.
Schild (Sheld), shield, 780; (Shelde), 1402; Schildis, *pl.* shields, 3797, 5560.
Schilde, *pr. s. imper.* shield, defend, forbid, 3521.
Schilli (Shilly), *adv.* shrilly, loudly, 929. "Schylle, *Sonorus;*" Cath. Anglicum.
Schilling (Schelyng), *pl.* shillings, 3174.
Schind, *v.* disgrace, 5335. See Schend.
Schipis, *pl.* ships, 65, 113; (Schippes), 1367; Schippis (Shippes), 1159.
Schire, *adj.* bright, 483, 5018; sheer, mere, 4301. Icel. *skírr*.
Schirkind, *pt. pl.* cleared, rendered bright, brightened, 4816. Cf. Icel. *skíra*, to brighten, cleanse.
Scho, she, 241, 257, 268, 352.
Schogs, *pr. s. refl.* shivers, shakes, trembles, 5018. See *Shog* in Halliwell.
Schoke, *pt. s.* shook, 5018.
Schomes (*in* MS. *for* Schoures), *pl.* showers, 1299.
Schondirhand, *pres. pt.*, *error for* Schemerand (Shemerand *in* D.), shimmering, gleaming, 780. See Schemerand.
Schondirhed (Shenderet), *pp.* slain, 2048. *Formed as if from a verb* Schonderen, *or* Schenderen, frequentative of Schonden, Schenden, to disgrace; see Schend, Schont.
Schont, *s.* jest, disgrace, 469. *Put for* schond; see *schand* in Stratmann.
Schontid; see Schoutis, Schount.
Schort, *adj.* short, 630.
Schote (Shote), *s.* shot, i.e. stone shot from engines, 2624.
Schote (Shote), *ger.* to shoot, 1064; Schotes (Shoton), *pr. pl.* 1391; Schot (Shoton), *pp.* shot, 1299.
Schount, *ger.* avoid, 180. E. *shunt*.
Schouris, *pl.* showers, *hence* sorrows, woes, 529. See also Schomes.
Schoute, *s.* shout, 4730.
Schoutis (Shotes), *pr. pl.* shout, 929; Schoutid, *pt. pl.* shouted, clamoured, 580 (but here we should rather read *schontid*, i.e. removed, shrank, lit. *shunted*). See the note, and see Schount.
Schowid, *pp.* shoved, used force, 4759.
Sc[h]rewe, *s.* mischievous creature, 4854; Schrewis, *pl.* ill-disposed lads, 628.
Schrikis, *pr. pl.* shriek, 3866; (Scrikes), 929.
Schrine, *s.* shrine, 5592. See Schryne.
Schroude, vestment, robe, 483; covering, 4301. A.S. *scrúd*.
Schryne, *s.* shrine, 4675. See Schrine.
Schudering (Shoderyng), *s.* crashing, clashing, lit. shuddering, 2624.

Schuldire, *s.* shoulder, 5240; Schulder (Shulder), 1090.
Schurrys, *pl.* sheds, 4049. Icel. *skúrr*, a shed.
Schut (Shotyn), *pr. pl.* shoot, 1413.
Schynes, *pr. s.* shines, 3862; (Shynes), 705.
Sckerres, *pl.* scars, scaurs, rough rocks, 4865. Icel. *sker*.
Sckonfet, *pt. s.* discomfited, 4802.
Scott (Shotten), *pt. pl.* shot, dashed, leapt, hurried, 2454.
Scoghe, *s.* wood, shaw, 3915. Icel. *skógr*.
Scolaid, *pt. s.* studied, 645. Chaucer has *scoleye*, Prol.
Scole, school, 621, 641, 645; Scolis, *pl.* 4363, 4610.
Scolere, scholar, 641.
Scopid, *pt. pl.* escaped, 3915. *Put for* Scapid.
Scopulus, a look-out place, 1575. See the note.
Score, *s.* score (twenty), 1372, 4200; ix score, one hundred and eighty, 3177.
Scorpions, *pl.* scorpions, 3865, 4200.
Scortis, *pr. s.* (*for* Schortis), grows short, wanes, 3298.
Scoures (Showrez), *pl.* showers, 2048.
Scriptour (Scripture), writing, 2119; Scripture (Scriptur), text, 1575.
Scutis, *pr. pl.* project, 4865. Icel. *skúta*.
Se, *v.* see, 250, 344; (See), 688; Se, *ger.* 356; to look upon, 1528; Se (See), 1 *pr. s.* 1998; 2 *pr. pl.* 1802; Se, *pr. pl.* 1 *p. subj.* see, 1846; (Se), *pt. s.* saw, 1590; Se, *imp. s.* 1914; (See), 702.
Se, *s.* sea, 83.
(Seche), *adj.* such, 1191, 1819.
Seche, *ger.* to seek, 408; Seches (Sekes), seeks, goes, 1056. See below.
Sechis, *pr. pl.* come, 4976. A better reading would be *as sykis out of wellis*, like streams out of wells. *Siche* is a Southern form of *sike*, a stream, torrent.
Sechus (Sichus), Zethus, 2215.
Secund, *adj.* second, 2303, 3660; Secunde, 3356.
Sede, *s.* seed, 586, 1991, 4268; race, 4333; Sedis, *pl.* 3725, 4404.
Seder, *s.* cedar; Seder-tables, tables of cedar, 5290. See Sedrisse.
Sedill, *adj.* (probably) chaste, modest, gentle, 3937. Formed from A.S. *sidu*, good manners, lit. custom; cf. *sedefull*, modest (Ormulum); Icel. *siðugr*, well-bred; Dan. *sædelig*, modest; G. *sittsam*, modest. The suffix is A.S. *-ol*, as in *wac-ol*.
Sedrisse, *pl.* cedars, 4973. See Seder.
See, *s.* sea, 26, 61, 411; Sees, *pl.* 4406.
See, *v.* see, make out, 5605; *ger.* to attend, 754*; Sees (Seys), 2 *pr. s.* seest, 3279; Sees, *pr. s.* sees, 943; perceives, 5360; See, *pr. pl.* 3208; (Seen), 1253; See, *pt. s.* saw, 657, 733*; Seis, *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* behold, 3878.
See-bule, *s.* sea-bull, 4098; (*read* See-bulis, *pl.*), 4197; See-bules, *pl.* sea-bulls, sea-cows, 3846.
Seele (Seale), *s.* seal, 2344; (Sealle), 1914.
Seelis, *pl.* seals (sea-animals), 5471; Seeles, 3846.
Seerties, *pl.* varieties, 4654. See the note; and see Sere, *adj.*
Seet, *pt. s.* (*for* we *read* he, *see note*), set, appointed, 4654; *pp.* set, situate, 5333.
Seete (Sete), *s.* seat (*supply* in, *as in the* Dublin MS.), 2995.
Sege, siege, 1029, 1144, 1156, 3020; camp, 2442; Sege (Seige), siege, 1282, 1336.
Sege, *s.* seat, chair, 236, 262, 536, 548, 1872, 2324; throne, 3325, 3388, 5182, 5630, 5643; Sege (Seyge), seat, throne, 3284; Segis, *pl.* thrones, 3456; seats (Lat. *sedilia*), 3337.
(Seget), *pp.* called, 2234. From *seggen*, to say; but the right form is *seid*. The reading is probably corrupt.
Segge, *s.* man, 111; (Sege), 1316; (Seghe), 2286; Segg (Segge), 2526; (Segh), 1626, 1633; Seg (Sege), 1580; Sege, 2251, 2390; (Segge), 2296; Seggis (Seggez), *s. pl.* warriors, men, 1137, 2020, 3168; (Segges), 1329; (Seges), 797, 1796, 2199; (Segez), 2103; Segges (Seges), 2291; Segis, 34, 86; (Seges), 1787, 2043; (Seggez), 2137; Segge, *gen. pl.* of men; Of segge werke, of the work of men's hands, 4473.
(Seggen), *pr. pl.* say, 1070.
(Segh), *pt. s.* saw, 3291.
Segid, *pp.* besieged, 4296.
Seis (Sittes), *pr. s.* sits, 980.
Seising, *s.* seizing, conquest, 4396.
Seke, *v.* seek, 908, 5532; find, 1364; go, 3081; advance, 1735; Seche, seek, attack, 2020; Seke (Sech), seek to go, aim, 3295; (Sekyn), go, 3081; (Seke), *ger.* to seek, 1968; Seke (Seche), 1 *pr. s.* seek, seek to fight, advance, 2748; Sekis (Sekez), *pr. s.* goes, 924; (Sekys), goes, 2189; Sekis, 2 *pr. s.* seekest, 1759; Sekand, *pres. pt.* seeking, 154.
Seke, *adj.* sick, ill, 856, 2003, 2017, 2548. A.S. *séoc*.
Sekeman, *s.* sick man, 5605.
Sekire, *adj.* certain, 5370; true, very, 4479; (Sekir), trusty, 2646; certain, sure, 2840, 2891; (Sekyr), good, sterling, genuine, 1042; Sekir (Syker), good, 763; trusty, 1202.
Sekire (Sekerly), *adv.* assuredly, 2748.
Sekirly, *adv.* for a certainty, 303; securely, 2401; (Sekerly), certainly, 1634.
Seknes, *s.* sickness, 2808; Sekenes, 4440.
Selcuth, *adj.* strange, great, 3598; valiant, 3043. A.S. *seldcúð*, strange.
Selcuthe, *s.* wonder, marvel, 3663, 5533; Selcuthis (Selcouthez), *pl.* wonders, 2112.
Selcuthely, *adv.* wonderfully, 3076; strangely, 5291; (Selcouthly), wonderfully, 1022; Selcuthly, wondrously, exceedingly, 5584; (Selkouthly), wondrously, 2822.
Selcuthest (Selcouutest), *adj. superl.* wonderfullest, famousest, 1244.
Seldoum, *adv.* seldom, 4220.
Sele (Sealle), *s.* seal, 1845, 1931, 2802; (Seale), 1717.
Sele, *s.* happiness, bliss, good luck, 249, 1855, 4547; (Ceyle), prosperity, 1862. A.S. *sǽl*.
Sele (Syle), *ger.* to ceil, roof, cover, 1519.
Sele, *perhaps an error for* Soile, i. e. soil, 2760. Or from A.S. *sele*, a house, dwelling; hence, habitation, land. (Probably corrupt.)
Selere, *s.* cellar, apartment, 5291. *But clearly an error for* Solere, a summer-chamber. (Error of *e* for *o* is common.)
Selfe, *adj.* same, very, 288, 498, 3388, 4895; (Self), 3229; (Seluen), 754.
Selfe, self; ȝour-selfe, yourself, you yourself, 875; Selfe, himself, 435.
Selid, *pp.* sealed, 5100; (Selett), 1170.
Sell (Self), *pron.* self, 2524.
Selle; see Selly.
Selly, *adj.* strange, marvellous, 326, 570, 1580; (Sellich), 1732; strange, i. e. great, 5575; vast, 2089; Selle, *adj.* strange, wonderful, great, 4884; vast, 89.
Selly, *adv.* strangely, extremely, 3567.
Selly, *s.* marvel, 2551; Sellis, *pl.* wonders, 5551.
(Selue), *adj.* very, 1998, 741*.
Semand, *pres. part.* seeming, 1252. See Seme.
Semblance, *s.* appearance, demeanour, 5192; Sembalaunce, 4098.
Semblant, *s.* appearance, face, aspect, 4141; (Sembland), 1627, 841*.
Semble, *s.* assembly, army, 3978; encounter, meeting, 797; Semle (Semble), assembly, 1573.
Semble (Assemble), *v.* assemble, 1921; Semble, *ger.* to assemble, meet in battle, 759; Semblis, *pr. s.* attacks, 1333; (Sembles), assembles, 2668; Semblis, *pr. s.* assembles, 1282; Semblis (Assempbles), *pr. pl.* assemble, 2351; Sembled, *pt. s.* (Sembles, *pr. s.*), assembled, 2489; Sembled, *pt. pl.* assembled, 617; Semblid (Semblyd), *pp.* assembled, 1244, 2536;

Sembild (Semblyd), *pp.* assembled, 2270.
Sembling (Semblyng), *s.* assembling, 769.
Seme, *v.* beseem, suit, 979; Semes, *pr. s.* beseems, 747, 5209; (Semys), 2000; it seems, 1349, 3196; Semys, seems, 1634; it beseems, 716; Semed, *pt. s.* seemed, 635, 1156; (Semyd), seemed, 1423; beseemed, 2779; Semed (Semyd), seemed likely, 2003; seemed, 1375; seemed (to reach), 2108; Semyd, seemed, 70, 1528.
Seme, *ger. error for* Sene, to see, 682; the Dublin MS. has *se.*
Semely, *adj.* comely, 238; seemly, 1281; seemly person, 2003; fair one, 5264; (Semlych), 2179; (Semelych), 2017, 3043.
Semely, *adv.* fitly, 281; fittingly, 198; comelily, 424.
Semple (Semble), *v.* assemble, 2796; Sempble (Assemble), *ger.* to assemble, 2803.
Semylacre (Symylacre), *s.* image, 2997; Semylacris, *pl.* images, effigies, 5637.
Sen, *conj.* since, 179, 465, 1105, 1850, 2950, 3438, 3544, 4258; (Seth), 891; (Syon), 1864.
Send, *v.* send, 1833; Sende, *ger.* 1868; (Send), 1254; Sendis, *pr. s.* sends, 352, 1716; (Sendes), 1711; (Sendys), 1170; Send, *pr. pl.* 1042; Sent, 2 *pt. s.* sentest, 2022; Send, *pt. s.* sent, 4234; Sent, 670; (Send), 1463; Sente, *pt. pl.* sent, 3774; Sent (Send), *pp.* 1490.
Sendale, fine linen, 1519.
Sene (See), *ger.* to see, 1061; *pp.* seen, 62, 1551.
Seneour, *s.* senior, lord (*but a false reading*), 2760. See below.
Seneours, *pl.* elders, princes, 2487; Seneiours (Senyours), *pl.* seigneurs, lords, 1614. See Senioure.
Senescalls (Senescallez), *pl.* seneschals, 3400; Seneschalls (Senescals), 2753.
Senioure, *s.* prince, 3073; Seniour (Seneour), lord, 2634; Se[n]ioure (Senyour), *s.* ruler, lord, 3198; Seniours (Senyours), *pl.* lords, 1937. See Seneours.
Seniourie (Senory), *s.* dominion, 1913, 1976.
Sens, *s.* incense, 4184.
Sensitife, *adj.* sensitive, 4381.
Sensours (Censours), *pl.* censers, 1565.
Sent, *s.* feeling, perception, 4615.
Sent, *s.* assent, 617. *For* Asent.
Senture, *s.* cincture, girdle, 4963. F. *ceinture.*
Senurie (Senyoury), *s.* lordship, 2778.
Senyour, *s.* lord, 5600.
(Sepe), *ger.* to sink, fail, 716. (Such is the sense required; it is evidently miswritten for *seye* = *seȝe.*) See Seȝes, and cf. the reading of Ashmole MS.
Septer, sceptre, 502; (Septour), 980; Septere (Septur), 1128; Septour, 198, 2324, 3325.
Sepulture, *s.* sepulchre, 3143.
Seraphens, *pl.* Seraphim, 4915.
Seraphis (Serapys), Serapis, 1084; (Seraphys), 1101.
Ser, sir, lord, 161, 513, 637, 771, 869, 3239; (Sir), 695, 1005; (Sire), 765; Seris, *pl.* sirs, 182; (Sirys), lords, 2491.
Serche, *ger.* to search, 3132.
Sercle, *s.* circle, 3736, 4373; Serclis, *pl.* 277.
Sere, *adj.* various, separate, divers, 86, 277, 570, 1083, 1535, 1567, 1694, 1889, 2010, 2104, 2112, 2765, 3707, 4453, 4461, 4915; various, many, 2753.
Sere-lepy, *adj.* separate, 4521; various, sundry, 4440, 5125; Serelypy, different, 605; Serelepis, *adj. pl.* various, 4893.
Serenon, Ceres, 4510, 4536.
Seriantis (Sergeantes), *pl.* serjeants, officers, 2475; Seriant (Sergeantez), serjeants, 3403.
Serke, *s.* shirt, sark, 4963; Serkis, *pl.* 4339, 4672.
Serop (Syroppe), syrup, drink, 2578; (Syrope), 2558; Serep (Syroppe), 2568.
Seropis, Serapis, 4460.
Serpentis, *pl.* serpents, 3707, 3883, 4197.

Serres, Seres, i.e. Chinese, 3956, 3958.
Sertan, *s.* certain amount, 5121.
Sertane, *adj.* certain, 3956.
Sertis, *adv.* certainly, 4371.
Seruage, *s.* service, 2778, 3528; (Seruage), 918; Seruage (Seruyce), servitude, 1937.
Seruand, *s.* servant, 2779; (Siruand), 1962; (Siruant), 1727; Seruandis (Seruandes), *pl.* servants, 2753.
Seruand, *error for* Seruise (*as in* the Dublin MS.), service, 2694.
Serue, *v.* obey, 2410; serve, suit, 1364; Seruyd, *pt. s.* served, was of service, 2374; Serued, *pp.* served, 1685, 5282.
Serue, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* deserve, 4389; Serued, *pp.* earned, 3426. *Short for* Deserue.
Serues, *s.* service, 918.
Seruitute, *s.* servitude, 4349.
Sese (Sesyn), *v.* (1) seize, 1776; Sesis, *pr. s.* seizes, lays hold of, 5283; (Seses), takes, 1452; (Sesez), seizes, 2115; Sesid, *pt. s.* put, placed, 5637; Sesyd, seized, 1142; Sesid, *pt. pl.* seized, took, 4119; Sesid, *pp.* taken, 2386, 5403; (Sesyd), 1358; Sesyd, 2380; Sese, *ger.* (2) to seize, i.e. to give possession (of), put in possession (of), 5220; (Seyse), *ger.* to put in possession, 2566, 2633; Sesid, 1 *pt. s.* put in (thy) possession, 2578; Sesid, *pt. s.* put (him) in possession (of), 4210; Sesed, *pp.* seized, put into possession, delivered up, 5313; Sesid, seised, possessed, put in possession, 3161; Sesid, seised, possessed, 3558; Sesid (Sesyd), *pp.* seized, taken possession of, 1449.
Sesis (Seses), 2 *pr. s.* ceasest, 2736; Sesis, *pr. s.* ceases, 546, 4377; stops, 4683; Sesid (Sessyd), *pt. pl.* ceased, 2045; Seses, *imp. pl.* cease, 182.
Seson, season, 881; (Seasun), 2895.
Sesonde (Sesund), *pp.* seasoned, prepared, 2923.
Sesse (Seys), *pr. s.* sees, 2532.
Sesyng, *s.* seizing, seizure, 3490.
Set (Sett), *v.* set, 2796; Sett, *v.* 1766; *ger.* to set, to be set, 1365; to set, 1158; (Set), 2296; Sett, 1 *pr. s.* 1802; Settis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* buildest, 5403; Settis, *pr. s.* sets, 3049; (Settes), 1431, 1452; Setis (Settez), sets, dashes, 1221; Set, sets, 1859; Settis (Settes), pitches, 1143; Settis (Settes) vpon, begins, 2135; Settes owt, *pr. s.* thrusts out, 841*; Set, *pt. s.* 1 *p.*; Set agayns, attacked, 2082; Sett, *pt. s.* established, 4305; ordered, 4951; Set, *pt. pl.* set, 1139; (Sett), appointed, 759; Sett, *pp.* set, placed, 281, 605, 1291; appointed, 179, 443, 522, 5412; established, 1649; rendered, 3911; Sett, seated, 238, 502, 536; set against, opposed to, 1316; Settis (Settes), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* set, 2142.
Sete, *s.* seat, 238, 482, 979, 2962, 3392; throne (Lat. *solium*), 2676; seat, habitation, dwelling, 1749. And see Sette.
Sete, *adj.* suitable, fit, 249; (hence) short, 546; Sete quile (Sete qwyle), suitable time, 2356. From A.S. *sittan*, to sit, M.E. *sitten*, to suit. See *sete* in Stratmann.
Seten (Settyn), 1 *pr. pl.* sit, 1850.
Seteqwile (Sete-while), *s.* fitting while, convenient while, i.e. short time, 3081. See Sete, *adj.*
Sethen, *adv.* afterwards, 282, 424, 495, 631, 2325.
Sethen (Syne), *conj.* since, 2292.
Setnes, *s.* set time, 5553.
Sett, *s.* setting, 2045.
Sette, *s.* seat, habitation, 4952. (*Error for* Sete.) See Sete.
Sette, *s.* set (*either* company *or* those set or put), 3284.
Settynge, *s.* setting, 5508.
Seuen, *num.* seven; "þe seven" = the seven deadly sins, 4293; (Seuen), 1961. See Seuyn.
Seuent (Seuynt), *adj.* seventh, 2342.
(Seuenten), seventeen, 795*.
Seuyn, *num.* seven, 44; (Seuen), 1528, 1677. See Seuen.
Seuynt (Seuent), *adj.* seventh, 2157; (Seuente), 3388.
Seuynte, *num.* seventy, 634.

Seuyntene (Seuentene), seventeen, 2105.
Seuyrd, *pt. s.* was separated, 579.
Sewe, *ger.* to follow, 2105, 3534; *v.* pursue, go on, 2840; make suit, sue, 5161; imitate, 2515; Sewis, *pr. s.* follows, 5507; Sewes, 3091; (Sewes), 2502; (Sewyd), *pp.* followed, been used to, 795*; Sewe, *imp. s.* follow, 686.
Sewe, *v.* sew together, 1925 (the Dublin MS. *has* Insew); Sewys, *pr. s.* sews up, 423.
Sewes, *pl.* pottages, 4275. See *Sew* in Halliwell.
Sex, six, 5470.
Sexes, Xerxes, 2361, 3558; (Serxes), 3136; (Seryxes), 3097; Sexis, 5600; (Sixes), 2483; (Serexies), 2994.
Sext, *ord.* sixth, 3346, 3384.
Sextene, sixteen, 3821.
Sexti (Sexty), sixty, 1042; (Sexty), 806*.
Seyis (Seȝes), *pr. s.* goes, 1573.
(Seysyd), *pp.* seized; Seysyd to hym, seized for himself, 3187. See Sese.
Seȝes, *pr. s.* sinks, falls, 4333; passes, goes, 2182; Seȝes, *pr. pl.* sink, fall, drop, 2043, 2057, 3641; Seȝe, 4844; Seȝen, pass, go, 1481; Seȝes, *pr. pl.* (*with* to), approach, advance to (the city), 1388. A.S. *sǽgan*, to cause to sink, confused with *sígan*, to sink, fall. Note also *Seye*, to go, *Seȝen*, arrived, in Gloss. to Gawayn and the Grene Knight, and *Seie* in the Troy-book.
Seȝis, 2 *fut. s.* shalt see, 5022; *pr. s.* sees, 3053; Seȝes, heeds, 3291; perceives, 5583; Seȝis, heeds, 4478; *lit.* sees, *but used with the sense of* seems, 4704.
Seȝt, *s.* sight, 5537.
Shaftis (Shaftez), *pl.* shafts, rays, 1544.
Shalkis (Salkez), *pl.* men, 1391; (Shalkez), 3267*.
(Shall), *pr. s.* shall, 809*.
(Shamesly), *adv.* shamefully, 739*.
Shapid (Echapyn, 1 *pr. pl.*), 1 *pt. pl.* escaped, 1944.
Shapis, *pr. s.* forms, shapes, 113; Shap, 2 *pr. pl.* intend, 2143; Shapen (Shapyn), *pp.* ordained, 2260; (Shapyn), ordained, 3267*; Shapid (Shapyd), *pp.* decreed, 809.
(Sharpe), *adj.* sharp, 957.
Sharpid (Sharped), *pp.* sharpened, 1890.
Shauys, *pr. s.* shaves, 121.
Shaw, *ger.* to shew, 321; Shawis, *pr. pl.* shew (themselves), 3429.
(She), she, 948.
Sheet, 1767*. See Ouer-sheet and Shote.
(Shelde), *pr. s. subj.* shield, 1472.
Shemerand, *pres. part.* shimmering, 1544.
(Shendes), 2 *pr. s.* spoilest, 1767*; (Shendit), *pp.* spoilt, destroyed, 2236.
(Shendship), *s.* disgrace, 3267*.
Shethe (Sheth), *s.* sheath, 2639.
Shewe, *v.* shew, 1827; *ger.* 1666; Shewis (Shewys), *pr. s.* shews, 928; Shewid, *pt. pl.* 1704.
Shildis (Sheldez), *pl.* shields, 787.
(Shillynges), *pl.* shillings, 807*.
Shipis (Shippez), *pl.* ships, 2454.
Shire, *adj.* bright, sheer, clear, pure, 113, 1544, 2454, 4675; (Shire), 807*, 2048.
Sho, *pron.* she, 3928; (Sho), 733*; Shoo, 5145.
(Shote), *s.* shot; Shote ouer-sheet, overshoot thy shot, 1767*. *Read* ouer-sheet.
(Shote), *ger.* shoot, cast, 807*; (Shotyn), *pt. pl.* shot, 3041; (Shott), *pp.* 1544.
Shount, *ger.* to escape, 2143. E. *shunt.*
Showte, *s.* shout, 1392.
Shrewe, *s.* mischievous person, 1706.
Shuldirs (Shulders), *pl.* shoulders, 812; (Shulders), 731*; (Shuldres), 773*.
Sibbe, *adj.* akin, 4492. See Syb.
Sibbire, *adj. comp.* nearer of kin, 586.
Siche, *adj.* such, 83, 1889; Sich, 1076.
Sichim (Sychim), Sichem, 1759.
Sichomures, *pl.* sycamores, 4973.

Sicistrus (Sicistreus *or* Sicisterus), *proper name*, 2234.
Side, *s.* side, direction, 1221, 1520, 5021; Sidis, *pl.* sides, 773, 1424, 2215, 4672; parts, regions, borders, 1921, 2115; Of þa sidis, in those quarters, 3867. See Syde.
Side (Syde), *adj.* long, 1925.
Sidlings, *adv.* sidelong, 2057.
Sighinges, *pl.* sighs, 5052.
Sighis, *pr. s.* sighs, 5584.
Signes, *pl.* wonders, 4935. See Sygnes.
Sike, *adj.* such, 126, 3607; (Sike), 868, 1015; Sike, such (men), 946; such (things), 4272; (Suche), 2580; (Slyke), 2047.
Sike, *v.* sigh, lament, 2313.
Silis, *pr. s.* turns, goes, 111, 161, 335, 5264; (Sylez), goes, 2922; comes, 1087; Siles, *pr. pl.* subside, drop, fall, 3043; Silis, go, 161. See *Sile* in the Troy-book; and see Sylis.
Silke, *s.* silk, 4016; (Sylke), 2401.
Silkin, *adj.* silken, 5295; Silkyn, 236; Silken (Sylkyn), 1520.
Silloure, *s.* canopy, 4915. See *Sylure* in Prompt. Parv.; and see Sylours.
Siluer, silver, 276, 1571, 1588, 1889; Siluyre, 129.
Silueryn (Syluer), *adj.* of silver, silvern, 1565.
Similitude, *s.* parable, 2735; likeness, similitude, 1627, 2024, 4229.
Simpill, *adj.* simple, 4664; ignorant, 4404. See Sympill.
Simplenes, *s.* simplicity, 4040, 4051.
Sinagoges (*sing.* Sinagoge), *pl.* synagogues, 1481. See Synagoge.
Sindid, *pp.* burnt, 2236. Cf. A.S. *sinder*, cinder.
Siphagoyne (Prynphagoyne), *place-name*, 2759.
Sipris, *s.* cypress-wood, 5290; Sipirs, 4453; Sipresses, *pl.* cypresses, 4973. See Sypirs.
Sipris, Cyprus, 4600.
Siraphis, Serapis, 200; Sirapis, 5409; Sirraphis, 161.
Sire, *s.* sire, master, lord, 303, 311, 1131; sir, 363, 517; father, 1786; (Syre), father, lord, sire, 1126, 2251; (Sir), 1004; (Syr), 691, 1720; Siris, *pl.* sirs, lords, 3436; (Syres), 2268; Sirs (Sirres), 1185; Sirres (Sirs), 2286. See Syre.
Sire soile, fatherland, soil of thy sire, 5021.
Sireland (Surry), Syrian land, Syria, 1614.
Sirie (Surry), Syria, 1137.
Siriens (Surriens), *pl.* Syrians, 1696; (Sariens), 1447.
Sise, *s.* size, 26.
Sit (Sitte), *v.* sit, 1855. See Sitt.
Sithe, *s.* time, 4204. A.S. *síð.*
Sithe, *s.* scythe, 3971.
Sithen, *conj.* since, p. 282, l. 92.
Sithid, *adj.* scythed, armed with scythes, 3598, 3821.
Sithin, *adv.* afterwards, then, 5385; (Syne), 1537.
Sitiles (Siteles), City-less, without a city or home, 2286.
Sitt, *v.* sit, 592; (Sitte), dwell, 1677; Sittis (Sittes), 2 *pr. s.* sittest, 1872; Sittis, *pr. s.* sits, 161; 1 *pr. s.* sit, 1724; Sitt, *pr. pl.* sit, remain, be left, 3807. See Sit.
Siȝis (Sighez), *pr. s.* sighs, 3076.
Siȝt, *s.* sight, 1252, 2051, 2270; glance, look, 4855; (Sight), 967, 1551.
Skapis, *pr. s.* escapes, 642; Skapid (Scapett), *pt. s.* escaped, 2992.
Skarlet, *adj.* scarlet, 467.
Skars, *adj.* scarce, short, 5040. (For *fra* read *for.*)
Skatheles (Schatheles), *adj.* unharmed, 2992.
Skathely, *adv.* with difficulty, with injury, 642.
Skathill, *adj.* harmful, 4802. Cf. Goth. *skathuls*, harmful.
Skautand, *pres. pt.* pushing, darting violently, 4200. Halliwell gives *scaut*, to push violently; cf. Icel. *skota*, to shove, allied to E. *shoot.*
Skelp, *v.* beat, 1924. See Jamieson.
Skere, *s.* scare, fright, 4731.
Skerrid, *pt. s.* scared away, 4802.
Skewys, *pl.* skies, 561.
Skifte, *v.* change, die (lit. shift), 5040; Skiftis, *pr. s.* shifts, changes, 4622. See Skyftis.
Skilfull, *adj.* skilful, 645.

Skill (Skely), *s.* reason, 1575.
Skinnes, *pl.* skins, hides, 4114.
Skire (Skyre), *adj.* sheer, bright, 1824. See Shire, Skyre.
Skirmand, *pres. part.* screaming, 5157.
Skirtis (Skirtez), *pl.* skirts, 1533.
Skitly, *adv.* suddenly, swiftly, 5040. Cf. M.E. *skeet*, swift.
Sklendire, *adj.* slender, 4923.
Skorge (Scourge), *s.* scourge, 1924.
Skorne, *s.* scorn, 641.
Skowis, *pl.* woods, lit. shaws, 5157. Icel. *skógr*.
Skrike, *s.* screech, shriek, 4731; Skrikes, *pl.* 5157.
Skyftis, *pr. s.* changes, 467. See Skifte.
Skynnes, *pl.* skins, 5084. See Skinnes.
Skyp, *pr. s. subj.* skip aside, leap aside, 642.
Skyre, *adj.* bright, sheer, 467; (Skyr), pure, 2119. See Skire, Shire.
Slaa, *ger.* to slay, 5412; *v.* 4403, 5330; Sla, *ger.* 2566; Sla (Slaye), *v.* 1766; Slaes, *pr. s.* slays, 3883, 4841; Sla, 2 *pr. pl.* 4547; Slaa (Sla), 3198; Slayn, *pp.* slain, 722, 1329, 2057; Slay (Slayn), 1264; Slayne, 691, 2089; Slayne vp, *pp.* wholly slain, 1449; Slane, 4733, 4844, 5575.
Slaare (Slaer), slayer, murderer, 967.
Slade (Slode, Slayde), *pt. s.* slid, passed quickly, 2870, 2962; (Slayde), 2962.
Slakis (Aslakes), *pr. s.* ceases, 857; Slakid, *pt. pl.* slackened, ceased, 3050.
Slane; see Slaa.
Slauyn, *s.* a (pilgrim's) mantle, 1925. See *Slaveine* in Halliwell.
Slawth, *s.* sloth, 4293.
(Slayde), *pt. s.* slid, 2962; see Slade.
Slayn, Slayne; see Slaa.
Slaȝtere, *s.* slaughter, 3049; Slaȝter (Slauughther), death, 708; Slaȝtir, *s.* deadly effect, lit. slaughter, 4855. (The glance of the basilisk caused death.)
Sleely, *adv.* slily, cautiously, 5174.
Slees, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* slay, 4461. See Slaa.
(Sleghtly), *adv.* quickly, 2057. Cf. Icel. *sléttr*, smooth; *slétt*, smoothly.
(Slengers), *pl.* slingers, 2219.
Slepe, *s.* sleep, 351, 375, 419, 1084, 1512; Slep, 344.
Slepe, 1 *pt. s.* slept, was asleep, 475; Slepit, *pt. s.* slept, was sleeping, 4849.
Sletis, *pr. s.* hastens, 380. Cf. A.S. *slǽtan*, to hunt.
(Slew), *pt. pl.* slew, 2043.
Sleȝly (Shyllghly, *sic*), *adv.* slily, 2962. See Slely.
Sleȝt, *s.* sleight, cunning contrivance, 4857; (Sleght), 2634; Sleȝt (Sleght), sleight, skill, 1022; stratagem, 1364; Sleȝt (Sleghtes, *pl.*), skill, 2374; (Slyght), trick, 2566; Sleȝtis, *pl.* sleights, arts, 38, 334; (Sleghtez), stratagems, 1445.
Slide, *pp.* slidden, gone away, 4456. See Slade.
Slike, *adj.* such, 11, 38, 62, 399, 539, &c.; like, 4229; (Slyke), 1752; (Sike), 1742; (Siche), 1516; Slik, such, 67, 69, &c.; (Slyke), 1641; (Suche), 2389; All slike, just such, 3084.
Slingis (Slengers), *pl.* slings, 2219.
Slipe, *v.* slip away, pass away, come to naught, 179.
Slire, *wrongly for* Skire, sheer, pure, 2119. The Dublin MS. has *skyr*. See Skire.
Sliȝly, *adv.* slily, silently, 2870.
Slowefull, *adj.* slothful, p. 279, l. 16.
Slowmand, *pres. part.* slumbering, 5174. "*Sloum*, to slumber, *Yorkshire;*" Halliwell.
Sloȝe (Slogh), *pt. s.* slew, 1431; Sloȝe, *pt. pl.* slew, 3904, 4113, 5567; (Slogh), 3421; (Slew), slaughtered, 1139; (Sloghen), 3213; Sloȝe, *pt. pl.* 1 *p. subj.* (if we) were to slay, 5351.
Slughe, *s.* slough, outer skin, 4456; Sloȝis, *pl.* sloughs, skins, 5085. See the note.
(Slyghtly), *adv.* quickly, 2870.
(Slyke), such-like, such, 2219. See Slike.

Slymand, *pres. pt. as adj.* slimy, claylike, 4456.
Small; In small, in small bits, 1309.
Smallire, *adj. comp.* smaller, 1334.
Smaragdone, *s.* emerald, smaragdus, 3356; [S]maragadane, 3342; Smaragdans, *pl.* emeralds, 3678; Smaragdens, 5424; Smaragdins, 5272; Smaragdyns, 3670, 5643.
Smert, *adj.* rough, 1309.
Smert, *adv.* smartly, promptly, 5515.
Smeten, *pp.* beaten, 3678; *hence*, stuck, decked, 5272; (Smytyn), smitten, 1309. See Smyte.
Smeth, *adj.* smooth, 3311, 3670, 3678.
Smethe, *v.* smith, forge, 5515.
Smithis, *pl.* smiths, 5515.
Smyles (Smylez), *pr. s.* smiles, 2461; (Smyllys), 2725.
(Smyte), *v.* smite, 843; Smytis (Smytez), *pr. s.* smites, 1222; Smyten, *pp.* lit. smitten, hammered out, made, 3342; (are) smitten, 3082; Smytten, smitten, beaten, 5424. See Smeten.
Smythis, *pl.* smiths, 5424.
Snakis, *pl.* snakes, 3794.
Snape, *s.* (probably) winter-pasture, patch of grass, 1560. Cf. Icel. *snöp*, 'scanty grass for sheep to nibble at in snow-covered fields'; Vigfusson. Hence, in this passage, it must mean a patch of grass for winter-pasture.
Snapirs (Snappers), *pr. s.* stumbles, 847. See note, p. 294.
Snart, *adj.* severe, 3633. See Gloss. to Gawayne and the Grene Knight. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *snarre*, severe.
Snatirs, *pr. s.* staggers, stumbles, 3995. See Snapirs.
Snaw, *s.* snow, 4925, 5482; Snawe, 4165; Snawe (Snaw), 1560, 1756.
Snayles, *gen.* snail's, 4095.
Snaypid, *pt. s.* disconcerted, marred, 3995; nipped, caught suddenly, checked, severely wounded, 3633. North. E. *sneap*, to check, chide.
Snelle, *adv.* quickly, swiftly, 3995. A.S. *snel*, quick.
Snowte, *s.* snout, trunk, 3633.
Snyppand (Snappand), *pres. part.* dazzling, 1560. See Jamieson.
Snyth, *adj.* (probably) smooth, 4095. The lit. sense is 'cut', from Icel. *sníða*, to cut. Cf. prov. E. *snod*, smooth; Sc. *sned*, to cut, prune.
Snyȝes, *pr. s.* issues, creeps (out), 4095. Cf. Icel. *snigill*, a snail.
So, *adv.* so, 14, 69, 140; And so, i. e. and so forth, and the like, 2551, 4184; And soo, and the like, 3821. (A curious phrase.)
Sobband, *pres. part.* sobbing, 3249.
Sobire, *adj.* sober, 4266.
Sobirly, *adv.* soberly, 4643; discreetly, 5340; calmly, 2356.
Sobirte, sobriety, 4040.
Socure (Socour), *s.* succour, 959, 1463, 2252.
Socurs (Socours), *pr. s.* succours, aids, 2834.
Sodanly, *adv.* suddenly, 1052, 3391; Soda[n]ly, 2862; (Sodenly), 1626; (Sodandly), 1859.
(Sofre), *v.* suffer, 2435.
Soft, *adv.* softly, 2401.
Softe, *adj.* soft, 2000; Soft (Softe), 2024; (Softe), 2071.
Softly, *adv.* at ease, 482; gently, 548; in an under tone, 2952; Softely (Softly), gently, 698.
(Soght), *error for* Sothe, i. e. true, 1806. See the Ashmole MS.
Soiet (Sugett), *s.* subject, 2682. (*Soiėt* = *sojet*.)
Soile, *s.* soil, country, 1749, 3728; ground, 3284; Soile (Soyle), 3161.
Solas (Solace), solace, comfort, 1490.
Solast, *pt. s.* solaced, comforted, 2072.
Solayne, *adj.* solitary, single, 3805. Hence E. *sullen*.
Solempnite, solemnity, pomp, 1645.
Solers, *pl.* upper-rooms, 3684. See *Soler* in Halliwell.
Solp, *v.* pollute, 4292. "*Sulpen*, polluere;" Stratmann.
Some, some, 568; (Som), 774*; a certain, 755*; Some tyme, once, 1132.
(Some), *adj.* same, 2063.
Somere, *s.* summer, 3959; (Somer), 2895.
Somere-hall, summer-hall, 5264; (Somer-hall), 2922.

Somir-bathis, *pl.* summer-baths, 4343.
Somme, *s.* sum, number, 83; (Some), 1889; host, 1026; (Soume), number, 2089, 2189; Some, *s.* sum, number, 62; host, 924; (Somme), host, 1144; (Some), *s.* sum, quantity (*but an error for* fone), 3180.
(Somme), 1 *pr. s.* (*the same as* Samme), collect, 3168.
(Somned), *pt. s.* gathered, 2219. See Sammen.
Son, *s.* son, 572, 584, 618, 627; (Sone), 686; (Sonn), 697; (Sonne), 863; Sonnes, *pl.* sons, 4403; Sons, 5091; Biche sons, sons of a bitch, *or read* Biche sous, bitch-sows, 5482.
Son, *s.* sun, 34, 281, 427, 543, 556; sun-rise, 2303; Sonn (Son), 1723; Sone (Son), 1518; Sonne, 442, 736, 1842; Son, *gen.* sun's, 62; Vndire son, under the sun, 4300; With vp sun, with sun up, with sunrise, 4067. Cf. *sundown*.
Sond, *adj.* sound, safe, 5245.
Sonde, *s.* sound health, soundness, security, 5616. See above, and see *sunde* in Stratmann.
Sonders, *pr. s.* breaks asunder, 3067; Sondres, breaks up, 4377; Sondire, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* plough, lit. sunder, sever, 4268; Sondird (Sounderd), *pt. pl.* broke asunder, 3003.
Sondire; In-sondire, asunder, 4150.
Sone, *adv.* soon, 59, 116, 222, 266, 362, 400; Son, 730; Sone as, as soon as, 394.
Sonere, *adv. comp.* sooner, 4295.
Son-sett, *s.* sun-set, 3050.
Son-tree, *s.* sun-tree, 5008, 5018.
Soo, *adv.* so, 4772; thus, 179, 3911; so, i. e. the like, 3821 (cf. lines 2551, 4184). See So.
Sope, *s.* sup, small quantity, 3805. See *Sope* in Halliwell.
Soper, *s.* supper, 2923.
Sophistri, *s.* sophistry, 4364.
Sopp, *s.* company, body, troop, 2351. See *Soppe* in Halliwell. Cf. Icel. *soppr*, a ball.
(Sorastes), *name*, 916.
Sorely, *adv.* surely, 165, 688.
Sorement, *for* Serement, oath, 1464.
Soroȝe, sorrow, 249, 529; (Sorow), 2051; trouble, 2157; Sorowe (Sorow), *s.* pitiful creature, 1753; Soroȝes (Sorowys), *pl.* sorrows, 1447; Soroȝis (Sorowez), *pl.* sorry fellows, 1735.
Soroȝe, *v.* lament; Fand hire soroȝe, found her lamenting, 536; Soroȝes, *pr. s.* grieves, 4051; (Sorowez), 703; Sorowis (Sorows), 1288; Sorowis, *pr. s.* grows dark, lit. grows sad, 4141; Soruȝes, *imp. pl.* sorrow ye, 182.
Sorsery, sorcery, 38; Sorsry, 5291.
Sorte, *s.* sort, quality; in sorte (of sorte), according to their rank, 1555.
Sotellest, *adj. superl.* subtlest, 34; Sotelest, most skilful, 2373; Sotelest (Sotellest), most delicate, most choice, 2923.
Sotellte, subtilty, skill, 258.
Sothe, *adj.* true, 327, 1806; (Soth), 722.
Sothe, *s.* truth, 165, 261, 463, 5412; (Sothe), 729; (Soght), 2286; For soth, of a truth, 99.
Sothely, *adv.* verily, truly, 688; (Sothly), 691, 1640; Sothly, 5008.
Sott, *s.* sot, fool, 1776, 4704; (Sot), 1862; Sottes, *pl.* foolish men, 2232; Sottis, fools, 4417; (Sottez), foolish ones, *hence*, innocents, children, 1602.
Sott, *ger.* to besot, stultify; To sot with the pepill, to befool the people with, 4364.
Souerayn, *s.* sovereign, king, lord, 154; (Soueren), 1818; (Souerand), 1512; Souerane, 2774; (Soueren), 801*; Souerayne (Souerend), *gen.* lord's, 1813; (Souerand), 2914.
Souerayne (Souerane), *adj.* supreme, 1724; Souereayn, 4210.
Soueraynest (Soueranest), *adj. superl.* chiefest, 1913; Souerynest (Soueranest), most supreme, 3097.
Soueraynete (Souerente), *s.* lordship, dominion, 1859.
Soueraynly (Souerandly), *adv.* chiefly, 1288.
(Souerente), *error for* Soueren, sovereign, lord, 2774.

Soukand, *pres. part.* sucking, 4197.
Soume, *s.* number, 1202; company, 1244; host, 1282; Soume (Sume), sum, 1787; (Some), 763; Soumme (Soume), 1968. See Somme, Sowme.
Sounde (Sunde), *adj.* sound, unwounded, 2232.
Sounde, *adv.* safely, 5532.
(Sounderytt), *pt. s.* broke asunder, 3067.
Soundire; In soundire (sonder), asunder, 1416.
Souorly, *adv.* savourily, 4381. (*Error for* Sauorly.)
Soupe, *v.* sup, 2915.
Soure, *adv.* bitterly (lit. sourly), 2313. See l. 5348; and see Sowe.
Soute, *s.* under part (?); In soute, beneath (?), 4880. Such seems to be the sense of this doubtful word. Cf. *soute* in Littré, where it is explained that it represents Lat. *subtus*.
Sowe, *v. refl.* gall, vex, grieve; *in the phr.* Soure suld him sowe = bitterly shall it vex him, 2313, 5348. See *Sow* in Jamieson.
Sowme, *s.* sum, number, 2532, 3914, 4285, 4799; sum (of men), host, 2796; (Some), sum, number, 3019; (Soume), 2020, 2082; Sowme (Soumez, *pl.*), sum of men, army, 2620; Sowmes, *pl.* quantities, 4433.
Sowme (Soume), *v.* number, 1986.
Sowping, *s.* supping, 4439.
Soyle, soil, 1252; (Sole), 1724.
Soyned (Soned), *pt. s.* excused, 1464. See *essoin* in Supplement to my Etym. Dict.
Soyte (Sote), *s.* suit, livery, 1580; (Sott), 1550; In soyte, in his suit (of robes), *or* among his suite (of men), 3336; Of a soyte, in a suit, alike, 3684.
Soȝt, *pt. s.* sought, went, got up, 2962; went, 3049; (Soght), went, 1137, 1694; Soȝt him (Soght on), *pt. s.* advanced, 3207; Soȝt, *pt. pl.* sought, 163; Soȝt, *pp.* arrived, 3003.
Space, *s.* space of time, 630, 971.
Spacly (Sarply, *for* Spacly), *adv.* speedily, quickly, 2975. See Spakly.
Spakid, *pt. s. refl.* soothed herself, was quieted, 237. Cf. Icel. *spakr*, Dan. *spag*, gentle, quiet.
Spakly, *adv.* swiftly, 786. See Gloss. to P. Plowman; and see Spacly.
Spare, *v.* spare, 364; Spared, *pt. s.* spared, refrained, 5320.
Sparis (Sparrys), *pr. s.* starts, darts, 2975. See *spar*, to box, in my Etym. Dict.
Sparke, *s.* spark, 2975.
Sparles, *adj.* plentiful, lit. spare-less, 5467. The opposite of *sparing*, i. e. scanty.
Sparth, *s.* halberd, battle-ax, 1403; Sparrethis (Sparthys), *pl.* 2458. Icel. *sparða*.
Speche, speech, 234, 237, 739, 897; story, 1884.
Speches (Spekes), *pr. s.* speaks, 834.
Specke (Speke), *s.* speck, 743.
Spede, *v.* speed, prosper, 2178; Spedis (Spedes), *pr. s.* speeds, 931; pushes on, puts forth, 1226; (Spedes), *refl.* 3033; Sped, *pt. s.* hastened on, 1403; *refl.* made speed, 630.
Spedely, *adv.* speedily, 1419.
Spedfull, *adv.* speedy, short, 971.
Spek, *ger.* to speak, 5320; Spekis (Spekes), *pr. s.* 733; (Spekys), 1088, 2185.
Speke, *s.* speech, 3318.
Spell, *s.* word, question, discourse, 3840.
Spell, *ger.* to spell, 630; Spellis, *pr. s.* spells, tells, 4691; Spellis, *pr. pl.* say proverbially, 4397.
Spelonk, *s.* cave, den, cavern, 5392. See Gloss. to P. Plowman.
Spend, *ger.* to destroy, consume, kill, 2458; Spends, *pr. pl.* spend, give, 5467.
Spene, *s.* space (lit. span), 4162. See *Spenne* in Glos. to Gawayne.
Spere, spear, 651, 1218, 1226, 1318; (Sper), 793; Speris (Speres), *pl.* 786; (Sperez), 790.
(Sperete), *s.* spirit, 2178.
Sperid, *pt. s.* speared, pierced with a spear, 3649.

Speris, *pr. s.* shuts, 5545; shuts up, 5494; *pr. pl.* shut, 1466.
Sperpolid, *pt. pl.* dispersed, scattered, 4162. See *Sparpil* in Halliwell.
Spetous, *adj.* spiteful, contemptuous, 4567; Spetous (Spitous), angry, *hence* terrible, destructive, 2458.
Spices, *pl.* spices, 4724, 5427.
Spill, *ger.* to kill, 3190; (Spyll), 2663; Spillis (Spyllez), *pr. s.* kills, 1318; Spillen, *pr. pl.* spill, shed, 3060; Spill, die, 3798; Spille, *subj. pr. s.* 1 *p.* kill, 5346; Spilt (Spilten), *pt. pl.* spilt, scattered, 1419; Spilt, *pp.* overthrown, 4162.
Spire, *ger.* to ask, enquire, 2178; Spirid, *pt. s.* asked, 3840; Spird, 237. A.S. *spyrian.*
Spirris (Sparres), *pr. s.* spurs, 1226.
Spise, *v.* despise, 3533; Spises (Dispysys), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* despisest, 2746; Spised, *pt. s.* despised, 4567.
Spitid, *pt. s.* despised, 2346. *Short for* Despitid.
Spittis (Spittes), *pr. s.* spits, 745.
Spittyng (Spyttyng), *s.* spitting, 743.
Splene, *s.* spleen, 5054.
Spoilis, *pr. s.* divests, unclothes, 4962; Spoiles, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* despoil, rob, 4419.
Spokin (Spokyn), *pp.* spoken, 745; Spoken, 243, 298.
Spon[ges], *pl.* sponges, 5467.
Sporne, *v.* spurn, contemn, 3533.
Spouse, *s.* wife, 2677, 3315, 5217.
Sprede, *v.* spread, 1884; (Spredes), *pr. s.* 1514.
Sprengis (Sprynges), *pr. s.* springs, 931.
Sprent, *pp.* sprinkled, 743. Pp. of M.E. *sprengen.*
(Sprenten), *pr. pl.* fly out, fly forward, 786. *Sprenten*, prosilire; Stratmann.
Sprete, *s.* spirit, 3318, 4779, 5000, 5320; (Spirit), 971. See Sprite.
Spring, *v.* spring, 1884; Springis, *pr. s.* springs, 1318; arises, 2044; rises, 1505; Springe, *pr. pl.* grow up, 4769; Sprong, *pt. s.* has spread abroad, 5111; arose, 2044; Sprongen, *pp.*; Of sprongen, sprung from, 4213.
Sprite, *s.* spirit, mind, 5054; Sprites, spirits, 58, 5392.
Sprotis (Sprotes), *pl.* splinters, 790. Icel. *sproti*, twig, stick, rod.
Sprygaldis (Springaltez), *pl.* catapults, engines for shooting heavy missiles, 1419. Miswritten for *spryngaldis.* See *springal* in Halliwell.
Spurnes, *pr. s.* thrusts, 786; Spurned, *pt. pl.* kicked, 3898.
Spynnes, *pr. s. refl.* goes swiftly, 3033. Cf. "to go at a *spinning* pace."
Spyse (Spysyn), *pr. pl.* despise, 2931. *Short for* Despyse.
Spyte (Spite), spite, 745. *Short for* Despite.
(Stable), *s.* stable, 755*, 758*.
Stable (Stabyll), *adj.* stable, 3259.
Stable (Stabill), *ger.* to make stable, to build up firmly, 1367; *v.* fix, 1091; Stablis, *pr. s.* settles, 4631.
Stad, *pp.* placed, 465; beset, 499. Icel. *staddr*, placed.
(Staddes with), *pr. s.* ponders, resolves, settles within himself, 2960. Cf. Icel. *steðja*, to fix, appoint, resolve; pp. *staddr.* But probably a false reading.
Staffe, *s.* round or rung of a ladder, 1438; Stafe (Staffe), staff of a sling, 1444.
Staffull, *adj.* quite full, 1543, 4897.
Stagis, *pl.* floors, stories of a building, 5265; rows of windows above one another, 4897.
Staire (Stare), *s.* stair, i. e. ladder, 1438.
Staire, *adj.* steep, sheer, 4828. A Yorkshireman told me that the ascent of Ingleborough from the West was 'a *steer* clim.' And so it is. See *stayre* in Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
Stairis, *pr. s.* ascends, 4834.
(Stakez), *pr. s.* staggers, 845. See below.
Stakirs, *pr. s.* staggers, 845. Icel. *stakra*, to stagger.
Stallid, *pt. pl.* placed, 195; Stall, *imp. pl.* 1 *p.* let us install, place, 589.

Stallis, *pl.* stalls, choir-seats, 4543. (Still common.)
Stalworthe, *adj.* stalwart, strong, 3017; Stalword, 3937.
Stalworthly, *adv.* stalwartly, valiantly, 1149; (Stalwartly), 2625; (Stalwortly), stoutly, 745*.
Stamping (Stampyng), *s.* stamping, 781.
Stampis, *pr. s.* stamps, pounds, 409.
Stand-dede, *for* Stan-dede, *adj.* stone-dead, dead as a stone, 4845.
Stand-quile, *s.* instant; *prob. an error for* Stond-while = Stound-while, the period of an hour, short-time, 4186.
Stande, *v.* stand, 636, 1013; Stand, 1322; Standis (Standez), *pr. s.* stands, 861; Stand (Standes), *pr. s. subj.* stands, lasts, 2255; Standis (Standes), *pr. pl.* stand, 2165; Standen, *pp.* stood, 5585; Stand, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* stand, be, 5186.
Stane, stone, 192, 263, 1127, 1136; Stanes, *pl.* stones, 1300, 1415, 2227; Stanys, 284, 566; Stanes, stones, gems, 483, 804, 1534, 3334; (Stanez), gems, 1074, 1662.
Stanecast, *s.* stonecast, stone's throw, 3614.
Staned, *adj.* built with stones, 4352.
Stank, *s.* pool; Vp þe stank, upon the pool, beside the pool, 3918.
Staplis, *pl.* staples, 1081.
Starid, *pt. s.* stared, 263; Stared, *pt. pl.* glittered, 3796; Starand, *part. pres.* shining, gleaming, 804, 1534, 2880, 3615, 5286, 5396. See Prompt. Parv. See Sterind.
(Startyn), *pr. pl.* leap, 778.
State, *s.* state, kind, 5646.
Statour, stature, 667; Statoure (Stature), 1702.
Statute, *s.* statue, 5641. Lat. *statua.*
Staues, *pl.* rounds, steps of a ladder, 2481.
Staunke, *s.* stank, tank, reservoir, pool, 3854, 3923.
Stayrand, *pres. part.* climbing, mounting, *hence*, advancing, 3923. "*Staree*, to go up and down as it were over steps and stairs; *Devon.*"; Halliwell. And see Staire.
Stedd, *v.* place, 3977. From *stede*, sb.
Stede, place, 195, 465, 589, 1069, 1091, 1574; stead, position of responsibility, 1013; stead, 5585; In stede, in good stead, 2165; Stedis (Stedes), *pl.* places, 1495; Steds (Stedes), 2884.
Stede, *s.* steed, horse, 930, 1229, 5594; Stedis, *pl.* 1251; (Stedes), 781, 785.
Stedill, *v.* stand still, 3977. Cf. prov. E. *steddle*, to make steady (Halliwell).
Stee (Stegh), *s.* ladder, 2481. "*Stee*, a ladder, *North*;" Halliwell.
Stekis, *pr. s.* fastens, 5485; (Stekys), sticks, is fastened, 683; Steke, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* shut, close, 2139. See *steken* in Stratmann.
Stele, *s.* steel, 788, 3374; armour, 1378.
Stele-bowe, *s.* stirrup, 778.
Stele-grauyn, *adj.* steel-engraven, 284.
Stelid, *adj* steeled, hardened; Welestelid, well hardened, 3897.
Stelis, *pr. s.* gives stealthily, 5385; (Stelez), goes quietly, 2638.
Stem, *v.* aim, attempt, 2480. Icel. *stefna*, *stemna*, to aim at, &c.
Stemes (Stempmys), *pr. s.* speaks (to himself), 2960; Stemes, 5301. In l. 5301 read—'þan stemes he with, þe stoute king,' i. e. then he, the stout king, considers with himself. Icel. *stefna*, *stemma*, to summon, A.S. *stefnian*; A.S. *stefn*, *stemn*, the voice. So in Gawayn and the Grene Knight, *stemmed* = considered, pondered, not stopped, as given in the Glossary; i. e. it is allied to Icel. *stefna*, not to Icel. *stemma*, to obstruct.
Step, 4845. Perhaps *To step* = in a steep direction downwards, i. e. headlong. See Stepe.
Stepe, *adj.* steep, 4828.
Steppis (Steppys), *pr. s.* steps, 2481; Stepis (Steppyn, *for which MS. wrongly* Spettyn), *pr. pl.* step, climb, 1437.
Stere (Stirre), *v.* stir, 2809; Steris, *pr. s.* stirs, moves, 5075;

animates, encourages, 5046; (Steryn), *pr. pl. refl.* bestir themselves, 2625; Sterid, *pt. pl. refl.* bestirred themselves, 2625; Sterid, *pp.* stirred, excited, 4256.
Stere, *ger.* to manage, control, 5363.
Stereps, *pl.* stirrups, 3615. See Sterops.
Sterind, *pres. part.* shining, gleaming, 5385. See Starid.
Stering, *s.* stirring, 781.
(Sterne), *adj.* stern, strong, 1131. See Steryn.
Sterne, *s.* star, 678, 683, 703; Sternes, *pl.* 127, 282, 604, &c.; Sternys, 1993; (Sternez), 3224. Icel. *stjarna.*
Sternes, *pl.* the stars (but prob. an error for *stours*, i. e. battles), 3495. See above.
(Sternly), *adv.* sternly, 840*.
(Sterops), *pl.* stirrups, 840*; (Steropes), 792*.
Sterres, *pl.* stars, 4372. See Sterne.
Stertes, *pr. s.* starts, springs, 778; Stert, *pt. s.* started, p. 283, l. 140.
Steryn, *adj.* stern, fierce, 611, 4256; (Sterne), 1386.
Steuen, *s.* voice, 252, 1131; (Stevyn), 2254; Steuyn, 611, 1831; noise, 1386; (Steuen), noise, 1251.
Steȝid, *pt. pl.* mounted, 2194.
Sticking (Stykkyng), *s.* stabbing, 2623.
Sties (Styes), *pl.* ladders, 1437. See Stee.
Stiffe, *adj.* harsh, strong, 611, 1149, 2139; valiant, 4758; (Styffe), stern, 2298; stubborn, 1321; Stife (Styffe), *adj.* unyielding, 1015; (Styff), strong, 2589, 3374.
Stifly (Styfly), *adv.* strongly, 1081.
Stiggis, *pr. s.* starts, feels abashed, 5301. Cf. Icel. *styggja*, to shun; used reflexively, to become shy, to start.
(Stighillys), *pr. s.* appoints, assigns, 755*. *Put for* Stightillys; see *styȝtle* in Gloss. to Sir Gawayn, and see Stiȝtill.
Stike (Steke), *s.* stick, bit, piece, fragment, 1311.
Stike (Steke), *v.* stick fast, 1438.
Stikill, *adj.* piercing (?), 4186.
Stile, *s.* style, title, 2693; (Style), 2754 (where supply *in*, as in the Dublin MS.).
Still, *adj.* still, 263.
Still (Stilly), *adv.* silently, 2032.
Stilly (Stylly), *adv.* stilly, silently, 1136.
Stingis, *pr. s.* vexes, 667.
Stinkand, *pres. part.* stinking, 4838.
Stinke, *s.* stink, 4840.
Stint, *pp.* stayed, stopped, 4186. See Styntis.
Stire (Stere), *v.* stir, 1091; Stirs (Stirrez), *pr. s. refl.* moves, 1327.
Stith, *adj.* stiff, strong, 1069, 5461; Stithe, severe, 2050; stout, 1327; great, loud, 1251; strong, well-defended, 4352.
Stithest, *adj. superl.* strongest, 5265.
Stithli (Styfly), *adv.* severely, 2429.
Stiȝe, *pt. s.* ascended, 3467.
Stiȝt, *pp.* set (lit. disposed), 4897; set, stuck, 5385; (Stight), set, 1543; (Styght), with *in*, disposed, ordered, *hence* written, 2693. A.S. *stihtan*, to dispose. See below.
Stiȝthed, *pt. pl.* set firmly, 195. *Put for* Stiȝted. See above.
Stiȝtill, *ger.* to order, govern, 589; Stiȝtill, *pr. s. imper.* may (He) dispose of, 3467; Stiȝtild, *pp.* set, placed, 5396; made, 5265; (Stiȝlet), established, 2298.
Stode, *pt. s.* stood, 1136; (Stodyn), *pt. pl.* 2271.
Stody (Study), *v.* take thought, 2480; Stody, 2 *pr. pl.* study, gaze intently, 683.
Stody, study, thought, 263.
Stoken, *pp.* stuck, fastened, 1081, 2201. Pp. of *steken.*
Stolis (Stolez), *pl.* stoles, 1581.
Stollen, *pp.* stolen, 465.
Stomake, *s.* stomach, 4436.
Stomling (Stomblyng), *s.* stumbling, 2623.
Stonaid, *pt. s.* astonished, dismayed, 2589; Stonayd, astonished, 611; (Stoned), *pt. pl.* were astonished, 2589.
Stonde, *s.* hour, 2831; time, 1468; short time, 655, 3470; (Stounde), short time, 2625; (Stound), moment, 1327.
Stondis (Stoundis), *pl.* pains, 2809. "*Stound*, to ache, to smart with pain, *North*;" Halliwell.
Stonen (Stonon), *adj.* stone, made of stone, 1574.
(Stones), *pl.* gems, 1889.
(Stonndes), *pr. s.* stands, 681.
Stoppis, *pr. s.* stops, walls up, 5496; stops up, 4073; (Stoppys), stops, 970.
Storbis, *pr. s.* disturbs, troubles, 667; Storbet, *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 3605. *Short for* Distorbis, Distorbet.
Store, *adj.* strong, great, large, huge, 1367, 1534, 2165, 3937; (Store), 745*; (Sture), 1741, 2050, 3017; Store ben, *for* Store-baned, i. e. strong of bone (the Dublin MS. *has* Sture-baned), 1702. Icel. *stórr.*
Store, *s.* story, 3854, 4828.
Store, 1 *pr. pl.* (we) store up, 4352.
Story, *s.* story, tale, 2050.
Stott, *s.* ox, 4754; Stottis, *pl.* oxen, 4267. See Halliwell.
Stounde, *s.* short time, 3962, 5198; moment, 252, 453; Stound, 2408, 5063; Stounde (Stound), 1311; Stoundis, *pl.* times, occasions, 3622. A.S. *stund.*
Stourbed (Stourblett), *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 934. See Storbis, Strublid.
Stoure, *s.* agitation, 5046; conflict, battle, tumult of battle, 452, 499, 1251, 1332, 1415, 2050, 2832; Stoure (Stowre), shock of battle, 1015; Stoure, troop, host, battalion, army, 785, 3017, 3501, 3977; Stour, host, 3923; army, 3597, 5075; Stouris, *pl.* battles, 5585; Stoures, *pl.* armies, 5485. O.F. *estour.*
Stoure, *s.* post (to support the tester above), 5646 (where for *wall* read *was*); (Stoure), the round of a ladder. "*Stour*, the round of a ladder;" Halliwell. Icel. *staurr*, a pole, post.
Stoute, *adj.* stout, strong, 195, 284; (Stout), bold, 2429.
Stoutly, *adv.* proudly, 1495; deeply, 279.
Stra, *s.* the value of a straw, 2165.
Strad (Strode), *pt. s.* strode; Strad vp himselfe, mounted, 2880.
Straite, *adj.* narrow, 5485.
Strake (Stroke), *pt. s.* struck (up), resounded, 1386 (in the Dublin MS. read *vp* for *vpon*); Strakid (Stroken), *pp.* plighted, lit. struck, 3192.
(Strakez), *pr. s.* strokes, 784*.
Strakid (Straked), *pt. pl.* (they) sounded, blew, 1386. "*Stroke*, a blast of a horn, a term formerly used by hunters;" Halliwell. Hence the verb.
Strakis (Strakez), *pl.* strokes, blows, 1015.
Strama (Struma), *proper name*, 2884.
Strande, *s.* shore, 3066; Strandis, *pl.* banks, 3814; Strands, banks, 5461; Strandis, *pl.* streams, 4202, 5280, 5507. The latter sense is not uncommon. See Jamieson.
(Stranes owt), *pr. s.* stretches out, 840*. E. *strain.* See Strenys.
Strange, *adj.* strong, 1149, 3017; Strang, 2381.
(Strange), *adj.* strange, 826*.
Strangild, *pp.* strangled, 4758, 5577.
Strasageras (Strasagera), Strasagoras, 2298; Strasagera, 2429; Strasagirs (Strasagera), 2381.
Straungers, *pl.* strangers, 2688.
Strayned, *pp.* constrained, 3549.
Straȝt (Straughten), *pt. pl.* stretched, radiated, 1543; Straȝt, *pp.* stretched, raised, elevated, 3077.
Straȝtill, *adj.* (probably) far-stretching, i. e. long, lengthy, 4838.
Streke, *adv.* straight, 3854.
Streken, *pp.* stricken, 3077; set, 3224.
Strekilland, *pres. part.* sprinkling (it); *but the reading* Strenklett, i. e. sprinkled, *is far better;* 1534. See Strenkild.
Strekis (Straughit), *pr. s.* stretches, 1953; Strekis, *pr. pl.* extend, 5063.
Streme, *s.* stream, 1432, 1953, 1995, 2032; Stremes, *pl.* streams, 1056; (Stremez), 1049; Stremys, 75.
Stremed, *pt. pl.* gleamed, 5286;

Stremand, *pres. part.* streaming, flashing; Ai stremand, continually, flashing, 3797.
Strenkild, *pp.* sprinkled, thickly covered, 3676; Strengkyllyd, 3224. See *Strenkle* in Halliwell.
Strenth, strength, 662, 1702; Strenthe (Strenth), 1741, 1983, 2139, 2194; Stre[n]the (Strenthe), strength, 2468; (Strenthez, *pl.*), 1013, 1824; Strenthe, castle, stronghold, fort, 5265; (Strenth), 1367; Strenth, 1311; Strenthis, *pl.* forces, powers, 3296, 3716; (Strennthes), 1270; Strenthis, forts, 4352.
Strenthid, *pt. s.* strengthened, 499.
(Strenys), *pr. s.* strains, stretches out, 792*. See Stranes, Streyne.
Stretis (Stretes), *pl.* streets, 1475, 1495, 1514.
Streyne (Strene), *v.* strain, exert, 2809; Streyned (Strenyd), *pp.* constrained, compelled, 3121. See Halliwell.
Streȝt, *adj.* straight; Streȝt on, straight upon, near, 1574.
Streȝt, *adv.* straight, 452, 3066; (Streght), 1321, 1995; Streȝt, straightway, 4758; (Streȝt vp), 792*.
Streȝt him (Straght hym), *pt. s.* directed himself, went, goes, 3206.
Streȝtis, *pr. s.* marches, 2032.
Stridis, *pr. s.* strides, 778; (Striden), *pr. pl.* 778.
Strike, *ger.* to strike, 843; Strikis, *pr. s.* strikes, 452, 804; clashes, 785; (Strikez), strikes, 1321; hits, 1069; (Striken), *pr. pl.* strike, 804; clash, 785; Striken (Strykken), *pp.* stricken, i. e. advanced in years, 1001.
Strinds, *pl.* sons, children, 5104. A.S. *strýnd*, progeny.
(Strippyng), *s.* stripping, uncasing, 781.
(Strode), *pt. pl.* strode, went, 2194.
Stroubid, *pp.* troubled (lit. disturbed), 3818; (Stourbed), 2855. See Stourbed.
Strowid, *pp.* strewn, 4543.
Stroyes, *pr. s.* destroys, 4840; Stroyed (Stroyde), *pp.* wasted, 1917.
Strubled (Stroblet), *pp.* troubled, 856. Cf. Storbis.
Struma, *prop. name of a river*, 1953, 1995, 2032, 2064, 3206.
Stryfe, 1 *pr. pl. subj.* strive, 5356. See Stryue.
Strykis, *pr. pl.* strike; go swiftly; Strykis vp, dart aloft, 1415; (Strykyn), *pp.* stricken, set, 3224; advanced, gone, 826*.
Stryue, *ger.* to strive, contend, 3758, 4006.
Stryuys, *pl.* strivings, conflicts, 4251.
Stude, *pt. s.* stood, 4754; (Stode), stood, i. e. was, 2408; Stude, *pt. pl.* stood, 279.
Studis (Stodes), *pr. s.* studies, considers, 2960.
(Stuffe), *s.* stuff, gear, 2980*.
Stuffis, 2 *pr. pl.* stuff full, 4436.
Stullis, *pl.* great pieces, 4436. "*Stull*, luncheon, great piece of bread, cheese, or other eatable; *Essex.*" —Halliwell.
Stumbils (Stombles), *pr. s.* stumbles, 845.
Sturbid, *pp.* disturbed, troubled, 513, 1341. See Stourbed.
Sturte, *s.* impetuosity, swift attack, 3758.
Sturten, *adj.* impetuous, 3758; quarrelsome, 4257.
Stuynes, *pr. s.* is astounded, is amazed, 2960. Cf. "*stoin'd*, astounded;" Halliwell.
Stye, *s.* path, 4834; Styes, *pl.* 5063.
(Styff), *adj.* strong, 1327; severe, 2050; (Styf), strong, great, 745*, 1251; Styffe, strong, 1069, 2165.
Styntis, *pr. s.* stops, ceases, 5046; (Styntyd), *pt. s.* halted, 826*. See Stint.
Stythe, *adj.* brave, stout, bold, 3605. A.S. *stíð*.
Subiet (Seget), *s.* subject, 1727; Subiectis, *pl.* subjects, 4245. (The fourth *subiectis* should be *subiect*; see the note to l. 4246, p. 311.)
Successoure, *s.* successor, 4286.
Suche, such, 711; (Such), 720.
Sudanly (Sodonly), suddenly, 3198.

Sued, *pt. pl.* followed, 3598.
Suffice, *pr. s. subj.* may suffice, 3196.
Sufficiant, *s.* sufficient, 4396.
Suffire (Suffre), *v.* suffer, endure, 1011; Suffire, allow (me), put up with (me), 3465; Suffire (Suffre), *ger.* to endure, hold out, 2698; Suffirs, *pr. s.* suffers, undergoes, 512, 530; (Suffred), 1146; (Sufers), 2052; Suffirs, 2 *pr. s.* sufferest, permittest (to live), 4298; Suffir (Sofre), *pr. s. subj.* undergo, 1858; Suffire (Suffre), 2 *pr. s. subj.* suffer, 1974; Sufird, *pt. s.* suffered, 5554; Suffird (Suffred), *pt. pl.* suffered, 1699; Suffirand, *pres. part.* suffering, temperate, 4266; Suffird (Sofferd), *pp.* 2160; (Sufferd), permitted, 892.
Suget (Sogett), *s.* subject, 863, 918; Suggets, *pl.* subjects, men under control, 4664.
Suget (Sogett), *adj.* subject, 908.
Suld, 1 *pt. s.* should, 273, 664; *pt. s.* 100, 118, 119, &c.; Sulde (Suld), 1515; Suld, *pt. pl.* 141, 618, 908; Suld (Suldyn), should do, 1696.
Sullepe, *adj.* sole, 4305. *Put for* Surlepe.
Sum, some, 2, 6, 8, 11, 12, &c.; *dat.* to some, 4; (Some), 1330; (Som), 1413; Summe (Soume), 1696.
Sumquat (Somqwatt), somewhat, 679.
Sum-quile, *adv.* formerly, 3136; Sum-quyle (Some-while), somewhile, 2994.
Sum time; In sum (som) time, at one time, 2361.
(Sun), sun, 1870.
Sundres; Be sundres, separately, severally, 3909.
Superfluyte, superfluity, 4277.
Supose, *v.* suppose, 577: Supose, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* suppose, 586; (Suppose), 892, 1640; Suppose, 1806; Supposez, 2 *pr. s.* dost suppose, 842*; Supposis (Supposes), expectest, 1776; (Supposye), 1 *pr. pl.* 1855; Suposid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* formed my opinion, 2578; Supposed (Supposyd), *pt. s.* 2073; Supposand, *part pres.* supposing, 204.
Supowell, *s.* support, extraneous aid, 4300. See *Suppoelle* in Halliwell.
Suppe, *pr. s. subj.* 1 *p.* sup, drink, 3805.
Supplyed, *pt. pl.* supplicated, 163.
Supposez, 2 *pr. s.* supposest, 842*. See Supose.
Suprise (Sussprise), *v.* surprise, take by surprise, 2390.
Surcote, *s.* surcoat, 4339.
Sure, *adj.* sure, 2010.
Sure, *adv.* bitterly (lit. sourly), 5348. See Sowe.
(Sured), *pp.* promised, 2633.
Surely, *adv.* surely, 475, 1833; (Seurly), 1986.
Surement, *s.* assurance, 2748.
Surfete, *s.* surfeit, 4439; Surfet, surfeiting, gluttony, 4277, 4293.
Surgens, *pl.* surgeons, 3132.
Surmontes, *pr. pl.* surpass, 4449; Surmountid (Sirmountyd), *pt. s.* overcame, 2361.
Surples, *pl.* surplices, 1550.
Surquidry, *s.* pride, arrogance, presumption, 4293; Surquitry, 4254, 4561; (Surqidry), 2736; (Surquydry), 3295.
Surre, Syria, 5666; Surry, 2760; Surre (Surry), 3143.
Sustenance (*error for* Substance, *as in the* Dublin MS.), 3391.
Sustene, *v.* sustain, 3805; Sustenes, *pr. s.* sustains, 2834; Sustaynes, *pr. pl.* sustain, 1749.
Sustinance, *s.* sustenance, 4269.
Susys, Susa, 2847, 2866, 3073; Sussys, 3512; (Susys), 3207; Susses, 3109.
Sute, *s.* suit, set, same kind, 2929.
Suth (Sothe); With a suth, truly, 1846.
Suthely (Sothly), *adv.* truly, 1962.
Swa, *adv.* so, 346. See Sa.
Swalow, *s.* swallow, throat, 4507.
Swanes, *pl.* swans, 4276.
Swappis (Swappys), *pr. s.* strikes, smites, 957; (Swappez), 1232; (Swappyn), *pr. pl.* cast, 1299.
Sware, *v.* answer, 5007; Swaris, *pr. s.* answers, 2183, 2523; Swares, 674; Swaris (Sweres), 2273; (Swerez), 1621; (Aunswars), 2798; Swaris, *pr. s.* 2 *p.*

answerest, 5331; Sware, *pr. pl.* answer, 2656; Sware, *pr. s. subj.* may answer, should answer, 750; Swarid, *pt. pl.* answered, 4193; Sward, 2069.
Sware, *s.* answer, 1184, 4999, 5019, 760*.
(Sware), *pt. pl.* swore, declared, 2069.
Swart, *adj.* swarthy, 3969.
Swayfe (Swaffe), *s.* blow, 806. Cf. E. *sway*. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
Sweling, *s.* squealing, 4112. Here *sw* = *squ*.
Swelle, *ger.* to swell, fill up, 4276; Swellis (Swellez), *pr. s.* swells, 2701.
Swellis, *pr. s.* burns up, consumes (said of fire), 4181. A.S. *swélan*. Read *swelis*.
Swelme, *s.* heat, glow, fury, 750. See Glos. to Allit. Poems.
Sweltid, *pp.* rendered faint, 3790. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
Swemyle, *pr. pl.* feel dizzy or faint (with sorrow), 156. Cf. prov. E. *sweem*, to swoon; Icel. *svimra*, to be giddy.
Swepe, signification (lit. sweep), 248.
Swerd (Swerde), sword, 957, 1232; Swerde, 1325, 1402; Swerdis, *pl.* swords, 3193; (Swerdes), 801; (Swerdez), 1399.
Swere, *ger.* to swear, 1186; Swere, 1 *pr. s.* swear, 754; call to witness, 3424; Sweren, *pr. pl.* swear, swear obedience, 2104.
Swete, *adj.* sweet, 362; good, 5325.
Swete, sweet one, darling, 2826.
Swete, *s.* sweat, great heat, 3790; blood, life, 3068. Cf. A.S. *swát*, sweat, blood.
Swete, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* sweat, 5325.
Swettir, *adj. comp.* sweeter, 3855.
Sweuyn, *s.* dream, 248, 325, 353, 417, 1354. A.S. *swefn*.
Swey, *pr. pl.* sway, force, 3970; (Sweyd), *pt. pl.* swayed, fell, 2057.
Swezand, *pres. part.* resounding, 5019. A.S. *swégan*.
Swiere, *s.* esquire, personage (used with reference to Bacchus), 4507; Swiers, *pl.* esquires, 156, 4108; Swiars (Swyers), 1184.
Swiftly, *adv.* quickly, 1184, 1851; (Swyftly), 2069.
Swike, *v.* deceive, 4999. A.S. *swícan*.
Swilke, *adj.* such, 584.
Swire, *s.* throat, gullet, 4507. A.S. *swíra*. See Swyre.
Swollen, *pp.* swollen, 3790.
(Swone), *s.* swoon, 734*.
Swouned, *pt. pl.* swooned, 156.
Swoze, *s.* sound, soughing noise, 5019. A.S. *swógan*, verb.
Swozing, *s.* soughing, 4385. See above.
Swyftnes, swiftness, hastiness, 1017.
Swym, *v.* swim, 5505; Swymme, *ger.* 3841.
Swyne, *pl.* swine, 4108. See note.
Swyng, *s.* swing, 1232.
Swyngis (Swyngez), *pr. s.* swings, 957; (Swynnges), 806.
Swyre (Shwyre), *s.* neck, 779. See Swire.
Swyth, *adv.* quickly, 248, 508, 1410, 1453, 2069, 3128, 4108; soon, 1304, 2310; (Swyth), greatly, 1265; Swythe, *adv.* greatly, 1261; soon, 1393; immediately, 1117; (Swithe), quickly, 761, 1717; (Swith), speedily, soon, 998, 1618; strongly, mightily, 806; (Swyth), quickly, 706; Swyth (Swythe), 1379.
(Swythly), *adv.* quickly, 1184.
Syb, *adj.* near akin; Sib men, kinsmen, 617; Sybb, akin, 397. See Sibbe.
Sychim, *prop. name*, 89.
Sycile (Secyll), Sicily, 2487. See Sysyll.
Syde, *s.* side, part, 1052, 1200, 1388, 3978; quarter, 86; coast, 1142; Syd (Sydes), 2892; Sydis, *s. pl.* sides, 348. See Side.
Sydoyne (Sydone), Sidon, 1142.
Syeze, *ger.* to sink, fail, 716. A.S. *sígan*.
Sygnes, *s. pl.* signs, 32, 250, 570; (Signes), ensigns, banners, 946. See Signes.
Sygnyfys, *pr. s.* signifies, 443; Sygnified, *pt. s.* signified, 515.
(Syke), such, 1968.
Sylis, *pr. s.* goes, 698; Sylez, *pr. pl.* go, 1555; (Syland), *pres. pt.* dropping, 733*; going, 698. See Silis. "*Sile*, to sink, drop, flow;" Halliwell. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
Sylours (Silours), *pl.* ceilings, canopies, 1519. See Silloure.
Sylus, *error for* Nylus, the Nile, 2598. See the note.
Symolacries, *pl.* similitudes, images, figures, 4460; Symolacres, statues, 3685.
Sympill, *adj.* simple, innocent, humble, 3083; Sympull, weak, 3550. See Simpill.
Syn, *conj.* since, seeing that, 1874; (Sen), 1619.
Synagoge, synagogue, temple, 1058; Synagog (Sinagoge), 2182. See Sinagoges.
Synagyns, *pl.* monsters (?), alluding to the griffins, 5452. The true meaning is quite uncertain.
Synches (Lat. Thinthisus), 5401.
Syne, *adv.* since, 1008; after that, afterwards, 900, 1119, 1137, 1633, 2578; next, 4886, 806*; afterwards, continually, 4217.
Synfull, *adj.* sinful, 3663.
Synge, *v.* singe, burn, 5206.
Synnars, *pl.* sinners, 4417.
Synned, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* thou sinnedst, 875.
Synnys, *pl.* sins, 4403.
Sypirs, *s.* cypress (wood), 3684. See Sipris.
Syraphis, Serapis, 167, 183; Syraphas (Serapys), 1097.
Syre, sire, lord, 1219; sir, 214; father, 701; Syre, *gen. sing.* sire's, father's, 754; Syris, *pl.* chiefs, 790; lords, 4432. See Sire.
Syre, Syria, 89. See Surre.
Syres, *a country*, 5666.
Sysed, *pt. s.* lit. assised, *hence* constituted, 4654. See note, p. 312.
Sysyll, Sicily, 5666. See Sycile.
Syte, *s.* grief, 182; sorrow, pain, 546. Cf. Icel. *sút*, grief; *sýta*, to wail.
Sythe-bladis, *pl.* scythe-blades, 3023.
Sythen (MS. cythen), *adv.* afterwards, 411.
Sythis, *pl.* scythes, 3058. See Sithe.

Sythis, *pl.* times; Oft sythis (Oft sythez), oftentimes, 1203.
Sytt, *ger.* to sit, 627; to sit down, 235; to dwell, 4024; Syttis, *pr. s.* sits, 47, 479, 977; (Syttes), 902; Syttis, *pr. s. impers.* it befits, 3359, 5119; Sytt (Sitt), *pr. s. subj. impers.* befit, become, 862; Syttand, *pres. pt.* sitting, 548. See Sitt.

Taa; þe taa = þet aa, that one, the one, 3978. See Tane.
Taa, *s.* toe, 3365. (The Dublin MS. has *toes*.)
Tabernacle, *s.* shrine, 3688 (see the note); tabernacle, 5593, 5645.
Table, table, 833, 1830; tablet, 274; Tablis (Tables), *pl.* tables, 853; tablets, 639; (Tabels), tablets, 1568.
Taburs (Taburnes), *pl.* tabors, 1385.
Tacchis, *pr. s.* fixes, sets, 5065; Taches, *pr. pl.* pierce, 2622; Tachid, *pp.* attached, fastened, 319; Tacchid, *pp.* fixed, fastened, set, 5573; set, 4970; (Tachyng), *pres. pt.* piercing, 2622. Cf. Prov. E. *tack*, a slight blow; to attack, to fasten to (Halliwell); and see Glos. to Troy-book.
Tafeta (Taffata), taffety, a sort of thin silk, 1515.
Tailis, *pl.* tails, 5438.
Taite, *s.* joy, exultation, 1208; play, game, lit. joy, 3979. Icel. *teiti*, joy, play.
Take, *ger.* to take, 1197, 2149; *v.* 360, 1812; Takis, *pr. s.* takes, 55, 353, 410; (Takes), 713, 749, 1829; captures, 2148; gives, 3154; (Takez), takes, 1142, 1181; Takis (Takys), gives, 2749; delivers, 2026; (Takez vpp), *pr. pl.* take up, plight, 760; Taken (Token), 1 *pt. pl.* took, received, 2091; Take (Takes), *imp. pl.* seize, 1922.
Taken (Token), *s.* token; To taken, as a token, by way of indication, 2109; Takens, *pl.* tokens, signs, 283, 5608; peculiarities, 4448.
Takyng, *s.* taking, capture, 2123; (Takyng), taking, 1344; Takynge, 1835.

Tald, 1 *pt. s.* told (of), 3829; *pt. s.* 200, 353, 2123; *pt. pl.* 906; *pp.* 190, 272, 693.
Tale, *s.* tale, reckoning, number, 3022, 4879, 5127; account, 609; tale, story, 1448, 1886, 5175; tale (*or perhaps* account), 888; Be tale, in number, by tale, 2213; Talis, *pl.* tales, 190; accounts, 283.
Talent, *for* Talentes (Talentes), *pl.* talents, 1666; talents, large sums of money, 3154.
Talkis, *pr. s.* talks, says, 267, 660; (Talkez), 752; (Talkys), 1997.
Taloghid, *pp.* tallowed, 4208.
Talons, *pl.* talons, 5454.
Tamed (Tamyd), *pt. pl.* pierced, lit. broached, 2622. *Short for* Atamed.
Tane, *pp.* taken, 2582, 3491; oppressed, 3825; gone, 1289; betaken, 463.
Tane, *adj.* the one (*in phr.* þe tane), 606, 4069. See Taa.
Tangid, *pp.* stung, 3637, 3886, 4798. Cf. prov. E. *tanging-nadder* (lit. stinging adder), the large dragon-fly.
Tarbyn, *Lat.* Thirbei, 5500.
Tare (Taure), mount Taurus, 2109.
Targetis (Targettes), *pl.* shields, 2622.
Tarrayn (Tartaren), *short for* Tartaryn, made of Tartary stuff, 1547. See below.
Tars, *s.* silk of Tartary, 1515, 4673. *Also called* Tartaryn.
Tartary, 5665.
Tartaryns, *pl.* Tartars, 5484.
Tary, *v.* delay, 1448; Taryed, *pt. s. subj.* would delay, 1261.
Tas, *pr. s.* takes, 4886; (Takys), 1644, 2970; (Takes), 1666; Tas, *imp. pl.* go, betake you, 3719. See Take.
Tasse, Tharsus (?), 5676.
Tastis, *pr. s.* tastes, 1997; (Tastez), 2074.
Taunde, *s.* tawney-colour, dark dye, 4335. For *taune* (with excrescent *d*); cf. O.F. *tane*, *tanne*, tawney.
Tebies, *pl.* (Tebettes), Thebans, 2427.
Tebet (Tebe), Thebes, 2198; Tebis (Tebet), *gen.* of Thebes, 2228.
Teche, *v.* teach, tell, 165; Teches, *pr. s.* 1171.
Teche, *adj.* touchy, quarrelsome, ready to quarrel (*hence*, formidable), 663. See *Techy*, *Tetchy* in Halliwell.
Techis, *pl.* habits, 4390; (Teches), 787*; Tecches, 4640; faults, crimes, 4561; Land-techis, habits of our country, 4248. M.E. *tache*.
Teching, *s.* teaching, 37.
Teldid (Tyldet), *pp.* built, 1159; (Telde), 2174. From *teld*, sb., below.
Teldis, *pl.* tents, 552. A.S. *teld*.
Tell, *v.* tell, 248, 524; (Telle), 1112; Tell, *ger.* to tell, 67, 283, 515; to count, 1988; (Telle), 1164; (Telle), 1 *pr. s.* I tell, 1965; Tellis, 2 *pr. s.* tellest, 245, 366, 729; Tellis, *pr. s.* tells, 17, 35, 203, 278, 432, 437; informs us, 144; (Telles), 1613; (Tellez), 885; (Tellys), 699; Telles, *pr. pl.* tell, 903; Tellis, 1485; Tell, 296; Telle, *imp. s.* 5412; Tell, 463; Tellis, *imp. pl.* 896.
Telle, *v.* till, cultivate, 4581.
Telomew, Ptolemy, 4964, 5165, 5171, 5195, 5199.
(Tembret), *pp.* built, lit. timbered, 2110.
Temes, *pl.* instructions, rules of action, lit. themes, 2519.
Temperoure, *s.* temper, due order, 543.
Tempire, *v.* temper, refresh, 3466.
Temple, *s.* temple, 1478, 1499; (Tempyll), 1060; Templis, *pl.* temples, 522.
Ten, ten, 649.
Tend, *pp. as adj.* kindled, flaming, 4179. See *tenden* in Stratmann.
Tende, *ger.* to attend, to wait upon, 4534.
Tendire, *adj.* tender, gentle, careful, 3317.
Tene, *s.* shame, vexation, 3637, 5321; affliction, 3519; distress, 2315; sorrow, grief, 150; sorrow, loss, 3000; harm, 1978, 4405; enmity, 2427; anger, 853.
Tene, *ger.* to damage, 2228; Tened (Tenyd), *pt. s.* harmed, vexed, 1212; Tened (Tenyd), *pt. pl.* were angry, 2193; Tene, *imp. s. refl.* be angry, vex thyself, 2309.
Tenefull, *adj.* sorrowful, miserable, sad, 3149; harmful, 3907.
Tenelis (Tynkyll), *pr. pl.* play, resound (lit. tinkle), 1385.
Tenour, *s.* tenor, meaning, 4239; contents, 3566.
Tent, tent, 1829; Tentis (Tentes), *pl.* tents, 1143, 2130, 2404; Tentis, *pl.* tents, *put for* tent, *sing.*, 475.
Tent, *s.* notice, heed, 3317; attention, 4251.
Tent, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* take thou heed, pay attention, 3729.
Terand, *s.* tyrant, 4405; Terant, 5321; Terands, *pl.* tyrants, kings, 5484; (Tiraundez), rulers, 1294.
Tere, *adj.* tiresome, tedious, difficult, 150, 1404; see *tere* in Stratmann. To tere, too tedious, 4767, 4918.
(Tere), *v.* tire, 1404; Terid, *pp.* tired, 1009.
Teres, *pl.* tears, i. e. drops, 4974; tears, 733*; Terys, 154, 3238.
Tergarontes, *name of a place*, 2174.
Terme, *s.* term of life, term, while, 478, 1678, 5040; Termes, *pl.* boundaries, 4038; (Terme, *s.*), bounds, boundary, 2315.
Termyn, *v.* terminate, end, 3979; Termen (Terme), *ger.* to put an end to, 1336; Termens (Termys), *pr. s.* puts an end to, 1304; Termynd, *pt. pl.* finished, ended, put an end to, 3640; Termynd (Termyd), *pp.* ended, 2784; (Termyd), ended, 2901.
Terne, *s.* tarn, pool, 3860.
Ternen, *pr. pl.* turn; Ternen of, turn off, strip off, 4114.
Terrandry, *s.* tyranny, 4251.
Tessale, Thessaly, 5676.
Tessaloyne (Thessalon), Thessalonica, 986.
Testre, *s.* tester, head-frame of a bed, 4914.
Tetchis, *pl.* habits, 4413. See Techis.
Tethe, *pl.* teeth, 609, 4097, 4114.
Tethiest (Thethiest), *adj. superl.* bravest (?), 2198; (Tithiest), 2784. See Tithiest.

Tetragramaton, word of four letters, 1592. See the note, p. 297.
Tewid, *pp.* tawed, curried, 5139.
Texalte, *for* To exalte, p. 281, l. 73.
Text, original text, story, tale, 214, 525, 916, 1592; (Text), 741*, 1044; Textes (Texte), *pl.* the (Latin) text, 1231.
Teȝe (Tiȝt), *pt. s.* drew, went, 2174. See below.
Teȝt, *pt. s.* approached, 525, 649. See *tuhten* in Stratmann.
Þa, *pron. pl.* those, 12, 51, 73, 92, 1027, 1224; (Þo), 2232; they, 2042; (Þai), 1253, 2472.
Þaes, *pron.* those, 1667.
Þai, *pron.* they, 13, 35, 105, 149, &c.; (Þai), those, 2104.
Þai, *error for* Þar (*as in the* Dublin MS.), their, 2374; *so also in* 5458.
Þaim, *pron.* them, 928, 1117; themselves, 816, 982; *dat.* to them, 181, 202; Þaiem, 1180; (Þaime), 1210.
Þaim-selfe, *pron.* themselves, 3489; (Þaim-seluen), 1275; (Þaim-selfe), by themselves, 698.
(Þair), there, 1145.
Þaire, *poss. pron.* their, 3, 7, 14, 33, &c.; (Þair), 799, 3201.
Þam, *pron. pl.* them, 11, 61, 106, 201, 203, &c.; (Þaim), *dat.* for themselves, 759.
Þam-selfe, themselves, 660.
Þan, *adv.* then, 48, 75, 120, 352, &c.
Thankis, *pr. s.* thanks, 371; (Thankez), 2576; Thankid, *pt. s.* 1686.
Þar, *pron.* their, 150, 152, 154, 206, &c.
Þar, *adv.* there, 140, 237, &c.; where, 211, 3792; (Þair), where, 1366.
Þar as, there where, 730*.
Þar-agaynys (Þar-agayns), there beside, 1264.
Þare, *adv.* there, 201, 221, 229, 246, &c.
Thare, *pr. s.* need; þe thare, it is needful for thee, thou needest, 5377. See Thurt.
Þare, their, 2. See Þar.
Þare as (Thar as), whereas, 2430.
Þare-fore (Þarfore), *adv.* for it, 922; (Þarfore), on that account, 876.

Þare-with (Þar-with), therewith, 1890.
(Þarforne), *adv.* beforehand, 2456.
Þar-in, therein, 503, 1078, 1292.
(Tharmes), *pl.* entrails, 773*. A.S. *þearm;* Du. *darmen*, pl.
Tharne, *error for* Tharned (Tharnyd, D.), *pt. s.* needed, wanted, 2859. Thus the Ashmole MS. has *him tharned*, there needed for him; the Dublin MS. has *he tharnyd*, he needed. See below.
Þarnes, *pr. s.* lacks, 2709; Tharned, *pt. pl.* lost, 3071, 3889. See *þarnen* in Stratmann.
Þar-of, thereof, 876.
Þar-on, thereon, 832, 1129.
Þar-out, *adv.* out of it, 511; (Þar-owt), 945.
Þar-quile; see Quile.
Þar-to, *adv.* thereto, also, moreover, 760, 1872, 2371.
Þas (Þees), *pron.* those, 1278; þase, 1823, 3536; (þase), 1441.
Þat, that, 16, 17, 18, &c.; who, 5, 12, &c.; in order that, 221, &c.; With þat, thereupon, 111.
Þe, *pron.* thee, thyself, 80, 98, 292, 5313; *dat.* 253, 256; The, 1871; þe *put for* þu, thou, *voc. case*, 107.
Þe . . . þe, the . . . the, 847.
Thebes, Thebes, 2371; Thebie (Tebe), 2274; Thebea (Tebea), 2190; Theby (Tebet), 2292; Thebees (Tebe), *gen.* of Thebes, 2193.
Thebies (Tebes), *pl.* Thebans, 2333.
Thede, *s.* nation, country, region, 1710, 1803, 2859, 3889, 3955, 4419, 4737, 4806; tribe, nation, people, mass of men, 1246, 2537, 3747, 3824; Thedis, *pl.* nations, people, 2424; Thedes, 5016. A.S. *þéod.*
(Thees), *pl.* thighs, 773*.
(Þees), *pl.* these, 693, 1087, 1604; this, 936.
Thefe, *s.* thief, 1821, 2494, 3543; (Thef), 1881; Thefis, *pl.* thieves, wretches, 4520; Thefes (Theffes), thieves, 3199. See Theues.
Theftis, *pl.* thefts, 4652.
Then, then, 95, 143, 267; than, 130, 1104, 787*.
Þens, *adv.* thence, 4870.
Theosellus (Teosellus), 1212; (Thoosellus), 1230.
Þer, there, 45, 85, 378, 800; þere, 517; (Thare), 1125; Bot þer aboute, except in the case where, 105.
Þer, their, 5, 14, 149, 197.
Þer-eftire, in like manner, 3879.
Þer-fra, therefrom, 4638.
Þerto (Þarto), thereto, 1033.
(Þes), these, 897, 984.
Thestir, *adj.* dark, gloomy, 4173, 4804. A.S. *þéostre.*
Thestres, *pl.* darknesses (?), 4627. The sense is hopeless; for it is clear that this line should follow 4624 immediately, and that the line which should succeed this is lost.
Thethen, *adv.* thence, 5431; (Þine), 1068, 1076; Þethin, 5563.
Theues, *pl.* thieves, 1789; Theuys (Thefez), 1734. See Thefe.
Thewis, *pl.* customs, 3747, 4226; qualities, 3990; (Thewys), manners, 2744; (Thewez), conduct, 2932; Thewes, manners, habits, 4577; Thewys, 4700. A.S. *þéaw.*
Þi, *pron.* thy, 80, 102, 254.
Thickest (Thikest), thickest, 1323.
Þik (Thik), *adv.* thickly, 707.
Thike, *adj.* thick, solid, 4073; numerous, 69; fat, 5433; (Thyke), heavy, clumsy, 2709; (Thike), 1219; Thik, thick, hard, 529.
Thikefald, *adv.* thickly together, 1407.
Thikest, densest, 1427.
Thikire, *adj. comp.* denser, 4176.
Þine, *pron.* thine, 256, 470, 688.
Þine, *adv.* thence, 1036, 3848, 4075. See Thethen.
Þing, *s.* thing, 2; Thing (Thyng), 1685; (Þing), quantity, 1375; (Thynge), 2072; Þingis, *pl.* things, 275, 412, 726; (Þingez), 1567; (Thyngez), 1710; Any thinge, in any respect, at all, 2275.
Thingis, *for* Thinkis, *pr. s.* thinks, 672.
Þinkis, *pr. s. impers.* it seems, 363; Thinkes, 1101; Thinkis, 1351, 1580; Thinke, it seems, 925, 1461, 1846, 2094, 2203; Me thinke, methinks, it seems to me, 326, 867; Me þink, methinks, it seems to me, 3299; Thinke, *pr. s. subj. impers.* may seem fit, 3293; may seem, 1638.
Thinkes, *pr. s.* intends to go, 1121; (Þinkez), thinks, 1640.
Þir, *pron. demon. pl.* these, 167; þire, 262, 347, 462, 660, 752, 3192, 3548, 4546, 5502; (Þees), 1797; Þire, those, 95; (Þir), those, 797. Common in Barbour; still in use.
Þis, *pron.* this, 59, 119, 230; Þi[s], this, 761; *pl.* these, 190, 2009, 2514; (Þees), 860.
Þi-selfe, thyself, 328, 356, 730, 5372; (Þi-seluen), 732, 850, 1843.
Þo, *pron. pl.* those, they, 3136, 3676; (Þo), 1172, 1635; Þo (Þoes), 1056; (Þoe), 1954; (Þoes), 1445.
Þo, *adv.* when, 10, 277.
Þof, *conj.* though, 1739, 1880; (*written* Of), 723, 862; as though, 5259; (Þof), 3168; Þofe, 254, 471, 1858, 4396; (Þof), 3244.
Thole, *ger.* to suffer, endure, 1015, 1178; *v.* 707; Tholis, 1 *pr. s.* suffer, 539; Tholes, *pr. s.* remains, tarries, 3955; Þoled, *pt. s.* suffered, 3876; Tholid, (she) suffered, endured, 529; Tholid, *pt. pl.* suffered, 2329. A.S. *þolian.*
Thonere, thunder, 554. Read *thonere-thrastis*, i. e. thunder-claps.
(Þoo), *pl.* those, 2842*.
Thornes, *pl.* thorns, 3815.
Thorps (Thorpus), *pl.* villages, 1803.
Þos, *pl.* those, 5639.
Þou, *pron.* thou, 97, 98, 100, 107, &c.
Thousand, thousand, 1042, 1427, 2084; (Thowsand), 1832; (Thouusand), 1246, 2163; Thousandis, *pl.* 1436.
(Þow), *error for* yow, you, 1845.
Þoȝe, *conj.* though, 51.
Þoȝt, *pt. s.* thought, 240; (Thoght), 1710; *pt. pl.* 3215.
Þoȝt, *imp. pt. s.* seemed; him þoȝt = it seemed to him, 70, 419, 1346.
Þoȝt (Thought), *s.* thought, 1461; Thoȝtis, *pl.* thoughts, 676, 4314; anxieties, 574.
Thra, *adj.* bold, 2218, 3824; severe, 554; (Tra), strong, 1631; (Thro), eager, keen, 1246; Thra (Throo), strong, 3071; Þraa, stiff, rigid (as a corpse), 4452. Icel. *þrár.*
Thra (Thro), *s.* struggle, victory, 2282; (Tro), 2259; lordship, 5016. Icel. *þrá*, a struggle.
Thrall, *s.* thrall, slave, 4520.
Thraly, *adv.* eagerly, 371; hardly, desperately, 2090. See Thra.
Thrang, *pt. s.* pressed, 1427.
Thrange, *adj.* oppressed, 4813.
Thrange, throng, 1323.
Thrast, *pt. s.* thrust, 2939.
Thrastis, *pl.* claps (of thunder), 554. See Thonere.
Thrat, *pt. pl.* threatened, 529.
Þrathly, *adv.* (error for *þraly*), severely, 707. MS. D. *has* thraly.
Thraw, moment, 1436; Thrawe (Thraw), 1326; On a thrawe, at a time, 1476; Thre dais out a thraw (in a thraw), fully three days at a time, 2046. A.S. *þrág, þráh.*
Thraw, *ger.* to throw, hurl, 2218; Thrawyn, *ger.* to throw, to wind (corpses), 4452.
Thre, *num.* three, 277, 436, 1476, 2046, 2090, 2259.
(Thred), *adj.* third, 1485.
Threpis, *pr. s.* asserts, 4423; contends, 3125; Threpid, *pt. pl.* strove, 3642; Threp, *pr. pl.* (Threpyd, *pt. pl.*), dispute, 2046. A.S. *þréapian.*
Threpild (Threpelytt), *pp.* congregated, assembled, 1476. Cf. *þroblen, þrublen*, to press; see gloss. to Allit. Poems.
Threschis, *pr. s.* thrashes, beats, 1326.
Thret (Thratt), 1 *pt. s.* threatened, 2494; (Threttt), *pt. s.* exhorted, 1631; *pp.* threatened, oppressed, 707.
Threte, *s.* threat, 2742.
Thretti, *adj.* thirty, 3642; (Threti), 1246; Thretty, 3603, 3843; Be thretty, to the number of thirty, 3610.
Threuen, *pp. as adj.* well-thriven,

experienced, 2259, 3007; excellent, 2537; well-grown, 5137, 5433; grown up, hence, strong, mighty, 1326; (Thrifen), experienced, 1407; (Thryffyn), overgrown, 2709.
Threw, *pt. s.* reached, 2939.
Threyest, *adj. superl.* strongest (?), 2371. Reading uncertain; perhaps for *thraest;* see Thra.
Thrid, *adj.* third, 281, 3343; (Thryd), 2282.
Thrill, *s.* hole, 4073.
Thrillis, *pr. s.* thrills, pierces, 224.
Thringes, *pr. s.*; Thringes to, presses forward, joins in the contest, 2282; Thringis, *pr. pl.* rush, throng, 3843; Thringes (Thronge), press, crowd, 1436. A.S. *þringan.*
Thrise (Thrisse), *adv.* thrice, 2279.
Thrist, *s.* thirst, 4683.
Thristis, *impers. pr. s.* thirsts; Him thristis, he is thirsty, 3848; Thristes, 2 *pr. pl.* thirst, 4443.
(Thristez), *pr. s.* thrusts, 1326; Thristis (Thraste, *pt. s.*), *pr. pl.* thrust, 1407; Thristid, *pt. pl.* thrust through, pierced, 554; (Thrist), *pp.* thrust, 773*.
(Thristyn), *error for* Thrist in *or* Thrast in, thrust in, i. e. hid it away, 2939.
(Thro), *adj.* strong, 2537. See Thra.
(Throo); see Thra.
Throm (Thrume), *s.* company, troop, 3007; On a throm, in a heap, i. e. successively, 3642. A.S. *þrymm,* a troop.
Throtis, *pl.* throats, 1812.
Throtild, *pp.* throttled, choked, 4813.
Throw, *s.* short time, moment, 3843. See Thraw.
Thryfandly, *adv.* thrivingly, prosperously, i. e. for her good, 3747.
(Thryme), *adj.; an error for* Thryuen, 1326. See Threuen.
Thryngis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* thrust, 4419. See Thringes.
Thu, *pron.* thou, 1987; Þu (Þou), 2910.
Thurghis, *pl.* coffins, 4452. A.S. *þruh.*
Thurgh-out, *adv.* in all, continually, 4737. See Þurȝe-out.
Thurt, *pt. s.* needed; Him thurt, it needed him = he needed, 1461. See Thare, and *þarf* in Stratmann.
Þurȝe, *prep.* through, 140, 147, 225, 444, 487, 500; (Þorow), 1427, 1636, 1960; Thurgh (Þorow), 803; Þurȝe (Thrugh), 1729; throughout, 571.
Þurȝe-out, *prep.* throughout, 3229; (Þorow), right through, 2640; (Out-þorow), *adv.* continually, 2090.
Þus, *adv.* thus, 35, 135, 178, &c.
Þus-gate, *adv.* in this way, thus, 516, 1933, 4030; (Þus-gates), 2257.
Thyn, *adj.* thin, 320.
Thyngis, *pl.* things, 436.
Thynkes, 2 *pr. s.* thinkest, 1988.
Thys, this, 811*.
Tid, *adj.* (*for* Tidy), excellent, 1060. See Tidiest.
Tide (Tyde), *v.* happen, 2145, 2309, 3729, 4945; Tidis (Tydes), *pr. s.* happens, 2288; Tidis (Tydez), *pr. s. as fut.* will happen, 1988; Tidis, *pr. pl.* betide, await, 4549; Tid (Tyde), *pt. s.* betided, happened, 1193. See Tydis.
Tidiest, *adj. superl.* ablest, 2367.
Tield (Teld), *v.* build, 2258. (The line is corrupt; for *tilld* read Tebet, i. e. Thebes; see the note, p. 301.)
Tiffid, *pp.* cut out, carved, lit. prepared, 4465. O.F. *tiffer.*
(Tight), *pt. s.* went, 2304. See Tiȝt.
Tigirs, *pl.* tigers, 3850; Tigris, 3573.
Tigre (Tygre), the Tigris, 2610. See Tygre.
Tild, *s.* building, 1343, 4581; (Teld), 1296, 1304, 1373; palace, 3000; (Tylde), 1159; (Tild), fort, 1366. A.S. *teld.*
Tild, *v.* pitch, set, 3860; Tildis, *pr. s.* builds, 5593; Tildid (Tyldet), *pt. s.* covered, defended, 1151; Tilld (Teld), *pt. s.* built, 2258 (but the line is corrupt; for *tilld* read *Tebet*, i. e. Thebes); Tildid, *pp.* built, raised (up), 5645; enshrined, built canopies (over), 4462; built, 3688; (Tyldit), 2110;
Tild, *pp.* set, pitched, 4140; built, 2110. See above.
Till, *prep.* to, 340, 463, 1828, 3814, 4875, 5389; (To), 2511; Tille, 1072, 5431; unto, 2909.
Till, *conj.* until, 564, 4875; Tille, 646.
Tillid, *pt. pl.* enticed, 5479.
Tiltis, *pr. s.* tilts, upsets, 1303; Tilt, *pt. pl.* overturned, 1418.
Time, *s.* time, 1460, 2011; (Tyme), 1109; Times, *pl.* 2259. See Tyme.
Tinds, *pr. s.* kindles, sets on fire, 4179. Cf. A.S. *ontyndan.*
Tint (Tynt), *pt. s.* 1 *p.* lost, 2683; Tint, *pp.* lost, 2901; (Tynt), 2784. See Tynt.
Tirantes, *pl.* tyrants, 3640.
Tire, Tyre, 1446, 2367, 5676; (Tyre), 1344, 1356. See Tyre.
Tire (Tyre), *v.* attire, address, 1632; Tire, *pr. pl.* prepare (lit. attire), 2398; Tired, *pp.* attired, 3603; (Tyrett), 1547. See Tyris.
Tirement, *s.* adornment, 4918.
Tite, *adv.* quickly, 219, 3719; Titte, 5165. See Tyte.
Tithandis, *pl.* tidings, 5175. Icel. *tíðindi.* See Tythandis.
(Tithiest), *adj. superl.* (*put for* Tidiest), most famous, 2371. See Tidiest. Cf. Icel. *tíðr,* famous, skilled.
Titild, *pp.* named, inscribed with names, 5640.
Titill, *s.* title of a letter, *hence,* letter, 3566, 4239; inscription, 5071; title, claim, 896; text, 1044; Title, 1592.
Titly (Titely), *adv.* quickly, soon, 888, 1283, 1812, 4886; Titely, 267, 1525, 1632, 3999, 738*; (Tytely), 2213; Tittly (Tyte), quickly, 1175.
Tittire, *adv.* more quickly, sooner, 2519.
Tittis, *pr. s.* pulls, 853; Titt, *pt. pl.* pulled, dragged, 5454; (Tit), *in phr.* Tit to, pulled to, fastened up, 2193. Lowl. Sc. *tyte,* to snatch, pull; Jamieson.
Tiȝt, *pt. s.* drew, went, 1336, 2174; (Tight), *refl.* went, 1162; (Toteght), drew towards, approached, 1060; Tiȝt, *pt. pl. refl.* prepared, set about, 2333. A.S. *tihtan,* to draw. See Gloss. to Allit. Poems.
Tiȝt, *pp.* erected, built, 2174; (Tight), fastened, 1373. Lit. *tied;* or else the same word as above.
To, *prep.* to, 48, 58, &c.; for, 1070, 3786; until, 2160; as far as to, 4078; in comparison with, 3587.
To, *conj.* until, 1034, 3853.
To, *adv.* too, 316, 317, 461, 2077, 4256.
To (Two), two, 2599.
To-brest, *v.* burst in two, 640. A.S. *tóbrestan.*
To-brissid (To-brysed), *pp.* badly bruised, 1274.
(To-brountes), *pr. s.* destroys, 1214.
(Tochett), *pt. pl.* touched, referred to, 888.
To-clatirs (Claters), *pr. s.* shivers, bursts in pieces (with a noise), 799.
To-clefe, *pt. pl.* cleft asunder, were rent asunder, 555.
To-combirs (-bers), *pr. s.* discomfits, 1302.
To-drawen, *pp.* drawn fully out, 5364.
To-gedire, *adv.* together, 61, 377; Togedre, 1873; Togeder, 104.
Toghid, *pp.* dragged, tugged, pulled, 4628.
To-hewid, *pt. pl.* 1 *p.* cut in pieces, slew, 3430.
Toile, *s.* tool, 4708. See Toylis.
Toke, *pt. s.* took, 127.
(Toldyn), *pt. pl.* told, 906.
Tole (Tule), tool, implement, 3373 (in the *nom.* case); Toles, *pl.* 4581. See Toile.
Tolls, *pr. pl.;* Tolls of, pull off (their horses), 3640. See *tollen* in Stratmann.
Toly, *s.* scarlet dye, scarlet colour, 4335. See *Tuly* in Halliwell.
Tombe, *s.* tomb, 5593; Tombis, *pl.* 4451.
Tomble, *pr. pl.* tumble, 552.
To-morne, to-morrow, 1493.
Tonacles, *pl.* tunicles, 1547.
Toname, *s.* nickname, 2288.

Tone; þe tone = þet one, that one, i. e. the one, p. 282, l. 101.
Tone, *s.* tone; Out of tone, beyond measure, 1343.
Tonge, *s.* tongue, language, 150, 3926; (Tong), 1404, 2075; (Tounge), 2885; Tongis, *pl.* tongues, languages, 21, 4031, 4428, 5071.
Tonn, *s.* tun, tub, 5535.
Toore, *adj.* strong, 5500. Cf. Icel. *tor-*, *prefix*, difficult. See Torfare.
Top (Topp), *s.* top, 3365; (Toppe), 1303; Top, 2110; Topp, 4070; (Top), top of his head, 752*; Topp-haris, hairs of the top of our heads, 1009.
Topas, topaz, 3343, 3360; Topaces, *pl.* topazes, 5644.
To-paschis (To-paschys), *pr. s.* is dashed, becomes broken, 2998.
To-pliȝt, *pp.* pledged to (*are* being understood), i. e. we are never pledged to it, addicted to it, viz. to vice, 4330.
To-ponyscht, *pp.* severely punished, 4330.
Topoures (Tapers), *pl.* tapers, 1568.
Tor (Towre), *s.* tor, hill-top, 2109; Torres, *pl.* tors, tower-shaped hilltops, 4863. Still in use in Devon.
To-rased, *pp.* torn up, 2088.
Torche, *s.* torch, 2970; Torchis (Torchez), *pl.* torches, 1563.
Torettis (Torrettes), *pl.* turrets, 1418.
Torfare, *s.* hardship, misery, 3729; difficulty, peril, 4101; Torfere (Torfer), trouble, 1261; Torfar (Torfer), hardship, 1193. Cf. Icel. *torfœra*. The prefix *tor-* answers to Goth. *tuz-*, Gk. *δυσ-*.
Torkans (Torkys), *pr. s.* turns (himse'f) (towards), turns (towards), 2967. Here *with* = towards, in the direction of what is said. See my article on *turken* in N. and Q. 6 S. V. 165.
To-scailed, *pt. s.* scattered, dispersed utterly, 4150. *Skail*, to disperse; Jamieson.
To-spryngis, *pr. pl.* fly to pieces, are shivered, 790; (To-sprongen), *pt. pl.* flew to pieces, 790.
(Tote), *v.* peep, 694. See Tute, Toton.
(To-teght), *pt. s.* approached, 1060. See Tiȝt.
To-terid, *pt. s.* tore asunder, 4148.
Tothe, *s.* tooth, 3907.
Tothed, *pp.* furnished with teeth, 5482.
Tothir, *adj.* second, 3342; þe tothire, that other, the other, 300, 607, 879, 1368, 3978; þe toþir = þet oþir, the second, the next, 3006.
(Toton), *pr. pl.* stick out, 752*. See Tote, Tute.
Touches, *pr. s.* touches, 386, 3301; Touchis, *pr. pl.* touch, refer to, 888; Touchid, *pt. s.* touched (upon it), 5190; Touched (Tochyd), *pt. s.* touched, 2967; Touchand (Tochand), *pres. part.* touching, 1894; Touchid, *pp.* touched, i.e. attached, 2580 (but read *tachid*). See Glos. to Allit. Poems.
Toune, town, 216, 1163, 1446, 1525; (Towne), 1283, 1385; Toun, 2111, 2150; Tounes, *pl.* towns, 4024.
Tou[n]les (Tounles), *adj.* town-less, without a town, 2288.
Toure, *s.* tower, 1283, 1303, 3603; dungeon, 3149; (Towre), 1159; (Toure), 1446; Touris, *pl.* towers, 552; (Toure, *s.*), 2228; (Tourez), 1376; Toures (Towrez), 1151, 1418, 2267.
Tourment, *s.* torment, 3515; struggle (lit. torment), 4251; (Turment), trouble, 1448.
Toward, *prep.* towards, 843, 1089.
(Town), town, 815*; (Towne), *gen.* town's, 2135; A towne, in the town, at home, p. 283, l. 127.
To-wraiste, *pr. pl.* wrest or twist in pieces, 798; (To-wrasted), *pt. pl.* twisted to pieces, 798.
(Towre), *s.* tower, 1296. See Toure.
Toylis, *pl.* implements, lit. tools, 286. See Toile, Tole.
Toȝe, *adj.* tough, 1812.
Traces (Tracez), *pl.* Thracians, 986.
Traimmes, *pl.* instruments, 127. Bad spelling for *trammes;* see Tram.
Traistis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* trustest, 5026; Traist (Trasten), 2 *pr. pl.* trust to,

2467; Traisted (Traistytt), *pp.* trusted, 3270.
Traitours, *pl.* traitors, 3192.
Tram (Trame), engine, machine, 1373; Trammys (*written* tranmys), instruments, 286. And see Traumes, Traimmes. See the article on *tram* in my Etym. Dict.
Transmitte, *pr. pl.* 1 *p.* send about, send from one place to another, 4335.
Trappour, *s.* trappings, 4179.
Trased, *pt. s.* traced, pourtrayed, 4914.
(Trasped), *error for* Trespast, *pp.* trespassed, 2385. (The Ashmole MS. has *trispast.*)
Trauaill (Travell), *s.* labour, trouble, 2683.
Trauald, *pt. s.* travailed, was in labour, 525; Trauailid, *pp.* disturbed, 543.
Traumes (Trawynns), *pl.* engines of war, 1296. See Tram.
Trayne, *s.* treachery, deceit, snare, 2580, 2582; train, plot, 5028.
Trayvelles, 2 *pr. pl. refl.* labour, toil, p. 281, l. 68.
Tre, *s.* tree, 4978; Tree, wood, 4465; Treis, *pl.* trees, 70, 4994, 5007.
Trebute, *s.* tribute, 3719. See Tribute.
Trecherous, *adj.* treacherous, 5028.
Trechory, *s.* treachery, 3439; Trechoure (Trichory), 3192.
Trechoure (Trechour), traitor, 1768, 2582.
Trede, *v.* tread, 1515; Tredis (Tredes), *pr. s.* treads (on), 1348.
(Trefe), *for* Threuen, *pp.* thriven, experienced, 3007.
Treid, *put for* Tried, choice, pure, 5065; tried, attempted, 3439. See Tried.
Trekild, *pt. pl.* trickled, 4974.
Trelest, *adj.* trelliced, adorned with cross-bars or with gems arranged in crossed rows, 3343.
Trenes, *for* Trines, goes, 4888. See Trines.
Treson, *s.* treason, 1768, 5028.
Tresory, treasury, 1666.
Tresour, *s.* treasure, 123, 1807, 2677; thing of value, 5372; Tresore (Tresour), great wonder, marvel, 2094.
Trest, *pr. pl.* trust, hope, expect, 1344; (Tristed), *pt. pl.* hoped, 1344.
Tretis, *pr. s.* treats with, entreats, 5340.
Tretis (Tretes), treatise, history, 2109; (Tretez), 2190; Tretice (Tretes), *pl.* treatises, 1568.
Treuly (Trewly), *adv.* truly, 2094, 2309.
Treuthe, *s.* truth, 515, 729.
Trew, *adj.* true, 272, 3174; Trewe (Trew), 986.
Trewly, *adv.* truly, 2292.
Treyned, *pt. s.* proceeded, 694. See Trines, Trenes.
Tribochetes (Trebgetes, *for* Trelgetes, *as in MS.*), *pl.* engines for casting stones, 1296. O.F. *trebuchet* (Roquefort).
Tribute, tribute, 888, 896, 1044.
(Trichory), *s.* treachery, 3192.
Tried, *pp.* well-tried, 3022; select, approved, choice, 1060, 2198, 3739, 5101, 5640, 5644; picked, 815*.
Triest, *adj. superl.* choicest, 4970; (Triest), 2198, 2367.
Trimblis, *pr. s.* trembles, 5308; Trimballand, *pres. part.* trembling, 4914. See Trymblid.
Trines, *pr. s.* goes, proceeds, 5171, 5195, 5231. Dan. *trine*, to step; *trin*, a step.
Trispast, *pp.* trespassed, 2385.
Trissis, *pl.* tresses, plaits of hair, 3450.
Tristly, *adv.* trustfully, confidently, 1632.
Tro; see Thra.
Trod-gate (Troyde-gate), track, beaten path, 2988.
Troi, Troy, 2123. See Troy.
Trombling, *error for* troubling (Trublyng *in the* Dublin MS.), troubling, 3000.
Trompes (Trompez), *pl.* trumpets, 773; Trompis, 2222.
Trone, throne, 161, 977, 1490, 1724, 2776, 3406; Trones, *pl.* thrones (one of the nine orders of angels), 4914.

Trottis him, *pr. s.* trots, 2610; (Trotes), 2988; Trottes, *pr. pl.* trot, 1208.
Trouage, *s.* tribute, 3491, 3559, 5101, 5658; (Truage), 884, 903, 1904, 2957; (Trowage), 2525; Trouag (Truage), *s.* tax, 1678. O.F. *truage* (Roquefort).
Troubild, *pp.* troubled, 543; (Turblett), 1343.
Troumpis, *pl.* trumpets, 3965.
Trouthe (Trewth), *s.* truth, faith, 1356; Trouthis (Trewthez), *pl.* troths, pledges, 760.
Trouthles, *adj.* false, 4462.
Trowe, *v.* believe, trow, 141, 464; *ger.* 3663; Trowe, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* believe, trust, 730; Trow (Trowe), 1886, 2690; Trow, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* trust in, 4548; Trowe, 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst believe, 1986; Trowid, *pt. s.* believed, 4833; (Trowyd), 2293; Trowid, *pt. pl.* trusted, expected, 3191; Trowde, 1148; Trowe, *imp. s.* believe, 5372.
Trowthis (Trouthez), *pl.* troths, 3192.
Troy, Troy, 3020, 5665.
(Trublett), *pp.* troubled, 1341.
Truches, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* failest, 1988. A.S. *trucian.*
Trufils (Trufels), *pl.* trifles, 1894.
Trumpis, *pl.* trumpets, 3037, 3610; (Trompettes), 1386.
Trusses, *pr. s.* packs (it), 123; Trussis (Trussys), *pr. s. refl.* sets out (lit. packs up), 1143. See *Trusse* in Gl. to P. Plowman.
Tryi, *ger.* to choose, select, 663. See Tried. O.F. *trier.*
Trymblid, *pt. s.* trembled, 569; (Tremblyd), 1252. See Trimblis.
Tuenti, *adj.* twenty, 3930.
Tufe, *adj.* tough, 319.
Tuke, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* took, received, 2683; took (myself), put (myself), 3515; Tuke, *pt. s.* took, 286, 1044, 1446; (Toke), 2075; took, i. e. went upon (it), took to (it), 2901; Tuke, *pt. pl.* took, 190, 4114; Tuke vp, *pt. pl.* took up, plighted, 760.
Tuke vp, *pr. pl.* blow, 3610; (Tukkyn vp), 773. Properly to beat a drum; here used of the blowing of trumpets. *Tuck of drum,* beat of drum; Jamieson. "*Tuck of trump,* blast of a trumpet," Glos. to Troy-book.
Tukkid; see Tulkid.
(Tule); see Tole.
Tulke, *s.* man, soldier, knight, 752, 1212, 2258, 2274, 2970; Tulk, 5372; (Tulke), 2580, 3174; Tulkis, *pl.* men, 3149, 3439, 3566, 3999, 4798; (Tulkes), 2075; (Tulkez), 1304, 2367, 2685. Icel. *tulkr.*
Tulkid, *for* Tukkid, *pt. pl.* beat, 2427. "*Tuck,* to beat;" Jamieson. In MSS. we often find *kk* written more like *lk,* the double letter being denoted only by doubling the down-stroke. Hence we may correct *tulked* to *tukked* in the Gloss. to Allit. Poems, which is incorrect. See Tuke vp.
Tunne, tun, large quantity, 1807.
Tupis, *pl.* rams, tups, 5566.
Turbils, *pr. s.* becomes cloudy, is obscured, 4140; Turbled, *pp.* troubled, disturbed, 3637; Turbild, 4063.
Turestis (Torrettes), *pl.* turrets (*but read* Turettis), 1151.
(Turht), *for* Thurt, q. v.
Turke, Turkey, 5665.
Turmentis, *pl.* torments, 4549.
Turnay, *pt. pl.* tourney, i. e. fight, 5429.
Turne, *s.* turn, bout, 2276, 5429; Turnes (Tournays), exploits, 1404.
Turne, *v.* turn back, 1631; return, 2607; depart, 5606; Turnes, *pr. s.* turns, 1071, 1854; (Turnes), 1332; turns, goes, 1336; Turnys, 31, 383; Turnes him, *pr. s.* turns, 752; Turne, 2 *pr. s. subj.* return, 1786; *pr. s. subj.* 401; Turned, *pt. s.* went, 2304; (Turned), 694; (Turnyd hym), 752; Turned, *pp.* 218; (Turnyd), 1289; Turne, *imp. s.* turn, return, 1768, 1978.
Turred, *pt. pl.* butted, 5567. "*Turr,* to but as a ram does;" Halliwell.
Tuscane, Tuscany, 5665.
Tuskis, *pl.* tusks, 610, 4114.
Tute, *ger.* to peep, gaze; Tute in, to gaze upon, observe, 127, 694; Tutand, *pres. part.* looking, peering, 4776. A.S. *tótian.*
Tuthe (Tothe), tooth, 1997.
Twa, two, 317, 319, 348, 353, &c.; Tway, 284, 545.
Twelfe, twelve, 1079; (Twelf), 815*.
Twelmonth, *s.* year, 5429.
Twenti, *num.* twenty, 3886.
Twiggis (Twygges), *pl.* twigs, 1895.
Twinlepi, *adj.* twofold, 5013. Cf. Anlepi.
Twyggis (*Dubl. MS.* Wiggez), *pl.* twigs, 1714. See Twiggis.
Twynnes (Twynnys), *pr. s.* parts, 2750; (Twynnon), *pr. pl.* 760; Twyned, *pt. pl.* parted, 760.
Twyse, *num.* twice, 1605, 3988, 5637.
Tydis, *pr. s. impers.* betides, 106; Tyd, *pt. s.* betided, happened, 478. See Tide.
Tygre, Tigris, 2597, 2785. See Tigre.
Tymbre (Tembre), crest of the helmet (lit. timber, the crests being originally made of wood), 1230.
Tyme, *s.* time, 33, 204, 214, 272, 525, &c.; Tym, 478; Tymes, *pl.* times, seasons, 283; Be tyme, betimes, 2830; soon enough, 3728; In tymes, at times, now and then, 4122. See Time.
Tyn, *s.* tin, 4465.
Tynd, *pt. pl.;* Tynd to, shut to, closed, 2193. A.S. *týnan.*
Tyndis, *pl.* teeth, tines, 3907, 5133, 5567, 5573; tines, horns, prongs, 3925, 752*; (Tyndez), 1063.
Tyne, *adj.* tiny, 507.
(Tynkyll), *pr. pl.* tinkle, i. e. resound, 1384.
Tynt (Tyntt), *pp.* lost, 903. See Tint.
(Typys), *pr. s.* tips over, 1303; (Typed), *pt. pl.* tipped over, upset, 1418. See Glos. to Allit. Poems.
Tyre, Tyre, 1141, 1193, 1208, 1289, 1294, 1336. See Tire.
Tyris, *pr. s.* attires, 5195; Tyrid, *pp.* decked, 5644. See Tire.
Tyte, *adv.* quickly; As tyte as, as soon as, 693. See Tite.
Tythandis (Tithanndez), *pl.* tidings, 2304. See Tithandis.

Vacant, *adj.* vacant, 4774; free (from), 5116; Vacand, vacant, 4665.
Vaile (Wale), *s.* vale, valley, 1205, 1289, 1313.
Vaile, *s.* defeat (?), 3980. Cf. F. *avaler,* to put down, Cotgrave. Or it may even mean 'valley.'
Vaile, *v.* avail, 3545; Vailes, *pr. s.* avails, 103; Vailes (Valys), *pr. pl.* avail, 3122.
Vailes (Wales), *pl.* veils, 2300.
Vale, *s.* valley, 4164, 5432; Vales, *pl.* 4121.
Valour, *s.* valour, 2493.
Vanite, *s.* empty space, 4774; (Vanyte), vanity, 2731; Vanyte, 1730, 1784.
Vant, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* vaunt, 2713.
Variand, *pres. part.* varying, various, 4637; Variant, 4336, 5651.
Variaunce, *s.* variety, 4632.
Vaunte (Vaunt), *s.* vaunt, boast, 1880.
Vaward, *s.* vanward, vanguard, 3617, 4842.
Vayne, *adj.* vain, 389; (Vayn), 1784; (Wayn), 1113.
Vayne-glori (Vaneglory), *s.* vain glory, 2731; (Vaynglory), 1730; Vayn glorie (Vaneglory), 3265.
Ve, *for* We, we, 4328.
Vebbis, *pl.* webs, woven cloth, 4335.
Velany, villany, wickedness, 4550.
Velans, *adj.* villanous, horrible, 4164. It may be *velaus;* Jamieson has *vylaus,* and the Glos. to the Troy-book has *vilaus.* But these examples are not at all decisive. Cf. F. *vilain.*
Vemon, *s.* venom, poison, 4797.
Vemons, *pr. s.* envenoms, poisons, 4842.
Vencust, *pp.* vanquished, 3122, 3948, 3980; (Venkest), 950; Vencuste, 3875.
Vengance, vengeance, 1484.
Venge, *v.* avenge, 186, 950; *ger.* 5326; Vengid (Vengyd), 2096; (Venged), 969.
Venus, Venus, 4410, 4414, 4512.

Venyson, *s.* venison, 4121.
Verdure, *s.* verdure, 4979.
Vermeon, *s.* vermilion, 3945. See Vermylion.
Vermylion, *s.* vermilion colour, 4336.
Vermyn, *s.* vermin, 3948, 5422; Vermyns, *gen. pl.* of the vermin, of the monstrous creatures, 4797.
Verraly (Veraly), *adv.* truly, verily, 2928.
Verray, *adj.* true, 5527; Verra, 389.
Vertu, virtue, 103; strength, 5527; valour, 5324; Vertous, *pl.* virtues, 4410; Vertuse (Vertuez), good qualities, 2958.
Vessall, *s.* vessel, *often used in plural sense of* vessels, plate, 4351; Vessale, 3700; Vessell, 116; Vessell (Veseall), vessels, 2945.
Vestoure (Vesture), vesture, garment, 1539.
Viaunce, *s.* food, viands, 4121. *Put for* Viauns = Viaunds.
Victore (Wictory), *s.* victory, 2096.
Victour, victor, 950; Victoure, 186; (Victor), 1484; Victor, 389, 1880.
Vile, *adj.* vile, 186; harmful, 4164; cowardly, 3617.
Violet (Vyolet), *adj.* violet, 1539.
Violett, *s.* violet hue, 4336.
Virgyns, *pl.* virgins, 4665.
Virre, *s.* glass, 4351. F. *verre.*
Vise, *ger.* to look, 1539, 3946; To vise on, to look upon, in appearance, 3945; Vise, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* look out for, seek out, 4686; Visid, *pp.* seen, 5651.
Vision, *s.* vision, 1508.
Visit (Viset), *ger.* to visit, 2033; (Visytt), 2004; Visitis (Viseten), *pr. pl.* visit, 1964.
Vitaill (Vitale), victual, 2171.
(Vith), *prep.* with, 1536.
Vmbe, *prep.* around, 2209; (Vmbe), 3393; Vmby (Vmbe), round about, 1154; (Vmby), 779.
Vmbe, *adv.* around, 2762, 3250.
Vmbe-gildid, *pp.* gilded round, 4899.
(Vmbelappes), *pr. pl.* beset, surround, 2473. See Vmlapis.
Vmbe-thonrid, *pp.* encompassed, surrounded, 4806; Vmby-thonred (*printed* Vmby-thorned), 3857. Sense clear; spelling doubtful.
(Vmbrayd), *s.* reproach, 1800. See Vnbraydis, Vpbraide.
Vmby-clappis, *pr. s.* surrounds, embraces, 4171; Vm-clappis, *pr. pl.* invest, beset, surround, 2473; Vm-by-clappid, *pp.* surrounded, 3451.
Vmfaldin, *pp.* encompassed, 4717.
(Vmhede), *imp. s.* look about you, 731.
Vmlapis (Vmbelappes), *pr. s.* surrounds, 2134; Vmlapped (Vnlapped), *pp.* encompassed, 920. See Vnlappis.
Vm-loke, 2 *pr. pl.* surround, 4672. (Here *loke* = mod. E. *lock.*)
Vmquile, *adv.* formerly, 23, 1132, 3594, 4511; sometime, 3079; sometimes, 4744, 4745.
Vmse, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* look thou around, bethink (thyself), 3728.
Vn-ably, *adv.* without ability, foolishly, weakly, 2308.
Vn-behalde (*for* Vm-behalde), *imp. s.* look about you, 731.
(Vnbende), *v.* unbend, unstring (your bow), 1744; (Vnbenden), 1974. See Vnbynd.
Vn-blythe, *adj.* sorrowful, joyless, 152; Vnblyth, 48.
Vn-braydis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* upbraidest, 2739. *Error for* Vmbraydis; see Gloss. to Troy-book; and see Vmbrayd, Vpbraide.
Vnbynd, *v.* ungird (thyself), 1744; Vnbynde, 1974.
Vncacchid, *pt. pl.*; *in phr.* Vncacchid hertis, let loose their hearts, i. e. lost their courage, 2588. See the note, p. 303.
Vn-callid (Vn-callyd), *pp.* uncalled, 832.
(Vnchaunce), mischance, 822*.
(Vnclene), *adj. as s.* unclean substance, poison, 1106.
Vnclennes, *s.* uncleanness, 4218.
Vncles, *pl.* uncles, 3443.
Vnclethe, *v.* unclothe, 5505.
Vncorsayd, *adj.* unridden, lit. uncoursed, not tried in the course, 3775.
Vn-corumpid, *pp.* uncorrupted, 4334.
Vndede, *adj.* undead, alive, 158.

Vndedlynes, *s.* immortality, 2734; Vnde[d]lynes, 3545, 4058.
Vndefoulid (Vndefowled), *pp.* not trodden down, undefeated, 2630. See Foules.
Vnder, *prep.* under, 992, 1156; Vndere, 34. See Vndir.
Vndere-putt, *pp.* subjugated, 5402. See Vndire-put.
Vndid, *pt. s.* unfolded, 521. See Vndo.
Vndir (Vnder), *prep.* under, 1845; Vndire, 247, 1092, 1799. See Vnder.
Vndire-put (Vnder-put), *pp.* subjected, 2025. See Vndere-putt.
Vndireling (Vnderlinges), *s.* subject, 1861.
Vndire-take (Vndertake), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* undertake, 1356; Vndire-tuke (Vndertuke), *pt. s.* understood, 2967.
Vndirfangid (Vnderfonged), *pt. s.* undertook, 910; Vndirfange, *pt. s.* (Vnderfongez, *pr. s.*), received, 2793; Vndir-fong (Vnderfangez, *pr. s.*), *pt. s.* received, 1700.
Vndirstandings, *pl.* intelligences (an astrological term), 279. See the note to l. 274, p. 289.
Vndirstandis, *pr. pt.* understand, 252; Vndirstode (Vnderstonde), *pt. pl.* understood, 1794.
Vndistreyned (Vndistreynyd), *pp.* without being commanded, uncompelled, 2779.
Vndistrobbed (Vndistourblett), *pp.* undisturbed, untroubled, 3418.
Vndo, *v.* declare, disclose, 1112; Vndone, *pp.* undone, 1472. See Vndid.
Vndorne, *s.* the third hour, at first 9 A.M. (but afterwards later), 3853. Here *myd-ouir-vndorne* = middle of the period just after undern, i. e. (as I suppose), the middle of the period from 9 to 12, or about half past 10.
Vn-esid, *pp.* disturbed, not eased, 5054.
Vne-slayne (Vnslayne), *pp.* unslain, not slain, 2475.
Vneth, *adv.* scarcely, 2060. See below.
Vnethes, *adv.* scarcely, 937; Vnethis, with difficulty, 4437; (Vneth), 1370, 2093; (Vneth), 937.
Vnfaire, *adj.* terrible, frightful, 4864.
Vnfaire, *adv.* extremely, beyond measure, 1189, 1212, 3873, 3903, 4566; fiercely, cruelly, terribly, 2041, 4741, 4837; grievously, severely, 1224, 3637; indignantly, 837; horribly, 555; Vnfare (Vnfaire), exceedingly, 1409. See Gloss. to Troy-book.
Vnfaldis, *pr. pl.* unfold, display, 3027.
Vnfryndschip, unfriendship, enmity, 2722.
Vngastly, *adv.* unspiritually, in a worldly way, 4430.
Vnhalesome, *adj.* unwholesome, unsuitable, 4387.
Vn-happe, *s.* ill luck, 4554; Vnhapp (Vnhappe), 3287.
Vnhappeiste (Vnhappyest), *adj. superl.* unhappiest, most unfortunate, 713.
Vn-hele, *s.* misery, 3291. See Jamieson. (Perhaps *he* should be *ere*, as in the Dublin MS. But in both MSS. the line is corrupt, and the alliteration is at fault.)
Vn-helid, *pp.* uncovered, 3450.
Vnhemed (Vnhemmyd), unrestrained, 2835.
Vn-hewyn, *pp.* not hewn down, unslain, 1945.
Vnhid, *pp.* discovered, made public, 3437.
Vnhome, *s.* 5530. Almost certainly an error for *vnhone*, i. e. haste. The phrase *with mikel vnhone* is merely the equivalent of the phrase *withouten hone*, i. e. without delay; see *hone* in Stratmann. Thus *vnhone* is the opposite of 'delay,' i. e. haste.
Vn-honourable, *adj.* dishonourable, 2950.
Vnhurt, *adj.* unhurt, 5530.
Vnicornes, *pl.* unicorns, 3593.
Vnknawen, unknown, 3715; (Vnk[n]awyn), 825*.
Vnlappis (Vnlappyd, *pt. pl.*), *pr. pl.* unfold, 1932. Cf. Vmlapis.

Vnlikly, *adj.* unlikely, 5552.
Vnmete, *adj.* unmeasured, immense, very long, 143.
Vn-metely, *adj.* unfitting, unseemly, 321.
Vnneth, *adv.* scarcely, 4185, 4801; (Vneth), 1774; Vnnethe (Vnneth), with difficulty, 2788. See Vneth.
Vnnethes, *adv.* scarcely, 4078. See above.
Vnnombirable (Vnnowmerable), *adj.* innumerable, 2365.
(Vnnowmyrd), *pp.* unnumbered, 1992.
Vnpossible, *adj.* impossible, 4249.
Vn-prophetable, *adj.* unprofitable, 3560.
Vnprouednes, *s.* unprovedness, inexperience, 1019.
Vnpussible, *adj.* impossible, 635. See Vnpossible.
Vnreproued, *pp.* without reproach *or* reproof, 3092; (Vnreprefytt), 3092.
Vnride (Vnrode), *adj.* cruel, harsh, 871; Vnrid (Vnrode), 739; Vnryd, rough, wanton, 460. See *Unride* in Halliwell.
Vnridly, *adv.* fiercely, 638; Vnruydly, 566.
Vn-samen, *adv.* not together, far apart, 605.
Vnschent, *pp.* unharmed, 2143.
Vnsele, *s.* misfortune, evil fortune, ill luck, 1106, 4471. See Sele.
Vn-semely, *adv.* unseemly, 862; *adj.* 99.
Vnsene, *adj.* unseen, i. e. unique, extraordinary, 1026; unequalled, 2536.
Vnsesid, *pp.* untaken, 5334.
Vnseson; In vnseson, out of season, at an unseasonable time, 4439.
Vnslayne, *pp.* not killed, 2668; Vnslayn, 2093, 2232.
Vnsowmyd (Vnsoumed), *pp.* unnumbered, 1991. Lit. 'unsummed.'
Vnsure, *adj.* insecure, 2136.
Vntald (Vntalde), *adj.* uncounted, countless, 2677.
Vnthankes, *adv.* against (your) will; At ȝour vnthankes, against your will, 4698.
Vn-to, unto, 173, 623, 706, &c.
Vnwarly, *adv.* unawares, heedlessly, 5329.
Vnweried, *pp.* unwearied, *or* uninjured, 3622.
Vn-wetandly, *adv.* unknown, secretly, 134.
Vnwondid (Vnwoundet), *pp.* unwounded, 1235.
Vnworthely (Vnworthly), *adv.* unworthily, 869.
Vn-wyn, *s.* sorrow, woe, lit. un-joy, joylessness, 531. See *unwunne* in Stratmann, p. 605, col. 1.
Vn-ȝarkid, *pt. pl.* unfastened, 3209; Vnȝarked, unbarred, 2147.
Voice, *s.* voice, 1000, 1479; (Voyce), 1508; Voise, 2958.
Voide, *v.* get rid of, 4112; (Voyde), *ger.* to avoid, 1484; to give up, 1784; Voidis, *pr. s.* gets rid of, 4169; leaves, 3655; (Woydez), departs, 1113; Voidis, *pr. pl.* render void; Voidis doun þe leuys, bring down the leaves off the trees, 4145; Voidid, *pp.* deprived, 3980; got rid of, 3948; (Woydett), removed, 1338; Voidid, departed, 4650.
Volatile, *s.* fowls, birds, 4637.
Vouchid safe, vouchsafed, 303.
Vowtriere, *s.* adultress, 4532. *Short for* Avowtriere.
Vowtres, *pl.* vultres, 3945. See note to l. 3944, p. 309. The usual O.F. form is *voltour* = Lat. acc. *vulturem;* mod. F. *vautour.* But here we have a form *voutre* = Lat. nom. *vultur;* cf. Span. *buitre*, Port. *abutre*, a vulture.
Voyce, voice, 718. See Voice.
(Voyde), *v.* avoid, 2424; Voydis (Woydes), *pr. s.* 2 *p.* dost empty, 2945; Voydis, *pr. s.* removes, 122. See Voide.
Vp, up, 80, 82, &c.; Vpp, 760; (Vppe), 758, 977; Vp set, set up, 198; With vp son, with sun-rise, 4067.
Vp, *adv.* open, 2142; (Vppe), 783*.
Vpbraide, *s.* reproach, 1800. See Vn-braydis, Vmbrayd.
Vp-liftis (Vpp lyftes), *pr. s.* uplifts, 805.
Vryn, *s.* urine, 3826.

Vs, us, 22, 82, &c.; *dat.* for us, 1674.
Vse, *s.* use, custom, usage, 2950.
Vse, *v.* use, 1674; Vsyd, *pt. s.* used, was accustomed, 3594; Vsed, used, 645; (Vsed), *pt. pl.* were accustomed, 738*; Vsyd, *pp.* used, 4324; customary, 4023.
(Utterly), *adv.* utterly, 1472.
Vulturnus, *s.* the west-wind, 4145. Such seems to be the required sense; but the true sense is "a south-east by-one-third-south wind;" Lewis and Short.
(Vyce), *s.* fine appearance, 1539. See Vise.
Vyne, *s.* vine, 1346; Vynes, *pl.* vines, 4899.
Vysage (Visage), *s.* visage, face, 2958; (Vysage), 3362.
Vyse, *ger.* to look, 2928; to behold, 3700; Vyses, *pr. s.* pays heed to, considers necessary, 126. *Short for* Avyse; see *Aviser* in Cotgrave.
Vysite, *ger.* to visit, 573; (Visitt), 859.

Wa, *s.* woe, sorrow, calamity, 528, 539, 1103, 1168; pain, 2721; (Wo), 2812; misery, 3075; (Woo), 3153; Waa, woe, misery, 3435; illness, 5606; Wa, *interj.* woe, 4564; Wa is me, woe is me, 1468; Waa (Woo), *as adj.* sorry, 2999; Waes, *pl.* miseries, 4592.
Wacche-men, watchmen, 5164.
Wacchis, *pl.* watchmen, sentinels, 5215.
Wacken (Wakyn), *ger.* waken, arouse, 2276.
Wadis, *pr. s.* wades, goes away, 4141. Perhaps put for *vadis*, i. e. fades.
Waes, *pl.* woes, miseries, 4592. See Wa.
Waest (Woest), *adj. superl.* most wretched, most sorrowful, 2004. See Wa.
(Wafe), *imp. s.* send, 2866. See Wayfe.
Wage, *s.* hire, reward, wages, 3426.
Waged (Wagged), *pt. s.* wagged, nodded, 968.
Waghe (Wagh), *s.* wall, *hence*, a bank of drifted snow, 1757. A.S. *wáh*, a wall. See Wawes.
Wai, *s.* way, 4847; (Way), road, 1324; Waies, *pl.* ways, 3852; Wais, 2330; ways, wise, 2013. See Way.
Waik, *adj.* weak, 3917; (Waike), 3587; (Wake), 1271, 2077.
Wailaway, *interj.* woe! 4564.
Waite, *v.* pay heed, look, 3354; Waitis, *pr. s.* watches, 4776; looks, 59; (Wates), looks, 956; Waites, *pr. pl.* look, 4129; Waite, 3630; (Waytyn), look, 2930; Waitid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* looked, considered, 5621; Waited (Wayted), observed, 1764; Waiteand, *pres. part.* looking, 3835; Waite, *imp. s.* 2 *p.* see, take heed, 4949. See Waytis.
Wakens, *pr. s.* awakes, arises, 2222; (Wakned, *pt. s.*), 2222; Wakyns, *pr. s.* awakes, comes to himself, 3249; (Wakens), *pr. s.* remains awake or alive, 725*; Wakand, *pres. pt.* waking, whilst awake, 356.
Wald, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* wouldest, 311, 354, 1097; (Wold), 690; Wald, *pt. s.* would, 159; required, 128, 485; (Walde), desired, 1667; Wald it, i. e. would it please, 2684; Wald, *pt. pl.* would, 1, 13, 36; would like to, 3164.
Wald-eȝed, *adj.* wall-eyed, 608. Icel. *valdeygðr*. See Wawil-eȝed.
Waldis, *pl.* woods, wolds, 3792, 3799.
Wale, *adj.* excellent, choice, good, valuable, famous, 75, 294, 809*, 827, 841, 949, 1189, 1287, 1376, 2018, 2261, 2287, 2311, 2783, 2932, 3256, 3435, 3515, 3561, 3720, 4153, 4304; chosen, appointed, 4772; respected, 2742; Wale quile, good time, short period, 4597; (Wale), valuable, 2150.
Wale, *v.* choose, 1667; *ger.* to choose, 4655; *imp. s.* 1014, 806*. Goth. *waljan.*
Wales; see Vailes.
Walke, *v.* walk over, overrun, 519;

Walkis, *imp. pl.* walk about, 541.
Walke, *s.* walk, march, 3799.
Wall, *error for* Was, was, 5646.
Wall, *s.* wall, 1369, 1405; Wallis, *pl.* walls, 1376; (Walle, *s.*), 1153, 1384; (Walles), 1161, 1359, 1420; (Wallez), 1030.
Walld, *pt. pl.* would, 5335. See Wald.
(Wallez); see Wawes.
Wallid, *pp.* walled, 1149.
Walowand, *pres. part.* wallowing, whirling, 4064. A.S. *wealwian*, to turn about.
Walows, *pr. s.* fades, grows dull, 4627. Better *wclows;* see *welhen, welwen* in Stratmann.
Walt (Weld), *pt. s.* wielded, 838.
Wambe, *s.* womb, 550, 579; Wame, 386, 531, 538; Wambs, *pl.* bellies, 3813; (Wambes), 2168*; Wames, 4276. A.S. *wamb.*
Wan, 1 *pt. s.* got, begot (lit. won), 587; came, 3458; Wan, *pt. s.* 2 *p.* didst win, 949; Wan, *pt. s.* won, 616, 811; conquered, 3471; Wan, *pt. s.* got; Wan up, got up, climbed up, 1384; Wan of, stripped off, 2543; arrived, came, 5213; Wan to wax, attained his full growth, 3986.
Wand, wand, 57.
Wande (Wonnd), *v.* hesitate, 2723; Wand (Waned), *pt. pl.* flinched, 1411. A.S. *wandian.* (The spelling *waned* is bad.)
Wandreth, *s.* peril, 528. Icel. *vandræði.*
Wane, *v.* decrease, 4772.
Wanes, *pl.* dwelling, abode, quarters, 134, 3748; (Wane, *s.*), rooms, 3222. Cf. A.S. *wunian*, to dwell.
Wannes, *pr. s.* lit. makes pale, causes to fade, dims, 4627; grows pale, 4142.
(Want), *v.* lack, be lacking, 809*; Wantis, *pr. s.* fails, 4586, 5480; lacks, needs, 3497; (Wantes), lacks, 996; is lacking, 2168; Wantis (Vantes), it is lacking (to us), 1854; (Wantes), fails, 1325; (Wantyd), *pt. pl.* lacked, 3150.
Wanton, *adj.* wanton, irregular, 12.
Wapen, *pl.* weapons, 3884; (Wapens), 1400; (Waypynnez), 958; Wapens, *pl.* weapons, 65, 4958. A.S. *wǽpen*, sing. and pl. (neuter sb.).
Wapened (Wapenned), *adj.* armed, 1250.
Wapp, *s.* stroke, blow, 5318; At a wapp, in a moment, at once, on a sudden, 3040; At a wap, 4142.
Ward, *s.* guard, 5614; troop, 3040; keeping, 5314; Warde, *s.* charge, 77; keeping, 5172; patronage, 4500; protection, 4500.
Wardan, warden, 75.
Warde, *ger.* to keep, guard, 5374.
Wardrere (Wardrerd), club, truncheon, warder, 838.
Ware, *pt. pl.* were, 3, 72, 84, 199; Ware, *pt. s. subj.* were, would be, 13, 150, 225; might be, seems to be, 101, 391.
Ware, *adj.* aware, 59, 75, 119; wary, skilful, 202; (War), aware, 1585, 3212.
Ware þe, *imp. s.* beware, take heed to thyself, 2830.
Warisch, *v.* be cured, recover, 5606; *ger.* to heal, cleanse, 4217. O.F. *warir, garir*, F. *guérir.* See Warysche.
Warke (Werk), *s.* ache, pain, 2811.
Warlaȝes, *pl.* warlocks, sorcerers, 4425; evil beasts, monsters, 3795. E. *warlock.* See Warlow.
(Warloked), *pp.* fettered, 769*. The same as *warroked;* see *Warroke* in Gl. to P. Plowman.
(Warlow), *s.* deceiver, 1706. See Warlaȝes.
Warne (Werne), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* warn, 2014; Warned, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* refused, 1468; Warned, *pp.* refused, 1467; told by way of warning, 4221.
Warnes, *s.* wariness, caution, 3354; foreknowledge, 3256.
Warnyng, *s.* warning, 571.
(Warpyd), *pt. pl.* twisted, 798.
Warre, *pt. s. subj.* were, 582. See Ware.
(Warryd); see Weried.
Warysche (Warysh), 1 *pr. s. subj.* may be healed, hope to recover of, 2811. See Warisch.
Waryson, *s.* gift, reward, 3431. See *warison* in Halliwell.
Was, *pt. s.* was, 17, 37, 39, &c.; Wasse (Was), 1366; Was, *pt. pl.* were, 73, 2002.
Waspe, wasp, 738; Waspis, *pl.* 3011.
Wast, *adj.* waste, unproductive, 3561.
Wast, *s.* waste, desert, 3487, 3906, 5565; Wastis, *pl.* waste places, 3792, 4044.
Wast, *ger.* to waste, destroy, 5382; Wast, 1 *pr. pl.* (Wastyd, 1 *pt. pl.*), 2330; Wastid, *pp.* wasted, 1941; defeated, 4008; (Wastyd), destroyed, 1311, 2141.
Wastoure, *s.* waster, destroyer, 5310.
Wate, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* know, wot, 3436, 4153; 2 *p.* knowest, 107; 2 *pr. pl.* know, 3090; (Wayte), 2379.
(Wates), *pr. s.* waits, looks, gazes, 781*, 1129, 1527; (Watyn), *pr. pl.* gaze, 700. See Waite.
Wathe, *s.* danger, peril, 119, 5586; (Wothe), 1103; Wathe, evil, harm, 1411, 3523; harm (Lat. text *impericia*, want of skill), 3355. Icel. *váði;* see Stratmann.
Wath, *adj.* (*error for* Wale, i. e. choice), 2150. The Dublin MS. *has* Wale.
Watir (Water), *s.* water, stream, 1303, 2152; Water, 59, 1290; Watere, 112, 2539; Watre, 5470; Wattre, 3737; Wattir, 4299; Waters, *pl.* rivers, 1079; Watirs (Waters), 1967.
Watirles, *adj.* waterless, dry, 3487.
(Waueschyd), *pp.* put away, 822. See Wayue.
Wawes, *pl.* walls, 5644; (Wallez), 3222; Wawis (Wallez), 1523. See Waghe.
Wawil-eȝed (Waugle-eghed), *adj.* wall-eyed, 1706. See Wald-eȝed.
Wawis (Wawes), *pl.* waves, 1153; Wawys, 26; (Wawes), 3167*. See Waȝes.
Wax, *v.* grow, increase, 4772; *ger.* 3986.
Wax, *s.* wax, 113.
Way, *s.* way, 132, 428, 1310; Ways, *pl.* ways, tracks, 4105; Way (Ways, *pl.*), way, wise, 1643.
Wayfe, *v.* remove, put away, 297; (Wayfe), *ger.* to send, 1868; Wayfe (Wafe), 1 *pr. s.* allow, grant, waive, 723; (Wayfez), *pr. s.* sends, despatches, 1716; Wayfid, *pp.* put away, 822; Wayfe, *imp. pl.* quit, leave, 2469. See Wayue.
Waykis (Wakens), *pr. s.* becomes weak, 1006.
Wayne, *error for* Wayue, *v.* give, deliver, 3426. See Wayue.
Waynes (Waynez), *pl.* wains; Waynes to mete, for wains to pass each other, 1324.
Waynest (Vanyshit), *pt. s. refl.* vanished, 1113.
Wayns (Vaynes), *pl.* veins, 1730.
Wayryngle, *s.* a little villain, 1706. From A.S. *wearg*, Icel. *vargr*, a felon. Cf. *wariangel*, a butcher-bird, Chaucer, C. T. (D. 1408). The suffix is the A.S. *-incel*, as in *ráp-incel*, a little rope.
(Waystes), *pr. s.* wastes away, 3254.
Waytis, *pr. s.* looks, 265; perceives, 3636; (Wates), looks, 1585; Waytes, looks, gazes, 700, 945; waits for, looks for, 131; Wayted, *pt. pl.* looked out, found, 194; Waytid, *pp.* looked, 4233. See Waite.
Wayue (Wafe), *ger.* to send, deliver, 2431; (Wayfe), 1175; Wayue, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* give up, 5134; Wayues, *pr. s.* despatches, sends, 4691; (Wayffes), sends, 2316; Wayues, *pr. s.* puts aside, waives, 4656; Wayued, *pp.* transmitted, 4221; sent, 2695; (Wayfed), conveyed, 1728. *Not* Wayne; see Wayfe. Mod. E. *waive.* See *waiven* in Stratmann.
Wayues, *pr. s.* leans (?), 945. *But* D. *has* Wayfes vp a window, i. e. lifts up a window, opens a window. See above. The reading *out* was due to thinking of *waytes*, i. e. looks, in the latter part of the line.

Wa3es (Wawes), *pl.* waves, 1309. See Wawis.
We, *pron.* we, 178, 180, &c.
We, *s.* man, 541, 3080, 4655; (Wye), 1858, 2302, 2389. See Wee, Wye.
Webbis, *pl.* fabrics, woven cloths, 4911, 5295; (Webbys), 1547; Webbis, cobwebs, *rather than* webs of cloth, 4807; Webis (Webbes), fabrics, 1577; (Webbez), 1523.
Wed, *v.* wed, 297; Wedd, *pt. s.* wedded, 3454; 1 *pt. s.* 587; Wed him (Weddit hym), *pp.* wedded, 822.
Wede, *s.* weed, 413.
Wede, *s.* garment, 120; (Wedes, *pl.*), stuff, lit. garment, 2229; (Wede), dress, armour, 809*; Wedis, *pl.* weeds, garments, 232, 3796, 3959; armour, 3015; (Wedes), 1506, 1530, 2768; robes, 1559; Wedes, *pl.* weeds, garments, 2886; Here-wedis (-wedes), garments of iron, coats of mail, 1010.
Wede, *pr. s.* 1 *p.* go mad, 539; Wedis (Wodez), *pr. s.* goes mad, 1926. A.S. *wédan.*
Weding (Weddyng), *s.* wedding, 827.
Wedire, *s.* weather, 4142; Wedirs, *pl.* weathers, tempests, 557; Wedres, storms, 4796.
Wedowe, widow (*Dubl. MS.* albido *for* a wido), 1977; Wedow, 5089; Wedous, *pl.* widows, 1558.
Wee, *s.* man, 134, 314, 383, 477, 2521, 5317, &c.; (Wy), 725, 1628; (Wye), 855; (Weght), 1993; Wees, *pl.* men, 3264, 4190, 5374; (Wies), 1030; (Wyes), 1250, 2212. See We, Wye.
Welcum, *pp. as adj.* welcome, 3211; Welcom, 2302.
Weld, *v.* rule over, obtain, 3423; Welde (Weld), *ger.* to wield, to govern, 2994; Welden, to wield, 651; Weldes, 2 *pr. s.* wieldest, rulest, 4932; (Weldes), *pr. s.* wields, possesses, 3247; (Weldyd), *pt. s.* ruled, 827*.
Wele, *adv.* well, 30, 44, 171, &c.
Wele, *s.* weal, 4621; (Whele), 1858.
Welk, *pt. pl.* walked, 4190.
Welken, *s.* sky, 247, 1566, 3038; (Welkyn), 714; Welkyn, 554.
Well ne, well nigh, very nearly, 539. See Wele.
Wella (Wele), *adv.* very, 1970.
Welland, *pres. part.* welling, boiling, 4080,
Wellis, *pl.* springs, streams, 4385; springs, 4976.
(Welt), *an error for* Wilt = Willid, *pp.* gone astray, 2984. See Willid.
Welth, *s.* wealth, 3247, 3582; happiness, pleasure, 2276; success, 937; Welthe, prosperity, 3272; Welthis, *s. pl. as sing.* prosperity, 3290; Welthys, *pl.* riches, 4467.
Weltid, *pt. pl.* rolled, 839; (Weltyn), *pr. pl.* 839.
Wemen, *pl.* women, 528, 3755.
Wemles, *adj.* stainless, 4949; unhurt, untouched, 4066.
Wenchis (Whenches), *pl.* wenches, maidens, 1558.
Wende, *v.* go, turn, 865; *ger.* to go, 910; (Wend), *v.* go, 1632; (Wynd), *ger.* depart, 2949; Wendis, *pr. s.* wends, goes, 120, 371, 406; comes, 511; departs from life, dies, 933; (Wendes), goes, 976; Wendis (Wendyn), *pr. pl.* go, 1994. See Went.
Wene, *s.* weening, supposition, 3516; *also as v.* I suppose, 3516. See below.
Wene, *ger.* to suppose, 390; (Wene), *v.* 3119; Wenes, 2 *pr. s.* weenest, supposest, 3548; (Wenys), dost expect, 1736; Wenys (Wenes), *pr. s.* weens, expects, 844, 939; Wend, *pt. s.* thought, supposed, 2644; (Wende), 2546; (Wenyd), 933; Wend, *pt. pl.* thought, supposed, 3631; expected, 3431; Wenand, *pres. part.* expecting, 3587, 4308; Wene, *imp. s.* suppose, 3275; Wenys, *imp. pl.* ween, think, 1938.
Wengis, *pl.* wings, 413.
Went him, *pt. s.* went, 749; Went, went, 37, 428; *pt. pl.* 1410; (Wenden), 901; Went, *pp.* gone, 159. See Wend.
(Wepe), *ger.* to weep, 872; Wepis, *pr. s.* weeps, 972; (Wepys), 963, 1287, 727*; Wepand, *pres. part.* weeping, 2999.
(Wer), were, 764. See Were.
(Werayour), *s.* warrior, soldier, 2643. See Werreour.
Werbild (Werblet, *pt. pl.*), *pp.* blown, lit. warbled, 2222.
Werd, *s.* world, 18, 24, 37, 40, 247, 519, 3471; earth, 4142; plain, 4136; (Werld), world, 995, 1051; (Warld), 2653; (World), 2255; Werde, world, 189, 389, 441, 1963, 4305, 5289; Of þe werde, in the world, 3597; þe litill werde, the little world, the microcosm, or world within a man, 4494; *in* l. 3301, the former *werd* = world, but the latter is an error for *werk* = work; see l. 3299. See Worde.
Werd, *s.* fate, 3247; Werdes, *pl.* destinies, fates, 257, 270, 949; Werdis, 283; (Werdes), 1099; (Werdez), 702, 2260. See Wird, Werid.
Werdly (Wordly), *adj.* worldly, 3262.
Were, 2 *pt. s. subj.* were, mightest be, 368; *pt. s. subj.* 142, 193, 239, 421, &c. See Wer.
Were, *s.* war, 651, 5586, 5598; conflict, 2260; (Were), 808*; Weris, *pl.* wars, 4400, 4502; Weres, 2365; Of weres, in war, 2373.
Were, *ger.* to wear, 3959, 5123.
Were ye (*read* Were þe), *imp. s.* defend thyself, 2830.
Were (Wery), *v.* worry, 2533. See Wery.
Weres, *pr. s.* wars, 3536.
Weried (Warryd), *pp.* accursed, 3212. See *Warien* in Stratmann.
Werid (Werd), *s.* weird, fate, 689. See Werd.
Weris, 2 *pr. s.* wearest, 2308; Werid, *pt. s.* wore, 3635. See Werrid.
Weris (Weres), *pl.* men, 1300. A.S. *wer.*
Werke, *s.* work, deed, 1423, 3199; doing, 2856; (Werk), work, 1290; fortification, 1298; Werk, work, 1071; Werkis, *pl.* works, deeds, 12, 38, 3271; (Werkez), 727*.
Werke, *s.* pain, 539. The same word as the above.
Werkis, *pr. s.* pains, 531.
Werld, *s.* world, 3254; (Werlde) 1502.
(Werld), *error for* Werd, *s.* fate, 3247. See Werd.
Werpis, *pr. pl.* warp, twist, 798; (Warpyn), cast, 1300; Werpe vp, cast up, *hence* rise up, 557; Werpid, *pt. s.* uttered, 202; (Warpyd), spake, 709; Werped (Warpyd), cast, flung, set, 1526; Werpid (Wappyd, *wrongly for* Warpyd), *pt. s.* threw, flung, 1432; Werpid, *pp.* uttered, 243; Werpis (Warpez), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* throw, 2142.
Werray (Werre), *ger.* to war upon, fight against, 2689; Werrays (Warreys), *pr. s.* wars, carries on war, 2495; Werrais (Werrys), wars, makes war, 3166; Werraid, *pt. s.* warred, carried on war, 3730. O.F. *werreier* (Burguy).
Werreour, *s.* warrior, destroyer by war, 5310; Werraiour (Weryour), warrior, 3211; Werreours, *pl.* warriors, 2643; Werriouris (Weriowrs), 1014; (Weryours), 1798; Werriours (Wereour, *s.*), *pl.* warriors, 2206; (Weryours), 2325; Werrayouris, warriors, 3568; Werraours, they who make war (upon us), 4294; Werrayours, *pl. gen.* of warriors, 4007.
Werre (Were), war, 2202; Werres (Werez), *pl.* 1928.
Werrid (Wered), 2 *pt. pl.* wore, 2290. See Weris.
Wers, *adj. comp.* worse, 3199.
Werst, *adj.* worst, 532, 4656.
Werstillare (Wristiller), wrestler, 2287.
Wery, *adj.* weary, 1271, 3488, 3917.
(Wery), *ger.* to worry, 759*. See Were.
Weryd, *pt. s.* wore, 3330.
Weschid (Wessh, *pt. pl.*), *pt. s.* washed, 2543.
Wessell (Vessell), *s.* plate, 2928.
West, *adj.* west, 1733.
Wete, *v.* wit, know, 241, 304, 680,

5016; *ger.* to know, 714, 1718; to wit, 1728; Wetis, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* know ye, 3516; know, 294; Wete, *pr. s. subj.* may know, may wit, 2783; Wete, *imp. s.* know, 1970; Wete, *imp. pl.* know, 4007; Wetis (Wetes), 1938.
Wete, *v. error for* Wene (*as in* D.), suppose, 3119.
Wethire, *adj.* Wethire halfe, left side, wrong side, evil direction (Lat. *in sinistrum*), 3355. A.S. *wiðer.* Cf. *Widdersinnis* in Jamieson.
Wethris, *pl.* wethers, 4476.
Wetirly, *adv.* truly, 4222; (Witterly), certainly, 2856; Weterly, certainly, surely, 304; (Witterly), 1423.
Wetis, *pr. s.* waits, watches, 241. See Waite.
Wex, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* grew, 5621; *pt. s.* 616, 629; (Wex), became, 1189.
(Weyle), *v.* choose, 759*. See Wale.
Weȝt, *s.* weight, 5473.
(What), what, 682, 683; (Whatt), 1147; What of, what with, 528; *interj.* what! 723*.
When, when, 42, 119, &c.
(Whene), *s.* queen, 733*.
(Where), where, 683.
Whebire, *conj.* whether, 249.
Which, who, 828*.
(Whil), *conj.* while, 2255; (Whils), whilst, 2172; (Whilse), 1220.
(Whistely), *adv.* silently, 1851.
Whit, *for* With, with, 3013; (Whit), 1613.
Who, who? 834*.
(Whyne), whence, 834*.
Whytin (Within), within, 1290.
Wiche-craft, *s.* witchcraft, 378.
Wicket, *s.* small door, 5545.
Wickid, *adj.* wicked, 2425.
Wickidly, *adv.* wickedly, 2425; (Wikedly), 1728.
Wickidnes, *s.* wickedness, evil, 3277, 4425.
Wide, *adj.* wide, 37; (Wyde), 1970; Wid open (Wide hopyn), *adv.* wide open, 1526.
Wife, wife, 297. See Wyfe.
(Wight), *adj.* nimble, 765*.
(Wightly), *adv.* actively, 1405, 1428.
Wild, *ger.* to rule, 3477; (Weld), *ger.* to rule, govern, 994, 2653; rule over, 3086; to wield, possess, 1669, 1736; Wild (Wilde), to possess, 939; (Wyld), 2949; Wild, *v.* wield, possess, 301; Wild (Welde), *v.* rule, possess, 3227; Wild (Wyld him), possess for himself, 1667; Wild, *ger.* to possess, 1669; Wildis, *pr. pl.* possess, 4481; Wildid (Weldit), *pt. s.* governed, 2303.
Wild, *adj.* wild, 378, 557, 1250; (Wilde), 1153; (Wylde), 1540.
Wild, *for* Will, *s.* will, desire, 4622. Lat. text—*uoluntas.*
Wildare (Weldar), *s.* governor, ruler, 3166. See Wildire.
Wild-hedid, *adj.* wild-headed, 12.
Wildire (Welder), wielder, ruler, 1608. See Wildare.
Wildirnes, *s.* wilderness, 3487, 4044.
Wile, *s.* wile, guile, 416, 5233; Wiles, *pl.* 4365; (Wilez), 1764; (Willes), stratagems, 1363.
Wilily (Willyly), *adv.* with guile, carefully, 1764.
Will, *s.* wish, desire, 14, 386, 1718, 4604; will, 323; intention, 304; power, disposal, 3503; power to dispose of, 3123; (Wille), will, wish, desire, 680, 2013; (Wyll), 1973; Wille, will, resolution, 106; (Willes), *pl.* desires, 1890; At will, 939; To will, at his will, 301.
Will, *pr. s.* desires, 636; will, 297, 301; (Wille), will, 1471; (Wyll), 1754; Will, 1 *pr. s.* 294; 2 *pr. pl.* 416, 446; Will ȝe, if ye will, 212; Willis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* willest, desirest, 4240; Willis, *pr. s.* wills, desires, 291, 3494.
Will (Wille), *adj.* at a loss, 1272. So in Barbour. Icel. *villr.* See Willid.
Willi (Willy), *adj.* willing, ready, disposed, 2689.
Willid, *pt. pl.* strayed, 4132; Willid, *pp.* lost, bewildered, astray, 2984. Cf. Icel. *villr*, astray; see Will, *adj.*

(Wilnet), *pt. s.* desired, 680; Willne, *imp. s.* inquire of, ask, 5036. A.S. *wilnian.*
Wilnyng, *s.* desire, 1876.
Wilsom, *adj.* wild, waste, desolate (lit. wildsome), 4076, 5565.
Winde (Wende), 1 *pr. s.* wend, go, 827. See Wend.
Wing (Wynge), wing, portion, district, 1051; Wingis, *pl.* wings, 5523.
Wintre (Wynter), *s.* winter, 2895; Wintir (Wynter), 2152; Wintir, *pl.* years, 4441; Wintire, years, 3556; Winter (Wynter), 692; Wintris, *gen.* winter's, 3959.
Wird, *s.* fate, 443; Wirid, 2260; Wirdis, *pl.* weirds, destinies, fate, 41, 178, 4950; Wirdes, 2307, 2379. See Werd, Werid.
Wirke, *v.* work, do, 937; *ger.* to do, 2013; to act, 160; (Werke), to do, 2949; (Wirche), to act, 3359; Wirke, *pr. pl.* 2 *p.* work, 3092; Wirkis (Wirkyd), *pr. pl.* work, 1412.
Wirling (Wirlyng), *s.* dwarf, 1706; Wirlinges (Wyrlyngez), dwarfs, 1733. Sc. *wirl, wurl*, a dwarfish person; Jamieson.
Wirschip, *s.* honour, 11, 616, 662, 5586; (Worschip), 723, 811, 1949, 2261; Wirschips, *pl.* honours, 3712.
Wirschip (Worshippys, *pr. pl.*), *pp.* worshipped, honoured, 1963.
Wirschipfull, *adj.* worshipful, worthy, 243.
Wirstill (Wrastyll), *v.* wrestle, 2276.
Wis, *imp. s.* make known, declare, explain, 4997; (Wissez), *pr. s.* instructs, guides, 793*; Wissid (Wist), *pp.* made known, 689. A.S. *wissian.*
Wisdome (Wisdom), wisdom, 898.
(Wisely), *adv.* wisely, 765*.
Wist, *pt. s.* knew, 171, 937, 1189, 3080, 762*; *pt. pl.* 159, 1148, 5465.
Wit, *s.* wisdom, 662; (Witte), 1858. See Witt.
Wite, *s.* blame; *read* Na wite, no blame, 477. A.S. *wite.*
Wite, *v.* blame, 876. See above.
Wite, *ger.* to depart, 3277; Wite, *v.* send, make to depart, 5032. A.S. *gewítan*, to depart. See Witis.
Witerwarde, *for* Witherwarde, *adj.* adverse; þa witherwarde, those who are openly adverse, 4297.
With, *prep.* with, 49, 64, 82, 83, 85; by, 2079, 2397, 2562, 3493, 3578, 4733, 5589; against, 3166, 3607; To saue with oure lyuys, to preserve our lives with, 4269; With þat, thereupon, 330, 3054; provided that, 343.
With-draw, 1 *pr. s.* retreat, 2015; With-drewe, *pt. pl.* retreated, drew back, 5449.
With-in, *adv.* within, 14, 1030; *prep.* 206, 211, 348; With-inen, *prep.* 251.
With-out, *prep.* outside, 3919; (With-owte), 815*; Withoute, without, 148.
With-out, *adv.* outside, 1306; (With-owte), 1032.
Withouten, *prep.* without, 118; (With-owtyn), 1103, 2196; besides, 3600; Withouten, *prep.* without, outside, 133, 335; (With-owte), 698; (With-out), beyond, 1209.
Withouten (Withowte), *adv.* outside, 1389.
With-sitt (Withsitte, *ger.*), *v.* oppose, 2410.
With-stande, *v.* oppose, resist, 5624; (Withstonde), *ger.* 1738; With-stand (Wit-stande), *ger.* 2077; With-standis (Withstandyn), *pr. pl.* withstand, 1138; Withstand, 1443; With-stude (Withstondyn), *pt. pl.* withstood, 1405; (With-stonde), 1053; (Withstode), 1443; With-stude (With-stondyn), *pt. pl.* 1031.
Witis, *pr. s.* departs, 5318. See Wite.
Witles, *adj.* witless, unwise, 107.
Witnes, *pr. s.* witnesses, shows, 916; (Wittnes), 1439, 2900; Wittnes, witnesses, 488; (Wittnesse), 1592.
Witrely, *adv.* verily, 422. See Witter.

Witt, *s.* wisdom, 3092; wit, knowledge, 45, 259, 898; mind, 489; fancy, 5531; Witt (Witte), wit, knowledge, 2689; reason, 1410; Wittis, *pl.* wits, senses, 2336, 2420; dispositions, 14; Man wittis, man's wits, 5552; Wittes, *pl.* understandings, 1890. See Wit.
Witter, *adj.* knowing, 629. Icel. *vitr.* See *witer* in Stratmann.
(Wittily), *adv.* wisely, 2245.
Wiȝt (Wight), *adj.* strong, active, vigorous, 1014, 1798, 2206.
Wiȝtis (Wightez), *pl.* wights, men, 3212.
Wiȝtly, *adv.* nimbly, 651, 3040; vigorously, 2245; quickly, 120, 3774; (Wightly), quickly, 1030; bravely, 1298.
Wlattis, *pr. pl.* disgust, 4277; Wlated, *pp.* disgusted, nauseated, more than satisfied, 5634.
Wlonk, *adj.* proud, 5089. A.S. *wlanc.*
Wod, *s.* wood, forest, 70, 2984, 3795; Wodd, 3906; (Wode), 776; Woddis, *pl.* woods, 4116, 4382, 4721, 5242.
Wode (Wod), *s.* wood (of a spear-shaft), 798.
Wode, *adj.* mad, 738, 1410, 5346; angry, 3167; (Wod), raging, 1168. A.S. *wód.*
(Wode), *adv.* madly, 1189.
Wodnes, *s.* madness, fury, 4400.
Wodwose, *pl.* (*though the form is sing.*), satyrs, fauns, 1540. "*Wodewese, wowyse, woodwose*, Siluanus, satirus;" Prompt. Parv.
Wold (Wald), *pt. s.* would, 751.
Wolfe, wolf, 2533; Wolfes, *pl.* 5242.
Woll, *s.* wool, 4166; Wolle, 3957.
Woman, woman, 348, 428.
Wombe, *s.* womb, 755. See Wame.
Won, *pp.* won, 454; reached, arrived, 4136, 5523; got, passed, 4196; (Wonne), 942; Wonn (Wonne), 818; Wonn (Wonnez, *wrongly*), *pp.* won, 1238.
Won, *v.* live, dwell, 4044 (see note); *ger.* to dwell, 4310; Wons, *pr. s.* dwells, is, remains, 5565; Wonnes, *pr. s.* dwells, 3089; Wonand, *pres. part.* dwelling, 5475. And see Wont.
Wond, *adj.* 5428. Read *woud*, i. e. mad, furious, highly excited. See Wode.
Wonde (Wound), *ger.* to wound, 2212; Wondid, *pt. pl.* wounded, 3939; Wondid (Woundit), *pp.* wounded, 933; (Woundytt), 3131; (Woundett), 1277.
Wonden (Woundit, i. e. wounded), *pp.* wound, involved in, 2811 (where we should insert *of* before *my* in the Ashmole text); Wondyn, *pp.* wound, wreathed; applied to a wreathed snow-drift, 1757.
Wonder, wonder; *as adj.* strange, 811, 841.
Wonder, *adv.* wonderfully, 629.
Wondid, *pp.* wounded, 3150. (*But an error for* wontid, *pt. pl.* wanted, lacked.)
Wonding, *s.* wounding, 4795.
Wondire, *s.* wonder, 13, 549; (Wondre), 852, 1150, 1616; Wondre, 3917; Wonder, 514.
Wondirfull, *adj.* wonderful, 416.
Wondirly (Wondrely), *adv.* wonderfully, 1300; (Wonderly), 933; Wonderly, 898.
Wondirs (Wonderys); Me wondirs, it is wonderful to me, 3119; Vs wondres, it is wonderful to us, 4033; Wondird (Wounderyd), *pp.* amazed, 2904.
Wonn, *adj.* wan, pale, white, 1757.
Wont, *pt. s.* dwelt, 134; Wont, *pt. pl.* dwelt, 4721; Wont, *pp.* wont, 725.
Wonynge-stede, *s.* dwelling-place, 3734. Cf. Du. *woonstede*, a dwelling-place.
Worche, *ger.* to work, perform, 313.
Worde, *s.* word, tale, 243; fame, report, 37; (Word), 709; Out of worde, beyond word, beyond telling, 3099 [the Dublin MS. has *oute of warde*, beyond guard, past restraint]; Wordis, *pl.* words, 95, 167, 202, 237; (Wordes), 840; (Wordez), 984.
Worde, *s.* world, 5131. See Werd.
Wordly, *adj.* worldly, p. 279, l. 16.

Worm, *s.* serpent, snake, 511; Worme, 383; Wormes, *pl.* serpents, 4795, 5428; reptiles, 4198; worms, 5589.
(Worship), *s.* honour, 2248.
Worth, *v.* be, 691; become, 4228; come to pass, happen, 3080, 3552; Worth, *v.* get ready (lit. become), 2004; Worth, *v.* get up (lit. become), 2878; (Worth), come to pass, happen, 714, 3275; become, attain, 762*; Worthe, *v.* be, 1834; become, 189, 4597; take place, happen, 119, 171, 341; (Worth), become, 1272, 1881; befall, 2255; Worthe, *ger.* to be, 1817; (Worth), to be, 2084; to become, to turn to, 3391; Worthis, *pr. s.* becomes, 383, 385, 468, 722; is, 4860; mounts, mounts up (lit. becomes), 2973; [*spelt* Worthes], 3613; Worthis, becomes, turns, 3254; goes, 3302; (Worthes), becomes, 2521; Worthis, *pr. s.* (*as fut.*) will happen, will come to pass, 4059; shall be, 477; Worthis (Worthez), happens, 1736; Worthis, *pr. s. impers.* it is, it needs, 4294; Worthis, 2 *pr. s.* becomest, Worthis thaim ouire, gettest the better of them, subduest them, 4297; Worthe, 2 *pr. pl.* (ye) become, 4452; (Worthen), are, 1034; (Worth), 2 *pr. s. subj.* mayst be (MS. *wroth*), 810*; Worthe, become, 103; Worthe (Worth), *pr. s. subj.* happen, 1978; Worthe (Worthen), 1 *pr. pl. subj.* become, be, 2445; Worthid, *pt. s.* happened, occurred, 2310, 2317, 5531; became, 378; (Worth), *pt. s.* happened, 3090; Worthid, *pt. s. subj.* should come to pass, should be so, 3275; Worthe (Worthen), *pt. pl.* (or *pp.*) became, *or* become, 1443 [*the form* worthen *is a pp.*]; Worthe, *pp.* become, turned to, 4524; (Worthen), become, 722; Worthid, become, 591.
Worth, *v.* esteem worthy, 2124; Worthid, *pt. s.* 1 *p.* esteemed, 3090.
Worthe, *adj.* worthy, 302, 3426; (Worth), worth, 2830; (Worthi), worthy, 755; (Worthy), 2287; Worthi, worthy, deserving, 3436; (Worthy), 1798, 2078, 765*.
Worthili, *adv.* worthily, 1405; (Worthyly), highly, 2150.
Worthines, *s.* worthiness, 662; highness, 3163; (Worthynes), 1938; worship, 2684; Worthenes (Worthiness), worthiness, 1825.
Worthist (Worthiest), *adj. superl.* worthiest, 1608.
Worthly, *adv.* worthily, 1428.
Worȝt (Wroght), *pp.* wrought, caused, 3264.
Wose, *s.* juice, 413. A.S. *wós.*
Woud, *adj.* mad, furious, excited, 5428. See Wode.
Wounde (Wound), *s.* wound, 1411; Woundis (Woundez), *pl.* wounds, 1331.
(Woundes), *pr. s.* wounds, 1214; Woundid, *pt. s.* wounded, 1214; Woundid (Woundit), *pt. pl.* wounded, 3200; Woundid (Wounden, *pr. pl.*), 1396; Woundid (Woundett), *pp.* 2086.
Woundird (Wondderytt), *pp.* amazed, struck with wonder, 2856.
Woydis (Woydez), *pr. s.* puts away, dismisses, 879; (Woydez), *imp. pl.* quit, leave, 2469. See Voyde.
Woȝe (Wogh), injury, wrong, harm, 2812. A.S. *wóh.*
Woȝes, *pl.* walls, 3300. A.S. *wáh.*
Wraa, *s.* corner, retired spot, 4190; Wra (Wray), corner, 1585. Icel. *rá*, Dan. *vraa.*
Wraiste, *adj.* perverse, variable, 4622.
Wrake, *s.* vengeance, 1412; Wrak, 2721. A.S. *wracu.*
Wrange, *s.* wrong, 2812.
Wrate, 1 *pt. s.* wrote, 2431; (Wrote), 3163; Wrate (Wrote), *pt. s.* 1825; Wrate, *pt. pl.* wrote, 203.
Wrath, *adj.* angry, wroth, 738, 841, 2245; Wrathe, 3589.
Wrath, *s.* fit of anger, 2310.
Wrathfull, *adj.* wrathful, 3167.
Wrawid, *pp.* angry, peevish, 3167. See *Wrah* in Stratmann.
Wreke, *v.* avenge, wreak, 3199; Wrekis (Wrekes), *pr. s.* avenges,

855; Wrekis (Wrekes), *pr. pl.* avenge, 1410.
Wrengis, *pr. s.* wrings, 339.
Wrenkis, *pl.* tricks, 4365. A.S. *wrenc.*
Wrestild (Wrystyllyd), *pp.* wrestled, 784.
Wreten, *pp.* written, 643; (Written), 1600, 1637; (Wrytten), 1845.
Wreth, *s.* wrath, 855, 865.
Wrethen, *pp.* writhen, coiled up, 5526.
Wricchidnes, *s.* wretchedness, misery, 4589.
Wriche, *s.* wretch, 3075, 4059; Wriches, *pl.* wretches, 4005, 4564; Wricchis, 4597; (Wrechez), 1733.
Wristilling (Wristylyng), *s.* wrestling, 2260.
Write, 1 *pr. s.* write, 2009; (Writtez), 1 *pr. pl.* 1727.
Writh, *s.* wrath, ire, 4389, 4847, 5326; Writhe, 4153.
Writhing, *s.* angering; For writhing, for fear of angering, 5036.
Writhis, *pr. s. impers.* it makes (you) angry, 4639 (see the note, p. 312); Writhis, *pr. s.* becomes wrath, 2593; *refl.* 1189; Writhis (Wrathen), *pr. pl.* become angry, 1409.
Writt, *s.* writing, 24; original text, 608, 709; (Writte), 1376; Writte, writing, 2152; (Writte), letter, 2022; Write, letter, 5102; Writ (Writte), writing, 2316; Writtis, *pl.* writings, letters, 3735, 4233; (Writtes), 881, 2112, 2695.
Wriȝtis, *pl.* wrights, workmen, 4205.
(Wroght), *pp.* made, 1149. See Wroȝt.
(Wroght), *for* Wrath, angry, 2245.
Wroken, *pp.* banished, driven, limited, 4428.
(Wroth), *adj.* wroth, angry, 1189.
Wrothe, *s.* wrath, 2077.
(Wrothed), *pt. s.* became angry, 2593.
Wrothir-haile, destruction, calamity, 1759. (Usually *wrotherhele.*)
Wroȝt, *pt. s.* wrought, 416; (Wroght), 2 *p.* wroughtest, 869; Wroȝt, *pt. pl.* did, 2330; (Wroght), 2 *pt. pl. subj.* should do, 2204; Wroȝt, *pp.* wrought, 386, 422; (Wroght), 1290, 1540.
(Wrychednes), *s.* wretchedness, misery, 3277.
(Wy), man, 727*, 762*, 782*; (Wyes), *pl.* 809*. See We.
Wyde, *adj.* wide, 571, 1324.
Wyfe. *s.* woman, 390; wife, 587, 828, 5178. See Wife.
(Wykydly), *adv.* severely, 1214.
(Wylde), *s.* dominion, 1608. Lit. *wielding.*
Wyll, *s.* wish, 782*.
Wyn, *v.* win, conquer, 519; win (to), reach, attain, 4697; (Wynne), win, 1629, 2302; (Wynne), get, go, 1440; Wynn, win, conquer, 449; Wyn (Wynne), *ger.* to win, 1892; to make their way, 1148, 1156; Wynn (Wyn), to win, 2248; Wynnes, *pr. s.* goes, advances, 1428; (Wynnez), wins, conquers, 1037, 2278; Wynnys, *pr. s.* wins, 648; conquers, 5611; Wynes, *pr. s.* comes, 5530; Wynnes him vp, *pr. s.* snatches up, 828; Wynnes, *pr. pl.* get; Wynnes away, get away, get off, 3622; Wynnes (ȝow vp), *imp. pl.* get up, rise up, 541.
Wynd, *s.* wind, 557, 1757; Wynde, 4159; Wyndis, *pl.* 4143.
Wynde (Weynde), *v.* go, return, 1835; Wynde, *ger.* to scale, climb, ascend zigzag, 4878; Wynd (Wende), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* depart, 2014; Wyndis, *pr. s.* wends, 3325; (Wendes), goes, 2150, 2177, 2189, 2487, 2971; Wyndis, *pr. pl.* turn, go, 3631, 3741; (Wenden), 2453; Wynde (Wende), 2 *pr. s. subj.* depart, return, 2915.
Wyndles, *adj.* breathless, 1271.
Wyndou (Wyndow), window, 945; (Wyndow), 769*.
Wyne (Wynne), *s.* wine, 1350; Wynes, *pl.* wines, 3350, 4303, 4436.
Wynes, *pl.* vines, 3667.
Wyngis (Wengez), *pl.* wings, 1769, 2709.
Wynly, *adv.* quickly, readily, 5545. Ray gives "*winly*, quietly"; but I suspect it rather means 'cannily,' i. e. quickly, but without fuss; in the Troy-book, it means 'readily, quickly' in l. 1165, and 'readily, easily' in l. 8655. From the verb *win*, to get, come by. Quite distinct from *winly* = pleasantly.
Wynter, *pl.* winters, years, 634, 646, 719, 920; (Wyntre), 1005; Wyntir (Wynter, 1677.
Wyothy, *a city*, 2150.
Wyrkys, 2 *pr. pl.* work, 2425.
Wyse, *adj.* wise, 11, 41, 629; (Wise), 725; Wyse man, *gen.* sage's, 2124.
Wyse, *s.* wise, manner, way, 13, 230, 2263; guise, 2863; þe same wyse, in the same way, 3352.
Wysest, *adj. superl.* wisest, 24; Wisest, 247.
(Wysez), *pr. s. refl.* considers, 751. *For* Vysez = Avises.
Wysid (Wysett), *pp.* sent off, directed (to go), 2064. A.S. *wisian.*
Wyssis (Vysys), *pr. s.* shows, 2988.
(Wyssyng), *s.* instruction, 3256.
Wyst, *pt. s.* knew, 509.
Wysti (Wistus), *adj.* (perhaps) desolate, deserted, 1757. See *wysty* in Sir Gawain and the Grene Knight, 2189, where it is an adj., not a sb. Cf. M.E. *westi.*
(Wyth), *prep.* with, 1202.
Wyues (Wifes), *pl.* wives, 1558.

Ydill; In ydille, in vain, 3975.
Ydolatry, idolatry, 4459; Ydolatris, *pl.* 4261.
Ydres, *pl.* hydras, water-snakes, 4089.
(Ye), ye, 986.
Yeldis (ȝeldes), *pr. s.* gives up (to), 2951.
Yeuen, *pp.* given, 1713.
(Yf), *conj.* if, 951, 1097, 2164; (Yff), 1850. See If.
(Yhe), ye, 682, 683, 1034. See ȝe.
Yles (Ylez), *pl.* isles, 1027; (Ylez), 1039. See Ile.
Ymage, image, likeness, 191, 1126, 3362; Ymagis (Ymagez), *pl.* images, 1564.
Ynde, India, 3160, 3183, 3484, 4102; (Inde), 1523, 2797; Yndee, 5663.
Ynde, Indian, 5012.
Yndis, *pl.* Indians, 3639; Yndes, 3617.

Yndoyes, the Indian language, 5009; Yndoys, 5072.
(Yoke), *s.* yoke, 818*.
Yone, *pron.* that man, 1634.
(You), *dat. pl.* you, 1013.
(Your), your, 987; (Yowr), 1825.
(Yren), iron, 746*, 756*, 1081. See Iren.
Yse, *s.* ice, 2883.
(Ysyd), *pp.* iced, frozen, 2883.
Yssanna, name of an island, 2106.
Ytaile (Itale), Italy, 1027.
Ythes, *pl.* waters, waves, 1039. See Ithis.
Ynde (Inde), India, 2799.

ȝa, *adv.* yea, 354, 541, 889, 1822, 1834, 2142, 5353. See ȝha.
ȝacora, *a nun*, Zacora, 2179.
ȝald (ȝolde), *pt. pl.* yielded, surrendered, 1140; (Yeld), 2147.
ȝalow, *adj.* yellow, 607.
ȝape, *adj.* vigorous, strong, 3304; (ȝope), keen, bold, 2201. A.S. *géap.*
ȝapely, *adv.* readily, 2406; eagerly, boldly, quickly, 80, 114, 2107, 2909, 4866; (ȝopely), vigorously, 1393; ȝapeli, 761.
ȝapest, *adj. superl.* most active, most eager, 818*.
ȝare, *adv.* readily, 607; quickly, early, 1107. A.S. *gearo.*
ȝare, *adv.* yore, long ago, 1008.
ȝarely, *adv.* promptly, 1035; (ȝarle), speedily, 1140; (ȝarly), quickly, readily, 818*, 1382.
ȝaris, *pr. s. refl.* prepares himself, 4866; ȝare þe, *imp. s.* prepare thyself, 80, 2909.
ȝarkid, *pt. s.* prepared, 114; ȝarkid to (ȝarken to), shut to, fastened, 2449; ȝarkid, *pp.* prepared, 4894. A.S. *gearcian.*
ȝarmand, *pres part.* yelling, bellowing, 4745. See *ȝarme* in Halliwell, p. 951. Cf. Icel. *jarmr*, a bleating, crying; W. *garmio*, to shout.
(ȝate), *s.* gate, 783*; ȝatis, *pl.* gates, 496, 3209, 3705, 4892; (ȝates), 768, 1080, 762*.
ȝe, *pron.* ye, 21, 212, 268, &c.; (Ye), 1802; (Yhe), 1801, 1866, 1893.
ȝe (*for* þe), the, 3055.
ȝedire, *adj.* vehement, 5042. Cf.

Icel. *geð*, Norweg. *gjed*, mood, mind, humour; whence Norweg. *gjedad*, bold. See Allit. Poems.
ȝee, *pron.* ye, 2120, 4433. See ȝe.
ȝefes (Yevez), *imp. pl.* 2 *p.* give ye, 1035.
ȝeld, *v.* give, 3126; (ȝelde), 1808; ȝeld, *ger.* to yield, pay, 892; to yield, 1276; to give, 1891; (ȝelde), 1968; (Yelde), 924; ȝelde, *ger.* to give (battle), deliver (battle), 137, 830*; ȝeld (Yeld), 1 *pr. s.* give, 863; ȝeld (ȝelde), *pr. s. subj.* should give up, 2313; ȝeldis, *pr. s.* yields up, 4286; (ȝeldez), yields, 971; gives, 1184; ȝeldis (ȝelden), *pr. pl.* yield up (themselves), 2792; (ȝeldyn), give, 1388; ȝeldis, *pr. pl.* (ȝolden, *pt. pl.*), surrender, 2232; ȝeld, *pt. s.* gave, 751; ȝeld him, *imp. s.* let him yield himself, 3124; ȝeld, *imp. pl.* yield, 1035.
ȝeme, *ger.* to take care of, 4505; ȝemed, 1 *pt. s.* governed, 3304; ȝemyd, *pt. s.* kept, had charge of, 1233. A.S. *gýman.*
Zephall, Zephir, 3800.
ȝerand, *pres. part.* screaming, chattering, 4745. A.S. *georran*, to chatter, sound, creak. See ȝerre.
ȝerde, *s.* rod of office, sceptre, 813; yard (measure), 4750; sceptre, wand or emblem of office, 1035; ȝerd, wand, 114.
ȝere, *s.* year, 288; *pl.* years, 633, 649; ȝeris, *pl.* years, 654; (ȝeres), 1008; (Yherez), 1107; ȝerris, 316; ȝerys, 251.
ȝerely (ȝerly), *adj.* yearly, 2406.
ȝerne, *adv.* earnestly, 457; bitterly, 667; greatly, 1265; (ȝarne), eagerly, 1315, 1700. A.S. *georne.*
ȝerne (ȝarne), *pr. s.* 1 *p.* yearn, desire, 3124.
ȝerre, *s.* outcry, loud lament, 5042. See ȝerand.
ȝet, *conj.* yet, nevertheless, 565, 1140, 3742, 4628; (ȝett), 919. See ȝit.
ȝeten, *pp.* gotten, obtained, attained, 1107.
ȝettes, *pr. s.* flows, gushes, 3233; ȝett, *pt. pl.* burst (out), lit. poured (out), 5042; ȝeten, *pp.* molten, cast, 607, 4894. A.S. *géotan.*
ȝeuyn (ȝefen), *pp.* given, 2107.
(ȝha), yea, 724*. See ȝa.
(ȝheldez), *pr. s.* yields, gives up, 726*; gives, 751.
ȝiff him, *imp.* let him give himself, 3124.
ȝildis, *pr. s.* 2 *p.* givest, deliverest, 5192; ȝildis (ȝeldyn), *pr. pl.* repay, 1393; ȝild, *pr. s. subj.* may yield, 3187; ȝild vp, *imp. s.* yield up, 80. See ȝeld.
ȝis, *adv.* yes, 2079.
ȝit, *adv.* again, still, 3163; yet, nevertheless, moreover, 51, 185, 233, &c.; (ȝitte), 815*. See ȝet.
ȝode, *pt. s.* went, 1140; ȝode him (hym), *pt. s.* went, 761; ȝode, *pt. pl.* went, 1123, 1256, 3208; (ȝodez), *pt. pl. subj.* should go, 822* (where read ȝode).
ȝoke, *s.* yoke, 3124; ȝokke, 2909.
ȝolden (ȝelden), *pt. pl.* yielded, 2326; ȝolden, *pp.* yielded, given up, delivered up, surrendered, 1328, 1358, 1449, 1614, 2378, 3981; paid, 4531; ȝolden (Yolden), *pp.* yielded, 813, 2107; (ȝholden), 1899; repaid, 967; (ȝoldyn), 2104; ȝold, 3504. See ȝeld.
ȝonder (Yonder), *adj.* yonder, 1090.
ȝonder, *adv.* yonder, 702, 705; ȝondire (ȝond), 1637; (Yonder), 1093.
ȝone, *adj.* yonder, yon, that, 498, 1093, 4993. See Yone.
ȝonge, *adj.* young, 185, 594; ȝong (Yong), 761, 794.
ȝonger, *adj. comp.* younger, 1014; ȝongire (Yonger), 1474; ȝongir (Yonger), 1619.
ȝope; see ȝape.
ȝoskinges, *pl.* sobbings, sobs, 5042. A.S. *giscian*, to sob; prov. E. *yex.*
ȝoten, *s.* giant, 4745. A.S. *eoten.*
ȝoure (Your), *pron.* your, 1680, 1866, 2161; ȝour, 21, 168, &c.
ȝour-selfe (Your-seluen), yourselves, 1867, 2205; ȝour-self, 301.
ȝouthe (Youth), *s.* youth, 1008, 1107; ȝouth, 316.
ȝow, *pron.* you, 15, 172, 186, &c.; (You), *dat.* 987; ȝowe, 361, 1823, 1845.
ȝustirday, yesterday, 3304.
ȝymmes (Gemmys), *pl.* gems, 2935.

RICHARD CLAY & SONS,
BREAD STREET HILL, LONDON,
Bungay, Suffolk.